

PETER V. JONES AND KEITH C. SUDWELL

Reading Latin

GRAMMAR, VOCABULARY AND EXERCISES

2005
NO RENEWALS
NO HOLDS

\$5 per day fine for late returns

MONASH UNIVERSITY LIBRARY



3 3168 02286087 4




Marble copy of the Clupeus Virtutis of Augustus, found at Arles (see p. xvi and p. 297 ll. 6–8)

PETER V. JONES AND KEITH C. SIDWELL

Reading Latin

GRAMMAR, VOCABULARY
AND EXERCISES

 **CAMBRIDGE**
UNIVERSITY PRESS

PUBLISHED BY THE PRESS SYNDICATE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE
The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge, United Kingdom

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, UK
40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011-4211, USA
477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia
Ruiz de Alarcón 13, 28014 Madrid, Spain
Dock House, The Waterfront, Cape Town 8001, South Africa
<http://www.cambridge.org>

© Cambridge University Press 1986

This book is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without
the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1986
Seventeenth printing 2003

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

Library of Congress catalogue card number: 85-11682

British Library Cataloguing in Publication data
Jones, Peter V.

Reading latin: grammar, vocabulary and exercises.
1. Latin language
I. Title II. Sidwell, Keith C.
470 PA2057

ISBN 0 521 28622 0 paperback

CONTENTS

Note. In Sections 1A–4C the order of items is as follows: Vocabulary (Running, Learning), Grammar and Exercises, *Dēliciae Latīnae*. From 4D to 5G there is an additional 'Reading' section before *Dēliciae Latīnae*. Sections 6A and 6D have Vocabulary (Running, Learning) and Grammar and Exercises; Sections 6B–C have only Vocabulary; there are no additional 'Reading' sections or *Dēliciae Latīnae*.

This list gives the contents of Running Grammar in detail, by Section number, but only general headings for the Reference Grammar. For detailed references to the latter see Index, pp. 602–10.

Preface	xi
Notes to grammar, exercises and vocabulary	xi
Abbreviations	xiii
Pronunciation	xiv
Notes on illustrations	xvi
Glossary of English–Latin grammar	xvii
Grammar, vocabulary and exercises for Sections 1–6	1
Introduction 1 <i>sum</i> present indicative	1
1A 2 <i>amō</i> present indicative active 3 <i>habēō</i> present indicative active 4 Terminology 5 Meaning 6 The cases in Latin 7 Singular and plural, m., f. and n. 8 1st declension <i>serua</i> 9 2nd declension m. <i>seruus</i> 10 Prepositions (<i>in, ad</i>)	7
1B 11 3rd declension (consonant stem) <i>fūr</i> 12 3rd declension (<i>i</i> -stem) <i>aedis</i> 13 Stems and endings of 3rd declension nouns 14 1st/2nd declension adjectives <i>multus</i> 15 2nd declension n. <i>somnium</i> 16 2nd declension irregular <i>deus</i> 17A Vocatives 17B Apposition	18
1C 18 Present imperatives, 1st and 2nd conjugation 19 <i>eō</i>	

Contents

	present indicative and imperative 20 <i>meus, tuus</i> 21 <i>miser</i> 22 <i>ego, tū</i> 23 Prepositions (<i>ā/ab</i> and <i>ē/ex</i>)	35
1D	24 <i>dīcō</i> present indicative, imperative 25 <i>audiō</i> present indicative, imperative 26 3rd declension n. <i>nōmen</i> 27 <i>pulcher</i> 28 2nd declension m. <i>puer, culter, uir</i> 29 <i>quis/</i> <i>quī?</i> 30 <i>domum, domī</i> and <i>domō</i> 31 <i>satis, nimis</i> 32 <i>-que</i>	47
1E	33 <i>capiō</i> present indicative 34 <i>uolō</i> present indicative 35 <i>ferō</i> present indicative active 36 1st–4th (and 3rd/4th) imperatives 37 Irregular imperatives 38 3rd declension n. <i>onus</i> 39 <i>-ne(?)</i> 40 <i>quid + gen.</i>	57
1F	41 Present infinitive active 42 Irregular infinitives 43 <i>nōs,</i> <i>uōs</i> 44 3rd declension adjectives <i>omnis</i> 45 3rd declension adjectives <i>ingēns</i> 46 3rd declension adjectives <i>audāx</i> 47 <i>dīues, pauper</i>	67
1G	48 The dative case 49 Ablative of description	77
2A	50 Future indicative active 51 Future of <i>sum,</i> <i>eō</i> 52 <i>possum, nōlō, mālō</i> present and future indicative 53 <i>noster, uester</i> ; 3rd declension adjectives <i>celer, ācer</i> 54 Cardinal numerals (1–10, 100–1000) 55 4th declension <i>manus</i> 56 <i>domus</i> 57 3rd declension monosyllables	85
2B	58 Deponent, present indicative, imperative, infinitive 59 <i>nōlī + infinitive</i> 60 5th declension <i>rēs</i> 61 3rd declension n. <i>caput</i> 62 <i>nūllus, alter</i>	100
2C	63 <i>hic</i> 64 <i>ille</i>	111
2D	65 Perfect indicative active 66 Irregular verbs 67 Ablative of time	120
2E	68 Deponent, future indicative 69 Genitive of value	132
3A	70 <i>is</i> 71 Accusative of time 72 Comparative adjectives <i>longior</i> 73 Superlative adjectives <i>longissimus</i> 74 Irregular comparatives and superlatives	142
3B	75 Deponent, perfect indicative 76 Semi-deponents <i>audeō,</i> <i>fīō</i> 77 Deponent, perfect participle 78 Translation hint 79 Regular and irregular adverbs 80 <i>sē, suus</i>	152
3C	81 Future participles (active and deponent) 82 Perfect participle of active verbs 83 Unpredictable principal parts 84 Ablative of means 85 <i>nōnne?</i> 86 <i>īdem</i> and <i>nēmō</i> 87 Comparative and superlative adverbs	166
3D	88 Datives	180

Contents

4A	89 Imperfect indicative active 90 Deponent, imperfect indicative 91 <i>iste</i> 92 <i>quīdam</i> 93 <i>num?</i> 94 Present infinitive (revision) 95 Perfect infinitive active 96 Deponent, perfect infinitive 97 Future infinitive, active and deponent 98 Indirect statements (accusative and infinitive) 99 <i>negō</i>	189
4B	100A Ablative (summary of forms and usages to date) 100B Further uses of the ablative 101 Genitive of description 102 <i>alius, aliquis</i> 103 <i>ipse</i>	209
4C	104 Pluperfect indicative active 105 Deponent, pluperfect indicative 106 Relative pronoun, <i>quī, quae, quod</i> 107 Connecting relative 108 More uses of the ablative 109 Ablative absolute 110 The locative	224
4D	111 The passive 112 Present indicative 113 Future indicative 114 Imperfect indicative 115 Perfect indicative 116 Pluperfect indicative 117 Imperative 118 Present, perfect and future infinitive 119 <i>ferō</i> (present indicative, infinitive, imperative passive), transitive compounds of <i>eō</i> in passive	240
4E	120 Present participles (active and deponent) 121 Pluperfect subjunctive active 122 Pluperfect subjunctive deponent 123 Pluperfect subjunctive passive 124 <i>cum + subjunctive</i> 125 3rd declension n. <i>mare</i> 126 Relative pronoun in the genitive	257
4F	127 Present subjunctive active 128 Present subjunctive deponent 129 Present subjunctive passive 130 Imperfect subjunctive active 131 Imperfect subjunctive deponent 132 Imperfect subjunctive passive 133 Summary of present and imperfect subjunctive 134 Indirect commands (<i>ut/</i> <i>nē + subjunctive</i>) 135 <i>accidit/perficiō ut + subjunctive</i> 136 Present participle (as noun) 137 Relative pronoun (dative and ablative)	272
4G	138 The subjunctive: special usages 139 Conditionals with subjunctive verbs 140 Subjunctive in relative clauses 141 <i>cum, quamuis + subjunctive</i> 142 Subjunctive in reported speech 143 Infinitives without <i>esse</i> in reported speech	288
5A	144 Result clauses 145 Purpose clauses 146 Historic infinitive 147 Ablative of respect	299
	Roman poetry (rhetorical features, word order, metre, hexameter)	313

Contents

5B	148 Purpose clauses (<i>quō</i> + comparative + subjunctive) 149 <i>fore ut</i> + subjunctive 150 Ablative absolute (past participle passive) 151 Past participle passive	323
5C	152 Jussive subjunctives 153 Subjunctives expressing wishes and possibility 154 Impersonal verbs (a) active 155 Impersonal verbs (b) passive 156 Future perfect indicative active 157 Future perfect indicative deponent 158 Future perfect indicative passive 159 Cardinal numerals 11–90 and ordinals 1st–10th	334
5D	160 Gerundives 161 Uses of the gerundive 162 Verbs of fearing (<i>nē</i> + subjunctive)	353
5E	163 Passive perfect participles 164 Summary of participles 165 <i>dum, antequam/priusquam</i> 166 <i>utpote</i> <i>quī</i> + subjunctive	369
5F	167 Perfect subjunctive active 168 Perfect subjunctive deponent 169 Perfect subjunctive passive 170 Use of perfect subjunctive 171 Perfect subjunctive: independent usages 172 Indirect (reported) questions 173 Conditional clauses with pluperfect subjunctive 174 <i>quōminus,</i> <i>quīn</i> + subjunctive	380
5G	175 Gerunds 176 <i>quisque, quisquam</i> 177 <i>uterque</i> 178 4th declension n. <i>cornū</i> 179 Comparative clauses, correlatives, unreal comparisons	394
6A	180 Hendecasyllables 181 Scazon 182 Sapphic stanza	410
6B		421
6C		431
6D	183 The hexameter in Lucretius 184 Archilochean 185 Elegiac couplet	436
	Reference grammar	448
	A–G Verbs A Active B Passive C Deponent D Semi-deponent E Irregular verbs F Defective verbs, impersonal verbs G Principal parts of irregular verbs	
	H–I Nouns, pronominal nouns/adjectives	
	J–K Adjectives, adverbs and prepositions	
	L–V Constructions L The cases M The infinitive N Gerund O Gerundive P Participles Q Relative	

Contents

clauses R Indirect speech S The subjunctive T Temporal clauses U Causal clauses V Concessive clauses	
W Word-order	
Appendix: The Latin language	548
Total Latin–English learning vocabulary	557
Total English–Latin vocabulary for Exercises	578
Additional learning vocabulary	593
Index of grammar	602

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The poem by Giovanni Cotta on p. 76 and that by Elio Giulio Crotti on p. 287 are reproduced from A. Perosa and J. Sparrow, eds., *Renaissance Latin Verse* (Duckworth 1979). 'St Columba subdues the Loch Ness Monster' (p. 270) is reproduced from Sidney Morris, ed., *Fons Perennis* (Harrap 1962). The authors thank the publishers concerned.

PREFACE

ŭsus magister est optimus
(Cicero, *Rab. Post* 4.9.)

This volume accompanies *Reading Latin (Text)*, C.U.P. 1986 and is to be used in conjunction with it. For an introduction to the *Reading Latin* course – its aims, methodology and future development – and our acknowledgements of all the help we have received in its production, please refer to the Introduction of the *Text* volume.

Notes to *Grammar, Vocabulary and Exercises*

- 1 All dates are B.C., unless otherwise specified.
- 2 The running grammar for each section comes in four parts:
 - (a) Running vocabulary.
 - (b) Learning vocabulary. Words set to be learnt will not be glossed in running vocabularies again, unless they occur in the *Text* with a different meaning. On p. 557 there is a total vocabulary of all words set to be learnt with their full range of meanings given in this course, and a note of where they should have been learnt (teachers should use this information when devising their own tests).
 - (c) Grammar and exercises. It is extremely important to note that the exercises should be regarded as a pool out of which the teacher/students should choose what to do, and whether in or out of class. Some of the simpler exercises we have already split into necessary and optional sections, but this principle should be applied to all of them.
 - (d) *Dēliciae Latīnae* / further reading.
- 3 On p. 448 there is a full reference grammar, based on the running grammar explanations, but in many cases adding further information to that given in the running explanations.

- 4 On p. 548 there is an Appendix on the Latin language.
- 5 On p. 557 there is the total learning vocabulary, and on p. 578 an English–Latin vocabulary for those doing the English–Latin sentence and prose exercises.
- 6 At the end of the book, p. 593, there is a supplementary Latin–English vocabulary, containing important words which have been met, but not learnt in this course. Those who wish to continue with their Latin studies should attempt to learn them.
- 7 In cross-references, superior figures appended to a section number indicate *Notes*, e.g. 139⁴. If the reference is in the form '140.1', the last digit indicates a numbered sub-section.
- 8 Linking devices are used occasionally in passages of original Latin poetry to indicate words that should be taken together. — links words next to each other, ⌈ ⌋ links words separated from each other. Where such words are glossed, they will be found in separate entries in close proximity to one another. In later sections, a longer linking device ——— shows the limits of a larger phrase.
- 9 The case which follows an adjective or a verb is usually indicated by e.g. '(+ acc.)'. But occasionally you will meet e.g. '(x: acc.)'.
- 10 In places where standard beginners' texts print *ν* (i.e. consonantal *u*), we have in accordance with early MS practice printed *u*. But in some later Latin texts we have reverted to *ν*, which is commonly found in early printed books.
- 11 In learning vocabularies, where a new meaning is listed for a word already learned, the meaning(s) previously met are placed in brackets after the new meaning(s). E.g. at 2A: *bene* good! fine! (well, thoroughly, rightly).
- 12 Bold numbers in pageheads, e.g. 15, refer to sections of the Running Grammar. Where these numbers have an arrow, e.g. ← 15 16 →, the arrow shows the direction to go to find the section indicated.

Peter V. Jones
28 Akenside Terrace,
Newcastle upon Tyne,
NE2 1TN, UK

Keith C. Sidwell
Dept. of Ancient Classics,
University College, Cork,
IRELAND

ABBREVIATIONS

abl.(ative)	perf./pf. (= perfect)
abs.(olute)	pl.(ural)
acc.(usative)	plupf./plup. (= pluperfect)
act.(ive)	p.p. (= principal part)
adj.(ective)	prep.(osition)
adv.(erb)	pres.(ent)
cf. (= <i>cōnfer</i> (Latin), 'compare')	prim.(ary)
comp.(arative)	pron.(oun)
conj.(ugation, ugated)	q.(uestion)
dat.(ive)	rel.(ative)
decl.(ension)	s.(ingular)
dep.(onent)	sc.(= <i>scīlicet</i> (Latin), 'presumably')
dir.(ect)	sec.(ondary)
f.(eminine)	seq.(uence)
fut.(ure)	sp.(eech)
gen.(itive)	subj.(unctive)
imper.(ative)	sup.(erlative)
impf./imperf. (= imperfect)	trans.(itive)
indecl.(inable)	tr.(anslate)
ind.(icative)	vb (= verb)
indir.(ect)	voc.(ative)
inf.(initive)	1st, 2nd, 3rd refer to persons of the verb, i.e.
intrans.(itive)	1st s. = 'I'
irr.(egular)	2nd s. = 'you'
l(l.) line(s)	3rd s. = 'he', 'she', 'it'
lit.(erally)	1st pl. = 'we'
m.(asculine)	2nd pl. = 'you'
neg.(ative)	3rd pl. = 'they'
n.(euter)	1f., 2m. etc. refer to declension and
nom.(inative)	gender of nouns
part.(iciple)	
pass.(ive)	

PRONUNCIATION

'English' refers throughout to the standard or 'received' pronunciation of southern British English unless otherwise qualified.

<i>a</i>	as English 'cup', or 'aha' (cf. 'cat', or Italian or French 'a-')		'mat', 'camp'); a final 'm' expresses nasalisation of the preceding vowel (cf. French 'parfum')
<i>ā</i>	as English 'father' (roughly)	<i>n</i>	as English
<i>ae</i>	as in English 'high' (roughly)	<i>o</i>	as in English 'pot'
<i>au</i>	as in English 'how'	<i>ō</i>	as in French 'beau'
<i>b</i>	as English	<i>oe</i>	as in English 'boy'
<i>c</i>	as English 'c' in 'cat' (not 'cider', 'cello')	<i>p</i>	as English
<i>ch</i>	as English 'pack-horse'	<i>ph</i>	as in English
<i>d</i>	as English	<i>qu</i>	as in English 'quick'
<i>e</i>	as in English 'pet'	<i>r</i>	as Scottish 'rolled' 'r'
<i>ē</i>	as in 'fiancée' (French pronunciation)	<i>s</i>	as s in English 'sing' (never as in 'roses')
<i>ei</i>	as in English 'day'	<i>t</i>	as t in English 'tin' (cleanly pronounced, with no 'h' sound)
<i>eu</i>	'e-oo' (cf. Cockney 'belt')	<i>th</i>	as in English 'pot-house'
<i>f</i>	as English	<i>u</i>	as in English 'put'
<i>g</i>	as English 'got'; but 'gn' = 'ngn' as in 'hangnail'	<i>ū</i>	as in English 'fool'
<i>h</i>	as English	<i>u</i>	(pronounced as a consonant) as in English 'w' (sometimes written as 'v')
<i>i</i>	as in English 'dip'	<i>x</i>	as English
<i>ī</i>	as in English 'deep'	<i>y</i>	as French 'u'
<i>i</i>	consonant (sometimes written as a 'j'); as English 'you'	<i>z</i>	as English.
<i>k</i>	as English		
<i>l</i>	as English		
<i>m</i>	as English at the beginning and in the middle of words (cf.		

Pronunciation

Rules of word stress (accent)

- 1 A word of two syllables is stressed on the first syllable, e.g. *āmō*, *āmās*.
- 2 A word of more than two syllables is stressed on the penultimate (i.e. second syllable from the end) if that syllable is HEAVY, e.g. *astūtus*, *audiūntur* (see p. 318 for the terms 'heavy', 'light').
- 3 In all other cases, words of more than two syllables are stressed on the antepenultimate (i.e. third syllable from the end), e.g. *amābitis*, *pulcherrimus*.
- 4 Words of one syllable (monosyllables) always have the stress, e.g. *nōx*. But prepositions *before* a noun are not accented, e.g. *ad hōminem*.
- 5 Some words, e.g. *-que*, *-ne* and *-ue*, which are appended to the word which precedes them, cause the stress to fall on the last syllable of that word, e.g. *uirum* but *uirūmque*.

For a clear account of Classical Latin pronunciation see W. S. Allen, *Vox Latina* (2nd edition), Cambridge 1975.

NOTES ON ILLUSTRATIONS

Cover Villa by the sea. Wall-painting from Stabiae; 1st century A.D. Naples, Museo Nazionale 9409. Photo: DAI (R).

Frontispiece The *clupeus aureus* of Augustus. Marble copy of the gold original set up in the senate house (*cūria*): SENATVS POPVLVSQVE ROMANVS IMP(ERATORI) CAESARI DIVI F(ILIO) AVGVSTO CO(N)S(VLI) VIII DEDIT CLVPEVM VIRTVTIS CLEMENTIAE IVSTITIAE PIETATIS ERGA DEOS PATRIAMQVE.

Arles, Musée Lapidaire, Photo: Giraudon.

GLOSSARY OF ENGLISH-LATIN GRAMMAR

This explains the most important terminology of Latin grammar, with examples in English. To make it as practically useful as possible, we provide simple definitions with down-to-earth examples of each term. Students should bear in mind, however, that (1) there is only a limited 'fit' between English grammar and Latin grammar, and (2) brevity and simplicity lead to technical inaccuracy (grammatical terms are notoriously difficult to define). So this index should be regarded as a simplified guide to the subject, for use when you forget the definition of a term used in the grammar or to refresh your memory of grammatical terms before you begin the course.

Before beginning the course, you should be acquainted with the following terms: noun, adjective, pronoun, conjunction, preposition, verb, person, number, tense, gender, case, singular, plural.

ablative: name of a case of the noun, pronoun and adjective. Functions defined at Reference Grammar **L**.

accidence: grammar which deals with variable forms of words, e.g. declensions, conjugations.

accusative: name of a case of the noun, pronoun or adjective. Function defined at Reference Grammar **L**.

active: a verb is active when the subject is doing the action, e.g. 'she (subject) runs', 'Thomas Aquinas (subject) reads his book'.

adjective: words which define the quality of a noun or pronoun by describing it, e.g. 'steep hill', 'red house', 'clever me'. There are also adjectival clauses, for which see *relative clauses*. Possessive adjectives are 'my', 'your', 'our', 'his', 'her', 'their'. In Latin adjectives must agree with nouns or pronouns in case, number and gender.

adverb: word which defines the quality of a verb by showing how the action of the verb is carried out, e.g. 'she ran *quickly*', 'she works *enthusiastically*'.

Adverbial clauses do the same job, e.g. 'she ran *as quickly as she was able*'.
Adverbs in Latin are indeclinable.

agree(ment): an adjective agrees with a noun when it adopts the same case, number and gender as the noun. E.g. if a noun is nominative singular masculine, an adjective which is to describe it must also be nominative singular masculine.

apposition: nouns or noun-plus-adjective phrases which add further information about a noun already mentioned are said to be 'in apposition' to it, e.g. 'the house, a red-brick building, was placed on the side of a hill' – here 'a red-brick building' is 'in apposition' to 'the house'.

article: the definite article is the word 'the', the indefinite article the word 'a'.

aspect: whether the action of the verb is seen as a simple statement, as continuing or repeated, e.g. 'I run', 'I am running' (or, in English, emphasised 'I *do* run').

auxiliary (verb): in 'she will love', 'she does love', 'she has loved', the verbs 'will', 'does' and 'have' are auxiliary verbs, brought in to help the verb 'love' (*auxilium* = help), defining its tense and aspect. 'May', 'might', 'would', 'should' are auxiliaries indicating the mood of the verb to which they are attached. Latin only uses auxiliary verbs in the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect deponent and passive.

case: form of the noun, pronoun or adjective which defines the relationship between that word and the rest of the sentence, e.g. a Latin word adopting the form which shows that it is in the nominative case (e.g. *serua*) might show that the word is the subject of its clause; a Latin word adopting the form which shows that it is in the accusative case (e.g. *seruam*) might show that it is the object of the sentence. There are six cases in Latin: nominative, vocative, accusative, genitive, dative and ablative. Most have more than one function.

causal clause: clause expressing the reason why something has happened or will happen, e.g. clauses beginning 'because . . .', 'since . . .'

clause: part of a sentence containing a subject and finite verb. E.g. main clause 'she had finished', 'she hated it', 'she may succeed'; subordinate clause 'when she had finished', 'which she hated', 'so that she may succeed'. Cf. *phrase*. (See *adjective, adverb, noun*.)

comparative: form of adjective or adverb which implies a comparison, e.g. 'hotter', 'better', 'more slowly'.

complement: when a subject is said *to be* something, or *to be called*, *to be thought*, or *to seem* something, the 'something' is the complement of the verb, e.g. 'she is intelligent', 'it seems OK', 'she is thought to be a promising scholar'.

concessive clause: clause introduced by the word 'although', e.g. 'although it is raining, we shall go to the shops'.

conditional clause: clause introduced by the word 'if', e.g. 'If it rains today, I shall not go to the shops.' The technical term for the 'if' clause is '*protasis*', and for the main clause '*apodosis*' ('pay-off').

conjugation (conjugate): the parts of a verb are its conjugation, e.g. the conjugation of 'I love' in the present indicative active is 'I love, you love, he/she/it loves, we love, you love, they love'.

conjunction: words (indeclinable in Latin) which link clauses or phrases or sentences, e.g. 'When the light was out *and* she went up to have dinner, the burglar entered *and* took the piano. *But* he was not unseen . . .' Co-ordinating conjunctions link together units (i.e. clauses, sentences, phrases) of equal grammatical value e.g. 'He went *and* stood *and* laughed out loud; *but* she sulked *and* stalked off *and* had a drink.' Subordinating conjunctions, words like 'when', 'although', 'if', 'because', 'since', 'after', introduce units of different grammatical value compared with the main clause. See *main verb*.

consecutive clause: see *result clause*.

consonant: a letter which is not a vowel, e.g. 'b', 'c', 'd', 'f', 'g', 'h', etc.

dative: name of case of the noun, pronoun and adjective. For function, see Reference Grammar L.

declension (decline): the forms of a noun, pronoun or adjective. To decline a noun is to list all its forms (i.e. nominative, vocative, accusative, genitive, dative, ablative) in both singular and plural.

deponent: a verb whose dictionary form (1st person singular) ends in *-or* e.g. *minor, hortor, sequor* etc., and whose meaning is always *active*.

diphthong: see *vowel*.

direct speech: speech which is quoted in the exact words of the speaker, e.g. 'Give me that book' (cf. *indirect speech*).

final clause: a clause which expresses the idea '(in order) to', i.e. it expresses purpose. E.g. 'in order to swim the river, she took off her shoes', 'to cross the railway, use the bridge'.

finite (verb): a verb which has a defined number and person, e.g. 'she runs' (third person, singular). Contrast 'to run', 'running', which are examples of the infinite verb (cf. *infinitive*).

future perfect tense: a verb form of the type 'I shall have —ed', e.g. 'I shall have tried', 'you will have gone', 'he will have spoken'.

future tense: a verb form of the type 'I shall/will —', e.g. 'I shall go', 'you will be', 'they will run'.

gender: whether a noun, pronoun or adjective is masculine, feminine or neuter.

genitive: a case of the noun, pronoun, or adjective. Function defined at Reference Grammar L.

historic sequence (also called 'secondary sequence'): when the main verb of a sentence is in a past tense ('I have —ed' counts as a present tense for the purposes of sequence).

- imperative:** the form of a verb which gives a command, e.g. 'run!'
- imperfect tense:** verb form of the type 'I was —ing', 'I used to —', 'I kept on —ing'. It indicates continued or repeated action in the past.
- indeclinable:** a word which has only one form.
- indicative:** a verb form which states something as a fact, not as a wish or command, e.g. 'she runs'. Compare 'run!', 'may she run!', etc.
- indirect object:** term for the person to whom something is given or said, e.g. 'she said to him, "Give it to me"'; 'she told him to give her the book'.
- indirect speech:** words which are reported, not, as in direct speech, stated exactly as the speaker said or thought them, e.g. direct command 'let me go', indirect command 'she told them to let her go'; direct statement 'he has gone', indirect statement 'he said that he had gone'; direct question 'where am I?', indirect question 'she wondered where she was'. Any verb of speaking or thinking can introduce indirect speech.
- infinitive:** verb form prefixed in English by 'to', e.g. 'to run', 'to have walked' etc.
- inflexion:** the different endings that a word takes to express its meaning in a sentence, e.g. 'he' (subject), 'him' (object) indicate case and may be said to be 'inflected'. Cf. 'they say', 'we said', indicating tense.
- interrogative:** asking a question, e.g. 'who?' is an interrogative pronoun.
- intransitive (verb):** a verb is intransitive when it does not require a direct object to complete its meaning, e.g. 'I stand', 'I sit'. In English such words can, at a stretch, be used transitively as well, when they adopt a different meaning, e.g. 'I sit (=take) an exam'; 'I cannot stand (=endure) that man'.
- jussive (subjunctive):** related to giving orders. The form of the jussive subjunctive in English is 'let him/them/me/us'.
- locative case:** the case used to indicate where something is at. It is used in Latin with names of towns and one-town islands, e.g. 'at Rome', 'on Malta'.
- main verb:** the main verb(s) of a sentence is(are) the verb(s) left when all other verbs have been cut out (e.g. infinitives, participles, verbs in subordinating clauses), e.g. '(Although being something of a bibliophile) (who loved nothing more than a good read) (if she could get one), she sold her books (when the examinations were over) and lived in misery the rest of her life with her friends (who were totally illiterate)'. Main verbs – 'sold' and 'lived'.
- mood:** whether a verb is indicative, subjunctive or imperative.
- morphology:** study of the forms which words take.
- nominative:** a case of the noun, pronoun or adjective. For function, see 6.2.4.
- noun:** name of a person ('woman', 'child'), place ('London'), thing ('table', 'chair', 'mountain') or abstraction ('virtue', 'courage', 'thought', 'quality').

- Noun clauses** are clauses which do the job of a noun in the sentence, e.g. all indirect speech (e.g. 'he says words'; 'words' = noun, object: 'he says that she is divine'; 'that she is divine' = noun-clause, object), constructions following 'I fear that/lest, I doubt that, I prevent x from' and 'it happened that . . .'
- number:** whether something is singular or plural; 'table' and 'he' are singular, 'tables' and 'they' are plural.
- object:** a direct object is that onto which the action of the subject and verb directly move, e.g. 'she hits the ball', 'they love books', 'we can see Rome'. Cf. *indirect object*.
- participle:** a verb-form with the qualities and functions of an adjective, e.g. 'a running sore', 'a woman thinking . . .'. In Latin there are present participles active (meaning '—ing'), future participles active (meaning 'about to —; on the point of —ing'), and perfect participles active (meaning 'having —ed') and passive (meaning 'having been —ed').
- passive:** a verb is passive when the subject is not doing the action, but having the action done to it. The same *action* may be described in both the active and the passive 'voice', e.g. 'she hit the ball' (active), 'the ball was hit by her' (passive); 'we visited Rome' (active), 'Rome was visited by us' (passive).
- perfect tense:** verb-form of the type 'I —ed', 'I have —ed', 'I did —', expressing a simple action in the past, e.g. 'I walked', 'she has gone', 'we did see it'.
- person:** the persons are expressed by the pronouns 'I', 'we' (first persons, singular and plural); 'you' (second person singular and plural); 'he'/'she'/'it', 'they' (third persons singular and plural).
- phrase:** part of a sentence not having a finite verb, often introduced by a preposition, e.g. 'in the house' (prepositional phrase); 'going to work, he —' (participle phrase); 'I wish to do it' (infinitive phrase).
- pluperfect tense:** a verb-form of the type 'I had —ed', e.g. 'I had walked', 'they had gone'.
- plural:** more than one, e.g. 'tables' is plural, 'table' is singular.
- predicate:** what is said about the subject of a sentence, e.g. 'The man', (subject) 'wore blue socks' (predicate).
- predicative:** to predicate something of someone is to say something new about them. So when adjectives (including participles) and nouns say something new, i.e. not previously acknowledged, about a person or thing, they are being used 'predicatively'. In English, predicative adjectives and participles usually come *after* the nouns they go with, e.g. 'I saw the man working', 'the woman went away happy', 'Caesar became consul', 'she is a help to them' (the last two are predicative nouns). Contrast 'I saw the working man', 'the happy woman went away', in which the adjectives describe what is already understood or acknowledged, adding nothing new (such adjectives are technically called 'attributive').

prefix: a small addition to the front of a word, which alters the basic meaning, e.g. *fix*, *refix*, *prefix*; *export*, *import*; *embark*, *disembark*, *redisembark*.

preposition: word coming before a noun or pronoun which (in Latin) affects the noun/pronoun's case, e.g. '*into* the house', '*from* the pot', '*from* the hill', '*with* my friend', '*by* train'. Such expressions are called 'prepositional phrases'.

present tense: verb-form of the type 'I —', 'I am —ing', 'I do —', e.g. 'I love', 'I am loving', 'I do love'.

primary sequence: when the main verb of a sentence is present, future, or perfect in the form 'I have —ed'.

principal parts: (in Latin) the four parts of an active verb (present, infinitive, perfect and perfect participle) from which all other parts are formed; deponent verbs have only three such parts (present, infinitive, and perfect participle).

pronoun: this refers to a noun, without naming it, e.g. 'he' (as against 'the man', or 'Caesar'), 'they' (as against 'the women', or 'the Mitfords'), 'we', 'you', 'who', 'which'.

question (direct): a sentence ending in '?' (see also *indirect speech*).

reflexive: a pronoun or adjective is reflexive when it refers to (i.e. is the same person or thing as) the subject of the clause in which it stands, e.g. 'they warmed *themselves* by the fire', 'when they had checked *their* equipment, the leader gave them (*not* reflexive, since 'leader' is the subject) orders'.

regular: a 'regular' verb, noun, or adjective follows the pattern of the type to which it belongs, without deviation.

relative clause: a clause introduced by a relative pronoun such as 'who', 'which', 'what', 'whose', 'whom', 'that'; the relative pronoun refers back to a previous noun or pronoun (sometimes it refers forward to it) and the whole clause helps to describe or define the noun or pronoun referred to (hence it is an adjectival clause) e.g. 'the book *which* I am reading is rubbish', 'she presented the man *whom* she had brought', 'Who dreads, yet undismayed/Dares face his terror . . . Him let saint Thomas guide'.

reported speech: see *indirect speech*.

result clause: a clause which expresses the result or consequence of an action. It takes the form 'so . . . that / as to . . .' e.g. 'they were so forgetful *that* they left (as to leave) all their money behind'.

secondary sequence: see *historic sequence*.

semi-deponent: a verb which takes active forms in present, future and imperfect tenses, but deponent forms in perfect, future perfect and pluperfect.

sequence: see *primary* and *historic*.

singular: expresses one of something, e.g. 'table' is singular, 'tables' is plural; 'he' (singular), 'they' (plural).

statement: an utterance presented as a fact, e.g. 'I am carrying this pot'. Cf. question 'Am I carrying this pot?', command 'Carry this pot!'

subject: the subject of a sentence is, in the case of active verbs, the person/thing doing the action or being in the state (e.g. '*Gloria* hits out'; '*Gloria* is champion'); in the case of passive verbs, the subject is the person or thing on the receiving end of the action, e.g. '*the ball* was hit by *Gloria*'.

subjunctive: the mood of the verb used in certain main and subordinate clauses in Latin and English, often expressing wishes or possibilities or commands, e.g. 'may I win!', 'let him think!', 'she left in order that she *might* catch the bus'.

subordinating clause (sub-clause): any clause which is not the main one (e.g. see *noun*, *relative clause*, *result clause*, *final clause*, *adverb*, *temporal clause*, *causal clause*, *concessive clause*, *conditional clause*, *participle*, *infinitive*). Cf. *phrase*. Also see *main verb*.

suffix: a small addition to the end of a word which changes its meaning, e.g. 'act', 'actor', 'action', 'active'.

superlative: the form of an adjective or adverb which expresses its highest degree, e.g. 'the *fastest* horse', 'he jumped *very high*', 'she worked *extremely hard*'.

syllable: a vowel or a vowel + consonant combination, pronounced without interruption as a word or part of a word, e.g. 'the' (one syllable), 'Julius' (three syllables), 'antidisestablishmentarianism' (eleven syllables).

syntax: grammar which deals with the constructions of a sentence (e.g. indirect speech, result clauses, temporal clauses, participle phrases etc.).

temporal clause: a clause expressing the time *when* something happened in relation to the rest of the sentence, e.g. 'when . . .', 'after . . .', 'while . . .', 'before . . .', 'as soon as . . .'.

tense: the time at which the action of a verb is meant to take place. See under *present tense*, *future tense*, *imperfect tense*, *perfect tense*, *future perfect tense*, *pluperfect tense*.

transitive (verb): a verb which takes a direct object to complete its meaning, e.g. 'I put *the book* on the table', 'I make *a chart*' (it is very difficult to think of a context in which 'I put' and 'I make' could make a sentence *on their own*. This is not the case with *intransitive* verbs, e.g. 'I sit').

verb: a word expressing action or state, e.g. 'run', 'jump', 'stand', 'think', 'be', 'say'. (See under *active* and *passive*). Every complete sentence has at least one.

vocative: a case of the noun, pronoun or adjective, used when addressing someone (e.g. 'you too, Brutus?', '*et tū, Brūte?*').

voice: whether a verb is active or passive.

vowel: 'a', 'e', 'i', 'o', 'u'. Diphthongs are two vowels pronounced as a single syllable (e.g. 'ou', 'ae').

Introduction

Running vocabulary for Introduction

<i>aedēs</i> house	<i>familia</i> household	<i>quī</i> who? (pl.)
<i>auārus</i> greedy, miserly	<i>fīlia</i> daughter	<i>quis</i> who? (s.)
<i>cum fīliā</i> with (his) daughter	<i>fīlia Eucliōnis</i> the daughter of Euclio	<i>scaena</i> stage
<i>ego</i> I	<i>habitant</i> (they) live	<i>senex</i> old man
<i>es</i> you are (in question: are you?)	<i>habitat</i> (he/she/it) lives	<i>serua</i> (woman) slave
<i>est</i> is; he/she/it is; there is	<i>in aedibus</i> in the house	<i>serua Eucliōnis</i> Euclio's slave
<i>estis</i> you (pl.) are (in question: are you?)	<i>in familiā Eucliōnis</i> in Euclio's household	<i>seruae nōmen</i> the name of the slave
<i>et</i> and; too	<i>omnēs</i> all (pl.)	<i>Staphyla</i> Staphyla
<i>Eucliō</i> Euclio	<i>paterfamiliās</i> head of the family	<i>sum</i> (I) am
<i>Eucliōnis</i> of Euclio, Euclio's	<i>pater Phaedrae</i> father of Phaedra	<i>sumus</i> we are
<i>Eucliōnis familia</i> Euclio's household	<i>Phaedra</i> Phaedra	<i>sunt</i> are; they are; there are
	<i>Phaedrae</i> of Phaedra	<i>tū</i> you

Learning vocabulary for Introduction

Nouns

<i>Eucliō</i> Euclio	<i>fīli-a</i> daughter	<i>seru-a</i> slave-woman
<i>famili-a</i> household	<i>Phaedr-a</i> Phaedra	<i>Staphyl-a</i> Staphyla

Verbs

habit-ō I dwell

Others

et and; also, too, even

General notes

- 1 All vowels are pronounced *short* unless marked with a - (macron) over them. So observe different vowel length of 'i' in, e.g., *fīlia*, etc. It may be helpful, but is not essential, to mark macra in your exercises.
- 2 ' above a vowel indicates *stress*. Stress marks are included in all tables and throughout the Reference Grammar.
- 3 You should learn the learning vocabulary for each section *before* attempting the exercises. Please see *Text*, p. viii for suggested methodology.

Grammar for Introduction – *familia Eucliōnis*1 *sum* 'I am'

1st person singular (1st s.)	su-m	'I am'
2nd person singular (2nd s.)	es ¹	'you are'
3rd person singular (3rd s.)	es-t	'he/she/it is' 'there is'
1st person plural (1st pl.)	sú-mus	'we are'
2nd person plural (2nd pl.)	és-tis	'you (pl.) are'
3rd person plural (3rd pl.)	su-nt	'they/there are'

¹ Really *es-s*

Notes

- 1 *sum* is the most common verb in Latin.
- 2 Whereas English takes two words to express 'I am', Latin takes *one*. This is because the *endings* of the verb – *m*, –*s*, –*t*, –*mus*, –*tis*, –*nt* – indicate the person doing the action. Thus in full:

– <i>m</i> = I ¹
– <i>s</i> = you (s.)
– <i>t</i> = he, she, it, there
– <i>mus</i> = we
– <i>tis</i> = you (pl.)
– <i>nt</i> = they, there

¹ In other verbs –*ō* = 'I'

- 3 *sum* is irregular because, as you can see, the stem changes from *su-* to *es-*. If it is any consolation, all verbs meaning 'to be' are irregular, e.g. English 'I am', 'you are', 'he is'; French (deriving from Latin) 'je suis', 'tu es', 'il est' etc.

- 4 In the 3rd s. and 3rd pl., *est* and *sunt* mean only 'is' and 'are' if the subject is named, e.g. *senex est* = 'he is an old man'; *Eucliō senex est* = 'Euclio is an old man'; *seruae sunt* = 'they are slave-women'; *omnēs seruae sunt* = 'all are slave-women'.

- 5 Note the following points about word-order in sentences with *sum*:

- (a) Where subject and complement are stated
 - (i) the unemphatic order is: subject complement *sum*. E.g.

Eucliō senex est 'Euclio is an old man'.

- (ii) other orders place emphasis on the first word, e.g.

senex est Eucliō (complement *sum* subject)

senex Eucliō est (complement subject *sum*)

Both mean 'an old man, that's what Euclio is.'

NB The order 'subject *sum* complement' emphasizes the subject.

- (iii) The verb *sum* may come first and is then emphatic, e.g. *est enim Eucliō auārus* (*sum* subject complement) 'for Euclio is (in fact) a miser.'

- (b) Where the subject is not stated in Latin, the usual order is: complement *sum*. E.g.

Staphyla est 'it's Staphyla'.

- (c) *est/sunt* at the beginning of a sentence commonly indicate the *existence* of something, and are often best translated 'there is/there are'. E.g.

est locus . . . 'there is a place . . .'

In such sentences, more information will be expected e.g. 'there is a place, where roses grow', 'there are people, who like Latin.'

NB In (a) (i) and (ii) and (b) observe how complement + *sum* usually stick together to form the predicate, e.g.

Eucliō senex-est

senex-est Eucliō

sum is likely to go closely with the word preceding it, except where the order has been altered for special emphasis (as in e.g. *senex Eucliō est*).

Exercises

Morphology

- 1 Translate into Latin: you (s.) are; there are; he is; there is; you (pl.) are; they are; it is; I am; she is.
- 2 Change s. to pl. and vice versa: sum; sunt; estis; est; sumus; es.

Reading

Using Note 5 in the grammar section, give the correct translation of these sentences:

- (a) familia est.
- (b) serua Staphyla est.
- (c) est enim aula aurī plēna (aula, pot; aurī plēna, full of gold).
- (d) coquus est seruus (coquus, cook; seruus, slave).
- (e) Phaedra filia est.
- (f) in aedibus sunt Eucliō, Phaedra et serua (in aedibus, in the house).
- (g) auārus est senex (auārus, miser; senex, old man).
- (h) est prope flūmen paruus ager (prope flūmen, near the river; paruus, small; ager, field).

English–Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- (a) sunt in familiā Eucliō, Phaedra, Staphyla.
There is in the household a slave-girl.
- (b) Eucliō et Phaedra in aedibus sunt.
The slave-girl is in the house.
- (c) Eucliō sum.
You (s.) are a slave.
- (d) filia Eucliōnis Phaedra est.
Euclio's slave is Staphyla.
- (e) quis es?
I am Euclio.
- (f) quī estis?
We are Euclio and Phaedra.

SECTION ONE

Section 1A

Running vocabulary for 1A

Important notes

- 1 nom. is short for nominative and indicates the subject or complement of a sentence.
acc. is short for accusative and indicates the object (direct) of a sentence. See Glossary of English–Latin Grammar p. xxi.
- 2 Where a 3rd s. verb is glossed '(he/she/it)', select the appropriate pronoun where there is no stated subject.

ad focum to the hearth	aurum (nom., acc.) gold	coquus (nom.) cook
ad iānuam to the door	autem but	corōnam(que) (acc.) (and) a garland
ad Larem to the Lar	bene good!	corōnō I garland
ad nūptiās (filiae tuae) to the wedding (of your daughter)	bonam (acc.) good	cūncta (nom.) the whole
ad tē to you (s.)	cēlat (he/she/it) hides	cūnctī (nom.) everyone
adest (he/she/it) is present	cēlō I hide away, secrete	cūr why?
aedēs (nom. pl.) house	circumspectat (he/she/it) looks around	cursitant (they) run about
ante iānuam Dēmaenetī before Demaenetus' door	clam secretly	cursitō (I) run about
aperīs (you) (s.) open	clāmās (do) you (s.) shout	dās you (s.) give
aperit (he/she/it) opens	clāmat (he/she/it) shouts, is shouting	dat he gives, offers
appropinquat (he/she/it) approaches	clāmātis you (pl.) shout; are you shouting?	Dāue (voc.) O Davus
appropinquō I approach	clausa (nom.) closed, shut	Dāuus (nom.) Davus
at but	cognōuī I know	dē aulā about the pot
aula (nom.) pot	contrā in return	deinde then
aulam (acc.) pot	coquī (nom.) cooks	Dēmaenetus (nom.) Demaenetus
aurī plēna (nom.) } full of	coquōrum et tībīcinārum of cooks and pipe-girls	dō I give
aurī plēnum (acc.) } gold	coquōs (acc.) cooks	dominus (nom.) master
	coquum (acc.) cook	dominus seruī et seruae master of the slave-man and slave-woman

ecce look!
 ecquis (nom.) anyone?
 ego I
 enim for, because
 Eucliōnis auus Euclio's
 grandfather
 familiae Eucliōnis of
 Euclio's household
 festinat (he/she/it) hurries
 about
 filiae tuae of your
 daughter
 filiam (acc.) daughter
 Fortūnam (acc.) luck
 fouea hole, pit
 furcifer rascal
 fūrem (acc.) thief
 fūrēs (nom.) thieves
 fūrum plēnae full of
 thieves
 habeo I have
 habēs you have
 heu alas
 heus hey!
 hodiē today
 hominum of men
 homo (nom.) man
 honōrem (acc.) respect
 hūc here
 iānua (nom.) door
 iānuam (acc.) door
 igitur therefore
 ignōrat (he/she/it) is
 ignorant
 illūc there
 immō more precisely
 in aedīs Dēmaenetī into the
 house of Dēmaenetus
 in aedīs (meās) into (my)
 house
 in foueā in the pit, hole
 in mātīmōnium dat (he/
 she/it) gives in
 marriage
 in scaenam onto the stage
 intrans (they) enter
 intrat (he/she/it) enters
 intrātis you (pl.) enter

Lar (voc.) O Lar
 (household god)
 Larī to the Lar
 latet (it) lies hidden
 mē (acc.) me
 meus mine, my
 mōnstrat (he/she/it) shows,
 reveals
 nam for, because
 nēmīnem (acc.) no-one
 nēmo (nom.) no-one
 nōn no, not
 nūllam (acc.) } no
 nūllum (acc.) }
 nunc now
 nūptiae (nom.) (fīliae
 meae) marriage-rites
 (of my daughter)
 nūptiās (acc.) (fīliae meae)
 marriage-rites (of my
 daughter)
 ō O (addressing someone)
 obsecrō I beseech
 occupāta busy
 olet (it) gives off a smell
 olfactant (they) sniff out
 ōrō I beg
 ōtiōsī idle
 ōtiōsus idle
 Pamphila (nom., voc.)
 Pamphila
 parant (they) prepare
 parātis you (pl.) prepare
 parō I prepare
 perditissimus the most
 done for
 perditus lost, done for
 plēnae (nom. pl.) full
 portat (he/she/it) carries
 portō I carry
 prius first, beforehand
 prope focum near the
 hearth
 puellae (nom.) girls
 puerī (nom.) boys
 pulsat (he/she/it) beats on,
 pounds
 pulsō (I) beat on, pound

quī who?
 quid what?
 quis who?
 quod because
 quoque also, too
 sacrificium (acc.) sacrifice
 saluum safe
 saluus safe
 sed but
 semper always
 senex (nom.) old man
 serua (nom., voc.) slave
 (-woman)
 seruā save!, protect!
 seruae nōmen the name of
 the slave
 seruam (acc.) slave-
 woman
 seruī nōmen the name of
 the slave
 seruus (nom.) slave
 seruus Dēmaenetī senis
 slave of Dēmaenetus
 the old man
 sī if
 sōlus alone
 spectat (he/she/it) does
 look at, looks at
 stat (he/she/it) stands
 stātis you (pl.) stand, are
 you standing?
 sub terrā beneath the earth
 sub ueste under my
 clothes
 supplicō I pray (to)
 tē (acc.) you (s.)
 tibi to you (s.)
 tībīcina (nom.) pipe-girl
 tībīcinae (nom.) pipe-girls
 tībīcinam (acc.) pipe-girl
 tībīcinās (acc.) pipe-girls
 timeō I fear, am afraid
 tū (nom.) you (s.)
 tūtēla meae familiae
 protector (lit.
 protection) of my
 household
 ualdē very much

uenimus we come
 uidet (he/she/it) sees
 unguentum (acc.) ointment

uocās (do) you (s.) call
 uocat (he/she/it) calls
 uocō I call, summon

uōs (nom., voc., acc.) you
 (pl.)

Learning vocabulary for 1A

Nouns

aul-a ae 1f. pot
 aur-um ī 2n. gold
 coqu-us ī 2m. cook
 corōn-a ae 1f. garland

ego I
 Lar Lar- Lar (household
 god)
 mē me

scaen-a ae 1f. stage
 seru-us ī 2m. male slave
 tē you (s.)
 tū you (s.)

Adjectives

plēn-us a um full
 (of) + gen.

Verbs

cēl-ō I hide
 clām-ō I shout
 intr-ō I enter

port-ō I carry
 uoc-ō I call
 habeo I have

time-ō I fear, am afraid
 (of)

Others

ad (+ acc.) to(wards); at
 autem but (2nd word in
 Latin, to be translated
 first word in English)
 cūr why?
 deinde next
 enim for, because (2nd
 word in Latin, to be

translated 1st word in
 English)
 igitur therefore (usually
 2nd word in Latin);
 in (+ acc.) into, onto
 (+ abl.) in, on
 nam for, because (1st
 word in Latin)

nōn no(t)
 nunc now
 quoque also
 sed but
 semper always
 sī if
 sub (+ abl.) under,
 beneath

Grammar and exercises for 1A

(Please see *Text*, p. vi for a suggested methodology. Most importantly, make a SELECTION from the exercises.)

2 Present indicative active (1st conjugation): amō 'I love', 'I am loving', 'I do love'

1st s.	ám-ō	'I love' 'I am loving' 'I do love'
2nd s.	ámā-s	'you love' etc.
3rd s.	áma-t	'he/she/it loves'

1st pl.	amā-mus	'we love'
2nd pl.	amā-tis	'you (pl.) love'
3rd pl.	āma-nt	'they love'

3 Present indicative active (2nd conjugation): *habeō* 'I have', 'I am having', 'I do have'

1st s.	hābe-ō	'I have' 'I am having' 'I do have'
2nd s.	hābē-s	'you have' etc.
3rd s.	hābe-t	'he/she/it has'
1st pl.	habē-mus	'we have'
2nd pl.	habē-tis	'you (pl.) have'
3rd pl.	hābe-nt	'they have'

Notes

- 1 All verbs called 1st conjugation conjugate in the present like *am-ō*, e.g. *habit-ō* 'I live', *intr-ō* 'I enter', *uoc-ō* 'I call', *clām-ō* 'I shout', *par-ō* 'I prepare', *cēl-ō* 'I hide'.

All verbs called 2nd conjugation, which all end in *-eō*, conjugate like *habe-ō*, e.g. *time-ō* 'I fear'.

- 2 Observe that these regular verbs are built up out of a *stem* + *endings*. The stem gives the *meaning* of the verb (*ama-* 'love', *habe-* 'have'), the endings give the *person*, i.e.:

-ō	'I' (cf. <i>su-m</i>)
-s	'you'
-t	'he/she/it; there'
-mus	'we'
-tis	'you (pl.)'
-nt	'they/there'

- 3 Observe that the 'key' vowel of 1st conjugation verbs is *A* (*amA-*), of 2nd conjugation is *E* (*habE-*). The only exception is the 1st s. *amō* 'I love', though this was originally *amaō*.

4 Terminology

Conjugation means 'the setting out of a verb in all its persons' as illustrated in 2 and 3. Thus to conjugate a verb means to set it out as at 2 and 3.

Indicative means that the action is being presented as a fact (though it need not be actually true). E.g.:

'I speak to you' (fact, true)

'The pig flies past the window' (presented as a fact, but not true!)

Active means the subject is performing the action, e.g. '*Euclio* runs'; '*Staphyla* sees the daughter'.

Tense means the time at which the action is taking place. Thus 'present' means 'present tense', i.e. the action is happening in the present, e.g. 'I am running'. Cf. future tense 'I will run', etc.

5 Meaning

The present indicative active of e.g. *amō* has three meanings, i.e. 'I love, I am loving, I do love'. Each of these three 'aspects' (as they are called) of the present tense represents the actions in a slightly different way. 'I love' is the plainest statement of fact, 'I am loving' gives a more vivid, 'close-up', continuous picture (you can see it actually going on), 'I do love' is emphatic. You must select *by context* which meaning suits best. Remember, however, that in general the emphatic meaning is indicated in Latin by the verb being put first in the sentence.

Exercises

Morphology

- 1 *Conjugate*: *cēlō*; *timeō*; *portō*; *habeō*; (optional: *habitō*; *clāmō*; *intrō*; *uocō*; *sum*).
- 2 *Translate, then change pl. to s. and vice versa*: *clāmās*; *habent*; *intrat*; *uocō*; *sumus*; *portāmus*; *timēs*; *habētis*; *est*; *timet*; *uocant*; *cēlātis*; *timēmus*; *habeō*; *sunt*.
- 3 *Translate into Latin*: you (pl.) have; I do hide; we are carrying; they call; you (s.) are afraid of; she is dwelling; there are; it has; there enters; she is.

6 The cases in Latin: terminology and meaning

The terms 'nominative', 'accusative', 'genitive', 'dative' and 'ablative' are the technical terms for five of the six so-called 'cases' of Latin nouns and adjectives. (The sixth case, the vocative, is used to address people, e.g. 'welcome, friend', but since its form is the same as the nominative in

almost all instances, we have left it out of the charts.) The cases will be referred to as nom., acc., gen., dat., and abl. When laid out in this form the cases are called a 'declension'. 'Declining' a noun means to go through all its cases. *The different forms of the cases are of absolutely vital importance in Latin and must be learned by heart till you know them to perfection.* The reason is as follows. In English, we determine the meaning of a sentence by the order in which the words come. The sentence 'man bites dog' means something quite different from 'dog bites man', for no other reason than that the words come in a different order. A Roman would have been bewildered by this, because in Latin word-order does not determine the grammatical functions of the words in the sentence (though it plays its part in emphasis): what is vital is the *form* the words take. In 'daughter calls the slave', 'daughter' is the subject of the sentence, and 'slave' the object. A Roman used the *nom.* form to indicate a subject, and the *acc.* form to indicate an object. Thus when he wrote or said the word for daughter, *fīlia*, he indicated not only what the word meant, but also its function in the sentence – in this case, subject; likewise, when he said 'slave', *seruum*, the form he used would tell him that slave was the object of the sentence. Thus, hearing *fīlia seruum*, a Roman would conclude at once that a daughter was doing something to a slave. Had the Roman heard *fīliam seruus*, he would have concluded that a slave, *seruus*, which is here in the *nom.* case, was doing something to a daughter, *fīliam*, here in the *acc.* case. WORD-ORDER IN LATIN IS OF SECONDARY IMPORTANCE since its function relates not to grammar or syntax so much as to emphasis, contrast and style. To English-speakers word-order is, of course, the critical indicator of meaning. In Latin, grammar or syntax is indicated by WORD FORM. WORD FORM IS VITAL.

We can note here that English has a residual case system left. E.g., 'I like beer', not 'me like beer'; 'he loves me', not 'him loves I'; and cf. he, him / she, her, hers / they, them, theirs.

- 1 *Noun*: the name of something (real or abstract), e.g. 'house', 'door', 'idea', 'intelligence'.
- 2 *Nominative case*: the most important functions are (i) as subject of a sentence, and (ii) as complement after the verb 'to be'. Nominative means 'naming' (*nōminō* 'I name'). In Latin, the subject of a sentence is 'in the verb', e.g.

habeō means 'I have'

habet means 'he/she/it has'

If one wants to 'name' the subject, it goes into the *nom.* case, e.g.

habeō serua 'I (the slave) have'

habet serua 'she (the slave) has', 'the slave has'

habet uir 'he (the man) has', 'the man has'

- 3 *Accusative case*: the most important function is as object of a verb. The *acc.* case denotes the person or thing on the receiving end of the action, e.g. 'the man bites the dog'. One may also look at it as limiting or defining the extent of the action, e.g. 'the man bites' (what does he bite? A bullet? A jam sandwich? No –) 'the dog'. So the accusative case can also limit or define the extent of a description, e.g. *nūdus pedēs* 'naked in respect of the feet', 'with naked feet'.
- 4 NB The verb 'to be' is NEVER followed by a direct object in the *acc.*, but frequently by a 'complement', in the *NOM.* E.g. 'Phaedra is the daughter' *Phaedra fīlia est*. This is perfectly reasonable, since 'daughter' obviously describes Phaedra. They are both the same person, and will be in the same case.
- 5 *Genitive case*: this case expresses various senses of the English 'of'. Its root is the same as *genitor*, 'author', 'originator'; 'father'. Thus it denotes the idea 'belonging to' (possession), e.g. 'slave of *Euclio*', and origin, e.g. 'son of *Euclio*'. Cf. English 'dog's dinner' (= 'dinner of dog') and 'dogs' dinner' (= 'dinner of the dogs'), where *dog's* and *dogs* are genitive forms.

Dative and ablative cases: these will only be used in very limited ways in the *Text* at the moment, but you should attempt to learn their forms now. Dative and ablative forms will appear in exercise work.

- 6 *Word-order*: the usual word-order in English for a simple sentence consisting of subject, verb and object is: (i) subject (ii) verb (iii) object, e.g. 'The man (subj.) bites (verb) the dog (obj.).'

In Latin the usual order is (i) subject (ii) object (iii) verb. See 1⁵ above and Reference Grammar **W** for a full discussion.

7 Singular and plural; masculine, feminine and neuter

As well as having 'case', nouns can be either singular (s.), when there will be one of the persons or things named, or plural (pl.), when there will be more than one. This feature is called the 'number' of a noun. Nouns also possess 'gender', i.e. are masculine (m.), feminine (f.) or neuter (n.).

8 1st declension nouns: *seru-a ae* 1 feminine (f.) 'slave-woman'

The pattern which nouns follow is called 'declension'. Nouns 'decline'.

	case	s.	
nominative	(nom.)	séru-a	'slave-woman'
accusative	(acc.)	séru-am	'slave-woman'
genitive	(gen.)	séru-ae (-āī)	'of the slave-woman'
dative	(dat.)	séru-ac	
ablative	(abl.)	séru-ā	

	case	pl.	
nominative	(nom.)	séru-ae	'slave-women'
accusative	(acc.)	séru-ās	'slave-women'
genitive	(gen.)	seru-ārum	'of the slave-women'
dative	(dat.)	séru-īs	
ablative	(abl.)	séru-īs	

Notes

- 1 Since it is only in special circumstances that Latin uses a word corresponding to 'the' and 'a', *serua* can mean 'slave-woman', 'the slave-woman', or 'a slave-woman'. The same applies to all nouns in Latin.
- 2 All 1st decl. nouns end in *-a* in the nom. s. This is called the 'ending', the rest of the noun is called the 'stem'. So the stem of *serua* is *seru-*, the ending *-a*. The same applies to all 1st decl. nouns. Cf. *fili-a*, *famili-a*, *Phaedr-a*, *Staphyl-a*, *aul-a*, *corōn-a*, *scaen-a*.
- 3 Most 1st decl. nouns are f. in gender (common exceptions are e.g. *agricol-a* 'farmer', *naut-a* 'sailor', both m.).
- 4 Note ambiguities:
 - (a) *seru-ae* can be gen. s., dat. s., or nom. pl.
 - (b) *seru-a* is nom. s., but *seru-ā* = abl. s. (not ambiguous if you note vowel length carefully: *-a* nom. / *-ā* abl.)
 - (c) *seru-īs* can be dat. or abl. pl.
- 5 Nouns of this declension you should have learned are: *famili-a* 'household', *fili-a* 'daughter', *Phaedr-a* 'Phaedra', *seru-a* 'slave-woman', *Staphyl-a* 'Staphyla', *aul-a* 'pot', *corōn-a* 'garland', *scaen-a* 'stage', 'scene'.

9 2nd decl. nouns: *seru-us ī* 2 masculine (m.) 'male slave'

	<i>s.</i>		<i>pl.</i>	
<i>nom.</i>	séru-us	'male slave'	séru-ī	'male slaves'
<i>acc.</i>	séru-um	'male slave'	séru-ōs	'male slaves'

gen.	séru-ī	'of the male slave'	seru-ōrum	'of the male slaves'
dat.	séru-ō		séru-īs	
abl.	séru-ō		séru-īs	

Notes

- 1 The vocative case, used when addressing people (e.g. 'hello, Brutus'), ends in *-e* in the 2nd decl. m., e.g. 'you too, Brutus?' *et tū, Brūte?* (see 17A for full discussion).
- 2 Observe ambiguities:
 - (a) *seru-ō* can be dat. or abl. s.
 - (b) *seru-īs* can be dat. or abl. pl.
 - (c) *seru-ī* can be gen. s. or nom. pl.
 - (d) Watch *-um* endings of acc. s. and gen. pl.
- 3 The other noun of this decl. you should have learned is *coqu-us* 'cook'.

Exercises

- 1 Decline: *coquus*; *aula*; (optional: *seruus*, *familia*, *corōna*, *scaena*).
- 2 Name the case or cases of each of these words: *seruārum*; *coquō*; *corōnam*; *seruōs*; *scaenae*; *filiā*; *coquus*; *seruī*; *coquum*; *filiae*; *scaenās*; *seruō*; *coquōrum*; *aula*; *seruīs*.
- 3 Translate each sentence, then change noun(s) and verb to pl. or s. as appropriate. E.g. *coquus seruam uocat*: the cook calls the slave-girl. *coquī seruās uocant*.
 - (a) *sum seruus*.
 - (b) *aulam portō*.
 - (c) *corōnās habent*.
 - (d) *serua timet seruū*.
 - (e) *seruās uocātis*.
 - (f) *seruae aulās portant*.
 - (g) *cēlāmus aulās*.
 - (h) *seruās cēlant coquī*.
 - (i) *familia corōnam habet*.
 - (j) *uocat seruus seruam*.

10 Prepositions

Prepositions (*praepositus* 'placed in front') are the little words *placed in front* of nouns e.g. *in* 'into', *ad* 'towards' etc. Learn the following important prepositions.

in, ad + acc.

in 'into', 'onto', e.g. *in scaenam intrat* 'he enters onto (i.e. right onto) the stage'

ad 'to(wards)' e.g. *ad scaenam aulam portat* 'he carries the pot towards (not necessarily onto) the stage'

Observe that the acc. denotes direction *towards which* something moves. Compare the next preposition.

in + abl.

in 'in', 'on', e.g. *in scaenā est* 'he is on the stage'

Observe that *in* + abl. denotes position *at*.

Exercise

Write the Latin for: onto the stage; in the pot; onto the garlands; into the pots; in the household; towards the slave-woman; in the slaves; towards the daughter.

Translation hint

It is extremely important that Latin words be taken in the order in which they appear in a sentence, but that judgement about the final meaning of the sentence be suspended until all the necessary clues have been provided. Take, for example, the following sentences:

- (a) *aulam igitur clam sub terrā cēlō*

One should approach it as follows:

aulam 'pot': -am = accusative case, so something is happening to it

igitur 'therefore' (fixed)

clam 'secretly' (fixed)

sub 'underneath'

terrā 'earth', so probably 'underneath the earth'

cēlō something to do with 'hide', person ending -ō, so 'I hide'.

That gives us subject and verb; *aulam* must be object, so 'I hide the pot under the earth'. Add 'therefore' and 'secretly' in aptest place.

- (b) *in aedīs intrant seruus et serua et nūptiās parant*

in 'in' or 'into', depending on case of following noun
aedīs = plural, so 'house'. Accusative, so 'into the house'

intrant = something to do with entering. -ant = 'they', so 'they enter'

seruus = something to do with a slave. But -us shows subject, so the slave must be doing something. Can he be 'entering'? But *intrant* is plural, 'they enter'. Oh dear!

et 'and'. Ah. Perhaps another subject about to appear

serua 'slave-woman', -a ending shows subject. Excellent: 'The slave and the slave-woman are entering into the house'

et 'and'. More people entering? Or another clause?

nūptiās 'marriage-rites'. -ās shows object. So something being done to the marriage-rites

parant: something about preparing. -ant shows 'they'. So 'they prepare the marriage-rites'. Presumably 'they' are the two slaves of the earlier clause. So 'The slave and slave-woman enter the house and prepare the marriage-rites.'

This is the best way to approach a Latin sentence. A number of the exercises will encourage you to do this kind of analysis.

Reading exercise

- 1 Read each of these sentences, then without translating, say what the subject of the second verb is (in Latin). Finally, translate each sentence into English.

- seruus in scaenam intrat. corōnās portat.*
- coquī in aedibus sunt. seruās uocant.*
- est in familiā Eucliōnis serua. Staphyla est.*
- in scaenam intrat Dēmaenetus. aulam aurī plēnam habet.*
- coqus et serua clāmant. seruum enim timent.*

- 2 Take each word as it comes and define its 'job' in the sentence (e.g. *Dēmaenetus coquum* . . . — *Demaenetus* is subject, so *Demaenetus* is doing

something. coquum is object, so Demaenetus is doing something to a cook). Then add an appropriate verb in the right form (e.g. Demaenetus calls a cook – Dēmaenetus coquum uocat).

- (a) aulam seruus . . .
- (b) serua corōnam, aulam seruus . . .¹
- (c) seruās seruī . . .
- (d) familia coquōs . . .
- (e) Lar seruōs . . .
- (f) aurum ego . . .
- (g) Eucliō familiam . . .
- (h) aulās aurī plēnās et corōnās seruāe . . .

¹ The verb must be s.

3 Define subject, verb, object and prepositional phrases in the following passages and answer the questions:

- (a) And now the sun had stretched out all the hills,
And now was dropped¹ into the western bay;
At last he rose, and twitched his mantle blue:
Tomorrow to fresh woods and pastures new.
(Milton, Lycidas 190–3)

¹ What 'was dropped'?

- (b) Still green¹ with bays each ancient Altar stands,
Above the reach of sacrilegious hands;
Secure¹ from Flames, from Envy's fiercer rage,
Destructive War, and all-involving Age.
See from each clime the learn'd their incense bring!
(Pope, Essay on Criticism 181–5)

¹ What is 'green' and 'secure'?

4 With the help of the running vocabulary for 1A, work through the Latin passage 'Dēmaenetus . . .', following these steps:

- (a) As you meet each word, ask
 - (i) its meaning
 - (ii) its job in the sentence (i.e. subject or object? part of a phrase?).
 e.g.
 Dēmaenetus coquōs et tībīcinās uidet.
 Dēmaenetus 'Demaenetus', subject; coquōs 'cooks', object; et 'and' almost certainly joining something to coquōs; tībīcinās 'pipe-

girls', object – part of a phrase coquōs et tībīcinās: uidet '(he) sees', verb: 'Demaenetus the cooks and pipe-girls (he) sees'.

- (b) Next produce a version in good English, e.g. 'Demaenetus sees the cooks and pipe-girls'.
- (c) When you have worked through the whole passage, go back to the Latin and read the piece aloud, taking care to phrase correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read.

Dēmaenetus coquōs et tībīcinās uidet. ad nūptiās filiae ueniunt. in aedīs Dēmaenetī intrans et nūptiās parant. nunc aedēs Dēmaenetī coquōrum et tībīcinārum plēnae sunt. Dēmaenetus autem timet. aulam enim aurī plēnam habet. nam sī aula Dēmaenetī in aedibus est aurī plena, fūrēs ualdē timet Dēmaenetus. aulam Dēmaenetus cēlat. nunc aurum saluum est. nunc saluus Dēmaenetus. nunc salua aula. Lar enim aulam habet plēnam aurī. nunc prope Larem Dēmaenetī aula sub terrā latet. nunc igitur ad Larem appropinquat Dēmaenetus et supplicat. 'ō Lar, ego Dēmaenetus tē uocō. ō tūtēla meae familiae, aulam ad tē aurī plēnam portō. filiae nūptiae sunt hodiē. ego autem fūrēs timeō. nam aedēs meae fūrū plēnae sunt. tē ōrō et obsecrō, aulam Dēmaenetī aurī plēnam seruā.' 5 10

English–Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- (a) coquus aulam Dēmaenetī portat.
The slave has the cooks' garlands.
- (b) tū clāmās, ego autem aulās portō.
The slave girl is afraid. Therefore I am calling the cook.
- (c) cūr scaena plēna est seruōrum?
Why is the household full of cooks?
- (d) ego Lar tē uocō. cūr mē timēs?
(It is) I, Phaedra (who)¹ enter. Why are you (pl.) hiding the pot?
- (e) sī aurum habet, Dēmaenetus timet.
If they hide the pot, the slaves are afraid.
- (f) corōnās et aulās portant seruī.
(It is)¹ a cook and a slave-girl Demaenetus is summoning.

¹ Put stressed words first in the sentence.

Section 1B

Running vocabulary for 1B

a ha!	dēcipit (he/she/it) deceives	hodiē today
ab illō from that (former self of his) [The whole phrase is a quotation from Virgil <i>Aeneid</i> 2.274, used by Aeneas of the ghost of Hector.]	Dēmaenete O Demaenetus	hominum (gen.) of men
ab inferis from the dead	Dēmaenet-us ī 2m.	homo (nom.) man, fellow
adhūc so far	Demaenetus	honōrem (acc.) respect
aedēs (nom.) house	de-us ī 2m. god	ignōrō 1 I do not know
aedīs (acc.) house	dī (nom. pl.) gods; (voc. pl.) O gods!	imāginem (acc.) vision
aggerō I pile, heap up	dīues (nom.) rich (man)	imāgō (nom.) vision
amō 1 I love	dīuitum (gen.) of rich (men)	in aedīs into the house
an? or?	dō 1 I give	in aedibus in the house
anxius worried	dormiō I am asleep	in somniō in a dream
appareō 2 I appear	dormit (he/she/it) sleeps	intrō (l. 151) inside
appropinquō 1 I go up to, approach	dōtem (acc.) dowry	iterum again
ār-a ae 1f. altar	dūcit (he) leads	iuxtā (+ acc.) next to
auārus greedy	dum while	Larem (acc.) Lar
au-us ī 2m. grandfather	ē out of, from	Laris (gen.) of the Lar
bene good! well	ecce look!	lateō 2 I lie hidden
bona (nom.)	ecquis (does) anyone?	magnī (voc. pl.) great
bonam (acc.)	eheu what a pity! oh dear!	magnus great (amount of)
bonum (acc.)	Eucliōnem (acc.) Euclio	malus evil, wicked
bonus (nom.)	Eucliōnī (dat.) to Euclio	maneō 2 I remain
} good	Eucliōnis (gen.) of Euclio	meī (of) my
	euge } hoorah!	meum my
	eugepae } yippee!	mihi (to) me
cēlā hide!	explicō 1 I explain, tell	mīrum amazing
celeriter quickly	fābul-a ae 1f. story	miserum miserable,
circumspectō 1 I look around	facis you (s.) make, do	unhappy
clam secretly	facit (he/she/it) makes, does	mōnstrō 1 show, reveal
collocō 1 I place	falsa } false	moueō 2 I move
cōnsilium plan	falsum } false	multam (acc.)
crēdō I believe	familiāris of the household	multās (acc.)
cūr-a ae 1f. care, devotion, worry, concern	festinō 1 I hurry about	multī (nom.)
cūrō 1 I care for, look after, am concerned about	foue-a ae 1f. pit, hole	} many, much
dē (+ abl.) concerning	fūrēs (nom., acc.) thieves	multōrum (gen.)
	fūrum (gen.) of thieves	multum (acc.)
	hem what's this?	murmurō 1 I mutter
	hercle by Hercules!	mutātus changed
	heu oh dear!	nēmīnem (acc.) no-one
		nempe clearly, no doubt
		nūllam
		nūllās
		nūllum

Section 1B

numquam never	seruā keep safe!	tamen however, but
pauper (nom.) poor (man)	seruō 1 I keep	tandem at length
pecūni-a ae 1f. money	simul at the same time	teneō 2 I hold, possess,
perditissimus most done for	somnia (acc.) dreams	keep
possideō 2 I possess, have, hold	somnium dream	terr-a ae 1f. earth
praetereā besides	spectō 1 I look at, see	thēsaur-us ī 2m. treasure
quantum how (much)	spectātōrēs spectators, audience	tum then
quārē why?	stupeō 2 I am amazed, astonished	ualdē greatly
quia because	sub pedibus under (your) feet	uērum true
quid what?	sub (+ abl.) under	uexō 1 I annoy, worry
quod because	sub ueste under (my) cloak	uideō 2 I see
saluē welcome!	subitō suddenly	uidēte see! look!
saluum safe	super (+ acc.) above	uigilō 1 I am awake
scīlicet evidently	supplicō 1 I make prayers (to)	uīsō I visit
sēcum with himself		unguentum ointment
senex old man		ut how!

Learning vocabulary for 1B

Nouns

cūr-a ae 1f. care, worry, concern	unguent-um ī 2n. ointment	fūr fūr-is 3m. thief
de-us ī 2m. god	aedis aed-is 3f. temple; pl. aed-ēs ium house	honor honōr-is 3m. respect
thēsaur-us ī 2m. treasure		senex sen-is 3m. old man

Adjectives

mult-us a um much, many	nūll-us a um no, none
-------------------------	-----------------------

Verbs

am-ō 1 I love	explic-ō 1 I tell, explain	posside-ō 2 I have, hold, possess
cūr-ō 1 I look after, care for	supplic-ō 1 I make prayers (to)	uide-ō 2 I see
d-ō 1 I give		

Others

clam secretly	quod because	tandem at length
quārē why?	tamen however, but	

Grammar and exercises for 1B

11 3rd declension nouns (consonant stem): *fūr fūr-is* 3m. 'thief'

	s.		pl.	
nom.	fūr	'thief'	fūr-ēs	'thieves'
acc.	fūr-em	'thief'	fūr-ēs	'thieves'
gen.	fūr-is	'of the thief'	fūr-um	'of thieves'
dat.	fūr-ī		fūr-ibus	
abl.	fūr-e		fūr-ibus	

NB. This is the standard pattern of endings for 3rd decl. nouns whose stems end in a consonant. There are, however, slight changes of pattern in nouns whose stem ends in the vowel *-i-* (the so-called '*i*-stem' nouns) as follows.

12 3rd declension nouns (*i*-stem) *aedis aed-is* 3f. 'room', 'temple'; in plural 'temples', 'house'

	s.	
nom.	aed-is	'room', 'temple'
acc.	aed-em	'room', 'temple'
gen.	aed-is	'of the room', 'of the temple'
dat.	aed-ī	
abl.	aed-e (aed-ī)	

	pl.	
nom.	aed-ēs	'temples' / 'house'
acc.	aed-īs (-ēs)	'temples' / 'house'
gen.	aed-ium	'of temples' / 'of the house'
dat.	aed-ibus	
abl.	aed-ibus	

Notes

- 1 *aed-is* in the s. means 'room', 'temple'; in the pl. usually 'house'.
- 2 Observe acc. pl. in *-īs*, gen. pl. in *-ium*, and alternative abl. s. in *-ī*. This dominance of *-i-* is the mark of *i*-stem nouns of the third declension. In fact originally *all* the cases would have had the *-i-*, since it is part of the stem. The s. of *turris* 3f. 'tower', which keeps the old forms even in classical Latin, will demonstrate this: *turri-s*, *turri-m*, *turri-s*, *turri*, *turri*.

Note that we indicate in the grammar sections which nouns and adjectives are *i*-stem, but for practical reasons we present the endings as for consonant stems, i.e. *aed-is*, not (the technically correct) *aedi-s*.

13 Stems and endings of 3rd decl. nouns

- 1 3rd decl. nouns have a great variety of endings in the nom. s. What unites them all is that their gen. s. has the same ending, e.g. *Eucliō Eucliōn-is*, *senex sen-is*. You must therefore learn both the decl. and the gen. s. as well as the gender of these 3rd decl. nouns, i.e. not *aedis* 'temple', pl. 'house', but *aedis aed-is* 3f. 'temple', pl. 'house'.
- 2 The gen. s. is doubly important, because it gives you the STEM OF THE NOUN to which the endings are added to make the declension. Thus when you have learned *senex sen-is* 3m., you know that the stem is *sen-*. IT IS THE GEN. S. WHICH GIVES YOU THIS.
- 3 You also need to be able to work back from the stem to the nom. s. in order to find the word in a dictionary. E.g. if you see *pācem* in the text, you MUST be able to deduce that the nom. s. is *pāx*, otherwise you will not be able to look the word up. Observe the following common patterns of CONSONANT STEMS:

- (a) stems ending in *-l-* or *-r-* keep *l* and *r* in the nom., e.g.

cōnsul-is → nom. *cōnsul* 'consul'
fūr-is → nom. *fūr* 'thief'

- (b) stems ending in *-d-* or *-t-* end in *-s* in the nom., e.g.

ped-is → nom. *pēs* 'foot'
dōt-is → nom. *dōs* 'dowry'

- (c) stems ending in *-c-* or *-g-* end in *-x* in the nom., e.g.

rēg-is → nom. *rēx* 'king'
duc-is → nom. *dux* 'general'

- (d) stems ending in *-ōn* or *-iōn* end in *-ō* or *-iō* in the nom., e.g.

Scīpiōn-is → nom. *Scīpiō* 'Scipio'
praedōn-is → nom. *praedō* 'pirate'

Exercises

- 1 Decline: honor, fūr, (optional: Eucliō (s.), Lar, aedis).
- 2 Name the case of each of these words: Eucliōnis, fūrem, aedium, honōrēs, Lar, senum, aedīs, honōrem, fūr, Laris.
- 3 Translate each sentence, then change noun(s) and verb(s) to s. or pl. as appropriate, e.g. fūrem seruus timet – the slave is afraid of a thief – fūrēs seruī timent.

- (a) deinde thēsaurum senis fūr uidet.
- (b) Lar honōrem nōn habet.
- (c) igitur senem deus nōn cūrat.
- (d) quārē tamen supplicātis, senēs?
- (e) unguentum senex tandem possidet.
- (f) in aedibus senex nunc habitat.
- (g) fūr aulam aurī plēnam semper amat.
- (h) honōrem tamen non habet fūr.
- (i) quārē in aedīs nōn intrās, senex?
- (j) seruam clam amat senex.

14 1st/2nd declension adjectives: *mult-us a um* 'much', 'many'

	s.		
	m.	f.	n.
nom.	múlt-us	múlt-a	múlt-um
acc.	múlt-um	múlt-am	múlt-um
gen.	múlt-ī	múlt-ae	múlt-ī
dat.	múlt-ō	múlt-ae	múlt-ō
abl.	múlt-ō	múlt-ā	múlt-ō
	pl.		
	m.	f.	n.
nom.	múlt-ī	múlt-ae	múlt-a
acc.	múlt-ōs	múlt-ās	múlt-a
gen.	mult-ōrum	mult-ārum	mult-ōrum
dat.	múlt-īs	múlt-īs	múlt-īs
abl.	múlt-īs	múlt-īs	múlt-īs

Notes

- 1 Adjectives (from the stem *adiectus* 'added to') give additional information about a noun, e.g. *fast* horse, *steep* hill (adjectives are often called 'describing words').

- 2 Since nouns can be m., f. or n., adjectives need to have m., f. and n. forms so that they can 'AGREE' grammatically with the noun they describe. So adjectives must agree with nouns in *gender*.
- 3 Adjectives must also 'AGREE' with nouns in *number*, s. or pl.
- 4 Finally, they must 'AGREE' with nouns in *case* (nom., acc., gen., dat. or abl.). A noun in the acc. can only be described by an adjective in the acc.
- 5 In summary, if a noun is to be described by an adjective in Latin, the adjective will have to agree with it in *gender, number and case*. Here are three examples:

- (a) 'I see *many* temples' – 'temples' are the object, and plural; the word we shall use in Latin is *aedīs*, which is f. So if 'many' is to agree with 'temples', it will need to be acc., pl. and f. Answer: *multās aedīs*.
- (b) 'He shows *much* respect' – 'respect' is object, s. The word we shall use, *honor honōr-is*, is m. So 'much' will have to be acc. s. m. Answer: *multum honōrem*.
- (c) 'I hear the voice of *many* slaves' – 'slaves' is gen. and pl.; the word we shall use, *serua*, is f. So 'many' will be gen. pl. f. Answer: *multārum seruārum*.

- 6 It is worth emphasising here that an adjective does not necessarily describe a noun it is standing next to. It describes a noun it *agrees with* in case, number and gender, e.g.:

- (a) *multum filia servat thēsaurum*. *multum* = acc. s. m.; *filia* = nom. s. f.; *thēsaurum* = acc. s. m. I.e. 'It's a great deal of treasure the daughter keeps.'
- (b) *nūllum fūrum cōsiliū placet*. *nūllum* = acc. s. m. or nom./acc. s. n.; *fūrum* = gen. pl.; *cōsiliū* = nom./acc. s. n. I.e. 'No scheme of thieves is pleasing.'

multus usually precedes its noun, e.g. *multī seruī* 'many slaves'. When it follows its noun it is emphatic, e.g. *seruōs multōs habeo* 'I really do have lots of slaves'.

- 7 Adjectives can be used on their own as nouns, when *gender* will indicate meaning, e.g. *bonus* (m.) 'a good man', *bonum* (n.) 'a good thing'.

15 2nd declension neuter nouns: *somni-um* ī 2n. 'dream'

	<i>s.</i>		<i>pl.</i>	
<i>nom.</i>	sómni-um	'dream'	sómni-a	'dreams'
<i>acc.</i>	sómni-um	'dream'	sómni-a	'dreams'
<i>gen.</i>	sómni or sómni-ī	'of the dream'	somni-ōrum	'of dreams'
<i>dat.</i>	sómni-ō		sómni-īs	
<i>abl.</i>	sómni-ō		sómni-īs	

Notes

- 1 There is only one neuter noun type of the 2nd decl.; they all end in *-um* in nom. s. Cf. *aur-um* 'gold', *unguent-um* 'ointment'.
- 2 As with other neuters, the nom. and acc. s. and pl. are the same (see 26).
- 3 Do not confuse the neuter s. forms with the acc. s. of 2nd decl. m. nouns like *seru-us* (*seru-um*) or gen. pl. of 3rd decl. nouns like *aedis* (*aedium*). Be sure that you learn nouns like *somnium* as type 2 neuter.
- 4 As with all neuters, there is a danger of confusing the pl. forms in *-a* with 1st decl. f. nouns like *serua*.
- 5 Note the gen. s. *sómnī* or *sómnī-ī*. Nouns of the 2nd decl. ending in *-ius* (e.g. *filius* 'son') usually have gen. s. in *-ī* (e.g. *fili-ī*) and nom. pl. always in *-ī* (e.g. *fili-ī*).
- 6 Gen., dat., abl. s. and pl. endings are the same as for *seruus* (9).

Exercises

- 1 Here to learn is a list of 2nd decl. neuter nouns like *somnium*:

exiti-um ī 2n. 'death', 'destruction'
 ingeni-um ī 2n. 'talent', 'ability'
 pericul-um ī 2n. 'danger'

- 2 Pick out the gen. pls. from the following list. Say what nouns they come from, with what meaning (e.g. *periculorum* = gen. pl. of *pericul-um* ī danger): *honorum*, *ingenium*, *aedibus*, *fūrum*, *exitiō*, *seruum*, *unguentorum*, *aurum*, *senum*, *thēsaurīs*.
- 3 Pick out, and give the meanings of, the pl. nouns in the following list: *scaena*, *serua*, *ingenia*, *familia*, *cūra*, *unguentis*, *filiā*, *somnia*, *corōna*, *pericula*.

16 2nd declension noun (irregular): *de-us* ī 2m. 'god'

	s.		pl.	
nom.	dé-us	'god'	dī	'gods'
acc.	dé-um	'god'	déōs	'gods'
gen.	dé-ī	'of the god'	de-ōrum (dé-um)	'of the gods'
dat.	dé-ō		dīs	
abl.	dé-ō		dīs	

17A Vocatives

The vocative case (*uocō* 'I call') is used when addressing a person. Its form is the same as the nominative in all nouns, except 2nd declension m., where *-us* of nom. s. becomes *-e* (e.g. *Dēmaenete* 'Demaenetus!', *serue* 'O slave') and the *-ius* of nom. s. becomes *-ī* (e.g. *filius* 'son'; *fili-ī* 'son!').

NB. The vocative s. of *meus* 'my' is *mī*, e.g. *mī fili-ī* 'O my son'.

17B Apposition

Consider this sentence:

sum Dēmaenetus, Eucliōnis auus 'I am Demaenetus, Euclio's grandfather'

The phrase *Eucliōnis auus* gives more information about Demaenetus. It is said to be 'in apposition' to *Dēmaenetus* (from *adpositus* 'placed near'). Note that *auus*, the main piece of information, is the same case as *Dēmaenetus*.

Note

Appositional phrases may be added to a noun in any case. E.g. *sum seruus Dēmaenetī senis* 'I am the slave of Demaenetus the old man'. *senis* (gen.) is in apposition to *Dēmaenetī* (gen.).

Exercises

- 1 Attach the correct form of *multus* to these nouns (in ambiguous cases, give all possible alternatives): *cūrās*, *aurum*, *fūrēs*, *senem*, *honōris*, *aedem*, *seruorum*, *senum*, *aedīs*, *corōnae*, (optional: *seruum*, *unguenta*, *aedis*, *familiam*, *aedium*, *honor*, *aedēs*).

2 Pair the given form of *multus* with the nouns with which it can agree:

- multus*: senex, cūra, Larem, familiae, seruus
multī: honor, aedēs, Laris, senēs, seruī
multīs: honōribus, aedīs, cūram, seruum, deum, senibus, aurum
multās: senis, honōrēs, aedīs, cūram, familiās
multae: seruae, aedī, cūram, senēs, dī
multa: aedēs, unguenta, senem, cūra, corōnārum
 (optional:
multōs: aedīs, unguentum, cūrās, seruōs, fūrēs
multō: aurum, Larem, cūram, honōrī, aedem
multōrum: aedium, unguentōrum, seruum, senum, deōrum, corōnārum
multārum: fūrum, aurum, honōrem, seruārum, aedium)

3 Translate into Latin: many slave-girls (*nom.*); of much respect; of many garlands; much gold; many an old man (*acc.*); of many thieves; many old men (*acc.*).

4 Translate these sentences:

- (a) *multī fūrēs sunt in aedibus.*
 (b) *multās cūrās multī senēs habent.*
 (c) *multae seruae plēnae sunt cūrārum.*
 (d) *multum aurum Eucliō, multās aulās aurī plēnās habet.*
 (e) *seruōs senex habet multōs.* (See 14⁶.)

5 Translate these sentences:

- (a) *nūlla potentia longa est.* (Ovid)
 (b) *uīta nec bonum¹ nec malum¹ est.* (Seneca)
 (c) *nōbilitās sōla est atque ūnica uirtūs.* (Juvenal)
 (d) *longa est uīta sī plēna est.* (Seneca)
 (e) *fortūna caeca est.* (Cicero)

¹ See 14⁷.

potenti-a ae 1f. power
long-us a um long, long-lived
uīt-a ae 1f. life
nec . . . nec neither . . . nor

bon-us a um good
mal-us a um bad
nōbilitās nōbilitāt-is 3f. nobility
sōl-us a um only
atque and

ūnic-us a um unique, unparalleled
uirtūs uirtūt-is 3f. goodness
fortūn-a ae 1f. fortune
caec-us a um blind

Optional exercises

- 1 Identify the case (or cases, where ambiguities exist) of the following words, say what they mean, and then turn *s.* into *pl.* and *pl.* into *s.*: *seruae, honōrī, thēsaurīs, familiā, deum, filiā, dīs, corōna, senum.*
 2 Give the declension and case of each of the following words: *thēsaurum, honōrum, deōrum, seruārum, aedium.*
 3 Case work

- (a) Group the following words by case (i.e. list all nominatives, accusatives, genitives etc.). When you have done that, identify *s.* and *pl.* within each group: *Eucliōnem, senī, thēsaurō, filiae, familia, deī, corōna, scaenās, dī, aedēs, honōribus, seruārum, multīs.*
 (b) Identify the following noun forms by showing:

what case they are
 whether *s.* or *pl.*
 their *nom. s. form, gen. s. form* and gender
 their meaning

e.g. *senem* is *acc. s.* of *senex* *sen-is*, *m.* 'old man'. Remember ambiguities!

- (i) 3rd declension: *aedēs, patris, senibus, honōrum, senem, aedibus, honōrī, sene, aedium, honōris, senēs, aedīs*
 (ii) 1st declension *f.*: *Phaedrae, aulārum, corōnās, scaenā, cūrīs, filiārum, familiae, Staphylam, seruīs, aulam, corōnae, scaenās*
 (iii) 2nd declension *m.*: *seruī, coquus, thēsaurum, seruīs, coquī, seruō, deōs, thēsaurīs, coquō, deī*
 (iv) Various declensions: *sene, seruīs, patris, coquīs, honōrī, aedīs, aulārum, honōrum, deum, seruārum*

Reading exercises

1 English and Latin

Pick out subject(s), verb(s) and object(s) in the following English sentences. Identify also adjectives, and say with what nouns they agree.

- (a) In the long echoing streets the laughing dancers throng. (Keats)
 (b) And the long carpets rose along the gusty floor. (Keats)
 (c) I bring you with reverent hands
 The books of my numberless dreams. (Yeats)

- (d) 'Tis no sin love's fruit to steal
But the sweet theft to reveal. (Jonson)
- (e) His fair large Front and Eye sublime declar'd
Absolute Rule. (Milton, describing Adam)
- (f) Gazing he spoke, and kindling at the view
His eager arms around the goddess threw.
Glad earth perceives, and from her bosom pours
Unbidden herbs and voluntary flowers.

(Pope, translating Homer's Iliad, where
Zeus makes love to his wife Hera)

2 In each of these sentences, the verb comes first or second. Say in each case whether the subject is *s.* or *pl.*, then, moving on, say in order as they come whether the following words are subjects or objects of the verb. Next, translate into English. Finally read out the sentences in Latin with the correct phrasing.

- (a) clāmant seruī, senex, seruae.
(b) dat igitur honōrem multum Phaedra.
(c) nunc possidet Lar aedīs.
(d) amant dī multum honōrem.
(e) dat aurum multās cūrās.
(f) habitant quoque in aedibus seruī.
(g) est aurum in aulā multum.
(h) timent autem fūrēs multī senēs.
(i) quārē intrant senex et seruus in scaenam?
(j) tandem explicat Lar cūrās senis.

3 In order of appearance, translate each word and say whether it is the subject or the object or genitive. Then supply a suitable verb in the correct person and translate the sentence into English.

- (a) senem seruus . . .
(b) aedīs deus . . .
(c) honōrēs Lar . . .
(d) fūr aurum . . .
(e) Eucliōnis filiam dī . . .
(f) filiae senum honōrēs . . .
(g) aedem deus . . .
(h) unguenta dī . . .
(i) Larem Phaedra, Phaedram Lar . . .¹
(j) seruōs Phaedra et seruās . . .

¹ The verb must be *s.*

4 Take the Latin as it comes and say, as you translate, what the function of each word is (subject, object, verb etc.), grouping words into phrases where necessary. Translate into English. Then read out the Latin correctly phrased, thinking through the meaning as you read.

- (a) aulās enim habet multās Eucliō senex.
(b) aedīs fūrū plēnās multī timent senēs.
(c) thēsaurum Eucliōnis clam uidet serua.
(d) nūllus est in aedibus seruus.
(e) Phaedram, filiam Eucliōnis, et Staphylam, filiae Eucliōnis seruam, Lar amat.
(f) deinde Eucliō aulam, quod fūrēs ualdē timet, cēlat.
(g) mē igitur Phaedra amat, Phaedram ego.
(h) nam aurum Eucliō multum habet, corōnās multās, multum unguentum.
(i) senex autem fūrēs, quod multum habet aurum, ualdē timet.
(j) multum seruī unguentum ad Larem, multās corōnās portant.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read through this passage, as for Reading Exercise no. 4 in 1A (p. 16). For an adjective, say (i) what it belongs with (if it follows its noun) (ii) what sort of noun you will expect with it (if it precedes). Use the running vocabulary for 1B for any words you do not know. At the end, after translating the passage, read it out in Latin, correctly phrased.

Lar in scaenam intrat. deus est Eucliōnis familiae. seruat Lar sub terrā thēsaurum Dēmaenetī. multus in aulā thēsaurus est. ignōrat autem dē thēsaurō Eucliō, quod Larem nōn cūrat. nam nūllum dat unguentum, nūllās corōnās, honōrem nūllum. Phaedram autem, senis auārī filiam, Lar amat. dat enim Eucliōnis filia multum unguentum, multās corōnās, multum honōrem. Lar igitur Dēmaenetī aulam, quod bona est Eucliōnis filia, Eucliōnī dat. Eucliō autem aulam, quod auārus est, sub terrā iterum collocat. nam fūrēs ualdē timet Eucliō! cūrās habet multās! uexat thēsaurus senem auārum et anxium. plēnae enim fūrū sunt dīuitum hominum aedēs.

English-Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- (a) Lar igitur Eucliōnem, quod honōrem nōn dat, nōn amat.
The gods therefore care for Phaēdra, my son, because she cares for the Lar.
- (b) senex autem cūrās habet multās, quod aurum habet multum.
The slaves however are carrying many garlands, because they are bestowing much respect.
- (c) Eucliōnis aedēs fūrum sunt plēnae, quod aulam aurī plēnam habet senex.
The temple of the gods is full of gold, because the daughters of the rich give pots full of gold.
- (d) ego multum unguentum, corōnās multās, multum honōrem habeo.
You (s.) have much worry and much treasure.
- (e) tē, Dēmaenete, nōn amō.
I'm not carrying gold, my son.
- (f) clāmant seruī, supplicat seruae, timet senex.
The daughter is praying, the old men shouting and the slave-girls are afraid.

Deliciae Latinae

These sections, which will occur at the end of Grammar and Exercise sections, will consist of a mixture of hints on word-building, word exercises, Latin words and phrases in everyday use, and easy pieces of original Latin for translation. The title means 'Latin delights'.

NB. The vocabulary help in *Deliciae Latinae* sections is aimed at helping you to translate as quickly and easily as possible. Consequently, we do not always give full grammatical information about words.

Derivations

The Roman Empire extended over modern Italy, Spain, Portugal and France, all of whose languages are descended directly from Latin. Britain was part of the Roman Empire, but it was overrun by Anglo-Saxons in the years following the end of Roman rule, so that there was no major Latin influence on the language at this stage – Anglo-Saxon was the predominant tongue. Latin was, however, still the language of the

church in Britain so all interaction was not wholly lost. (Bede (*Baeda*), the eighth-century monk from Jarrow near Newcastle upon Tyne, wrote his history of the English church in Latin.) The turning-point for the English language came in 1066 when the Norman Duke William the Conqueror took England. French-speaking kings ruled England for some 300 years (till Agincourt (1415), when English again became the official language of royalty). The Latin-based French language became incorporated into Middle English, adding enormous richness to it, e.g. Middle English gives us 'kingly', French/Latin adds 'regal', 'royal', 'sovereign'. It is largely through French that English has the Latin component that it does.

Consequently, Latin is very useful to anyone who wants to learn the Romance languages (i.e. languages descended from the language of the Romans), and vice versa knowledge of Romance languages can help you to understand Latin. Four hints:

- Identify the stem of the Latin word as well as its nom. s. form, e.g. *senex* gives us 'senile' (from the Latin adjective *senilis*, formed from *sen-* the stem of *senex*).
- Many English words ending in -ion come from Latin via French.
- Many English words ending in -ate, -ance, -ent, -ence come from Latin, again via French.
- English derivatives have 'j' and 'v' where the Latin words from which they come have *i* and *u* used as consonants (i.e. before or between vowels). So *Iānuārius* produces 'January' and *uideō* produces 'video'. The reverse process will help you to see whether a word has a Latin root, e.g. 'juvenile' comes from Latin *iuuenilis*.

Note

English has taken some of its Latin-based words direct from Latin rather than through an intermediary language such as French, e.g. 'wine' from *uīnum*, 'wall' from *uallum* (see Appendix p. 554). Other English words look similar to Latin not because they have been taken from Latin, but because both English and Latin share a common linguistic ancestor, Indo-European, the vocabulary of which is preserved in different ways in the various derivative tongues. Thus the Indo-European word for 'two', which can be reconstructed as **duō*, emerges in English as *two*, German *zwei*, Sanskrit *dvau*, and Latin as *duo* (whence French *deux*, Italian *due*, Spanish *dos*).

Word-building

(a) Stems

The stem of one word gives the clue to the meaning of many other words, e.g. *seru-* in the form *seru-us* or *seru-a* means 'slave'; as a verb, with a verb-ending, *seruiō*, it means 'I am a slave to'.

coqu- in the noun form *coquus* = 'a/the cook'; in the verb form *coquō* = 'I cook'

aed- in the form *aedēs* = 'a/the house'; with the suffix *-ficō* (= 'make'): *aedificō* = 'I build'; in the form *aedīlis*, it means 'aedile', a Roman state official originally with a particular responsibility for building

(b) Prefixes

A 'prefix' (*prae* 'in front of', *fixus* 'fixed') is a word fixed in front of another. Most prepositions (see 10), e.g. *in* 'into', 'in', 'on', *ad* 'towards' etc., can also be used as prefixes, and as such slightly alter the meaning of the 'root' word to which they are fixed, e.g.

root word *sum* 'I am': *adsum* 'I am near'; *insum* 'I am in'
 root word *portō* 'I carry': *importō* 'I carry in'; *apportō* 'I carry to'
 (observe that *inp-* becomes *imp-* and *adp-* becomes *app-*)

Note the following prepositions which are commonly used as prefixes:

cum (*con-*) 'with'
prae 'before, in front of, at the head of'
post 'after'

Exercise

Split the following Latin words up into prefix and root, and say what they might mean: *conuocō*, *inhabitō*, *inuocō*, *praeuideō*, *comportō*, *praesum*, *posthabeō*.

(c) Verb-stems different from the present stem

As you will soon discover, Latin verbs have a number of different 'stems'. So far you have learnt the present stem, e.g. *uoc-ō* 'I call'. But most 1st conjugation verbs have another stem in *-āt-* i.e. *uoc-āt-*. This stem was very fruitful in forming other Latin words, and so French words, and so English words, particularly those in *-ate* or *-ation*. Thus *vocation*, *convocation*, *invocation*, *invoke* etc.

Exercise

Give an English word in *-ate* or *-ation* from the following Latin words, and say what it means: *supplicō*, *explicō*, *importō*, *dō*, *habitō*.

uideō has another stem, *uīs-*, and *possideō* has possess- — giving us what English nouns, by the addition of what letters?

Word exercises

- 1 Give English words connected with the following Latin words: *familia*, *corōna*, *scaena*, *timeō*, *deus*, *multus*, *uideō*.
- 2 With what Latin words are the following connected? *pecuniary*, *honorific*, *amatory*, *thesaurus*, *porter*, *clamorous*, *filial*, *edifice* (Latin *ae* becomes *e*), *unguent*, *furtive*, *servile*, *nullify*.

Everyday Latin

We use Latin words and phrases every day of our lives:

a.m. = *ante merīdiem*. What does *ante* mean?
p.m. = *post merīdiem*. What does *post* mean? What is a *post mortem*? What is a *post scriptum*?
iānuā = 'door'. *Iānus* (Janus) was a Roman god who had two faces, so that he could look out and in like a door and, like the month January, forward to the new year and back to the old
tandem = 'at length', just like the bicycle made for two (introduced originally as a learned joke; the Latin word was never used of space)
uōx (= 'voice') *populī*, *uōx deī* — meaning? Cf. *agnus* ('lamb') *deī*

Frequently in English we give Latin words their correct Latin plurals, e.g. we talk of *termini*, pl. of the Latin *terminus*. What would you say of someone who gave the plural of 'ignoramus' as 'ignorami' (*ignōr-ō* 1)?

Consider the following plurals: *data* ('given things'), *agenda* ('things to be done'), *media* ('things in the middle'). They are neuter plurals, declining like *multus*, directly from Latin. What are their singular forms?

Real Latin

Vulgate

(Taken from the *Vulgate*, Jerome's fourth–fifth-century A.D. translation of the Bible into Latin. Called '*Vulgate*' from its title *ēditiō uulgāta* 'popular edition'. Cf. 'vulgar' in English.)

et (Deus) ait (said) 'ego sum Deus patris tuī, Deus (of) Abraham, Deus (of) Isaac, et Deus (of) Jacob.' (Exodus 3.6) 'ego sum quī (who) sum.' (Exodus 3.14)

Conversational Latin

Contrary to popular belief, Latin always has been a spoken as well as a written language. Most of our texts from ancient times, of course, reflect the literary, written, form. But in Plautus, Terence and the letters of Cicero we do hear the voice of Romans. Here are some common conversational gambits:

saluē or *saluus sīs* or *auē* (or *hauē*) 'Hello!' (lit. 'Greetings', 'May you be safe', 'Hail!')

ualē 'Goodbye!' (lit. 'Be strong')

sīs or *sī placet* or *nisi molestum est* or *grātum erit sī . . .* or *amābō tē* 'Please' (lit. 'If you will', 'If it pleases', 'If it's no trouble', 'It would be nice if . . .', 'I will like you (if you . . .)')

grātiās tibi agō 'Thank you' (lit. 'I give thanks to you')

ut ualēs? or *quid agis?* or *quid fit?* 'How are you?' (lit. 'Are you strong?', 'What are you doing?', 'What is happening?')

est or *est ita* or *etiam* or *ita* or *ita uērō* or *sānē* or *certē* 'Yes' (lit. 'It is', 'It is so', 'Even', 'Thus', 'Thus indeed', 'Certainly', 'Surely')

nōn or *nōn ita* or *minimē* 'No' (lit. 'Not', 'Not so', 'Least')

age or *agedum* 'Come on'

rēctē 'Right' (lit. 'Correctly')

malum 'Damn!' (lit. 'A bad thing')

dī tē perdant! 'Damn you!' (Lit. 'May the gods destroy you')

īnsānum bonum 'Damned good' (Lit. 'A crazy good thing')

Latin conversation did not die out with the end of the Roman Empire. Erasmus of Rotterdam, the great Dutch humanist, originally wrote his *Colloquia Familiāria* (first published in 1518) partly as an aid to teaching Latin conversation. The first 'Colloquy' introduces the pupil to various modes of greeting. These are the formulae recommended to lovers ('Greetings my . . .'):

saluē	mea Cornēliola	('little Cornelia')
	mea uīta	('life')
	mea lūx	('light')
	meum dēlicium	('darling', 'delight')
	meum suāuium	('sweetheart', lit. 'kiss')
	mel meum	('honey')
	mea uoluptās ūnica	('only joy')
	meum corculum	('sweetheart', lit. 'little heart')
	mea spēs	('hope')
	meum sōlātium	('comfort')
	meum decus	('glory')

Section 1C

Running vocabulary for 1C

<i>abeō</i> I go away	<i>domin-us</i> ī 2m. lord,	<i>hercle</i> by Hercules!
<i>abī</i> go away!	master	<i>hīc</i> here
<i>abit</i> (he/she/it) goes away	<i>dormit</i> (he/she/it) sleeps	<i>hodiē</i> today
<i>adeunt</i> (they) approach,	<i>ē</i> Lycōnidē, uīcīnō 'by	<i>homo</i> <i>homin-is</i> 3m. man,
come up	Lyconides, the	fellow
<i>adit</i> (he/she/it)	neighbour'	<i>īānu-a</i> ae 1f. door
approaches, comes up	<i>ē, ex</i> (+ abl.) from, out of	<i>ignis</i> <i>ign-is</i> 3m. fire
<i>anim-us</i> ī 2m. mind	<i>egone</i> am I?	<i>ignōrō</i> 1 I do not know
<i>aqu-a</i> ae 1f. water	<i>eō</i> I go	<i>īmus</i> we go
<i>arāne-a</i> ae 1f. cobweb	<i>etiam nunc</i> further still	<i>in uirōs</i> among the men
<i>audī</i> listen!	<i>exī</i> get out!	<i>ineunt</i> (they) enter
<i>Bona</i> (<i>bon-us a um</i>) good	<i>exīs</i> you (s.) go/come out	<i>inquiunt</i> (they) say
<i>clāmatque</i> and shouts	<i>exit</i> (he/she/it) goes out	<i>īnsān-us a um</i> mad
<i>cōgitō</i> 1 I think, reflect,	<i>expellis</i> you (s.) drive out	<i>intrō</i> inside
ponder	<i>expellit</i> (he/she/it) drives	<i>inuīt-us a um</i> unwilling(ly)
<i>cōnsili-um</i> ī 2n. plan	out	<i>īs</i> you (s.) go
<i>cōsistunt</i> they stand	<i>extingue</i> put out!	<i>istīc</i> there
around	<i>facis</i> you (s.) make, do	<i>it</i> he goes
<i>cultrum</i> (acc.) knife	<i>Fortūn-a</i> ae 1f. luck	<i>iterum</i> again
<i>dīuidit</i> he divides	<i>for-um</i> ī 2n. forum	<i>mal-us a um</i> evil, wicked,
<i>dīuitum</i> of rich (men)	<i>grauid-us a um</i> pregnant	bad
<i>domī</i> at home	<i>hem</i> well!	<i>manē!</i> wait!

maneō 2 I wait
 me-us a um my, mine
 mī 'O my'
 miser miser-a um unhappy
 moneō 2 I advise, warn
 murmurō 1 I mutter
 neque neither, and . . . not
 nimis too (much)
 nōs (nom., acc.) we, us
 numquam never
 occidī I'm done for!
 occipiti-um ī 2n. back of
 head
 occludē shut!
 ocul-us ī 2m. eye
 ohē stop!
 operam dā! pay attention!
 pauper (nom.) poor (man)

pecūni-a ae 1f. money
 per diem by day
 per noctem by night
 periī I'm lost!
 peruigilō 1 I stay awake
 praetor praetōr-is 3m.
 praetor
 prohibē stop (her)!
 quid what?
 quid agis? what are you
 (s.) up to?
 quō where?
 redeō I return
 redit (he/she/it) returns
 respondē reply!
 rogō 1 I ask (for)
 salu-us a um safe
 sēcum with himself/herself

sēdulō carefully
 seruā keep!
 seruō 1 I keep, preserve
 sollicitō 1 I worry
 stā! stand (still)!
 statim at once
 tacē shut up!
 taceō 2 I am silent
 tam so
 tu-us a um your
 uerberō 1 I flog, beat
 uexō 1 I annoy, trouble
 uicīn-us ī 2m. neighbour
 ut how!
 ut ualēs? how are you?
 (s.)

Learning vocabulary for 1C

Nouns

aqu-a ae 1f. water
 domin-us ī 2m. master,
 lord
 ocul-us ī 2m. eye
 uicīn-us ī 2m.
 neighbour(ing)

Adjectives

mal-us a um bad, evil,
 wicked
 me-us a um my, mine
 (voc. mī 'O my')

Verbs

cōgit-ō 1 I ponder, reflect,
 consider
 rog-ō 1 I ask
 seru-ō 1 I save, keep
 st-ō 1 I stand
 uerber-ō 1 I flog, beat
 uex-ō 1 I annoy, trouble,
 worry

Others

ē, ex (+abl.) out of, from
 neque neither; and . . .
 not; nor
 numquam never
 quid? what?
 statim at once

New forms: adjectives

miser miser-a um
 miserable, unhappy,
 wretched

New forms: verbs

eō I go, come; cf. exeō
 I come, go out; abeō
 I come, go away; adeō
 I go, come to,
 approach; redeō I return

Grammar and exercises for 1C

18 Present imperative active 1st and 2nd conjugation

	1st conj.		2nd conj.
2nd s.	āmā 'love!'	hábē 'have!'	
2nd pl.	amā-te 'love!'	habē-te 'have!'	

Notes

- 1 These forms express a command in Latin.
- 2 The understood subject is 'you' (s. or pl.).
- 3 The s. form is the bare stem of the verb; the pl. adds -te.

Exercises

- 1 Construct and translate the s. and pl. imperatives of these verbs: timeō, rogō, taceō, cōgitō, moneō, cūrō, possideō, (optional: habeō, stō, explicō, cēlō, amō, uideō, maneō).
- 2 Translate into English: dā corōnam!; portā aquam!; in aedibus manēte!; tacē!; thēsaurum seruā!; monēte filiam!
- 3 Translate into Latin: see! (pl.); ask Euclio! (s.); be quiet! (pl.); hide the pot! (pl.).

19 eō 'I go', 'I come' (irregular): present indicative active

1st s.	e-ō	'I go', 'I come', 'I am going/coming', 'I do go/come'
2nd s.	ī-s	'you go', 'you come' etc.
3rd s.	ī-t	
1st pl.	ī-mus	
2nd pl.	ī-tis	
3rd pl.	ē-u-nt	

Imperatives

2nd s.	<i>ī</i>	'go!' etc
2nd pl.	<i>ī-te</i>	

Notes

- 1 The stem of the verb is simply *i-* (as shown by the imperative s.).
- 2 There are many compound words based on *eō*, e.g. *adeō* 'I approach', 'I go up to' (cf. *ad* 'towards', 'near'); see learning vocabulary for 1C.

Exercises

- 1 Translate into English and then turn s. into pl. and vice versa: *ī*; *eunt*; *ītis*; *eō*; *it*; *īmus*; *exītis*; *abīmus*; *abītis*; *redeunt*; *redītis*; *īte*; *redeō*; *exeunt*.
- 2 Translate into Latin: we are going away; they return; go away! (s.); you (pl.) are approaching; she is coming out; I am going; go back! (pl.); you (s.) go.

20 1st and 2nd declension adjectives: *meus*, *tuus*

me-us a um 'my', 'mine', and *tu-us a um* 'your(s)' decline exactly like *multi-us a um*, and agree with their nouns in the same way. Observe that *tu-us* means 'your(s)' when you are one person.

NB. The vocative of *meus* is *mī* (cf. 17A), e.g. *mī fili* 'O my son'.

21 1st and 2nd declension adjectives: *miser miser-a miser-um*

	s.		
	m.	f.	n.
nom.	<i>miser</i>	<i>miser-a</i>	<i>miser-um</i>
acc.	<i>miser-um</i>	<i>miser-am</i>	<i>miser-um</i>
gen.	<i>miser-ī</i>	<i>miser-ae</i>	<i>miser-ī</i>
dat.	<i>miser-ō</i>	<i>miser-ae</i>	<i>miser-ō</i>
abl.	<i>miser-ō</i>	<i>miser-ā</i>	<i>miser-ō</i>
	pl.		
	m.	f.	n.
nom.	<i>miser-ī</i>	<i>miser-ae</i>	<i>miser-a</i>
acc.	<i>miser-ōs</i>	<i>miser-ās</i>	<i>miser-a</i>

gen.	<i>miser-ōrum</i>	<i>miser-ārum</i>	<i>miser-ōrum</i>
dat.	← <i>miser-īs</i> →		
abl.	← <i>miser-īs</i> →		

NB. Arrows indicate that the form shown is the same for all genders.

Exercises

- 1 Add the appropriate forms of *meus* and *tuus* to the following nouns (see 20) and say what case they are: *igne*; *aedīs*; *honōris*; *familiā*; *oculōrum*; *dominō*; *aquae*; *Eucliōnem*; *senex*.
- 2 Add the appropriate form of *miser* to the following nouns and say what case they are: *Eucliōnī*; *Phaedrā*; *deus*; *filiam*; *aedibus*; *dominī*; *seruārum*; *coquīs*; *senum*.

22 Personal pronouns: *ego* 'I' and *tū* 'you'

nom.	<i>égo</i>	'I'	<i>tū</i>	'you'
acc.	<i>mē</i>		<i>tē</i>	
gen.	<i>mēī</i>		<i>tūī</i>	
dat.	<i>mīhi</i> (<i>mī</i>)		<i>tībi</i>	
abl.	<i>mē</i>		<i>tē</i>	

Notes

- 1 *tū* is used when one person is being referred to (cf. *tuus*).
- 2 When 'I' or 'you' are subject of a verb, we have seen that Latin does not need to express them separately, since the verb itself indicates the person by its personal endings -ō, -s, -t etc. But Latin does use *ego*, *tū* when the speaker wants to stress the identity of the person talking or draw a specific contrast between one person and another. E.g.

- (a) *ego Eucliōnem amō, tū Phaedram* 'I like Euclio, whereas you like Phaedra'
- (b) *ego deum cūrō, tū senem uexās* 'I care for the god, you simply annoy the old man'

It is a matter of emphasis, especially when a contrast is involved.

- 3 *mēī* and *tūī* are 'objective' genitives, i.e. 'of me', 'of you' means 'directed at me/you'. For example, *amor tuī* means 'love of/for you' in the sense 'love directed at you'. The idea 'belonging to me/you' is performed by the adjectives *meus*, *tuus* e.g. *pater meus* = 'my father', i.e. 'the father belonging to me'.

Exercises

1 Translate these sentences, then change nouns and their adjectives and verb to the s. or pl. as appropriate:

- manent in domini mei aedibus neque seruae neque serui.
- malī senis mala serua dominum meum uexat.
- tuus uicinus uicinum meum uidet.
- senis miserī seruus in aedibus numquam manet.
- seruae miserae ad Larem meum numquam adeunt neque supplicant.
- dominus malus seruās statim uerberat miserās.

2 In these sentences, most adjectives are not directly next to the noun they qualify. Read through each sentence, predicting the gender, number and case of the noun you await (where the adjective comes first) and indicating when the adjective is 'solved'. Then translate.

- malus igitur senex nōn multum habet honōrem.
- mea est tuus ignis in aulā.
- meīs tamen in aedibus multī habitant patrēs.
- malōs enim senēs Lar nōn amat meus.
- meusne tuum seruat pater ignem? (-ne = ?)

3 Translate these sentences:

- sōla pecūnia rēgnat. (Petronius)
- uēritās numquam perit. (Seneca)
- semper auārus eget. (Horace)
- nōn dēterret sapientem mors. (Cicero)
- in fugā foeda mors est, in uictōriā glōriōsa. (Cicero)

sōl-us a um alone

pecūni-a ae 1f. money

rēgnō 1 I rule, am king

uēritās uēritāt-is 3f. truth

pereō (conjugates like eō) I die

auā-us ī 2m. miser

egeō 2 I am in need

dēterreō 2 I frighten off,

deter

sapiēns sapient-is 3m. wise man

mors mort-is 3f. death

fug-a ae 1f. rout, flight

foed-us a um disgraceful

uictōri-a ae 1f. victory

glōriōs-us a um glorious

23 Prepositions

Note that ā, ab '(away) from' and ē, ex 'out of', 'from' take the ablative (cf. in + abl. at 10).

NB. ab and ex are the forms used before following vowels, e.g. ab aulā, ex igne.

Exercise

Translate into Latin: out of the water; into the eye; away from the fire; towards the masters; away from the house; onto the stage (optional: out of the pot; towards the thieves; from the old men; into the house.)

Reading exercises

1 Take the Latin as it comes and, as you translate, say what each word is doing in the sentence, taking care to ascribe adjectives to the correct nouns (if they follow them) or to predict the number, gender and case of the noun (if the adjective precedes). Then supply a suitable verb in the correct person and translate into correct English.

- uicinum senex miser . . .
- dominus enim meus tuum ignem . . .
- neque ego meum neque tū tuum seruum . . .¹
- deinde mē seruī malī . . .
- seruōs malōs uicinus meus . . .
- aulam, mī domine, serua mala . . .
- fūrem miserum ego quoque . . .
- ignem tū, ego aquam . . .²
- oculōs meōs serua tua semper . . .
- quārē aurum et unguentum et corōnās Eucliō miser numquam . . .?

¹ Verb 2nd s.

² Verb 1st s.

2 Analyse noun-functions, adjectives, and verbs:

- Close up the casement, draw the blind,
Shut out that stealing moon,
She wears too much the guise she wore
Before our lutes were strewn
With years-deep dust, and names we read
On a white stone were hewn. (Thomas Hardy)
- Hail, native language, that by sinews weak
Didst move my first endeavouring tongue to speak,
And mad'st imperfect words with childish trips,
Half unpronounced, slide through my infant lips . . .

(Milton)

- (c) Know then thyself, presume not God to scan;
The proper study of Mankind is Man. (Pope)

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read the following passage carefully, translating each word as it comes and analysing its function. Identify word-groups and anticipate, as far as you can, what is to come. When you have done this, translate into correct English. Finally read out the passage in Latin with the correct phrasing, thinking out the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 1C.

EUCLIŌ (clāmat) exī! exī ex aedibus, serua.

(serua in scaenam intrat)

SERVA quid est, mī domine? quārē tū mē ex aedibus uocās? (Eucliō seruam uerberat) ō mē miseram. ut dominus meus mē uexat. nunc enim mē uerberat. sed tū, mī domine, quārē mē uerberās?

EUC. ō mē miserum. tacē. ut mala es! ut mē miserum uexās! manē istīc, Staphyla, manē! stā! moneō tē.

(in aedīs intrat Eucliō)

SER. ō mē miseram. ut miser dominus meus est.

(Eucliō ex aedibus in scaenam intrat)

EUC. saluum est. tū tamen quārē istīc stās? quārē in aedīs nōn īs? abī! intrā in aedīs! occlūde iānuam!

(serua in aedīs intrat)

nunc abeō ad praetōrem, quod pauper sum. ut inuītus eō! sed sī hīc maneō, uīcīnī meī 'hem' inquit 'senex miser multum habet aurum.'

English-Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- Staphyla, abī et aquam portā!
Slave-women, go out and ask for fire!
- tū autem, mī domine, quārē cūrās malās habēs?
But why do you, my Euclio, love a wretched slave-woman?
- ut aurum multum senēs uexat miserōs!
How the evil old man beats his unhappy slaves!
- ō mē miseram! ut oculī meī mē uexant!
O dear me! How wretched an old man I am!

- malōs dominōs miserī seruī habent.
(It is) a wretched old man the unhappy daughter loves.
- malōrum seruōrum oculī dominī miserī cūrās nōn uident.
The eyes of a bad slave-woman do not see the worry of the unhappy daughter.

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

Prefixes

in- can = 'into', 'in' (e.g. *ineō* 'I go in', *īnsum* 'I am in'), but it can equally well be a negative, e.g. *īnsānus* = *in* + *sānus* 'not sane', 'mad'

ē, ex usually means 'out of', 'out', e.g. *exit* 'he goes out', *exstinguō* 'I put out', *expellō* 'I push out'

ā, ab = 'away (from)', e.g. *abeō* 'I go away'

re- (only used as a prefix) = 'back', 'again', e.g. *redit* 'he returns'.
(Observe that *re-* becomes *red-* before vowels)

Exercise

- Give the Latin derivation (prefix and root) of the following English words: cogitate, excogitate, instate, reinstate, reverberate, export, revoke, abrogate, reserve, explicate (*plicō* 'fold').
- Give English words, with meanings, formed from the following stems *māns-* (*maneō*); *monit-* (*moneō*). Use prefixes as necessary.

Word exercises

- What do the following English words mean? vexatious, admonish, aquatic, dominant, impecunious, inexplicable.
- Give English words from: *ignis*, *oculus*, *maneō*, *malus*, *saluus*.

Everyday Latin

notā bene (NB) 'note well!' What conjugation is *notō*?
vidē¹ infrā (or simply *vidē*, abbreviated *v.*) 'see below'

adeste, fidēlēs 'be present, faithful!' 'O come, all ye faithful'
exit '(s)he goes out'; *exeunt* 'they go out'

¹ See n. 10 on p. xii.

Real Latin

Vulgate

honōrā patrem tuum et mātrem tuam. (*Exodus* 20.12)
uōs estis sal ('salt') terrae . . . *uōs estis lūx* ('light') mundi. (*Matthew* 5.13)

Sayings of Cato

parentēs amā.
datum (= *what you are given*) *seruā.*
uerēcundiam (= *modesty*) *seruā.*
familiam cūrā.
iūsiūrandum (= *oath*) *seruā.*
coniugem (= *wife*) *amā.*
deō supplicā.

These are from a collection of *dicta Catōnis* 'Sayings of Cato', (= Marcus Cato, 234–149 B.C.), written in the third or fourth century A.D. but ascribed to that grand old man who epitomised Roman wisdom and tradition to later generations. They were firm favourites from the Middle Ages till the seventeenth century in England.

Beginning of an epitaph

sepulcrum hau pulcrum pulcrāi fēminae . . .

sepulcr-um ī 2n. tomb
hau not (archaic for *haud*)
pulc(h)r- beautiful, fine
pulcrāi : note ancient f.s.
 genitive ending

We know the woman buried there was called Claudia – perhaps one of the family called Claudii Pulchri?

Section 1D

Running vocabulary for 1D

ā, ab (+ abl.) away from
adstant (they) hang about
anim-us ī 2m. mind
arculāri-us ī 2m. chest-maker
audiō I hear, listen
aurifex aurific-is 3m. goldsmith
aurique and (of) gold
calceolāri-us ī 2m. shoemaker
caupō caupōn-is 3m. shopkeeper
clāmōr clāmōr-is 3m. shout
dīc say! tell!
dīcis you (s.) say, are saying, mean
dīcō I say
dīues dīuit-is rich (man)
domī at home
domum (to) the home
domum dūc marry!
domum nōn dūcis you (s.) do not marry
dōs dōt-is 3f. dowry
dōtemque and a dowry
drāma drāmat-is 3n. play
dūcis you (s.) lead, take
dūcīt (he/she/it) leads, takes
dūcō I lead, take
eburāt-us a um adorned with ivory
ecce look!
egone I?
Eunomi-a ae 1f. Eunomia
faciunt (they) make, do
fēmin-a ae 1f. woman
fili-us ī 2m. son
flammāri-us ī 2m. maker of bridal veils

for-um ī 2n. forum
frāter frātr-is 3m. brother
fullō fullōn-is 3m. fuller
habēō 2 I hold, regard as
imperī-um ī 2n. command, order
intolerābilis unendurable
ita so, thus
iubeō 2 I order
lānāri-us ī 2m. wool-worker
liber-ī ōrum 2m. (pl.) children
limbulāri-us a um concerned with making ornamental hems
linteō linteō-nis 3m. linen-weaver
Lycōnidēs Lyconid-is 3m. Lyconides
magn-us a um great, large
manulēari-us ī 2m. maker of sleeves
manum (acc.) hand
Megadōr-us ī 2m. Megadorus
mihi (to) (for) me
moneōque 'and I warn'
monument-a ōrum 2n. (pl.) memorial(s)
nec and . . . not, neither
nimis (+ gen.) too much (of)
nōmen name
nōmine by name
nūpti-ae ārum 1f. (pl.) marriage-rites
occidī I'm done for!
oper-a ae 1f. attention
optim-us a um best

pall-a ae 1f. garment
pater patr-is 3m. father
pauper pauper-is poor (man)
pecūni-a ae 1f. money
periū I'm lost!
persōn-a ae 1f. actor
phrygiō phrygiōn-is 3m. embroiderer
post (+ acc.) after
potestās potestāt-is 3f. power
praetereā furthermore
propōl-a -ae 1m. retailer
puell-a ae 1f. girl
puellamne the girl?
pulcher pulchr-a um beautiful
purpur-a ae 1f. purple
quaesō please (lit. 'I ask')
quam (acc.) whom? what woman?
quamquam although
-que and
quis who?
quod because
rectē rightly
satis enough (of)
sēcum with himself/herself
seruantque 'and they protect'
simul at the same time
sōnāri-us ī 2m. girdle-maker
soror sorōr-is 3f. sister
sororque and your sister
strophīari-us ī 2m. seller of breast-bands
sūmptus extravagance, expense
textor textōr-is 3m. weaver

thylacis-ta ae 1m. collector
of offerings
tibi to you (s.)
tum then

tūne 'do you?' (s.)
ualē! goodbye!
uehicul-um ī 2n. waggon
uir uir-ī 2m. man,

husband
uīs you (s.) wish, want
ut as
uxor uxōr-is 3f. wife

Learning vocabulary for 1D

Nouns

fēmin-a ae 1f. woman
pecūni-a ae 1f. money
puell-a ae 1f. girl
fili-us ī 2m. son
uir uir-ī 2m. man,

husband
dīues dīuit-is 3m.f. rich
(person)
frāter frātr-is 3m. brother
pater patr-is 3m. father

pauper pauper-is 3m.f.
poor (person)
soror sorōr-is 3f. sister
uxor uxōr-is 3f. wife

Adjectives

magn-us a um great, large
optim-us a um best, very
good

Verbs

habe-ō 2 I hold, regard
(have)¹

iube-ō 2 *iuss-2* I order,
command, tell

ualē goodbye!

Others

ā, ab (+abl.) away from
ita so, thus; yes
nec and . . . not, neither;
nor

nimis too much
(of) + gen.
-que and
satis enough (of) + gen.
tum then

ut as, when (how!)¹

New forms: nouns

nōmen nōmin-is 3n. name

domum to home

domī at home

New forms: adjectives

pulcher pulchr-a um
beautiful

New forms: verbs

dūc-ō 3 *dūx-*, *duct-2* I lead
domum dūcō I take home,
marry

dīc-ō 3 *dīx-*, *dict-2* I speak,
say

audi-ō 4 I hear, listen to

¹ See n. 11 on p. xii for the significance of the brackets.

² Learn these other stems *now*. They are irregular and used to form other tenses.

Grammar and exercises for 1D

24 Present indicative active (3rd conjugation): *dīcō* 'I speak', 'I say'

1st s. *dīc-ō* 'I say'
2nd s. *dīc-i-s* 'you say'
3rd s. *dīc-i-t* 'he/she/it says'
1st pl. *dīc-i-mus* 'we say'
2nd pl. *dīc-i-tis* 'you (pl.) say'
3rd pl. *dīc-u-nt* 'they say'

Imperatives

2nd s. *dīc* 'say!' (irregular)
2nd pl. *dīc-i-te* 'say!'

Notes

- 1 Note the key vowel in the 3rd conj. – the short *-i-* throughout (cf. *amō*, *habeō*). This *-i-* is *not* part of the stem in the way that *-e-* in *habeō* (stem *habe-*) was.
- 2 Observe that the 3rd pl. is *dīc-u-nt*.
- 3 A similar verb to this is *dūcō* 'I lead', 'I take'.
- 4 Normal imperatives of 3rd conj. verbs are *-e*, *-ite* (see 36). Note that the vowels in these endings are all short. Cf. imperatives of *audiō* in 25.

25 Present indicative active (4th conjugation): *audiō* 'I hear', 'I listen to'

1st s. *aúdi-ō* 'I hear'
2nd s. *aúdi-s* 'you hear'
3rd s. *aúdi-t* 'he/she/it hears'
1st pl. *audī-mus* 'we hear'
2nd pl. *audī-tis* 'you (pl.) hear'
3rd pl. *aúdi-u-nt* 'they hear'

Imperatives

2nd s. *aúdi* 'listen!'
2nd pl. *audī-te* 'listen!'

Notes

- 1 The key vowel in the 4th conj. is *-i-*, which follows the same pattern of long and short as the *-e-* of the 2nd conj., and is, like that, part of the

stem. So *-i-* appears throughout (contrast the *-i-* in *dīcō*).

2 Observe the 3rd pl. in *i-unt*; cf. *dīc-unt*.

Exercises

- 1 Translate into Latin: she says; they are leading; we hear; we say; you (pl.) hear; speak! (s.); listen! (pl.); lead! (pl.); you (s.) are saying; he hears; they are listening.
- 2 Identify the conjugation (1, 2, 3 or 4) of the following verbs and translate them: *cūrō*, *cēlat*, *habētis*, *dūcunt*, *rogās*, *possidēmus*, *audiō*, (optional: *iubētis*, *supplicō*, *clāmāmus*).
- 3 Translate and turn s. into pl. and vice versa: *dīcitis*, *audiunt*, *supplicāmus*, *audīs*, *dīcō*, *dūcimus*, *audīmus*, *clāmant*, *tacēs*, (optional: *rogat*, *dīcit*, *cōgitō*, *manētis*, *amātis*, *dūcunt*, *moneō*, *uocās*, *dūcis*).

26 3rd decl. nouns: *nōmen nōmin-is* 3n. 'name'

	s.	pl.
nom.	<i>nōmen</i>	<i>nōmin-a</i>
acc.	<i>nōmen</i>	<i>nōmin-a</i>
gen.	<i>nōmin-is</i>	<i>nōmin-um</i>
dat.	<i>nōmin-ī</i>	<i>nōmin-ibus</i>
abl.	<i>nōmin-e</i>	<i>nōmin-ibus</i>

Notes

- 1 All n. nouns have the same forms for the nom. and acc. in both s. and pl. (-a); cf. 15. Only the context will tell you whether they are subject or object. Note that if verb is singular then a neuter pl. must be the object; if verb is plural, then neuter s. must be the object.
- 2 All 3rd decl. nouns in *-men* are neuter, and follow the pattern of *nōmen*.
- 3 *nōmen* is a consonant-stem noun. There are also 3rd decl. neuter *i-* stems. You will meet these later.

27 1st/2nd decl. adjectives: *pulcher pulchr-a pulchr-um* 'beautiful', 'handsome'

	s.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	<i>pulcher</i>	<i>pulchr-a</i>	<i>pulchr-a</i>	<i>pulchr-um</i>
acc.	<i>pulchr-um</i>	<i>pulchr-am</i>	<i>pulchr-am</i>	<i>pulchr-um</i>

gen.	<i>pulchr-ī</i>	<i>pulchr-ae</i>	<i>pulchr-ī</i>
dat.	<i>pulchr-ō</i>	<i>pulchr-ae</i>	<i>pulchr-ō</i>
abl.	<i>pulchr-ō</i>	<i>pulchr-ā</i>	<i>pulchr-ō</i>

pl.

m.

f.

n.

nom.	<i>pulchr-ī</i>	<i>pulchr-ae</i>	<i>pulchr-a</i>
acc.	<i>pulchr-ōs</i>	<i>pulchr-ās</i>	<i>pulchr-a</i>
gen.	<i>pulchr-ōrum</i>	<i>pulchr-ārum</i>	<i>pulchr-ōrum</i>
dat.		← <i>pulchr-īs</i> →	
abl.		← <i>pulchr-īs</i> →	

NB. We have already met *miser* which, apart from the nom. s. m., declines like *multus* on the stem *miser-* (21). *pulcher* is identical, except that it declines on the stem *pulchr-*.

28 2nd decl. nouns: *puer puer-ī* 2m. 'boy', *uir uir-ī* 2m. 'man', *culter cultr-ī* 2m. 'knife'

puer puer-ī 2m. 'boy'¹

uir uir-ī 2m. 'man'¹

	s.	pl.		s.	pl.
nom.	<i>puer</i>	<i>puer-ī</i>	nom.	<i>uir</i>	<i>uir-ī</i>
acc.	<i>puer-um</i>	<i>puer-ōs</i>	acc.	<i>uir-um</i>	<i>uir-ōs</i>
gen.	<i>puer-ī</i>	<i>puer-ōrum</i>	gen.	<i>uir-ī</i>	<i>uir-ōrum</i> (<i>uir-um</i> – see 16)
dat.	<i>puer-ō</i>	<i>puer-īs</i>	dat.	<i>uir-ō</i>	<i>uir-īs</i>
abl.	<i>puer-ō</i>	<i>puer-īs</i>	abl.	<i>uir-ō</i>	<i>uir-īs</i>

¹ These nouns decline exactly like *seru-us* on the stems *puer-* and *uir-*. Only nom. s. m. is different. Cf. *miser* (21).

culter cultr-ī 2m. 'knife'¹

	s.	pl.
nom.	<i>culter</i>	<i>cultr-ī</i>
acc.	<i>cultr-um</i>	<i>cultr-ōs</i>
gen.	<i>cultr-ī</i>	<i>cultr-ōrum</i>
dat.	<i>cultr-ō</i>	<i>cultr-īs</i>
abl.	<i>cultr-ō</i>	<i>cultr-īs</i>

¹ This noun declines exactly like *seru-us* on the stem *cultr-*. Only nom. s. m. is different. Cf. *pulcher* (27).

Exercises

- 1 Give the correct form of the adjectives *magnus*, *miser*, *pulcher* for these cases of *nōmen*: *nōmen*, *nōminis*, *nōmine*, *nōmina*, *nōminum*.
- 2 Give the correct form of *pulcher* and *miser* to describe each of these nouns (e.g. *senem* acc. s. m., so *senem pulchrum*): *uxōrum*, *sorōribus*, *uirō*, *uxōris*, *fēminae*, *frātrī*, *aedīs*, *Larem*, *seruā*, *aedēs*, *fēminīs*, *dominī*, *seruōs*.

Optional exercise

Add the appropriate form of *miser*, then of *pulcher*, to the following words and translate (e.g. *Eucliōnem* = acc. s. m. – *miserum/pulchrum* ‘unhappy/handsome Euclio’): *sorōre*, *dīuitis*, *uir*, *uxōrī*, *fēminae*, *puellīs*, *filīi*, *uīcīnō*, *Larem*, *frātrum*, *seruā*.

29 Interrogative pronoun/adjective *quis/quī*, *quis/quae*, *quid/quod* ‘who?’, ‘which?’, ‘what?’

		<i>s.</i>			<i>pl.</i>			
		<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	
<i>nom.</i>	<i>pron.</i>	quis	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae	
	<i>adj.</i>	quī	quae	quod				
<i>acc.</i>	<i>pron.</i>	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae	
	<i>adj.</i>			quod				
<i>gen.</i>		← cūius →			quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
<i>dat.</i>		← cūi →			← quībus (quīs) →			
<i>abl.</i>		quō	quā	quō	← quībus (quīs) →			

Notes

- 1 ‘Interrogative’ means ‘asking a question’.
- 2 Observe that the endings are a mixture of 2nd and 3rd declension. You will meet this again (it is called the ‘pronominal’ declension).
- 3 Adjective and pronoun are identical except for nom. s. and the acc. s. n.
- 4 For the pronoun use, cf. ‘who is calling?’ *quis uocat?* ‘what do I see?’ *quid uideō?*; for the adjective ‘what man is it?’ *quī(quis) uir est?*, ‘what gold do I see?’ *quod aurum uideō?*

Exercises

- 1 Translate into Latin the underlined words with the appropriate form of *quis* or *quī* + noun. You will need to ask whether the question word is a pronoun or an adjective, and then define its case.
 - (a) Whose (s. m.) are these books?
 - (b) Which women do we see?
 - (c) What is this?
 - (d) What name is this?
 - (e) Whom (m. s.) do you hate most?
 - (f) What woman’s are these?
 - (g) Whom (f. s.) should we persecute?
 - (h) Which man is guilty?

30 *domus* ‘house’, ‘home’

domus used with prepositions means ‘house’. But when it means ‘home’ it is used without the preposition in the following ways: *domum* ‘(to) home’; *domī* ‘at home’; *domō* ‘from home’. Cf. *aedēs* which means only ‘house’: *in aedīs* ‘into the house’, *in aedibus* ‘in the house’.

31 *satis* ‘enough’, *nimis* ‘too much’, ‘too many’

Both these words control nouns in the gen. case (the so-called ‘partitive’ genitive indicating *part of a whole*), e.g. *satis pecūniae* ‘enough (of) money’, *nimis honoris* ‘too much (of) respect’. *satis* and *nimis* are fixed in form.

32 *-que*

-que means ‘and’ and either (i) links the noun it is joined to with the previous word e.g. *seruum patremque* ‘slave and father’ or (ii) in poetry indicates that a list is coming, e.g. *seruumque patremque sororemque* ‘both slave and father and sister’.

Exercises

1 In each of these sentences, there is one adjective which precedes and does not stand next to the noun it qualifies. Read through each sentence, predicting the gender, number and case of the noun awaited, noting when the adjective is 'solved'. Then translate.

- nōn multam possident pecūniam optimae uxōrēs.
- multī meās sorōrēs amant filiī.
- seruōs miserōs optimī nōn uexant senēs.
- malī frātrēs pulchrās uerberant sorōrēs.
- multī fēminās pulchrās domum dūcunt senēs.

Before doing Exercises 2 and 3, revise carefully the ablative forms of nouns of the 1st, 2nd and 3rd declension.

- Translate into English: in aedīs; in aulā; ad Larem; ab ignibus; in aquam; ex aulīs; in aedibus; in aquā; ā dominō; ex oculīs; (optional: ad dominum; in scaenam; in nōmine; ā seruā; in aulam; in scaenā).
- Translate into Latin: in the house (use aedēs); towards the girl; towards the brothers; away from the wife; onto the stage; in the house; out of water; away from the fires; (optional: in the waters; from the stage; into the family; in the eye; towards the masters; out of the household).
- Translate: nimis corōnārum; satis seruōrum; nimis aquae; satis nōminum; nimis sorōrum; satis ignis.
- Translate these sentences:
 - quem uirum audiō?
 - cuius nōmen nunc dicitis?
 - in aedibus Eucliōnis satis aurī semper est.
 - habet filia Eucliōnis misera nimis cūrārum.
 - tū autem quam fēminam domum dūcis? (optional)
 - puer pulcher est, uir tamen malus.
 - pater meus nimis pecūniae habet, satis cūrārum.
 - quārē pulchra fēmina pauperem numquam amat?
 - optimī uirī satis aurī semper habent.

6 Translate these sentences:

- uir bonus est quis? (Horace)
- quis nōn paupertātem extimēscit? (Cicero)
- quis bene cēlat amōrem? (Ovid)

- quid est beāta uīta? sēcūritās et perpetua tranquillitās. (Seneca)
- mors quid est? aut finis aut trānsitus. (Seneca)
- immodica ira gignit insāniam. (Seneca)
- uītam regit fortuna, nōn sapientia. (Cicero)

bon-us a um good	sēcūritās sēcūritāt-is 3f.	transition
paupertās paupertāt-is 3f.	freedom from worry	immodic-us a um
poverty	perpetu-us a um perpetual,	immoderate
extimēscō 3 I am greatly	continuous	ir-a ae 1f. anger
afraid of	tranquillitās tranquillitāt-is	gignō 3 I beget, cause
bene well	3f. peace	insāni-a ae 1f. madness
amor amōr-is 3m. love	mors mort-is 3f. death	regō 3 I rule, direct
beāt-us a um happy,	aut . . . aut either . . . or	fortūn-a ae 1f. fortune
blessed	fīn-is fīn-is 3m. end	sapienti-a ae 1f. wisdom
uīt-a ae 1f. life	trānsit-us (nom.)	

Reading

1 Observe the following:

ego tē uxōrem habeō = I regard you as a wife.

ego tē pauperem faciō = I make you poor / a poor man (NB. faciō conjugates like audiō, but -i- is short throughout).

Supply a part of habeō or faciō which will make sense of the following combinations and translate. Then read out in Latin, phrasing correctly.

- tandem uir mē filium . . .
- Eucliō uicīnum diuitem . . .
- Eucliōnem pauperem . . .
- Megadōrus filiam Eucliōnis uxōrem . . .
- ego autem diuitēs miserōs . . .
- dominus malōs seruōs miserōs . . .

2 Analyse the following passage in terms of subject, object; genitive usages; adjectives; prepositions.

Zeus, as he had promised, has Apollo remove the body of Sarpedon, 'the breathless hero', from the battlefield.

Apollo bows, and from Mount Ida's Height
Swift to the Field precipitates his Flight;
Thence, from the War, the breathless Hero bore,
Veil'd in a Cloud, to silver Simois' shore:
There bath'd his honourable wounds, and drest

His manly Members in th' Immortal Vest,
 And with Perfumes of Sweet Ambrosial Dews,
 Restores his Freshness, and his Form renews.
 Then Sleep and Death, two twins of winged Race,
 Of matchless swiftness, but of silent Pace,
 Received Sarpedon, at the Gods' command,
 And in a Moment reach'd the Lycian land;
 The Corps amidst his weeping Friends they laid,
 Where endless Honours wait the Sacred Shade.

10

(Pope, translation of Iliad XVI)

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read the following passage carefully, translating in order of the words and analysing the function of each one, defining word-groups, and anticipating, as far as you can, what is to come. Then translate into correct English. Finally, read the passage aloud with the correct phrasing, thinking through the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 1D.

Megadōrum, uirum dīuitem et Eucliōnis uicīnum, soror Eunomia ex aedibus uocat. Eunomia enim anxia (*worried*) est, quod Megadōrus uxōrem nōn habet. Megadōrus autem uxōrem nōn uult (*wants*). nam uxōrēs uirōs dīuitēs pauperēs faciunt. habet satis aurī Megadōrus et fēminās pulchrās nōn amat. ut enim pulchra fēmina est, ita uirum uexat. 5
 ut uir dīues est, ita uxor uirum pauperem facit. Eunomiam autem sorōrem optimam Megadōrus habet. ut igitur postulat (*demands*) soror, ita facit frāter. Phaeram enim, Eucliōnis filiam, puellam optimam habet. ut tamen pauper Eucliō est, ita dōtem habet Phaera nullam. Megadōrus autem dōtem nōn uult (*wants*). nam sī dīuitēs uxōrēs sunt 10
 magnamque habent dōtem, magnus est post nūptiās sūmptus, nimis dant uirī pecūniae.

English–Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- (a) ut ego soror optima sum, ita tū frāter optimus.
 Just as Phaera is an excellent daughter, so Euclio is an excellent father.
- (b) dominus meus frātrem uirum optimum habet.

- I consider beautiful women (to be) bad wives.
- (c) quid nōmen uxōris est tuae?
 Who is the brother of my neighbour?
- (d) uir pauper uxōrem pauperem domum dūcit.
 The best husbands marry beautiful wives.
- (e) fēminae in aedibus stant.
 The girls are going into the water.
- (f) satis ego aurī habeo, satis pecūniae.
 The rich man has too much money and too much worry.

Deliciae Latinae

Word exercises

- What do the following English words mean? sorority, uxorious, fraternal, virile, optimise, pauper, pulchritude, duke (also: il duce; duchy; duchess; doge; ducat (coin bearing the duke's image)), audio-visual, magnify.
- Derive English words from the following Latin: nōmen, domī, pecūnia, fēmina, ualē, satis.

Everyday Latin

Where would one write *ex librīs* (*liber, libr-* 'book')?
 What sort of statement comes *ex cathedrā*? (*cathedra* is a special papal seat – originally the bishop's seat in his church, hence 'cathedral')
 Christ told the story of Dives and Lazarus. Who was Dives? (see Luke 16:19ff.)
 Often things seem to go on *ad infīnītum* – explain. What is the force of the *in-* prefix?
in vīnō vērītās (= 'truth'). Where is truth found?
 To 'ad lib' is to talk *ad libitum*, i.e. to whatever extent you want (*libet* 'it is pleasing, desirable').
ad nauseam – to what point?
deus ex māchinā. *māchina* is a stage crane. Explain how the phrase comes to refer to a miraculous ending to an event.
per ardua ad astra (Royal Air Force motto) 'Through the heights / through difficulties . . .' – where?

Word-building

dūcō has another stem, *duct-*. Use the 'pool' of prefixes (pp. 32, 43) and your knowledge of common endings to produce at least ten English derivatives, with meanings.

See how large a score you can make with *audiō*, *audīt-* and *dīcō*, *dict-* in the same way.

Real Latin

Martial

Martial (c. AD 40–104) was a Roman satirical epigrammatist.

Thāida Quīntus amat. 'quam Thāida?' Thāida luscā.

ūnum oculum Thāis nōn habet, ille duōs.
(3.8)

Thāis name of a very famous Roman courtesan (acc. = Thāida)	quam which? lusc-us a um one-eyed ūn-us a um one	ille 'but he' i.e. Quintus (sc. nōn habet) duōs two (eyes)
---	--	---

NB. The Romans thought of love as blind and lovers as 'blinded'.

habet Āfricānus mīliēns, tamen captat.

Fortūna multīs dat nimis, satis nūllī.
(12.10)

mīliēns 100 million sesterces	captō 1 I hunt legacies multīs to many	nūllī to no-one
-------------------------------	---	-----------------

Vulgate

Dominus regit mē. (Psalm 23)

Ordinary of the Mass

in nōmine Patris et Fīlii et Spīritūs Sānctī.

Section 1E

Running vocabulary for 1E

<i>adsum</i> I am near, at hand, present	<i>hercle</i> by Hercules!	<i>prōmitte</i> promise!
<i>aegrē</i> hardly	<i>heus</i> hey!	<i>prōmittō</i> 3 I promise
<i>aequ-us a um</i> content	<i>hīc</i> here	<i>quasi</i> as if
<i>anim-us ī 2m.</i> mind, heart, spirit	<i>hodiē</i> today	<i>quid cōsili</i> what (of) plan?
<i>asin-us ī 2m.</i> donkey	<i>homo homin-is</i> 3m. man, fellow	<i>quō</i> to where?
<i>audī</i> hear! listen!	<i>iaceō</i> 2 I lie	<i>respiciō</i> 3/4 I give a second glance to
<i>audīsne</i> : ne turns <i>audīs</i> into a question	<i>immortālēs</i> immortal	<i>saluē</i> hail!
<i>bene</i> well, thoroughly	<i>imperō</i> 1 I order	<i>salūtō</i> 1 I greet, welcome
<i>blandē</i> ingratiatingly	<i>irrideō</i> 2 I laugh at (+ ne = ?)	<i>scelus</i> (nom., acc.) crime; criminal, villain
<i>bon-us a um</i> good	<i>lut-um ī 2n.</i> mud	<i>scelera</i> (nom., acc.) crimes; criminals, villains
<i>bōs bou-is</i> 3m. ox	<i>mihi</i> (to) me	<i>sēcum</i> with himself/herself
<i>certē</i> without doubt	<i>mox</i> soon	<i>sīc</i> thus, as follows
<i>cognōuī</i> I know	<i>nefāri-us a um</i> wicked	<i>sine</i> (+ abl.) without
<i>cōsili-um ī 2n.</i> plan	<i>nihil</i> nothing	<i>stult-us a um</i> stupid
<i>dōs dōt-is</i> 3f. dowry	<i>nūpti-ae ārum</i> 1f. (pl.) marriage-rites	<i>subit-us a um</i> suddenly
<i>dubī-us a um</i> in doubt	<i>occidī</i> I'm done for!	<i>tibi</i> to you
<i>dūc</i> lead! take!	<i>omnia</i> (acc.) everything	<i>trāscendō</i> 3 I cross over (to) (<i>ad</i> + acc.: = I become)
<i>et ... et</i> both ... and	<i>onus</i> (acc.) load, burden	<i>ualeō</i> 2 I am well; I wield influence; <i>ualeō ā</i> (+ abl.) I am well from the point of view of
<i>exīsne</i> : ne turns <i>exīs</i> into a question	<i>oper-a ae</i> 1f. attention	<i>ubi</i> where?
<i>fac</i> do! make!	<i>opus</i> (nom.) need	<i>uērō</i> truly
<i>facile</i> easily	<i>ōrdō ordin-is</i> 3m. rank, class	<i>uīs</i> you (s.) wish, want
<i>facimus</i> we do, make	<i>pateō</i> 2 I am obvious, lie exposed	<i>uolō</i> I wish, want
<i>facinora</i> (nom.) schemes	<i>paupertās paupertāt-is</i> 3f. poverty	<i>uolumus</i> we wish, want
<i>facinus</i> (nom., acc.) deed, scheme	<i>periī</i> I'm lost!	<i>uult</i> (he/she/it) wishes, wants
<i>facit</i> (he/she/it) makes, does	<i>perspicu-us a um</i> obvious	<i>uultis</i> you (pl.) wish, want
<i>fer</i> carry! bring!	<i>pol</i> certainly (lit. 'by Pollux')	
<i>ferō</i> I carry, endure	<i>poscō</i> 3 I demand, ask for (in marriage)	
<i>fers</i> you (s.) carry, endure	<i>praetereā</i> moreover	
<i>fert</i> (he/she/it) carries		
<i>for-um ī 2n.</i> forum		
<i>gravid-us a um</i> pregnant		

Learning vocabulary for 1E

Nouns

nūpti-ae ārum 1f. pl. marriage-rites	advice, judgement
anim-us ī 2m. mind, spirit, heart	dōs dōt-is 3f. dowry
cōnsili-um ī 2n. plan;	homo homin-is 3m. man, fellow

Adjectives

bon-us a um good; brave; fit; honest

Verbs

irrīde-ō 2 I laugh at, mock	saluē welcome!	prōmitt-ō 3 prōmīs- prōmiss- I promise
	posc-ō 3 I demand	

Others

bene well; thoroughly; rightly	occidī I'm done for!	quō (to) where
et ... et both ... and	periī I'm lost!	sēcum with/to himself/ herself
hodiē today	quasi as if, like	ubi where (at)?
-ne = ?	quid cōsili? what (of) plan?	

New forms: nouns

facinus facinor-is 3n. deed; crime; endeavour	onus oner-is 3n. load, burden	scelus sceler-is 3n. crime, villainy; criminal, villain
--	----------------------------------	---

New forms: verbs

faci-ō 3/4 fēc-, fact- I make, do	fer-ō 3 tul-, lāt- I bear, lead	uol-ō I wish, want
--------------------------------------	------------------------------------	--------------------

Grammar and exercises for 1E

33 Present indicative active (3rd/4th conjugation): capiō 'I capture'

1st s. cāpi-ō	'I capture' etc.
2nd s. cāpi-s	
3rd s. cāpi-t	

1st pl. cāpi-mus
2nd pl. cāpi-tis
3rd pl. cāpi-u-nt

Notes

- 1 There are a number of verbs which draw their forms from both 3rd and 4th conj. You have met *faciō*, 'I make, do'.
- 2 *capiō* appears to be straight 4th conjugation in the pres. ind. act., but observe a difference. True, it keeps the *-i-* all the way through, but the *-i-* remains *short* as in the 3rd conj.

34 uolō 'I wish', 'I want' (irregular): present indicative active

1st s. uól-ō	'I wish', 'I want' etc.
2nd s. uī-s	
3rd s. uul-t (uol-t)	
1st pl. uól-u-mus	
2nd pl. uúl-tis (uól-tis)	
3rd pl. uól-u-nt	

NB. The stem of *uolō* is irregular but observe that the personal endings are regular, i.e. *-o*, *-s*, *-t* etc.

35 ferō 'I bear', 'I carry', 'I lead' (irregular): present indicative active

1st s. fēr-ō	'I bear' etc.
2nd s. fer-s	
3rd s. fer-t	
1st pl. fēr-i-mus	
2nd pl. fēr-tis	
3rd pl. fēr-u-nt	

NB. It is the absence of *-i-* between stem and ending in 2nd, 3rd s. and 2nd pl. that makes this irregular.

36 Present imperatives active (all conjugations)

1	2	3	4	3/4
ámā 'love!'	hábē 'have!'	pósc-e 'ask!'	aúdī 'hear!'	cáp-e 'take!'
amā-te	habē-te	pósc-ite	audí-te	cápi-te

Note

- 1 We use *poscō* for 3rd conj. as *dīcō* has an irregular imperative, and *capiō* 'I take', 'I capture' should be learnt now, as it will exemplify 3rd/4th conj. throughout.
- 2 Note the similarity of 3rd and 3rd/4th conjugation imperative forms. Despite the presence of the *-i-* in *capiō*, the imperative form in the s. is still *cap-e*.

37 Irregular imperatives

<i>sum</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>dīcō</i>	<i>dūcō</i>	<i>ferō</i>	<i>faciō</i>
es 'be!'	ī 'go!'	dīc 'say!'	dūc 'lead!'	fer 'bring!'	fac 'do', 'make!'
ēs-te	ī-te	dīc-i-te	dūc-i-te	fēr-te	fāci-te

Notes

- 1 Herewith a mnemonic to help you remember four of the irregular imperatives: 'dīc had a dūc with fer on its back, and that's a fac'.
- 2 Observe the lack of *-i-* in *ferte*.

Exercises

- 1 Translate into Latin: you (s.) make; hear! (pl.); they carry; bring! (s., two verbs); she wishes; we do; he bears; go! (pl.); you (s.) want; demand! (s.); I do; take (s.) the dowry (optional: we make; you (s.) endure; you (pl.) bring; you (pl.) wish; love your father! (s.)).
- 2 Translate the following, then change s. to pl. and vice versa: facimus; fert; uult; ferunt; dīc; ferte; uolumus; est; eunt; facis; dūcite; īte; capite (optional: fac; uīs; es; habent; dīcit; audīte; faciunt; fers).

38 3rd. decl. nouns: *onus oner-is* 3n. 'load', 'burden'

	s.	pl.
nom.	ónus	óner-a
acc.	ónus	óner-a
gen.	óner-is	óner-um
dat.	óner-ī	onér-ibus
abl.	óner-e	onér-ibus

NB. All 3rd decl. nouns in *-us*, *-eris* are n. (cf. *nōmen* 26). Observe that, as usual, the nom. and acc. forms are the same; and that, like *nōmen*, the nom. and acc. pl. end in *-a*. It is vital to know the full categorisation (i.e. *onus oner-is* 3n.) of nouns like *onus*, for fear of confusing them with 2nd decl. m. nouns like *thēsaurus*, *dominus* etc. *onus* is a consonant-stem noun.

Exercises

- 1 Give the correct form of *multus* for these cases of *onus*: *onus*, *oneris*, *onere*, *onera*, *oneribus*.
- 2 Find the words which agree with the given form of *pulcher*:

pulchrō: *oneris*, *scelere*, *dominī*, *facinus*, *deī*, *dī*

pulchra: *fēmina*, *facinora*, *scelera*, *seruae*, *senex*

pulchrum: *opus*, *seruum*, *fēminam*, *senēs*, *Larem*, *scelus*, *facinoris*

pulchrōrum: *nōminum*, *seruārum*, *deōrum*, *senum*, *scelerum*

39 Questions in *-ne*?

-ne attached to the FIRST word of a sentence turns a statement into a question, e.g. *puerum amās* 'you love the boy' – *amāsne puerum?* 'do you love the boy?'

NB. Emphasis is placed on the first word in such questions. *puerumne amās?* means 'is it the boy you love?'

Exercise

Read out these sentences in Latin, correctly phrased. Then translate. Next turn each into a question, putting the word to be questioned first, and adding *-ne* to it. Translate and read out the Latin again.

- (a) *est bona puella.*
- (b) *īmus ad aedīs Eucliōnis.*
- (c) *fert bene onus serua.*

- (d) optimum cōsiliū habent.
- (e) Eucliō filiam statim prōmittit.
- (f) Megadōrus satis pecūniae habet.
- (g) soror frātre bene audit.
- (h) scaenam uidētis.
- (i) Eucliō honōrem numquam dat.
- (j) uxōrēs nimis aurī semper habent.

40 *quid* + gen.

We have already met *satis* + gen. 'enough (of)', and *nimis* + gen. 'too much (of)'. *quid* + gen. = 'what (of)?', e.g. *quid cōsiliū est?* 'what (of) plan is there?' *quid negōtī est?* 'what (of) trouble is there?' 'what's the problem?' This is another example of the so-called 'partitive' genitive (cf. 31).

Exercises

1 *Translate*: in aedīs; ē dōte; in animō; ad hominēs; ab aquā; ex ignibus; domī; ē periculō; in exitium; ad aquās; in periculum.

2 *Translate these sentences*:

- (a) ubi est Megadōrus? quid cōsiliū habet?
- (b) uxōremne pulchram uult uir dīues? quid negōtī est?
- (c) tē igitur bonum habeo.
- (d) seruī in aedibus nimis faciunt scelerum, nimis facinorum malōrum.
- (e) quid oneris fers? quō is?

3 *Translate these sentences*:

- (a) festinā lentē. (*Suetonius*)
- (b) uirtūs sōla uītā efficit beātā. (*Cicero*)
- (c) nihil inuitus facit sapiēns. (*Seneca*)
- (d) auctor opus laudat. (*Ovid*)
- (e) nihil in uulgō modicum. (*Tacitus*)
- (f) neque bonum est uoluptās neque malum. (*Aulus Gellius*)

<i>festinō</i> 1 I hurry, hasten	<i>beāt-us a um</i> happy, blessed	<i>opus oper-is</i> 3n. work
<i>lentē</i> slowly		<i>laudō</i> 1 I praise
<i>uirtūs uirtūt-is</i> 3f. goodness	<i>nihil</i> nothing	<i>uulg-us ī</i> 2n. crowd, mob
<i>sōl-us a um</i> alone, only	<i>inuīt-us a um</i> unwilling(ly)	<i>modic-us a um</i> moderate
<i>uīt-a ae</i> 1f. life	<i>sapiēns sapient-is</i> 3m. wise	<i>uoluptās uoluptāt-is</i> 3f. pleasure
<i>efficiō</i> 3/4 I make (x acc., y acc.)	man	
	<i>auctor auctōr-is</i> 3m. author	

Reading exercises

1 *Read through each of these pairs of sentences. In each case (1) say whether the subject of the second sentence is m., f. or n., (2) say to what or whom the second sentence refers, (3) translate the sentences, (4) read aloud in Latin, correctly phrased.*

- (a) Megadōrus filiam Eucliōnis sine dōte domum dūcit. optimus igitur homo est.
- (b) Megadōrus domī hodiē neque nūptiās parat neque coquōs uocat. malum est.
- (c) Eunomia soror Megadōrī est. bona fēmina est.
- (d) Eunomia frātre habet. nōn dubium est.
- (e) Eucliō filiam amat. malus nōn est.
- (f) Eucliō timet. nōn dubium est.
- (g) Staphyla cōsiliū Eucliōnis audit. malum est.
- (h) Staphyla in aedīs redit. cūrae enim plēna est.

2 *Analyse the following piece, stating, as you read, subject, verb, object, adjective.*

But anxious Cares the pensive Nymph oppress'd,
And secret Passions labour'd in her Breast.
Not youthful Kings in Battle seiz'd alive,
Not scornful Virgins who their Charms survive,
Not ardent Lovers robb'd of all their Bliss,
Not ancient Ladies when refused a Kiss,
Not Tyrants fierce that unrepenting die,
Not Cynthia when her Mantle's pinned awry,
E'er felt such Rage, Resentment and Despair,
As thou, sad Virgin! for thy ravish'd Hair. (*Pope*)

5

10

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read carefully through this passage, translating in the order of the words, analysing the function of each and the groupings of the words, and anticipating the direction of the sentences. Translate into correct English. Then read aloud the passage with correct phrasing, thinking through the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 1E.

Megadōrus Eucliōnem uicīnum uidet. ā forō abīt Eucliō. anxius est. nam animus Eucliōnis, quod aurum nōn uidet, domī est, Eucliō ipse (*himself*) forīs (*outside*). Eucliōnem blandē salūtat Megadōrus, homo dīues pauperem. timet autem Eucliō, quod Megadōrus uir dīues est. perspicuum est. Megadōrus thēsaurum Eucliōnis uult. nōn dubium est. Eucliō in aedīs it, uidet aurum, saluum est. ex aedibus igitur exit. Megadōrus filiā Eucliōnis uxōrem poscit. filiā prōmittit Eucliō, sed sine dōte. pauper enim est. dōtem igitur habet nūllam. Megadōrus dōtem uult nūllam. bonus est et dīues satis. nūptiae hodiē sunt. coquum igitur uocat Megadōrus in aedīs. timet autem Staphyla, quod Phaēdra ē Lycōnidē grauida est. Megadōrus uxōrem domum dūcit grauidam. malum est.

English–Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- irrīdēsne mē, homo malus uirum optimum?
Is he, a rich man, pouring scorn on Euclio, a poor man?
- malum est. Megadōrus enim filiā Eucliōnis uxōrem facit.
There's no doubt. The old man considers the girl his daughter.
- redīte ad Larem, seruī! corōnās ferte multās!
Go into the house, slave-woman. Bring your burdens.
- quid cōsilī est? Megadōrusne dōtem uult? malum est.
What's up? Do you want money? There's no doubt (of that).
- quō abīs? īsne in aedīs? nūptiasne parās hodiē? optimum est.
What do they want? Are they going home? Are they carrying loads? They're good lads.
- bonum habē animum, Megadōre. nam cōsiliū bonum est.
Cheer up, master. The deed's a very good one.

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

trāns means 'across'. Sometimes it appears as *trā-*, e.g. *trādō* 'I hand over', 'I hand across (the ages)' – whence 'tradition'.

prō means 'in front of', 'on behalf of', 'for'.

Learn three important stems:

mittō has another stem *miss-* (thus *prō* + *mittō* 'send ahead', 'send in advance' gives 'promise')

faciō has another stem *fact-*. When *faciō* has a prefix, it becomes *-ficiō*, stem *fect-*, e.g. *prae* + *faciō* becomes *prae**ficiō*, stem *prae**fect-*. Add *-ant/-ent* to your list of suffixes, e.g. efficient

ferō has another stem *lāt-*

Exercise

Using the pool of prefixes and suffixes you have built up so far (pp. 32, 43), construct English words from the stems of *mittō* (*miss-*), *faciō* (*fact-*), *ferō* (*lāt-*) and *dūcō* (*duct-*). Say how the English word gets its meaning. The final list should be on the long side.

Word exercise

- Give the meaning and Latin connection of these English words: nuptial, animate, hominid (*-id* = 'son of'), voluntary, onus, fact.
- Observe how fruitful the *fer-* stem is in English. Give the meanings of: igniferous, auriferous.
- What sort of people are those who are asinine and bovine?
- Note that *ae-* in Latin becomes *e-* in mediaeval Latin and so, often, in English, e.g. *aequus* – 'equal'.

Everyday Latin

Cf. = *cōnfer* 'compare!' (*cum* + *ferō* 'bring together').

A 'recipe' in English is an imperative – *recipe!* 'take!', from *recipiō*. This is a useful way of remembering 3/4 imperatives.

A common neuter noun in *-us* in Latin is *corpus*. Remember it is neuter, with stem *corpor-*, through *mēns sāna in corpore sānō* 'a healthy mind in a

healthy body' (Juvenal, Roman satirist, telling us what all men should pray for). Cf. corporeal, incorporate, corporation. Equally helpful may be the tag *habeās corpus* 'you may have the body'.

Real Latin

Martial

Tongiliānus habet nāsum: scio, nōn nego. sed iam
nīl praeter nāsum Tongiliānus habet. (12.88)

Tongiliān-us ī 2m.	(habeō nāsum means 'I am critical' – lit. 'I have a nose')	nego 1 I deny
Tongilianus (based on tongeō 2 'I know')	scio I know	iam now
nās-us ī 2m. discernment		nīl nothing
		praeter + acc. except

nōn cēnat sine aprō noster, Tite, Caeciliānus.
bellum conuīuam Caeciliānus habet.¹ (7.59)

¹ See p. xii for an explanation of the linking devices used here.

cēnō 1 I dine	Tite = O Titus	conuīu-a ae 1m. guest,
sine + abl. without	Caeciliān-us ī 2m.	table-companion
aper apr-ī 2m. wild boar	Caecilianus	
noster nostr-a um our	bell-us a um handsome	

NB. Boar was a dish usually cooked for a party; Caecilianus ate it when dining alone.

Vulgate

saluum mē fac, domine (Psalm 59)

pater, sī uīs, trānsfer calicem istum ā mē. (Luke 22.42)

calicem istum this cup

Ordinary of the Mass

laudāmus tē, benedicimus tē, adōrāmus tē, glōrificāmus tē, grātiās
agimus tibi propter magnam glōriam tuam: Domine Deus, rēx caelestis,
Deus pater omnipotēns.

laudō 1 I praise ('laud')	glōrificō 1 I glorify	rēx king
benedicō 3 I bless	grātiās agō 3 I give thanks	caelestis in heaven
adōrō 1 I worship (ad + ōrō)	tibi to you	omnipotēns all-powerful
	propter (+ acc.) for the sake of	

Section 1F

Running vocabulary for 1F

āmittere to lose	ergō so	omnēs (nom. pl.), omnīs (acc. pl.) all
āmittō 3 I lose	facere to make, do	omnia (nom., acc. pl. n.) all, all things
anim-a ae 1f. breath	facile easy	opus oper-is 3n. work, job
apud (+ acc.) at the home of	follis foll-is 3m. bag	ōs ōr-is 3n. mouth
arāne-a ae 1f. cobweb	fugio 3/4 I flee	pauper-tās paupertāt-is 3f. poverty
argente-us a um silver	fūm-us ī 2m. smoke	periit (it) has disappeared
ārid-us a um dry	hāc this	portābō I will carry
attatae aaaargh!	hercle by Hercules!	praesegmin-a 3 (n. pl.) nail-clippings
auār-us a um greedy	immortālēs immortal	praetor praetōr-is 3m. praetor (state official who tried criminal cases)
audācēs (nom. pl.) } cocky,	impōnō 3 I place	profundere to pour away
audācīs (acc. pl.) } out-	ināni-a ae 1f. emptiness	quid negōtī what (of) business?
audāx (nom. s.) } rageous	ingēns (nom.) } s. } huge,	sī quid 'if . . . anything' (obj.)
auferre to take away	ingentem (acc.) } s. } huge,	sciō 4 I know
auferō I take away	ingentēs (nom.) } s. } large,	scire to know
auid-us a um greedy	ingentia (nom., } pl. } massive	stult-us a um stupid
aut or	ingentīs (acc.) } pl. }	tēcum with you
caput head, fount, source	inire to enter	tōnsor tōnsōr-is 3m. barber
cēn-a ae 1f. dinner	intrō inside	tristis sad
cīuis cīu-is 3m.f. citizen	inuenire to find	turb-a ae 1f. crowd, mob; disturbance
cognōuistisne do you (pl.) know?	ire to go	ubi when
colligō 3 I collect	istīc there	uās-um ī 2n. pot, vase
comprehendō 3 I seize	lapis lapid-is 3m. stone	uerberāre to flog
coquere to cook	lauō 1 I wash	uestis uest-is 3f. clothes
coquō 3 I cook	manibus (abl.) hands	uester uestr-a um your(s)
culter cultr-ī 2m. knife	mēcum with me	uexō 1 annoy
dē (+ abl.) from	mendāx (nom.) liar	ui-a ae 1f. road, way
difficile difficult	mittō 3 I send	uōs (nom., acc.) you (pl.)
domō from the house	negōtium habere to do business	
dormire to sleep	nihil } nothing	
dormiō 4 I sleep	nīl } nothing	
dūcere to lead (in marriage)	nisi unless	
dum while	nōs (nom., acc.) we, us	
dux duc-is 3m. leader	omne (nom., acc. s.) all	

Learning vocabulary for 1F

Nouns

cēn-a ae 1f. dinner
turb-a ae 1f. crowd, mob
cīuis cīu-is 3m. f. citizen

nihil (nīl) (indecl.)
 nothing

Verbs

āmitt-ō 3 *āmis-* *āmiss-*
 I lose
aufer-ō *auferre* 3 *abstul-*
ablāt- I take away
coqu-ō 3 I cook
mitt-ō 3 *mīs-* *miss-* I send

dormi-ō 4 I sleep
inueni-ō *inuenire* 4 I find
sci-ō 4 I know
fugi-ō 3/4 I escape, run
 off, flee
habe-ō *negōtium* I conduct

business
ine-ō *inire* I enter, go in

Others

apud + acc. at the house
 of, in the hands of, in
 the works of

aut or
quid negōtī? what (of)
 business, problem,

trouble?
ubi when? (where (at)?)

New forms: adjectives

audāx *audāc-is* brave,
 bold, resolute
facil-is e easy

ingēns *ingent-is* huge,
 large, lavish
omn-is e all, every;
omnia everything

trīst-is e sad, gloomy,
 unhappy

Grammar and exercises for 1F

41 Present infinitive active 'to —' (= second principal part): all conjugations

1	2	3	4	3/4
'to love'	'to have'	'to say'	'to hear'	'to capture'
<i>amā-re</i>	<i>habē-re</i>	<i>dic-e-re</i>	<i>audī-re</i>	<i>cāp-e-re</i>

Notes

- 1 The infinitive commonly means 'to —', e.g. *amāre* 'to love'. It is, in fact, an indeclinable NOUN based on a verb (derivation = *in* 'no', *fīnis* 'ending'). Consider how 'I like a run' ('run', noun, object) means virtually the same as 'I like to run' ('to run' noun, object).
- 2 Note the long vowel in conjs. 1, 2 and 4, and the loss of -i- in the 3rd/4th conj. infinitive.

- 3 The infinitive is known as the second principal part (the first principal part being the dictionary form, i.e. *amō*, *habeō*, *dicō*, *audiō*, *capiō*). At the moment it is important to learn because, in conjunction with the first principal part, it tells you infallibly what conjugation the verb is. Thus:

1st p.p.	2nd p.p.	
-ō	-āre	= 1st conj.
-eō	-ēre	= 2nd conj.
-ō	-ere	= 3rd conj.
-iō	-īre	= 4th conj.
-iō	-ere	= 3rd/4th conj.

42 Irregular infinitives: *sum*, *eō*, *uolō*, *ferō*

Learn the following irregular infinitives:

sum — *ēs-se* 'to be'
eō — *ī-re* 'to go'
uolō — *uél-le* 'to wish'
ferō — *fēr-re* 'to bear'

Exercise

Give the infinitive of these verbs and translate: *habeō*, *explicō*, *cēlō*, *inueniō*, *maneō*, *redeō*, *dūcō*, *dicō*, *poscō*, *stō*, *rogō*, *fugiō*, *āmittō*, *auferō*, *faciō*, *sum*, (optional: *uerberō*, *coquō*, *dormiō*, *seruō*, *uolō*).

43 Personal pronouns: *ego*, *nōs*; *tū*, *uōs*

nom.	égo	'I'	nōs	'we'	tū	'you'	uōs	'you'
acc.	mē		nōs		tē		uōs	
gen.	mēi		nóstrum	}	túi		uéstrum	}
			nóstri				uéstri	
dat.	míhi (mī)		nóbīs		tíbi		uóbīs	
abl.	mē		nóbīs		tē		uóbīs	

Notes

- 1 You have already met the s. forms *ego*, *tū*. Here are their plurals, *nōs*, *uōs*. Note the gen. pl. forms.

2 *nostrum, uestrum* are the so-called 'partitive' genitives (31), e.g. *multū nostrum* 'many of us'. *nostrī, uestrī* are 'objective' genitives (see 22³), e.g. *memor nostrī* 'mindful of us'.

44 3rd decl. adjectives: *omn-is e* 'all', 'every'

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	ómnī-s	ómn-e	ómn-ēs	ómn-ia
acc.	ómn-em	ómn-e	ómn-īs (omn-ēs)	ómn-ia
gen.	←ómn-is→		←ómn-ium→	
dat.	←ómn-ī→		←ómn-ibus→	
abl.	←ómn-ī→		←ómn-ibus→	

Notes

- Just as with 2nd decl. adjectives like *mult-us a um*, 3rd decl. adjectives must agree in *gender, number and case* with the nouns they describe (14).
- M. and f. forms are the same as each other in s. and pl. – a useful saving of labour for the learner.
- Generally, 3rd declension adjectives are *-i-* stems (cf. 12) and have:

abl. s. in *-ī*, acc. pl. in *-īs*, n. pl. in *-ia*, gen. pl. in *-ium*

Contrast 3rd declension consonant-stem nouns, which have:

abl. s. in *-e*, acc. pl. in *-ēs*, n. pl. in *-a*, gen. pl. in *-um*

- Similar to *omnis*: *trīst-is e* 'sad'; *facil-is e* 'easy'; *difficil-is e* 'difficult'.

45 3rd decl. adjectives: *ingēns ingēns (ingent-)* 'huge'

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	íngēns	íngēns	ingént-ēs	ingént-ia
acc.	ingént-em	íngēns	ingént-īs (ingént-ēs)	ingént-ia
gen.	←ingént-is→		←ingént-ium→	
dat.	←ingént-ī→		←ingént-ibus→	
abl.	←ingént-ī→		←ingént-ibus→	

NB. Observe the stem change of this common type of adjective in *-ēns* and note that its n. s. form is the same as the m./f. form in the nom. Otherwise, its endings are identical to those of *omnis*.

46 3rd decl. adjectives: *audāx audāx (audāc-)* 'bold', 'courageous'

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	aúdāx	aúdāx	audāc-ēs	audāc-ia
acc.	audāc-em	aúdāx	audāc-īs (audāc-ēs)	audāc-ia
gen.	←audāc-is→		←audāc-ium→	
dat.	←audāc-ī→		←audāc-ibus→	
abl.	←audāc-ī→		←audāc-ibus→	

NB. This very common 3rd decl. adjective type ends in *-x* in the nom., and has its stem in *-c-*. *audāx* follows the pattern of *ingēns* in the relationship between the nom. s. m. and n. forms. Other endings identical with *omnis*, *ingēns*.

Exercise

- Decline in full: *puer audāx*; *omnis aqua*; *ingēns periculum*.
- Construct a grid consisting of 7 columns with headings as follows:

NOUN CASE NUMBER GENDER *omnis* *ingēns* *audāx*

Under the heading NOUN write the following list of nouns down the column: *seruae, thēsaurī, oculōs, dominus, nōminibus, cōnsilium, cēnā, turbārum, cīuī, pecūniās, puellā, periculō, ignis, animīs*.

Leave plenty of space between each noun. In the next three columns, define exactly the case, number and gender of each of the nouns. In the last three columns make *omnis*, *ingēns* and *audāx* agree with the noun. Where the form of the noun indicates different possible cases, write down all the possibilities. E.g.:

NOUN	CASE	NUMBER	GENDER	<i>omnis</i>	<i>ingēns</i>	<i>audāx</i>
fīliae	gen.	s.	f.	omnis	ingentis	audācis
	dat.	s.	f.	omnī	ingentī	audācī
	nom.	pl.	f.	omnēs	ingentēs	audācēs

- Determine which of the nouns is in agreement with the given adjective (the answer may be one or more than one):

ingentem – *nōminum, cōnsilium, deum, seruārum*
audāx – *puellā, cōnsilium, homo, dominus, ingenia*
omnium – *oculum, coquōrum, periculum, honōrem*

tristēs – animōs, dominī, filiae, familiam, aedīs
 facilia – aqua, serua, puella, familia, scelera
 difficilī – coquō, frāter, sorōris, dominus, filiā, turba, exitiō

47 *dīues dīuit-is* 'wealthy', 'a wealthy man'; *pauper pauper-is* 'poor', 'a poor man'

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	dīues	dīues	dīuit-ēs	dīuit-a
acc.	dīuit-em	dīues	dīuit-ēs	dīuit-a
gen.	← dīuit-is →		← dīuit-um →	
dat.	← dīuit-ī →		← dīuit-ibus →	
abl.	← dīuit-e →		← dīuit-ibus →	

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	pauper	pauper	pauper-ēs	pauper-a
acc.	pauper-em	pauper	pauper-ēs	pauper-a
gen.	← pauper-is →		← pauper-um →	
dat.	← pauper-ī →		← pauper-ibus →	
abl.	← paupere →		← pauper-ibus →	

When used to describe a noun, these two adjectives mean 'wealthy' or 'poor'. But they can be used *on their own*, when they act as *nouns*, and mean 'a wealthy person', 'a poor person', e.g. *Eucliō dīuitēs amat* 'Euclio adores the rich/rich people' (noun); but *Eucliō homo pauper est* 'Euclio is a poor man' (adjective).

The same principle applies to all adjectives in Latin. When used on their own, they can stand as nouns. In such circumstances, it is very important to pay close attention to the *gender* of the adjective, e.g. *multī* (pl.) on its own would mean 'many men'; *multae* 'many women'; *multa* 'many things'. *omnēs* could mean 'all men' or 'all women'; but *omnia* would mean 'all things', 'everything'.

NB. These are consonant-stem adjectives. Contrast *omnis*, *ingēns*, *audāx* 44–6.

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- cēnam igitur ingentem coquus audāx coquere uult.
- quārē omnia coquōrum nōmina scīre uīs?
- cōsiliū autem audāx in animō habēs.
- ubi in aedīs intrāre uultis, statim nōs uocāte.
- scelera audācia omnis pauper facere uult.
- turba hominum audācium ingēns ad aedīs Megadōrī adit.

2 Translate into English:

- multae neque dormiunt neque cēnam coquunt.
- bona aufert.
- omnia scīre uultis.
- pulchrī pulchrās amant.
- omnēs pecūniā habēre uolunt.
- multī fugiunt, multī autem stant.
- pauperem dīues nōn amat.
- omnēs bonī cīuīs cūrant.
- malī mala cōgitant.
- pecūnia omnīs uexat.

3 Translate these sentences:

- aeuum omne et breue et fragile est. (Pliny)
- senectūs īnsānābilis morbus est. (Seneca)
- īra furor breuis est. (Horace)
- rationāle animal est homo. (Seneca)
- facilis est ad beātam uītā uia. (Seneca)
- difficile est saturam nōn scribere. (Juvenal)
- difficile est longum subitō dēpōnere amōrem. (Catullus)
- nātūrā quidem mūtāre difficile est. (Seneca)
- uarium et mūtābile semper fēmina (Virgil)
- turpe senex mīles, turpe senīlis amor. (Ovid)

aeu-um ī 2n. age

breu-is e short

fragil-is e brittle, frail

senectūs senectūt-is 3f. old

age

īnsānābil-is e incurable

morb-us ī 2m. disease

īr-a ae 1f. anger

furor furōr-is 3m. madness

rationāl-is e possessing

reason

animal animāl-is 3n.

animal

beāt-us a um happy,

blessed

uīt-a ae 1f. life

ui-a ae 1f. road, way
 difficil-is e difficult
 satur-a ae 1f. satire
 scribō 3 I write
 long-us a um long, long
 lasting

subitō suddenly
 dēpōnō 3 I lay aside
 amor amōr-is 3m. love
 nātūr-a ae 1f. nature
 quidem indeed (emphasises
 preceding word)

mūtō 1 I change, alter
 uari-us a um variable
 mutābil-is e changeable
 turp-is e disgraceful
 mīles mīlit-is 3m. soldier
 senil-is e in an old man

Reading exercises

1 Analyse these examples, in the order of the words, determining subject, object, verb, infinitive.

- The intellect of man is forced to choose Perfection of the life, or of the work. (Yeats)
- To err is human, to forgive divine. (Pope)
- And that same prayer doth teach us all to render The deeds of mercy. (Shakespeare)
- We'll teach you to drink deep. (Shakespeare)
- To make dictionaries is dull work. (Johnson)
- Love looks not with the eyes but with the mind, And therefore is wing'd Cupid painted blind. (Shakespeare)

2 Say, as you translate in the order of the words, what the functions of the words and the word-groups are in these incomplete sentences. Complete them (with part of uolō) and translate into correct English. Then read them aloud, phrasing them correctly.

- ubi pauper cēnam ingentem habere . . . ?
- quō tū inīre . . . ?
- cūrās dīuitis ferre omnis pauper . . .
- amāre puellās pulchrās et aurum dominī auferre nōs seruī . . .
- facile ferre onus cīuēs omnēs . . .
- uōs apud Eucliōnem cēnam coquere numquam . . .

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read this passage, translating in word-order, defining the function of each word and anticipating the construction. Translate into correct English. Then read the passage aloud in Latin, phrasing correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 1F.

Megadōrus nūptiās facere uult. coquōs igitur uocat multōs ad aedīs. coquōrum opus est cēnam coquere ingentem. uxōrem domum dūcit

Megadōrus Phaedram, Eucliōnis filiam. sed coquī Eucliōnem uirum pauperem habent et trīstem. nam nīl āmittere uult. follem enim ingentem, ubi dormīre uult, in ōs impōnit. ita animam, dum dormit, nōn āmittit. apud tōnsōrem praesegmina, quod nihil uult āmittere, colligit omnia et domum dūcit. aquam dare nōn uult. ignem dare, quod āmittere timet, nōn uult. uir trīstis est. coquī igitur in aedīs inīre Megadōrī, uirī dīuitis et facilis, uolunt. perīculum autem in aedibus Megadōrī multum est, uāsa argentea ingentia, uestēs multae, multum aurum. sī quid seruī āmittunt, coquōs fūrēs putant (*think*) et comprehendere uolunt. apud Eucliōnem autem coquī saluī sunt. uāsa argentea ex aedibus auferre Eucliōnis facile nōn est, quod uāsa nūlla habet!

English-Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- quārē in aedīs Megadōrī, uirī dīuitis, onus ferre uultis?
Do you want to cook dinner in a poor man's, Euclio's, house?
- cīuēs omnēs ē perīculō exīre uolunt.
Resolute slaves want to escape from the house.
- ingentem enim āmittere pecūniam quis uult?
What woman doesn't want to find a bold slave?
- dīuitēs ubi nūptiās faciunt, coquōs in aedīs uocant.
When they want a large dinner, masters ask for a good cook.
- omnēs coquī cultrōs portant ingentīs.
A beautiful woman draws (ferō) a big crowd.
- apud tamen pauperem cēna trīstis est.
At a rich man's house dinners are excellent.

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

ā/ab appears as au as a prefix to ferō, i.e. auferō 'I take away'.
 in means 'into', 'upon' in inueniō 'I come upon', 'I find'.

Observe the interesting combination of elements in negōtium 'business'. The word is built up of nec(g)- 'not' + ōtium 'leisure'.

Word exercises

- 1 Give the meaning and Latin connection of: civilised, nihilistic, cook, dormitory, fugitive, negotiate, initial, invention, science, emit.
- 2 Give English words from the Latin: facilis, audāx, omnis (dat. pl.), āridus, lapis (NB stem), tōnsor.

Real Latin

Sayings of Cato

quod (an amount which) satis est dormī.
 āleam (gambling) fuge.
 meretrīcem (whore) fuge.

Vulgate

beātī pauperēs quia uestrum est rēgnum deī. (Luke 6.20)

beātus blessed uestrum yours rēgnum kingdom
 beātī pauperēs insert sunt

Giovanni Cotta (1480–1510)¹

amō, quod fateor, meam Lycōrim,
 ut pulchrās iuvenēs amant puellās;
 amat mē mea, quod reor, Lycōris,
 ut bonae iuvenēs amant puellae.

quod fateor 'as I admit' iuuenis iuuen-is 3m. young quod reor 'as I think'
 Lycōrim = acc. s. of man
 Lycoris

¹ Latin was the language of scholarship and international communication throughout the Renaissance (fifteenth and sixteenth centuries) and was still felt by and large to be the proper medium for literature also. These are the first four lines of a poem in which the poet's girl gives him some locks of her hair as a love-pledge. The poet burns them, since they have, he claims, 'burned' him – with love!

Mottoes¹

fac rēctē et nīl timē. (Hill)
 ā deō et patre. (Thomas)
 amat uictōria cūram. (Clark)

rēctē rightly ā on the side of uictōria victory

¹ These mottoes originate in mediaeval times or later. Many families have several.

Word study

uestis means 'clothes' (uestiō 'I dress'), so English 'vest'. uestiārium 'dressing room' emerges in English as 'vestry'. inuestire 'to put clothes on', 'surround' gives 'investiture' and 'invest' (clothing one's money with yet more?). trāns 'across' + uest- yields 'transvestite', one who crosses over to the clothes of the opposite sex, or simply one who disguises himself: hence 'travesty'. dī- (indicating separation) + uest- gives 'divest', 'take clothes off'.

Do not confuse with 'vestige', from uestīgium 'footprint', 'trace': hence e.g. 'investigate', which means 'following on someone's tracks'.

Section 1G

Running vocabulary for 1G

age! come!	currō 3 I run	immō more precisely
alter alter-a um one or	custōdiō 4 I guard	immortāl-is e immortal
other (of two)	custōs custōd-is 3m.f. guard	impudēns impudent,
amb-ō ae ō both	dē (+ abl.) about,	shameless (one)
amor amōr-is 3m. love	concerning	inrēpō 3 I creep
an or	dextr-a ae 1f. right (hand)	īnsān-us a um mad
animō aequō in a calm	domō (from) home	inueniō 4 I find
frame of mind, i.e.	ēbriō (to) a drunkard	iuuenis iuuen-is 3m. youth
cool, collected	ecce look!	laeu-a ae 1f. left (hand)
animō bonō in a cheerful	edepol by Pollux!	licet it is permitted to
frame of mind, i.e.	em here you are! there!	(+ dat.)
cheerful	es! be! (s.)	loc-us ī 2m. place, site
ante (+ acc.) before	esse to be	lumbrīc-us ī 2m. worm
auferō 3 I take x (acc.)	etiam still	manum (acc.) hand
away from y (dat.)	fānō (to) the shrine	mēcum with me
caec-us a um blind	fān-um ī 2n. shrine	melius better
certē without doubt	fateor I confess	mihi to/for me; from me
certō for a fact	Fidēs Faith	miserō (dat.) miserable
crēdō 3 I believe x (dat.);	forās outside	nesciō 4 I do not know
entrust x (acc.) to y	heus hey!	nisi except
(dat.)	hominī (from) the man	noster nostr-a um our
culp-a ae 1f. blame, guilt	id quod that which	nūllā continentīā of no self-
cum (+ abl.) with	ignōscō 3 (+ dat.) I pardon	restraint

ostendō 3 I show
perdō 3 I lose, destroy
plāg-a ae 1f. blow; *plāgās*
dō (+ dat.) I beat
plōrō 1 I weep
prōferō 3 I show, hold out
prohibeō 2 I prevent, stop
propter (+ acc.) on
 account of
quidūis whatever he likes
quod what, that which;
 which
reddō 3 I give back

referō 3 I hand back
rūrsum again
sit-us a um placed
spectātōribus (dat. pl.) to
 the audience
summā audaciā of great
 boldness
summā pulchritūdine of
 great beauty
summā uirtūte of great
 uprightness
tangō 3 I touch, lay hands
 on

terti-us a um third (hand)
tibi to/for you; from you
trifūr triple thief
tuō (dat.) your
uae shame on!
uerb-um ī 2n. word
uerberābilissim-us most
 floggable
uēr-us a um true
uīl-is e cheap
uīn-um ī 2n. wine

Learning vocabulary for 1G

Nouns

audaci-a ae 1f. boldness,
 cockiness
continenti-a ae 1f. self-
 control, restraint

fān-um ī 2n. shrine
iūuenis iūuen-is is 3m.
 young man

uirtūs uirtūt-is 3f.
 manliness, courage,
 goodness

Adjectives

aequ-us a um fair,
 balanced, equal

summ-us a um highest, top
 of

Verbs

age! come!
crēdō 3 *crēdid-* *crēdit-*
 I believe (+ dat.);
 I entrust x (acc.) to y
 (dat.)

ostendō 3 I show, reveal
reddō 3 *reddid-* *reddit-*
 I return, give back

tangō 3 *tetig-* *tāct-* I touch,
 lay hands on

Others

certē without doubt

certō for a fact

Grammar and exercises for 1G

48 The dative case: usage and meaning

- 1 The dative is in one sense only the 'giving' case (the word derives from *dō datus* 'I give'). That is, if I give something to a person, the person who

receives it is in the dative case, e.g. *mihi aulam dat* 'he gives me the pot / the pot to me'. But equally, it is the 'losing' case too, since if I take something from a person, the person goes into the dative case, e.g. *hominī aulam auferō* 'I take the pot from the man'. So one can say that the dative is the case defining the gainer or the loser, the one advantaged or disadvantaged.

- 2 Another 'advantage' sense is that of possession, expressed by *sum* + dative, e.g. *est mihi pecūnia* 'there is money to me', 'I have money'.
- 3 Another common usage of the dative is to denote the person spoken to (also, in some sense, a gainer – a gainer of the words you have spoken), e.g. *fēminae dicit multa* 'he says many things to the woman'.

'To' (i.e. 'to the advantage of') and 'from' (i.e. 'to the disadvantage of') (and sometimes 'for') will translate the dative best for the time being. But you should note that the usages and meanings of the dative are very wide, and that when they are all gathered together the common idea behind them all seems to be that the person in the dative is somehow *involved or interested in the action of the verb*: that action has some consequences for the person, sometimes specific, sometimes quite vague. So when you come across a dative, ask first 'how is the person in the dative case affected by the verb?'

Distinguish between 'to' and 'from' indicating primarily *motion* (when Latin uses *ad*, *ex*, *ab*) and the dative usages (indicating gain or loss) outlined above.

Exercises

- 1 Form the dative s. and pl. of these noun + adjective phrases: *senex miser*; *puella audāx*; *puer ingēns*; *onus multum*; *cōsiliū audāx*; (optional: *soror optima*; *nōmen meum*; *culter tuus*; *seruus omnis*).
- 2 Pick out the datives in this list: *cūram*, *animō*, *fāna*, *uirtūtī*, *audāciae*, *hominis*, *animōs*, *dīuitibus*, *uxor*, *onerī*, *pecūniam*, *filiis*, *aquae*, *dominō*, *ignibus*, *uicīnum*, *dīs*, *honōrēs*, *fēminīs*, *corōnae*, *cōsiliō*.
- 3 Give the Latin for: to the huge slaves; for me; to the unhappy old man's disadvantage; to the wicked wives; for us; belonging to you (s.); (optional: to the advantage of the best citizen; belonging to the bold slave-girl; to the good father's disadvantage; for every boy).
- 4 Translate these sentences:

- (a) deinde Lar familiae aulam Eucliōnī dat aurī plēnam.
- (b) senex miser tamen aurum omne fānō crēdit.
- (c) sed seruus audāx senī miserō aurum auferre uult.
- (d) Eucliō autem ita seruō clāmat malō; 'quid tibi negōtī est in fānō? quid mihi aufers?'
- (e) seruus igitur timet et Eucliōnī aurum nōn aufert.
- (f) Eucliō autem ā fānō aulam aufert, quod nunc deō aurum crēdere nōn uult.

49 The ablative of description

The ablative is used to *describe the qualities* people or things have which enable them to act as they do. This is the ablative of description, e.g. *uir summā uirtūte* 'a man with/of great courage', *iuuenis nullā continentīā* 'a young man with/of no self-control'. Translate such ablatives as 'with' first time round, then adjust to produce a smooth English version.

Exercises

- 1 Form the ablative s. and pl. of these noun + adjective phrases: senex miser; puella audāx; puer ingēns; onus multum; cōsiliū audāx; (optional: soror optima; nōmen meum; culter tuus; seruus omnis).
- 2 Pick out the ablatives in this list: curā, animō, fānum, uirtūtis, audāciis, homine, animī, diuiti, uxōre, pecūniā, filiis, aquam, dominō, ignibus, uicīnōs, deus, honōribus, fēminā, corōnīs, cōsiliō, scelere.
- 3 Give the Latin for: in the shrine; away from the woman; out of the waters; in a crime; out of the mind; in the plans; out of the fires; (optional: away from worry; out of the pots; in the household; away from a brother; out of the names).
- 4 Translate these sentences:
 - (a) Eucliō uir est summā continentīā.
 - (b) Lycōnidēs iuuenis summā pulchritūdine est, nullā continentīā.
 - (c) animō aequō es, mī fili.
 - (d) tū serua es summā audāciā, summā pulchritūdine, continentīā nullā.
 - (e) animō bonō sum, quod filiam meam summā uirtūte puellam habeo.

5 Translate these sentences:

- (a) fortis fortuna iuuat. (Terence)
- (b) nemo est in amore fidelis. (Propertius)
- (c) omnis ars naturae imitatio est. (Seneca)
- (d) patet omnibus ueritas. (Seneca)
- (e) omni aetate mors est communis. (Cicero)
- (f) magna di curant, parua neglegunt. (Cicero)
- (g) Britannī capillō sunt promissō atque omni parte corporis rasā praeter caput et labrum superius. (Caesar)

fort-is e brave	ueritās ueritat-is 3f. truth	capill-us ī 2m. hair
fortūn-a ae 1f. fortune	aetās aetat-is 3f. age	promiss-us a um long
iuuō 1 I help	mors mort-is 3f. death	atque and
nemo (nom.) no one	commun-is e common (to: + dat.)	pars part-is 3f. part
amor amor-is 3m. love	paru-us a um small	corpus corpor-is 3n. body
fidel-is e faithful	neglegō 3 I neglect, do not bother with	ras-us a um shaved
ars art-is 3f. art	Britann-ī ōrum 2m. pl. Britons	praeter (+ acc.) except
natur-a ae 1f. nature		caput capit-is 3n. head
imitatio imitatio-n-is 3f. imitation		labr-um ī 2n. lip
pateō 2 I lie open		superius upper (n. s.)

Reading exercises

- 1 Read through these sentences carefully. As you translate, in the order of the words, define the function of each word (making certain that you phrase the words correctly). When you meet a dative, if you have not yet had any clue to help define its function closely (e.g. a verb like crēdō, reddō), register dative as 'affecting x' and proceed until the precise meaning emerges, e.g.:

crēdō (I entrust – you expect an object + a dative) tibi (dative – to you, solved by crēdō) aurum (object – the gold, already anticipated)
aurum (gold – subject or object) tibi (dative – with some effect on you; not solved yet – we expect a verb) auferō ('I take away' – aurum object, tibi 'from you', solved by construction of auferō).

- (a) senī miserō seruus audāx multa dicit mala.
- (b) unguentum et corōnās et aurum mihi ostende.
- (c) uxōrī meae domī nimis cūrārū est.
- (d) quārē tū mihi meum aurum nōn reddis?
- (e) ego tibi, quod uicīnus es bonus, meam filiam promittō.
- (f) uxōrēs pulchrae diuitibus, quod coquīs pecūniam multam dare uolunt, aurum semper auferunt.

- (g) tibi multōs seruōs pecūniamque multam dō.
 (h) seruō audācī et seruae pulchrae nihil umquam crēdō.
 (i) uirō dīuitī, quod mihi dōs nūlla est, filiā meam prōmittere uolō.
 (j) nōbīs corōna, unguentum uōbīs domī est.

2 In these sentences, the verb has been omitted. By doing as in the previous exercise, say what you anticipate. Then fill the gap (it may often be possible to insert verbs which alter the function of the dative completely). Translate.

- (a) hominibus bonīs cīuēs omnēs pecūniam . . .
 (b) quārē mihi aurum . . .?
 (c) nōbīs animus bonus . . .
 (d) fānō, nōn hominī audācī, Eucliō aurum . . .
 (e) tū nōbīs quārē corōnās omnīs et omne unguentum . . .?
 (f) puellīs audācibus et iuuenibus pulchrīs nūlla continentia . . .
 (g) ego filiae meae dōtem ā uirō . . .
 (h) quārē pater tuus mihi tē uxōrem nōn . . .?
 (i) scelus, quid tibi negōtī in aedibus meīs . . .?
 (j) omnī bonō iuuenī uirtūtem audācia . . .

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read the following passage carefully, defining, as you translate, in word-order, the functions of the words and word-groups, and anticipating the following parts of the sentence. When you have done this, translate. Finally, read out the passage, phrasing correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 1G.

est Eucliōnī aula aurī plēna. Eucliō aulam ex aedibus portat. timet enim ualdē. omnibus enim bonīs fūrēs omne aurum auferre semper uolunt. uult igitur in fānō aulam cēlāre. ubi aurum in fānō cēlat Eucliō, Strobīlus uidet. ē fānō exit Eucliō. bonō animō est, quod nunc fūrem timet nūllum. Strobīlus autem ut lumbrīcus in fānum inrēpit. nam aulam Eucliōnī miserō auferre uult. sed seruū audācem uidet Eucliō. seruō audācī mala multa dīcit et aurum poscit. seruus autem senī aurum reddere nōn uult, quod aurum nōn habet. Eucliōnī manū dextram seruus ostendit. deinde senī miserō ostendit laeuam. Eucliō autem manū tertiam rogat. seruus Eucliōnem īnsānum habet et exit. aulam Eucliō ā fānō aufert et alterī (dat. s. m.) locō clam crēdit.

English-Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- (a) Eucliō uir summā uirtūtē est.
Phaedra is an extremely beautiful girl.
 (b) bonō animō es et dā mihi pecūniam.
Be calm (s.) and take the gold from the slave.
 (c) senex miser hominī malō aulam aurī plēnam crēdit.
All the old men are returning the pots full of money to the good citizens.
 (d) uōs autem quārē senī aurum nōn redditis?
But why are you taking the young man's garland from him?
 (e) quid tibi negōtī est in aedibus senis miserī?
What business have you (pl.) in the shrine of my household god?
 (f) est mihi pater optimus, uir summā continentīā.
I've an excellent son, a young man of the highest qualities.

Deliciae Latinae

Word building

(a) Prefixes

sub- (sometimes appears as su-, sus-) 'under', 'from under'
 dē- 'down from'
 per- 'through', 'thoroughly', 'very'

Exercise

Divide each of the following words into their compound parts and suggest a meaning for each: ēuocō, circumducō, perfacilis, trāsmittō, redeō, prōuideō, efferō, praeficiō, āmittō, reddō, subducō, ēducō, subeō, permultus, anteferō, trādō, perficiō, circumdō, dēducō, referō, dēuocō, summittō, perstō.

(b) Noun formation

Many nouns are formed from verbs or adjectives. This is often done by placing a suffix (*sub-fīxus* 'fixed on under', i.e. at the end) onto the verb or

adjective stem. This suffix frequently gives a clue to the meaning of the noun, e.g.:

- sor or -tor (gen. s. -ōris m.) means 'the person who', e.g. *amātor* 'lover'
- or (gen. s. -ōris m.) means 'activity', 'state' or 'condition', e.g. *amor* 'the state of loving', 'love'
- iō, -tiō, -siō (gen. s. -iōnis f.) means 'action or result of an action', e.g. *cōgitātiō* 'the act of thinking', 'thought'
- ium n. means 'action or result of an action', e.g. *aedificium* 'the result of making a house', 'a building'
- men (gen. s. -minis n.) means 'means, or result of an action', e.g. *nō-men* 'means of knowing', 'name'

Exercise

- 1 Give the meaning of the following nouns: *audītor*, *cūrātor*, *uexātiō*, *inuentiō*, *cōsiliū*, *dictiō*, *turbātor*, *prōmissiō*, *maleficium*, *beneficium*, *habitātiō*.
- 2 Form the genitive singular of: *uexātiō*, *dictiō*, *habitātiō*, *inuentiō*, *audītor*, *turbātor*.

Real Latin

Vulgate

pānem nostrum quotīdiānum dā nōbis hodiē et dīmīttē nōbis peccāta nostra (Luke 11.3–4)

pānis *pān-is* 3m. bread

quotīdiān-us a um daily

dīmīttō 3 I discharge
peccāt-um ī 2n. sin

Mottoes (based on the dative)

nōn nōbis, sed omnibus. (Ash, Ashe)

nōn mihi, sed deō et rēgī. (Booth, Warren)

nōn mihi, sed patriae. (Heycock, Jones-Lloyd, Lloyd, Whittingham)

deō, rēgī et patriae. (Irvine, Duncombe)

deō, patriae, tibi. (Lambard, Sidley)

glōria deō. (Challen, Henn)

rēx rēg-is 3m. king

patri-a ae 1f. fatherland

glōri-a ae 1f. glory

SECTION TWO

Section 2A

Running vocabulary for 2A

abibis you (s.) will go off
ac and

accipiō 3/4 I take, receive
accumbō 3 I recline, lie
down

adferam I shall bring (in)
adferēs you (s.) will bring
(in)

adscribam I shall write
alongside

adscribō 3 I write next to,
alongside

adseruābit (he) will keep/
guard

adseruō 1 I keep, guard
adiuuō 1 I help

aduertō: see *animum*

agam I shall deal / take
action

agēmus: see *grātiās*

alter (nom. s. m.) one,
another (of two)

alteram (acc. s. f.) a
second

alteriūs (gen. s. f.) of the
one / of the other (of
two)

amātor amātōr-is 3m. lover

amīc-a ae 1f. mistress

amīc-us ī 2m. friend

animum aduertō 3 I pay
attention

antīqu-us a um ancient
astūti-a ae 1f. astuteness,
(pl.) tricks

atque and
audiēs you (s.) will hear
auferam I shall take away
auferētis you (pl.) will
take away

Bacchis Bacchid-is 3f.

Bacchis (worshipper of
Bacchus, god of wine)

ballist-a ae 1f. catapult
bell-us a um lovely,
beautiful

bene good, fine

biclini-um ī 2n. dining-
couch (for two
persons)

bis twice, a second time

capiam I (shall) capture
capiēs you (s.) will take

cauebit (he) will be wary
caueō 2 I am wary

celerem (acc. s. f.) swift

celerēs (nom. pl. f.) swift

celeris (nom. s. f.) swift

celeriter quickly

cēr-a ae 1f. wax

Chrȳsal-us ī 2m.

Chrysalus ('goldie')

citō quickly

cognōscet (he) will
recognise

compōnō 3 I devise, put
together

corbis corb-is 3m. or f.
basket

crēdet (+ dat.) he will
believe

cum (+ abl.) with

cūrābō I shall take care of

dabis you (s.) will give

dabit he will give

dabō I shall give

dē (+ abl.) about,

concerning

dēbeō 2 I ought

dēcipiam I shall deceive

dēcipiō 3/4 I deceive

dēlēbit it destroys (actually
future, 'it will destroy')

dīcam I shall say

dict-um ī 2n. word

diēs (nom. s. m.) day

difficil-is e difficult

doctē cleverly

doct-us a um clever

donec until

ducent-ī ae a 200
 dum while
 ecce look!
 erit (it, there, she) will be
 erunt (they) will be
 etiam also
 etiamsi even if
 euax good!
 exurgō 3 I get up
 faciam I shall do
 faciēmus we will run up
 faciēs you (s.) will do
 fallō 3 I deceive, trick
 foris for-is 3f. door
 grātiās agēmus we will
 give thanks (to x: dat.)
 grauitās grauitāt-is 3f.
 seriousness
 habēbis you (s.) will have
 habēbitis you (pl.) will
 have
 habēbō I shall have
 hercle by Hercules
 iam now already
 immō no; more precisely
 imperātor imperātōr-is 3m.
 general
 ingeni-um ī 2n.
 intelligence, brain
 inquit (he) says
 inspiciō 3/4 I look in
 intendam I shall aim
 intrō inside
 inuādā I shall assault,
 invade (in + acc.)
 ioc-us -ī 2m. joke
 ita uērō yes, indeed
 iterum again
 iubēbō I shall order, give
 instructions
 leget he (will) read
 līn-um ī 2n. thread
 litter-a ae 1f. letter (of
 alphabet)
 litter-ae ārum 1f. pl. letter
 loc-us ī 2m. place
 lūn-a ae 1f. moon
 mālō I prefer

mālumus we prefer /
 would rather
 manum (acc. s. f.) hand
 manū (abl. s. f.) hand
 manus (nom. s. f.) hand
 manūs (nom. or acc. pl.
 f.) hands
 māuīs you (s.) prefer
 māuultis you (pl.) prefer
 mēcum with me
 mendāx mendāc-is
 untruthful, lying
 miles milit-is 3m. soldier
 Mnēsilocho-us ī 2m.
 Mnesilochus
 ('remembers the
 ambush')
 modo now
 Nicobul-us ī 2m.
 Nicobulus ('victorious
 in judgement')
 nesciō 4 I do not know
 nisi except
 nōli (s.) } don't (+ inf.)
 nōlite (pl.) }
 nōlō I do not want /
 refuse
 nōn uīs you (s.) do not
 want / refuse
 nōnne surely?
 noster nostra nostrum our
 nox noct-is 3f. night
 numm-us ī 2m. coin
 obligābō I shall tie up
 obligō 1 I tie up
 obsecrō 1 I beseech, beg
 obsignābō I shall seal
 obsignō 1 I seal
 offici-um ī 2n. duty, job
 oppid-um ī 2n. town
 per (+ acc.) through
 pergō 3 I continue, go on
 Pistoclēr-us ī 2m.
 Pistoclerus ('trustworthy
 with property')
 plān-us a um smooth
 port-a ae 1f. gate
 possum I am able / can

post (+ acc.) after
 posteā afterwards
 poterō I shall be able
 poteris you (s.) will be
 able
 potes you (s.) are able
 potest (he) is able
 primō } first
 primum }
 prō (+ abl.) for
 prob-us a um good,
 excellent
 prōpugnācul-um ī 2n.
 rampart
 quam than
 quantum (+ gen.) how
 much?
 quia because
 quōmodo how?
 rem (acc. s. f.) } the
 rēs (nom. s. f., nom. or } matter(s),
 acc. pl. f.) } things
 salūtō 1 I greet
 sapienti-a ae 1f. wisdom
 scribam I shall write
 scribēs you (s.) will write
 scribō 3 I write
 semel once
 sic thus
 sicut just as
 sign-um ī 2n. signal
 sōl sōl-is 3m. sun
 spērō 1 I hope
 stil-us ī 2m. stylus
 (writing implement for
 wax tablet)
 stultiti-a ae 1f. stupidity
 stult-us a um stupid
 sūmptus (nom. s. m.)
 expense
 sūmptūs (acc. pl. m.)
 expenses
 su-us a um his
 tabell-ae ārum 1f. pl.
 writing tablets
 tāl-is e such

tenēbis you (s.) will hold
 turris turr-is 3f. tower
 (acc. s. turrim)
 ūsus erit it will be of
 benefit

ueniō 4 I come
 uērō indeed
 uēr-us a um true
 uester uestra uestrum your
 (pl.)

ui-a ae 1f. way, road
 uictōri-a ae 1f. victory
 uinciēt (he) will bind
 uinciō 4 I bind

Learning vocabulary for 2A

Nouns

amīc-a ae 1f. mistress
 astūti-a ae 1f. astuteness;
 (pl.) tricks
 cēr-a ae 1f. wax
 lūn-a ae 1f. moon
 tabell-ae ārum 1f. pl.
 writing tablets

ui-a ae 1f. way, road
 numm-us ī 2m. coin; (pl.)
 money
 offici-um ī 2n. duty, job
 oppid-um ī 2n. town

stil-us ī 2m. stylus
 (writing implement for
 wax tablet)
 nox noct-is 3f. night
 sōl sōl-is 3m. sun

Adjectives

alter altera alterum one,
 another (of two: see
 Grammar 2B)
 ducent-ī ae a 200

noster nostra nostrum our(s)
 uester uestra uestrum
 your(s) (pl.)

difficil-is e difficult
 mendāx mendāc-is lying,
 untruthful

Verbs

adiuuō 1 I help
 adseruō 1 I keep, guard
 obsecrō 1 I beseech, beg
 adscribō 3 I write in
 addition

scribō 3 scrips- script-
 I write
 uinciō 4 uīnx- uīnct- I bind
 capiō 3/4 cēp- capt- I take,
 capture

dēcipiō 3/4 I deceive
 adferō 3 irr. attul- allāt- I
 bring to

Others

ae (atque) and
 bene good! fine! (well,
 thoroughly, rightly)

cum (+ abl.) (in company)
 with
 dē (+ abl.) about,
 concerning

dum while
 iterum again
 modo now

New forms: nouns

man-us ūs 4f. hand
 sūmpt-us ūs 4m. expense(s)

New forms: adjectives

celer celeris celere swift

New forms: verbs

mālō mālle I prefer

nōlō nōlle I refuse, am
 unwilling

possum posse I am able,
 can

Grammar and exercises for 2A

50 Future indicative active 'I shall —' (all conjugations)

	1	2	3
	'I shall love'	'I shall have'	'I shall say'
1st s.	amā-b-ō	habē-b-ō	dīc-a-m
2nd s.	amā-bi-s	habē-bi-s	dīc-ē-s
3rd s.	amā-bi-t	habē-bi-t	dīc-e-t
1st pl.	amā-bi-mus	habē-bi-mus	dīc-ē-mus
2nd pl.	amā-bi-tis	habē-bi-tis	dīc-ē-tis
3rd pl.	amā-bu-nt	habē-bu-nt	dīc-e-nt
	4	3/4	
	'I shall hear'	'I shall capture'	
1st s.	aúdi-a-m	cápi-a-m	
2nd s.	aúdi-ē-s	cápi-ē-s	
3rd s.	aúdi-e-t	cápi-e-t	
1st pl.	audi-ē-mus	capi-ē-mus	
2nd pl.	audi-ē-tis	capi-ē-tis	
3rd pl.	aúdi-e-nt	cápi-e-nt	

Notes

- The following rhythmic chant may help you to memorise future forms: '-bō -bis -bit in 1 and 2, and -am -ēs -et in 3 and 4'.
- Note that in 1st and 2nd conjs., the endings -bō -bis -bit etc. follow the pattern of 3rd conj. present, i.e. *dūc-ō -is -it* etc. In 3rd and 4th conjs. the new 1st s. ending in -am needs to be learned.

51 Irregular futures: *sum* → *erō*; *eō* → *ībō*

1st s.	ér-ō 'I shall be' etc.	íb-ō 'I shall go' etc.
2nd s.	ér-i-s	íb-i-s
3rd s.	ér-i-t	íb-i-t
1st pl.	ér-i-mus	íb-i-mus
2nd pl.	ér-i-tis	íb-i-tis
3rd pl.	ér-u-nt	íb-u-nt

Notes

- The future of *sum* was originally *es-ō*. The *s* became *r* between vowels, hence *erō*.
- ferō* is regular in the future – *fer-am -ēs -et* etc.

Exercises

- Translate these futures, change *s.* to *pl.* and vice versa, and say to what conjugation each verb belongs: *cēlābunt*, *inueniet*, *āmittēs*, *habēbimus*, *coquent*, *iubēbit*, *uerberābis*, *crēdet*, *capiētis*, *scribam*, *facient*, *audiētis*, (optional: *obsecrābunt*, *dormiet*, *fugiēs*, *habitābitis*, *clāmābit*, *timēbis*, *uidēbimus*, *poscēmus*, *prōmittam*, *ostendent*, *uexābō*, *tacēbitis*, *amābunt*).
- Give the corresponding future form of each of these presents, then translate: *crēdunt*, *salūtat*, *scribit*, *fers*, *estis*, *it*, *rogō*, *cūrant*, (optional: *uincīs*, *capiō*, *adfertis*, *sunt*, *adiuuant*, *dēcipimus*, *scītis*, *possidēs*, *exeō*, *portō*, *tangunt*, *reddis*, *irridēmus*, *dat*).
- Form and translate 3rd *s.* and 3rd *pl.* of the future of the following verbs: *dō*, *clāmō*, *maneō*, *taceō*, *ducō*, *poscō*, *dormiō*, *uinciō*, *capiō*, *fugiō*, *sum*, *redeō*, (optional: *obsecrō*, *uocō*, *moneō*, *habeō*, *prōmittō*, *dīcō*, *sciō*, *inueniō*, *dēcipiō*, *faciō*).
- Translate into Latin: you (*s.*) will hear; they will call; I shall make; we will speak; you (*pl.*) will be silent; he will lead; we will love; (optional: they will deceive; you (*s.*) will fear; I shall keep; you (*pl.*) will cook; she will see).
- Pick out the futures in this list and translate: *ferunt*, *dūcent*, *uident*, *uerberābō*, *dīcis*, *possidēs*, *dūcēs*, *amābunt*, *iubētis*, *facimus*, *fugiēmus*, *timēmus*, *mittēs*, *manēs*, *tacēs*, *dēcipiēs*.

52 Three irregular verbs: *possum*, *nōlō*, *mālō*

Present indicative

	<i>possum</i> 'I can', 'I am able'	<i>nōlō</i> 'I am unwilling', 'I do not want', 'I refuse'	<i>mālō</i> 'I prefer'
1st s.	pós-sum	nōl-ō	māl-ō
2nd s.	pót-es	nōn uīs	mā-uīs
3rd s.	pót-est	nōn uult	mā-uult

1st pl.	pós-sumus	nól-u-mus	māl-u-mus
2nd pl.	pot-éstis	nōn uúltis	mā-uúltis
3rd pl.	pós-sunt	nól-u-nt	māl-unt
Infinitive	pós-se	nól-le	māl-le

Notes

- 1 *possum* is a combination of the stem *pot-* meaning 'power', 'capacity' + *sum*. Where *t* and *s* meet, the result is *-ss* e.g. *potsum* → *possum*.
- 2 *nōlō*, *mālō* are based on *uolō*. *nōlō* is a combination of *ne* + *uolō*. *mālō* is a combination of *magis* (*ma-*) 'more' + *uolō* 'I want (to do x) more (than y)'.
- 3 All three verbs control an infinitive, as they do in English, e.g. 'I am unwilling to', 'I am able to', 'I prefer to'. Note that *mālō* often controls two infinitives, separated by *quam* 'than', e.g. *mālō amāre quam pugnāre* 'I prefer to have love affairs rather than to fight'. The construction often has acc. nouns rather than infinitives.
- 4 The futures of *nōlō*, *mālō*, *uolō* are quite regular – note that *nōlam*, *mālam*, *mālēs* are not actually found; the future of *possum* is again a combination of *pot* + *sum*:

Future indicative

1st s.	póterō	uól-a-m	(nól-a-m)	(māl-a-m)
2nd s.	pót-eris	uól-ē-s	nól-ē-s	(māl-ē-s)
3rd s.	pót-erit	uól-e-t	nól-e-t	māl-e-t
1st pl.	pot-érimus	uol-ē-mus	nól-ē-mus	māl-ē-mus
2nd pl.	pot-éritis	uol-ē-tis	nól-ē-tis	māl-ē-tis
3rd pl.	pót-erunt	uól-e-nt	nól-e-nt	māl-e-nt

Exercises

- 1 Translate into Latin: you (*s.*) wish; we prefer; they refuse; he can; we will prefer; you (*pl.*) do not wish; you (*s.*) are able; they will refuse; (optional: he will wish; they can; we will be able; you (*s.*) prefer; we can; I shall be able).
- 2 Translate and convert presents into futures, futures into presents: *est*, *possunt*, *uolēs*, *mālent*, *nōn uīs*, *erimus*, *nolumus*, (optional: *erunt*, *uult*, *poterit*, *nōlet*, *māuultis*, *uīs*, *potes*).

53 Adjectives in *-er*: *noster*, *uester*; *celer*; *ācer*1st/2nd decl. adjectives: *noster*, *uester*

noster 'our(s)' and *uester* 'your(s)' decline like *pulcher pulchr-a um* (27). The difference between *uester* and *tuus* is that *uester* means 'your(s)' when 'you' are more than one person (cf. 20).

3rd decl. adjectives ending in *-er*

(e.g. *celer celer-is celer-e* 'swift', 'fast')

	s.			pl.	
	m.	f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	céler	céler-is	céler-e	céler-ēs	celér-ia
acc.	céler-em	céler-em	céler-e	céler-īs(-ēs)	celér-ia
gen.		← céler-is →		← celér-ium →	
dat.		← céler-ī →		← celér-ibus →	
abl.		← céler-ī →		← celér-ibus →	

Notes

- 1 3rd decl. adjectives ending in *-er* (do not confuse with 2nd decl. adjectives like *miser*, *pulcher*) decline virtually identically with *omnis*, but do show a difference between the nom. s. m. (*celer*) and f. (*celeris*). They are *i*-stems (cf. 12).
- 2 Note that, while *celer* keeps the *-er* throughout the declension (cf. *miser* of the 1/2nd declension), some *-er* adjectives drop the 'e' (cf. *pulcher* of the 1/2nd declension), e.g. *ācer*.

ācer ācris ācre 'keen', 'sharp'

	s.			pl.	
	m.	f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	ācer	ācr-is	ācr-e	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
acc.	ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-e	ācr-īs(-ēs)	ācr-ia
gen.		← ācr-is →		← ācr-ium →	
dat.		← ācr-ī →		← ācr-ibus →	
abl.		← ācr-ī →		← ācr-ibus →	

54 Cardinal numerals 1–10, 100–1,000

		s.		
		m.	f.	n.
1	I	nom. ūn-us	ūn-a	ūn-um
		acc. ūn-um	ūn-am	ūn-um
		gen. ← ūn-īus →		
		dat. ← ūn-ī →		
		abl. ūn-ō	ūn-ā	ūn-ō
		pl.		
		ūn-ī	ūn-ae	ūn-a (like pl. of multus)
2	II	nom. dú-o	dú-ae	dú-o
		acc. dú-ōs (dú-o)	dú-ās	dú-o
		gen. du-ōrum	du-ārum	du-ōrum
		dat./abl. du-ōbus	du-ābus	du-ōbus
3	III	m./f. nom. tr-ēs	n. tr-ía	
		acc. tr-ēs (tr-īs)	tr-ía	
		gen. ← tr-īum →		
		dat. ← tr-ībus →		
		abl. ← tr-ībus →		
4	IV/IIII	quattuor		
5	V	quīnque		
6	VI	sex		
7	VII	séptem		
8	VIII	óctō		
9	IX/VIII	nóuem		
10	X	décem		
100	C	céntum		
200	CC	ducént-ī ae a (like pl. of multus)		
300	CCC	trecént-ī ae a		
400	CD	quadringént-ī ae a		
500	D	quīngént-ī ae a		
1,000	M	mīlle (indecl. adj.), pl. mīlia gen. mīlium dat./abl. mīlibus (see Note)		

Note

Normally, *mīlle* is used as an adjective and *mīlia* as a noun, e.g.

mīlle mīlitēs = one thousand soldiers

duo mīlia mīlitum = two thousand(s) (of) soldiers

tria mīlia mīlitum = three thousand(s) (of) soldiers etc.

55 4th declension nouns: *manus man-ūs* 4f. 'hand'

	s.	pl.
nom.	mānu-s	mānū-s
acc.	mānu-m	mānū-s
gen.	mānū-s	mānu-um
dat.	mānu-ī	māni-bus
abl.	mānū	māni-bus

Notes

- 1 Most 4th decl. nouns are m. (*manus* is one of the few exceptions).
- 2 It is obviously very easy to confuse these with 2nd decl. nouns like, e.g., *thēsauros*, so it is vital to learn the nom. and gen. s. together.
- 3 Care is needed with the *-ūs* ending, which might be gen. s., nom. or acc. pl. Note that the form *manus* can only be nom. s.

56 4th declension noun (irregular): *domus* 'house' 4f.

	s.	pl.
nom.	dómu-s	dómū-s
acc.	dómu-m	dómū-s or dómō-s
gen.	dómū-s or dom-ī	dom-ōrum (dómu-um)
dat.	dómu-ī or dóm-ō	dóm-ibus
abl.	dóm-ō	dóm-ibus

Notes

- 1 See 30 above for *domum*, *domī* and *domō* meanings.
- 2 *domus* has a mixture of 2nd declension forms in with the 4th.

Exercises

- 1 Give the Latin for: beautiful hand; large hand; my hand; swift hand. Now decline noun and adjective together in all cases, s. and pl.
- 2 Pick out datives and ablatives from this list (note where the form is ambiguous): *uiā*, *amīcae*, *mendācēs*, *oppida*, *lūnam*, *nocte*, *nummōs*, *tabellās*, *manuī*, *celerī*, *sūmptuum*, *officiō facilī*, *scelere audācī*, *stilōs bonōs*, *sōlī*, *nummīs ducentīs*, *astūtiae tuae*, *cēram meam*, *sūmptuī magnō*.

57 3rd declension monosyllables

If a 3rd decl. noun is a *monosyllable* with *two consonants at the end of the stem*, gen. pl. is in *-ium*, e.g.

nox noct-is, gen. pl. *noctium*

dōs dōt-is, gen. pl. *dōtum*

Cf. the normal rule for consonant-stems at 11. Nouns like *nox* are in fact *i*-stem.

Exercises

1 Translate these sentences:

- nummōs senex noster ducentōs in manum tibi hodiē dabit.
- quid uīs mē facere? mālō enim adiuuāre quam nīl facere.
- sī senex mendācem mē habēbit, ego astūtiās magnās facere uolam.
- ego meum officium faciam, uōs uestrum facere mālō.
- amīcīs uestrīs, sī senī aurum auferre poterō, nummōs ducentōs dare poteritis.
- dā mihi manum tuam, tē obsecrō; ego tibi meam dabō.
- sī fēminae uīs crēdere, in aquā celerī scribere uīs.
- aurum sī senī auferre poteris, Chrȳsale, tē seruū magnā astūtiā habēbō.
- dum tacet nox, fūrēs facinora facere mala quam dormīre mālunt.
- cēram, tabellās, stilum aufer mihi: hodiē scribere nōlō.

2 Translate these sentences:

- ūsus magister est optimus. (Cicero)
- sed quis custōdiet ipsōs custōdēs? (Juvenal)
- ācta deōs numquam mortālia fallunt. (Ovid)
- īrācundia leōnēs adiuuat, pauor ceruōs, accipitrem impetus, columbam fuga. (Seneca)
- potest ex casā uir magnus exīre, potest ex dēfōrmī humilīque corpusculō fōrmōsus animus et magnus. (Seneca)
- beātus esse sine uirtūte nēmo potest. (Cicero)
- sine imperiō nec domus ūlla nec cīuitās stāre potest. (Cicero)

ūs-us ūs 4m. experience

magister magistr-ī 2m.

teacher

optim-us a um best

custōdiō 4 I guard

ipsōs (acc. pl. m.)

themselves

custōs custōd-is 3m. guard

āct-um ī 2n. deed

mortāl-is e of human

beings

fallō 3 I deceive, escape

the notice of

īrācundi-a ae 1f. rage

leō leōn-is 3m. lion

pauor pauor-is 3m. panic,

fear

ceru-us ī 2m. stag

accipiter accipitr-is 3m.

hawk

impet-us ūs 4m.

vehemence; attack

columb-a ae 1f. dove

fug-a ae 1f. flight

cas-a ae 1f. cottage, hovel

dēfōrm-is e ugly,

misshapen

humil-is e humble, lowly

corpuscul-um ī 2n. little

body

fōrmōs-us a um beautiful

beāt-us a um happy,

blessed

nēmo (nom.) no one

imperi-um ī 2n. control,

authority

ūll-us a um any

cīuitās cīuitāt-is 3f. state

Reading

Infinitives may add a simple idea to verbs like *possum*, *uolō*, *nōlō*, *mālō* etc.; e.g. *uidēre possum* = I can see; *īre uolō* = I want to go. They may also introduce more complex ideas, since the infinitive may take its own object or prepositional phrase, e.g. *sōlem iterum uidēre uolō* = I want to see the sun again; *in aedīs Bacchidum inīre possum* = I can go into the house of the Bacchises. The limits of the infinitive phrase are marked by the underlining. In the case of *uolō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, *iubeō*, the verb itself may also have an object, which becomes attached to the infinitive phrase: e.g. *tē (obj.) sōlem iterum uidēre uolō* = I want you (obj.) to see the sun again. *mālō* is more complex still, since it often outlines a preference between two things, which are compared by *quam* = 'than', e.g. *lūnam uidēre quam sōlem mālō* = I prefer to see the moon to seeing the sun.

1 In the following sentences, translate in word-order and make explicit the boundaries of the infinitive phrase. Mark which word in the phrase is the object of the introductory verb.

- hominem bonum quam malum filiam meam domum dūcere mālō.
- seruum hominem esse magnā audāciā nōlō.
- tē tuum officium, mē facere meum dominus iubet.
- dominōs uerberāre seruōs audācīs cīuēs mālunt.
- uxōrēs uirōs amāre iubeō.

2 Now read out the sentences in Exercise 1 in Latin, phrasing so as to avoid any possible ambiguities. How would you read sentence (e) in response to these two questions?

- What do you tell husbands to do?
- What do you tell wives to do?

3 Here are some disembodied infinitive phrases. Translate in word-order, then add a part of uolō, nōlō, mālō, iubeō or possum to complete the sense. Translate into correct English. Finally, read out the Latin correctly phrased.

- (a) tē mihi crēdere . . .
- (b) seruū ad senem uiam inuenīre alteram . . .
- (c) nummōs ducentōs capere quam nīl habēre . . .
- (d) amīcam mē amāre meam . . .
- (e) stilōs et cēram et tabellās tē adferre . . .
- (f) hominēs ex oppidō exīre audācīs . . .
- (g) Chr̄ysalum iterum patrem dēcipere meum . . .
- (h) seruū unguentum, corōnās seruam adferre mihi . . .
- (i) aurum Larī meō quam seruō audācī crēdere . . .
- (j) amīcīs auferre audācibus nummōs tē ducentōs . . .

4 In English, the following is normal: 'I want to have the gold. Give it to me'. But in Latin this would be: aurum habēre uolō. dā mihi.

Say in each of the following pairs of sentences which pronoun English inserts and Latin omits.

- (a) aurum tibi crēdō, ō Lar. adseruā!
- (b) tē dē filiā timēre nōlō, senex. adseruābō.
- (c) cēram et tabellās adferō. cape.
- (d) ego lūnam uidēre possum. uidēsne tū?
- (e) hodiē officium uōbīs difficile dabō. cūrāte.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read carefully this passage, translating in the order of the words and defining the function of each word and phrase and anticipating the direction of the sense. Then translate into correct English. Finally, read aloud the passage, phrasing correctly, thinking out the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 2A.

est Chr̄ysalus, seruus audāx Nīcobulī, homo magnō ingeniō, astutiā summā. per (through) Chr̄ysalum uult Mnēsilocho senem iterum dēcipere. officium difficile habet Chr̄ysalus. neque Chr̄ysalō senex neque filiō crēdit. sed Chr̄ysalus cōsiliū capit audāx. in aedīs Pistoclērum, Mnēsilocho amīcum, mittit. Pistoclērum cēram, tabellās, stilum, līnum adferre iubet. Chr̄ysalus, ubi redit amīcus, Mnēsilocho litterās ad patrem scribere iubet. ita patrī scribit filius probus: 'Chr̄ysalus malus est, mī pater. hodiē enim ad tē adibit et in tē ballistam intendet magnam. nam tē oppidum habet, antīquum et aurī plēnum. sī turrim dēlēbit tuam et

prōpugnācula tua, per portam in oppidum tē statim inuādet. tum aurum tuum in corbibus ex oppidō mē auferre iubēbit et meae dare amīcae. tē cauēre, pater mī, iubeō. sūmptus enim magnus erit, sī tē iterum dēcipiet. ualē'.

English-Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- (a) tē filiā meam statim domum dūcere iubeō.
Mnesilochus will want Chrysalus to deceive the poor old man again.
- (b) pauperis hominis uirtutem quam dūitis audāciam semper mālō.
He will always prefer the tricks of a bold slave to the boldness of a lying mistress.
- (c) Nīcobūlus, uir nullā astutiā, aurum seruō audācī numquam auferre poterit.
Chrysalus, a man of great astuteness, will easily be able to remove the old man's two hundred coins.
- (d) amīcae sūmptus semper magnus est.
The hand of a thief is always swift.
- (e) dūitēs pauperibus nummōs dant nullōs.
The old men will give the young men a lot of money.
- (f) erit mihi magnus sūmptus, quod uxōrem habēō dūitem.
The young men will have large expenses, because they have pretty mistresses.

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

dē + abl. = 'about', 'concerning', 'down from'.

dē as a prefix to verbs = 'away', 'down', e.g. dēscendō 'I go down' (see above p. 83), cf. spērō 'I hope', dēspērō 'I lose hope'. Sometimes it intensifies the word, e.g. capiō 'I catch', dēcipiō 'I catch out' (hence 'deceive').

If the simple verb has a short *ā* or *ē* as its first vowel, e.g. *cāpiō*, *sēdeō* ('sit'), that vowel will usually change to an *i* after a prefix, e.g.:

cāpiō *dēcīpiō*

sēdeō *obsīdeō*

fāciō *perfīciō*

ob as a prefix means 'in front of', 'against' e.g. *sedeō* = 'sit', *obsideō* = 'sit in front of', 'besiege' (cf. obsession); *ob* + *ferō* = *offerō* 'put in someone's path', 'offer' (note *b* → *f* before *f*); *ob* + *eō* = *obeō* 'come face to face with', 'meet'. Romans said one came 'face to face' with death (*mortem obeō* – hence 'obituary'). Verbs compounded with *ob* often take the dative.

Word exercise

Give the meaning and Latin connection of: lunatic, style, official, adjutant (*adiuuō*), nocturnal, solar, manual, mendacious, credible, scribble, a posse, beneficial, reiterate, sumptuary (laws).

Everyday Latin

A *possum* is the trade-name of an electronic typewriter for quadriplegics.

If you go *via* somewhere, what does it mean?

What is one's *alter ego*?

Word study

alter

alter means 'one, or the other, of two people'; so *alterō* 'I change', so 'alter'. It is from this stem that we get 'adultery', which is nothing to do with 'adult' (the word 'adult' derives from *adultus*, past participle of *adolēscō* 'I grow up'. An 'adolescent' is 'one growing up', and 'adult' is 'one having grown up'). 'Adultery' derives from *ad* + *alterō*, i.e. moving from one state to another, so changing a lot, so corrupting.

possum

As we saw, this word is a combination of *pot* + *sum*. The *pot*- root means 'ability', 'power', so *possum* means 'I am able', 'I can', the infinitive of which is *posse*, 'to be able'. Hence 'possibility', 'possible', 'impossible' etc.

A sheriff's posse derives from mediaeval Latin *posse comitatūs* 'the power of the county', i.e. a force with legal authority. The *pot*- root yields Latin *potentia* 'power', hence 'potential', 'potency' and the negative 'impotence'. With *omni*- 'all', we have 'omnipotence'.

sincere

It is a good story, but not true, that 'sincere' (Latin *sincērus*) derives from *sine* 'without' + *cēra* 'wax'. The false derivation springs from the Roman practice of mending broken statuary with wax and selling it off as if complete. In the heat of the day, however . . . Another 'folk' etymology derived the word from honey 'without wax', i.e. clean, pure, simple. Its true origin is uncertain.

Real Latin

Martial

nōn amo tē, Sabidī, nec possum dīcere quārē.

hoc tantum possum dīcere, nōn amo tē. (1.32)

Sabidī = O Sabidius
hoc tantum this only

Cf. the famous version of Thomas Brown (1663–1704):

I do not love thee, Dr Fell.
The reason why I cannot tell.
But this I know and know full well.
I do not love thee, Dr Fell.

Veientāna mihī miscēs, ubi Massica pōtās:
olfacere haec mālō pōcula, quam bibere. (3.49)

<i>Veientāna</i> (obj.) (name of cheap wine)	<i>Massica</i> (obj.) Massic (name of fine wine)	<i>haec pōcula</i> (obj.) these drinks (i.e. the Massica)
<i>mihī</i> for me	<i>pōtō</i> 1 I drink	<i>quam</i> than
<i>miscēō</i> 2 I mix	<i>olfaciō</i> 3/4 I smell	<i>bibō</i> 3 I drink

Vulgate

God speaks to Moses in a cloud: 'nōn poteris uidēre faciem meam: nōn enim uidēbit mē homo et uiuet.' (Exodus 33.20)

faciem (acc. s. f.) face
uiuō 3 live

'nōn occidēs ... nōn fūrtum faciēs ... nōn concupiscēs domum proximī tuī; nec dēsiderābis uxōrem eius, nōn seruū, nōn ancillam, nōn bouem, nōn asinum.' (Exodus 20.13.)

occidō 3 I kill	proxim-us ī 2m.	ancill-a ae 1f. maidservant
fūrt-um ī 2n. theft	neighbour	bōs bou-is 3m. m. ox
concupiscō 3 I desire	dēsiderō 1 I long for	asin-us ī 2m. ass
	eius his	

et ego uōbīs dīcō . . . 'quaerite et inueniētis'. (Luke 11.9)

quaerō 3 I seek

Mottoes

omnia superat virtūs. (Gardiner)

omnia vincit amor. (Bruce, Rogers)

omnia vincit labor. (Cook)

omnia vincit vērītās. (Eaton, Mann, Naish, Nash)

omnia bona bonīs. (Wenman)

superō 1 I overcome	labor labōr-is 3m. work	uērītās uērītāt-is 3f. truth
uincō 3 I conquer		

Section 2B

Running vocabulary for 2B

a! ah!	Bellerophōn Bellerophon-is	cōnāris you (s.) try
abdūcō 3 I lead away	3m. Bellerophon (who	conuīui-um ī 2n. dinner-
accipiō 3/4 I receive, take	was given a letter to	party
accūsō 1 I accuse	bear ordering his own	dīligō 3 I love
adgredior I am going up	death)	domō from home
to (ad+acc.)	caput capit-is 3n. source	ecce look!
adgreditur (he) goes up to	(scelerum caput =	ēgreditur (he) comes/goes
(ad+acc.)	scoundrel)	out
adulēscēns adulēscēt-is 3m.	caueō 2 I am wary	ēgrediuntur (they) come
young man	cicer cicer-is 3n. chick-pea	out
agō 3 I do	cognōscō 3 I get to know,	eho ha!
annōn or not (see utrum)	examine	etiam even
at but	column-a ae 1f. column	euge hurrah!

fīō I happen (fit 3rd s.)
fortiter vigorously
frīct-us a um roasted
fung-us ī 2m. mushroom
haud not
iam presently
id quod that which, what
immō more precisely
impingō 3 I thrust (x acc.)
forward (sc. 'against
him')

īsan-us a um crazy
īspiciō 3/4 I look in
intereā meanwhile
intrō inside
īrāscor I am getting angry
īrāt-us a um angry
lect-us ī 2m. couch
legō 3 I read
liberō 1 I free
libertās libertāt-is 3f.
freedom
litter-ae ārum 1f. pl. letter
loquere speak! (s.)
loqueris you (s.) speak of,
you say
loquī to talk
loquitur (he) speaks
loquor I am speaking,
I say

loquuntur (they) say
lumbrīc-us ī 2m. worm
mē esse 'myself to be',
'that I am'
mēcum with/to myself
mentīrī (to) lie
minārī (to) threaten
(+ dat.)

mināris you (s.) are
threatening (+ dat.)
minor I am threatening
(+ dat.)
modo just
moritur (he) dies
mōs mōr-is 3m. way,
habit; (pl.) character
mox soon
necesse est it is necessary
negōti-um ī 2n. business
nesciō 4 I do not know
nesci-us a um forgetful of
(+ gen.)
nōlī don't (s.) (+ inf.)
nūntiō 1 I report
oblīuīsceris you (s.) forget
oblīuīscor I forget
obsignāt-us a um sealed
opīnor I think
opus oper-is 3n. job, work,
task
perficiō 3/4 I finish,
complete, carry out
pergō 3 I go on, go ahead
persequor I pursue
petō 3 I go after, seek
plūs more (+ gen.)
polliceor I promise
precārī (to) beg
precor I beg
prōgreditur (he) is coming
/ comes forward
prope nearby
propter (+ acc.) because of
pugn-us ī 2m. fist
pūtid-us a um rotten

quantī: see tantī
quem he whom
quia because
recordāris you (s.)
remember
recordor I remember
rem (acc. s. f.) the matter
rērum (gen. pl. f.) (of)
things
rēs (nom. s. f.) the matter
rēs (nom., acc. pl. f.)
things
respondeō 2 I reply
saeu-us a um wild, angry
sapienti-a ae 1f. wisdom
scelest-us a um criminal
sequere follow! (s.)
sequiminī follow! (pl.)
sequitur (he) follows
sequor I follow
sic thus
sign-um ī 2n. seal, mark
spectō 1 I look at
stult-us a um stupid
tam so
tam . . . quam as . . . as
tantī . . . quantī worth as
much . . . as
tranquill-us a um calm
trāsenn-a ae 1f. trap
turd-us ī 2m. thrush
uerb-um ī 2n. word
uetustissim-us a um very
old
utrum . . . annōn do . . .
or not? (double
question)

Learning vocabulary for 2B

Nouns

litter-ae ārum 1f. pl. letter
sapienti-a ae 1f. wisdom

lect-us ī 2m. couch, bed
uerb-um ī 2n. word

opus oper-is 3n. job, work,
task

Adjectives

nesci-us a um ignorant of
(+ gen.)

saeu-us a um wild, angry

stult-us a um stupid

Verbs

caueō 2 I am wary

respondeō 2 I reply

agō 3 ēg- āct- I do, act

cognōscō 3 *cognōu-* *cognit-* I
get to know, examine

diligō 3 I love

legō 3 I read

pergō 3 I go on, go ahead,
continue

nesciō 4 I do not know

īnspiciō 3/4 *īnspex-* *īnspex-*
I look into; inspect,
examine

perficiō 3/4 *perfēc-* *perfect-* I
finish, complete; carry
out

Others

at but (often introduces a
supposed objection)

domō from the home (cf.
domī, *domum*)

ecce look!

intrō (to) inside

mēcum with/to myself
(= *mē* abl., *cum* with)

mox soon

quia because

sic thus, in this way, so

tam so

New forms: nouns

caput capit-is 3n. head;
source

rēs rē-i 5f. thing, matter,
business, property,
affair

diēs diē-i 5m. or f. day

Verbs

minor 1 dep. I threaten
(+ dat.)

opīnor 1 dep. I think

precor 1 dep. I beg, pray

recordor 1 dep. I

remember

polliceor 2 dep. I promise

loquor 3 dep. *locūt-* I talk,
speak, say

oblīuīscor 3 dep. I forget

sequor 3 dep. *secūt-* I
follow

mentior 4 dep. I lie

adgredior 3/4 dep. *adgress-*
I approach

ēgredior 3/4 *ēgress-* I go/
come out

prōgredior 3/4 *prōgress-*
I advance

Grammar and exercises for section 2B**58 Present deponent (all conjugations): indicative, imperative, infinitive**

	1	2	3
	<i>minor</i> 'I threaten'	<i>polliceor</i> 'I promise'	<i>loquor</i> 'I speak'
Indicative			
1st s.	<i>mīn-o-r</i>	<i>pollice-o-r</i>	<i>loqu-o-r</i>
2nd s.	<i>minā-ris (-re)</i>	<i>pollicē-ris (-re)</i>	<i>loqu-e-ris (-re)</i>
3rd s.	<i>minā-tur</i>	<i>pollicē-tur</i>	<i>loqu-i-tur</i>

1st pl. *minā-mur*

2nd pl. *minā-minī*

3rd pl. *minā-ntur*

pollicē-mur

pollicē-minī

pollicē-ntur

loqu-i-mur

loqu-ī-minī

loqu-ū-ntur

Imperative

2nd s. *minā-re*

2nd pl. *minā-minī*

Infinitive *minā-rī*

pollicē-re

pollicē-minī

pollicē-rī

loqu-e-re

loqu-ī-minī

loqu-ī

4

3/4

Indicative *mentior* 'I lie'

prōgredior 'I advance'

1st s. *mēnti-o-r*

2nd s. *mentī-ris (-re)*

3rd s. *mentī-tur*

1st pl. *mentī-mur*

2nd pl. *mentī-minī*

3rd pl. *menti-ū-ntur*

prōgrēdi-o-r

prōgrēd-e-ris (-re)

prōgrēdi-tur

prōgrēdi-mur

prōgrēdī-minī

prōgrēdī-ū-ntur

Imperative

2nd s. *mentī-re*

2nd pl. *mentī-minī*

Infinitive *mentī-rī*

prōgrēd-e-re

prōgrēdī-minī

prōgrēdī

Notes

- 1 So far you have only met verbs in their 'active' forms. But there is another class of verb, called 'deponent'. It is this class you are now meeting for the first time. Deponents are identified by the different personal endings they take.
- 2 The personal endings of active verbs are, as we know, *-ō*, *-s*, *-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt*. The personal endings of deponent verbs are *-r*, *-ris (-re)*, *-tur*, *-mur*, *-minī*, *-ntur*. These new personal endings are of the highest importance as they are more widely used than just with deponents (as you will see). Consequently, if you learn them now, you will be saving yourself a great deal of learning in the future.
- 3 Given the new personal endings, deponent verbs are constructed exactly as active verbs are, i.e. stem with its key vowel + personal endings. E.g.

1st conj.: *mina-* + endings (NB *minor* cf. *amō*).

2nd conj.: *pollice-* + endings.

3rd conj.: *loqu-* + *-i* + endings. (NB *loquor* cf. *dīcō*; *loquuntur* cf.

dicunt. The really difficult one here is the 2nd s.: *loqueris* cf. *dicis*. Observe the pattern of short vowels.)

4th conj.: *menti-* + endings.

3rd/4th conj.: *prōgredi-* + endings, except for 2nd s., where the -i- of the stem alters to -e- (as in 3rd conj.). Note that the -i- remains short (contrast 4th conj. *mentīris*, *mentītur* etc.).

- 4 Imperatives present a problem, in that the s. and pl. imperatives can be identical in form with the indicatives. For example, *mināminī* may mean 'you threaten' or 'threaten!' (pl.), and *mināre* could mean 'you threaten' or 'threaten!' (s.). The context will tell you which is right.
- 5 Do not confuse s. deponent forms in -āre, -ere, -ēre, and -īre with active infinitives like *amāre* etc.
- 6 The most difficult infinitive is the 3rd and 3rd/4th conj. infinitive, which ends in plain -ī, e.g. *loquī-ī*, *prōgredī-ī*. All the rest end in stem (+key vowel) + -rī.

Exercises

- 1 Translate and convert s. to pl. and vice-versa: *precātur*, *mentīris*, *pollicēmur*, *sequuntur*, *mināris*, *loquiminī*, *mentior*, *opīnāre*, *prōgrediminī*, *loqueris*, *pollicēre*, *mināmur*, (optional: *recordor*, *ēgreditur*, *oblīuiscuntur*, *sequeris*, *precāre*, *opīnāmur*, *adgrederis*, *loquitur*, *mentiuntur*, *prōgrediuntur*, *mināmur*).
- 2 Give the Latin for: we threaten; he promises; they forget; you (pl.) remember; you (s.) speak; I am following; advance! (s.); beg! (s.); talk! (pl.); promise! (s.); (optional: we are thinking; they advance; he comes out; she threatens; remember! (pl.); we are lying; they speak; you (pl.) promise; talk! (s.); you (s.) follow).
- 3 Say whether each of the following is an infinitive or an imperative and translate: *amāre*, *mināre*, *pollicēre*, *sequere*, *uocāre*, *habēre*, *loquī*, *audī*, *inuenīre*, *prōgredī*, *dormī*, *mentīrī*, *precāre*, *opīnārī*, *inuenī*, *dūcere*, *loquere*, *inīre*, *iubēre*, *prōgredere*.
- 4 Give the meaning, infinitive and s. imperative of the following verbs: *habēō*, *cūrō*, *minor*, *loquor*, *audiō*, *dūcō*, *mittō*, *precor*, *fugiō*, *crēdō*, (optional: *opīnor*, *prōgredior*, *moneō*, *sequor*, *maneō*, *polliceor*).

59 *nōlī* + infinitive

nōlī (pl. *nōlīte*), the imperative of *nōlō*, means in Latin 'don't!', and is followed by the infinitive (lit. 'do not wish to!', 'refuse to!'). E.g. *nōlī/nōlīte clāmāre* 'don't shout!', *nōlī/nōlīte loquī* 'don't speak!'

Exercise

Translate into Latin: don't follow (s.); don't (pl.) threaten me; don't (s.) be stupid (m.); don't (pl.) send the letter; don't (s.) hide the pot; don't (pl.) lead the slaves; (optional: don't (s.) advance; don't (pl.) mention; don't (s.) do the business today; don't (pl.) carry the garlands).

60 5th decl. nouns: *rēs* *rē-ī* 5f. 'thing', 'matter', 'business', 'affair'

	s.	pl.
nom.	<i>rē-s</i>	<i>rē-s</i>
acc.	<i>re-m</i>	<i>rē-s</i>
gen.	<i>rē-ī</i>	<i>rē-rum</i>
dat.	<i>rē-ī</i>	<i>rē-bus</i>
abl.	<i>rē</i>	<i>rē-bus</i>

NB. Most 5th decl. nouns are f. But *diēs* 'day' is normally m. (it is f. when it denotes a special day).

Exercise

Decline in full: *omnis rēs*; *pulcher diēs*; *mea rēs*; *trīstis diēs*.

61 3rd decl. n. noun: *caput* *capit-is* 'head'

	s.	pl.
nom.	<i>cáput</i>	<i>cápit-a</i>
acc.	<i>cáput</i>	<i>cápit-a</i>
gen.	<i>cápit-is</i>	<i>cápit-um</i>
dat.	<i>cápit-ī</i>	<i>capít-ibus</i>
abl.	<i>cápit-e</i>	<i>capít-ibus</i>

NB. Given the gen. s. *capit-is*, this noun follows the normal pattern of 3rd decl. n. nouns like e.g. *nōmen* 26.

62 Special 1st/2nd decl. adjectives *nūll-us a um* 'no(ne)', 'not any'; *alter alter-a um* 'one' (of two), 'the one . . . the other'

s.			pl.		
m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom. nūll-us	nūll-a	nūll-um	nūll-ī	nūll-ae	nūll-a
acc. nūll-um	nūll-am	nūll-um	nūll-ōs	nūll-ās	nūll-a
gen. —	nūll-īus	—	nūll-ōrum	nūll-ārum	nūll-ōrum
dat. —	nūll-ī	—	—	nūll-īs	—
abl. nūll-ō	nūll-ā	nūll-ō	—	nūll-īs	—

s.			pl.		
m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom. ālter	ālter-a	ālter-um	ālter-ī	ālter-ae	ālter-a
acc. ālter-um	ālter-am	ālter-um	ālter-ōs	ālter-ās	ālter-a
gen. —	alter-īus	—	alter-ōrum	alter-ārum	alter-ōrum
dat. —	ālter-ī	—	—	ālter-īs	—
abl. ālter-ō	ālter-ā	ālter-ō	—	ālter-īs	—

NB. Both these adjectives are entirely regular except that the gen. s. ends in *-īus*, e.g. *nūllīus*, *alterīus* and the dat. s. in *-ī*; cf. *quis* gen. s. *cuius* dat. s. *cui*, *ūnus* gen. s. *ūnīus* dat. s. *ūnī*.

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- Nīcobūlus: nōlī mihi minārī, Chrȳsale.
Chrȳsalus: at ut rēs est, domine, sīc tibi loquor.
- seruus audāx caput habet astūtiārum plēnum.
- seruī ex aedibus mox ēgrediuntur atque senem sequuntur.
- at quis loquitur? ut opīnor, Chrȳsalus est.
- intrō inspice, mī domine. quid in aedibus uidēs? rēs mala est, ut opīnor.
- Chrȳsalus dominum cauēre iubet et nescium rērum omnium uocat.
- rēs omnīs cognōsce. tē enim recordārī quam oblīuiscī mālō.
- ut pollicēris, sīc rem esse uolō.
- quid uōs opīnāminī? ecce! seruus mihi minātur, deinde mentītur, tum obsecrat mē et precātur.
- tū, mī Nīcobūle, prōgredere atque Chrȳsalō statim mināre.

2 Translate these sentences:

- crēdula rēs amor est. (Ovid)
- rēs est magna tacēre. (Martial)
- uitia erunt dōnec hominēs. (Tacitus)
- rēs hūmānae fragilēs cadūcaeque sunt. (Cicero)
- dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī. (Horace)
- et facere et patī fortia Rōmānum est. (Livy)

<i>crēdul-us a um</i> confiding, unsuspecting	<i>fragil-is e</i> brittle, frail	<i>patri-a ae</i> 1f. native land
<i>amor amōr-is</i> 3m. love	<i>cadūc-us a um</i> perishable	<i>mōr-ior</i> 3/4 dep. I die
<i>uiti-um ī</i> 2n. fault, crime	<i>dulc-is e</i> sweet	<i>pati-or</i> 3/4 dep. I suffer,
<i>dōnec</i> while, as long as (sc. there are)	<i>decōr-us a um</i> fitting, seemly, honourable	endure
<i>hūmān-us a um</i> human	<i>prō (+ abl.)</i> for, on behalf of	<i>fort-is e</i> brave
		<i>Rōmān-us a um</i> Roman

Reading

When a sentence contains more than one clause, there are, in the conjunctions and other small words within previous clauses, signposts marking the direction of the sense. You have met *ita* . . . leading up to *ut* (or vice versa) and in **2B** (Text) you saw *tam* . . . *quam* = 'as . . . as' and *tantī* . . . *quantī* = 'worth as much . . . as'. Ambiguities in the conjunction are often resolved in advance by markers, e.g. *tum*, *ubi* . . . shows *ubi* to mean 'when' rather than 'where'. More generally, you will know from seeing *sī*, that the sentence is conditional ('if x, then y') and *quod/quia* give the reason for something in another clause.

Translate only the 'signposts' (markers like *tum*, *tam* etc. and conjunctions like *sī*, *quod* etc.) and say what the basic structure of each of these sentences is. When you have done this, translate (in word-order first, then into correct English). Finally read aloud, phrasing correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read.

- tum* rem cognōscēs omnem, mī domine, sī scīre uolēs, *ubi* filium tuum in aedibus uidēbis Bacchidum.
- ut tū mihi rem dīcis, sīc ego, quod tibi crēdō, opīnor.
- tantī est senex noster, ut opīnātur Chrȳsalus, quia seruus est summā audāciā, quantī fungus pūtīdus.
- tē inspīcere intrō, quod tē omnia scīre uolō, iubēbo in aedīs, *ubi* filium, sī oculōs habēs, cum amīcā mox uidēbis.
- at sī senī litterās *tum* dare poterō, *ubi* ego uolam, tam erit frīctus, ut opīnor, quam est frīctum cicer.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read this passage carefully, translating in word-order. Define the function of each word as you go, grouping them into the correct phrases and anticipating the direction of the sense. Then translate into correct English. Finally, read aloud, with the correct phrasing, thinking out the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 2B.

īnsānum negōtium Chrȳsalus, ut opīnātur, persequitur, quia senem
dēcipere iterum uult. cōsiliū tamen satis audāx in animō est.
Mnēsiloehī enim litterās senī dabit. Chrȳsalus tum dominum saeuum esse
uult, ubi litterās accipiet, quia tum mōrēs Mnēsiloehī malōs nārrāre
poterit. litterās in manūs senī tum dat seruus audāx, ubi ex aedibus
ēgreditur. senex litterās legit, deinde seruōs uocat. tum ubi domō
ēgrediuntur, seruōs Chrȳsalum uincīre iubet, Chrȳsalum tacēre. senem
autem irrīdet Chrȳsalus ac rērum nescium omnium stultumque uocat.
tantī habet dominum, ut dīcit, quantī fungum pūtīdum. senex tam īrātus
fit quam uult seruus. tum autem Chrȳsalus perīculum Mnēsiloehī
loquitur, senem in aedīs intrō īnspicere Bacchidum iubet. prōgreditur
senex ad aedīs et intrō īnspicit. at conūuium uidet et rem malam atque
trīstem.

English-Latin

Translate the Latin sentences into English. Then translate the English sentences into Latin, using the pattern of the Latin ones to help you arrange the word-order correctly.

- nōlī uxōrem meam adgredī, Chrȳsale.
Don't threaten the poor old man, slave.
- ubi litterās scribis, rem in animō habē; uerba mox sequuntur.
When you (pl.) recall the matter, remember the dangers; the mind never lies.
- dīues autem, uirtūtis nescius, pauperī minātur.
The slaves, ignorant of everything, are forgetting their danger.
- cīuēs bonī in perīculum prōgrediuntur.
All the girls are coming out of their house.
- ego tibi nōn minor, sed ita loquor, ut rēs est.
We are not lying, but telling you how the matter stands.
- sequimini mē, meī seruī, atque omnia obliuiscimini.
Follow me, my son, into the house and pray to the gods.

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

sub + abl./acc. = 'under', 'close up to'.

sub- as a prefix (sometimes appearing as su- or sus-) attaches the same meaning to the verb, e.g. sub + capiō = suscipiō 'undertake'; sub + sequor = subsequor 'follow closely'. Cf. submarine, subcutaneous etc. See above p. 83.

Word exercise

Give the meanings and Latin connection of: perfect, capital, verb, irate, maximise, legible, advent, opinion, loquacious, progressive, stultify, oblivious, record (NB. cor cordis heart), literate.

Everyday Latin

In logic, what does a nōn sequitur not do?

secundus 'second' is connected with sequor. It is, after all, what follows the first. Since a following wind was favourable to sailors, secundus also means 'favourable'.

Letters often say 're your bill for drinks now outstanding at . . .' This means 'in the matter of', the abl. of rēs. Something ad rem is 'to the point', 'relevant to the matter in hand' (also a motto of the Wright family).

If you see (sic), it indicates that what has just been written is intentionally written (sic) like that.

Real Latin

Martial

cum tua nōn ēdās, carpis mea carmina, Laelī.
carpere uel nōlī nostra, uel ēde tua.

cum since

tua = tua carmina

ēdō 3 I publish: ēdās 'you publish'

carpō 3 I criticise

carmen carmin-is 3n. poem

Laelī O Laelius

uel . . . uel either . . . or
nostra, tua: i.e. carmina

Sayings of Cato

cum bonīs ambulā.
rem tuam custōdī (*guard*).
librōs (*books*) lege.
miserum nōlī irrīdēre.

Vulgate

The Lord to Moses: 'ingredere ad Pharaōnem, et loquere ad eum "haec dicit dominus deus Hebraeorum: dimitte populum meum".' (*Exodus 9.1*)
Jesus to the disciples: 'sinite puerōs uenire ad mē et nōlīte uetāre eōs; tālium enim est rēgnū deī.' (*Luke 18.16*)

Pharaō Pharaōn-is Pharaoh	Hebrae-i ōrum 2m.	sinō 3 I allow
eum him	pl.Hebrews	uetō 1 I forbid
haec as follows	dīmittō 3 I let go	tālium of such a sort
	popul-us ī 2m. people	rēgn-um ī 2n. kingdom

Mottoes

nōlī irrītāre leōnem. (*Cooper, Walsh*)
nōlī mentīrī. (*Notley*)
nōlī mē tangere. (*Graeme, Graham, Willett*)
dum crēscō, spērō. (*Rider*)
dum spīrō, spērō. (*Anderson, Baker, Brook, Cutler, Davies, Gordon, Greaves, Hunter, Jacobs, Lee, Mason, Moore, Nicholls, Pearson, Roberts, Smith, Symonds, Taylor, Thomason, Walker, Whitehead, Young*)
dum vigilō, cūrō. (*Cranstoun*)
dum vīvō, spērō. (*Monteith*)
dum in arborem (?) (*Hamilton*)
fac et spērā. (*Armstrong, Arthur, Campbell, Morison, Richardson*)

irrītō 1 I annoy	spērō 1 I hope	arbor arbor-is 3f. tree
leō leōn-is 3m. lion	spīrō 1 I breathe	(= the cross?; dum
tangō 3 I touch	uigilō 1 I am on guard	then = 'until', i.e. 'as far
crēscō 3 I grow	uivō 3 I live	as (onto)')

Word study**ambulō**

ambulō means 'I walk', 'take a turn'. Hence 'amble', and 'preamble', the introductory stroll round a subject (*prae* 'in front of'). The French had an *hôpital ambulant*, i.e. 'touring hospital', 'field hospital', whence our

'ambulance'. 'Perambulate' means 'walk through or over' (*per* 'through'); hence the English derivation 'perambulator', which *should* mean 'one who walks over'. It is tempting to think that 'ramble' comes from *re* + *ambulō*, but this is disputed.

diēs

The Latin adjective *dīus* means 'divine', 'of the sky' and 'luminous'. It connects with *deus* 'god' (cf. Greek 'Zeus'), whence *dīuus*, *dīuīnus*, the goddess Diana, English 'divine'. It also connects with *diēs* 'day' – so 'light' and 'god' appear to be closely connected semantically. (Cf. John 1.4: 'In Him was life and the life was the light of men'; I John 1.5: 'God is light and in Him there is no darkness at all'.) *Iuppiter* is cognate with Greek *zeu pater* 'O Zeus father'. Observe that Jupiter also appears in Latin as *diēspiter* (connected with *diēs* + *pater* 'father of day'), and that the gen. s. of *Iuppiter* is *Iouis*, in primitive Latin *Diouis*. Both *diēspiter* and *Diouis* bring us back to the *di-* root again. *Iou-* gives us 'jovial' (from the astrological influence of the planet Jupiter). There is also a connection between *Zeus*, *deus* and the Old English god of war *Tīw*, whence Tuesday!

diēs helps to give us 'dismal' (*diēs malī* 'unlucky days'), and 'diary' (*diārium* 'ration for the day'). From *diēs* Latin got the adjective *diurnus* 'daily', giving English 'diurnal' and (through French) 'journal'. Note that in France and Italy, *Thursday* is named after Jupiter (Fr. *jeudi*, It. *giovedì*).

Section 2C**Running vocabulary for 2C**

absum I am absent	ambō ambae both (<i>ambōs</i>	bell-us a um pretty
accipiō 3/4 I receive	acc. pl. m.; <i>ambās</i> acc.	Castor Castor-is 3m.
adloquor 3 dep. I address	pl. f.)	Castor (brother of
admodum fairly, quite	ambulō 1 I walk	Pollux)
aedis aed-is 3f. shrine,	annōn or not?	Ceres Cerer-is 3f. Ceres
temple	arbitror 1 dep. I think	(goddess of crops)
amātor amātōr-is 3m. lover	aure-us a um golden	citō immediately, at once

cognōuī I know
cognōuistī you (s.) know
cōnor 1 dep. I try
cōnspicor 1 dep. I catch sight of
conueniō 4 I meet
crux crux-is 3f. cross (in *malam crucem* = to a bad death, to Hell)
cubō 1 I sleep
dēfendō 3 I defend
ergō therefore
errō 1 I am mistaken, err
exanim-us a um lifeless
exhērēs exhērēd-is disinherited (from + gen.)
exsoluō 3 I release
fiō I happen (3rd s. *fit*)
for-um ī 2n. forum
haud not
hercle by Hercules!
Herculēs Hercul-is 3m. Hercules
heus hey!
hic (nom. s. m.) this (adj.); this man, he (pron.)
hōs (acc. pl. m.) these
huic (dat. s. m.) to this man, to him
huius (gen. s. m.) of this
hunc (acc. s. m.) this man, him
iam now presently
illa (nom. s. f.) that (adj.); she (pron.); that woman
illā (abl. s. f.) her (pron.); that (adj.); that woman
illae (nom. pl. f.) those (adj.)
ille (nom. s. m.) that (adj.); he (pron.); that man
illī (dat. s. m./f.) (to) him, (to) that man
illūs (gen. s. m.) of that (adj.); of him, his (pron.)
illō (abl. s. m.) him; that man
illōrum (gen. pl. m.) of them, their
illōs (acc. pl. m.) them (pron.); those (adj.)
illud (acc. s. n.) that
illum (acc. s. m.) him, that man
immō yes; indeed
impūr-us a um vile, defiled
ingredior 3/4 dep. I enter
inquam I say
Iouem (acc. s.) Iuppiter = Jupiter
irāscor 3 dep. I get angry
irāt-us a um angry
Iūnō Iūnōn-is 3f. Juno
iūrō 1 I swear
Lātōn-a ae 1f. Leto
lepid-us a um charming
manifestō openly
Mārs Mārt-is 3m. Mars (god of war)
Mercuri-us ī 2m. Mercury (messenger god)
meretrīx meretrīc-is 3f. prostitute
mīles mīlit-is 3m. soldier
Mineru-a ae 1f. Minerva (goddess of wisdom)
modo just
mōs mōr-is 3m. way, habit; (pl.) character
mulier mulier-is 3f. woman; wife
necō 1 I kill
nisi unless, if . . . not
nōnne surely? can't I?
nūpt-us a um married
nusquam nowhere
opprimō 3 I surprise, catch
Ops Op-is 3f. Ops (goddess of plenty)

ōsculor 1 dep. I kiss
pacīscor 3 dep. I make a bargain
per (+ acc.) through, by
periūri-um ī 2n. perjury
Philipp-us ī 2m. a gold coin (struck by Philip of Macedon)
plānē obviously, clearly
Pollūx Pollūc-is 3m. Pollux (brother of Castor)
quam how! (with adj. or adv.); (rather) than
quid why?
quod whatever, in whatever way
retineō 2 I hold, detain
Sātūrn-us ī 2m. Saturn (father of Jupiter)
scelest-us a um criminal
sēdulō zealously, assiduously
sermō sermōn-is 3m. conversation
Sōl Sōl-is 3m. the god of the sun
Spēs Spē-ī 5f. Hope
suāu-is e sweet
Summān-us ī 2m. Summanus (a Roman god who caused lightning at night)
suspīcor 1 dep. I suspect
tempus tempor-is 3n. time (*ad tempus* = in time)
uel or
ueniō 4 I come
Venus Vener-is 3f. Venus (goddess of love)
uideor 2 dep. I seem
Virtūs Virtūt-is 3f. the goddess Virtue
uīs 3f. (irreg.) force (acc. uim)
uīsō 3 I visit
uīt-a ae 1f. life

Learning vocabulary for 2C

Nouns

<i>meretrīx meretrīc-is</i> 3f. prostitute	<i>mōs mōr-is</i> 3m. way, habit, custom; (pl.) character	<i>mulier mulier-is</i> 3f. woman; wife
<i>mīles mīlit-is</i> 3m. soldier		

Adjectives

<i>aure-us a um</i> golden	<i>irāt-us a um</i> angry	<i>scelest-us a um</i> criminal, wicked
----------------------------	---------------------------	---

Verbs

<i>necō</i> 1 I kill	<i>arbitror</i> 1 dep. I think, consider; give judgement	<i>uideor</i> 2 dep. <i>uīs-</i> I seem
<i>dēfendō</i> 3 I defend		<i>irāscor</i> 3 dep. <i>irāt-</i> I grow angry
<i>opprimō</i> 3 oppress- I surprise, catch; crush	<i>cōnor</i> 1 dep. I try	

Others

<i>citō</i> quickly	<i>iam</i> now, by now, already; presently	<i>plānē</i> clearly
<i>ergō</i> therefore	<i>per (+ acc.)</i> through, by	<i>quam</i> how! (+ adj. or adv.)
<i>haud</i> not		

New forms:

adjectives

<i>hic haec hoc</i> this; this person/thing; (pl.) these	<i>ille illa illud</i> that; that person/thing; (pl.) those
--	---

Grammar and Exercises for 2C

63 *hic haec hoc* 'this', 'this person', 'this thing', 'the latter', pl. 'these'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	hic	haec	hoc	h-ī	h-ae	haec
acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	h-ōs	h-ās	haec
gen.	← hūius →			h-ōrum	h-ārum	h-ōrum
dat.	← huic →			← h-īs →		
abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	← h-īs →		

Notes

- 1 Describing a noun, *hic* means 'this' (pl. 'these'); on its own, it will mean 'this man', 'this woman', 'this thing', depending on gender and context. Often 'he', 'she', 'it' will suffice.
- 2 Its forms seem to be irregular, but note the *-ius* of the gen. s. (cf. *nūllus*, *alter* 62 and *quis* 29), and the pl., except for *haec*, is just like *multus* on the stem *h-*.
- 3 NB. *hinc* 'from here'; *hīc* '(at) here'; *hūc* '(to) here'.

64 *ille illa illud* 'that', 'that person', 'that thing', 'the former'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	ill-e	ill-a	ill-ud	ill-ī	ill-ae	ill-a
acc.	ill-um	ill-am	ill-ud	ill-ōs	ill-ās	ill-a
gen.	← ill-ius →			ill-ōrum	ill-ārum	ill-ōrum
dat.	← ill-ī →			← ill-īs →		
abl.	ill-ō	ill-ā	ill-ō	← ill-īs →		

Notes

- 1 On its own, *ille* means 'that man', 'that woman', 'that thing', depending on gender and context; describing a noun, it means 'that', 'those'. Often it best translates as 'he', 'she', 'it'.
- 2 The forms at first glance seem irregular, but on closer inspection you will see that, apart from *ille*, *illud*, *illius*, *illī* (cf. *nūllius*, *nūllī*; *cuius*, *cui*; *alterius*, *alterī*) they are simply the stem *ill-* with 2nd decl. adjective endings like *multus*.
- 3 From *ille* came French *le*, *la* and Italian *il*, *la*.
- 4 NB. *illinc* 'from there'; *illīc* '(at) there' *illūc* '(to) there'. Cf. 63³.
- 5 *ille* ... *hic* are often used in contrast to mean 'the former' (i.e. *that one* over there, a long way away) and 'the latter' (i.e. *this one* here which is so close to us).
- 6 Ambiguities: note that *illī* can be dat. s. m. f. or n. or nom. pl. m. But *illae* can only be nom. pl. f., because gen. and dat. s. are *illius*, *illī*.

Exercises

- 1 *Decline in all cases*: *hic* *seruus*; *ille* *mīles*; *haec* *serua*; *illud* *perīculum*; *hoc* *uerbum*; *illa* *mulier*.
- 2 *What case or cases are the following phrases in*: *huius* *patris*; *hāc* *filīā*; *hae* *uxōrēs*; *huic* *animō*; *hoc* *onus*; *hīs* *cenīs*; (optional: *hunc* *diem*; *hārum* *noctium*; *hōs* *seruōs*; *haec* *cōnsilia*; *hōc* *capite*; *huius* *perīculī*); *illī* *stilī*; *illō* *uerbō*; *illud* *opus*; *illōs* *diēs*; *illīs* *sceleribus*; *illī* *manuī*; (optional: *illam* *turbam*; *illa* *soror*; *illīus* *ignis*; *illī* *familiae*; *illōs* *honōres*; *illīus* *rē*; *illa* *domus*; *illā* *rē*).
- 3 *Give the Latin for*: this soldier (acc.); to that old man; this girl's; those plans (nom./acc.); these dangers (nom./acc.); that woman's.
- 4 *Give the case of the following phrases, where the noun could be ambiguous, but where the form of hic or ille solves the problem*: *hī* *thēsaurī*; *illīus* *thēsaurī*; *illās* *sorōrēs*; *hae* *sorōrēs*; *illa* *rēs*; *hās* *rēs*; *illae* *rēs*; *huius* *manūs*; *illae* *manūs*; *hae* *manūs*; *illās* *mulierēs*; *hae* *mulierēs*; *illī* *puerō*; *hōc* *puerō*; *illae* *fēminae*; *huic* *fēminae*; *illīus* *fēminae*; *hic* *diēs*; *illōs* *diēs*; *hī* *diēs*.
- 5 *Join hic or ille to the word(s) with which it agrees, and translate*:

huius: *seruus*, *amīcī*, *mulierēs*, *lūnae*, *stilōs*
illum: *cōnsilium*, *opus*, *puerum*, *diērum*, *frātre*, *rem*
illā: *uxōre*, *nox*, *manū*, *stilus*, *officia*
hoc: *mīles*, *officium*, *nōmen*, *cīuem*, *aurum*
haec: *aedēs*, *corōna*, *opera*, *manus*, *negōtia*, *rēs*
illōs: *cīuīs*, *senem*, *facinus*, *deōs*, *domus*

Optional revision

- 1 *Give the meaning, conjugation and infinitive of the following verbs*: *cēlō*, *explicō*, *inueniō*, *audiō*, *dūcō*, *fugiō*, *mittō*, *ferō*, *mālō*, *sum*, *crēdō*, *scribō*, *salūtō*, *legō*, *nesciō*.
- 2 *Translate the following verbs, and then analyse them as follows*:

If an indicative, give person, number, tense (present or future) and voice (active or deponent), e.g. amās – 2nd person singular present active of amō 'love'

If imperative, say whether s. or pl., active or deponent

If infinitive, say whether active or deponent

In all cases, end your analysis by saying what the verb is and what it means (see example above)

amābis, habēre, dūc, minārī, dīcet, uelle, scrībītis, poterō, cape, dormiunt, prōgredere, dēfendis, opprimēs, necā, loquī, nōlumus, irrīdēre, stāte, rogās.

Exercises

- 1 Translate: cum hīs mulieribus; in illō capite; ad hanc rem; per illam turbam; cum hāc meretrīce; ex illō perīculō.
- 2 Give the Latin for: onto this stage; with that woman; through these fires; with those brothers; in this eye; into that town; through these dangers.
- 3 Translate these sentences:
 - (a) sī ille mīles Mnēsilocho cum Bacchide opprimet, illōs necābit.
 - (b) haec Bacchis amīca Mnēsilochoī, illa Pistoclerī esse uīdētur.
 - (c) hanc mulierem ille iuuenis, illam hic amat.
 - (d) Nīcobūlus mīlitis illius audit uerba, tum mōrēs fili plānē cognōscit.
 - (e) huic seruō omnēs meretrīcēs malae, illīs iuuenibus optimae esse uidentur.
 - (f) hunc senem seruus ille dēcipere cōnātur.
- 4 Translate these sentences:
 - (a) ūna salūs uictīs nūllam spērāre salūtem. (Virgil)
 - (b) praeterita mūtāre nōn possumus. (Cicero)
 - (c) nītimur in uetitum semper cupimusque negāta. (Ovid)
 - (d) semel ēmissum uolat irreuocābile uerbum. (Horace)

salūs salūt-is 3f. salvation, source of safety	mūtō 1 I change	we have been denied
uict-ī ōrum 2m. pl. the conquered	nītor 3 dep. I strive towards (in + acc.)	semel once
spērō 1 I hope for	uetit-um ī 2n. the forbidden	ēmiss-us a um spoken, sent forth
praeterit-a ōrum 2n. pl. the past	cupiō 3/4 I yearn for	uolō 1 I fly
	negāt-a ōrum 2n. pl. what	irreuocābil-is e beyond recall, irrevocable

Reading

Translate in word-order, defining which is subject (if one is quoted), which is object etc. in these incomplete sentences, then supply a verb to complete them and

translate into correct English. Finally read out the sentences in Latin with correct phrasing, thinking through the meaning as you read.

- (a) ille mīles hanc mulierem huic iuuenī crēdere . . .
- (b) illum huius senis seruū . . .
- (c) hoc aurum illī mīlitī hic seruus . . .
- (d) cum hāc muliere illum iuuenem hic mīles mox . . .
- (e) huic ille fēminae hōs nummōs omnīs dare . . .

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read this passage carefully, translating in word-order as usual. You will need to choose from the bracketed words the one which makes sense of your suppositions about the direction of the sense so far. Translate into correct English; then, finally, read the passage aloud in Latin, phrasing correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 2C.

Nīcobūlus filium et Bacchidem in aedibus (hanc, cōgitat, uidet). meretrīx Bacchis (ambās, arbitrātur, est). Chrȳsalō autem meretrīx esse (hanc, mīles, illa) nōn uidētur. nunc intrat Cleomachus mīles et illius (uxōris, meretrīcis, filiae) amātor. illum autem Chrȳsalus Bacchidis (uirum, filium, plānē) uocat. Chrȳsalī dominus nunc timet (amātor, citō, ualdē), quod Bacchidem mīlitis (filiam, nihil, uxōrem) arbitrātur. Chrȳsalī manūs seruōs statim (cūrāre, exsoluere, crēdere) iubet, Chrȳsalum cum hōc (fēminā, perīculō, mīlite) pacīscī, quod uult. huic mīlitī seruus statim nummōs (illum, fēminās, ducentī, multōs) pollicētur. sed illum tacēre ac uerba mala (dīcere, audīre, precārī) iubet, quod senem (amāre, pollicērī, dēcipere) uult. deinde nummōs mīlitī (hunc, ille, magnō) prōmittit. Chrȳsalus autem mīlitī illī multa periūria dīcit (ad tempus, dē Mnēsilocho, in aedibus) et illum ad forum mittit.

5

10

English-Latin

- 1 Translate these sentences into Latin, taking care to choose a word-order which gives the correct emphasis (see Reference Grammar W).
 - (a) This man loves that man's daughter.
 - (b) This young man's father seems to be rich.
 - (c) Those women I consider as prostitutes.
 - (d) This is a great duty for good citizens.
 - (e) That soldier wants to defend this woman.

- (f) It's the character of these women I consider wicked.
(Remember 'it's the' is just a way English has of emphasising something; Latin puts the emphatic words early in the sentence.)

2 Translate this passage (after rereading the text of 2C):

CHRYSALUS Who is this chap?

NICOBULUS He's my son Mnesilochus.

CHR. He appears to be with a pretty woman. What do you think?

NIC. She is pretty. But who is she? Tell me, I beg you.

CHR. Do you see that man?

NIC. Do you mean (*use dīcō*) that soldier?

CHR. Yes.

NIC. Go on.

CHR. I will. He is this woman's man.

NIC. What are you saying? But this woman's obviously a whore.

CHR. (Is) this (what) you think? You'll know everything soon.

NIC. What? Is she married (*use nūpt-us a um*)? I'm done for. O poor me!

O wicked young man!

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

Suffixes

Verbs often receive a change in their meaning from a suffix (or 'infix') which becomes part of their stem, e.g.

-*sc-* indicates the beginning of an action. So *cognōscō* means 'I begin to know', 'I get to know'; *pacīscor* 'I begin/attempt to make a treaty'. All -*scō* verbs are 3rd conjugation.

-*it-* denotes repetition. So *clāmitō* = 'I keep on shouting'. All verbs in -*itō* are 1st conjugation.

Word exercise

Give the meaning of these words and their connections with Latin: military; (French) le, la; (Italian) il, la; conative, arbitrate, meretricious, morals.

Everyday Latin

ad hoc 'for, directed at, this one occasion', i.e. unplanned.

post hoc, ergō propter hoc 'after this, therefore because of this'. A famous logical trap into which it is only too easy to fall. After you learned Latin you became a drunken layabout; therefore it was because you learned Latin that . . . etc. Particularly tempting for historians.

Real Latin

Martial

laudat amat cantat nostrōs[┐] mea Rōma[┐] libellōs,

mēque sinūs omnēs mē manus omnis habet.

ecce rubet quīdam, pallet, stupet, ōscitat, ōdit.

hoc uolo: nunc nōbīs carmina nostra placent. (6.60)

laudō 1 I praise

cantō 1 I sing up

libell-us ī 2m. book of
poems

sinūs (nom. pl.) pockets (a
fold in the toga where
books kept)

ecce but look!

rubeō 2 I blush

quīdam someone (subject)

palleō I go pale

stupeō I look bewildered

ōscitō 1 I yawn

ōdit 'he hates'

hoc, nunc, are the

emphatic words here

nōbīs i.e. to me

carmen carmin-is 3n. poem

placet 2 it is pleasing

Mottoes

hoc signum (*emblem*) nōn onus sed honor. (*Stoughton*)

hoc opus. (*Dee*)

hoc virtūtis opus. (*Collison*)

Word study

plānus

This means 'flat', 'level', so 'clear', 'obvious' in Latin. This becomes English 'plane', a level surface, and the tool which makes a surface level. Through French, we have English 'plain', a level surface, and plainsong (as opposed to measured music, i.e. Gregorian chant as opposed to polyphony). In Italian *plānus* emerges as *piano*, 'flat', hence in music, 'softly'. Combined with Italian *forte* 'loud' (cf. Latin *fortis* 'brave', 'strong'), it yields 'pianoforte', which can play both soft and loud. 'Explain' comes from *explānō* 'flatten', 'spread out', literally and before the mind.

Do not confuse with the '-plain' of e.g. 'complain', which derives (again through French) from Latin *plangō*, 'mourn', 'lament' (cf. 'plangent', 'plaintiff').

Section 2D

Running vocabulary for 2D

Note. Places can be located by reference to the maps in *Text*. For this section see p. xiii. For places in later sections see also pp. xii, xiv, 64, 113, 136–7.

<i>accipio</i> 3/4 I receive	<i>cēpi</i> I captured; I have captured	<i>fēcērunt</i> (they) did
<i>adhuc</i> up to now	<i>coēgi</i> I reduced	<i>fēcīt</i> (he) did; he made
<i>adsum</i> I am present, am at hand	<i>congregior</i> 3/4 dep. I come to meet	<i>fītō</i> happen (3rd s. <i>fit</i>)
<i>aedificāuerunt</i> (they) built	<i>cōscripsit</i> he wrote	<i>for-um</i> ī 2n. forum
<i>Agamemnon</i> Agamemnon-is 3m. Agamemnon (king of Argos, leader of expedition against Troy)	<i>cōspicor</i> 1 dep. I catch sight of, spot	<i>fuērunt</i> there were
<i>āmīsisit</i> you (s.) have lost	<i>contrā</i> (+ acc.) against	<i>fugāui</i> I put to flight / routed
<i>annō</i> year (see <i>decimō</i>)	<i>cūrāui</i> I have taken care of	<i>fūgit</i> (he) ran away
<i>ante</i> (+ acc.) in front of	<i>dē</i> (+ abl.) according to	<i>fuit</i> (it/he) was
<i>arc-a</i> ae 1f. money-chest	<i>dēbeō</i> 2 I ought	<i>gessī</i> I have conducted
<i>arm-a</i> ōrum 2n. pl. arms	<i>dēcēpi</i> I deceived	<i>gradior</i> 3/4 dep. I come
<i>armāt-us</i> a um armed	<i>decimō annō</i> in the tenth year	<i>Graec-us</i> ī 2m. a Greek
<i>arx</i> arc-is 3f. citadel	<i>dedit</i> he gave	<i>hīc</i> here
<i>astūt-us</i> a um clever, astute	<i>dēleō</i> 2 I destroy	<i>hōc tempore</i> at this time
<i>Atrīd-ae</i> um 1m. pl. the sons of Atreus (Agamemnon, Menelaus)	<i>dīxistī</i> you (s.) said	<i>hōrā</i> hour (see <i>ūnā hōrā</i>)
<i>attulī</i> (I) have brought	<i>dīxit</i> (he) said	<i>hūc</i> (to) here
<i>audiūi</i> (I) have heard	<i>ecferō</i> I bring out	<i>Īli-um</i> ī 2n. Troy
<i>audiuit</i> he listened to	<i>ēgi</i> I have done	<i>illō tempore</i> at that time
<i>bīn-ī</i> ae a two lots of, twice	<i>egistī</i> you (s.) have done	<i>immō</i> no; more precisely
<i>castīgāui</i> I reprimanded	<i>equidem</i> for my part	<i>impet-us</i> ūs 4m. attack
<i>cēpērunt</i> (they) captured	<i>equ-us</i> ī 2m. horse	<i>in</i> (+ acc.) against
	<i>euge hurrah!</i>	<i>iussit</i> he ordered
	<i>eugepae</i> yippee!	<i>lacrīm-a</i> ae 1f. tear
	<i>exercit-us</i> ūs 4m. army	<i>Lāerti-us</i> a um son of Laertes
	<i>expugnō</i> 1 I take by storm	<i>lign-e-us</i> a um wooden
	<i>fām-a</i> ae 1f. story	<i>male</i> badly
		<i>maledīxī</i> I cursed
		<i>maxim-us</i> a um very great

<i>mīr-us</i> a um amazing, surprising	<i>Pergam-um</i> ī 2n. Troy	<i>soluō</i> 3 I undo
<i>miserē</i> unhappily	<i>periistī</i> you (s.) have perished	<i>spoli-a</i> ōrum 2n. pl. spoils
<i>misereor</i> 2 dep. I feel pity for (+ gen.)	<i>perlegō</i> 3 I read through	<i>suādeō</i> 2 I advise, recommend
<i>miserrim-us</i> a um most wretched	<i>persuādeō</i> 2 persuade	<i>suspīcor</i> 1 dep. I suspect
<i>mīsērunt</i> (they) sent	<i>Philipp-us</i> ī 2m. gold coin (minted by Philip of Macedon)	<i>tacit-us</i> a um silent
<i>multō tempore</i> : <i>haud multō tempore</i> post = not long afterwards	<i>port-a</i> ae 1f. gate	<i>tempore</i> time (see <i>illō, hōc, multō</i>)
<i>necesse est</i> it is necessary	<i>post</i> afterwards	<i>triumphō</i> 1 I celebrate a triumph
<i>nihilī</i> of no value	<i>praed-a</i> ae 1f. booty	<i>Trōi-a</i> ae 1f. Troy
<i>nōscō</i> 3 I examine	<i>Priam-us</i> ī 2m. Priam	<i>uehementer</i> violently
<i>nōuī</i> I know, recognise	<i>prōmīsit</i> (he) has promised	<i>uērō</i> indeed
<i>obsideō</i> 2 I besiege	<i>pugnāui</i> I fought	<i>uērūm</i> but
<i>obsignāt-us</i> a um sealed	<i>quaesō</i> 3 I beg	<i>uetō</i> 1 I forbid
<i>odiōsē</i> odiously, annoyingly	<i>reueniō</i> 4 I return	<i>uīcī</i> I conquered
<i>oīē</i> ho!	<i>rēx</i> rēg-is 3m. king	<i>uīnxērunt</i> (they) bound
<i>ōrātor</i> ōrātōr-is 3m. orator, speaker	<i>sententi-a</i> ae 1f. opinion	<i>Vlixēs</i> Vlix-is 3m. Ulysses (= Odysseus, 'man of many wiles')
<i>patri-a</i> ae 1f. fatherland	<i>seruāui</i> I saved	<i>ūnā hōrā</i> in one hour
	<i>sign-um</i> ī 2n. seal	<i>urbs</i> urb-is 3f. city
	<i>simil-is</i> e like (+ gen.)	
	<i>sine</i> (+ abl.) without	
	<i>sollicitō</i> 1 I bother, worry	

Learning vocabulary for 2D

Nouns

<i>hōr-a</i> ae 1f. hour	<i>for-um</i> ī 2n. forum	<i>tempus</i> tempor-is 3n. time
<i>praed-a</i> ae 1f. booty	(central business place of the city)	<i>urbs</i> urb-is 3f. city
<i>ann-us</i> ī 2m. year	<i>sign-um</i> ī 2n. seal; signal, sign	<i>exercit-us</i> ūs 4m. army
<i>equ-us</i> ī 2m. horse		

Adjectives

tacit-us a um silent

Verbs

<i>pugnō</i> 1 I fight	<i>soluō</i> 3 <i>solui</i> I release, undo	<i>fiō fieri</i> fact- I become, am done, am made
<i>suspīcor</i> 1 dep. I suspect	<i>uincō</i> 3 <i>uici</i> I conquer	
<i>dēbeō</i> 2 I ought; owe	<i>adsum</i> <i>adesse</i> <i>adfuī</i> I am present, am at hand	
<i>dēleō</i> 2 I destroy (perf. <i>dēlēui</i>)		
<i>gerō</i> 3 <i>gessi</i> <i>gest-</i> I do, conduct		

Others

ante (+ acc.) before, in front of

hic here

immō more precisely, i.e. no or yes (a strong

agreement or disagreement with what precedes)

in (+ acc.) against (into, onto)

post later, afterwards

sine (+ abl.) without

uērō indeed

uērū but

Grammar and exercises for section 2D

65 Perfect indicative active: 'I —ed', 'I have —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I loved'	'I had'	'I said'
	'I have loved'	'I have had'	'I have said'
1st s.	amā-u-ī	háb-u-ī	dīx-ī
2nd s.	amā-u-ístī (amāstī)	hab-u-ístī	dīx-ístī (dīxtī)
3rd s.	amā-u-i-t	háb-u-i-t	dīx-i-t
1st pl.	amā-u-i-mus	hab-ú-i-mus	dīx-i-mus
2nd pl.	amā-u-ís-tis (amāstis)	hab-u-ís-tis	dīx-ís-tis
3rd pl.	amā-u-ēru-nt (amāuēre/amārunt)	hab-u-ēru-nt (habuēre)	dīx-ēru-nt (dīxēre)
	4	3/4	
	'I heard' 'I have heard'	'I captured' 'I have captured'	
1st s.	audī-u-ī	cēp-ī	
2nd s.	audī-u-ístī (audiístī/audístī)	cēp-ístī	
3rd s.	audī-u-i-t	cēp-i-t	
1st pl.	audī-u-i-mus	cēp-i-mus	
2nd pl.	audī-u-ís-tis (audístis)	cēp-ís-tis	
3rd pl.	audī-u-ēru-nt (audiuēre/audiērunt/audiēre)	cēp-ēru-nt (cēpēre)	

Notes

1 The perfect tense (*perfectus* 'completed', 'finished') has three basic meanings:

- (by far the most common): completed action in past time, e.g. *amāuī* 'I loved'.
- action in the past seen from the point of view of the present, e.g. *amāuī* 'I have loved'.

- present state arising from past action, e.g. *periī* 'I am done for' (i.e. 'I have perished and therefore am (now) done for').

Cf. Cicero's announcement that the conspirators involved with Catiline had been executed – *uīxērunt* 'they have lived', i.e. 'they are dead'. Generally speaking, the choice will be between (a) and (b), according to context

2 Formation of the perfect tense:

- The perfect active is formed for 1st and 4th conjugations by adding *-ui* to the stem, e.g. *ama-uī*, *audī-uī*. 2nd conjugation verbs only rarely add *-ui* to the stem (e.g. *dēleō dēlēre dēlēuī*); they drop the *-e* of the stem as a rule, e.g. *habeō habēre habuī*. Note the *u* still appears in the ending: this is the key to perfect active in conjugations 1, 2 and 4. Third conjugation are unpredictable (see Note 4).
- Note, however, that in 1st and 4th conjugations, *-ui/-ue/-u-* is sometimes dropped giving e.g. *amāstī* for *amāuistī*, *audiit* for *audiuit* etc. See the bracketed forms in the chart.

3 BUT: all perfect actives have personal endings in:

-ī
-ístī
-it
-imus
-istis
-ērunt (-ēre)

Note that, apart from 1st and 2nd s., the personal endings (*-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt*) are the normal active ones. Note variations on *-ērunt*; it can be *-ēre* (do not confuse with infinitives, e.g. *habēre* and 2nd s. deponents, e.g. *pollicēre*).

4 The perfect active stems of 3rd and 3rd/4th conjugation verbs, and some irregular 1st and 2nd conj. verbs, are not as neatly predictable as those of the other conjugations, but certain patterns do emerge, e.g.:

- adding *-si* to the stem, like:

maneō 2 *mānsī* 'I stayed'
irrideō 2 *irrīsī* 'I laughed at'
iubeō 2 *iussī* 'I ordered'
mittō *mīsī* 'I sent'

Note the effect on e.g.

dūcō dūxī 'I led'

dīcō dīxī 'I said'

uīnciō uīnxī 'I bound'

scribō scripsī 'I wrote'

- (b) doubling up ('reduplicating') the initial consonant and adding a vowel, like:

dō 1 dedī 'I gave'

tangō tetigī 'I touched'

poscō poposcī 'I demanded'

- (c) lengthening the vowel in the stem, like:

inueniō inuēnī 'I found'

fugiō fūgī 'I fled'

legō lēgī 'I read'

- (d) changing the vowel in the stem:

faciō fēcī 'I made', 'I did'

agō ēgī 'I did', 'I drove'

capiō cēpī 'I took'

- (e) no change in the stem at all:

dēfendō dēfendī 'I defended'

compounds of *-cendō -cendī*

verbs in *-uō -uī* e.g. *soluō soluī* 'I released'

- (f) stems ending in *lmnr* ('liquids', 'nasals') add *-uī*, e.g.:

uolō uoluī 'I wished'

aperiō aperuī 'I opened'

66 Irregular verbs

Irregular verbs learned to date are:

- 1 *adiuuō adiuuāre adiuuī* 'I help'

dō dare dedī 'I give'

stō stāre stetī 'I stand'

- 2 *caueō cauēre cauī* 'I am wary', 'I look out'

dēleō dēlēre dēlēuī 'I destroy'

irrīdeō irrīdēre irrīsī 'I laugh at'

iubeō iubēre iussī 'I order'

maneō manēre mānsī 'I remain'

possideō possidēre possēdī 'I possess'

respondeō respondēre respondi 'I reply'

uideō uidēre uīdī 'I see'

- 3 *adscribō* see *scribō*

agō agere ēgī 'I do', 'I act'

āmittō see *mittō*

cognōscō cognōscere cognōuī 'I get to know'

coquō coquere coxī 'I cook'

crēdō crēdere crēdidī 'I believe', 'I trust'

dēfendō dēfendere dēfendī 'I defend'

dīcō dīcere dīxī 'I say'

dīligō dīligere dīlēxī 'I love'

dūcō dūcere dūxī 'I lead'

gerō gerere gessī 'I do', 'I act' ('I wage')

legō legere lēgī 'I read'

mittō mittere mīsī 'I send'; (*ā-*) 'I lose'

opprimō opprimere oppressī 'I surprise', 'I catch'; 'I crush'

ostendō ostendere ostendī 'I show'

pergō pergere perrēxī 'I carry on'

poscō poscere poposcī 'I demand'

prō-mittō -mittere -mīsī 'I promise'

reddō reddere reddidī 'I give back'

scribō scribere scripsī 'I write' (to)

soluō soluere soluī 'I release'

tangō tangere tetigī 'I touch'

uīncō uīncere uīcī 'I conquer'

- 4 *inueniō inuenīre inuēnī* 'I find'

uīnciō uīncīre uīnxī 'I bind'

- 3/4 *capiō capere cēpī* 'I capture'

dēcipiō dēcipere dēcēpī 'I deceive'

faciō facere fēcī 'I do', 'I make'

fugiō fugere fūgī 'I flee'

īnspiciō īnspicere īnspexī 'I inspect', 'I look into'

perficiō perficere perfēcī 'I complete'

Irregulars

(ad)ferō ferre tulī 'I bear, carry'

adsum 'I am present' see sum

auferō auferre abstulī 'I take away', 'I remove'

eō ire īuī or i-ī 'I go' (not really irregular, as the stem is -i)

mālō mālī mālūī 'I prefer'

nōlō nōlle nōlūī 'I do not want'

sum esse fuī 'I am'

uolō uelle uolūī 'I wish'

Exercises

- 1 Form and then conjugate the perfect of these verbs: clāmō, uideō, uincō, uinciō, abeō, sum, dō, capiō, ferō, faciō, (optional: pugnō, dēleō, gerō, dormiō, redeō, adsum, fugiō, adferō, dēcipiō).
- 2 Translate each of these perfects. Change s. to pl. and vice versa: dēlēuistī, gessērunt, uīcit, adfuistis, soluī, pugnāuimus, abiistis, (optional: amāuit, habuērunt, dēfendistī, necāuērunt, audīuī, cēpistis).
- 3 What verbs are these perfects from? Translate them: dedistī, crēdidit, attulērunt, fuit, dēbuistis, mānsī, oppressimus, scripsērunt, adiūuistis, tetigit, amīsistis, dīximus, exiit, (optional: uīdit, mīsī, habitāuimus, timuistī, possēdistis, rogāuērunt, stetī, monuit, inuēnērunt, iniistī, abstulimus, reddidī, potuit, uoluī, māluērunt, cāuistis, perfēcimus, ēgit, dīlēxī, inspexērunt).
- 4 Give the Latin for: I have given; we fought; you (s.) destroyed; he has loved; they were present; you (pl.) conquered; I went out; they have killed; he replied; you (s.) have acted; we completed; you (pl.) carried.
- 5 Give present, future and perfect 3rd s. and pl. of these verbs: dormiō, pugnō, dēleō, gerō, sum, auferō, redeō, dēcipiō.
- 6 Locate the perfects in this list and translate them (say what tense the others are): stābit, dedērunt, crēdet, aderis, uīcistī, pugnābunt, soluunt, dēlent, gerent, mānsī, inuēnistis, perficiēs, dīligis, habēs, monuistis.

67 Ablatives: phrases of time

We have met two uses of the ablative to date: with prepositions (esp. of place, e.g. 'in', 'at', 'from'), and descriptive ('a man of great arrogance') (cf. 10, 23, 49).

The ablative case is also used to show the time at which or within which something took place (cf. locational use), e.g. illō tempore 'at that time'; prīmā hōrā 'at the first hour'; decem annīs '(with)in ten years'.

Exercise

1 Translate these sentences:

- (a) Mnēsilochns tacitus uerba Chrȳsalī audīuit.
- (b) cum mīlite pugnāuī, iam cum sene pugnābō, nunc autem tacitus sum.
- (c) magnō post tempore Graecī urbem Trōiam cēpērunt.
- (d) hōc tempore noctis omnēs dormīre dēbent.
- (e) fūrēs in aedīs nocte clam ineunt tacitī.
- (f) ut Graecī equum illō tempore contrā¹ Trōiam mīsērunt, ita hodiē tabellās mittet contrā dominum Chrȳsalus.

¹ contrā (+acc.) against

2 Translate these sentences:

- (a) dēfēnsor culpae dīcit mihi 'fēcimus et nōs haec iuuenēs.' (Juvenal)
- (b) dīc mihi, quid fēcī, nisi nōn sapienter amāuī? (Ovid)
- (c) fuimus Trōes: fuit Īlium. (Virgil)
- (d) lūsistī satis, ēdistī satis atque bibistī; tempus abīre tibi est. (Horace)
- (e) nātūra sēmīna nōbīs scientiae dedit; scientiam nōn dedit. (Seneca)

dēfēnsor defensōr-is 3m.

defender

culp-a ae 1f. fault

nisi except that

sapienter wisely

Trōs Trō-is 3m. Trojan

Īli-um ī 2n. Troy

lūdō 3 lūsī I play, have

fun

ēdō ēsse ēdī I eat

bibō 3 bibī I drink

nātūr-a ae 1f. nature

sēmīn sēmīn-is 3n. seed

scientī-a ae 1f. knowledge

Reading exercise

Recognising the function of an ablative phrase is not always easy. So far you have met three types: (a) descriptive, e.g. uir summō ingeniō 'a very intelligent man', (b) prepositional, e.g. cum illā muliere 'with that woman', (c) time when or within which, e.g. hōc tempore 'at this time', ūnā hōrā '(with)in one hour'. Translate the following phrases and say to which category they belong: uir

summā audāciā; illō tempore; hāc nocte; dē tuō periculō; tacitā nocte; ā senibus miseris; seruus multā astūtiā; mēcum; hōris multīs; magnō post tempore; fēmina summā pulchritūdine; ē forō; illō noctis tempore; cum meā uxōre; annīs decem.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read this passage carefully, translating in word-order. You will need to stop to group the ablative phrases and decide their function. Often the words in the phrase will not be next to one another. Attempt as you read to classify ablative adjectives and hold them in your mind without attempting to translate fully until the noun solves them. Translate into correct English, then read aloud in Latin, phrasing correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read.

Atridae longō post tempore Ilium cēpērunt. decimō enim annō urbem Trōiam tandem expugnāuerunt. nam illō tempore rēgēs in urbem equum mīserunt ligneum. Epēus, uir astūtiā magnā, equum illum aedificāuit. mīlītēs in equō fuērunt armātī, summā audāciā uirī. hī ex equō illā exiērunt nocte et urbem mox dēlēuerunt. sic illō diē Trōia urbs unā periit hōrā.

English-Latin

1 Translate into Latin. Consult Reference Grammar *W* on word-order.

- The young man stood in the house silently.
- Has the old man given the gold to the soldier?
- They have sent the horses against the city of Troy.
- On this night I have defeated my master and captured much booty.
- At this time of year all people ought to stay at home.
- The soldiers have seen the signal and will soon advance against the town.

2 Translate this passage (after rereading the text of 2D).

NICOBULUS What ought I to do, Chrysalus? Tell me.

CHRYSALUS I don't want to say.

NIC. I beg you, speak. What shall I do? For I want to succeed (use rem bene gerere).

CHR. You will succeed, in my view, if you give the gold to your son. But I'm not giving an order.

NIC. I'll give him the money. Stay here! I'll be back soon.
(Nicobulus goes into the house)

CHR. The old man's destruction is nigh! How I've deceived him!
Now Mnesilochus will be able to give his mistress enough money.

Deliciae Latinae

Real Latin

Vulgate

in prīncipiō creāuit Deus coelum et terram. (Genesis 1.1)

fōrmāuit igitur dominus Deus hominem dē līmō terrae et inspīrāuit in faciem eius spīrāculum uītae. (Genesis 2.7)

septimō autem diē sabbatum dominī Deī tuī est; nōn faciēs omne opus in eō, tū et filius tuus et filia tua, seruus tuus et ancilla tua, iūmentum tuum . . . sex enim diēbus fēcit dominus coelum et terram et mare. (Exodus 20.10–11)

prīncipi-um beginning
creō 1 I make
coel-um heaven, sky
terr-a earth
fōrmō 1 I form
līm-us mud, clay

īspīrō 1 I breathe
faciem (acc.) face
eius his
spīrācul-um breath
uīt-a life
septim-us seventh

sabbat-um sabbath
omne = any (i.e. all opus is excluded)
in eō in, during it
ancill-a maidservant
iūment-um ox
mare sea

Mottoes

nīl sine Deō. (Awdry)

nīl sine labōre. (Atkinson, Simpson)

nīl sine causā. (Brown)

nōn sine Deō. (Eliot)

nōn sine causā. (Drury)

nōn sine industriā. (Bevan)

nōn sine iūre. (Charter)

nōn sine periculō. (Mackenzie, Walker)

labor labōr-is 3m. work
caus-a ae 1f. reason, cause

industri-a ae 1f. effort

iūs iūr-is 3n. justice, right

Word-building

Further suffixes

The following suffixes commonly form abstract nouns, 'the quality of', 'the condition of':

- ia (gen. s. -iae f.) e.g. *audācia* 'boldness'
- tās (gen. s. -tātis f.) e.g. *bonitās* 'goodness'
- tūs (gen. s. -tūtis f.) e.g. *seruitūs* 'slavery'
- tūdō (gen. s. -tūdinis f.) e.g. *multitūdō* 'manyness', 'crowd', 'plenty'

Exercise

- 1 Derive and give the meaning of the following nouns: *iuuentūs*, *scientia*, *timor*, *uirtūs*, *pulchritūdō*, *paupertās*, *praedictiō*, *facilitās*, *praetor*, *malefactor*, *clāmor*, *cīuitās*.
- 2 Form the gen. s. of: *uirtūs*, *pulchritūdō*, *paupertās*, *facilitās*, *timor*, *praetor*.
- 3 What are the nominatives of the following nouns, none of which you have met? *Scīpiōnis*, *Cicerōnis*, *legiōnibus*, *longitūdinem*, *uictōrēs*, *cupiditātī*, *ēruptiōne*, *iuuentūtis*, *libertātem*, *explōratōrum*.
- 4 Can you guess the meaning of any of the nouns in 3?

Adjective formation

Here is a list of common suffixes which form adjectives:

- ilis } 'able to be', e.g. *ductilis* 'leadable', *mōbilis* 'mobile'
- bilis }
- idus 'condition', e.g. *timidus* 'being in a condition of fear', 'afraid'
- ōsus 'full of', e.g. *periculōsus* 'full of danger', 'dangerous'
- eus 'made of', e.g. *aureus* 'made of gold', 'golden'

The following list of suffixes may best be covered by the meaning 'pertaining to': -ālis, -ānus, -āris, -ārius, -icus, -ilis, -īnus, -īuus, -ius, e.g. *Rōm-ānus* 'pertaining to Rome', *Lat-īnus* 'pertaining to Latium', *seru-ilis* 'pertaining to slaves', 'servile', *patr-ius* 'pertaining to one's father', 'paternal', 'ancestral' etc.

Exercise

Analyse the following adjectives etymologically, and reach a conclusion about their meaning: *familiāris*, *facilis*, *audibilis*, *incrēdibilis*, *fertilis*, *scaenicus*, *fūrtiuus*, *senilis*, *honōrabilis*, *igneus*, *oculeus* (used of monsters), *aquārius*, *pecūniōsus*, *uirilis*, *uxōrius*, *domesticus*, *nōminātiuus*, *dōtālis*, *animōsus*, *cīuilis*, *iuuenilis*.

Everyday Latin

Remember three important perfects with reference to Julius Caesar's famous words that he wrote on a placard at a huge triumph in Rome in 46 celebrating one of his quickest victories (at Zela in Asia Minor in 47):

uēnī, uīdī, uīcī 'I came, I saw, I conquered'

On tombstones *fl.* = *floruit* '(s)he flourished' and *ob.* = *obiit* '(s)he died' (cf. 'obituary') – both perfect tense.

Word exercise

Give the Latin connection of the following words: predatory, annuity, perennial, anniversary¹, millennium², temporary, urbane, tacit, pugnacious, delete, debt, solve, ante-chamber.

¹ *uers-* 'turn'.

² *mille* '1,000'.

Word study

sinecure (cūra)

This derives from *sine* + *cūra*, 'without the care', and *cūra*, through French, came to mean 'cure' in Middle English. In ecclesiastical language, *cūra* became the 'cure of souls', whence 'curate', one who cures souls (cf. French *curé*). So a 'sinecure' was a church office which paid a salary but did not involve work, the cure of souls. 'Secure' comes from *sē-* ('without') + *cūra*, 'without anxiety or care'; and *sēcūrus* became *seür* in Old French, whence English 'sure'. Late Latin *excūrō* 'I clean off' (Classical Latin 'I take great care') becomes, by a circuitous route, 'scour'! 'Curious' comes from *cūra* too. Latin *cūriōsus* means 'full of cares', 'anxious about', and so also 'inquisitive': hence 'curiosity', and in abbreviated form 'curio'. 'Accurate' comes from *ad* + *cūrō* 'give care to'.

aequus and equus

Since classical *ae-* became *e-* in mediaeval Latin, the derivations of these two words are easily confused! *aequus* 'even', 'equal' gives all the 'equality' words (and through French 'egalitarian'). 'Equations', of course, are supposed to balance and the 'equator' equates, i.e. makes equal, the two halves of the earth. 'Equitable' means 'fair', and its negative gives 'iniquity'. *adaequāre* means 'I make truly level' (i.e. 'at a suitable level'), so 'adequate'. 'Equilibrium' is 'even balance' (*libra* 'scales'); 'equanimity' is the state of a balanced *animus* or 'mind'; and an 'equinox' occurs when night equals day.

equus 'horse' (cf. *eques* 'cavalryman') gives us 'equine', 'equestrianism' etc.

arca

arca, 'box', 'coffer', comes from the same root as *arceō* 'I keep at a distance'. *arcānus* means 'boxed in', 'closed in', whence 'arcane', meaning 'secret'. In compounds, *arceō* becomes *-erceō*. So *coerceō* 'contain', 'restrain' gives English 'coerce'; *exerceō* 'drive out', 'keep someone moving' yields 'exercise' (cf. *exercitus* 'a trained force').

Section 2E**Running vocabulary for 2E**

<i>accipio</i> 3/4 I receive	<i>alloquar</i> I shall speak to	<i>bālītāntēs</i> (nom. pl. f.)
<i>accumbō</i> 3 I lie down	<i>amātor amātōr-is</i> 3m. lover	bleating
<i>addict-us</i> ī 2m. debt-slave,	<i>amb-ō</i> ae both	<i>bard-us</i> a um dull
bondman (a debtor	<i>amplexābor</i> I shall	<i>bene faciō</i> 3/4 I do x (dat.)
who could not pay	embrace	a favour
could become the slave	<i>amplexor</i> 1 dep. I embrace	<i>bis</i> twice
of his creditor)	<i>ante-eo -īre</i> I beat, I am in	<i>blandiloqu-us</i> a um
<i>adgrediar</i> I shall come up	advance of	persuasive, sweet-
(to)	<i>aperiō</i> 4 I open	talking
<i>agn-us</i> ī 2m. lamb	<i>appellō</i> 1 I call	<i>blenn-us</i> ī 2m. blockhead
<i>ais</i> you (s.) say	<i>ariēs ariet-is</i> 3m. ram	<i>buccō buccōn-is</i> 3m.
<i>aliquis</i> (nom. s. m.)	<i>attōns-us</i> a um shorn	blabberer
someone	<i>audeō</i> 2 I dare	<i>castīgō</i> 1 I rebuke

Section 2E

cōgō 3 I drive
colloquor 3 dep. I discuss together
conābimur we will try
cōnābor I shall try
conclūs-us a um shut in
condiciō condiciōn-is 3f. term
cōnspicor 1 dep. I catch sight of
cōnsultō 1 I deliberate
conuīui-um ī 2n. party
cupiō 3/4 I desire
dērideō 2 I mock
dīmidi-um ī 2n. half
dolor dolōr-is 3m. pain
effringō 3 I break down
ei alas!
eōdem (abl. s. n.) the same
etiam actually, then!
 (expresses indignation, impatience); still
ēueniō 4 I happen, turn out
euge hurrah!
ēuocō 1 I call out
expectō 1 I wait for
fatū-us a um silly
feriō 4 I strike (obscene)
flāgiti-um ī 2n. disgrace
foris for-is 3f. door
fortūn-a ae 1f. fortune
fung-us ī 2m. mushroom
gerō 3 I conduct; *sē gerere* to behave oneself
hāc this way
heus! hey!
hūc (to) here
hūmān-us a um human
ibi there
improb-us a um abandoned, wicked
incursō 1 I charge into (in + acc.) (obscene)
indicō 1 I point to
īnfortūnāt-us a um down on his luck
ingrediēris you (s.) will enter

ingredior 3/4 dep. I enter
intereō interire interii I die
intus inside
lac lact-is 3n. milk
lacerō 1 I tear to pieces
lān-a ae 1f. wool
lēniō 4 I soothe, calm
lepidē charmingly, pleasantly
lepid-us a um charming
long-us a um long
loquar I shall speak
loquēris you (s.) will speak
lūdō 3 I play about, have a good time
magis more
mal-um ī 2n. trouble
mandō 1 I entrust (x acc. to y dat.)
maximē very much, especially
metuō 3 I am afraid
minimē not at all (lit. least)
modestē in moderation
molest-us a um nasty, irksome
moror 1 dep. I delay (NB. *haud moror* = I'm not bothered, I don't mind)
mors mort-is 3f. death
nārō 1 I tell, relate
negō 1 I say no
nēquiti-a ae 1f. wickedness
nihilī worth nothing, of no value
nisi unless, if . . . not
niteō 2 I glisten, am in good condition
nōminō 1 I name
nōnne? surely?
oblīuiscētur he will forget
occāsiō occāsiōn-is 3f. chance, opportunity
ōrō 1 I beg
ouis ou-is 3f. sheep
pāstor pāstōr-is 3m. shepherd

patiar I shall endure
patiēmur we will endure
pecū pecūs 4n. flock
perdō 3 *perdidī* I destroy, ruin
pessim-us a um very bad, very wicked
Philipp-us ī 2m. gold coin (minted by Philip of Macedon)
Philoxen-us ī 2m. Philoxenus ('friend of strangers')
pol by Pollux!; indeed!
prō (+ abl.) for
procul far away
prōdigi-um ī 2n. miracle
prōducō 3 I lead out, bring out
prōgrediēmur we will advance
propter (+ acc.) on account of
pulsō 1 I knock at
pūtīd-us a um rotten
quamquam although
quantī (see *tantī*)
quī (of) those who
quidem indeed
quid multa? lit. why (should I say) a lot? = to cut a long story short
quōmodo how?
regrediēmur we shall go back
sapienter wisely
sē himself
sē gerere to behave (himself)
sequar I shall follow
sequēminī you (pl.) will follow
sequēmur we will follow
sequēris you (s.) will follow
simil-is e alike, similar
sinō 3 I allow
soci-us ī 2m. ally

<i>sollicitō</i> 1 I bother, worry	<i>tantī . . . quantī</i> worth as much . . . as	<i>uīn-um</i> ī 2n. wine
<i>sōl-us a um</i> alone		<i>uīt-a</i> ae 1f. life
<i>sordid-us a um</i> dirty	<i>tondeō</i> 2 <i>totondī</i> I shear, fleece	<i>uīuō</i> 3 I live
<i>spoliō</i> 1 I despoil, strip		<i>uix</i> with difficulty
<i>stolid-us a um</i> senseless	<i>tranquill-us a um</i> calm	<i>ulcīscor</i> 3 dep. I take revenge on
<i>stultissim-us a um</i> stupidest	<i>ueniō</i> 4 I come	<i>umquam</i> ever
<i>stultiti-a</i> ae 1f. stupidity	<i>uesper uesper-is</i> 3m. evening	<i>unde</i> from where?
<i>tamquam</i> like	<i>uīctus ūs</i> 4m. food	<i>uōx uōc-is</i> 3f. voice

Learning vocabulary for 2E

Nouns

<i>uīt-a</i> ae 1f. life	<i>foris for-is</i> 3f. door	<i>ouis ou-is</i> 3f. sheep
<i>mal-um</i> ī 2n. trouble; evil	<i>mors mort-is</i> 3f. death	<i>uōx uōc-is</i> 3f. voice; word

Adjectives

<i>amb-ō</i> ae both (like <i>duo</i> : see 54)	<i>pūtid-us a um</i> rotten	<i>simil-is e</i> alike, similar; like x (gen.)
---	-----------------------------	---

Verbs

<i>castīgō</i> 1 I rebuke	<i>audeō</i> 2 <i>aus-</i> I dare	<i>ingredior</i> 3/4 dep. <i>ingress-</i> I enter
<i>sollicitō</i> 1 I bother, worry	<i>accipiō</i> 3/4 <i>accēpī</i> , <i>accept-</i> I receive, welcome, learn, obtain	<i>patior</i> 3/4 dep. <i>pass-</i> I endure, suffer; allow
<i>amplexor</i> 1 dep. I embrace		
<i>cōnspicor</i> 1 dep. I catch sight of		

Others

<i>hāc</i> this way	<i>nisi</i> unless, if . . . not; except	<i>propter</i> (+ acc.) on account of
<i>hūc</i> (to) here	<i>prō</i> (+ abl.) for, in return for; on behalf of; in front of	<i>quamquam</i> although
<i>ibi</i> there		

Grammar and exercises for 2E

68 Future indicative deponent (all conjugations)

	1	2	3
	<i>minābor</i>	<i>pollicēbor</i>	<i>loquar</i>
	'I shall threaten'	'I shall promise'	'I shall speak'
1st s.	<i>minā-bo-r</i>	<i>pollicē-bo-r</i>	<i>loqu-a-r</i>
2nd s.	<i>minā-be-ris</i>	<i>pollicē-be-ris</i>	<i>loqu-ē-ris</i>
	(<i>minā-be-re</i>)	(<i>pollicē-be-re</i>)	(<i>loqu-ē-re</i>)

3rd s.	<i>minā-bi-tur</i>	<i>pollicē-bi-tur</i>	<i>loqu-ē-tur</i>
1st pl.	<i>minā-bi-mur</i>	<i>pollicē-bi-mur</i>	<i>loqu-ē-mur</i>
2nd pl.	<i>minā-bi-minī</i>	<i>pollicē-bi-minī</i>	<i>loqu-ē-minī</i>
3rd pl.	<i>minā-bi-ntur</i>	<i>pollicē-bi-ntur</i>	<i>loqu-ē-ntur</i>
	4	3/4	
	<i>mentiar</i> 'I shall lie'	<i>prōgrediar</i> 'I shall advance'	
1st s.	<i>mēnti-a-r</i>	<i>prōgrēdi-a-r</i>	
2nd s.	<i>mēnti-ē-ris</i> (<i>mēnti-ē-re</i>)	<i>prōgredi-ē-ris</i> (<i>progredi-ē-re</i>)	
3rd s.	<i>mēnti-ē-tur</i>	<i>prōgredi-ē-tur</i>	
1st pl.	<i>mēnti-ē-mur</i>	<i>prōgredi-ē-mur</i>	
2nd pl.	<i>mēnti-ē-minī</i>	<i>prōgredi-ē-minī</i>	
3rd pl.	<i>mēnti-ē-ntur</i>	<i>prōgredi-ē-ntur</i>	

Notes

- We noticed the close relationship between present deponent and present active forms at 58. There is an equally close relationship between future deponent and future active forms (for which see 50).
- While in the 3rd and 4th conjs. the *-am*, *-ēs*, *-et* of the active becomes regularly *-ar*, *-ēris* (*-ēre*), *-ētur*, in the 1st and 2nd conjs., the active *-bō*, *bīs*, *-bit* becomes *-bor*, *-beris* (*-bere*), *-bitur*. Cf. 3rd conjugation presents (*loquor*, *loqu-eris*, *loqu-itur*). Note in both the change of vowel *-i-* to *-e-* in 2nd s.
- Observe the vowel-length of the 2nd s. future of *loquor* – *loquēris*. Contrast the 2nd s. present – *loqueris*.

Exercises

- Conjugate the future of: *opīnor*, *cōnspicor*, *uideor*, *īrāscor*, *oblīuīscor*, *mentior*, *ēgredior*, *patior*, (optional: *minor*, *precor*, *recordor*, *sequor*, *ingredior*, *suspīcor*).
- Translate and turn s. to pl. and vice versa: *opīnābor*, *mēntiēris*, *precābitur*, *uidēbiminī*, *loquēris*, *pollicēbimur* (optional: *ingrediar*, *sequētur*, *uidēberis*, *cōnspicābuntur*).
- Give the Latin for: you (s.) will pray; she will threaten; they will seem; you (pl.) will talk; I shall advance; we shall think; they will try; he will follow.
- Turn the following presents into their future equivalents and translate:

minātur, precantur, opīnor, uidēminī, cōspiciātur, sequitur, loquuntur (optional: irāsceris, mentīris, ēgredior, prōgrediminī, precāmur, patimur).

- 5 Turn these futures into their present equivalents and translate: arbitrāberis, cōnābitur, patientur, loquēminī, sequēmur, adgrediēris, morābor, opīnābimur, prōgrediēminī, uidēbitur, mentiar.
- 6 Name the tenses of these verbs: dedit, conāberis, mentitur, uidēbitur, fēcērunt, amant, dēlent, dīcent, loquēris, tulistī (optional: fert, erit, irāscar, fuistis, timet, dūcet, potest, mānsī).

69 Genitive of value

The genitive case is used to express the value put on a person or thing, e.g. *homo nihilī* 'a man of nothing' i.e. 'of no value', 'worth nothing'; *tantī es quantī fungus* 'you are of such (value) as a mushroom' (lit. 'you are of such value as of what value (is) a mushroom').

Exercises

1 Translate these sentences:

- Nīcobūlus filium uocāuit iuuenem nihilī.
- Philoxenus autem amīcās nīl nisi bonum habuit.
- Nīcobūlus Bacchidī exitium minātur, nisi filium illa soluet.
- Philoxenus Nīcobūlō, quod amat, tantī esse quantī fungus pūtīdus uidētur.
- Bacchis! tē illum senem amplexārī iubeō. ego hunc amplexar.
- soror! ita agam dē sene, ut iussistī, quamquam malum mihi esse magnum uidētur mortem amplexārī.
- senēs, ut opīnor, ambō mox ad forēs prōgredientur.
- ita est, ut dīxī: ad forēs prōgrediuntur senēs.

2 Translate these sentences:

- humilēs labōrant, ubi potentēs dissident. (Phaedrus)
- dīuīna nātūra dedit agrōs, ars hūmāna aedificāuit urbīs. (Varro)
- meminī enim, meminī neque umquam obliuīscar noctis illius. (Cicero)
- hīc, ubi nunc Rōma est, orbis caput, arbor et herbae et paucae pecudēs et casa rāra fuit. (Ovid)

- rēligiō peperit scelerōsa atque impia facta. (Lucretius)
- nēmo repente fuit turpissimus. (Juvenal)

humil-is humil-is 3m. lowly person	meminī I remember	between, scattered
labōrō 1 I have a hard time	umquam ever	rēligiō rēligiōn-is 3f. religion
potēns potent-is 3m. powerful man	obliuīscar 3 dep. (+ gen.) I forget	pariō 3/4 peperī I bring forth, cause
dissideō 2 I disagree	Rōm-a ae 1f. Rome	scelerōs-us a um wicked
dīuīn-us a um divine	orb-is orb-is 3m. world	impi-us a um impious
nātūr-a ae 1f. nature	arbor arbor-is 3f. tree	fact-um ī 2n. deed
ager agr-ī 2m. field	herb-a ae 1f. grass	nēmo no one
ars art-is 3f. art, skill	pauc-ī ae a a few	repente suddenly
hūmān-us a um human	pecus pecud-is 3f. cattle	turpissimus (nom. m.) an utter scoundrel
aedificō 1 I build	cas-a ae 1f. cottage, hovel	
	rārus a um few and far	

Optional supplementary revision exercises

- Give the conjugation, infinitive and meaning of the following verbs: adseruō, scribō, salūtō, crēdō, perficiō, arbitror, nesciō, opprimō, reddō, dērīdeō, possum, mālō, agō, dēfendō, fugiō, dormiō, ferō, prōmittō, poscō, stō, sum, iubeō.
- Give the meaning, declension, gender and gen. s. of the following nouns: serua, sōl, diēs, manus, officium, opus, scelus, stilus, ouis, caput, rēs, periculum, nox, mulier, puer, cīuis.
- Pair the nouns of list A which agree with the adjectives of list B (often a noun will find agreement with more than one adjective). Identify the case, and translate, e.g. familiam + hanc = acc. 'this household'; familiam + similem = acc. 'the same sort of household'.

A Nouns

familiam, deōs, uxōrī, nōminum, sorōre, frāter, onera, animō, cōsiliū, iuuenēs, manū, rēi, diēs, mīlitem, uōx.

B Adjectives

multī, illā, magnōs, omnium, ingentia, celerīs, haec, illud, hanc, similem, trīstis, facilēs, huic.

Reading and Reading exercise / Test exercise

- Below are given a number of main clauses and a pool containing an equal number of subordinate clauses or phrases to complete them. Read and translate

each main clause, then, on the basis of sense, choose the subordinate clause which best fulfils your expectations.

- (a) ego tē, homo pūtide, nihil habeō propter hoc . . .
- (b) uītam arbitror nīl . . .
- (c) senēs mortem semper mālunt . . .
- (d) magnum tibi malum, Bacchis, dabō . . .
- (e) Nīcobūlus tamen aurum accipiet et in aedīs Bacchidum ingrediētur . . .
- (f) tū tibi bene facere hōc tempore dēbēs . . .
- (g) tum filium tuum cōspiciāberis . . .

dum uīuis

quod amātor senex fierī audēs

quamquam Mnēsilocho et Chrēsalo ulciscī māuult
nisi bonum

nisi nobīs filiōs nostrōs reddēs

quam uītam

ubi ad forēs Bacchidum adgrediēris et īspiciēs

- 2 Read the following passage carefully, translating in word-order, defining word function and phrasing word-groups, while anticipating what is to come. Then translate into correct English. Finally, read the passage aloud in Latin, phrasing correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read.

Philoxenus, Pistoclērī pater, uir summā uirtūte, in scaenam intrāuit. ibi Nīcobūlum, Mnēsilocho patrem, uidit. Philoxenō ille multa mala nārrāuit dē filiīs. tandem ad aedīs Bacchidum adiērunt, pulsauerunt forēs, meretrīcēs uocauerunt. tum, ubi ex aedibus illae mulierēs exiērunt, filiōs poposcērunt. tandem senēs in aedīs illae dūxērunt.

English-Latin

- 1 (a) If you (s.) don't give me back my money, I'll kill you.
- (b) Nothing bothers me except a lying slave.
- (c) That old man is worth as much as a wicked slave.
- (d) I will embrace my son, if he dares to approach me.
- (e) At that time I couldn't hear any¹ voice but² yours.
- (f) Although life is good,³ death will approach the doors of rich and poor.

¹ Rephrase: 'I was able to hear no voice'.

² = nisi.

³ Trans. 'a good thing'.

- 2 Read the text of 2E again carefully, then translate this passage:

NICOBULUS Philoxenus, you are of no value. Although you are an old man, yet you dare to become a lover.

PHILOXENUS Don't blame me, Nicobulus. And if you want to rebuke your son, go inside. The women will look after you, if you enter.

BACCHIS 1: I'll give back two hundred pieces, old man, if you'll come in. And I'll embrace you.

NIC. I'm done for. It's difficult, because I want to upbraid the scoundrels. Nevertheless, although I shall think myself a scoundrel, I'll go in.

SOROR 2: Good. You are doing yourself a good turn, as you should, while you're alive. In death no mistress will embrace you.

Deliciae Latinae

Word exercise

Give the meaning and Latin connections of: vital, malicious, vociferous, ambidextrous, castigate, solicitous, patience, mortal, accept.

Word-building

English suffixes

Note the common anglicisation of Latin suffixes (via French):

English	Latin	
-ry	-ris, -rius, -ria	} 'pertaining to'
-an	-ānus	
-ious	-ius	
-ic	-icus	
-ive	-īuus	} 'able to be'
-able	-ābilis	
-ible	-ibilis	
-ion	-iō	} 'action or result of action'
-ate, ite	-ātus, -itus	
-ty	-tās	} 'quality, condition of'
-nce	-ntia	
-tude	-tūdo	

Exercise

Say what you can about the derivation and meaning of the following English words.

Adjectives: legible, submersible, inaudible, irrevocable, military, captive, laudable, urban, scenic, nuptial, impecunious, filial, visible.

Nouns: fraternity, sorority, submission, nomination, audition, vicinity, admonition, station, visibility, vision, mission, longitude, instance (= *insto* I urge), arrogance (= *adrogō* I claim), replication, fugitive.

Word study

forum

forum, the legal and business centre of a town, basically means 'outdoors' and is connected with *forēs* 'doors' and the adverb *forās* 'out of doors'. *forum* yields the adjective *forēnsis* 'connected with the legal and business centre', hence English 'forensic', 'connected with the law'. *forestis* is a late Latin adjective often connected with *silua* 'a wood out of doors', whence 'forest'. From *forāneus* through Middle English *foreine* and Old French *forain* we eventually get 'foreign'.

Real Latin

Martial

praedia sōlus habēs, et sōlus, Candide, nummōs,
aurea sōlus habēs, murrina sōlus habēs,
Massica sōlus habēs et Opīmī Caecuba sōlus,
et cor sōlus habēs, sōlus et ingenium.
omnia sōlus habēs – nec mē puta uelle negāre!
uxōrem sed habēs, Candide, cum populō. (3.26)

praedi-um ī 2n. farm
sōl-us a um alone
Candide O Candidus
murrin-um ī 2n. expensive
agate jar
Massic-um ī 2n. fine wine

Opīmī Caecub-um ī 2n.
Caecuban wine of
Opimius' vintage
(supposedly laid down
121; cf. 'Napoleon
brandy')

cor cord-is 3n. heart
ingeni-um ī 2n. wit
nec mē puta 'do not
reckon that I' . . .
negō 1 I deny (it)
popul-us ī 2m. people

Vulgate

sex diēbus operāberis, et faciēs omnia opera tua . . . nōn moechāberis . . .
nōn loquēris contrā proximum tuum falsum testimōnium. (*Exodus*
20.9ff.)

<i>sex</i> six	<i>contrā</i> + acc. against	<i>testimōni-um</i> ī 2n.
<i>operor</i> 1 dep. I am busy	<i>proxim-us</i> ī 2m. neighbour	evidence
<i>moechor</i> 1 dep. I commit adultery	<i>fals-us</i> untrue	

Mottoes

prō deō et – patriā (*Mackenzie*) / libertāte (*Wilson*) / ecclēsiā. (*Bisshopp*)
prō Deō, prō rēge, prō patriā, prō lēge. (*Blakemore*)
prō fidē et patriā. (*Long*)
prō patriā et – libertāte (*Michie*) / rēge (*Jones, Thomas*) / religiōne
(*Shanley*) / virtūte. (*Higgins*)
prō patriā vīvere et morī. (*Grattan*)
prō rēge et populō. (*Bassett*)
prō rēge, lēge, grege. (*Shield*)
prō lūsū et praedā. (*MacMoran*)

<i>patri-a ae</i> 1f. fatherland	<i>religiō religiōn-is</i> 3f.	<i>popul-us</i> ī 2m. people
<i>ecclēsi-a ae</i> 1f. church	religion	<i>grex greg-is</i> 3m. crowd,
<i>rēx rēg-is</i> 3m. king	<i>uīuō</i> 3 I live	mob
<i>lēx lēg-is</i> 3f. law	<i>moriōr</i> 3/4 I die	<i>lūs-us ūs</i> 4m. sport
<i>fidēs fidē-ī</i> 5f. faith		

SECTION THREE

Section 3A

Running vocabulary for 3A

<i>abigō</i> 3 I drive off	<i>eae</i> (nom. pl. f.) those (tr. that)	<i>Iugul-ae ārum</i> 1f. pl. Orion
<i>adpōt-us a um</i> tipsy	<i>eam</i> (acc. s. f.) that	<i>Iuppiter Iou-is</i> 3m. Jupiter
<i>Alcumēn-a ae</i> 1f. Alcumena	<i>eās</i> (acc. pl. f.) those (tr. that)	<i>legiō legiōn-is</i> 3f. legion
<i>amātor amātor-is</i> 3m. lover	<i>ēbrior</i> rather drunk	<i>liber liber-a um</i> free and easy in (+ gen.)
<i>ambulō</i> 1 I walk	<i>edepol</i> by Pollux!	<i>long-us a um</i> long
<i>Amphitruō Amphitruōn-is</i> 3m. Amphitruo	<i>eī</i> (dat. s. f.) to her	<i>longior</i> (nom. s. m.) longer
<i>appāreō</i> 2 I appear	<i>eīs</i> (dat. pl. f.) those (tr. that)	<i>longiōrem</i> (acc. s. m.) longer
<i>audācior</i> bolder, cockier	<i>eius</i> (gen. s. m.) his	<i>longior</i> longer
<i>audācissimus</i> boldest, cockiest	<i>eō</i> (abl. s. m.) him, that man	<i>longissima</i> (nom. s. f.) longest
<i>bell-um ī</i> 2n. war; <i>bellum gerō</i> I wage war	<i>eōrum</i> (gen. pl. m.) of them, their	<i>longissimam</i> (acc. s. f.) longest
<i>cael-um ī</i> 2n. sky	<i>eum</i> (acc. s. m.) him, that man	<i>Lūn-a ae</i> 1f. moon
<i>commoueō</i> 2 I move on	<i>expugnō</i> 1 I storm	<i>meditor</i> 1 dep. I think on, ponder, practise
<i>cōnfidentior</i> more undaunted	<i>exsequor</i> 3 dep. I carry out	<i>meliōrem</i> (acc. s. f.) better
<i>cōnfidentissimus</i> most undaunted	<i>fortior</i> braver	<i>meliōrī</i> (dat. s. m.) better
<i>coniūnx coniug-is</i> 3m. or f. husband/wife	<i>fortissimus</i> bravest	<i>Mercuri-us ī</i> 2m. Mercury
<i>cōstanti-a ae</i> 1f. loyalty	<i>gravid-us a um</i> pregnant	<i>mūtō</i> 1 I change
<i>cubō</i> 1 I lie down	<i>hostis host-is</i> 3m. enemy	<i>nārrō</i> 1 I tell, narrate
<i>dol-us ī</i> 2m. trick	<i>imāgo imāgin-is</i> 3f. likeness, image	<i>nigrior</i> (nom. s. m.) blacker
<i>dux duc-is</i> 3m. leader	<i>imperi-um ī</i> 2n. order	<i>nigriōrem</i> (acc. s. f.) blacker
<i>ea</i> (nom. s. f.) that (woman); (nom. pl. n.) those	<i>intus</i> inside	<i>Nocturn-us ī</i> 2m. Nocturnus, god of night
<i>eā</i> (abl. s. f.) that, her	<i>Ioue</i> : see <i>Iuppiter</i>	
	<i>is</i> (nom. s. m.) that	

Section 3A

<i>nōuī</i> (perf.) I know	<i>reueniō</i> 4 I return, come back	<i>stultissimus</i> (nom. s. m.) most stupid
<i>nūntiō</i> 1 I announce, proclaim	<i>rēx rēg-is</i> 3m. king	<i>Tēlebo-ae (ār)um</i> 1m. pl. the Teleboae
<i>nūnti-us ī</i> 2m. messenger	<i>sē</i> (acc.) himself; themselves; itself	<i>Thēb-ae ārum</i> 1f. pl. Thebes
<i>ob</i> (+ acc.) on account of, because of	<i>Septentriōnēs Septentriōn-um</i> 3f. pl. the seven stars of the Great Bear	<i>Thēbān-us a um</i> Theban
<i>occidō</i> 3 I set	<i>sign-um ī</i> 2n. constellation	<i>tōt-us a um</i> whole, complete
<i>ōlim</i> once upon a time	<i>sōl-us a um</i> alone	<i>ueniō</i> 4 I come
<i>oper-a ae</i> 1f. attention	<i>Sōsi-a ae</i> 1m. Sosia	<i>Vergili-ae ārum</i> 1f. pl. Pleiades
<i>ōrātiō ōrātiōn-is</i> 3f. speech	<i>statim</i> (l. 35) stock still	<i>Vesperūgō</i> 3f. the Evening Star
<i>paulisper</i> briefly	<i>stultior</i> (nom. s. m.) more stupid	<i>uictōri-a ae</i> 1f. victory
<i>pendō</i> 3 <i>pependī</i> I hang	<i>stultiōrem</i> (acc. s. m.) more stupid	<i>umquam</i> ever
<i>probē</i> well and truly	<i>stultissimum</i> (acc. s. m.) most stupid	<i>ūn-us a um</i> one
<i>pudīciti-a ae</i> 1f. modesty, chastity		<i>utrimque</i> on both sides
<i>quam</i> than		
<i>quōmodo</i> how		

Learning vocabulary for 3A

Nouns

<i>uictōri-a ae</i> 1f. victory, triumph	<i>imperi-um ī</i> 2n. order, command	<i>Iuppiter Iou-is</i> 3m. Jupiter, Jove
<i>bell-um ī</i> 2n. war, conflict	<i>dux duc-is</i> 3m. leader, general	<i>rēx rēg-is</i> 3m. king, monarch

Adjectives

<i>long-us a um</i> long	<i>niger nigr-a um</i> black	<i>is e-a id</i> that; he, she, it
<i>liber liber-a um</i> free	<i>fort-is e</i> brave, courageous	

Verbs

<i>ambul-ō</i> 1 I walk	<i>medit-or</i> 1 dep. I think on, reflect, ponder; practise	<i>ueni-ō</i> 4 <i>uēn-ī uent-</i> I come, arrive
<i>nūnti-ō</i> 1 I announce, proclaim	<i>bellum gerō</i> 3 <i>gessī gest-</i> I wage war	

Others

<i>ob</i> + acc. on account of, because of	<i>quam</i> than; (how!)	<i>umquam</i> ever
--	--------------------------	--------------------

Grammar and exercises for 3A

70 *is ea id* 'that', 'those', 'that person', 'he', 'she', 'it'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	is	ē-a	id	ē-ī ¹	ē-ac	ē-a
acc.	ē-um	ē-am	id	ē-ōs	ē-ās	ē-a
gen.	← ē-ius →			e-ōrum	e-ārum	e-ōrum
dat.	← ē-ī →			← ē-īs ² →		
abl.	ē-ō	ē-ā	ē-ō	← ē-īs ² →		

¹ *ēī* (nom. pl.) often becomes *īī*.² *ēīs* often becomes *īīs*.

Notes

- 1 This word works in the same way as *hic, ille*. On its own, it means 'that man', 'that woman', 'that thing'; 'he', 'she', 'it' depending on gender and context; describing a noun it means 'that'. The difference between *is* and *ille* is that *is* = 'the one mentioned', while *ille* = 'that one over there I'm pointing to' or 'the former one as opposed to this one'.
- 2 Apart from *is, id, eius, eī* (cf. *huius, illius, illī*), the word declines exactly like *mult-us a um* on the stem *e-*. This shows up most regularly in the pl.

71 Accusative of time – 'throughout', 'for', 'during'

Time 'for' or 'throughout' is expressed either by *per* + acc., or the plain acc. without any preposition at all; e.g. *per eam noctem* or *eam noctem* 'through that night', 'for that night'. Distinguish between the accusative and the plain ablative (67), which expresses time when or within which e.g. *eā nocte* 'within that night', 'in that night'.

The accusative in time phrases may be graphically represented as a line —; the ablative as a dot · or as a point *within* a circle ⊙.

Exercises

- 1 Decline in all cases s. and pl.: *id bellum; ea urbs; is dux*.
- 2 What case(s) and number are the following phrases in? *eius regis; eī exercitūs; eī uxōrī; iīs imperiūs; eam uxōrem; eōrum nōminum; ea perīcula; ea nox; eum lectum; eōs milītēs*.

- 3 Give the Latin (using *is*) for: (through) those days; that victory (acc. s.); of that war; for those kings; those generals (acc.); that command (nom./acc.); to that mistress; those customs (nom.); his; to them; hers; to him; to her; on that night.
- 4 Say with which of the words in each line the given part of *is* agrees (where there is ambiguity, explain the alternatives):

eī: *mīlitem, uirī, fēminae, exercituī, puerō, patrēs*
eae: *uxōrī, amīcae, noctis, uiās, rēs*
ea: *imperia, astūtia, uirtūs, sōl, urbs, capita, manus*
eius: *operis, puerī, rēi, exercitūs, mōrēs, aedīs*
eīs: *mīlītēs, signīs, meretrīcibus, ouīs, uirīs, mōribus*

- 5 Translate: *in eō oppidō; ob eam uirtutem; apud eōs; eō tempore; per eam uīam; cum eā; eā nocte; in eam urbem; eās hōrās; ad eōs milītēs; eam noctem; multōs diēs; eō annō; id tempus*.
- 6 Give the Latin for (using *is*): with those women; at that hour; at his house; onto that stage; in those cities; because of those dangers; on those nights; on account of that war; over those hours.
- 7 Replace the English word in these sentences with the appropriate form of *hic, ille* or *is*, and translate:
- (a) (These) *fēminae pulchrae sunt*.
 (b) *uidēsne* (those) *mīlītēs*?
 (c) *satis* (of that) *bellī est*.
 (d) (That man's) *caput ingēns est*.
 (e) *turba* (of those) *mulierum ingreditur*.

72 Comparative adjectives: *longior longius* 'longer'

Comparative adjectives carry the meanings 'more . . .', 'rather . . .', '—er', 'quite . . .', 'too . . .'; e.g. *longior* 'longer', 'quite long', 'rather long'.

Basic rule: look for the stem + *-ior-* (occasionally *-ius*).

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	lōng-ior	lōngius	long-iōr-ēs	long-iōr-a
acc.	long-iōr-em	lōngius	long-iōr-ēs	long-iōr-a
gen.	← long-iōr-is →		← long-iōr-um →	
dat.	← long-iōr-ī →		← long-iōr-ibus →	
abl.	← long-iōr-e →		← long-iōr-ibus →	

Notes

- 1 To form the comparative, take the gen. s. of the positive adjective, remove the ending (leaving you with the stem) and add the endings for the comparative as indicated above. E.g. *ingēns ingent-is* – *ingentior*; *audāx audāc-is* – *audācior*.
- 2 Comparatives have consonant stems. This accounts for abl. in *-e*, n. pl. in *-a*, gen. pl. in *-um*. Note *-ius* in nom. and acc. n. s.
- 3 The original ending of the comparative was *-ios* (which becomes the neuter *-ius*). Then the *s* of *-ios* becomes *r* between vowels: so *longiōrem*, not *longiōsem* (cf. Reference Grammar E5 Note 1 and H3(d) Note).
- 4 Note the Latin for 'than', used very frequently with comparatives – *quam*. The thing being compared in the *quam* clause adopts the same case as the thing it is being compared with e.g. 'Phaedra is more lovely than Euclio' – *Phaedra* (nom.) *pulchrior est quam Eucliō* (nom.); 'I hold you more foolish than him' – *habeō tē stultiōrem quam illum*.

73 Superlative adjectives: *longissim-us a um* 'longest'

Superlative adjectives carry the meanings '—est', 'most . . .', 'very . . .', 'extremely . . .'; e.g. *longissimus* 'longest', 'very long', 'extremely long'.

Basic rule: look for *-ISSIM-* or *-ERRIM-*.

s.			
	m.	f.	n.
nom.	long-íssim-us	long-íssim-a	long-íssim-um
acc.	long-íssim-um	long-íssim-am	long-íssim-um
gen.	long-íssim-ī	long-íssim-ae	long-íssim-ī
dat.	long-íssim-ō	long-íssim-ae	long-íssim-ō
abl.	long-íssim-ō	long-íssim-ā	long-íssim-ō

pl.			
	m.	f.	n.
nom.	long-íssim-ī	long-íssim-ae	long-íssim-a
acc.	long-íssim-ōs	long-íssim-ās	long-íssim-a
gen.	long-íssim-ōrum	long-íssim-ārum	long-íssim-ōrum
dat.		long-íssim-īs	
abl.		long-íssim-īs	

Notes

- 1 These superlatives are again based on the gen. s. stem of the positive adjective, to which the endings *-issimus -issima -issimum* (older spelling

-issum-us) are added, declining exactly like *multus*, e.g. *ingēns ingent-is ingentissimus a um*.

- 2 Adjectives ending in *-er* like *pulcher*, *celer*, *miser*, form their comparatives regularly (based on the stem of the gen. s.) but have superlatives in *-errimus a um*, e.g. *pulcher* (*pulchr-ī*) comp. *pulchrior*, sup. *pulcherrimus*; *celer* (*celer-is*) comp. *celerrior*, sup. *celerrimus*; *miser* (*miser-ī*) comp. *miserrior*, sup. *miserrimus*.
- 3 Two common irregular adjectives are *facilis*, *similis* (and their opposites *difficilis*, *dissimilis*). These have regular comparatives (*facilior*, *similior*), but irregular superlatives *facillimus*, *simillimus*. See Reference Grammar J3.

Exercise

Add the appropriate forms of both comparative and superlative degrees of the given adjective to the nouns:

longus: diem, nocte
 celer: milites, oculō
 ingēns: aedēs, familiam
 pulcher: manūs, mulierum
 stultus: cōsilia, hominī, operum

74 Irregular comparatives and superlatives: *bonus*, *malus*, *multus*, *magnus*, *parvus*

bon-us a um	melior (meliōr-is)	optim-us a um	'good', 'better', 'best' (cf. <i>ameliorate</i> , <i>optimise</i>)
mal-us a um	peior (peiōr-is)	pessim-us a um	'bad', 'worse', 'worst' (cf. <i>pejorative</i> , <i>pessimist</i>)
mult-us a um	plūs (plūr-is)	plūrim-us a um	'much', 'more', 'most' (cf. <i>plus(+)</i>)
magn-us a um	maior (maiōr-is)	maxim-us a um	'big', 'bigger', 'biggest' (cf. <i>major</i> , <i>maximise</i>)

paru-us a um	minor (minōr-is)	minim-us a um	'small'/'few', 'smaller'/'fewer', 'less', 'smallest', 'fewest'/'least' (cf. minor, minimise)
--------------	------------------	---------------	--

These decline quite regularly (see *longior longissimus*) except for *plūs*:

	s.	pl.
	(<i>plūs plūr-is</i> 3n., noun)	(<i>plūrēs plūra</i> , 3rd decl. adj.)
		m./f. n.
nom.	plūs	plūrēs plūra
acc.	plūs	plūr-īs (plūrēs) plūra
gen.	plūris	←plūrium→
dat.	—	←plūribus→
abl.	plūre	←plūribus→

Notes

- Note: abl. s. in -e, n. pl. in -a; and then gen. pl. in -ium. *plūs* is consonant-stem, but *plūrēs* is *i*-stem (cf. 12).
- To express 'more . . .' in the s., *plūs* + gen. 'more of . . .' is used (cf. *satis, nimis, quid?*), e.g. *plūs pecūniae* 'more (of) money'. In the pl., *plūrēs* is an adjective and agrees regularly with its noun, e.g. *plūrēs hominēs* 'more men'.

Exercises

- Construct comparative and superlative of the following adjectives, giving their meanings when you have done so: *liber, fortis, bonus, niger, similis, magnus, celer, paruus, scelestus, stultus, malus, trīstis, facilis, multus, ingēns*.
- Translate these sentences:

- rēx deōrum et hominum eam noctem cum eā muliere in aedibus mānsit.*
- eius uir, Amphitruō, domō fortissimō cum exercitū abiit.*
- ea Iouem Amphitruōnem arbitrātur, quod is sē¹ illi similem fēcit.*
- is deus eam tōtam² noctem amat, quod fēminam pulchriōrem numquam uīdit quam eam.*

- is eam noctem propter Alcumēnam longiōrem fēcit.*
- immō longissimam omnium fēcit noctium eam noctem.*
- Mercurius, eius filius, deus summā est astūtiā. immō astūtior is est quam omnēs dī atque hominēs.*
- is sē Sōsiae seruō simillimum fēcit.*
- Amphitruō hāc nocte domum regrediētur, quod in bellō rem bene gessit et uictōriam tulit maximam.*
- seruum quam Sōsiam stultiōrem, deum quam Mercurium scelestiōrem, numquam in scaenā uīdī.*

¹ *sē* 'himself'.

² *tōt-us a um* 'whole'.

3 Translate these sentences:

- posteriōrēs cōgitātiōnēs, ut aiunt, sapientiōrēs solent esse. (Cicero)*
- nōn faciunt meliōrem equum aurei frēnī. (Seneca)*
- uideō meliōra probōque, dēteriōra sequor. (Ovid)*
- nūlla seruitūs turpior est quam uoluntāria. (Seneca)*
- amā ratiōnem: huius tē amor contrā dūrissima armābit. (Seneca)*

poster-ior ius later
cōgitātiō cōgitātiōn-is 3f. thought
aiō I say
sapiēns sapient-is wise
soleō 2 I am accustomed
frēn-ī ōrum 2m. pl. bridle

probō 1 I approve
dēter-ior ius worse
seruitūs seruitūt-is 3f. slavery
turp-is e base, degrading
uoluntāri-us a um voluntary, willing

ratiō ratiōn-is 3f. reason
amor amōr-is 3m. love
contrā (+ acc.) against
dūr-us a um hard, difficult
armō 1 I arm, equip

Reading

Read (translating in word-order) each of these incomplete sentences (all containing a comparative idea) and choose from the pool below them the correct phrase to complete them. Then translate into correct English.

- noctem numquam uīdī longiōrem . . .*
- hic seruus audācior est . . .*
- eī senī aurī plūs dabō . . .*
- hōc tempore nigrior est nox . . .*
- is uir maiōre uirtūte est . . .*
- seruum stultissimum mālō . . .*
- numquam perīculum maius ferre poterō . . .*

- (h) mīlitēs numquam fuērunt fortiōrēs . . .
- (i) uirumne deō similiōrem umquam uīdistis . . . ?
- (j) fēmināsne pulchriōrēs umquam cōnspicābor . . . ?

quam hic; quam hoc; quam hanc; quam huic; quam eās; quam illī; quam eum; quam ille; quam mendācem; quam illō.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read this passage carefully, translating in word-order, defining the functions of words and the groups to which they belong, and stating at each point what you anticipate on the basis of the information you already have. Then translate into correct English. Finally, read out in Latin, phrasing correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read. Use the running vocabulary of 3A.

Mercurius, deōrum astūtissimus, ad urbem Thēbās cum patre uenit, quod is fēminam pulcherrimam amat, uxōrem ducis legiōnum Thēbānārum. Iuppiter quamquam ea fēmina nūpta est, tamen cum eā tōtam noctem cubāre uult. hārum rērum, ut uidēmus, liberiōrēs esse quam hominēs dī possunt, quod habent imperium maximum, mortemque numquam patiuntur. Alcūmēna autem uirum ualdē amat. Mercurium igitur Iuppiter sēcum attulit, quod is dolōs plūrimōs atque astūtiās optimās scit. Mercurius igitur sē Sōsiae, Amphitruōnis seruō, similem, Iuppiter autem Amphitruōnī sē simillimum fecit. ita in aedīs Amphitruōnis dī intrāuerunt. Iuppiter, rēx hominum atque deōrum, Alcūmēnam clam tōtam noctem amāuit et grauidam fēcit. immō grauidiōrem eam fēcit, quod Amphitruō quoque eam grauidam fēcit eā nocte, ubi ad bellum abiit. nunc deus maximus, quod Alcūmēnam ualdē amat, noctem longiōrem fēcit et Mercurium ante aedīs posuit.¹ mox Sōsia ad aedīs adgrediētur et intrāre cōnābitur, eum Mercurius ab aedibus abiget.

¹ posuit 'has placed'.

English-Latin

1 Translate into Latin:

- (a) This victory was greater than that (one).
- (b) In those years because of the command of a rather stupid king, many very brave soldiers fought a very long war.
- (c) There is nothing better than the duty of the best citizens.

- (d) The wisdom of the gods is greater than (that) of men. (Miss out the second 'that').
- (e) My brother is more like my father than me.
- (f) Nothing is worse than this trouble.

2 Read the text of 3A again, then translate this passage into Latin:

SOSIA Who is (there) better than I?

MERCURY Who more rotten?

SOS. No, I'm truly the best of all slaves, the bravest of all men . . .

MER. And the most stupid of fools¹.

SOS. I'm rather bold because on this very long night I'm walking alone through these streets. And I've certainly never seen a blacker night or a longer (one) than this. Why is the moon not changing, nor these constellations² setting? Will the day never appear?

MER. I want you, night, to go on just as you are going on now.

For you will never do a greater duty for my father than this.

¹ Use *stultus* as a noun.

² Use *signum*.

Deliciae Latinae

Word exercise

Give the Latin connections of: victory, bellicose, imperial, regal, urban, long, summit, liberal, meditate, fortitude.

Everyday Latin

The *ego* (and *superego*) and the *id* were terms used by Sigmund Freud to denote respectively the conscious and subconscious self

i.e. = *id est* 'that is'

An argument *ā fortiōrī* (alternative later form for the classical *fortiōre*) is one 'from a stronger case' e.g. 'Hercules cannot pick up this rock; *ā fortiōrī* a baby will not be able to'

Other useful comparatives are *posterior* ('further behind'), *superior* ('higher'), *iūnior* ('younger' from *iuuenis*, cf. English 'junior'), *senior* ('older' from *senex*)

ē plūribus ūnum 'from rather many (peoples), one' – the American motto
An important principle of law is *dē minimīs nōn cūrat lēx* – meaning?

Word study

summus

summus means 'the top', 'highest point' and gives us 'to sum', i.e. calculate the total of, since the Romans added columns of figures from the bottom up, till they reached the *summa līnea* 'the top line'. Hence a 'sum', especially of money. *summārius* is an accountant, one who does the sums, or sums up, whence English 'summary'. A 'summit' is the highest point of a hill. A 'consummation' is the complete (*con-*) summing up, so a completion or achievement.

Do not confuse with 'summon' – from *submoneō* 'warn secretly' – or words like 'consume', 'assume' from *sūmō* 'take up' 'take upon oneself' 'spend'.

fortis

fortis means 'strong' or 'brave'. The English 'force' derives ultimately from the n. pl. of *fortis*, i.e. *fortia*. English derivatives include 'fort', 'fortify' and 'fortitude'. They also include 'comfort' ('strengthen together' or 'strengthen considerably') and 'effort' (through Old French *esfors*, 'forcing oneself out' (*es-* = Latin *ex*)).

Section 3B

Running vocabulary for 3B

<i>adepti</i> (m. pl. nom.) having gained, taken	<i>adgressi sunt</i> (they) attacked	land, field
<i>adeptus</i> (nom. s. m.) having gained	<i>adgressi</i> (m. pl. nom.) having attacked	<i>Alcumēna</i> <i>ae</i> 1f.
<i>adepti sunt</i> (they) gained, took	<i>adlocutus est</i> (he) addressed	<i>ār-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f. altar
	<i>ager agr-i</i> 2m. territory,	<i>arbitri-um</i> <i>i</i> 2n. jurisdiction, power

<i>Argiu-us a um</i> Argive, Greek	<i>foc-us i</i> 2m. hearth	<i>precati</i> (nom. pl. m.) having prayed (to)
<i>audacter</i> courageously, boldly	<i>fortiter</i> bravely	<i>precatus</i> (nom. s. m.) having prayed to
<i>cael-um-i</i> 2n. sky	<i>fug-a ae</i> 1f. flight, escape	<i>precatus est</i> (he) prayed to
<i>castr-a ōrum</i> 2n. pl. camp	<i>hortatus</i> (nom. s. m.) having encouraged	<i>prōducō</i> 3 <i>prōduxī</i> I lead forward
<i>canō</i> 3 <i>cecinī</i> I sound	<i>hortatus est</i> (he) encouraged	<i>proeli-um i</i> 2n. battle
<i>caus-a ae</i> 1f. reason	<i>hostis host-is</i> 3m. enemy	<i>profecti</i> (nom. pl. m.) having set out
<i>celeriter</i> quickly	<i>hūmān-us a um</i> human	<i>prōgressi</i> having advanced
<i>clāmōr clāmōr-is</i> 3m. shout	<i>illūstr-is e</i> famous	<i>prōgressi sunt</i> (they) advanced
<i>collocūti</i> (nom. pl. m.) having discussed	<i>imperātor imperātor-is</i> 3m. commander	<i>prōterō</i> 3 <i>prōtrīuī</i> I trample down
<i>collocūti sunt</i> (they) discussed	<i>ingressus</i> (nom. s. m.) having entered	<i>pugnō</i> 1 I fight
<i>condiciō condiciōn-is</i> 3f. terms	<i>iniūst-us a um</i> unjust	<i>reducō</i> 3 I lead back
<i>cōsentiō</i> 4 <i>cōsēnsī</i> I reach agreement	<i>instruō</i> 3 <i>instrūxī</i> I draw up	<i>regressi sunt</i> (they) returned
<i>cōsonō</i> 1 <i>cōsonuī</i> I roar	<i>iūst-us a um</i> just	<i>sē</i> himself, themselves (nb. pl. at l. 84)
<i>cōspicātus</i> (nom. s. m.) having caught sight of	<i>lēgāt-us i</i> 2m. ambassador	<i>sēque</i> and themselves
<i>cōpi-ae ārum</i> 1f. pl. troops	<i>legiō legiōn-is</i> 3f. legion	<i>subitō</i> suddenly
<i>dēdō</i> 3 <i>dēdidī</i> I hand over, surrender	<i>liber-i ōrum</i> 2m. pl. children	<i>su-us a um</i> his, her
<i>dēducō</i> 3 I lead off	<i>locūti sunt</i> (they) spoke	<i>superō</i> 1 I gain the upper hand
<i>dēnique</i> finally, at last	<i>locūti</i> (nom. pl. m.) having spoken	<i>tant-us a um</i> so much, so great
<i>dirimō</i> 3 <i>dirēmī</i> I break off, end	<i>locutus</i> (nom. s. m.) having spoken	<i>terr-a ae</i> 1f. land
<i>dīuīn-us a um</i> divine	<i>man-us ūs</i> 4m. band	<i>tub-a ae</i> 1f. trumpet
<i>domīn-a ae</i> 1f. mistress	<i>medi-us a um</i> middle	<i>tul-</i> perf. of <i>ferō</i> ; note <i>mē</i> <i>ferō</i> 'I bear myself, charge'
<i>ēducō</i> 2 <i>ēduxī</i> I lead out	<i>minātī</i> (nom. pl. m.) having threatened	<i>tūtor</i> 1 dep. I protect
<i>ēgressi sunt</i> they came out, disembarked	<i>miserē</i> unhappily	<i>uehementer</i> ardently
<i>ēgressi</i> having disembarked	<i>nāu-is is</i> 3f. ship	<i>uesper uesper-i</i> 2m. dusk, evening
<i>equit-ēs um</i> 3m. pl. cavalry	<i>necesse</i> necessary	<i>uict-i ōrum</i> 2m. the defeated
<i>execūtus</i> (nom. s. m.) having carried out	<i>oppugnō</i> 1 I attack	<i>uictor uictōr-is</i> 3m. conqueror
<i>exsequor</i> 3 I carry out	<i>ōrdō ordin-is</i> 3m. rank	<i>ulcīscor</i> 3 I take revenge on
<i>extrā</i> (+ acc.) outside, beyond	<i>ōti-um i</i> 2n. peace, freedom from war	<i>usque</i> (ad + acc.) right up to
<i>ferōci-a ae</i> 1f. fierceness	<i>pāx pāc-is</i> 3f. peace	<i>utrimque</i> on both sides
<i>ferōciter</i> fiercely	<i>paulisper</i> briefly	
	<i>post</i> (+ acc.) after	
	<i>postrēmō</i> finally	
	<i>postridiē</i> next day	
	<i>pōnō</i> 3 <i>posuī</i> I pitch, place	

Learning vocabulary for 3B

Nouns

<i>cōpi-ae ārum</i> 1f. pl. troops	<i>ōti-um ī</i> 2n. cessation of conflict, leisure; inactivity
<i>ferōci-a ae</i> 1f. fierceness	
<i>terr-a ae</i> 1f. land	
<i>lēgāt-us ī</i> 2m. ambassador	<i>proeli-um ī</i> 2n. battle
<i>ager agr-ī</i> 2m. land, field, territory	<i>eques equit-is</i> 3m. horseman; (pl.), cavalry
<i>castr-a ōrum</i> 2n. pl. camp	

Adjectives

<i>illūstr-is e</i> famous
<i>su-us a um</i> his, her(s), their(s)

Verbs

<i>oppugnō</i> 1 I attack	<i>dēduc-ō</i> 3 <i>dēdūx-ī</i> <i>dēduct-</i> I lead away, lead down
<i>super-ō</i> 1 I conquer, overcome, get the upper hand	<i>ēduc-ō</i> 3 <i>ēdūx-ī</i> <i>ēduct-</i> I lead out
<i>hort-or</i> 1 <i>hortāt-us</i> dep. I urge, encourage	<i>redūc-ō</i> 3 <i>redūx-ī</i> <i>reduct-</i> I lead back
<i>dēd-ō</i> 3 <i>dēdid-ī</i> <i>dēdit-</i> I surrender, hand over	<i>adipisc-or</i> 3 <i>adept-us</i> dep. I get, gain, acquire

<i>hostis host-is</i> 3m. enemy
<i>legiō legiōn-is</i> 3f. legion
<i>nāuis nāu-is</i> 3f. ship
<i>pāx pāc-is</i> 3f. peace
<i>man-us ūs</i> 4f. band; (hand)

<i>adloqu-or</i> (<i>alloqu-or</i>) 3
<i>adlocūt-us</i> (<i>allocūt-us</i>) dep. I address
<i>proficisc-or</i> 3 <i>profect-us</i> dep. I set out
<i>mē fer-ō ferre tul-ī lāt-</i> I charge, attack (lit. 'I bear myself')

Others

<i>celeriter</i> quickly	<i>fortiter</i> bravely	<i>utrimque</i> on both sides
<i>ferōciter</i> fiercely		

Grammar and exercises for 3B

75 Perfect indicative deponent: 'I —ed', 'I have —ed'

1	2	3
<i>minor</i> 'I threatened / have threatened'	<i>polliceor</i> 'I promised / have promised'	<i>loquor</i> 'I spoke / have spoken'
1st s. <i>mināt-us a um</i> sum	<i>pollicit-us a um</i> sum	<i>locūt-us a um</i> sum
2nd s. <i>mināt-us a um</i> es	<i>pollicit-us a um</i> es	<i>locūt-us a um</i> es
3rd s. <i>mināt-us a um</i> est	<i>pollicit-us a um</i> est	<i>locūt-us a um</i> est

1st pl. <i>mināt-ī ae a</i> sūmus	<i>pollicit-ī ae a</i> sūmus	<i>locūt-ī ae a</i> sūmus
2nd pl. <i>mināt-ī ae a</i> estis	<i>pollicit-ī ae a</i> estis	<i>locūt-ī ae a</i> estis
3rd pl. <i>mināt-ī ae a</i> sunt	<i>pollicit-ī ae a</i> sunt	<i>locūt-ī ae a</i> sunt

4

mentior
'I lied / have lied'

3/4

prōgredior
'I advanced / have advanced'

1st s. <i>mentīt-us a um</i> sum	<i>prōgrēss-us a um</i> sum
2nd s. <i>mentīt-us a um</i> es	<i>prōgrēss-us a um</i> es
3rd s. <i>mentīt-us a um</i> est	<i>prōgrēss-us a um</i> est
1st pl. <i>mentīt-ī ae a</i> sūmus	<i>prōgrēss-ī ae a</i> sūmus
2nd pl. <i>mentīt-ī ae a</i> estis	<i>prōgrēss-ī ae a</i> estis
3rd pl. <i>mentīt-ī ae a</i> sunt	<i>prōgrēss-ī ae a</i> sunt

Notes

1 Formation of perfect stem

- (a) The perfect stem of the deponent is regularly formed by adding *-t-us a um* to the stem of the verb. Thus:

1st conj.: *minā-t-us a um*

2nd conj.: *pollici-t-us a um* (note that *-e* changes to *-i*)

4th conj.: *mentī-t-us a um*

Standing on its own, it forms the perfect participle and means 'having —ed' (see 77), e.g. *minātus* 'having threatened' etc.

- (b) You have now met the three 'principal parts' of deponent verbs, i.e. the present indicative active (e.g. *minor*), the infinitive (e.g. *minārī*) and the perfect (e.g. *minātus*). Of regular deponent verbs, the principal parts are formed as follows:

1: *minor minārī minātus*

2: *polliceor pollicērī pollicitus*

4: *mentior mentīrī mentītus*

These are the bases for forming all parts of the deponent, and must be learned from now on.

- (c) As we found with non-deponent verbs, however, 3rd and 3rd/4th conjugation deponent verbs are unpredictable in their formation of the perfect stem. Perfect stems of these verbs are formed in *-t-us a um* and *-s-us a um*. Here are the three 'principal parts' of the irregular deponents you have met so far (including one 2nd decl. verb):

in -s-us a um

2 uideor uidērī uīsus 'I seem'

3/4 (ad-) } gredior gredī gressus 'I go', 'I come'
 (ē-) }
 (in-) }
 (prō-) }
 patior patī passus 'I endure', 'I undergo', 'I suffer'

in -t-us a um

3 (ad-) loquor loquī locūtus 'I speak (to)'
 sequor sequī secūtus 'I follow'
 obliuīscor obliuīscī oblītus 'I forget'
 irāscor irāscī irātus 'I get angry'
 adipīscor adipīscī adeptus 'I gain', 'I get'
 proficīscor proficīscī profectus 'I set out'

2 Formation of deponent perfect indicative

To form the perfect indicative deponent, the perfect stem ending in -us -a -um (which means on its own 'having —ed') is combined with the appropriate part of *sum es est sumus estis sunt*, e.g. *locūtus sum* (lit.) 'I am (in a state of) having spoken', 'I spoke', 'I have spoken', 'I did speak'. Since the perfect stem ending in -us -a -um acts as an adjective, it must agree with the subject, e.g.

'I (= a woman) spoke' *locūta sum*
 'they (= the men) promised' *pollicitī sunt*
 'the boy lied' *puer mentītus est*
 'you (= the women) set out' *profectae estis*

The perfect stem in -us a um will be in the *nominative*, since it is agreeing with the subject of the sentence.

3 Meaning

The meaning, literally 'I am (in a state of) having —ed', can be treated as identical with 'I —ed', 'I have —ed' and (in certain cases) 'I am —' — a present state which results from a past action.

76 Semi-deponents: *audeō* and *fiō*

A number of verbs, called 'semi-deponents', adopt *active forms* in some tenses, and *deponent forms* in others. Of the tenses you have met so far,

present and future forms of such verbs are active in form; the perfects, however, are deponent in form. Thus:

audeō 'I dare' *audēre* 'to dare' (no perfect active stem) *ausus* 'having dared'

Present	Future	Perfect
<i>aúde-ō</i> 'I dare'	<i>audē-b-ō</i> 'I shall dare'	<i>aús-us a um sum</i> 'I dared'
<i>aúde-s</i>	<i>audē-bi-s</i>	<i>aús-us a um es</i>
<i>aúde-t</i>	<i>audē-bi-t</i>	<i>aús-us a um est</i>
<i>audē-mus</i>	<i>audē-bi-mus</i>	<i>aús-ī ae a súmus</i>
<i>audē-tis</i>	<i>audē-bi-tis</i>	<i>aús-ī ae a éstis</i>
<i>aúde-nt</i>	<i>audē-bu-nt</i>	<i>aús-ī ae a sunt</i>

fiō 'I become', 'I am made', 'I happen' *fieri* 'to become, be made' (no perfect active stem) *factus* 'having become', 'having been made'

Present	Future	Perfect
<i>fi-ō</i> 'I become' etc.	<i>fi-a-m</i> 'I shall become' etc.	<i>fáct-us a um sum</i> 'I became' etc.
<i>fi-s</i>	<i>fi-ē-s</i>	<i>fáct-us a um es</i>
<i>fi-t</i>	<i>fi-e-t</i>	<i>fáct-us a um est</i>
— ¹	<i>fi-ē-mus</i>	<i>fáct-ī ae a súmus</i>
— ¹	<i>fi-ē-tis</i>	<i>fáct-ī ae a éstis</i>
<i>fi-unt</i>	<i>fi-e-nt</i>	<i>fáct-ī ae a sunt</i>

¹ *fīmus* and *fītis* are not found.

Exercises

- 1 Form and conjugate the perfect of: *meditor*, *cōnor*, *uideor*, *obliuīscor*, *proficīscor*, *mentior*, *prōgredior*, *patior*, (optional: *cōnspicor*, *adipīscor*, *polliceor*, *hortor*, *sequor*, *recordor*, *ēgredior*, *irāscor*).
- 2 Translate each perfect then change s. to pl. and vice versa: *locūtus sum*; *uīsum est*; *recordāta est*; *mentītī sumus*; *ingressae sunt*, *pollicita es*; *secūta sunt*; *adeptus est*; (optional: *irāta est*; *oblītus sum*; *passa es*; *profectus est*; *meditātī estis*; *arbitrātī sunt*; *suspiciātae sunt*).
- 3 Say what verbs these perfects come from and translate: *uīsus est*; *adepta est*; *oblītus sum*; *ingressae sumus*; *locūtī estis*; *profectī sunt*; *factum est*.
- 4 Give the Latin for: she has threatened; they (m.) set out; I (m.) have

encouraged; you (s. f.) seemed; we (f.) forgot; he promised; it happened; you (pl. m.) have lied.

- 5 Give 3rd s. and pl. present, future and perfect of these verbs and translate: *irāscor*, *minor*, *polliceor*, *mentior*, *patior*, (optional: *proficīscor*, *ingredior*, *uideor*, *fīō*, *recordor*).

77 Perfect participles deponent: 'having —ed'

A participle is an *adjective* which derives from a *verb* and shares the nature of both (from *pars* and *capiō* 'take a share/part in'). In English, it tends to be formed in '—ing' or 'having —ed', e.g. 'I saw the man running', 'the men, having departed, reached home'. The perfect stem of deponent verbs ending in *-us*, *-a*, *-um* is the *perfect participle* and means 'having —ed', e.g. *minātus* 'having threatened', *locūtus* 'having spoken', *ēgressus* 'having gone out'. These perfect participles decline like *multus a um* and, like any adjectives, agree with the person described as 'having —ed', e.g. 'the woman, having spoken, goes out' *mulier locūta ēgreditur*; 'the men, having spoken, go out' *homines locūtī ēgrediuntur*; 'I see the soldiers having-gone-out / the soldiers when they have gone out' *mīlitēs ēgressōs uideō*.

Participles are on the whole used predicatively, i.e. they say what people *do* rather than *describe* or *define* people. Thus *mulier locūta ēgreditur* should be translated 'the woman – after speaking/having spoken/when she has spoken/speaks and – goes out'. It is not accurate to translate it 'the woman *who has spoken* goes out'. See 'predicative', p. xxi.

Exercises

- 1 Give the meaning of these words and say from what verb each comes: *locūtus*, *profectus*, *adeptus*, *irātus*, *cōnātus*, *precātus*, *suspiciātus*, *pollicitus*, *hortātus*, *uīsus*, *ēgressus*, *factus*, (optional: *arbitrātus*, *opīnātus*, *mentītus*, *secūtus*, *passus*, *adgressus*).
- 2 Translate these sentences:
 - (a) *mīlitem ingressum cēpit*.
 - (b) *hominēs paulum (a little) meditātī uēnērunt*.
 - (c) *ille multa mentītus abiit*.
 - (d) *exercitus celeriter ex urbe prōgressus mox castra posuit*.
 - (e) *haec locūta exiit*.

78 Translation hint

Deponent participles can, of course, control their own little clauses (and sometimes not so little), in the same way that infinitives do. Observe how infinitives and some direct objects in the following sentences depend on the participle, not on the main verb:

hominēs fugere cōnātōs necāuimus 'we killed the men having-trying to escape', '... the men after they had tried to escape' (*fugere* depends on *cōnātōs*)

mulierēs hoc locūtās nōn amō 'I do not like the women having-said / since they said this'

mīlitēs, multa minātī, ēgrediuntur 'the soldiers, having threatened much, depart'

Observe the way in which the participles in such complex sentences gravitate towards the end of their clause, in the same way that main verbs and infinitives tend to. Often this results in a pleasing 'bracketing' effect rather like an equation, especially when the participle has a direct object, e.g. 'The priest, seeing the horse galloping down the street, gave chase.' A typical Latin order for this would be: 'The priest (nom.), the horse (acc.) down the street galloping (acc.) seeing (nom.), gave chase.'

Exercise

Select subject, verb, adjective and participle in these sentences:

- (a) She writhed about, convulsed with scarlet pain. (Keats)
- (b) Naked she lay, clasped in my longing arms. (Rochester)
- (c) I saw three ships go sailing by on Christmas day. (Do you place 'on Christmas day' with the 'I saw' clause or the 'go sailing by' clause?)
- (d) Know you not, / Being mechanical, you ought not walk / Upon a labouring day . . . ? (Shakespeare)
- (e) See! from the Brake the whirring Pheasant springs,
And mounts exulting on triumphant Wings:
Short is his Joy; he feels the fiery Wound,
Flutters in Blood, and panting beats the Ground. (Pope)

79 Regular and irregular adverbs

A common way of forming adverbs in English is to add '-ly' to an adjective (e.g. 'slow-ly', 'quick-ly', 'passionate-ly'). In Latin, adverbs (which never change) are also regularly formed from adjectives as follows.

Adverbs based on 1st/2nd declension adjectives: add -ē to the stem, e.g. *stultus* – *stultē* 'foolishly'; *miser* – *miserē* 'unhappily'; *pulcher* – *pulchrē* 'beautifully'. A very few end in -ter.

Adverbs based on 3rd declension adjectives: add -(i)ter to the stem, e.g. *fortis* – *fortiter* 'bravely'; *audāx* – *audācter* 'boldly'; *celer* – *celeriter* 'swiftly'. But note an important exception: *facile* 'easily'.

Here are some irregularly formed adverbs:

bonus – *bene* 'well'

parvus – *paulum* '(a) little', 'slightly'

multus – *multum* 'much'

magnus – *magnopere* 'greatly' (= *magnō* + *opere*)

NB. *longē* (regularly formed from *longus* 'long') 'far'.

Exercises

- 1 Identify and translate the adverbs in this list: *hōrum*, *audācter*, *mulier*, *malum*, *multae*, *male*, *liberī*, *bene*, *omne*, *liberē*, *magnopere*, *multum*, *scelere*, *pater*, *celeriter*, *pulchrē*, *proelium*, *paulum*.
- 2 Form adverbs from these adjectives and translate: *stultus*, *bonus*, *fortis*, *longus*, *similis*, *saeuus*, *tacitus*, *magnus*, *celer*, *multus*, *miser*.
- 3 The Roman literary critic Quintilian here lists the sorts of styles an orator will need to develop to suit all occasions. Translate:

dīcet . . . grauiter, seuērē, ācriter, uehementer, concitātē, cōpiōsē, amārē, cōmiter, remissē, subtiliter, blandē, lēniter, dulciter, breuiter, urbānē.

grauis serious

seuērus stern

concitātus passionate

amārus bitter

cōmis affable

remissus gentle

subtilis precise

blandus flattering

lēnis kind

urbānus witty

80 *sē; su-us a um*

So far you have met *ego* 'I' (pl. *nōs* 'we'), *tū* (pl. *uōs* 'you') and their possessive forms *meus* 'mine', *tuus* 'your(s)', *noster* 'our(s)', *uester* 'your(s)'. But we have not yet fully grappled with the reflexive forms for 'him, her, it, them' and their possessive forms 'his, her(s), its, their(s)'. Latin makes an important distinction between reflexive usage of such words (which means that the 'him, her' etc. being referred to is the same person as the subject of the clause) and non-reflexive (when the 'him, her' etc. being referred to is *not* the same person as the subject of the clause). When Latin uses a form of *sē*, the 'him, her, it, them' being referred to is *the same person as the subject of the verb of the particular clause*. Likewise, when Latin uses a form of *suus a um*, the person referred to in the 'his', 'her(s)', 'their(s)' is *the same as the subject of the verb*, e.g.:

Phaedra sē amat 'Phaedra loves (*sē* MUST = Phaedra) herself'

Nīcobūlus suōs nummōs habet 'Nicobulus has (*suōs* MUST refer to Nicobulus) his own (i.e. no-one else's) money'

Phaedra eam amat 'Phaedra loves (*eam* CANNOT be Phaedra) her (i.e. some else)'

Nīcobūlus eius nummōs habet 'Nicobulus has (*eius* CANNOT refer to Nicobulus) his (someone else's) money'.

sē declined

s./pl.

nom. —

acc. *sē*

gen. *sūi*

dat. *sībi*

abl. *sē*

NB. The forms are the same for s. and pl. and all genders. Reference to the subject of the verb will tell you whether to translate s. or pl., m., f. or n.

su-us a um

This possessive adjective 'his', 'hers', 'its', 'theirs' declines like *mult-us a um*.

Exercises

1 Translate the following sentences:

- hostem iratum et multa minatum miles audax saepe adgressus est.
- equites e castris suis egressi ad urbem celeriter progressi sunt.
- nauem adeptus celerem rex longe a terra sua fugit.
- uxori multa locutae uir ferociter respondit.
- ubi legati hostis adlocuti sunt, ad castra regressi uerba eorum duci nostro nuntiauerunt.
- dux milites hortatus audacter se in proelium tulit.
- hostes nostrorum ferociam equitum passi in oppidum suum fugerunt et ibi se celauerunt.

2 Translate these sentences:

- non uiuere bonum est, sed bene uiuere. (Seneca)
- nemo togam sumit nisi mortuus. (Juvenal)
- multorum opes praepotentium excludunt amicitias fidelis: non enim solum ipsa fortuna caeca est, sed eos etiam plerumque efficit caecos quos complexa est. (Cicero)

uiuo 3 I live
tog-a ae 1f. toga
sumo 3 I put on
morio 3/4 dep. mortuus
I die
op-es op-um 3f. pl. wealth
praepotens praepotent-is
3m. very powerful
man

excludo 3 I exclude,
prevent
amiciti-a ae 1f. friendship
fidel-is e loyal, faithful
non solum . . . sed etiam
not only . . . but also
ipsa herself (nom. s. f.)
fortun-a ae 1f. fortune

caec-us a um blind
plerumque generally
efficio 3/4 I make (x acc.
y acc.)
quos (acc. pl. m.) whom
complector 3 dep.
complexus I embrace

Reading

- As you translate in word-order, determine the limits of the participle phrase in each of these sentences and say what function it has in the sentence (i.e. agreeing with and describing subject, object, indirect object etc.) Then translate into correct English, finally returning to the Latin to read it out correctly phrased. E.g. hanc praedam adepti domum regressi sunt. Participle phrase: hanc . . . adepti: agreeing with subject. 'When they had obtained this booty, they returned home'. Read out with a comma pause after adepti.

- Amphitruo igitur milites eo tempore hortatus in proelium se tulit.
- dux milites allocutus est et praedam post uictoriam pollicitus signum dedit.
- uxor Amphitruonis uirum in uia conspicata domo egressa est.
- uxori multa precatae et constantiam uiri recordatae Amphitruo tamen nil respondit.
- seruus autem dominum multa mentitus facile decipit.

2 Read these participle phrases, translating in word-order, and decide their function in the sentence (NB. there are no ablatives). Then pair each with the correct ending from the list below. Finally, having translated into correct English, read aloud in Latin, phrasing correctly, and thinking through the meaning as you read.

- cuius otium et pacem adeptis . . .
- legatos haec uerba locutos . . .
- manum seruorum in castra hostium profectorum . . .
- ei mulieri clam in bellum uirum secutae . . .
- ducem ad exercitum hostium progressum . . .

milites mala uerba locuti sunt
dux hostium castigauit
bellum malum uidetur maximum esse
legiones secutae sunt
domini necauerunt

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read this passage carefully, translating in word-order, determining as you go the function of the words met and the groups in which they should be phrased and stating what each new item makes you anticipate. Translate into correct English, then read aloud in Latin, phrasing correctly, thinking through the meaning as you read.

Teleboas praedam nostram in terram plurimam adeptos dux noster ulcisci uoluit. cum exercitum igitur in terram Teleboarum profectus bellum cum eis gessit. Amphitruo autem, uir summam uirtute, per legatos locutus Teleboas praedam reddere iussit. sed Teleboae, uiri summam ferociam, multa ferociter locuti multaque exercitum nostrum minati, Amphitruonem statim abire iusserunt. ergo proelium factum est. dux noster deos

precātus atque exercitum hortātus milītēs in proelium dūxit. hostīs fortiter prōgressōs tandem uīcimus. Amphitruō autem lēgatōs hostium postrīdiē in castra accēpit, hanc uictōriam adeptus tam illūstrem. lēgātī hostium, ubi ex urbe profectī sunt et ad castra uēnērunt, ducem uehementer precātī nostrum dēdidērunt sē in eius arbitrium. 10

English–Latin

1 Translate into Latin:

- Our general, after encouraging the army, gave the signal.
- Amphitruo addressed the enemy through ambassadors.
- All men when they have gained wisdom prefer peace and leisure to war.
- The enemy set out from the camp at that hour.
- Although I have tried to speak clearly to them, the enemy have threatened me fiercely.
- They killed the man when he had spoken thus.

2 Read through the text of 3B again and then translate this passage:

SOSIA When Amphitruo had spoken through ambassadors to them, the Teleboans replied thus to him: 'You have attacked our land. Go away at once. If you do not leave, we will fight.' Thus they spoke. But Amphitruo, a man of very great courage, after advancing with his army from the camp, encouraged his men. Then he led them into battle. The battle was (a) massive (one). However, our leader gained a famous victory and has now returned home.

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

Prefixes

The prefix *dī-* or *dis-* (or *dif-*) means 'apart', 'asunder', 'not' (occasionally 'exceedingly'), e.g.

- distō* 1 'I stand apart' (cf. 'distant')
dissideō 'I sit apart' (i.e. disagree) (cf. 'dissident')
differō 'I scatter', 'I differ'

sē- as a prefix means 'apart', 'without', e.g. *sēcūrus* 'free from worry', *sēdūcō* 'I lead aside, astray', *sēditiō* 'a going (*eō*, *it-*) apart', *sēdulus* 'aside from tricks' (*dolus* 'trick'), *sēcrētus* 'separated apart' (cf. English 'secret' – something set apart; hence 'a secretary' deals with confidentialities). This *sē-* has nothing to do with *sē* reflexive.

Word exercise

Give the meaning and discuss the Latin connections of: copious, *terra firma*, legation, agrarian, otiose, hostile, naval, pacify, ferocious, invincible, exhort, illustrious, suicide (*-cīd-* – simple verb *caedō* 'I kill').

Everyday Latin

per sē 'through itself', 'because of its own nature'

Real Latin

Martial

difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus es īdem.

nec tēcum possum uīuere, nec sine tē. (12.46)

<i>iūcundus</i> sweet	} NB Gender	<i>īdem</i> the same (nom.)
<i>acerbus</i> bitter		<i>uīuō</i> 3 I live

Motto

agnus in pāce, leō in bellō. (Edmonds)

agn-us ī 2m. lamb
leō leōn-is 3m. lion

Word study

castrum

castrum in the s. means a fortified post or settlement, in the pl. a camp. The '-caster', '-cester', '-chester' endings to the names of towns indicate 'camp' e.g. Lancaster, Worcester, Manchester and Chester. *castrum* has a diminutive *castellum*, whence 'castle' and in French *château* (a French circumflex accent often indicates a 'hidden' s; cf. Latin *fenestra* 'window', French *fenêtre*). Newcastle upon Tyne was so called because it had a *Novum Castellum* built by William Rufus in 1080.

castrum may be akin to *castrō*, 'I cut', i.e. *castrum* = 'a place cut off', 'entrenchment'. If so, *castrum* and English 'castrate' have similar origins!

sequor

sequor 'I follow' has a present participle *sequēns* 'following' and perfect participle *secūtus* 'having followed'. From these we get 'sequel' and 'sequence' and through the French *suivre* a 'suit', hence 'suitor', one who pursues a marriage partner, and 'sue', to chase someone at law. 'Pursue' derives from *prōsequor* (French *poursuivre*). *cōsequor* 'I follow all together', gives 'consecutive' and 'consequence'. *exsequor* 'I follow out' gives 'execute' in the sense of 'carry out' or 'judicially put to death'. *obsequor* 'I follow on account of / in accordance with the wishes of' gives 'obsequious', while *persequor* 'I follow thoroughly' gives 'persecute'. *subsequor* 'I follow under', hence to succeed (as in a list), gives 'subsequent'.

Section 3C

Running vocabulary for 3C

abigō 3 I drive off
an or
astūtīis (abl.) with
cunning
astūt-us a um sharp, smart
barb-a ae 1f. beard
callid-us a um cunning
celerius more quickly
celerrimē very quickly
cēnō 1 I have dinner
cicātrīcōs-us a um scarred
coll-um ī 2n. neck
cōsūtīs tunicīs with a
second-hand tunic
Dāv-us ī 2m. Davus
dictūrus (nom. s. m.)
about to say

dolīs (abl.) with tricks;
dolīs cōsūtīs with your
second-hand tricks
domō 1 I soften up
eadem (acc. pl. n.) } the
eandem (acc. s. f.) } same
eāsdem (acc. pl. f.) }
edō 3 I eat
eōsdem (acc. pl. m.) the
same
equidem for my part
etiam still
eundem (acc. s. m.) the
same
exercitūrus (nom. s. m.)
about to exercise
exossāt-us a um boned

exossō 1 I bone, fillet
fact-um ī 2n. deed
factūrus (nom. s. m.)
about to do, make
fallāciīs (abl.) with
deceptions
ferōcissimē most fiercely
ferōcius more fiercely
fōrm-a ae 1f. looks
fort-is e strong
habitō 1 I dwell, live in
hercle by Hercules
hospiti-um ī 2n. reception
īdem (nom. s. m.) the same
idem (nom. s. n.) the same
ingressūrus (nom. s. m.)
about to enter

interrogō 1 I ask
intrātūrus (nom. s. m.)
about to enter
itūrus (nom. s. m.) about
to go
labr-um ī 2n. lip
māl-a ae 1f. cheek
malitiā (abl.) with evil
maximē most of all
ment-um ī 2n. chin
minimē no; least (of all)
miserrimē most
wretchedly
modo just, recently
mūrēn-a ae 1f. eel
narrātūrus (nom. s. m.)
about to tell
nās-us ī 2m. nose
nēmo nēmin-is 3m. no-one
nescioquis (nom.) someone
or other

nihilī of no value,
worthless
nōnne surely?
nūntiātūrus (nom. s. m.)
about to announce
obsecrō 1 I beg, beseech
optimē best of all; very
well
ōs ōr-is 3n. face
pariēs pariet-is 3m. wall
pedibus with feet; on foot
pēs ped-is 3m. foot
perueniō 4 I reach
petas-us ī 2m. hat
placet it is pleasing
plūrimum very much, a
great deal
ponderō 1 I weigh
pondus ponder-is 3n.
weight

prīmō first
prohibeō 2 I prevent, stop
pugne-us a um fisty
pugnīs (abl.) with fists
pugn-us ī 2m. fist
quandō when, since
quis anyone
silenter silently
sinō 3 I allow
statūr-a ae 1f. height
tantī . . . quantī of such
value . . . as; worth
. . . as much as
tēcum with you(rself)
terg-um ī 2n. back
tōt-us a um whole, all
tunicīs with/on your tunic
uestīt-us ūs 4m. clothes
uī (abl.) with force

Learning vocabulary for 3C

Nouns

fōrm-a ae 1f. shape, looks;
beauty
dol-us ī 2m. trick

pugn-us ī 2m. fist
nēmo nēmin-is 3m./f. no-
one, nobody

pēs ped-is 3m. foot

Adjectives

uērus a um true

fort-is e strong; (brave,
courageous)

ī-dem ea-dem i-dem (cf. *is*
e-a id) the same

Verbs

interrog-ō 1 ask, question

placet 2 *placu-it/placitum est*
it is pleasing; x (dat.)
votes (to)

sin-ō 3 *sīu-ī sit-us* I allow

Others

etiam still, even, as well;
yes, indeed

nōnne surely?
quandō since, when

tēcum (pl. *uōbiscum*) with
you, yourself; (pl. with
yourselves)

Grammar and exercises for 3C

81 Future participles, active and deponent: 'about to / on the point of -ing'

Future participles of both deponent *and* active verbs are always active in meaning. They mean 'about to —', 'on the point of —ing', 'intending to —', and are formed by adding *-ūrus a um* to the stem of the perfect participle, e.g. *minātūrus* 'about to threaten', *amātūrus* 'about to love' etc. As with deponent perfect participles, these forms are *adjectives* and must agree in person, number and gender with the person 'about to . . .', e.g. *locūtūra* (fem.) *est* 'she is about to speak'; *ēgressūri sunt* 'they are about to go out'; *eōs prōgressūrōs uideō* 'I see them on the point of advancing'. Note the clue to form in the word 'future' – giving you *-ūr-us*.

82 The 4th principal part (perfect participle) of active verbs

You have already met three principal parts of active verbs, i.e. the dictionary form, the infinitive and the perfect (e.g. *amō, amāre, amāuī; habēō, habēre, habuī* etc.). The perfect participle is formed as follows:

Regular principal parts

	Present indicative	Present infinitive	Perfect indicative	Perfect participle passive
1st conj.	ámō	amāre	amāuī	amā-t-us a um
2nd conj.	hábeō	habēre	hábuī	hábi-t-us a um
4th conj.	aúdiō	audīre	audíuī	audí-t-us a um

Notes

- As you can see, the perfect participle is regularly formed by adding *-t-us a um* to the stem: *amā-t-us, audí-t-us* etc. Note *habí-t-us* (*-e-* changes to *-i-*). Thus the future participles of the three regular conjugations will be *amāt-ūr-us a um, habit-ūr-us a um, audīt-ūr-us a um*.
- For the curious, the meaning of this participle on its own is 'having been —ed', e.g. *amātus* 'having been loved'. Cf. 77 for deponent and semi-deponent participles, which, as we have seen, mean 'having —ed'. The perfect participle meaning 'having been —ed' will not be met properly till 151.

83 Unpredictable principal parts

The principal parts of all 3rd and 3/4th conj. verbs are best treated as unpredictable, and need to be learned. Note, however, that stem + *-tus* (sometimes + *-sus*) is one pattern, e.g. *dīc-o dīc-tus*. Here are the full principal parts of the active verbs of these conjugations which you have learned so far, listed by *ending* of perfect participle, plus those of irregular 1st, 2nd and 4th conjugation verbs.

Present indicative	Present infinitive	Perfect indicative	Perfect participle passive	
Perfect participle ending in <i>-ct-us a um</i>				
(a) <i>-c(i)ō</i>				
dē- in- prō- re- cē-	dūcō	-dūcere	-dūxī	-ductus 'I lead'
dīcō	dīcere	dīxī	dictus	'I say'
faciō	facere	fēcī	factus	'I make', 'I do'
perficiō	perficere	perfēcī	perfectus	'I complete'
(b) <i>-nc-ō</i>				
uincō	uincere	uīcī	uictus	'I conquer'
(c) <i>-g-ō</i>				
agō	agere	ēgī	āctus	'I do', 'I drive'
legō	legere	lēgī	lēctus	'I read'
(d) <i>-qu-ō</i>				
coquō	coquere	coxī	coctus	'I cook'
Perfect participle ending in <i>-st-us a um</i>				
<i>-r-ō</i>				
gerō	gerere	gessī	gestus	'I do', 'I act (wage)'

Present indicative	Present infinitive	Perfect indicative	Perfect participle passive
-----------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------	----------------------------------

Perfect participle ending in -pt-us a um

(a) -p(i)ō

capiō	capere	cēpī	captus	'I capture'
dēcipiō	dēcipere	dēcēpī	dēceptus	'I deceive'

(b) -b-ō

(ad)scribō	-scribere	-scripsī	-scriptus	'I write (to)'
------------	-----------	----------	-----------	----------------

Perfect participle ending in -(n)sus, -(s)sus

(a) -ttō

mittō	mittere	mīsī	missus	'I send'
-------	---------	------	--------	----------

(b) -dō

dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfendī	dēfēnsus	'I defend'
---------	-----------	---------	----------	------------

(c) -deō

uideō	uidēre	uīdī	uīsus	'I see'
irrideō	irridēre	irrisī	irrisus	'I laugh at'
possideō	possidēre	possēdī	possessus	'I hold', 'I keep'
respondeō	respondēre	respondī	respōnsum ¹	'I answer'

(d) -m-ō

opprimō	opprimere	oppressī	oppressus	'I surprise, catch, crush'
---------	-----------	----------	-----------	----------------------------

(e) other -eō

iubeō	iubēre	iussī	iussus	'I order'
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsus	'I wait', 'I remain'

Perfect participle ending in -itus

(a) -d-ō

crēdō	crēdere	crēdidī	crēditum ¹	'I believe'
dēdō	dēdere	dēdidī	dēditus	'I surrender'
reddō	reddere	reddidī	redditus	'I return'

Present indicative	Present infinitive	Perfect indicative	Perfect participle passive
-----------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------	----------------------------------

Perfect participle ending in -ūtus, -ōtus

-u-(e)ō

soluō	soluere	soluī	solūtus	'I release, pay'
moueō	mouēre	mōuī	mōtus	'I move'
adiuuō	adiuuāre	adiūuī	adiūtus	'I help'

Perfect participle ending in -tus added to a plain stem

dō	dare	dedī	datus	'I give'
stō	stāre	stetī	statum ¹	'I stand'
(in)ueniō	-uenīre	-uēnī	-uentum	'I come'
uinciō	uincīre	uīnxī	uīnctus	'I bind'
fugiō	fugere	fūgī	fugitūrus ²	'I flee'
sinō (stem si-)	sinere	sīuī	situs	'I allow'
dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēuī	dēlētus	'I destroy'
ad- } prae- }	sum esse	fuī	futūrus ²	'I am' { 'present' 'in charge of'
ferō	ferre	tulī	lātus	'I carry, bear'
auferō	auferre	abstulī	ablātus	'I take away'
in- } ab- } ex- } red- }	eō īre	īuī or īī	itum ¹	'I go' { 'into' 'away' 'out of' 'back'

¹ Intransitive verbs have only the -um form of past participle, which we will give from now on. See Reference Grammar A-G Intro (d) Note.

² No past participle; in such cases we give the future participle, if it exists.

Note

As you attempt to learn these vital 4th principal parts, you will not fail to notice how extraordinarily fruitful they have been in the formation of English words. You will find that you can frequently form an English word by adding '-ion', '-ive', '-ure' and '-or' to the stem of the perfect participle (cf. p. 31): try the list above. For formation of the future participle see 81 and 82 above.

Exercises

- 1 Translate these future participles and say what verb each is from: intrātūrus, clāmātūrus, factūrus, habitūrus, monitūrus, mānsūrus, audītūrus, mentītūrus, ēgressūrus, ductūrus, captūrus, (optional: suspicātūrus, reditūrus, locūtūrus, datūrus, rogātūrus, precātūrus, dictūrus, dēfēnsūrus, dēlētūrus, solūtūrus, passūrus).
- 2 Say which in this list are future participles and which past: scrīptūrō, locūtae, āctūrīs, inuentūrī, secūtās, ēgressūra, acceptūrōrum, futūrā, morātārum, gestūrum, nūntiātūrōs, suspicātus, uictūram, hortātōs.
- 3 Give the Latin for: about to go; on the point of making; intending to defend; about to give back; on the point of laughing; about to place; about to see; intending to order; intending to deceive.

84 The ablative of instrument or means – ‘by means of’, ‘with’

We have identified three areas of usage for the ablative:

- (a) Locative, e.g. ‘in’, ‘at’, ‘on’, ‘within’ of place and time (cf. 10, 67).
- (b) Separation (cf. *auferō* – *ablātus* ‘I take away’) e.g. *ex*, *ab* + abl. (cf. 23).
- (c) The ablative of description, e.g. ‘a woman of/with great courage’ (cf. 49).

We now meet the ‘instrumental’ usage of the ablative for the first time. This shows the instrument *with which* or means *by which* an action is carried out, e.g.

pugnīs mē uerberat ‘he beats me with his fists / by means of his fists’ / using his fists as the instrument’.
pedibus hūc uenit ‘he comes here by means of his feet / on his feet’.

Exercises

1 Translate:

- (a) at mē per omnem uītam miserrimam dolīs dēcēpit homo pessimus.
- (b) quārē igitur eam pugnīs ferōciter uerberāuit?
- (c) manibus meis hās aedīs hōc annō perfēcī.

- (d) neque astūtiīs neque dolīs ciuīs umquam dēcipiēs.
- (e) facinoribus maximīs et sceleribus plūrimīs rem sibi optimē gessit homo pessimus.
- (f) omnīs uxōrēs uirtūte et continentīā Alcumēna superāuit.

2 Translate:

- (a) nōnne ille seruus in aedīs intrātūrus est?
- (b) ego illum pugnīs meis eōdem tempore uerberātūrus sum.
- (c) nōnne Sōsia ille stultissimē āctūrus est, sī hās aedīs ingredī uolet?
- (d) eum seruū ego maximē uolō meā fōrmā hanc noctem dēcipere.
- (e) Sōsia suā uirtūte mē numquam uincet.
- (f) quid futurum arbitrātur? hāc enim hōrā illī nōmen meā astūtiā ablātūrus sum.

85 nōnne? (‘doesn’t . . .?’)

nōnne? asks a question in such a way that the speaker wants the answer to it to be ‘yes’. The best formula for translation is ‘doesn’t x happen?’ (or ‘x does happen, doesn’t it?’); ‘surely?’ is also a safe translation. E.g.

nōnne eam amō? ‘don’t I love her?’, ‘I do love her, don’t I?’, ‘surely I love her?’

86 īdem ‘the same’ and nēmo ‘no one’

īdem eadem idem ‘the same’

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	ī-dem	ēa-dem	ī-dem	ēī-dem ¹	eaē-dem	ēa-dem
acc.	eūn-dem	eān-dem	ī-dem	eōs-dem	eās-dem	ēa-dem
gen.	← eiūs-dem →			eōrūn-dem	eārūn-dem	eōrūn-dem
dat.	← eī-dem →			← eīs-dem ² →		
abl.	eō-dem	eā-dem	eō-dem	← eīs-dem ² →		

¹ īdem also found.

² īdem also found.

Note

This declines like *is ea id + dem* (but NB. *īdem*, where one might expect *isdem*, *iddem*). Note that where the forms of *is* end in *-m*, the *-m* becomes an *-n-* before the *-d-* of *-dem* e.g. *eum-dem* – *eun-dem*; *eārum-dem* – *eārūndem*.

nēmo 3m.(f.)

nom.	nēmo
acc.	nēmin-em
gen.	nūll-īus (nēmin-is)
dat.	nēmin-ī
abl.	nūll-ō (nēmin-e)

87 Comparative and superlative adverbs 'more —ly', 'most —ly'

Comparative and superlative adverbs are formed from the comparative and superlative adjectives.

	foolish(ly)	more foolish(ly)	most foolish(ly)
Adjective	stūlt-us	stūlt-ior	stultissim-us
Adverb	stūlt-ē	stūlt-ius (neut.)	stultissim-ē
	quick(ly)	more quick(ly)	most quick(ly)
Adjective	cēler	celér-ior	celérrim-us
Adverb	celér-iter	celér-ius (neut.)	celérrim-ē

Irregular comparative and superlative adverbs

NB. Most of these are only irregular in as far as the corresponding adjective has irregular comparative and superlative forms. If you already know the adjective forms, most of these adverbs are formed quite regularly from the adjective:

béne	'well'	mélius	'better'	óptimē	'best'
mále	'badly'	péius	'worse'	péssimē	'worst', 'very badly'
paúlum	'a little'	mínus	'less'	mínimē	'very little'; 'no'
múltum	'much'	plūs	'more'	plúrimum	'most'; 'a lot'
magnópere	'greatly'	mágis	'more'	máximē	'very much'; 'most'; 'yes'

Exercises

- Form and translate the comparative and superlative adverbs of: stultē, bene, pūtidē, miserē, pulchrē, celeriter, audācter, male (optional: multum, paulum, plānē, magnopere, facile).
- Identify and translate the comparative and superlative adverbs in this list: facillimē, malum, scelere, illius, astūtius, uērō, optimē, stultē, opere, magnopere, fortius, alterius, nimis, magis, minimē, hodiē, pulcherrimē.

- Translate each of these phrases: uir summā uirtūte; summā uirtute; seruus summā astūtiā; astūtiā summā; manibus pedibusque; hōc annō; eādem fōrmā; meīs pugnīs; eōdem tempore.
- Give the Latin for: on the same day; a wife of the utmost excellence; with the greatest courage; with my fist; in the same year; with the same hands; a slave of great boldness; with a trick.
- Translate these sentences:

- omne futūrum incertum est. (Seneca)
- inter peritūra uīuimus. (Seneca)
- dē futūrīs rēbus semper difficile est dicere. (Cicero)
- uirtūs eadem in homine ac deō est. (Cicero)
- fit uia uī. (Virgil)

incert-us a um uncertain
inter (+ acc.) among

pereō perīre perī peritus I
die
uīuō 3 I live

uīs f. force, violence (abl.
uī)

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Read these passages, translating in word-order, defining the function of each word and phrase-group. Translate into correct English. Finally, read aloud the Latin, correctly phrased, thinking through the meaning as you read.

- mihi hōc tempore pater meus officium crēdidit maximum. nam dum eī fōrmā Amphitruōnis Alcumēnam dēcipere placet, ego seruum Sōsiam ab aedibus abāctūrus sum. ego igitur meīs pugnīs illī seruō exitium minātūrus in uiam ibō. meā illum astūtiā dēcipiam facile, quod mihi uir nūllā sapientiā esse uidētur. eī ego nōmen eōdem tempore meīs auferam dolīs. placēbit enim mihi ad eum eādem fōrmā ac uōce eādem adgredi. 5
- Sōsiam in aedīs dominī ingressūrum Mercurius dolīs atque astūtīs dēcepit. Sōsiam enim ingredi nōn siuit, quamquam eum Amphitruō Alcumēnae eō tempore omnia nārrāre iussit. Mercurius enim patrem suum, id est Iouem, cūrat. nam ille hīs in aedibus hanc noctem Alcumēnam fōrmā uirī dēcepit. Mercurius autem sē Sōsiae similem fēcit et eādem fōrmā et uōce eādem nōmen eius cēpit. Mercuriō tandem Sōsia uix (hardly) crēdidit, quandō sibi simillimum deum arbitrātus est. et hoc facilius opinātus est seruus quod deus eundem habuit petasum, uestitum eundem, eandem statūram, pedēs eōdem, idem mentum, mālās eādem, eadem labra, barbā eandem, nāsum eundem, collum idem. sēmet (himself: acc. s.) uērō Sōsiam arbitrārī tandem Sōsiae placuit, quod sē bene cognōuit. 10 15

English-Latin

1 Translate into Latin:

- What is that slave intending to do?
- Surely he's going to relate the battle to Alcumena?
- I intend to fool him with my tricks and my fists at the same time.
- For I've come here intending to threaten him with death¹.
- I've decided² to take his name from him by this trick.
- I've done nothing more easily, nothing better, nothing more quickly.

¹ = 'threaten death to him'.² Use *mihi placet* + infinitive.

2 Read the text of 3C again, then translate this passage:

MERCURY Who's speaking? If I find him, I intend to attack him with my fists.

SOSIA I'd better keep quiet. If he touches me with those fists, surely I'll be worth as much as a flatfish.

MER. Where are you intending to go, criminal? Who are you? Are you a citizen?

SOS. I'm a slave.

MER. I want you to tell me more than this. What's your name?

SOS. My name is Sosia.

MER. You're lying. Are you intending to deceive me with your tricks? If you don't go away quickly, I'll kill you with these fists.

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

(a) Suffixes

-fex *fic-is* as a suffix is connected with *faciō* 'I make', 'I do' and commonly expresses occupation. So *carnufex* = *carō* (*carn-*) 'meat' + *fex*, 'meat-maker', 'executioner', 'scoundrel'; *artifex* = *ars* (*art-*) 'skill', 'craft' + *fex*, 'craftsman'; *aurifex* = *aurum* + *fex*, 'goldsmith'.

Nero said of himself on his death-bed *quālis artifex pereō* 'What an (*quālis*) artist perishes in me!'

(b) Perfect participle

The perfect participle is an enormously fruitful source of vocabulary (cf. p. 171). Many English words are formed by the addition of '-ion', '-ure', '-ive', '-or' to that stem, e.g. 'production', 'diction', 'factor', 'missive', 'capture', 'perfection', 'action', etc., etc. Consequently, you can use these words to help you determine what the perfect participle is. For example, what is the perfect participle of *scribō*? *scribitus*? No English word 'scribition'. But there is a word 'inscription'. Chances are, therefore, that the perfect participle is *scriptus*. Likewise, for Latin-into-English translation, a word like *prōgressūrus* reminds one of 'progression', i.e. going forward.

-ūr-a ae 1f. added to the stem of the 4th principal part generates abstract nouns denoting:

action: *scriptūra* 'writing' (*scribō* 'I write')

result: *nātūra* 'birth', 'nature' (*nāscor* 'I am born')

occupation: *mercātūra* 'trade' (*mercor* 'I sell, trade')

Word exercise

Give the meaning and Latin connection of these words: form, pedestrian, ameliorate, pejorative, interrogate, station, mansion, vision, retention, possession, position, verify, gesture, solution, concoction, elation, future, status, amateur.

Everyday Latin

placebo – the harmless pill or coloured water given to pacify hypochondriac patients

id. = *idem* 'the same' (usually, 'the same author')

ibid. = *ibidem* 'the same place in the same author already cited'

Those on their way to die in the gladiatorial arena saluted the emperor with the words *auē* ('hail'), *Caesar, moritūrī tē salūtant auē atque ualē* 'hail and farewell', 'hello goodbye' (common on tombstones)

One's *magnum opus* is one's 'great work' – usually referring to a book

The following phrases will help you revise the difference between *in* + acc. and *in* + abl.:

in locō parentis 'in the position of a parent'
in camerā 'in private', 'in secret' (*camera* = vaulted room, the origin of our 'chamber'. The term refers to legal judgements made privately by a judge in his rooms)
in propriā persōnā '(speaking) in one's own person'
in absentīā 'in one's absence'
in flagrante delictō '(caught) in flagrant (open) sin (crime)', i.e. taken in the act, caught red-handed.
in memoriā 'to the memory'
in mediās rēs '(plunged) into the middle of the action'

Real Latin

The Vulgate

(*The last day.*) *dē Siōn ēgrediētur lēx, et uerbum Dominī dē Hierusalem, et iudicābit inter populōs multōs, et corripiet gentēs fortēs usque in longinquum; et concident gladiōs suōs in uōmerēs et hastās suās in ligōnēs; nōn sūmet gēns aduersus gentem gladium; et nōn discent ultrā belligerāre . . . quia omnēs populī ambulābunt unusquisque in nōmine Dei suī; nōs autem ambulābimus in nōmine Dominī Dei nostrī in aeternum et ultrā.* (*Micah 4.2–5*)

Siōn (abl.) Sion
lēx *lēg-is* 3f. law
Hierusalem (abl.)
 Jerusalem
iudicō 1 I judge
popul-us *ī* 2n. people
corripio 3/4 I control
gēns *gent-is* 3f. nation
usque in longinquum afar
 off

concidō 3 I beat
gladi-us *ī* 2m. sword
uōmer *uōmer-is* 3m.
 ploughshare
hast-a *ae* 1f. spear
ligō *ligōn-is* 3m. pruning
 hook
sūmō 3 I take up
aduersus + acc. against
 off

discō 3 I learn
ultrā further, more,
 beyond
belligerō 1 I fight
unusquisque each and
 every one
in aeternum for ever

Mottoes using the ablative

nōn vī, sed mente. (*Lincolne*)
nōn vī, sed virtūte. (*Burrowes, Ramsbotham*)
nōn vī sed voluntāte. (*Boucher*)
nōn gladiō sed grātiā. (*Charteris, Charters*)
nōn cantū sed actū. (*Gillman*)
ingeniō ac labōre. (*Kerr*)
ingeniō et vīribus. (*Huddleston*)
igne et ferrō. (*Hickman*)
industriā et labōre. (*McGalloch*)

industriā et spē. (*Warden*)
industriā et virtūte. (*Bolton*)
cōnsiliō ac virtūte. (*Rose-Lewin*)
cōnsiliō et animīs. (*Maitland, Ramadge*)
cōnsiliō et armīs. (*Stephens*)
fidē et amōre. (*Conway, Gardner, Hart, Seymour*)
fidē et clēmētiā. (*Martin*)
fidē et armīs. (*Fairquhar*)
fidē et cōstantiā. (*Dixon, James, Lee*)
fidē et diligētiā. (*Crawford*)
fidē et fidūciā. (*Blackman, Gilchrist, Hogg, Wall, Watt*)
fidē et labōre. (*Allan*)
fidē et spē. (*Borthwick*)

<i>uīs</i> (pl.) <i>uīr-ēs</i> s. force; (pl.) strength	<i>act-us</i> <i>ūs</i> 4m. deed, doing	<i>fidēs</i> <i>fidē-ī</i> 5f. faith
<i>mēns</i> <i>ment-is</i> 3f. mind	<i>labor</i> <i>labōr-is</i> 3m. effort, work	<i>clēmēti-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f. mercy
<i>uoluntās</i> <i>uoluntāt-is</i> 3f. will	<i>ferr-um</i> <i>-ī</i> 2n. sword, iron	<i>cōstanti-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f. constancy
<i>gladi-us</i> <i>ī</i> 2m. sword	<i>industri-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f. industry	<i>diligēti-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f. diligence
<i>grāti-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f. grace	<i>spēs</i> <i>spē-ī</i> 5f. hope	<i>fidūci-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f. trust
<i>cant-us</i> <i>ūs</i> 4m. song	<i>arm-a</i> <i>ōrum</i> 2n. pl. arms	

Word study

pēs

pēs *ped-is* means 'foot', and is akin to Greek *pous* *pod-os* 'foot' – cf. 'octopus' ('eight feet'); 'podium'; 'antipodes' ('people with their feet opposite'); 'tripod' ('three-feet'). The adjective *pedālis* gives 'pedal' and *pedester* gives 'pedestrian', 'of the feet', hence, 'lowly', 'earth-bound', 'using one's feet'. *pedō* is late Latin for 'foot-soldier', whence English 'pawn', via Old French *pion*.

expediō means 'I free my feet from a trap', whence 'expedient', meaning 'advantageous' and to 'expedite', meaning 'get things moving'. Conversely, 'impede' comes from *impediō* 'I put feet in shackles'; so *impedimentum* 'hindrance'. *impedicō* 'I tangle someone's feet in a *pedica* ('foot-trap')' gives Middle French *empechier* and English 'impeach', meaning 'charge with an official crime'. Less obviously, *repudium*, meaning 'back-footing', yields 'repudiate'. Piedmont is the area at the foot of the mountains (*mōns mont-is*). Most fascinating of all, 'pedigree', a register of descent or lineage, comes from *pēs* + *dē* + *grūs*, Middle French *pié de grue* 'foot of a crane', the three-line mark like a bird's foot (人) which is used to show family succession.

Section 3D

Running vocabulary for 3D

aliquid something
amātor amātor-is 3m. lover
astūt-us a um sharp
auxiliō (for) a help
breu-is e short, brief
callid-us a um cunning
card-ō cardin-is 3f. door-hinge
cār-us a um dear
complector 3 dep.
complexus I embrace
crēdō 3 (+ dat.) I believe
crepō 1 I creak, groan
cui (after *sī*) (with) (to) anyone; (in question) to whom?
cūrae (for) a care, concern
dīmīttō 3 I dismiss
exemplō (for) an example
faueō (+ dat.) I am favourable to
grātiās agō (+ dat.) I thank
impedimentō (for) a hindrance

imperō (+ dat.) I give orders (to), command
imperātor imperātor-is 3m. general
inquiet (he) will say
intereā meanwhile
irātus (+ dat.) angry with, at
licet 2 *licuit* it is permitted for x (dat.) to y (inf.)
māne early in the morning
medi-us a um middle (of)
metuō 3 I fear, am afraid
mī = mihi (or 'O my')
necesse necessary
numquid anything?
obstō 1 *obstitī* (+ dat.) I stand in the way (of)
odiō (for) an object of hatred
operam dō (+ dat.) I pay attention to
opus est there is a need for

x (dat.) to y (inf.)
parcō 3 (+ dat.) I spare, go easy on
pāreō 2 (+ dat.) I obey
parturiō 4 I give birth
pater-a ae 1f. dish
paulum a little
plūs more
prae ahead
praesum (+ dat.) I am in charge of
quantō (by) how much
... tantō (by) so much
quibus (after *sī*) (to) any (pl.); (in question) to which (pl.)?
sī quid if anything, if in any respect, at all
sī quis if anyone
subitō suddenly
taediō (for) a source of boredom
teneō 2 I hold
uoluptātī (for) a source of pleasure

Learning vocabulary for 3D

Nouns

grāti-a ae 1f. thanks, recompense

auxili-um ī 2n. help
impediment-um ī 2n. hindrance

uoluptās uoluptāt-is 3f. desire, love, passion

Adjectives

breu-is e short, brief

Section 3D

Verbs

imper-ō 1 (+ dat.) I give orders (to), command
obst-ō 1 *obstit-ī* (+ dat.) I stand in the way of, obstruct
operam d-ō 1 *ded-ī dat-us* (+ dat.) I pay attention to

faue-ō 2 *fāu-ī faut-um* (+ dat.) I do service to, favour
pāre-ō 2 (+ dat.) I obey
tene-ō 2 I hold
licet 2 *licu-it/licitum est* it is permitted to x (dat.) to y (infin.)
grātiās agō (+ dat.) I thank

praesum praeesse praefu-ī praefutūr-us (+ dat.) I am in charge of, at the head of
inquit (he) says (1st s.
inquam, 2nd s. *inquis*, 3rd pl. *inquiunt*)
necesse est it is necessary

Others

subitō suddenly

Grammar and exercises for 3D

88 Datives

So far the dative case has been used to indicate the person *advantaged*¹ or *disadvantaged* by an action (*mī aurum dedit* 'he gave the gold to me', *mihi aurum abstulit* 'he took the gold from me'; this sense includes the possessor also, e.g. *est mihi pecūnia* 'I have money'), and to indicate the person spoken to (*mihi dīxit* 'he spoke to me'). But, as was said at the time, the range of the dative is far wider than that, and its root meaning seems to be that the person is in some way interested or involved in the action of the verb, and when faced by a dative one should ask 'In what way is the person in the dative affected by the verb?'

¹ Q. What is an *omnibus*? A. A vehicle 'for everyone' – 'to everyone's advantage'.

1 Possessive dative: further notes

Remember the two ways of expressing the idea of possession in Latin:

- habeō* or *teneō* + acc. 'I have'. e.g. *seruum habeō* 'I have a slave'.
- est/sunt* + person possessing in the dative (lit. 'there is/are to x ...') e.g. *est mihi seruus* 'there is a slave to me' 'I have a slave'; *sunt Amphi-truōnī multī seruī* 'there are to Amphi-truo many slaves', 'Amphi-truo has many slaves'.

Note the idiom *nōmen Mercuriō est mihi* 'the name to me is Mercury' i.e. 'my name is Mercury'. Observe that *Mercuriō* agrees with *mihi* (see 17B).

2 The sympathetic dative

This is used in place of the genitive to stress the involvement of the person, e.g. *oculī mihi splendent* 'the eyes for me are shining', i.e. 'my eyes are shining'.

3 Dative of judging

This means 'in the eyes of', e.g. *uir bonus mihi uidetur* 'he seems a good man to me', i.e. 'in my eyes'. Cf. *Quīntia fōrmōsa est multīs* (Catullus) 'Quintia is beautiful to many', i.e. 'in many people's eyes'.

4 Ethic dative

This usage indicates that the person in the dative is or should be especially concerned about the action, e.g. *quid mihi Celsus agit?* 'what is Celsus doing (I am especially interested in what it is)?' (Horace). The best translation might be 'what is Celsus doing, please?' *at tibi repente uēnit ad mē Caninius* 'but Caninius suddenly came to me (and this is especially interesting to you)', i.e. 'Listen! / Guess what? / Pay attention: Caninius suddenly came to me' (Cicero).

5 Verbs which take the dative

All the following verbs take the dative and have meanings related to usages of the dative outlined above:

crēdō 'I have belief in', 'I trust': *eīs crēdit* 'he believes them'. (Cf. the meaning 'I entrust': *crēdō* x (acc.) to y (dat.), e.g. *deō aurum crēdit* 'he entrusts the gold to the god')

fauēō 'I favour', 'I give support to': *fēminae fauet* 'he favours the woman'

praesum 'I am in charge of': *ille exercituī praeest* 'he is in charge of the army'

pāreō 'I obey', 'I am obedient to': *Mercurius patrī pāret* 'Mercury obeys his father'

imperō 'I give orders': *mulier nōbīs imperat* 'the woman gives us orders' (NB. *iubeō* takes the acc. + infin., e.g. *seruam exīre iubet* 'he orders the slave to go out'.)

obstō 'I hinder' 'I stand in the way of': *hic mīlitibus obstat* 'he hinders the soldiers'

*licet*¹ 'it is permitted': *uōbīs licet* 'it is permitted to you', 'you are allowed'

*placet*¹ 'it pleases': *cīuibz placet* 'it is pleasing to the citizens', 'the

citizens agree/vote' (cf. *placet* / *nōn placet* as voting procedure at some universities)

minor 'I make a threat against': *dominus seruō minatur* 'the master threatens the slave'

adsum 'I am present with', 'I am close to', 'assist': *sociīs adest* 'he is present with his friends', 'he helps his friends'

supplicō 'I implore' 'I bow to': *dīs omnibus supplicat* 'he implores all the gods'

¹ For these 'impersonal verbs' see further 154 and Reference Grammar F2.

6 Non-personal uses of the dative

The dative case is used in certain circumstances to denote the *purpose* for which something is done, e.g.:

pecūniam dōtī dat 'he gives money for/as a dowry'
mihi auxiliō it 'he comes for a help to me' i.e. 'to help me'

Similar to this is the so-called *predicative dative*, where datives of purpose are used with the verb 'to be', e.g.

mīlitēs salūtī sunt cīuibz 'the soldiers are for a salvation to the citizens', 'the soldiers save the citizens', 'the soldiers are a salvation to the citizens'

auxiliō erimus oppidō 'we shall be for a help to the town', 'we shall help the town'

Note the following predicative dative expressions:

uoluptātī sum 'I am a source of pleasure to x (dat.)'

odiō sum 'I am a source of hatred to x (dat.)', 'I am hated by x (dat.)'

impedimentō sum 'I am a hindrance to x (dat.)'

Revision exercises

1 Give the meaning, and then form the dative s. and pl., of the following nouns:

1st-2nd declension: familia, oculus, cōsiliū, animus, cēna, bellum, deus, turba, uictōria, oppidum, praeda, (optional: officium, cōpia, stilus, lūna, serua, fōrma, lēgātus, grātia, proelium, cūra, auxiliū).

3rd–5th declension: pater, honor, aedēs, frāter, soror, uxor, onus, homo, cīuis, manus, diēs, nox, opus, caput, (optional: rēs, mīles, scelus, uōx, urbs, rēx, exercitus, nāuis, legiō, hostis, equitēs, mōs, pēs, uolūptas).

- 2 Give the meaning, and then form the dative s. and pl., of the following adjectives:

1st/2nd declension (m. f. n. forms in the s., one form for the pl.): multus, miser, malus, meus, tuus, noster, uester, (optional: bonus, summus, longus, alter¹, nūllus¹, irātus, optimus, pessimus).

3rd declension and others (one form for both dat. s. and pl.): omnis, trīstis, ingēns, breuis, audāx, hic, (optional: facilis, fortis, ille, illūstris, melior, is, peior, maior).

¹ NB. These are irregular in gen. and dat. s. See 62.

- 3 Principal parts:

Give meaning and all four principal parts of: dō, stō, iubeō, possideō, sum, eō, ferō, uolō, dīcō, dūcō, capiō, gerō, ueniō, uincō.

Give meaning and all three principal parts of: adipīscor, adgredior, loquor, sequor, proficīscor, hortor, polliceor, mentior, cōspicor, arbitror, cōnor.

Exercises

- 1 Put the bracketed noun/pronoun in the correct case and translate the sentence (NB. not every example requires the dative).

- (ego) licet ex aedibus exīre.
- (seruus) Mercurius pugnīs suīs aggressus est.
- (hic) seruus obstitit.
- (tū) nōn crēdō.
- (illa) uir maximē amat.
- (uōs) is seruus minātur.
- (pater) filius bonus semper pāret.
- (cēna) coquus nunc parat.
- (exercitus) dominus meus praeest.
- (tū) aedīs inīre iubeō.
- (is) dux hoc imperāuit.

- 2 Translate:

- equitēs legiōnī impedimentō sunt.
- Alcumēna Iouī magnae cūrae est.
- cīuis hic malus omnibus bonīs odiō est.
- Amphitruō cīuibus suīs salūtī¹ fuit.
- urbī huic ego auxiliō erō.
- hoc officium mihi uoluptātī est.
- hoc tibi officiō est.
- mē miserum! ego omnibus meīs exitiō erō.
- hoc tibi malō erit.
- Amphitruōnis uictōria omnibus cīuibus bonō est.

¹ salūs salūt-is 3f. 'safety'.

- 3 Translate (refer back to 48.2 and 88.1 for possessive dative):

- fuit mihi filius bonus.
- uxorī meae dōs maxima est.
- cīuibus nostrīs nūllum auxilium fuit.
- nēminī amīca bona est.
- sunt eīs filius et filia.

- 4 Translate these sentences:

- doctō hominī et ērudītō uīuere est cōgitāre. (Cicero)
- inuia uirtūtī nūlla est uia. (Ovid)
- iniūria sapientī nōn potest fierī. (Seneca)
- hominēs amplius oculīs quam auribus crēdunt. (Seneca)
- omne tulit pūctum quī miscuit ūtile dulcī. (Horace)

doct-us a um learned	sapiēns sapient-is wise	miscēō 2 I mix (x acc. with y dat.)
ērudīt-us a um educated	amplius more	ūtil-is e useful; profitable
uīuō 3 I live	auris aur-is 3f. ear	dulc-is e sweet, pleasurable, entertaining
inui-us a um impassable	pūct-um ī 2n. vote	
iniūri-a ae 1f. harm, injury	quī (nom. s. m.) the man (writer) who	

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Datives (or ablatives) placed early in a sentence are often difficult to tackle, until you come to the verb (or something else which solves the intransigent case). You must 'hold' the dative in these circumstances until you have information which

will solve it. Read this passage and, as you translate it in word-order, say which are the datives and where the construction becomes clear. E.g.:

ille mihi pecūniam multam auferre uult

At mihi there is no clue as to whether the idea is possession, advantage/disadvantage or indirect object. So hold it as 'in relation to me', 'affecting me'. When you reach auferre, you can see that it is likely to be disadvantage, since that verb construes with accusative and dative meaning taking something away from someone.

Note that mihi, tibi and sibi are often to be found second word in their clauses, however far away the verb is.

Sōsia tum dominō Amphitruōnī, ubi ad nāuem eius ueniet, ita dīcet: 'uxōrī uerba tua nūntiāre nōn potuī, domine, quod mihi seruus ingēns pugnōs minātus est. mihi ille ferōciter obstitit. in aedīs igitur mihi intrāre nōn licuit. is enim seruus tuō seruō maximō fuit impedīmentō. necesse fuit igitur mihi ad tē regredī et eius imperiīs statim pārēre, quod mihi fōrma mea ita placet, ut est. officium hoc mihi nōn fuit, ut tū pollicitus es, uoluptātī, sed onerī magnō.' seruō autem ita respondēbit Amphitruō 'quid illī seruō ingentī nōmen est?' tum Sōsia 'eī nōmen Sōsiae est. nam mihi meum nōmen, fōrmam meam, meam uōcem, omnia is seruus abstulit. mihi nunc est nōmen nūllum, nisi nēmo.'

English-Latin

1 Translate into Latin:

- A very large slave stood in my way.
- The old man has a pretty daughter.
- I am allowed to give orders to my soldiers.
- Money is a source of great pleasure to Euclio.
- A bad citizen is hated by everyone.
- I want everyone to obey my orders.
- This duty will be burdensome to my wife.
- (It is) the general (who) is in charge of the army, not the soldiers.
- You (s.) must return to your land very quickly.
- Lovers like things thus.

2 Read the text of 3D again and then translate this passage:

JUPITER Goodbye, my wife. I must go back to my troops.
ALCUMENA What's up? Am I a bore to you already?

JUP. On the contrary, you are a great pleasure to me. But when the general is not at the head of his army, the soldiers do not pay attention to their duties.

ALC. Don't go away, my husband. I shall be able to love you more, if you obey me.

JUP. Don't get in my way. I shall return soon, just as you want. But now I have decided¹ to go. Goodbye.

¹ Use mihi placet (present).

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

Prefix

You have already met *prae-* as a prefix = 'before', 'in front of', e.g. *praeēō* 'I go in front', 'I go ahead'; *praesum* 'I am in front of', 'I am in charge'; but *prae-* can also mean 'extremely', 'very', e.g. *praealtus* 'very high'.

Word exercise

Give the meaning and Latin connection of: gratitude, auxiliary, voluptuary, brevity, minus, favour, licence, obstinate, tenacious, emperor, impede, necessary.

Note that 'parent' comes from *pariō parere* I procure, give birth to, not *pāreō* I obey.

Everyday Latin

'Let there be sung *Non Nobis* and *Te Deum*' (Shakespeare, *Henry V*, iv.8.122: Henry V after the battle of Agincourt). *Non Nobis* is Psalm 115 (Vulgate, part of Ps. 113), which begins *nōn nōbis, Domine, nōn nōbis, sed nōminī tuō dā glōriam* (glōria ae 1f. 'glory'). *Te Deum* is the beginning of the canticle *tē deum laudāmus* (laudō 1 'I praise').

cui bonō? 'to whom (is it) for a benefit?' 'to whose advantage is it?' (NOT 'what use is it?').

urbī et orbī 'to the city and the world'. The papal pronouncement made from the Vatican at Easter to the crowds below.

Real Latin

Martial

Īliacō¹ similem puerum, Faustīne, ministrō
lusca Lycōris amat. quam bene lusca uidet! (3.39)

Īliac-us a um Trojan [hold
Īliacō: it depends on
similem and agrees with
ministrō]
Faustīne = O Faustinus
minister ministr-ī 2m. slave
lusc-us a um one-eyed
Lycōris (nom. f.) Lycoris

NB. The 'Trojan slave' is Ganymede, a beautiful young boy with whom Jupiter fell in love. He took him up to heaven to be his cup-bearer.

Vulgate

Glōria in altissimīs Deō, et in terrā pāx hominibus bonae uoluntātis.
(Luke 2.14)

alt-us a um high uoluntās uoluntāt-is 3f. will

Word study

auxilium

The root of *auxilium* 'help' is *augeō* 'I enlarge', 'I increase', with its perfect participle *auctus*. Hence 'auction', an increasing, and 'author', originally an *auctor* 'increaser', hence 'founder', and so 'authority' etc. An augment is an increase, and *aug-silium* 'an increase (in forces)' 'an auxiliary' – hence 'help'. More strangely still, *augur* probably means 'one who predicts increase, i.e. success', so 'augury', 'inaugurate' (= 'give a start to', 'consecrate'). *augustus* signifies either 'consecrated by the augurs' or 'undertaken under favourable auspices'. This was the name given to Octavius Caesar in 27, who, as Augustus, was the first Roman emperor and gave his name to the month August. Note the following place-names which originate from the name Augustus: Val d'Aosta (Augusta Praetoria), Autun (Augustodunum), Zaragoza (Saragossa) = Caesar-augusta.

SECTION FOUR

Section 4A

Running vocabulary for 4A(i)

accurrō 3 accurrī I run up
Agrigentīn-us ī 2m. person
from Agrigentum
(town in Sicily)
apud (+ acc.) among
armāt-us a um armed
arripō 3 arripuī I seize,
snatch
clāu-a ae 1f. club
commoueō 2 I shake free,
shift
commoueēbant 'they began
to shift' (impf. of
commoueō)
cōnābantur 'they tried'
(impf. of cōnor)
concurrō 3 concurrī I make
a charge, rush
custōs custōd-is 3m. guard
diligentius (comparative
adverb of diligenter)
carefully
effringō 3 effrēgī I break
open
expugnābant 'they began
to storm' (impf. of
expugnō)
expugnō 1 I storm
fām-a ae 1f. rumour,
report
fīēbat 'there occurred'
(impf. of fīō)
Herculēs Hercul-is 3m.
Hercules
ibi there
impetum faciō 3/4 fēcī
I make an attack
intereā meanwhile
ips-e a um (him-, her-,
it-)self (gen. s. ipsius)
iūdex iūdic-is 3m. judge
lapidātiō lapidātiōn-is 3f.
stoning
longē ā/ab (+ abl.) far
from
num surely . . . not?
nūnti-us ī 2m. messenger
obsistō 3 (+ dat.) I resist,
obstruct
percrebrēscēbat 'it began to
spread' (impf. of
percrebrēscō)
perueniō 4 peruēnī (ad)
I reach, arrive at, come
to

quīdam quaedam quoddam
a, a certain, some (92)
repellō 3 reppulī I drive
back, drive out
repente suddenly
seruōs . . . commouēre 'that
slaves . . . were
shifting'
seruōs . . . cōnarī 'that
slaves . . . were trying'
seruōs . . . expugnāre 'that
slaves . . . were
storming'
simulācrum ī 2n. image
surgō 3 surrēxī I arise, rise
up
tēl-um ī 2n. weapon,
missile
templ-um ī 2n. temple
tōt-us a um (like ūnus (see
54): gen. s. tōt-ius, dat.
s. tōt-ī) whole,
complete
ualu-a ae 1f. folding door
Verrēs Verr-is 3m. Verres
uīs irr. f. force, violence
(acc. uim, abl. uī)

Learning vocabulary for 4A(i)¹

Nouns

Agrigentīn-us ī 2m. person
from Agrigentum
(town in Sicily)
custōs custōd-is 3m. or f.
guard
fāma ae 1f. rumour,
report; reputation

impetus -ūs 4m. attack
nūnti-us ī 2m. messenger
simulācr-um ī 2n. image,
copy
templ-um ī 2n. temple
Verrēs Verr-is 3m. Verres

uīs irr. f. force, violence
(acc. *uim*, abl. *uī*); pl.
uīrēs, *uīrium* 3f.
strength, military
forces

Adjectives

quīdam quaedam quoddam
a, a certain, some

tōt-us a um (gen. s. *totius*)
whole, complete

Verbs

expugnō 1 I storm
impetum faciō 3/4 *fēcī factus*
I make an attack

perueniō 4 *peruēnī*
peruentum (ad) I reach,
arrive at, come to

repellō 3 *reppulī repulsus*
I drive back, drive out

Others

apud (+acc.) among; (at
the house of, in the
hands of, in the works of)

intereā meanwhile

repente suddenly

¹ From now on items are listed alphabetically in each category.

Running vocabulary for 4A(ii)

aēne-us a um bronze
Assōrīn-us ī 2m. person
from Assorus

būcinā 'on the horn'
Chrȳs-as ae m. River
Chrysas

colō 3 I worship
concurrēbant 'they began
to rush' (impf. of
concurrō)

dīcam 'should I say'
doctrīn-a ae 1f. learning
effringō 3 *effrēgī* I break
down

Enguīn-us ī 2m. person
from Engyum
erant 'there were' (impf.
of *sum*)

fact-us a um made,
constructed
fluō 3 I flow
fluui-us ī 2m. river
fortitūdō fortitūdinis 3f.
bravery
gale-a ae 1f. helmet
Hierō Hierōn-is 3m. Hiero
hominēs . . . *intrāre* 'that
men were entering'
hūmānitās hūmānitāt-is 3f.
culture

hydri-a ae 1f. jar
imitor 1 *imitātus* I copy
īnscrībō 3 *īnscrīpsī*
I inscribe

intelligēbat '(he)
understood' (impf. of
intelligō)

intelligō 3 I understand
iūdex iūdic-is 3m. judge
iūdicō 1 I judge, evaluate
lōrīc-a ae 1f. breastplate
marmor marmor-is 3n.
marble

Māter Magna Mātris
Magnae Great Mother
(i.e. the goddess
Cybele)

mātūre early, in time
monument-um ī 2n.
monument

negōti-um ī 2n. business,
job

pōnō 3 I place, put
postea afterwards
quī 'which' (nom. s. m.)
quid why?
religiō religiōn-is 3f.
sanctity

religiōs-us a um sacred,
revered, holy,
awesome
relinquō 3 *reliquī* I leave
Scīpiō Scīpiōn-is 3m. Scipio
sentiō 4 *sēnsī* I perceive,
realise

singulār-is e peculiar,
unique
sōl-us a um alone
Tlēpolem-us ī 2m.
Tlepolemus
ualu-a ae 1f. folding door
uidēlicet apparently
(sarcastic)

Learning vocabulary for 4A(ii)

Nouns

iūdex iūdic-is 3m. judge
negōti-um ī 2n. business,
work, duty

Adjectives

religiōs-us a um sacred,
revered, holy,
awesome

Verbs

colō 3 *coluī cultus* I
worship; cultivate, till;
inhabit

pōnō 3 *posuī positus* I
place, position, put
relinquō 3 *reliquī relictus* I
leave, abandon

sentiō 4 *sēnsī sēnsus* I feel,
understand, perceive,
realise

Others

postea afterwards
quid why?

Running vocabulary for 4A(iii)

accūsō 1 I accuse
affirmō 1 I state strongly,
assert
aliquis someone (decl. like
quis)
amic-us ī 2m. friend, ally
antīqu-us a um old
atrōx atrōc-is appalling,
shocking

audītūrōs esse 'to be about
to hear', (fut. inf. of
audiō)
audīuisse 'to have heard',
(perf. inf. of *audiō*)
Catinēnsis Catinēns-is 3m.
person from Catina
Cerēs Cerer-is 3f. Ceres
(goddess of corn)

cōnficiō 3/4 I carry out
cōfirmō 1 I state clearly,
confirm
cōspiciātās esse 'to have
seen' (perf. inf. of
cōspicor)
cōstituō 3 *cōstituī* I
decide
crīmen crīmin-is 3n. charge

dēferō dēferre dētulī I report
dēmoueō 2 I remove
erat 'there was' (impf. of *sum*)
eum . . . *esse* 'that he was'
fict-us a um false
illum seruū . . . *ingressum esse* . . . *sustulisse* 'that that slave had entered . . . (and) removed'
ingressum esse 'to have entered' (perf. inf. of *ingredior*)
innocēns innocent-is
 guiltless
intrāuisse 'to have entered', (perf. inf. of *intrō*)
ist-e that person (i.e. Verres)
iūdicō 1 I judge
lēx lēg-is 3f. law

Learning vocabulary for 4A(iii)

Nouns

amic-us 2m. friend, ally
ist-e a ud that over there / of yours (used especially when referring to opponents at a trial: *iste* here is always used to mean Verres)

Adjectives

innocēns innocent-is
 guiltless

Verbs

accūsō 1 I accuse x (acc.) of y (gen.)
affirmō 1 I state strongly, assert
cōfirmō 1 I state clearly, confirm

locus 2m. place
magistrāt-us ūs 4m. magistrate, state official
negō 1 I deny, say that x is not the case
nōlēbat '(he) did not want' (impf. of *nōlō*)
perantīqu-us a um very old
postrīdiē next day
putō 1 I think
reperiō 4 I find
sacr-a ōrum 2n. pl. rites
sacerdōs sacerdot-is 3f. priestess
sacrāri-um 2n. shrine
sē . . . *cōspiciātās esse* 'that they had seen'
senāt-us ūs 4m. senate
seruōs . . . *intrāuisse* . . . *sustulisse* 'that the slaves had entered . . . (and) removed'

loc-us 2m. place (pl.)
loc-a ōrum 2n. pl.)
magistrāt-us ūs 4m. magistrate, state official
sacerdōs sacerdot-is 3m. f. priest(ess)

sacer sacr-a um holy, sacred

dēferō dēferre dētulī dēlātus I report, bring news of; accuse, denounce; transfer
iūdicō 1 I judge
negō 1 I deny, say that x is not the case

sign-um 2n. statue
soleō 2 I am accustomed, used
suspiciō suspiciōn-is 3f. suspicion
sustulisse 'to have removed' (perf. inf. of *tollō*)
testis test-is 3m. witness
tollō 3 *sustulī* I remove, take away
uidēbātur '(it) seemed' (impf. of *uideor*)
uirgō uirgin-is 3f. young girl, virgin
uolēbat 'he wished' (impf. of *uolō*)
uōs . . . *audītūrōs esse* 'that you will hear'
uōs . . . *audīuisse* 'that you have heard'

sacr-a ōrum 2n. pl. rites
senāt-us ūs 4m. senate
sign-um 2n. statue; (seal; signal, sign)
uirgō uirgin-is 3f. young girl, virgin

putō 1 I think
reperiō 4 *repperī repertus* I find
soleō 2 *solitus* (semi-dep.) I am accustomed, used
tollō 3 *sustulī sublātus* I lift; remove, take away

Running vocabulary for 4A(iv)

ampl-us a um important, prestigious
auctōritās auctōritāt-is 3f. influence, guidance
ausūrum esse 'to be about to dare' (fut. inf. of *audeō*)
clāmor clāmōr-is 3m. outcry
coniciō 3/4 I throw
creō 1 I choose
cuius 'whose'
dīcam 'should I say'
ēdūcō 3 I pick out
erat 'it was' (impf. of *sum*)
ēuent-us ūs 4m. outcome, result
expectābant 'they awaited' (impf. of *expectō*)
extrā (+ acc.) outside
fās indecl. n. right
fās esse } 'that it was right'
fās . . . esse }
fīēbat 'there arose' (impf. of *fīō*)
genus gener-is 3n. tribe

hydri-a ae 1f. jar
id . . . posse 'that it could'
illō modō 'in that way'
iniciō 3/4 I throw in
īnscrip-t-us a um inscribed
laet-us a um happy (tr. 'happily')
lēx lēg-is 3f. law
negābant '(they) denied' (impf. of *negō*)
nōmine 'with the name'
oportet it is right, proper, necessary
perfectūrum esse 'to be about to achieve' (fut. inf. of *perficiō*)
praetereā besides, moreover
prīmō at first
quot however many; how many?
recitō 1 I read out
renūtiātus est '(he) was returned, selected'
renūtiō 1 I return, select, appoint

sacerdoti-um 2n. priesthood
sors sort-is 3f. lot-drawing; lot
sortior 4 dep. I draw lots
spērābant 'they were hoping' (impf. of *spērō*)
suffrāgi-um 2n. vote
Syrācūsān-us 2m. person from Syracuse, Syracusan
Syrācūsīs 'at Syracuse'
Theomnāst-us 2m. Theomnastus
tot so many
Verrem . . . ausūrum esse 'that Verres . . . would dare'
Verrem . . . perfectūrum esse 'that Verres would achieve'
uetō 1 *uetuī* I forbid
uidēbātur '(it) seemed' (impf. of *uideor*)

Learning vocabulary for 4A(iv)

Nouns

clāmor clāmōr-is 3m. shout; outcry; noise
lēx lēg-is 3f. law
Syrācūsān-us 2m. person from Syracuse, Syracusan

Adjectives

laet-us a um happy

Verbs

coniciō 3 *coniciē coniectus* I throw
uetō 1 *uetuī uetitus* I forbid

Others

prīmō at first
praetereā besides, moreover

Grammar and exercises for 4A

89 Imperfect indicative active 'I was —ing', 'I used to —', 'I began to —', 'I tried to —'

	1	2	3
	'I was loving'	'I was having'	'I was saying'
1st s.	amā-ba-m	habē-ba-m	dīc-ē-ba-m
2nd s.	amā-bā-s	habē-bā-s	dīc-ē-bā-s
3rd s.	amā-ba-t	habē-ba-t	dīc-ē-ba-t
1st pl.	amā-bā-mus	habē-bā-mus	dīc-ē-bā-mus
2nd pl.	amā-bā-tis	habē-bā-tis	dīc-ē-bā-tis
3rd pl.	amā-ba-nt	habē-ba-nt	dīc-ē-ba-nt

	4	3/4
	'I was hearing'	'I was capturing'
1st s.	audi-ē-ba-m	capi-ē-ba-m
2nd s.	audi-ē-bā-s	capi-ē-bā-s
3rd s.	audi-ē-ba-t	capi-ē-ba-t
1st pl.	audi-ē-bā-mus	capi-ē-bā-mus
2nd pl.	audi-ē-bā-tis	capi-ē-bā-tis
3rd pl.	audi-ē-ba-nt	capi-ē-ba-nt

Notes

- 1 Imperfect ind. act. is formed by taking the present stem (+ key vowel -ē- in 3rd, 4th and 3rd/4th conjugations) and adding -bam, -bās, -bat, -bāmus, -bātis, -bant.
- 2 Note the regular personal endings: -m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.
- 3 The imperfect conjugation, being based on the stem of the present tense, is the tense of vivid, eyewitness descriptions for past events ('I was in the process of —ing', cf. present 'I am in the process of —ing'). The action, which is uncompleted (*imperfectus* 'uncompleted', cf. *perfectus* 'completed'), is depicted as continuing, or being repeated, or beginning or being attempted. Thus the most common translations for the imperfect are:

'I was —ing' } (continuing, repeated)
 'I used to —'
 'I began to —' ('inceptive' imperfect, cf. *incipiō inceptus* 'begin')
 'I tried to —' ('conative' imperfect, cf. *cōnor cōnātus* 'try')

Since English does not always distinguish between completed and uncompleted actions, it will often be possible to translate the imperfect as a simple past tense, e.g. *uidēbātur* 'it seemed'.

4 Learn the following irregulars:

sum → 1st s.	ér-a-m 'I was' etc.	eō → 1st s.	ī-ba-m 'I went' etc.
2nd s.	ér-ā-s	2nd s.	ī-bā-s
3rd s.	ér-a-t	3rd s.	ī-ba-t
1st pl.	er-ā-mus	1st pl.	ī-bā-mus
2nd pl.	er-ā-tis	2nd pl.	ī-bā-tis
3rd pl.	ér-a-nt	3rd pl.	ī-ba-nt

possum → 1st s.	pót-eram 'I was able', 'I could' etc.
2nd s.	pót-erās
3rd s.	pót-erat
1st pl.	pot-erāmus
2nd pl.	pot-erātis
3rd pl.	pót-erant

- 5 *uolō* (*uolēbam*), *nōlō* (*nōlēbam*) and *mālō* (*mālēbam*) are all regular.
- 6 Semi-deponents (see 76) take the active form of the imperfect, i.e. *audē-bam* 'I was daring', *fīē-bam* 'I was being made'. In summary, semi-deponents have ACTIVE forms in the present, future and imperfect (*audeō*, *audēbō*, *audēbam*) and DEPONENT forms in the perfect (*ausus sum*).

90 Imperfect indicative deponent

	1	2	3
	'I was threatening'	'I was promising'	'I was speaking'
1st s.	minā-ba-r	pollicē-ba-r	loqu-ē-ba-r
2nd s.	minā-bā-ris (-re)	pollicē-bā-ris (-re)	loqu-ē-bā-ris (-re)
3rd s.	minā-bā-tur	pollicē-bā-tur	loqu-ē-bā-tur
1st pl.	minā-bā-mur	pollicē-bā-mur	loqu-ē-bā-mur
2nd pl.	minā-bā-mini	pollicē-bā-mini	loqu-ē-bā-mini
3rd pl.	minā-bā-ntur	pollicē-bā-ntur	loqu-ē-bā-ntur

	4	3/4
	'I was lying'	'I was advancing'
1st s.	menti-ē-ba-r	prōgredi-ē-ba-r
2nd s.	menti-ē-bā-ris (-re)	prōgredi-ē-bā-ris (-re)
3rd s.	menti-ē-bā-tur	prōgredi-ē-bā-tur

1st pl.	menti-ē-bā-mur	prōgredi-ē-bā-mur
2nd pl.	menti-ē-bā-minī	prōgredi-ē-bā-minī
3rd pl.	menti-ē-bā-ntur	prōgredi-ē-bā-ntur

Notes

- 1 The imperfect ind. dep. is formed by taking the present stem (+ key vowel -ē- in 3rd, 4th and 3rd/4th conjugations) and adding -bar -bāris (or -bāre) -bātur -bāmur -bāminī -bantur.
- 2 Note the regular personal endings for the deponent: -r -ris (or -re) -tur -mur -minī -ntur.
- 3 For meaning, see 89³.

Exercises

Morphology

- 1 Form and conjugate the imperfect, giving the meaning of 1st person singular imperfect, of: uideor, expugnō, fiō, perueniō, sum, cōnor, iubeō, redūcō, irāscor, faciō, (optional: legō, eō, affirmō, soleō, moror, proficīscor, adgredior, ferō, nōlō, sentiō).
- 2 Translate each verb, then change s. to pl. and vice versa: tenēbās, loquēbantur, praeerat, minābāminī, imperābam, ueniēbātis, audēbant; obliuiscēbāris; audiēbat; patiēbāmur; auferēbāmus; sequēbar, (optional: negābam, pollicēbāris, pōnēbat, adipiscēbantur, tollēbātis, irāscēbātur, faciēbās, mentiēbar, putābāmus, cōspiciēbāminī, uetābant, arbitrābāmur).
- 3 Give the Latin for: I used to think; he was abandoning; they were throwing; we used to follow; you (s.) were reporting; she was going out; they were accustomed; you (pl.) were; we were stating strongly; (optional: he used to find; they were daring; you (s.) were speaking; they used to lie; I was encouraging; you (pl.) were setting out; we were removing; I was asserting).
- 4 Give 3rd s. and pl. of the following verbs in present, future, imperfect and perfect: sentiō, minor, uetō, tollō, eō, sum, audeō, adipiscor, uideor, teneō, adgredior, mentior, accūsō, colō, (optional: loquor, negō, soleō, taceō, reperiō, proficīscor, perueniō, dēferō, sequor, faciō).
- 5 Locate and translate the imperfects in this list, stating the tense of each of the other verbs: loquar, sentiēbat, amābit, negābat, solēbunt, audēbant,

pōnam, tollēbātis, reliquit, habēbit, tacēbant, opīnāberis, arbitrābāris, expugnant, repellēbās, iūdicābātis, coniēcistis, (optional: dormiēbātis, iubēbitis, sequēbātur, hortābimur, uolēbās, sciētis, prōmittis, habuistis, inueniēbāmus, inībimus, coquēbat, āmittis, crēdēbant, recordābitur).

91 iste a ud 'that (of yours)'

iste declines as follows:

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	íst-e	íst-a	íst-ud	íst-ī	íst-ae	íst-a
acc.	íst-um	íst-am	íst-ud	íst-ōs	íst-ās	íst-a
gen.	←íst-īus→			íst-ōrum	íst-ārum	íst-ōrum
dat.	←íst-ī→			←íst-īs→		
abl.	íst-ō	íst-ā	íst-ō	←íst-īs→		

Notes

- 1 iste declines exactly like ille 64. Cf. is 70. iste also has a neuter s. in -d, a gen. s. in -īus and dat. s. in -ī.
- 2 iste is frequently used contemptuously of an opponent in a lawsuit and is so used of Verres by Cicero throughout his Verrine speeches.

Exercises

- 1 Say with which of the nouns in each line the given form of iste agrees:
 istīus: seruī, fēminae, templī, manūs, rēi, custōdis, impetūs
 istā: lēge, uirginem, seruī, sacerdotē, negōtiō
 istī: seruī, uirtūtī, manuī, negōtiō, mīlitēs
 ista: fēmina, clāmor, rēs, simulācra, puellā
- 2 Make iste agree with these nouns: seruī (2 possibilities), negōtiō (2 possibilities), uirtūtī, custōdibus, manūs (3 possibilities).

92 *quīdam, quaedam, quoddam* 'a', 'a certain'

	s.			
	m.	f.	n.	
nom.	quī-dam	quae-dam	quod-dam	(quid-dam)
acc.	quēn-dam	quān-dam	quod-dam	(quid-dam)
gen.		← cuius-dam →		
dat.		← cui-dam →		
abl.	quō-dam	quā-dam	quō-dam	
	pl.			
	m.	f.	n.	
nom.	quī-dam	quae-dam	quae-dam	
acc.	quōs-dam	quās-dam	quae-dam	
gen.	quōrūn-dam	quārūn-dam	quōrūn-dam	
dat.	← quibūs-dam →			
abl.	← quibūs-dam →			

Notes

- 1 The forms correspond with those of *quī* 'who?' 29 + *-dam*.
- 2 *quīdam* is the nearest classical Latin ever got to an indefinite article, 'a', 'a certain'.

Exercises

- 1 Translate and identify the case of: *seruōrum quōrundam*; *custōdī cuidam*; *signa quaedam*; *clāmōrēs quōsdam*; *dolō quōdam*; *iūdicibus quibusdam*.
- 2 Say with which of the nouns in each line the given form of *quīdam* agrees:
cuiusdam: *seruā*, *templī*, *sacerdōtis*, *custōdum*, *manūs*, *impetū*
quaedam: *fēmina*, *rēs*, *negōtia*, *mīlitēs*, *lēgēs*, *loca*
quīdam: *custōs*, *nūntius*, *puerī*, *mīlitēs*, *magistrātūs*, *iūdicēs*

93 *num* 'surely . . . not'

You have already met *nōnne*, which means 'doesn't?' 'surely?' ('it is the case, isn't it?') (85), e.g. *nōnne seruī templum intrāuērunt?* 'the slaves have entered the temple, haven't they?'

num puts the opposite emphasis, i.e. 'surely something is *not* the case?', 'it *isn't* the case, is it?', e.g.

num peiōra audīuistis? 'surely you have *not* heard worse things?', 'you *haven't* heard worse things, have you?'

num seruī effūgērunt? 'surely the slaves haven't run away?', 'the slaves *haven't* run away, have they?'

nōnne ('surely *x* is the case?') is used to ask a question in such a way that the speaker is trying to get the listener to answer 'yes'.

num ('surely *x isn't* the case?') is used to ask a question in such a way that the speaker is trying to get the listener to say 'no'.

94 Forming the infinitive in Latin

You have already met present infinitives (cf. 41, 58), but here is a revision table:

	1	2	3	4	3/4
Active	-āre	-ēre	-ere	-īre	-ere
Deponent	-ārī	-ērī	-ī	-īrī	-ī

Here are the other infinitive (active and deponent) tables:

95 Perfect infinitive active 'to have —ed'

1	2	3
'to have loved'	'to have had'	'to have said'
<i>amāu-isse</i> (or <i>amāsse</i>)	<i>habu-isse</i>	<i>dīx-isse</i>
4	3/4	
'to have heard'	'to have captured'	
<i>audīu-isse</i> (or <i>audīisse</i> or <i>audīsse</i>)	<i>cēp-isse</i>	

Notes

- 1 Perfect infins. act. are formed by taking the stem of the 3rd p. p. and adding *-isse*.
- 2 Note how *-ui-* can be dropped, giving e.g. *amāsse* (*amāuisse*) 'to have loved', *dēlēsse* (*dēlēuisse*) 'to have destroyed', *nōsse* (*nōuisse*) 'to have got to know', 'to know' (from *nōscō* 3 *nōuī*).

96 Perfect infinitive deponent 'to have —ed'

1	2	
'to have threatened'	'to have promised'	
mināt-us a um esse	pollicit-us a um esse	
3	4	3/4
'to have said'	'to have lied'	'to have advanced'
locūt-us a um esse	mentit-us a um esse	prōgrēss-us a um esse

Notes

- 1 The perfect infin. dep is formed by combining the perfect participle with the infin. of the verb 'to be', *esse*.
- 2 The perfect participle acts as an adjective and must agree with the person doing the action, e.g.

'he seems to have lied' *uidētur mentītus esse*

'the girls seem to have spoken' *puellae uidentur locūtae esse*

97 Future infinitives active and deponent 'to be about to—'

1	2	3
Active 'to be about to love'	'to be about to have'	'to be about to say'
amātūr-us a um esse	habitūr-us a um esse	dictūr-us a um esse
Deponent 'to be about to threaten'	'to be about to promise'	'to be about to speak'
minātūr-us a um esse	pollicitūr-us a um esse	locūtūr-us a um esse
4	3/4	
Active 'to be about to hear'	'to be about to capture'	
audītūr-us a um esse	captūr-us a um esse	
Deponent 'to be about to lie'	'to be about to advance'	
mentītūr-us a um esse	prōgrēssūr-us a um esse	

Notes

- 1 The future infinitives active and deponent are formed in exactly the same way, i.e. combining the future participle with *esse* (cf. perfect deponent infinitives 96).
- 2 The future participle acts as an adjective and will agree with the person 'about to—', e.g.

'he seems to be about to speak' *uidētur dictūrus esse*

'she seemed to be about to listen' *uidēbatur audītūra esse*

- 3 The future infinitive of 'to be' is either (regular) *futūrus esse* or the fixed form *fore*.
- 4 Verbs which have no future participle have no future infinitive. Among these are: *uolō*, *mālō*, *nōlō*, *possum*. Note that *uīsūrus esse* means 'to be about to see' (never 'seem'), *factūrus esse* means 'to be about to make/do' (never 'become').

Exercises

- 1 Form the present, perfect and future infinitives of: *sum*, *accūsō*, *expugnō*, *cōfirmō*, *iubeō*, *redūcō*, *tollō*, *coniciō*, *ēgredior*, *mentior*, *ueniō*, *eō*, (optional: *sentiō*, *audeō*, *ferō*, *nōlō* (no future infinitive), *adipīscor*, *cōnor*, *faciō*, *patior*, *dō*, *colō*).
- 2 State the tense of these infinitives and say which verbs they come from: *passūrus esse*, *loquī*, *amāuisse*, *sentīre*, *habitūrus esse*, *sustulisse*, *minātus esse*, *uelle*, *itūrus esse*, *expugnāre*, *secūtus esse*, *poscere*, *posuisse*, *adeptus esse*, *iūdicāsse*, *repertūrus esse*, *dēferre*.
- 3 Give the Latin for: to seem; to have forbidden; to be about to think; to report; to have found; to be about to remove; to follow; to have remembered; to be about to lie; to promise; to have spoken; to be about to forget; (optional: to have driven back; to be about to worship; to throw; to be about to confirm).
- 4 Pick out the infinitives and say what tense each is, stating also what part of the verb the others are: *solitus es*, *dētulistis*, *cōfirmāuēre*, *affirmāre*, *sequere*, *coluisse*, *putā*, *hortātus esse*, *reperīre*, *mentīre*, *accūsātūrus esse*, *ausus est*, *repellere*, *loquere*, *expugnāuisse*, *audītūrus esse*, *dēferēbat*, *iudicātūrus esse*.

98 Indirect (or reported) statements: the accusative and infinitive

Observe the following utterances:

- (a) *dīcit Verrem uenīre* 'he says Verres to be coming' i.e. 'that Verres is coming'.
- (b) *nūntiant seruōs peruēnisse* 'they announce the slaves to have arrived' i.e. 'that the slaves arrived'.
- (c) *nōn putō Verrem abitūrum esse* 'I do not consider Verres to be about to go' i.e. 'that Verres will go'.

In all these cases, where English uses a 'that' clause, Latin (i) dispenses with the equivalent of 'that', (ii) puts the subject of the clause in the accusative and (iii) puts the verb in the infinitive.

This is Latin's way of reporting a statement (the *direct* statement of (a) above being 'Verres is coming', of (b) 'the slaves have arrived' etc.).

So be on the lookout for verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, reporting, announcing* followed by the *accusative and infinitive*. Translate such sentences literally first, and then adjust to the English 'that' form.

Notes

- 1 English has a parallel construction, e.g. 'he knows *me to be* wise', or 'he knows that I am wise'.
- 2 Latin uses the reflexive (*sē, suus*) to refer in the 'that' clause to the *subject of the main verb*, e.g.

Caesar dīxit sē peruēnisse 'Caesar said that he (= Caesar) had arrived'

Caesar dīxit eum peruēnisse 'Caesar said that he (= someone else) had arrived'

- 3 Observe the correct English form when the main verb is past, e.g.

Caesar dīxit Rōmam sē uentūrum esse 'Caesar said himself to be about to come to Rome', i.e. 'Caesar said that he would come to Rome'

Caesar dīxit Rōmam sē uēnisse 'Caesar said himself to have come to Rome', i.e. 'Caesar said that he had come to Rome'

Caesar dīxit Rōmam sē uenīre 'Caesar said himself to be coming to Rome' i.e. 'Caesar said that he was coming to Rome'

- 4 Note that the normal position for *sē* is second word in its sentence or clause (see examples in n. 3 above). If it comes first word in its clause, or first word after a natural break in the sense, it is usually emphatic, e.g. *Caesar mihi heri dīxit sē Rōmam uentūrum esse* 'Caesar said to me yesterday | that as for himself *he* would come to Rome'. This rule applies to all pronouns.
- 5 The accusative and infinitive construction is so common in Latin that Latin will sometimes use it *with an introductory noun (implying speech)* e.g. *nūntium accēpī seruōs templum intrāuisse* 'I received a message (saying) that the slaves had entered the temple'. Very often, several indirect statements (sometimes a whole speech) follow one another with no repetition of the introductory word(s). So remember always

to start your final translation of a Latin accusative and infinitive with the English word *THAT*, e.g.

dīxit seruōs templum intrāuisse; custōdēs effūgisse; seruōs simulācrum commouēre 'he said *THAT* the slaves had entered the temple; *THAT* the guards had fled; *THAT* the slaves were shifting the statue'

99 *negō* 'I say (that) . . . not', 'I deny'

Latin generally does not use *dīcō* + negative to express the idea 'I say that . . . not', but prefers *negō*, e.g.

negat seruōs templum intrāuisse 'he says that the slaves did not enter the temple' (lit. 'he denies the slaves to have entered the temple')

Exercises

1 Translate these sentences:

- (a) Cicerō affirmat Agrigentīnōs Herculis simulācrum habēre.
- (b) Agrigentīnī Verrem praetōrem bonum fuisse negābant.
- (c) fāma erat seruōs istius in templum ingressōs esse et signum sustulisse.
- (d) nūntium quendam haec omnia nūntiāuisse Agrigentīnīs Cicerō dīxit.
- (e) ego putō istum semper uōbīs mentītūrum esse.
- (f) opīnābatur Cicerō nēmīnem umquam scelera peiōra quam istum factūrum esse.
- (g) Verrēs seruōs in templa mittēbat, cīuibz aurum uī auferēbat, amīcīs etiam contrā (= *against*) lēgem fauēbat, scelera omnia amplexābātur.
- (h) Verrem seruī cuiusdam nōmen dēlātūrum esse audiō.
- (i) Verres, quod nōlēbat in crīmine esse, amīcum quendam mentīrī iussit.
- (j) Verrem sciō innocentīs accūsāre solitum esse.
- (k) num facinora scelestiōra umquam audīuistis, iūdicēs?
- (l) nōne Verrēs homo est scelestissimus?
- (m) Agrigentīnōs in Verris seruōs impetum fēcisse audīuī.

2 Translate these sentences:

- (a) *ratio docet esse deos.* (Cicero)
 (b) *eventus docuit fortis fortunam iuvare.* (Livy)
 (c) *homo sum: humani nil a me alienum putō.* (Terence)
 (d) *Democritum aiunt numquam sine risu in publico fuisse.* (Seneca)
 (e) *spērat adulescens diu se victurum* (sc. esse). (Cicero)
 (f) *gloria uarium et uolubile quiddam est.* (Seneca)
 (g) *nuper me cuiusdam amici languor admonuit, optimos esse nos dum infirmi sumus. quem enim infirmum aut auaritia aut libido sollicitat?* (Pliny)
 (h) *hic, ubi nunc Roma est, incaedua silua uirēbat, tantaque res paucis pascua bubus erat.* (Ovid)

ratio *ration-is* 3f. reason
doceō 2 I teach, inform
event-us *ūs* 4m. outcome; event
fortun-a *ae* 1f. fortune
iuvō 1 I help
humani *nil* nothing
 (of) human
alien-us *a um* of no concern to (x: *a* + abl.)
Democrit-us *i* 2m. Democritus (Greek philosopher)
aiō I say
ris-us *ūs* 4m. laughter, laughing
in publico in public
spērō 1 I hope

adulescens *adulescent-is* 3m. youth
diu for a long time
uiuō 3 *uixi* *uicturus* I live
glori-a *ae* 1f. fame, renown
uari-us *a um* fickle, inconstant
uolubil-is *e* unstable, liable to change
nuper recently
languor *languor-is* 3m. illness
admoneō 2 I remind
infirm-us *a um* weak, feeble

auariti-a *ae* 1f. avarice, greed
libido *libidin-is* 3f. lust
Rom-a *ae* 1f. Rome
incaedu-us *a um* uncut, unfelled
silu-a *ae* 1f. wood
uireō 2 I am green (with foliage)
pauci *i* *ae* *a* a few
pascu-a *orum* 2n. pl. pasture
bos *bou-is* 3m. or f. ox, cow; (pl.) cattle: dat. and abl. *bubus*

Reading exercises

- 1 In each of these accusative and infinitive phrases, state who is doing the action, the tense of the action (i.e. when it would have occurred in direct speech) and, if applicable, the object or complement of the infinitive: then translate, remembering to begin with 'that'. See 98⁴ for normal position of *se* etc. Note that in some cases (e.g. (d)) there is ambiguity. E.g.:

eum filiam amare (a) eum: 'that he' or 'that him' (i.e. someone other than the subject of the introductory verb)

(b) *filiam*: 'the daughter' (subject or object of *amare*)

(c) *amare*: (present) 'loves'

i.e. 'that he loves the daughter' or 'that the daughter loves him'

- (a) *seruos templum expugnaturus esse.*
 (b) *Verrem seruos ad templum misisse.*
 (c) *Assorinos Chrysam colere.*
 (d) *Verrem me accusaturus esse.*
 (e) *simulacra se amare.*
 (f) *Scipionem hominem summam humanitate fuisse.*
 (g) *omnia se conspicatas esse.*
 (h) *istum nocte ex urbe egressurus esse.*
 (i) *clamorem magnum factum esse.*
 (j) *eum domum ire.*

- 2 In the following passage, as you read, underline the acc. + inf. phrase with a single line and the introductory verb with a double line (be careful, as the introductory verb may appear before, in the middle, or at the end of the phrase). As you meet each acc. + inf. phrase, repeat the process outlined for Exercise 1 above. Next, translate the passage and finally read it aloud in Latin, taking care to phrase correctly.

Cicerō templum esse apud Agrigentinos dixit. id affirmāuit nōn longē a forō esse. in hoc templum intrāuisse dixit Verris seruos. eos Verrem misisse Cicerō opinātus est. Verrēs autem se hoc fecisse negābat. fama percrebrēscēbat Verris seruos in templum ingressos esse et custōdēs templum dēfendere cōnatos esse. magnum clamorem custōdēs fecisse putāuit Cicerō; Agrigentinos igitur ex urbe prōgressos esse et ad templum uenisse. fugisse tum seruos Verris affirmāuit. Cicerō negābat umquam se scelera peiora audītūrum esse.

- 3 Before translating, say whether each sentence contains an acc. + inf. phrase (reported statement) or merely a prolativ infinitive (i.e. after verbs like *uolō* etc.).

- (a) *negarunt fieri id posse.*
 (b) *id uos facere noluit.*
 (c) *te Chrysae simulacrum tollere iubeo.*
 (d) *seruos se necare cōnatos esse affirmābat.*
 (e) *Verrem simulacrum sustulisse fama erat.*
 (f) *me Verrem accusare, iudices, uolebant omnes Agrigentini.*

- 4 Using the introductory verbs given, change the bracketed sentences from direct to indirect statements (acc. + inf.), then translate the passage:

Cicerō dīcit (templum apud Agrigentīnōs est nōn longē ā forō). affirmat (ibi est simulācrum Herculis pulcherrimum). negat (pulchrius simulācrum quam illud numquam cōspicātus sum¹). fāma est (ad hoc templum Verrēs repente nocte seruōs quōsdam armātōs mīsīt). dīcit (hī concurrerunt et templum expugnauerunt). affirmat (custōdēs templī clāmāuēre et seruīs obsistere templumque dēfendere cōnātī sunt). dīcit (mox et peiōra et scelestiōra audiētis²).

¹ Use *sē* to introduce this; change *numquam* to *umquam*.

² Use *eōs* to introduce this.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

audiō apud Catinēnsīs esse Cereris sacrārium. in sacrārium illud uirīs intrāre nōn licēre omnēs sciunt. fāma est mulierēs et uirginēs ibi sacra cōficere solēre. in eō sacrāriō fuisse signum Cereris perantīquum multī affirmant. hoc signum seruōs Verris Cicerō dīxit nocte ex illō locō sustulisse; omnibus rem atrōcissimam uīsā esse. Verrem deinde iussisse amīcum quendam aliquem reperīre et accūsāre Cicerō dīxit. nam eum in crimine esse nōlle. Cicerō amīcum affirmāuit seruī cuiusdam nōmen dētulisse, seruū accūsāuisse, in eum fictōs dedisse testīs. senātum autem Catinēnsium sacerdōtēs uocāuisse et dē omnibus rēbus rogāuisse. sacerdōtēs dīxit Cicerō omnia omnis cōspicātās esse, senātum seruū innocentem esse dīxisse. iūdicēs numquam peiōra audīuisse scelera arbitrābātur Cicerō, mox autem peiōra audītūrōs esse.

English–Latin

- 1 Translate into Latin:

- I think that Verres did this.
- Cicero said that the slaves entered the temple.
- Many citizens used to come to the city, do business, then return home.
- Verres' friend reported the name of a certain slave.
- We all know that the defendant is a scoundrel.
- Surely you don't think that the slaves took away the statue?

- Cicero was an excellent man, used gladly to defend his friends, and¹ never forgot the crimes of our enemies.
- Cicero thinks the judges will never hear of a worse crime.

¹ No need to translate.

- 2 Read the text of 4A(iv) again, then translate this passage:

The Syracusans have a law concerning the priesthood of Jupiter. Cicero says that this law enjoins the Syracusans to elect three men; that the Syracusans must then cast lots; that one of the three men becomes priest. He states that Verres wanted to give the priesthood to a friend, called Theomnastus, that the Syracusans refused, but¹ that Verres by a trick achieved his object.

¹ No need for an equivalent in Latin (just use a comma).

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

Prefixes

per-, rather like *prae-*, often intensifies the meaning of the word to which it is added, e.g. *antīquus* 'old', *perantīquus* 'very old'.

Note the way the following prefixes may change in response to the consonant to which they are attached (this is called assimilation):

- ad* + *capiō* = *accipiō*¹ 'I receive'
- ad* + *firmō* = *affirmō*² 'I assert'
- ad* + *loquor* = *alloquor* 'I address'
- ad* + *propinquō* = *appropinquō* 'I draw near'
- ad* + *tulī* = *attulī* 'I have brought (to)'
- ad* + *rapiō* = *arripiō* 'I seize'
- inter* + *legō* = *intellegō* 'I understand'
- sub* + *capiō* = *suscipiō* 'I undertake'
- sub* + *cēdō* = *succēdō* 'I go under'
- sub* + *gerō* = *suggerō* 'I supply'
- sub* + *rapiō* = *surripiō* 'I steal'
- sub* + *tulī* = *sustulī* 'I filched'

¹ Observe how a short *a* (*capiō*) becomes *i* (*accipiō*) when a prefix is added. Cf. *rapiō* → *arripiō* etc.

² It is common for the prefixes *ad-* and *con-* to be printed without assimilation. e.g. *adloquor*, *conlocō*.

con + locō = collocō 'I place'
 con + pellō (3 'I drive') = compellō 'I compel'
 con + rapiō = corripio 'I snatch up'
 con + moueō = commoueō 'I move'

Suffixes: revision

-c(u)lum, -crum added to a verb stem give neuter nouns, e.g. simulō 'I copy', 'I pretend' + -crum = simulācrum 'image', 'statue'; pō-tus 'drink' + culum = pōculum 'drink', 'cup'; uehō 'carry' + -culum = uehiculum 'carriage'. Such words are usually instruments for carrying out the action.

-iō, -iōnis 3f. added to the stem of the perfect participle gives an abstract noun, e.g. legō lēct-us 'I read' → lēctiō 'reading'; audiō audītus 'I hear' → auditiō 'hearing' etc. Cf. sessiō, mōtiō, accūsātiō etc. Such words show an action, or its result.

Word exercises

Give the meaning and connection with Latin of: clamour, custodial, temple, repulsion, renunciation (NB. nūntiō becomes nūnciō in Medieval Latin), total, pugnacious, convention, sign, cult, relic, sensibility, sacerdotal, conjecture, putative, veto, legal, amicable, defamation, impetuous, judicial, triumvirate.

Real Latin

Catullus¹

nūllī sē dīcit mulier mea nūbere mālle

quam mihi, nōn sī sē Iuppiter ipse petat.

dīcit: sed mulier cupidō quod dīcit amantī

in uentō et rapidā scribere oportet aquā. (Catullus 70)

nūbō 3 (+ dat.) I marry (said of women only)	quod what (postponed – in English it would come after sed)	amāns amant-is 3m. lover
ipse himself (nom. s. m.)		uent-us ī 2m. wind
petat 'were to seek'	cupid-us a um passionate	rapid-us a um fast-flowing
		oportet 'one ought'

¹ C. 84–54. Famous for his love poems addressed to his woman, Lesbia. See section 6A.

Martial

omnia prōmittis, cum tōtā nocte bibistī.

māne nihil praestās. Pōllio, māne bibe. (12.12)

cum when
bibō 3 bib-ī I drink

māne in the morning
praestō 1 I provide

Pōllio O Pollio

numquam sē cēnāsse domī Philo iūrat, et hoc est.
 nōn cēnat, quotiēns nēmo uocāuit eum. (5.47)

cēnō 1 I dine
Philo Philōn-is 3m. Philo

iūrō 1 I swear
est 'is the case'

quotiēns as often as,
whenever

Aulus Gellius¹

cum (when) mentior et mē mentīrī dīcō, mentior, an (or) uērum dīcō?

¹ C. 123–165 A.D. His *Noctēs Atticae* in twenty books is a compendium of scholarly discussions of diverse topics.

An epitaph

sum quod eris, fuī quod es.

quod what

Section 4B

Running vocabulary for 4B(i)

Asi-a ae 1f. Asia Minor
calamitās calamitāt-is 3f.

disaster, calamity
cēter-ī ae a the rest; the
others

cēterīs 'than the others'

cūitās cūitāt-is 3f. state

clār-us a um famous, well-
known

collocō 1 I lodge

comes comit-is 3m.

companion, friend;
(pl.) retinue

cupiō 3/4 I desire, yearn

for, want desperately

excitō 1 I raise, arouse

fruo 3 dep. (+ abl.) I
enjoy

Graec-us -ī 2m. Greek
Hellēspont-um ī 2n.

Hellespont

hospes hospit-is 3m. host

Iānitor Iānitōr-is 3m.

Ianitor

ipse a um (him-, her-, it-)
self, (them-) selves

Lampsacēnus-ī 2m. person

from Lampsacus (or
Lampsacus)

Lampsac-um ī 2n.

Lampsacus (or
Lampsacus)

nōbil-is e renowned,

distinguished

ōlim once

omnibus aliīs 'than all the
others'

omnibus aliīs hominibus

'than all other men'

perniciēs perniciē-ī 5f.

destruction

prope almost

quiēt-us a um peaceful,

law-abiding

tumult-us ūs 4m. riot,

outcry, disorder

turp-is e disgusting, filthy,

outrageous

ūllus a um any

ūtor 3 dep. (+ abl.) I use,

make use of

Learning vocabulary for 4B(i)

Nouns

<i>Asi-a</i> ae 1f. Asia Minor	companion, friend;
<i>calamitās calamitāt-is</i> 3f.	(pl.) retinue
disaster, calamity	<i>hospes hospit-is</i> 3m. host;
<i>comes comit-is</i> 3m.	friend; guest;

Adjectives

<i>ceteri</i> ae a the rest; the others	<i>nobil-is</i> e renowned, distinguished; well-born, noble
<i>clār-us</i> a um famous, well-known	<i>turp-is</i> e disgusting, filthy, outrageous; ugly
<i>Graec-us</i> a um Greek	

Verbs

<i>cupiō</i> 3/4 <i>cupiū cupītus</i>	<i>fruor</i> 3 dep. <i>fructus</i> (+ abl.)	<i>utor</i> 3 dep. <i>usus</i> (+ abl.)
I desire, yearn for, want desperately	I enjoy	I use, make use of; adopt

Others

<i>prope</i> (adv.) almost;
(prep., + acc.) near

Running vocabulary for 4B(ii)

<i>artifici-um</i> ī 2n. skill, ingenuity	<i>inuestīgō</i> 1 I look into, search out	<i>postulāt-um</i> ī 2n. demand
<i>coep-ī</i> (perf.) I began	<i>libidō libidin-is</i> 3f. lust, passion	<i>praetor praetōr-is</i> 3m. praetor (state official)
<i>cōsul cōsul-is</i> 3m. consul	<i>migrō</i> 1 I move	<i>pudicitia</i> ae 1f. chastity
<i>cupiditās cupiditāt-is</i> 3f. lust, desire	<i>mīr-us</i> a um wonderful, amazing	<i>pulchritūdō pulchritūdīn-is</i> 3f. beauty
<i>dīcam</i> 'should I say'	<i>modesti-a</i> ae 1f. discretion	<i>quī</i> 'who' (nom. s. m.)
<i>exārdēō</i> 2 <i>exārsī</i> I burn, am on fire	<i>mūnus mūner-is</i> 3n. job, duty	<i>recipiō</i> 3 <i>recēpī receptus</i> I welcome, receive, take in
<i>eximi-us</i> a um outstanding	<i>neglēgō</i> 3 <i>neglēxī</i> I ignore	<i>retineō</i> 2 I hold back
<i>exīstimātiō exīstimātiōn-is</i> 3f. reputation	<i>offendō</i> 3 <i>offendī</i> I offend	<i>Rubri-us</i> ī 2m. Rubrius
<i>factus</i> ad made for	<i>omnibus aliis Lampsacēnīs</i> 'than all other men of Lampsacum'	<i>summā celeritāte</i> 'with the utmost speed'
<i>lānitor lānitōr-is</i> 3m. lanitor	<i>Philodām-us</i> ī 2m. Philodamus	<i>suspīcor</i> 1 dep. I suspect
<i>integritās integritāt-is</i> 3f. integrity		

Learning vocabulary for 4B(ii)

Nouns

<i>cōsul cōsul-is</i> 3m. consul	<i>cupiditās cupiditāt-is</i> 3f. lust, greed, desire
----------------------------------	---

Verbs

<i>coep-ī</i> (perf. in form) I began	<i>recipiō</i> 3/4 <i>recēpī receptus</i> I welcome, receive, take in	<i>retineō</i> 2 <i>retinū retentus</i> I hold back, detain, restrain; maintain
<i>neglēgō</i> 3 <i>neglēxī neglēctus</i> I ignore, overlook, neglect		

Running vocabulary for 4B(iii)

<i>accumbō</i> 3 I lie down, recline	<i>feruēns feruent-is</i> boiling	<i>oportere</i> 'ought'
<i>aliis prouinciālibus</i> 'than the other provincials'	<i>festinō</i> 1 I hurry	<i>perfundō</i> 3 <i>perfūdī</i> I drench, soak
<i>alius ex aliā parte</i> 'different people from different parts'	<i>forās</i> out	<i>Philodām-us</i> ī 2m. Philodamus
<i>bibō</i> 3 <i>bibī</i> I drink	<i>grauitās grauitāt-is</i> 3f. seriousness, solemnity	<i>postquam</i> after
<i>caleō</i> 2 I am warm/hot	<i>hospitāl-is</i> e welcoming	<i>propinqu-us</i> ī 2m. relative
<i>celebrō</i> 1 I fill x (acc.) with y (abl.)	<i>iānu-a</i> ae 1f. door	<i>quaesō</i> 'I say', 'please'
<i>claudō</i> 3 I close	<i>intellegō</i> 3 <i>intellēxī</i> I perceive, understand	<i>Rubri-us</i> ī 2m. Rubrius
<i>comparō</i> 1 I prepare, get ready	<i>inter</i> (+ acc.) among	<i>sermō sermōn-is</i> 3m. conversation, discussion
<i>conciō</i> 1 I stir up	<i>inuītō</i> 1 I invite	<i>simul</i> at the same time
<i>conueniō</i> 4 <i>conuēnī</i> (ad) I meet (at)	<i>inuīt-us</i> a um unwilling	<i>simul ut</i> as soon as
<i>conuīui-um</i> ī 2n. party	<i>ips-e</i> a um (him- her- it-) self	<i>solum</i> only
<i>discumbō</i> 3 <i>discubū</i> I lie down, spread myself about	<i>laetitia</i> ae 1f. merriment, festivity, joy	<i>summā celeritāte</i> 'with the utmost speed'
<i>effugiō</i> 3 I escape	<i>libidō libidin-is</i> 3f. lust	<i>tant-us</i> a um so great, so much
	<i>maiōribus pōculīs</i> 'with larger cups'	<i>tumult-us</i> ūs 4m. riot, outcry
	<i>multō</i> (by) much	<i>uehementer</i> strongly
	<i>nūntiāru</i> = <i>nūntiāuerunt</i>	

Note

ll. 110–13. Roman custom allowed free citizen women at *conuīuia*, but Greek custom did not. The only women at Greek parties were slaves or *hetairai* ('courtesans').

Learning vocabulary for 4B(iii)

Nouns

conuīui-um ī 2n. party
grauitās grauitāt-is 3f.
 seriousness, solemnity;
 importance, authority

iānu-a ae 1f. door
laetiti-a ae 1f. merriment,
 festivity, joy

sermō sermōn-is 3m.
 conversation, discussion

Adjectives

ali-us a ud other (see 102)

sōl-us a um alone (gen. s.
sōlius, dat. s. *sōlī*)

tant-us a um so much; so
 great; so important

Verbs

bibō 3 *bibī* I drink
comparō 1 I prepare,
 provide, get ready; get
conueniō 4 *conuenī*
conuentum (ad) I meet (at)
effugiō 3 *effūgī* I escape

festinō 1 I hurry
intellēgō 3 *intellēxī*
intellēctus I perceive,
 understand,
 comprehend, grasp
inuītō 1 I invite

oportet 2 *oportuit* x (acc.)
 ought (to + inf.); it is
 right, fitting for x
 (acc.) to y (inf.)

Others

inter (+ acc.) among,
 between

simul at the same time

solum (adv. of *sōlus*) only

Running vocabulary for 4B(iv)

assentiō 4 *assēnsī* I agree
caedō 3 I cut (down); beat
 (down)
circumdō 1 I surround
concurrō 3 *concurrī* I run
 together
eōdem sēnsū et dolōre 'with
 the same sentiment and
 anguish'
ferr-um ī 2n. iron
 (implement), sword

hōc modō 'in this way'
Lampsacī 'at Lampsacum'
multō (by) much, far
negōtior 1 dep. I do
 business
omnibus aliīs 'than all
 others'
orō 1 I beg, pray
parcō 3 (+ dat.) I spare
peccāt-um ī 2n. crime,
 error

potius quam rather than
praetor praetōr-is 3m.
 praetor (Roman state
 official)
quī 'who' (nom. pl. m.)
Romān-us a um Roman
sax-um ī 2n. stone, rock
scelerāt-us a um wicked
summa celeritāte 'with the
 utmost speed'

Learning vocabulary for 4B(iv)

Nouns

celeritās celeritāt-is 3f.
 speed

praetor praetōr-is 3m.
 praetor (Roman state
 official)

Adjectives

Romān-us a um Roman

Verbs

caedō 3 *cecīdī* *caesus* I cut
 (down); flog, beat; kill

concurrō 3 *concurrī*
concursum I run
 together

orō 1 beg, pray
parcō 3 *pepercī* *parsūrus*
 (+ dat.) I spare

Others

multō (by) much, (by) far

Grammar and exercises for 4B

100A The ablative case: summary of forms and usages to date

Here is a summary of the forms of the ablative:

	1st/2nd decl.			3rd decl.	4th decl.	5th decl.
	m.	f.	n.	m./f./n.		
s.	-ō	-ā	-ō	-e/ī	-ū	-ē
pl.	-īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus

Notes

- 1 If you pay attention to the length of the vowels in the ending, you will cut out some of the possible confusions, e.g. *-is* = nom. s. (e.g. *cīu-is*) or gen. s. (e.g. *urb-is*) of 3rd decl., while the dat./abl. pl. of the 1st/2nd decl. is *-īs* (e.g. *seru-īs*). Confusion may result, however, from the acc. pl. form of 3rd decl. *-i-* stems, which is *-īs* (e.g. *cīu-īs*).
- 2 Watch out for the long *-ā* of 1st decl. abl. s. (e.g. *seru-ā*) and do not confuse it with the short *-a* of the 1st decl. nom. s. f. (e.g. *seru-a*) and the 2nd/3rd decl. n. plurals (e.g. *cōnsilia*, *scelera*, *ingentia*).
- 3 The *-ō* of the 2nd decl. can be dat. or abl. (e.g. *seru-ō*).
- 4 The *-e* of the 3rd decl. (e.g. *urb-e*) should not be confused with the *-e* of the nom. acc. s. n. of adjectives (e.g. *trīst-e*).

- 5 The *-ī* of the 3rd decl. adjectives (e.g. *trīst-ī*) and one noun-type (*mare*, which you will meet in 125) should not be confused with 2nd decl. *-ī* in the gen. s. (*seru-ī*) and nom. pl. (*seru-ī*).

None of these problems will arise if you make sure you know to which declension nouns and adjectives which you learn belong.

The ablative: survey of uses

Four usages of the ablative have been met so far: with prepositions meaning in, at and from (10.23) (e.g. *in templō, ē fānō*); in descriptions (49) (e.g. *homo summā uirtūte*); in time phrases (67) (e.g. *illō tempore, decem annīs*); and the 'ablative of means (or instrument)' (84) (e.g. *pugnīs mē uerberat*).

It is now time to bring these usages together and add some more. Basically, the ablative has three functions:

- the 'true' ablative (*ablātus* from *auferō* – 'I take away'), the point from which the action, literally or figuratively, moves, e.g. *ē templō, ā fānō*.
- the 'locative' ablative, i.e. the point in time or space where or when something takes place, e.g. *in templō, illō tempore, decem annīs*.
- the 'instrumental-accompanying' ablative, i.e. the means/instrument by which the action is carried out, or the people, qualities or circumstances which accompany the action (in English, often 'by' or 'with'), e.g. *uir summā uirtūte* (qualities which accompany the action) and *pugnīs mē uerberat* (means/instrument by which the action takes place).

The ablative often seems a difficult case because it appears to have so many uses, but if you remember these three basic functions you will see how (what appear to be) separate uses slip into place.

100B Further uses of the ablative

- 1 Under 'true' ablative: the ablative of comparison (the standard from which comparisons can be made), e.g.

'this town is more famous than all others' *hoc oppidum clārius est omnibus aliīs* ('all the others' are the starting-point from which comparisons are made)

Observe that there is no equivalent of 'than' in this construction. Cf. the construction using *quam* which you have met at 72⁴, where the two things compared are put in the same case, e.g. *hoc oppidum clārius est quam omnia alia*.

- 2 Under 'instrumental-accompanying' ablative: the ablative of attendant circumstances, 'together with', e.g. *peruēnit cum magnā calamitāte cīuitātis* 'he came with great disaster for the state', 'he came and the circumstances in which he came led to great disaster'. *cum* + abl. is frequent, but sometimes *cum* is omitted and the plain ablative used.
- 3 Under 'instrumental-accompanying' ablative: the ablative of manner, which shows how something is done. This can again be constructed with *cum* or not, e.g.

summā celeritāte peruēnit
summā cum celeritāte peruēnit } he arrived with great speed'

- 4 Under 'instrumental-accompanying' ablative, the ablative after *ūtor* 3 dep. *ūsus* 'I use', and *fruor* 3 dep. *fructus* 'I enjoy', e.g. *hīs uerbīs ūsī* 'using these words'.
- 5 Under 'instrumental-accompanying' ablative: the ablative expressing measure of difference. E.g.

Verrēs multō turpior est quam comitēs suī 'Verres is much (i.e. by a great amount) viler than his companions'
sōl multīs partibus maior est quam terra 'The sun is many times (lit. 'by many parts') larger than the earth' (Cicero)

101 Genitive of description

The genitive case is often used for description (cf. the ablative at 49), e.g.

eum filiā habēre eximiae pulchritūdinis 'that he had a daughter of outstanding beauty'

Cf. English idiom. Note that an adjective always accompanies the noun in this usage.

Exercises

1 Revision of ablative forms

- (a) Give the ablative s. and pl. of these noun + adj. phrases: comes clārus; calamitās magna; conuīuium Graecum; amīcus nōbilis; magistrātus innocēns; fōrma turpis; rēs Rōmāna.
- (b) Pick out the ablatives in this list: praetōrī, comitibus, Asiā, cōsulis, conuīuiis, laetitia, sermōne, cupiditatem, uī, amīcō, diēbus, homine turpī, uirō nōbilī, manū celerī.
- (c) In each list, with which nouns will the adjective go?

ingentī: nūntius, puella, templō, uirgine, cūrā
audācibus: uirum, fēminīs, sacerdotibus, amīcus
solā: uirō, agrō, fēmina, uirtūte
magnīs: puerīs, comitis, manibus, cōsilia
tantō: cupiditāte, proeliō, sceleribus, praetōre
longiōre: noctī, periculō, sermōnis, clāmōr, uīā

2 Translate these sentences:

- (a) uir multō melior omnibus aliīs erat.
(b) negāuit sē summā uī hominem cecīdisse.
(c) iste saxīs iānuam cecīdit.
(d) Cicerō Agrigentīnōs affirmāuit uirōs esse magnae uirtūtis.
(e) praetōrēs, uirī summā grauitāte, conuīuiis nōn fruuntur.
(f) Lampsacēnī mōre Graecō rēs suās gerēbant.
(g) mālunt Graecī ōtiō et pāce uītam dēgere (= to pass) quam bellō et calamitātibus.
(h) Cicerō Verrem cēterīs praetōribus peiōrem esse putābat.
(i) Verris seruōs fāma erat summā uī ūsōs esse.
(j) eō tempore Iānitor ad Verrem summā celeritāte uēnit et eum multīs uerbīs retinēre cōnābātur.

102 Pronoun/adjectives: *alius* 'other' and *aliquis* 'some'

alius alia aliud 'other' 'another' 'different'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	āli-us	āli-a	āli-ud	āli-ī	āli-ae	āli-a
acc.	āli-um	āli-am	āli-ud	āli-ōs	āli-ās	āli-a

gen.	← āli-ū →	ali-ōrum	ali-ārum	ali-ōrum
dat.	← āli-ī →	← āli-īs →		
abl.	āli-ō	āli-ā	āli-ō	← āli-īs →

Notes

- 1 Observe the idiom *alius ex aliā parte* 'different men from different places'. This idiom can appear with the parts of *alius* in any case, e.g. *alius aliud laudat* or *aliī alia laudant* 'different people praise different things' or with other indefinite words e.g. *alius alibi* 'different people in different places'.
- 2 Note also *aliī . . . aliī* 'some . . . others' (sometimes *aliī . . . pars* or *pars . . . pars*).
- 3 Note *aliās* 'at another time', *alibi* 'in another place' and *aliēn-us a um* 'belonging to another' (and the English 'alias', 'alibi' and 'alien').

aliquis aliqua aliquid 'someone' and *aliquī aliqua aliquod* 'some'

	<i>aliquis</i> 'someone'			<i>aliquī</i> 'some' (adj.)		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	āli-quis	āli-qua	āli-quid	āli-quī(s)	āli-qua	āli-quod
acc.	āli-quem	āli-quam	āli-quid	āli-quem	āli-quam	āli-quod
gen.	← āli-cuius →			← āli-cuius →		
dat.	← āli-cui →			← āli-cui →		
abl.	āli-quō	āli-quā	āli-quō	āli-quō	āli-quā	āli-quō

Notes

- 1 Note other *ali-* indefinites: *aliquandō* 'at some time', *alicubī* 'somewhere', *aliquantō* 'to some extent', *aliquot* 'some', 'several'.
- 2 The pl. is the same as for *ali* + *quī* (see 29), except that the n. pl. is *aliqua*.
- 3 Note *aliquid* + gen. = 'some', e.g. *aliquid artificī* 'some (of) skill'. Cf. 31 *satis, nimis*.

Exercises

1 With which nouns do the adjectives go?

alius: hospitīs, comes, cōsulī, calamitātis, praetōrēs
aliī: Lampsacēnō, sermōnēs, Rōmānōs, conuīuī, iānuae
alia: calamitāte, conuīuia, cōsule, uirgō, cupiditātibus

aliā: iānua, conuīuiō, sermōnī, cōsul, calamitāte
 aliqua: sermō, iānuae, mulier, uerba, amīcōs
 aliquā: cōsule, fēmina, rē, conuīuia, seruā

2 Translate:

- alius aliud dīcit.
- aliī Lampsacēnī, aliī Agrigentīnī erant.
- aliī alibī in oppidum impetum faciunt.
- aliī ex agrīs, pars ex oppidō concurrerunt.
- dīcet aliquis aliquid.
- at quis appellat? magistrātus aliquī? nēmo. (Cicero)
- Catīlīna, dubitās . . . abīre in aliquās terrās? (Cicero)
- Verrēs cum aliquō comite domō exiit.

appellō 1 I call
 dubitō 1 I hesitate

103 ipse ipsa ipsum 'very', 'actual', 'self'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	ips-e	ips-a	ips-um	ips-ī	ips-ae	ips-a
acc.	ips-um	ips-am	ips-um	ips-ōs	ips-ās	ips-a
gen.	← ips-īus →			ips-ōrum	ips-ārum	ips-ōrum
dat.	← ips-ī →			← ips-īs →		
abl.	ips-ō	ips-ā	ips-ō	← ips-īs →		

Notes

- Gen./dat. s. are normal for pronouns, cf. *huius, illius, istius, eius, cuius* (also *nūllius, ūllius, ūnīus, tōtīus, sōlīus*) *illī, istī, eī, cui* (also *nūllī, ūllī, ūnī, tōtī, sōlī*). For nom. s. m. cf. *ille* and *iste*; other forms are like *mult-us a um*.
- ipse* is an emphatic and intensive adjective often used to resolve ambiguities as to subject or object, e.g.

retinēte uōs ipsōs 'restrain you/yourselves', 'restrain yourselves'
ipse hoc faciō 'It is actually I myself who am doing this'

Compare the phrase *ipsō factō* 'by the actual/very act'. *ipse* can be translated 'self', 'very', 'actual', e.g. *id ipsum mihi placet* 'that's the very thing I like'. It can stand on its own as a noun, e.g. *ipsī* 'the men themselves'.

Exercises

1 With which nouns do the parts of ipse agree?

ipsī: calamitātī, cōsulēs, conuīuiō, templī, nūntiī
 ipsa: grauitās, cupiditāte, signa, fāmā, simulācra
 ipsā: laetitia, sermōne, grauitāte, conuīuia, celeritās

2 Translate: ipsī uoluēre; signum ipsum; ipsae clāmārun; cōsiliō ipsō; ipsī hominī pepercērunt (two possibilities; after translating, read aloud, distinguishing by your phrasing which is which); ipsa laetitia; obsecrārunt ipsī orāruntque; nolī ipsam retinēre.

3 Translate these sentences:

- tranquillō animō esse potest nēmo. (Cicero)
- sapiēns uincit uirtūte fortunam. (Seneca)
- heu, Fortūna, quis est crudēlior in nōs tē deus? (Horace)
- is maximē diuitiis fruitur quī minimē diuitiis indiget. (Seneca)
- heu, quam difficile est crīmen nōn prōdere uultū. (Ovid)
- uilius argentum est aurō, uirtutibus aurum. (Horace)
- honestā mors turpī uītā potior. (Tacitus)
- ex Āfricā semper aliquid nouī. (Pliny)
- hominis tōta uīta nihil aliud quam ad mortem iter est. (Seneca)
- aliud aliī nātūra iter ostendit. (Sallust)

tranquill-us a um calm

sapiēns sapient-is wise

fortun-a ae 1f. fortune

(Fortūna = the goddess Fortune)

crudēl-is e cruel

diuiti-ae ārum 1f. pl. riches

quī (nom. s. m.) who

indigeō 2 (+ abl.) I want, need

heu alas!

crīmen crīmin-is 3n.

offence, crime

prōdō 3 I betray, reveal

uult-us ūs 4m. face,

expression

uīl-is e cheap

argent-um ī 2n. silver

honest-us a um honourable

potior preferable, better

Āfric-a ae 1f. Africa

nou-us a um new

iter itiner-is 3n. journey;

route

nātūr-a ae 1f. nature

Reading

Pick out the ablative phrases in Exercise 2 p. 216 above. Write your translation next to each. Then say what each phrase adds to the sentence (you may use the formal categories, but it is more important that you try to define their function in your own way first). E.g.

mōre Graecō bibērunt: 'they drank in the Greek way'
 mōre Graecō: this tells us the way they drank; ablative of manner.

Do not be surprised if occasionally you find it difficult to be precise or if a phrase may fit more than one category.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

in Hellēspontō oppidum esse scītis, iūdicēs, cēterīs oppidīs Asiae clārius et nōbilius, nōmine Lampsacum. Lampsacēnōs ipsōs affirmō hominēs esse quiētōs. illī mōre Graecō uītam dēgunt (= spend). mālunt enim ōtiō ūtī et pāce quam bellō et calamitātibus uītam dēgere. iste Lampsacum tempore quōdam peruēnit. ad Iānitōrem, uirum summae grauitātis, Lampsacēnī eum dēdūxērunt. iste autem mox sē ad Philodāmum quendam migrātūrum esse dīcēbat; Philodāmus enim domī habēbat filiam pulcherrimam. Verrem scītis, iūdicēs, fēminās pulchrās semper omnibus modīs et omnibus temporibus uehementer sequī. Iānitor sē Verrem offendisse aliquō modō opīnatus est atque istum summā retinēre uī coepit. Verrēs igitur Rubrium ad Philodāmum mīsīt, cōsiliō ūsus pessimō, quod Philodāmus uir erat magnae apud Lampsacēnōs exīstimātiōnis et praetōrēs cōsulēsque recipere solēbat, nōn amīcōs eōrum. sed Verrēs Philodāmum per uim Rubrium dēdūcere iussit. Philodāmus autem, quod inuītus uidērī nōluit, conuīuium parāuit, Rubrium comitēs inuītāre omnīs iussit. illī summā celeritātē uēnērunt; discubuēre; primō Graecō bibērunt mōre, mox pōculīs maiōribus. conuīuium sermōnibus celebrābant hōc tempore et laetitiā. mox autem Rubrius, 'Philodāme,' inquit, 'filiam uocā tuam'. sed ille, uir grauitātē summā, irāscēbātur. mulierēs in conuīuiō cum uirīs accumbere oportēre negāuit. clāmor factus est maximus per aedīs. Lampsacēnī ubi tumultum audīuēre, nocte celeritātē summā ad Philodāmī aedīs conueniēbant.

postrīdiē (= next day) autem ad Verris hospitium¹ profectī sunt. ferrō iānuam et saxīs caedere coepērunt, eōdem tempore ignī circumdare. Verrī autem Lampsacēnī pepercērunt, quod ciuēs quīdam Rōmānī eīs hoc melius fore dīxērunt quam praetōrem necāre Rōmānum.

¹ hospitī-um ī 2n. lodging.

English-Latin

1 Translate into Latin:

- Verres was more wicked than Rubrius.
- The people of Lampsacum used to enjoy peace and leisure.

- Philodamus was a man of great seriousness,¹ Verres a man of great lust.¹
- The cooks were getting the party ready amid conversation and merriment.
- Verres and his friends were drinking in the Greek way.
- The people of Lampsacum were beating the door with their fists and at the same time shouting at the top of their voices².

¹ Translate each phrase in two different ways.

² Use abl. s. of *summa uox*.

2 Reread the text of 4B(iii), then translate this passage into Latin: Philodamus was a man of great seriousness, but¹ nevertheless always much more hospitable than others. He invited Rubrius and his friends to a party. They all came very quickly. They were drinking amid conversations and merriment. But suddenly Rubrius ordered Philodamus to call his daughter. Philodamus said that he would not call her. Then there was a scene.

¹ Leave this out; just translate 'nevertheless'.

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building: revision

Suffixes

Abstract nouns are formed with the suffixes *-i-um* ī 2n. and *-i-ēs* -ēī 5f., e.g.

artifici-um ī 2n. trick

cōsili-um ī 2n. plan

conuīui-um ī 2n. feast

perniciēs *perniciē*-ī 5f. destruction

Word exercise

Give the meaning and Latin connections of: calamity, hospitable, clarity, turpitude, cupidity, use, vim, negligence, reception, gravity, sermon, convenient, intellect, oration, retention, bibulous, celerity, usufruct, concurrent.

Everyday Latin

(a) Some ablative usages

A.D. = *annō Dominī* 'in the year (abl. of time) of our Lord'
bonā fidē 'in good faith'
in tōtō 'in the whole', 'entirely'
s.p. (attached to an epitaph) = *suā pecūniā* '(buried) at his own expense'
mōre suō 'after his own manner' '(he did it) his way'
prīmā faciē 'at first sight', 'apparently'

(b) Uses of ipse

ipsō factō 'by the very fact itself'
ipsissima uerba 'the very words themselves' (note the superlative of *ipse*)
 An *ipse dixit* lit. 'he himself said it' i.e. an authoritarian assertion, dogmatic statement

(c) Uses of inter

inter alia 'among other things'
inter aliōs 'among other persons'
inter sē 'among/between themselves'
inter vivōs lit. 'between living people' i.e. 'from one living person to another'
inter nōs 'between ourselves'
inter pōcula lit. 'between cups', i.e. 'over a glass'

Real Latin

Horace¹

damnōsa quid nōn imminuit diēs?
aetās parentum, peior auīs, tulit
nōs nēquiōrēs, mox datūrōs
prōgeniem uitīōsiōrem. (Odes 3.6.45ff.)

¹ Quīntus Horātius Flaccus 65–8 B.C.

An illustration	1	auī	} past
	2	aetās parentum	
	3	nōs	} present
	4	prōgeniēs	
			} future

damnōs-us a um
 detrimental, causing
 loss [Hold until solved,
 by *diēs*]
immineō 2 I diminish

aetās aetāt-is 3f. age
parēs parent-is parent 3m.
 or f.
au-us ī 2m. grandfather

nēquiōr nēquiōr-is worse
prōgeniēs progeniē-ī 5f.
 offspring
uitiōs-us a um corrupt

Real Latin howlers

Not everyone could handle Latin as Cicero did. It is comforting to know that ordinary Romans and later ordinary clerics made all sorts of mistakes in speech and in writing. Here are a few examples.

In Petronius' *Satyricon* (1st century A.D.) an ex-slave uses the forms *loquis* (active for *loqueris* deponent) and *uīnus* (m. for *uīnum* n.).

Suetonius (first century A.D.) reports that the emperor Augustus dismissed a scribe for spelling *ipsī* as *ixī*.

Graffiti written on the walls of Pompeii buried by the eruption of Vesuvius (24 August 79 A.D.) are full of spelling errors, e.g.

Felix ad ursōs pugnābet (= *pugnābit*) 'Felix will fight against bears'
futuī fōrmōsa fōrmā puella (= *fōrmōsam . . . puellam*) 'I laid a beautiful girl'
Paris isse (= *ipse*) 'Paris himself'

The Appendix Probi (third or fourth century A.D.) lists correct pronunciations and spellings alongside common incorrect versions, e.g.

frīgida nōn fricda
aqua nōn acqua (cf. Italian: *acqua*)
auris (= 'ear') *nōn oricla* (cf. Italian: *orecchio*)

Later things got even worse. This inscription on a gravestone in Pannonia (3rd century A.D.?) shows not just spelling errors, but the accusative being used as the subject!

hīc quēscunt duās mātērēs (= *hīc quīēscunt duae mātērēs*) 'here lie two mothers'

Boniface (c. 700 A.D.) heard a priest carrying out a baptism:

in nōmine patriā et filiā et spīritūs sāctī (= in nōmine patris et filiī et spīritūs sāctī)

One MS. of Petronius' *Satyricon*, written in the mediaeval period, writes *abbās sēcrēuit* 'the abbot hid' instead of *ab asse crēuit* 'he grew from nothing' (lit. 'from a penny').

A fuller account of the development of Latin from the first century A.D. to the twelfth appears in *Reading Medieval Latin*.¹

The Roman general Crassus left for Parthia in 55 never to return. He died at Carrhae in 53. After the event, Cicero said he should have listened to the fig-seller on the quayside as he boarded ship. He was crying *cauneās* ('figs'). But what he was really saying, said Cicero, was *cauē nē eās* 'beware lest you go!' This joke has been used as evidence for the pronunciation of Latin.

¹ Keith Sidwell, Cambridge 1995. For a brief survey, see Appendix p. 548.

Section 4C

Running vocabulary for 4C(i)

<i>absum abesse</i> I am away from, I am absent	<i>dēdūxerat</i> 'he had brought (down)' (plupf. of <i>dēdūcō</i>)	<i>Lilybaeō</i> (abl.) from Lilybaeum
<i>argent-um</i> ī 2n. silver; silver-plate	<i>Diodōr-us</i> ī 2m. Diodorus	<i>Lilybaeum</i> (acc.) to Lilybaeum
<i>artifici-um</i> ī 2n. skill	<i>fēcerant</i> '(they) had made' (plupf. of <i>faciō</i>)	<i>Lilybitān-us</i> ī 2m. person from Lilybaeum
<i>ausus erat</i> 'he had dared' (plupf. of <i>audeō</i>)	<i>fēcerat</i> '(he) had made' (plupf. of <i>faciō</i>)	<i>Melitae</i> (locative) in Malta
<i>cognōuerant</i> '(they) had become acquainted with', '(they) knew' (plupf. of <i>cognōscō</i>)	<i>genus gener-is</i> 3n. family, stock	<i>Melitam</i> (acc.) to Malta
<i>collēgerat</i> 'he had collected' (plupf. of <i>colligō</i> 3 <i>collēgī</i>)	<i>grātiōs-us a um</i> popular	<i>Melitēnsis Melitēns-is</i> 3m. person from Malta, Maltese
<i>constituerat</i> '(he) had decided' (plupf. of <i>constituō</i> 3 <i>constituī</i>)	<i>habitābat</i> : tr. 'had been living'	<i>mentiō mentiōn-is</i> 3f. mention
	<i>inflammāt-us a um</i> inflamed, on fire	<i>mentiōnem facere</i> to make mention (of x: gen.)
	<i>Lilybaeī</i> (locative) at Lilybaeum	<i>Mentōr Mentōr-is</i> 3m. Mentor

<i>nāt-us a um</i> (+abl.) born of, from	<i>quam</i> (acc. s. f.) which	<i>quōs</i> (acc. pl. m.) whom
<i>pauc-ī ae</i> a few	<i>quās</i> (acc. pl. f.) which; (and) this (sc. letter)	<i>seruō</i> 1 I keep safe, preserve
<i>paulisper</i> for a while	<i>quem</i> (acc. s. m.) whom	<i>splendid-us a um</i> fine, excellent
<i>perlegō</i> 3 <i>perlēgī</i> I read through, peruse	<i>quī</i> (nom. s. m.) who	<i>Verre praetōre</i> 'with Verres (as) praetor' (abl.)
<i>pōcul-um</i> ī 2n. cup	<i>quibus</i> (abl. pl. f.) which; (and) this	
<i>potius quam</i> rather than	<i>quod</i> (acc. s. n.) which; (and) this	
<i>propinqu-us</i> ī 2m. relative	<i>quōrum</i> (gen. pl. n.) of which	
<i>quae</i> (acc. pl. n.) which; (and) these		

Learning vocabulary for 4C(i)

Nouns

<i>argent-um</i> ī 2n. silver; silver-plate; money	<i>genus gener-is</i> 3n. family, stock; tribe	<i>pōcul-um</i> ī 2n. cup
--	--	---------------------------

Adjectives

<i>inflammāt-us a um</i> inflamed, on fire	<i>nāt-us a um</i> (+abl.) born of, from
--	--

Verbs

<i>absum abesse</i> āfuī āfutūrus I am away from, I am absent	<i>cōstitutus</i> I decide	<i>seruō</i> 1 I keep safe, preserve
<i>cōstituō</i> 3 <i>cōstituī</i>	<i>perlegō</i> 3 <i>perlēgī</i> <i>perlēctus</i> I read through, peruse	

Others

potius quam rather than

Running vocabulary for 4C(ii)

<i>absēns</i> absent-is absent, away	<i>cognōuerat</i> 'he had got to know' 'he knew' (plupf. of <i>cognōscō</i>)	had moved camp' (metaphor used ironically)
<i>careō</i> 2 (+abl.) I do without, lack, stay away from	<i>collēgerat</i> 'he had collected' (plupf. of <i>colligō</i> 3 <i>collēgī</i>)	<i>concupīuerat</i> '(he) had desired' (plupf. of <i>concupīscō</i> 3)
<i>caueō</i> 2 I am wary, am on guard, take care	<i>commōuerat</i> '(he) had moved' (plupf. of <i>commoueō</i> 2 <i>commōuī</i>)	<i>condemnō</i> 1 I find guilty, condemn
<i>circum</i> (+acc.) around	<i>circumeō</i> <i>circumīre</i> I go round	<i>conquīrō</i> 3 I look for, search out

cōseruō 1 I save, keep safe
crīmen crīmin-is 3n. charge, accusation
dīcam 'should I say'
Diodōr-us ī 2m. Diodorus
excōgitō 1 I think up, devise
fict-us a um trumped-up
furor furōr-is 3m. passion, anger, rage
gerere: sē gerere lit. 'to conduct himself', i.e. 'to behave'
hōc ūnō crīmine 'as a result of this single accusation' (abl.)
īnsāni-a ae 1f. madness, lunacy
īnsāniō 4 I am mad
īnuidiōs-us a um unpopular
lacrimor 1 dep. I burst into tears, cry
mediocr-is e moderate, ordinary

metū 'from fear' (abl.)
mod-us ī 2m. way, fashion, manner
palam openly, publicly
patrōn-us ī 2m. patron (see Text p. 87)
pereō perīre perī peritum 1 perish, am done for
perspicu-us a um clear, obvious
postrēmō finally
potuerat 'he had been able' (plupf. of *possum*)
prīm-us a um first
prōuinci-a ae 1f. province
pudōre 'from shame' (abl.)
quae (acc. pl. n.) which; (and) these (sc. things)
quās (acc. pl. f.) which; (and) this (sc. letter)
quem (acc. s. m.) whom
quī (nom. s. m.) who
quōs (acc. pl. m.) whom
ratio ratiōn-is 3f. plan, reason

reprimō 3 *repressī* 1 restrain, keep a grip on
reuocō 1 I call back
Rōmae (locative) at Rome
sordidāt-us a um poorly dressed (a sign of mourning or of being on a charge)
stultē stupidly
timōre 'from apprehension' (abl.)
tōtā prōuinciā 'over the whole province' (abl.)
tōtā Rōmā 'all over Rome' (abl.)
tōtā Siciliā 'all over Sicily' (abl.)
trienni-um -ī 2n. a period of three years
uehemēns uehement-is strongly worded
Verre praetōre 'with Verres (as) praetor' (abl.)

Learning vocabulary for 4C(ii)

Nouns

mod-us ī 2m. way, fashion, manner
prōuinci-a ae 1f. province

ratio ratiōn-is 3f. plan, method; reason; count, list; calculation

Rōm-a ae 1f. Rome
Sicili-a ae 1f. Sicily

Adjectives

absēns absent-is absent, away

prīm-us a um first

Verbs

circumeō circumīre circumī
circumītum I go around
colligō 3 *collēgī collēctus* I collect, gather; gain, acquire

commoueō 2 *commōuī*
commōtus I move; remove; excite, disturb
excōgitō 1 I think up, devise

reuocō 1 I call back

Others

circum (+ acc.) around

postrēmō finally

stultē stupidly

Grammar and exercises for 4C

104 Pluperfect indicative active 'I had —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I had loved'	'I had had'	'I had said'
1st s.	amāu- <i>era</i> -m (or amāram etc.)	habu- <i>era</i> -m	dix- <i>era</i> -m
2nd s.	amāu- <i>erā</i> -s	habu- <i>erā</i> -s	dix- <i>erā</i> -s
3rd s.	amāu- <i>era</i> -t	habu- <i>era</i> -t	dix- <i>era</i> -t
1st pl.	amāu- <i>erā</i> -mus	habu- <i>erā</i> -mus	dix- <i>erā</i> -mus
2nd pl.	amāu- <i>erā</i> -tis	habu- <i>erā</i> -tis	dix- <i>erā</i> -tis
3rd pl.	amāu- <i>era</i> -nt	habu- <i>era</i> -nt	dix- <i>era</i> -nt
	4	3/4	
	'I had heard'	'I had captured'	
1st s.	audiu- <i>era</i> -m (or audieram etc.)	cēp- <i>era</i> -m	
2nd s.	audiu- <i>erā</i> -s	cēp- <i>erā</i> -s	
3rd s.	audiu- <i>era</i> -t	cēp- <i>era</i> -t	
1st pl.	audiu- <i>erā</i> -mus	cēp- <i>erā</i> -mus	
2nd pl.	audiu- <i>erā</i> -tis	cēp- <i>erā</i> -tis	
3rd pl.	audiu- <i>era</i> -nt	cēp- <i>era</i> -nt	

Notes

1 The pluperfect (*plūs quam perfectum* 'more than finished') means 'had —ed', and pushes the merely 'finished' (*perfectum*) perfect even further back into the past. In other words, the action of the pluperfect occurs before that of the perfect.

2 It is formed by taking the stem of the 3rd p. p. and adding:

-eram
 -erās
 -erat
 -erāmus
 -erātis
 -erant

Note that the normal active personal endings are used (-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt).

3 As we have observed elsewhere (65), the *ue* and *u* can be dropped, giving e.g. *amā-ram amā-rās* etc. and *audi-eram audi-erās* etc.

- 4 Whereas in Latin *ubi* 'when' and *postquam* 'after' are generally followed by the perfect tense, English usually translates with the pluperfect, e.g.

ubi Verrēs haec fēcit, domum rediit 'when Verres had done this, he went home'.

105 Pluperfect indicative deponent 'I had —ed'

1	2	3
'I had threatened'	'I had promised'	'I had spoken'
1st s. mināt-us a um eram	pollicit-us a um eram	locūt-us a um eram
2nd s. mināt-us a um erās	pollicit-us a um erās	locūt-us a um erās
3rd s. mināt-us a um erat	pollicit-us a um erat	locūt-us a um erat
1st pl. mināt-ī ae a erāmus	pollicit-ī ae a erāmus	locūt-ī ae a erāmus
2nd pl. mināt-ī ae a erātis	pollicit-ī ae a erātis	locūt-ī ae a erātis
3rd pl. mināt-ī ae a erant	pollicit-ī ae a erant	locūt-ī ae a erant

4	3/4
'I had lied'	'I had advanced'
1st s. mentīt-us a um eram	prōgrēss-us a um eram
2nd s. mentīt-us a um erās	prōgrēss-us a um erās
3rd s. mentīt-us a um erat	prōgrēss-us a um erat
1st pl. mentīt-ī ae a erāmus	prōgrēss-ī ae a erāmus
2nd pl. mentīt-ī ae a erātis	prōgrēss-ī ae a erātis
3rd pl. mentīt-ī ae a erant	prōgrēss-ī ae a erant

NB. The deponent pluperfect is formed by taking the perfect participle in *-us -a -um* as appropriate, and adding the imperfect of *sum, eram erās* etc. The perfect participle acts as an adjective and will agree with the subject of the verb (see on perfect deponents 75).

Exercises

- Form and conjugate the pluperfect indicative of these verbs (give the meaning of 1st s. pluperfect): *cōnor, excōgitō, uideor, moneō, ūtor, faciō, absum, colligō, commoueō*, (optional: *cōstituō, reuocō, nōlō, ferō, fruor, cupiō, recipiō, proficīscor, coepī*).
- Translate each verb, then change *s.* to *pl.* and vice versa: *ōrāuerātis, cōspicātus erās, commōuerat, hortātae erant, peperceram, recordāta*

- erat, recēperāmus, amplexus eram, ceciderās, oblītī erāmus, neglēxerant, prōgressī erātis, (optional: *āfuerant, cōnātus eram, circumierās, suspicāta erat, reuocāuerātis, passi erant, excōgitāuerat, ausa erās, cōstituerāmus, precātae erātis, cognōueram, uīsī erāmus*).
- Give the Latin for: I had decided; you (*s. m.*) had suffered; they had called back; they had remembered; he had become acquainted with; she had obtained; we had devised; you (*pl. m.*) had embraced; we had collected; you (*s.*) had disturbed (optional: he had cut; you (*s. m.*) had spoken; we had besought; they (*f.*) had set out; you (*pl.*) had run together; she had gone out; they had understood; we had forgotten).
 - Give 3rd s. and pl. of the following verbs in present, future, imperfect, perfect and pluperfect indicative: *reuocō, teneō, arbitror, uideor, neglegō, sentiō, ūtor, patior, fiō, nōlō, sum, colligō, cōstituō*, (optional: *circumeō, commoueō, cognōscō, adgredior, faciō, precor, mentior, fruor, cupiō, absum, polliceor*).
 - Locate and translate the pluperfects in this list, stating the tense of each of the other verbs: *excōgitābam, reuocāuerat, passus est, collēgerās, circumibit, commouet, perlēgerant, cognōscet, cōnātus erās, āfuerunt, fuerātis, recēpit, ēgressī erant, ingressa est, pōnit, ūtētur, ceciderāmus*, (optional: *obsecrāuerunt, ōrāuerās, suspicātus sum, amplectar, hortātus erat, dēducēbātis, cupiueram, precābimur, pollicita es, oblītus eram, fruēmur, secūtī erant, audēbis, audiēbam, ausus erās*).

106 The relative pronoun *quī quae quod* 'who', 'which'

	<i>s.</i>			<i>pl.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>gen.</i>	← cūius →			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>dat.</i>	← cui →			← quībus (quīs) →		
<i>abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	← quībus (quīs) →		

Notes

- The forms of *quī* relative are identical with those of the interrogative adjective *quī* 'who?', 'what?' (29).
Punctuation will normally tell you whether you are dealing with a form of the interrogative.

2 The function of a relative is *adjectival*: it is to identify or describe a noun. It does this by means of a complete subordinate clause, i.e. a clause with a finite verb of its own, e.g.

- (a) 'I see the cat which is sitting on the mat': 'which . . . mat' is the relative clause, describing 'cat'.
 (b) 'the barge (which) she sat in, like a burnished throne, burned in the water': relative clause '(which) she sat in' describing barge. Note how English can omit the relative. Latin *never* does.
 (c) ' . . . the oars were silver,
 Which to the tune of flutes kept stroke, and made
 The water which they beat to follow faster'
 'which . . . stroke': relative clause describing 'oars'; 'which . . . beat': relative clause describing 'water'.

(Anthony and Cleopatra II.ii, describing Cleopatra's barge)

- 3 'Antecedent' (*antecēdō* 'I go before') is the technical term for the word which the relative refers back to, e.g. 'I dropped the books which I was carrying' ('books' = antecedent); 'the cups which belonged to Diodorus went to Verres' ('cups' = antecedent).
 4 The relative takes its gender (m. f. or n.) and its number (s. or pl.) from the antecedent. When you come across a relative in Latin, you must check that it is the same *gender* and *number* as the word you think is its antecedent. The *case* of the antecedent is irrelevant.
 5 The relative takes its case *not* from the antecedent, but from its function inside the relative clause. Consider the following sentences:

- (a) 'Verres hated Diodorus, who wanted to keep his own property' 'who' is m. and s., because the antecedent is Diodorus. But while Diodorus is object of 'hated' (in Latin *Diodōrum*), 'who' is subject of 'wanted' (since Diodorus, the person meant by 'who', 'wanted to keep his own property'). The relative form will therefore be m., s. and nom., i.e. *quī*.

Verrēs ōderat Diodōrum, quī sua seruāre uolēbat.

- (b) 'Diodorus, whom Verres hated, was afraid' 'whom' will be m. and s., since it refers back to Diodorus, but will be accusative in case, since it is the object of 'Verres hated' ('Verres hated Diodorus', the person represented by 'whom').
Diodōrus, quem Verrēs ōderat, timēbat.

- (c) Now determine the case of the relative for the examples in n. 3 above.

107 The connecting relative

A relative at the start of the sentence, referring *back* to something or somebody in the *previous* sentence, is best translated by English 'this', 'he', 'she', 'it'; e.g.

hominēs audīuī. quōs ubi audīuī, . . . 'I heard the men. Which (men) when I heard, . . . ' i.e. 'when I heard these men / them'.

Note in particular the *order of words*. The relative comes first, to emphasise that it is picking something up from the previous sentence, even though it may belong to an *ubi* 'when' or *postquam* 'after' clause. Cf.

ad amīcum litterās mīsīt. quās ubi ille perlēgit, . . . 'he sent a letter to a friend. When that man had read it . . . ' (Latin word-order 'which when that man had read . . .').

Exercises

1 Translate these sentences and locate the antecedent of *quī* in each:

- (a) Diodōrus parua pōcula, quae Mentōr fēcerat, habēbat.
 (b) litterae, quās scrīpserat, mox in Siciliam peruēnērunt.
 (c) uirōs, quī sē Rōmae esse affirmāuerant, reuocābat.
 (d) rēs scelestā est quam excōgitāuistī.
 (e) Diodōrus, quem Verrēs pōcula quaedam pulcherrima habēre sciēbat, abierat.
 (f) Diodōrus genere nōbilī nātus erat, quod clārum numquam factum erat.

2 In these sentences, the antecedent is underlined, but the correct part of *quī* is omitted and replaced by the English. Insert the correct part of *quī* and translate the sentences:

- (a) uir erat (whom) omnēs fēminae amābant.
 (b) fēmina erat (to whom) omnis uir placēbat.
 (c) uirgō, (whom) Verres amāre uoluerat, nōbilis erat.
 (d) multī hominēs, (who) Verris comitēs factī erant, filiī nōbilium erant.

- (e) pōcula parua, (which) Verris comitēs cōspicātī erant, Mentōr fēcerat.
 (f) multī hominēs, (whose) cupiditātem cīuēs bonī maximam esse arbitrātī erant, ad Verrem ībant.
 (g) Verris comitēs simulācrum, (which) ille cupīre ausus erat, ē templō sustulērunt.
 (h) comitēs, (whom) Verrēs Lilybaeum sēcum dēdūxerat, Diodōrī pōcula cōspicātī erant.

3 Say which noun is the antecedent of the given relative:

quae: poculīs, annum, praetōrēs, templum
 quem: fēminam, mulieris, uirōs, seruus
 cuius: litterās, hominum, genus, prōuinciās
 quī: filiō, ratiōne, cupiditātī, lēgēs
 quibus: senātū, fāna, uirtūtis, amīcum

4 Translate these ubi clauses (see 104⁴), which all begin with a connecting relative (107). E.g. quem ubi uīdit . . . 'and when he had seen him . . .'

- (a) quod ubi audīuit . . .
 (b) quae ubi nārrāuit . . .
 (c) quās ubi reuocāuerunt . . .
 (d) quōs ubi cōspicātī sunt . . .
 (e) cui ubi minātus est . . .

108 More uses of the ablative

1 Under 'true' ablative: 'ablative of origin, or source' ('from'):

nātus genere nōbilī 'born from a good family'

2 Under 'instrumental-accompanying' ablative: 'ablative of cause', showing why an action was carried out ('out of', 'because of', 'from'):

timōre hoc fēcīt 'he did this from fear' (i.e. because of his fear).
Verrēs hominem argentī cupiditāte accūsāuit 'Verres accused the man out of desire for silver'.

109 The ablative absolute

If you come across a noun in the ablative in agreement with another noun or adjective (especially a participle) in the ablative, regard it as an ablative

of 'attendant circumstances' and translate 'with' or 'in the circumstances of', e.g.

Verre praetōre 'with Verres (as) praetor', 'in the circumstances of Verres (as) praetor'
tē praetōre 'with you (as) praetor', 'in the circumstances of you (as) praetor'
mē amīcō 'with me (as) friend', 'in the circumstances of me (as) friend'

You can then retranslate to make a better English phrase or clause which points up the circumstances more clearly, e.g.

Metellō et Afrāniō cōsulibus 'with Metellus and Afranius as consuls' → 'in the consulship of Metellus and Afranius', 'when Metellus and Afranius were consuls'.

(This expression is used to date events: the year indicated here is 60, where Horace dated the origin of the civil wars.)

110 The locative

Names of towns and one-town islands (e.g. *Melita* = 'the town of Malta') do not use a preposition to express 'in(to)', 'towards', 'at' and 'from'. In this way they follow the example of *domus*, which you have already met, for which *domum* = to home, *domī* = at home, *domō* = from home.

Such words use the *accusative* to express 'to', e.g. *Rōmam* 'to Rome'; *Carthāginem* 'to Carthage'.

They use the *ablative* to express 'from', e.g. *Rōmā* 'from Rome'; *Carthāginē* 'from Carthage'.

They use the *locative* to express 'at'. Here are the locative endings:

1st decl. s. -ae	} = gen. s.	pl. -īs	} = abl. pl.
2nd decl. s. -ī		pl. -īs	
3rd decl. s. -ī		pl. -ibus	

Some examples:

'at Rome' *Rōmae*
 'at/from Athens' (pl.) *Athēnīs*
 'at Carthage' *Carthāginī*

Note

- 1 With certain sorts of word (denoting place or district) the ablative *without* a preposition is used to express 'at' or 'in', e.g. *eō locō* 'in that place'. Note the common phrase *terrā marique* 'on land and sea'.
- 2 'To/from the vicinity of' a town is expressed by *ad/ab*, e.g. *ad Rōmam* 'to the vicinity of Rome'; *ā Rōmā* 'from the vicinity of Rome'.
- 3 There are a very few locatives of common nouns (cf. *domī*). Note *rūrī* (from *rūs* 3n.) 'in the country'; *humī* (*humus* 2f.) 'on the ground'; *bellī* (*bellum* 2n.) 'in war'; *militiae* (*militia* 1f.) 'in war', 'on military service'; *animī* (*animus* 2m.) 'in the mind'.

Exercises

1 Translate these phrases and sentences:

- (a) uirgō fāmae optimae.
- (b) Cicerōne et Antōniō cōsulibus (*the year 63*).
- (c) mē duce.
- (d) uirginēs nātae genere nōbilī.
- (e) audāciā et cupiditāte aurum sustulit.
- (f) Rōmā.
- (g) domī.
- (h) Lilybaeō.
- (i) tōtā prōuinciā.
- (j) praetōribus absentibus.

2 Give the Latin for: (NB. the previous exercise will help)

- (a) A man of great courage (2 ways).
- (b) In Verres' praetorship.
- (c) Under your (s.) leadership.
- (d) A boy born of a noble family.
- (e) He acted thus from lust.
- (f) At Rome.
- (g) From home.
- (h) To Lilybaeum.
- (i) In the whole of Sicily.
- (j) In the absence of the rest.

3 Translate these sentences:

- (a) quī multum habet, plūs cupit. (*Seneca*)
- (b) nōn quī parum habet, sed quī plūs cupit pauper est. (*Seneca*)
- (c) dīmidium factī quī coepit habet. (*Horace*)
- (d) nihil ēripit fortūna nisi quod dedit. (*Seneca*)
- (e) quae fuit dūrum patī, meminisse dulce est. (*Seneca*)
- (f) nūper erat medicus, nunc est uespillo Diaulus.
quod uespillo facit, fēcerat et medicus. (*Martial*)

quī = he who

parum too little

dīmidi-um ī 2n. half

fact-um ī 2n. deed

ēripio 3/4 I snatch away

fortūn-a ae 1f. fortune

quod and quae = what

dūr-us a um hard

meminī (perf.)

I remember

dulc-is e sweet, pleasant

nūper recently

medic-us ī 2m. doctor

Diaul-us ī 2m. Diaulus

uespillo uespillōn-is 3m.

undertaker

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Diodōrum Melitēnsem, quī multō ante Melitā ēgressus erat et illō tempore Lilybaeī habitābat, iste cupiditāte suā ā prōuinciā reppulit. ille apud Lilybitānōs, quī eum summā uirtūte uirum esse cognōuerant, uir multī honōris fuerat. sed Verre praetōre, domō caruit prope triennium propter pōcula quaedam pulchra, quae habēbat. istī enim comitēs, quōs sēcum, ubi ad prōuinciam peruēnit, dūxerat, Diodōrum haec pōcula habēre nūntiāuerant; quod ubi cognōuit, cupiditāte inflammātus iste ad sē Diodōrum uocāuerat et pōcula poposcerat. Diodōrus autem, quī pōcula āmittere nōlēbat, ea Melitae esse apud propinquum quendam affirmāuerat. sed ubi Verrēs ad propinquum illum litterās, in quibus pōcula rogābat, scrīpsit, ille ea paucīs illīs diēbus Lilybaeum mīsisse dīxerat. intereā Diodōrus Lilybaeō abierat.

English-Latin

1 Translate into Latin:

- (a) Diodorus, who possessed many beautiful cups, had gone away from Lilybaeum to Rome.
- (b) In Verres' praetorship, in the whole province men were able to devise wicked crimes.
- (c) Verres, who was born of a noble family, always acted from lust, rather than from courage.

- (d) The friends, whom Verres had brought with him to the province, were scoundrels.

2 Reread the text of 4C(ii), then translate this passage into Latin:

When Verres heard this¹, from madness he decided to accuse Diodorus in his absence². In the whole province the matter was well known. The story was that Verres through greed for silver had accused an innocent man in his absence². Diodorus, who was at this time in Rome, told his patrons everything which he had heard. When Verres' father learned this¹, he sent a letter to him. In this¹ letter³ he said that everyone throughout the city knew that Verres was a scoundrel. When Verres had read this¹, he held back his lust, from fear, rather than from shame.

¹ Use a part of *quī* at the beginning of the sentence.

² Use *absēns*, *absentis* agreeing with 'Diodorus', 'man'.

³ Place *in* after part of *quī* and before 'letter'.

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

Suffixes

-ēnsis frequently makes an adjective out of a place-name, e.g. *Melita* (Malta) → *Melitēnsis*; *Londinium* → *Londiniēnsis*; *Cantabrigia* (Cambridge) → *Cantabrigiēnsis* etc.

-ānus can also serve this function, e.g. *Rōma* → *Rōmānus* 'Roman', but has a wider range too, e.g. *mōns mont-is* 'mountain' → *montānus* 'from the mountains'.

Revision

-i-a ae 1f. forms an abstract noun, e.g. *īnsānus* 'mad' → *īnsānia* 'madness'; *miser* 'wretched' → *miseria* 'wretchedness'.

-or (or -ōs) -ōr-is 3m. forms abstract nouns of condition, e.g. *furor* 'madness', *amor* 'love', *timor* 'fear', *honor* (or *honōs*) 'respect', etc.

Word exercises

Give the meaning and Latin connections of: generation, literal (note change of spelling in mediaeval Latin from *litterae* to *literae*), ante-natal, mode,

rational, primary, constitution, revoke, circuit, circumlocution, conservation, commotion, collection.

Everyday Latin

(a) Relative usages

quī facit per alium facit per sē 'he who acts through another is himself responsible' (lit. 'acts through himself')

quī tacet cōsentit 'he who keeps silence consents'

q.v. = *quod vidē* 'which see', 'see this'

q.e.d. = *quod erat dēmōstrandum* 'which was to-be-proved' (and now has been)

quod ubique, quod semper, quod ab omnibus 'that which everywhere, that which always, that which by all (sc. has been believed)' – definition of orthodoxy by St Vincent of Lérins

sine quā nōn 'without which not', i.e. an absolute essential status *quō* (*ante*) 'the position in which (things were before)'

(b) Ablative absolute usages

cēterīs paribus '(with) other things (being) equal'

vīvā vōce 'with living voice'

mē iūdice 'with me being judge', 'in my opinion'

(c) Others

etc. = *et cētera* 'and the rest'

The Classical degree at Oxford is called *lit. hum.* = *literae hūmāniōrēs* 'humane letters' (lit. 'more human literature' as opposed to theology, originally)

Mottoes

In all of these, the relative comes first, and means 'he who, she who, the thing(s) which' etc. Here are some examples, with translation.

quae habet, manus tenēbit ('What things (or the things which) it has, my hand will hold': Templeman)

quod sors fert, ferimus ('What/that which fate brings, we bear': Clayton)

quī patitur, vincit ('(He) who endures, wins': Kinnaird)

Note the verb 'to be' is often omitted, e.g. quae rēcta, sequor ('The things which (are) right, I follow': Campbell)

quae moderāta, firma (Ogilvie)
 quae sērāta, sēcūra (Douglas)
 quae sursum, volō (Macqueen, Quin)
 quae vult, valdē vult (Wilmot)
 quī invidet, minor est (Cadogan, Leigh, Pugh)
 quī mē tangit, poenitēbit (Gillespie, Macpherson)
 quī plānē, sālē vādīt (Taylor)
 quī stat, caveat (Domville)
 quod Deus vult, fiet (Dimsdale)
 quod Deus vult, volō (Mountford)
 quod dīxī, dīxī (Dixie, Dixon)
 quod faciō, valdē faciō (Holmes)
 quod honestum, ūtile (Lawson)
 quod iūstum, nōn quod ūtile (Philips)
 quod potuī, perfēcī (Dundas, Turner)
 quod tibi vīs fierī, fac alterī (Ram)
 quod tuum, tenē (Cheetham)
 quod vērū, tūtū (Courtenay, Sim)
 quod volō, erit (Wright)

moderāt-us a um moderate	inuideō 2 I am envious	caueat 'let him beware'
firm-us a um permanent	tangō 3 I touch	honest-us a um honourable
sērāt-us a um locked	poenitet 2 he regrets (it)	ūtil-is e profitable
sēcūr-us a um safe	plānē plainly	iūst-us a um just
sursum above, in Heaven	sālē safely	tūt-us a um safe
ualdē strongly	uādō 3 I go	

Real Latin

ō fortūnātam nātam mē cōnsule Rōmam. (Cicero)
 fortūnāt-us a um lucky

nīl dēspērāndum Teucrō duce et auspice Teucrō. (Horace, Odes I.7.27)

dēspērāndum 'should be despaired of'	Teucer Teucr-ī 2m. Teucer (brother of Ajax; he is comforting his men as they face another leg of their journey into exile from Salamis)
auspex ausp-is 3m. augur, interpreter of omens	

quī uitia ōdit, et hominēs ōdit. (Pliny)

uiti-um ī 2n. vice ōd-ī (perf.) I hate

nūllum quod tetigit nōn ōrnāvit (Dr Johnson's epitaph on Goldsmith)

tangō 3 tetigī I touch ōrnō 1 I enhance

Unreal Latin

Revise all the cases with the following horrendous 'poem' about the Motor Bus by A. D. Godley. Note that he envisages *Mōtor* as a 3rd. decl. m. noun, *Bus* as 2m.; and observe what the poem tells you about one school of Latin pronunciation in the early 20th c. Would your pronunciation give these rhymes?

Motor Bus

What is this that roareth thus?
 Can it be a Mōtor Bus?
 Yes, the smell and hideous hum
 Indicat Mōtōrem Bum!
 Implet¹ in the Corn and High² 5
 Terror mē Mōtōris Bī:
 Bō Mōtōrī clāmitābō
 Nē Mōtōre caedar³ ā Bō –
 Dative be or Ablative
 So thou only let us live: 10
 Whither shall thy victims flee?
 Spare us, spare us, Mōtor Be!
 Thus I sang; and still anigh
 Came in hordes Mōtōrēs Bī,
 Et complēbat⁴ omne forum 15
 Cōpia Mōtōrum Bōrum.
 How shall wretches live like us
 Cīncti⁵ Bīs Mōtōribus?
 Domine, dēfende nōs
 Contrā⁶ hōs Mōtōrēs Bōs! 20

¹ implet 'there fills'.

² two streets in Oxford (Cornmarket and High Street).

³ 'so that I may not be killed by . . .'

⁴ complēbat 'there filled'.

⁵ cīncti 'surrounded'.

⁶ contrā (+ acc.) against.

Section 4D

Running vocabulary for 4D(i)

<i>ā/ab</i> (+ abl.) by (after passive verbs)	<i>distribūtī sunt</i> '(they) were divided up among' (+ dat.) (perf. passive of <i>distribuō</i> 3 <i>distribūī distribūtus</i>)	<i>nūntiātum est</i> 'it was announced' (perf. passive of <i>nūntiō</i>)
<i>abducō</i> 2 <i>abduxī</i> <i>abductus</i> 1 appropriate, withdraw, remove	<i>ēbri-us a um</i> drunk	<i>P. = Pūbliō</i> (<i>Pūbli-us ī</i> 2m.) Publius
<i>abducta est</i> '(it) was appropriated' (perf. passive of <i>abducō</i>)	<i>ērigō</i> 3 <i>ērēxī</i> 1 draw up, lift up	<i>percussī sunt</i> '(they) were struck' (perf. passive of <i>percutiō</i> 3/4 <i>percussī percussus</i>)
<i>abductī (sunt)</i> '(they) were removed' (perf. passive of <i>abducō</i>)	<i>exhibērī</i> 'to be put on display' (pres. infin. passive of <i>exhibeō</i> 2)	<i>pīrāt-a ae</i> 1m. pirate
<i>act-a ae</i> 1f. shore	<i>expectātur</i> lit. '(it) is awaited' (pres. passive of <i>expectō</i> 1) [Translate as past tense]	<i>port-us ūs</i> 4m. harbour
<i>appellitur</i> lit. '(it) is brought to shore' (pres. passive of <i>appellō</i> 3) [Translate as past tense]	<i>fōrmōs-us a um</i> handsome	<i>praedō praedōn-is</i> 3m. pirate
<i>archipīrāt-a ae</i> 1m. pirate chief	<i>habītī sunt</i> '(they) were held, regarded' (perf. passive of <i>habeō</i>)	<i>praefect-us ī</i> 2m. captain, prefect
<i>artifex artific-is</i> 3m. craftsman	<i>iaceō</i> 2 I lie	<i>secūris secūr-is</i> 3f. axe (abl. <i>s. secūrī</i>)
<i>Caesēti-us ī</i> 2m. Caesetius	<i>inuēta est</i> '(it) was found' (perf. passive of <i>inueniō</i>)	<i>sēmplēn-us a um</i> half-full; undermanned
<i>capta est</i> '(it) was captured' (perf. passive of <i>capio</i>)	<i>liberātum esse</i> 'to have been freed' '(that) (he) had been freed' (perf. passive infin. of <i>liberō</i> 1)	<i>supplici-um ī</i> 2n. punishment; death penalty
<i>classis class-is</i> 3f. fleet	<i>missī sunt</i> '(they) were sent' (perf. passive of <i>mittō</i> 3 <i>mīsī missus</i>)	<i>symphōniac-us ī</i> 2m. musician
<i>cohors cohort-is</i> 3f. governor's retinue	<i>muliercul-a ae</i> 1f. woman (with sneering tone)	<i>Syrācūs-ae ārum</i> 1f. Syracuse
<i>datam esse</i> 'to have been given' '(that) (it) had been given' (perf. passive infin. of <i>dō</i>)	<i>naut-a ae</i> 1m. sailor	<i>Tadi-us ī</i> 2m. Tadius
<i>datī sunt</i> '(they) were given' (perf. passive of <i>dō</i>)		<i>uestis uest-is</i> 3f. clothes
<i>dēfōrm-is e</i> misshapen, ugly		<i>uidēbantur</i> '(they) seemed' (imperf. passive of <i>uideō</i> : lit. 'they were seen' (sc. 'as'))
		<i>uīsus est</i> '(he) was seen' (perf. passive of <i>uideō</i>)

Learning vocabulary for 4D(i)

Nouns

<i>classis class-is</i> 3f. fleet	<i>pīrāt-a ae</i> 1m. pirate	<i>praefect-us ī</i> 2m. captain, prefect; (adj.) in charge of (+ dat.)
<i>cohors cohort-is</i> 3f. governor's retinue; cohort	<i>port-us ūs</i> 4m. harbour	
<i>naut-a ae</i> 1m. sailor	<i>praedō praedōn-is</i> 3m. pirate; robber	

Adjectives

ēbri-us a um drunk

Verbs

<i>expectō</i> 1 I await, wait for	<i>iaceō</i> 2 I lie	<i>liberō</i> 1 I free, release
------------------------------------	----------------------	---------------------------------

Others

ā/ab by (usually a person, after passive verbs); (away from)

Running vocabulary for 4D(ii)

<i>abductī erant</i> '(they) had been removed' (plupf. pass. of <i>abducō</i>)	<i>aut . . . aut</i> either . . . or	<i>dēsum dēesse</i> I am missing, lacking
<i>abductī (sc. sunt)</i> '(they were) removed' (perf. passive of <i>abducō</i>)	<i>capta est</i> '(it) was captured' (perf. passive of <i>capio</i>)	<i>feriēbantur</i> '(they) were being struck' (imperf. passive of <i>feriō</i> 4)
<i>ablāt-a/um (sc. est)</i> '(it was) taken away' (perf. passive of <i>auferō</i>)	<i>captī erant</i> '(they) had been captured' (plupf. passive of <i>capio</i>)	<i>fōrmāe</i> [Gen. follows <i>aliquid</i> : cf. <i>artificium</i> and the note on it]
<i>anteā</i> formerly, previously	<i>carcer carcer-is</i> 3m. prison	<i>fōrmōs-us a um</i> handsome, graceful, shapely
<i>arguō</i> 3 I claim, charge	<i>cognōscēbantur</i> 'they were recognised' (imperf. passive of <i>cognōscō</i>)	<i>gesta (est)</i> '(it) was achieved' (perf. passive of <i>gerō</i>)
<i>artifex artific-is</i> 3m. craftsman	<i>coniūctōs esse</i> 'to have been linked' '(that they) were linked' (perf. passive infin. of <i>coniungō</i> 3 <i>coniūnxī coniūctus</i>)	<i>habita erat</i> '(it) had been had' (plupf. passive of <i>habeō</i>) tr. 'had been made'
<i>artifici-um ī</i> 2n. skill: the gen. <i>artificī</i> depends on <i>aliquid</i> , 'some skill' – cf. <i>satis</i> , <i>nimis</i> with gen. (31 and 102)	<i>cotīdiē</i> daily	<i>hūmān-us a um</i> considerate, civilised
<i>āuersum (sc. est)</i> '(it was) stolen' (perf. passive of <i>āuertō</i> 3 <i>āuertī āuersus</i>)	<i>dēfendēbantur</i> '(they) were defended' (imperf. passive of <i>dēfendō</i>)	<i>liberātus (sc. est)</i> '(he) was freed' (perf. passive of <i>liberō</i>)

missi (sc. *sunt*) '(they were) sent' (perf. passive of *mittō*)
nefāri-us a um wicked, vile, criminal
numer-us ī 2m. number
percussī (*sunt*) '(they were) executed' (perf. passive of *percutiō* 3/4 *percussī percussus*)
perit-us a um knowledgeable, skilful

praeclār-us a um very famous, outstanding, brilliant
popul-us ī 2m. the people
remōtī (*erant*) '(they) had been got out of the way' (plupf. pass. of *remoueō* 2 *remōuī remōtus*)
rēm-us ī 2m. oar
secūris *secūr-is* 3f. axe

Sertōriān-us a um of Sertorius (Roman who led a revolt against the Roman dictator Sulla from Spain in 83 and gained some support. See Text 4F(ii))
substituō 3 I substitute
symphōniac-us ī 2m. musician
uestis *uest-is* 3f. clothing
uoluntās *uoluntāt-is* 3f. will, wish

Learning vocabulary for 4D(ii)

Nouns

numer-us ī 2m. number

secūris *secūr-is* 3f. axe

uestis *uest-is* 3f. clothes, clothing, dress

Adjectives

fōrmōs-us a um handsome, graceful, shapely

nefāri-us a um wicked, vile, criminal

praeclār-us a um very famous, outstanding, brilliant

Verbs

desum *dēesse* *dēfuī* *dēfutūrus*
 I am missing, lacking;
 fail; abandon (+ dat.)

feriō 4 I strike, beat; kill (no 3rd or 4th principal parts – these tenses are supplied by *percussī*, *percussus*, from *percutiō* 3/4 I strike, beat; kill)

Others

aut . . . aut either . . . or
cotīdiē daily

Grammar and exercises for 4D

111 The passive

The active 'voice' (as it is called) usually indicates that the subject is doing something e.g. 'Tom hits the ball'. The passive voice is used to say exactly the same thing, only another way round, this time with the subject *having something done to it* (cf. *passus* 'having undergone, suffered' from *patior*) e.g. 'The ball *is hit* by Tom'. The subject 'ball' here is not doing anything – it is having something done to it *by Tom* (who is called (when he functions like this in a sentence) 'the agent', lit. 'the doer', 'person doing' (from *agō*)).

Here are the forms of the passive, with meanings, of all four conjugations, in present, future, imperfect, perfect and pluperfect indicative, the present, perfect and future infinitive, and the present imperative. It should not be too long before you recognise that the *forms* of the passive and the *forms* of the deponent are ABSOLUTELY IDENTICAL. Consequently, THERE IS VIRTUALLY NOTHING NEW TO LEARN HERE.

112 Present indicative passive (all conjugations): 'I am being —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I am (being) loved'	'I am (being) held'	'I am (being) said'
1st s.	ám-o-r	hábe-o-r	díc-o-r
2nd s.	amá-ris (-re)	habē-ris (-re)	díc-e-ris (-re)
3rd s.	amá-tur	habē-tur	díc-i-tur
1st pl.	amá-mur	habē-mur	díc-i-mur
2nd pl.	amá-minī	habē-minī	díc-í-minī
3rd pl.	amá-ntur	habē-ntur	díc-úntur
	4	3/4	
	'I am (being) heard'	'I am (being) captured'	
1st s.	aúdi-or	cápi-o-r	
2nd s.	audī-ris (-re)	cáp-e-ris (-re)	
3rd s.	audī-tur	cápi-tur	
1st pl.	audī-mur	cápi-mur	
2nd pl.	audī-minī	capí-minī	
3rd pl.	audi-úntur	capi-úntur	

NB. Latin sometimes uses the 'vivid' present tense, where in English we would naturally use a past tense. Consequently, do not hesitate to translate a Latin present tense into the past in English if it suits the passage better. E.g. *nāuis pīrātārum Syracūsās . . . appellitur* in 4D(i) means 'a pirate-ship was brought to shore at Syracuse'.

113 Future indicative passive (all conjugations): 'I shall be —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I shall be loved'	'I shall be held'	'I shall be said'
1st s.	amā-bo-r	habē-bo-r	dīc-a-r
2nd s.	amā-be-ris (-re)	habē-be-ris (-re)	dīc-ē-ris (-re)
3rd s.	amā-bi-tur	habē-bi-tur	dīc-ē-tur
1st pl.	amā-bi-mur	habē-bi-mur	dīc-ē-mur
2nd pl.	amā-bi-minī	habē-bi-minī	dīc-ē-minī
3rd pl.	amā-bū-ntur	habē-bū-ntur	dīc-ē-ntur

	4	3/4
	'I shall be heard'	'I shall be captured'
1st s.	aūdi-a-r	cāpi-a-r
2nd s.	audi-ē-ris (-re)	cāpi-ē-ris (-re)
3rd s.	audi-ē-tur	cāpi-ē-tur
1st pl.	audi-ē-mur	cāpi-ē-mur
2nd pl.	audi-ē-minī	cāpi-ē-minī
3rd pl.	audi-ē-ntur	cāpi-ē-ntur

114 Imperfect indicative passive (all conjugations): 'I was being —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I was being loved'	'I was being held'	'I was being said'
1st s.	amā-ba-r	habē-ba-r	dīc-ē-ba-r
2nd s.	amā-bā-ris (-re)	habē-bā-ris (-re)	dīc-ē-bā-ris (-re)
3rd s.	amā-bā-tur	habē-bā-tur	dīc-ē-bā-tur
1st pl.	amā-bā-mur	habē-bā-mur	dīc-ē-bā-mur
2nd pl.	amā-bā-minī	habē-bā-minī	dīc-ē-bā-minī
3rd pl.	amā-bā-ntur	habē-bā-ntur	dīc-ē-bā-ntur

	4	3/4
	'I was being heard'	'I was being captured'
1st s.	audi-ē-ba-r	cāpi-ē-ba-r
2nd s.	audi-ē-bā-ris (-re)	cāpi-ē-bā-ris (-re)
3rd s.	audi-ē-bā-tur	cāpi-ē-bā-tur
1st pl.	audi-ē-bā-mur	cāpi-ē-bā-mur
2nd pl.	audi-ē-bā-minī	cāpi-ē-bā-minī
3rd pl.	audi-ē-bā-ntur	cāpi-ē-bā-ntur

115 Perfect indicative passive (all conjugations): 'I was —ed', 'I have been —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I was loved', 'I have been loved'	'I was held', 'I have been held'	'I was said', 'I have been said'
1st s.	amāt-us a um sum	hābit-us a um sum	dīct-us a um sum
2nd s.	amāt-us a um es	hābit-us a um es	dīct-us a um es
3rd s.	amāt-us a um est	hābit-us a um est	dīct-us a um est
1st pl.	amāt-ī ae a sumus	hābit-ī ae a sumus	dīct-ī ae a sumus
2nd pl.	amāt-ī ae a estis	hābit-ī ae a estis	dīct-ī ae a estis
3rd pl.	amāt-ī ae a sunt	hābit-ī ae a sunt	dīct-ī ae a sunt

	4	3/4
	'I was heard', 'I have been heard'	'I was captured', 'I have been captured'
1st s.	audīt-us a um sum	cāpt-us a um sum
2nd s.	audīt-us a um es	cāpt-us a um es
3rd s.	audīt-us a um est	cāpt-us a um est
1st pl.	audīt-ī ae a sumus	cāpt-ī ae a sumus
2nd pl.	audīt-ī ae a estis	cāpt-ī ae a estis
3rd pl.	audīt-ī ae a sunt	cāpt-ī ae a sunt

NB. As with deponent verbs, the perfect participle acts as an adjective and will agree with the subject in gender, number and case.

116 Pluperfect indicative passive (all conjugations): 'I had been —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I had been loved'	'I had been held'	'I had been said'
1st s.	amāt-us eram	hābit-us eram	dīct-us eram
2nd s.	amāt-us erās	hābit-us erās	dīct-us erās
3rd s.	amāt-us erat	hābit-us erat	dīct-us erat

1st pl.	amāt-ī erāmus	hābit-ī erāmus	díct-ī erāmus
2nd pl.	amāt-ī erātis	hābit-ī erātis	díct-ī erātis
3rd pl.	amāt-ī érant	hābit-ī érant	díct-ī érant

4 3/4
 'I had been heard' 'I had been captured'

1st s.	audīt-us eram	cápt-us eram
2nd s.	audīt-us érās	cápt-us érās
3rd s.	audīt-us érat	cápt-us érat
1st pl.	audīt-ī erāmus	cápt-ī erāmus
2nd pl.	audīt-ī erātis	cápt-ī erātis
3rd pl.	audīt-ī érant	cápt-ī érant

NB. See perfect passive (115) for agreement of perfect participle with the subject.

117 Passive imperative (all conjugations): 'be —ed'

	1	2	3	4	3/4
	'be loved!'	'be held!'	'be said!'	'be heard!'	'be captured!'
s.	amā-re	habē-re	dīc-e-re	audī-re	cáp-e-re
pl.	amā-minī	habē-minī	dīc-ī-minī	audī-minī	cáp-ī-minī

118 Passive infinitive (all conjugations)

Present 'to be —ed'

	1	2	3	4	3/4
	'to be loved'	'to be held'	'to be said'	'to be heard'	'to be captured'
	amā-rī	habē-rī	dīc-ī	audī-rī	cáp-ī

Perfect 'to have been —ed'

	1	2	3
	'to have been loved'	'to have been held'	'to have been said'
	amāt-us a um ésse	hābit-us a um ésse	díct-us a um ésse

	4	3/4
	'to have been heard'	'to have been captured'
	audīt-us a um ésse	cápt-us a um ésse

Form traditionally described as 'future infinitive passive': used only in indirect statement (acc. + inf.)

1	2
'that there is a movement to love'	'that there is a movement to have'
amātum īrī	hābitum īrī
3	4
'that there is a movement to say'	'that there is a movement to hear'
díctum īrī	audītum īrī
3/4	
'that there is a movement to capture'	
cáptum īrī	

Notes

- 1 īrī is the impersonal passive infinitive of *eō* 'I go', i.e. 'to be gone'. In the context of an acc. + inf. clause, this means 'that there is a movement'.
- 2 The forms *amātum*, *hābitum* etc. are called 'supine'. Basically, the supine expresses purpose, e.g. *amātum* 'to love', *audītum* 'to hear' etc. Cf. *cubitum* it 'he goes to lie down', *sessum* it 'he goes to sit', *Vārus mē uīsum dūxerat* 'Varus had brought me to see' (Catullus).
- 3 Consequently, the literal meaning of the so-called 'future infinitive passive' is 'that there is a movement to . . .', e.g.

putant sē audītum īrī 'they think that there is a movement to hear them' i.e. 'that they will be heard'

fēmina negat sē amātum īrī 'the woman denies that there is a movement towards loving her', i.e. 'that she will be loved'

- 4 The supine has a fixed form (ending -um). Its stem is the same as that of the 4th p.p. See A7.

Exercises

- 1 Form and translate the 'future infinitive passive' of: *capiō*, *liberō*, *iubeō*, *auferō*, *reperiō*.
- 2 Translate these sentences:
 - (a) *Verrēs praedōnēs captum īrī dīxit.*
 - (b) *Verrēs cīuīs Rōmānōs negābat liberātum īrī.*

- (c) Verrēs Diodōrī pōcula ablātum īrī affirmat.
 (d) Diodōrus pōcula ā Verre repertum īrī negat.
 (e) Verrēs amīcōs dīxit pōcula reperīre iussum īrī.
 (f) ībō uīsum sī domī est. (Terence)
 (g) lūsum it Maecēnās, dormītum ego Vergiliusque. (Horace)

lūdō 3 supine lūsum I play Maecēnās (nom.) Vergilius Virgil
 Maecenas

119 Irregular ferō, transitive compounds of eō

Present

- 1st s. fēr-o-r 'I am (being) carried'
 2nd s. fēr-ris
 3rd s. fēr-tur
 1st pl. fēr-i-mur
 2nd pl. fēr-i-minī
 3rd pl. fēr-ū-ntur

Present infinitive

fēr-rī 'to be carried'

Imperative

- s. fēr-re
 pl. fēr-i-minī } 'be carried!'

NB. *ferō* is regular in the formation of all its other tenses. Its principal parts are *ferō ferre tulī lātus*.

Present

- 1st s. ād-eo-r 'I am (being) approached'
 2nd s. ad-ī-ris (-re)
 3rd s. ad-ī-tur
 1st pl. ad-ī-mur
 2nd pl. ad-ī-minī
 3rd pl. ad-eū-ntur

Future

ad-ī-bo-r etc. 'I will be approached'

Imperfect

ad-ī-ba-r etc. 'I was being approached'

Perfect

ād-it-us sum etc. 'I was / have been approached'

Notes

- The forms of the passive are identical with those of deponents. But while deponent verbs only have an active meaning (e.g. *sequor* 'I follow' (you cannot say 'I am being followed' using *sequor*)), active verbs will have an active meaning when they use active forms, and a passive meaning when they use passive forms, e.g. *amō* 'I love', *amor* 'I am loved'.
- 'By' a person in Latin is expressed by *ā/ab* + abl.; 'by'/'with' a thing is expressed by the plain ablative (ablative of instrument – see 100A(c)). E.g.

'The boat was captured by Tadius' *nāvis ā Tadiō capta est*
 'They were being hit by/with an axe (i.e. executed)' *feriēbantur*
secūrī

If a person is seen as a tool, or is unwillingly involved, *ā/ab* can be dropped, e.g.

uxōre paene cōstrīctus 'almost strangled by his wife'

ab uxōre would mean she meant it.

- uideor* 'I seem' is actually the passive of *uideō* and not a real deponent verb. It can also, therefore, mean 'I am seen'. *uīsūrus* is fut. participle of *uideō*, and means 'about to see' (never 'about to seem').
- fiō fierī factus sum* is the passive of *faciō*, meaning 'I am made' (as well as 'I become', 'I happen').

Exercises

- Form the passive parts of these verbs as specified in the bracket. Conjugate imperatives and indicatives. Translate imperatives, infinitives and 1st s. of indicatives: *liberō* (pres.), *adiuuō* (impf.), *iubeō* (fut.), *uideō* (pres.), *ferō* (plupf.), *caedō* (perf.), *reuocō* (pres. inf.), *cōfirmō* (perf. inf.), *recipiō* (pres.), *dīcō* (fut.), (optional: *commoueō* (imperative), *colligō* (pres.), *uideō* (perf. inf.), *recipiō* (pres. inf.), *sentiō* (pres.), *dēdūcō* (imperative), *accūsō* (plupf.), *relinquō* (impf.), *auferō* (perf.), *pōnō* (fut.)).

- 2 These verbs include both deponents and passives. Say which each is and translate: *secūta est, accūsātur, ablāta sunt, relictus est, portātur, loquitur, mentitus est, cōspiciābātur, arbitrābitur, cōnābitur, nārrābitur, nūntiātum est, uisum est, ausum est, (optional: fertur, adipiscitur, dicitur, fruētur, colligētur, orābātur, opīnābātur, passus erat, iussus erat, amplexus est, caesus est, relinqui, sequi, dicere, ūtere).*
- 3 Give the Latin for: he will be captured; to be freed; they were being struck; it had been taken away; to have been called back; it has been read through.
- 4 Transform these English sentences from active to passive, e.g.

The pirate found the ship (*active*)
The ship was found by the pirate (*passive*)

- (a) Our fleet did not capture the ship.
(b) A messenger announced the news to Verres.
(c) The sailors brought the ship to Syracuse.
(d) Verres took away the craftsmen.
(e) The Romans executed the pirates with an axe.
- 5 Translate these sentences:
- (a) nihil ā Verre dictum erat.
(b) nāuis ā praedōne capta est.
(c) iuuenēs ā Verre Rōmam mittuntur.
(d) nāuis praedonum ā nostris abducēbātur.
(e) amīcīs thēsaurus meus dabitur.
(f) Verrī nūntiātum est nāuem captam esse et praedonēs secūri necārī.
- 6 Transform these sentences from active to passive, e.g. *praedō nāuem inuēnit 'the pirate found the ship'; nāuis ā praedōne inuenta est 'the ship was found by the pirate':*
- (a) Rōmānī hominēs dēfendēbant.
(b) tū numerum praedonum cognōuistī.
(c) Verrēs pecūniam dedit.
(d) Verrēs cīuīs Rōmānōs secūri ferit.
(e) ille nautās liberābit.
(f) Diodōrus pōcula abstulerat.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

P. Caesētiō et P. Tadiō praefectīs nāuem pīrātārum quandam captam esse Verrī nūntiātum est; plēnam esse eam nāuem iuuenum fōrmōssimōrum, argentī, uestium. Verrēs nāuem Syrācūsās ā nautīs appellī iussit. tum expectābātur ab omnibus supplicium. sed quamquam senēs statim necātī sunt, iuuenēs tamen fōrmōsī ab eō abductī et amīcīs datī sunt. nēmo praedonēs liberātum īrī arbitrātus erat. hoc tamen ā Verre factum est.

sed postea facinus multo scelestius ab isto factum est. nam in locum praedonum, qui liberati erant, Verrēs cīuīs Rōmānōs substituere coepit, qui in carcerem antea coniecti erant. quamquam illi ā multis cogniti erant, secūri tamen feriēbantur.

English–Latin

1 Translate these sentences into Latin:

- (a) The ship was found by Romans.
(b) Money was being given to Verres by the pirates.
(c) Young men are being sent to Rome.
(d) It had been announced that the ship had been captured and was being brought¹ to Syracuse.
(e) No one had realised that the pirates would be captured.
(f) Verres will be accused at Rome.

¹ Use *appellō* 3.

2 Reread the text of 4D(ii), then translate this passage into Latin:

The Syracusans had an account of the pirates who had been executed. This¹ account had been made² from the number of oars which had been taken. A large number of pirates was missing, because many had been set free by Verres. However, in the pirates' place Roman citizens were substituted. Verres claimed that they had been soldiers of Sertorius. Although they were known³ by many Syracusans, they were killed with the axe.

¹ Use connecting relative (*quī, quae, quod*).

² Use *habeō*.

³ Use pluperfect of *cognōscō*.

The achievements of Augustus

From now on till the end of the Verres texts, each grammar section will contain a passage from the *rēs gestae* (lit. 'things done', i.e. 'achievements') of the first Roman emperor Augustus, written by himself to commemorate himself. He ordered them to be inscribed on bronze tablets and set up in front of his mausoleum.

The period of Roman history in which the Verres story is set was one of increasing turmoil. The Roman republic was passing more and more into the domination of army-backed factions, led by men like Sulla, Pompey, and later Julius Caesar, whose power brought them the leading positions in the state. In 49, civil war broke out between Caesar and Pompey, and Caesar emerged as victor. But on the Ides of March 44, Julius Caesar was murdered by a group of pro-republican activists (led by Brutus) who felt that Rome was becoming a one-man state. In the ensuing civil war, two factions emerged: that of Gaius Octavius, known as Octavian, the adopted son of Julius Caesar, and that of Marcus Antonius (Mark Antony), who looked to the East and the wealth of the Egyptian queen Cleopatra to support his bid for power. At the battle of Actium in 31, Octavian emerged triumphant, but he faced problems as serious as those faced by Julius Caesar, i.e. how to reconcile the Roman aristocracy, with their implacable hatred of any idea of 'monarchy', to the fact that the old-style 'Republic' was dead, and that the rule of one man was Rome's only hope of survival. Granted the additional name 'Augustus' by a grateful Roman people and senate in 27, he succeeded by making himself the embodiment of Roman standards, ideals and above all, stability, and by presenting the new order, which was in fact the foundation of an imperial dynasty, to make it look like the old republic restored, though he was in fact in control of it. As we shall see, he restored ancient rituals and customs and temples, and engaged writers (like Virgil and Horace) to play their part in propagating his image and ideals, but the most authentic 'statement' about what he stood for is his own – the *rēs gestae dīuī Augustī* ('the achievements of the divine Augustus'), which he wrote himself.

These extracts are adapted only by the excision of the more difficult passages, so you are reading here Augustus' actual words.

Rēs gestae dīuī Augustī

rēs gestae dīuī Augustī, quibus orbem terrarum imperiō populū Rōmānī subiēcit, et impēnsae quās in rem pūblicam populumque Rōmānum fēcit.

annōs ūndēuīgintī nātus exercitum priuātō cōnsiliō et priuātā impēnsā comparauī, per quem rem pūblicam ā dominātiōne factiōnis 7 oppressam in libertātem uindicauī. senātus in ordinem suum mē adlēgit, C. Pānsā et A. Hirtiō cōsulibus, et imperium mihi dedit. populus eōdem annō mē cōsulem et triumuirum creāuit.

cūriam templumque Apollinis, aedem dīuī Iulī, Lupercal, porticum ad circum Flāminium, aedēs in Capitoliō Iouis Feretrī et Iouis Tonantis, aedem Quirīnī, aedēs Mineruae et Iūnōnis Rēgīnae et Iouis Libertātis in Auentīnō, aedem Larum in summā sacra uiā, aedem deum Penātium in Veliā, aedem Iuuentātis, aedem Mātris Magnae in Palātiō fēcī.

Capitolium et Pompēium theātrum refēcī sine ūllā inscriptiōne nōminis meī. rūōs aquarum complūribus locīs uetustāte lābentis refēcī. forum Iūlium et basilicam, quae fuit inter aedem Castoris et aedem Sātūrnī, perfēcī.

ter mūnus gladiātōrium dedī, quibus mūneribus dēpugnāuerunt hominum circiter decem mīllia.

uēnātiōnēs bēstiārum Africānarum in circō aut in forō aut in amphitheātris populō dedī sexiēns et uīciens, quibus cōfecta sunt bēstiārum circiter tria mīllia et quīngentae. (*Rēs gestae* 1–4, 19–23)

NB. The glossaries for these passages contain both vocabulary and hints on how to read each sentence as it comes. The instruction 'hold' suggests that the meaning of the word cannot be finally decided at that point in the sentence; you are asked to keep information about the word in mind until it is 'solved' by later developments.

rēs gestae *rērum gestārum* 5f. pl. + 1/2
adj. (lit.) things done; achievements

dīu-us a um divine

August-us ī 2m. Augustus

quibus [Pl., so what must it pick up?

Dat or abl., but why? Hold]

orbis orb-is 3m. circle

(+ *terrārum* = 'circle of the lands', i.e. world) [Acc., but why? Hold]

imperi-um ī 2n. command, rule, authority. [Dat. or abl., but why? Hold]

popul-us ī 2m. people

subiciō 3/4 *subiēcī* subject x (acc.) to y (dat.) [This should solve *imperiō* and *quibus* (abl. of means)]

impēns-a ae 1f. money, expense

quās [f. pl., so what must it pick up?

Acc., but why? Hold]

rēs pūblica rēi pūblīcae 5f. + 1/2 adj. republic

fēcī [Explains *quās* in the acc.]

ūndēuīgintī nineteen

nāt-us a um born, aged [Nom., m., but who does it refer to? Hold]

- prīuāt-us a um* his own [*prīuātō* is dat. or abl., but why? Hold]
- 5 *comparō* 1 I put together, gather, raise [Person (tells you who *nātus* is)? Explains why *exercitum* in acc. Solves *prīuātō* . . . *impēnsā*]
- per quem* ['through whom' (i.e. through me) or 'through which' (referring to the army)? Wait]
- dominātiō dominātiōn-is* 3f. tyranny
- factiō factiōn-is* 3f. political clique
- oppress-us a um* crushed, ground under
- in libertātem uindicō* 1 I free (lit. 'I claim into freedom') [Person? Shows that *quem* must = army, solves case of *rem publicam*]
- adlegō* 3 *adlēgō* I enrol
- C. Pānsā et A. Hirtiō cōsulibus* i.e. 43
- triumuir triumuir-ī* 2m. triumvir, member of commission of three
- creō* 1 I elect
- cūri-a ae* 1f. senate house [Acc., but why? You will not solve this sentence till you come to the very last word! So this is an important exercise in holding on]
- templ-um ī* 2n. temple [Since it is linked by *-que* to *cūriam*, one assumes it also is acc. But what is the function of the accusatives? This question will not be asked again – but you must ask it]
- Apollō Apollin-is* 3m. Apollo
- dīu-us a um* divine
- Iūli-us ī* 2m. Julius (Caesar)
- Lupercal* 3n. the Lupercal
- portic-us ūs* 4f. portico
- 10 *circ-us ī* 2m. circus
- Flāmini-us a um* of Flaminus
- Capitōli-um ī* 2n. the Capitol (hill)
- Feretri-us a um* Feretrian
- Tonāns Tonant-is* thunderer
- Quirīn-us ī* 2m. Quirinus (= Romulus deified)
- Mineru-a ae* 1f. Minerva (Athena)
- Iūnō Iūnōn-is* 3f. Juno (Hera), wife of Jupiter
- Rēgīn-a ae* 1f. queen
- Libertās Libertāt-is* 3f. freedom
- Auentīn-um ī* 2n. the Aventine (hill)
- Larēs Lar-um* 3m. pl. the Lares (household gods)
- deum* [Gen. pl., not acc. s.]
- Penātēs Penāt-ium* 3m. pl. the Penates (household gods)
- Velī-a ae* 1f. The Velian ridge, connecting two hills in Rome
- Iuuentās Iuuentāt-is* 3f. youth
- Māter Magna Mātr-is Magn-ae* Cybele
- Palāti-um ī* 2n. the Palatine (hill)
- fēcī* [At last! Solves all the accusatives]
- Capitōli-um ī* 2n. the Capitol (hill)
- Pompēi-us a um* of Pompey
- theātr-um ī* 2n. theatre [Nom., or acc.? Hold . . . but not for long]
- reficiō 3/4 refēcī* I rebuild, restore
- īnscripitiō īnscripitiōn-is* 3f. inscription
- 15 *rīu-us ī* 2m. *aquārum* aqueduct [Why acc.? Hold]
- complūr-ēs ium* very many, several
- uetustās uetustāt-is* 3f. age [Why abl.? Hold]
- lābēns lābent-is* collapsing (explains *uetustāte*)
- Iūli-us a um* of Julius (Caesar) [Nom. or acc.?.]
- basilic-a ae* 1f. courtyard (used for business and law-courts) [Its case shows that *forum Iūlium* must also be acc.]
- inter* (+ acc.) in between
- Castor Castor-is* 3m. Castor (god, brother of Pollux)
- Sātūrn-us ī* 2m. Saturn (ancient Roman god, = Greek Kronos)
- ter* three times
- mūnus mūner-is* 3n. public show [Neuter, so hold whether nom. or acc.]
- gladiātōri-us a um* involving gladiators
- dedī* [Solves *mūnus*]
- quibus mūneribus* [Connecting relative. But why dat. or abl.? Hold]
- dēpugnō* 1 I fight [Plural: will there follow a subject which tells us who fought? *hominum* 'of men' – it looks like it]

- circiter* about
- decem* 10
- mīllia* (usually *mīlia*) thousands [So we have '*quibus mūneribus* about 10,000 men fought'. Now translate *quibus mūneribus*]
- 20 *uēnātiō uēnātiōn-is* 3f. hunt [Nom. or acc.? Hold]
- bēsti-a ae* 1f. wild animal
- Āfricān-us a um* from Africa
- circ-us ī* 2m. circus
- amphitheatr-um ī* 2n. amphitheatre
- sexiēns et uīciēns* six and twenty times
- quibus* [Pl., so it must pick up – *uēnātiōnēs? bēstiārum? amphitheatrīs?* Wait]
- cōnficiō 3/4 cōnfēcī cōnfec-tus* I destroy [Passive, so something 'was destroyed'; *sunt* shows pl., but why *cōnfec-t-a* neuter? Wait for subject]
- tria mīllia* (neuter!) three thousands
- quīngent-ī ae* a 500 [But why *-ae* feminine? So we have '*quibus* 3,500 (of) animals were destroyed'. Now tr. *quibus*]

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

Suffixes

-cul-us a um and *-ol/-ul-us a um* often indicate diminutives, which can be endearing or condemnatory, e.g.

mulier 'woman' – *muliercula* 'silly woman'
homo 'man' – *homunculus* 'little jerk'
Vērānius – *Vērāniolus* 'dear Veranius'

Word exercises

Give the meaning and Latin connections of: class, decimate, juvenile, prefect, inebriated, adjacent, liberate, vest, nefarious, quotidian.

Everyday Latin

contrāria contrāriīs cūrantur 'opposites are cured by opposites'
data et accepta 'expenditures and receipts' (lit. 'things given and received')
Graecum est: nōn legitur 'it is Greek: it is not read' (found beside Greek words in medieval MSS – when knowledge of the language was rare)
negātur 'it is denied'
probātum est 'it has been proved'

Real Latin

Lucretius¹

(On the nature of the gods)

sēmōta ab nostrīs rēbus sēiūnctaque longē;
nam priuāta dolōre omnī, priuāta perīclīs,
ipsa suis pollēns opibus, nīl indiga nostrī,
nec bene prōmeritis capitur neque tangitur irā.

(Dē rērum nātūrā 2.648ff.)

sēmōta removed [It is f., referring to dīuum nātūra 'the nature of the gods' a few lines earlier]	dolor dolōr-is 3m. pain; grief perīclīs = perīculīs pollēns pollent-is powerful suis . . . opibus 'in (respect of) their own resources'	indig-us a um in need of (+ gen.) bene prōmerit-a (ōrum 2n. pl.) good deeds capiō (here) I win over tangō 3 I touch, move, affect ir-a ae 1f. anger
sēiūncta separated priuātus a um (+ abl.) relieved of	nīl 'in no way'	

¹ C. 95–c. 50. Philosopher poet, author of *Dē rērum nātūrā* 'On the nature of matter', 'On the nature of the universe'.

Publilius Syrus¹

- (a) amāns irātus multa mentitur sibi.
- (b) auārus ipse causa miseriae suae.
- (c) amāre iuuenī fructus est, crīmen senī.
- (d) amāre et sapere uix deō concēditur.
- (e) amōris uulnus idem sānat quī facit.
- (f) amōrī finem tempus, nōn animus, facit.

¹ First writer of stage 'mimes', full of wit and satire and memorable quotes, c. 44.

amāns amant-is 3m. lover auār-us ī 2m. miser fruct-us ūs 4m. enjoyment crīmen crīmin-is 3n. reproach	sapere 'to be wise' uix scarcely concēdō 3 I yield, grant uulnus uulner-is 3n. wound	sānō 1 I heal īdem is antecedent of quī finis fin-is 3m. end
--	--	--

Martial

septima iam, Philerōs, tibi conditur uxor in agrō.
plūs nullī, Philerōs, quam tibi reddit ager. (10.43)

septim-us a um seventh Philerōs (voc.) Phileros '(friend of Eros)'	tibi 'by you' (dative of agent)	condō 3 I bury reddō 3 I yield, return
--	------------------------------------	---

Part of the Creed

(Christ) quī propter nōs hominēs et propter nostram salūtem dēscendit dē
caelīs.

Et incarnātus est dē spīritū sāctō ex Mariā uirgine; et homo factus est.
Crucifixus etiam prō nōbīs, sub Pontiō Pilātō passus et sepultus est.

Et resurrēxit tertiā diē secundum scrīptūrās.

salūs salūt-is 3f. salvation dēscendō 3 dēscendī 1 descend dē (+ abl.) from cael-a ōrum 2n. pl. heaven(s) incarnātus est 'he was made flesh'	crucifixus (sc. est) 'he was crucified' sub (+ abl.) under passus (sc. est) 'he suffered' sepultus est 'he was buried'	resurgō 3 resurrēxī 1 rise again terti-us a um third secundum (+ acc.) according to scrīptūr-a ae 1f. scripture
---	--	--

Section 4E

Running vocabulary for 4E(i)

adeuntīs (acc. pl. m.) 'as they were) approaching' (pres. part. of adeō) adpulsā esset 'had landed' (plup. subj. of adpellor) aduolāuisset '(it) had flown' (plup. subj. of aduolō 1) aggredior 3/4 I attack (lit. 'I go up to') agrest-is e wild amāns (nom. s. m.) 'making love' (pres. part. of amō) ancor-a ae 1f. anchor-cable Anthrōpin-us ī 2m. Anthropinus Apollōniēns-is e from Apollonia (a town in Sicily)	capta esset '(it) had been captured' (plup. subj. pass. of capiō) cib-us ī 2m. food Cleomenēs Cleomen-is 3m. Cleomenes cuius (gen. s.) 'whose', 'of which' cum when (ll. 204, 210 and 217); although (l. 212) dēnique finally egentēs (nom. pl. m.) 'lacking', 'needing' (pres. part. of egeō 2 (+ abl.) I need, lack) egentibus (abl. pl. m.) '(as they were) lacking, needing' (pres. part. of egeō 2 (+ abl.) I need, lack)	ēgredientem (acc. s. m.) '(as he was) leaving' (pres. part. of ēgredior) ērigō 3 I erect fugiēns (nom. s. f.) 'fleeing' (pres. part. of fugiō) fugientēs (nom. pl. m./f.) 'fleeing', 'as they were fleeing' (pres. part. of fugiō) Haluntīn-us ī 2m. person from Haluntium (a town in N. Sicily) Helōr-us ī 2f. Helorus (city on east coast of Sicily) imperātor imperātōr-is 3m. leader, general, commander
---	--	---

incrēdibil-is e amazing, unbelievable
lītus lītōr-is 3n. shore
māl-us ī 2m. mast
muliercul-a ae 1f. woman (sneering tone)
nāuigō 1 I sail
nītor 3 dep. *nīxus* (+ abl.) I lean on
occīdō 3 *occīdī* *occīsus* I kill
Odyssē-a ae 1f. Odyssea (a promontory on the southern extremity of Sicily)
Pachyn-us ī 2m./f. Pachynus (the south-eastern promontory of Sicily)

palli-um ī 2n. Greek cloak
palm-a ae 1f. palm-tree
paulō slightly, rather
Phylarch-us ī 2m. Phylarchus
popul-us ī 2m. people
postrēm-us a um last
pōtāns (nom. s. m.) 'drinking' (pres. part. of *pōtō* 1)
pōtante (abl. s. m.) 'drinking' (pres. part. of *pōtō* 1)
praecīdō 3 I cut
prīnceps *prīncip-is* 3m. leader; (adj.) first
purpure-us a um purple; crimson

quīnt-us a um fifth
rādīx *rādīc-is* 3f. root
sēmiplēn-us a um half-full; under-manned
sequentēs (nom. pl. m.) 'following' (pres. part. of *sequor* 3 dep.)
sequentīs (acc. pl. f.) 'following', 'as they were following' (pres. part. of *sequor* 3 dep.)
soleāt-us a um be-slippered, in slippers
tard-us a um slow
uīdisset 'he had seen' (plup. subj. of *uideō*)

Learning vocabulary for 4E(i)

Nouns

cib-us ī 2m. food
Cleomenēs *Cleomen-is* 3m. Cleomenes

imperātor *imperātōr-is* 3m. leader, general, commander
lītus lītōr-is 3n. shore

popul-us ī 2m. people
prīnceps *prīncip-is* 3m. leader, chieftain; (adj.) first

Adjectives

postrēm-us a um last
quīnt-us a um fifth

Verbs

aggredior 3/4 dep. *aggressus* I attack (go up to)
egeō 2 *egū* (+ abl. or gen.) I lack, need, am in want of

nāuigō 1 I sail
nītor 3 dep. *nīsus* or *nīxus* (+ abl.) I lean on; I strive, exert myself

occīdō 3 *occīdī* *occīsus* I kill

Others

dēnique finally; in a word
paulō slightly (cf. *multō* (by) much: both ablatives expressing 'amount of difference')

Running vocabulary for 4E(ii)

accipiō 3/4 *accēpī* *acceptus* I sustain, meet with
admittō 3 I let in
amor *amōr-is* 3m. love, passion
ante earlier, before (adv.)
ausus *esset* 'he had dared' (plup. subj. of *audeō*)
calamitōs-us a um disastrous
cant-us ūs 4m. song, singing
concurō 1 I rush together
cōnflagrantem (acc. s. m./f.) 'as he/it was burning' (pres. part. of *cōnflagrō* 1)
cōnflagrantīs (acc. pl. f.) 'burning', (pres. part. of *cōnflagrō* 1)
cuius (gen. s.) 'whose', 'of which'
cum when (l. 220); since (ll. 222 and 226)
disciplīn-a ae 1f. order, control
dormientem (acc. s. m.) '(while he was) sleeping' (pres. part. of *dormiō*)

ēiciō 3/4 *ēicī* I throw out;
mē ēiciō I throw myself out
excitō 1 I rouse
exeuntem (acc. s. m.) 'departing' (pres. part. of *exeō*)
fluctuantem (acc. s. f.) 'tossing about' (pres. part. of *fluctuō* 1)
grau-is e serious, important, weighty
Helōr-us ī 2f. Helorus (city on east coast of Sicily)
Hēracleō *Hēracleōn-is* 3m. Heracleo
incendi-um ī 2n. fire
incendō 3 *incendī* *incēsus* I burn
inclūdō 3 *inclūsī* I shut up
īnflammō 1 I set on fire
manente (abl. s. m.) 'remaining' (pres. part. of *maneō*)
mare *mar-is* 3n. sea (abl. s. *marī*)
marī (abl. s.) on the sea
multitūdō *multitūdīn-is* 3f. crowd, number

nēquiti-a ae 1f. wickedness
ō oh! (exclamation: followed by acc.)
peruēnisset 'he had reached' (plup. subj. of *perueniō*)
praetōri-um ī 2n. governor's residence
pūblic-um ī 2n. public place
quārum (gen. pl. f.) 'of which', '(and) of these'
quō to where
quōrum (gen. pl. m.) 'whose'
reliqu-us a um remaining, left
seuēr-us a um strict
symphōni-a ae 1f. band
tard-us a um slow
uīdisset 'they had seen' (plup. subj. of *uideō*)

Learning vocabulary for 4E(ii)

Nouns

incendi-um ī 2n. fire
mare *mar-is* 3n. sea (*marī* (abl. s.) 'on the sea')

multitūdō *multitūdīn-is* 3f. mob, crowd, number

nēquiti-a ae 1f. wickedness

Adjectives

grau-is e serious, important, weighty

reliqu-us a um remaining, left

tard-us a um slow

Verbs

accipiō 3/4 *accēpī* *acceptus* I
sustain, meet with;
(receive, welcome;
learn; obtain)

cōnflagrō 1 I burn
(intrans.)

incendō 3 *incendī* *incēnsus* I
set fire to, burn (trans.)

Others

ante (adv.) earlier, before;
(+ acc.) before, in
front of)

quō to where, whither (in
direct q. = whither? to
where?)

Running vocabulary for 4E(iii)

accēdō 3 *accessī* I approach,
reach

acerb-us a um bitter

Carthāginiēns-is e

Carthaginian, Punic

commorātī essent 'they had
waited' (plup. subj. of
commoror 1 dep.)

cōnflagrantīs (acc. pl. f.)

'burning' (pres. part. of
conflagrō)

cum when (l. 241)

fact-um ī 2n. achievement

glōri-a ae 1f. glory,

renown, fame

Helōrī (locative) at

Helorus

immortāl-is e everlasting,
immortal

lūdibriō esse to be a

laughing-stock/joke (to

x: dat.) [*lūdibriō* is

predicative dative from

lūdibri-um ī 2n.]

mentiō mentiōn-is 3f.

mention

met-us ūs 4m. fear

moenia moen-ium 3n. pl.

walls

ō oh! (exclamation

followed by acc.)

penetrō 1 I penetrate,

reach into

peruagor 1 dep. I rove

freely about

pīratic-us a um (of a)
pirate

plūrimum possum I am

very powerful

prō! in the name of!

Pūnic-us a um Punic,

Carthaginian

quōrum (gen. pl. n.) 'of

which'

saepe often

Siciliēns-is e Sicilian

spectācul-um ī 2n. sight

statuō 3 *statuī* I decide,

determine

tot so many (indecl.)

uidēlicet presumably

usque right up as far as

Learning vocabulary for 4E(iii)

Nouns

glōri-a ae 1f. glory,
renown, fame

mentiō mentiōn-is 3f.
mention

met-us ūs 4m. fear, terror

moenia moen-ium 3n. pl.
walls, fortifications

Adjectives

tot so many (indecl.)

Verbs

accēdō 3 *accessī* *accessum* I
approach, reach

commoror 1 dep. I delay,
wait

possum posse potuī
(+ adv.) I am
powerful, have power;
(am able, can)

Others

cum (+ subj.) when; since; *saepe* often
although; (+ abl. with)

Grammar and exercises for 4E

120 Present participles '—ing', 'while —ing'

Present participles of both active and deponent verbs are formed in the same way – with *-ns* added to the stem (+ key vowel *-e-* in 3rd, 4th and 3rd/4th conjugations). They are declined like *ingēns* (*ingent-*), e.g.

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	ámā-ns	ámā-ns	amánt-ēs	amánt-ia
acc.	amánt-em	ámā-ns	amánt-īs (-ēs)	amánt-ia
gen.	← amánt-is →		← amánt-ium (-um) →	
dat.	← amánt-ī →		← amánt-ibus →	
abl.	← amánt-e (-ī) →		← amánt-ibus →	

So in conspectus we get:

Active

1	2	3	4	3/4
'loving'	'having'	'saying'	'hearing'	'capturing'
ámāns	hábēns	dícēns	aúdiēns	cápiēns
amánt-	habént-	dícént-	audiént-	capiént-

Deponent

1	2	3	4	3/4
'threatening'	'promising'	'speaking'	'lying'	'advancing'
mínāns	pólicēns	lóquēns	méntiēns	prōgrédiēns
minánt-	pollicént-	loquént-	mentiént-	prōgrediént-

Notes

- 1 Observe that the very word 'present' is itself a participle form (*praesēns praesentis*) from *praesum* 'I preside'; so the word 'present' is in itself a clue to the form and meaning of present participles. (Cf. 'future', which gave the clue to the *-ūr-us* ending of future participles, 81).
- 2 Present participles mean '—ing', and indicate that the action of the participle is going on at the same time as the verb of the clause.
- 3 As with future participles and deponent past participles, present participles act like adjectives in agreeing with the person 'doing' in gender, number and case. But they are most often used predicatively. See 77.
- 4 The ablative s. usually ends in *-e*, and the gen. pl. in *-ium*. The ablative s. ends in *-ī* when the verb is being used *adjectivally*. (Cf. English 'a charming man came here', 'I saw a man charming snakes': the first participle is being used adjectivally, the second with verbal force — predicatively. See 77).
- 5 Note the irregular *iēns*, *eunt-is* 'going' (from *eō*).
- 6 Note the common use of a noun in the ablative with a present participle (in s. always ending in *-e*), to mean 'while x is/was —ing', e.g. *Cleomenē pōtante* 'while Cleomenes was drinking'. Cf. the ablative absolute with nouns/adjectives, 109.

Exercises

Morphology

- 1 Form the present participle of each of these verbs. Give also gen. s. and translate: *reuocō*, *incendō*, *accipiō*, *sentiō*, *iubeō*, *adipiscor*, *ēgredior*, *fruor*, *recordor*, *exeō*, (optional: *loquor*, *intellegō*, *commoror*, *cōnflagrō*, *egeō*, *nītor*, *nāuigō*, *mentior*, *oblīuīscor*, *cōnor*).
- 2 Say with which noun(s) in each line the given present participle agrees:

īnspiciēti: *seruae*, *muliere*, *mīlitis*, *uirō*
accēdentem: *imperātōrum*, *prīncipem*, *multitūdine*, *incendium*
nītente: *Verrī*, *mulieris*, *seruā*, *imperātōrēs*
commorantum: *populum*, *mulierum*, *manum*
cōnflagentibus: *moenibus*, *cibus*, *nāuīs*, *cēterīs*
circumiēns: *Iouis*, *Cicerō*, *mulier*, *imperātōrēs*

3 Translate these sentences:

- (a) *Verrēs muliere nītēns in lītore stābat.*
- (b) *illīs rogantibus praedō respondit sē nāuīs fugientīs uīdisse.*
- (c) *nautīs cibō egentibus, Cleomenēs nihil fēcit.*
- (d) *Verre mulierem amante, nūntiātum est nāuem captam esse.*
- (e) *nāuem incendiō cōnflagentem uidēre potes.*
- (f) *reliquōs paulō tardius sequentīs cōspicātī sunt.*
- (g) *Syracūsīs commorantēs praedōnēs moenia urbis uīderunt.*
- (h) *Verrēs negāuit nāuīs sē ad portum accēdentīs uīdisse.*
- (i) *nūllus agentī¹ diēs longus est. (Seneca)*
- (j) *nīl difficile amantī. (Cicero)*

¹ *agō* 3 I am busy.

- 4 Translate into Latin (using ablative absolute with present participle). E.g. as the leader delayed *prīncipe commorante*.

in Verres' absence; while the sailors were following; with the people watching; as the ships were burning; with Cleomenes delaying; although the crowd was encouraging the leader.

121 Pluperfect subjunctive active ('had —ed')

	1	2	3
1st s.	<i>amāu-isse-m</i> (or <i>amāssem</i> etc.)	<i>habu-isse-m</i>	<i>dix-isse-m</i>
2nd s.	<i>amāu-issē-s</i>	<i>habu-issē-s</i>	<i>dix-issē-s</i>
3rd s.	<i>amāu-isse-t</i>	<i>habu-isse-t</i>	<i>dix-isse-t</i>
1st pl.	<i>amāu-issē-mus</i>	<i>habu-issē-mus</i>	<i>dix-issē-mus</i>
2nd pl.	<i>amāu-issē-tis</i>	<i>habu-issē-tis</i>	<i>dix-issē-tis</i>
3rd pl.	<i>amāu-isse-nt</i>	<i>habu-isse-nt</i>	<i>dix-isse-nt</i>
	4	3/4	
1st s.	<i>audīu-isse-m</i> (or <i>audīsem</i> etc.)	<i>cēp-isse-m</i>	
2nd s.	<i>audīu-issē-s</i>	<i>cēp-issē-s</i>	
3rd s.	<i>audīu-isse-t</i>	<i>cēp-isse-t</i>	
1st pl.	<i>audīu-issē-mus</i>	<i>cēp-issē-mus</i>	
2nd pl.	<i>audīu-issē-tis</i>	<i>cēp-issē-tis</i>	
3rd pl.	<i>audīu-isse-nt</i>	<i>cēp-isse-nt</i>	

Notes

- 1 Remember pluperfect subjunctive active as formed from the perfect infinitive active plus the normal personal endings (*-m*, *-s*, *-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt*).

- 2 Observe how the *-ui-* can drop out (cf. 65, 104³), e.g. *amā-ssem, dēlē-ssem* (*dēlēuissem*) etc.

122 Pluperfect subjunctive deponent ('had —ed')

	1	2	3
1st s.	mināt-us a um éssem	pollicit-us a um éssem	locūt-us a um éssem
2nd s.	mināt-us a um éssēs	pollicit-us a um éssēs	locūt-us a um éssēs
3rd s.	mināt-us a um éssēt	pollicit-us a um éssēt	locūt-us a um éssēt
1st pl.	mināt-ī ae a essēmus	pollicit-ī ae a essēmus	locūt-ī ae a essēmus
2nd pl.	mināt-ī ae a essētis	pollicit-ī ae a essētis	locūt-ī ae a essētis
3rd pl.	mināt-ī ae a éssent	pollicit-ī ae a éssent	locūt-ī ae a éssent
	4	3/4	
1st s.	mentīt-us a um éssem	prōgrēss-us a um éssem	
2nd s.	mentīt-us a um éssēs	prōgrēss-us a um éssēs	
3rd s.	mentīt-us a um éssēt	prōgrēss-us a um éssēt	
1st pl.	mentīt-ī ae a essēmus	prōgrēss-ī ae a essēmus	
2nd pl.	mentīt-ī ae a essētis	prōgrēss-ī ae a essētis	
3rd pl.	mentīt-ī ae a éssent	prōgrēss-ī ae a éssent	

NB. The pluperfect subjunctive deponent is formed from the perfect participle in *-us -a -um* (agreeing with the subject) and the auxiliary verb *essem essēs esset* etc. (imperfect subjunctive of *sum*).

123 Pluperfect subjunctive passive ('had been —ed')

	1	2	3
1st s.	amāt-us éssem	hābit-us éssem	díct-us éssem
2nd s.	amāt-us éssēs	hābit-us éssēs	díct-us éssēs
3rd s.	amāt-us éssēt	hābit-us éssēt	díct-us éssēt
1st pl.	amāt-ī essēmus	hābit-ī essēmus	díct-ī essēmus
2nd pl.	amāt-ī essētis	hābit-ī essētis	díct-ī essētis
3rd pl.	amāt-ī éssent	hābit-ī éssent	díct-ī éssent
	4	3/4	
1st s.	audīt-us éssem	cápt-us éssem	
2nd s.	audīt-us éssēs	cápt-us éssēs	
3rd s.	audīt-us éssēt	cápt-us éssēt	
1st pl.	audīt-ī essēmus	cápt-ī essēmus	
2nd pl.	audīt-ī essētis	cápt-ī essētis	
3rd pl.	audīt-ī éssent	cápt-ī éssent	

NB. For formation of the pluperfect subjunctive passive, see note on plupf. deponent above, 122.

124 *cum* + subjunctive 'when', 'since', 'although'

cum followed by the pluperfect subjunctive means 'when' or 'since x had —ed' (it can sometimes mean 'although').

Here are two examples of *cum* + pluperfect subjunctive:

cum abiissent, laetus eram 'when/since they had gone, I was delighted'

cum haec locūtī essent, abiērunt 'when/since they had said this, they left'

Notes

- 1 Distinguish *cum* = 'with' (followed closely by an ablative) from *cum* = 'since', 'when', 'although'.
- 2 Remember *mēcum* 'with me', *tēcum* 'with you', *nōbiscum* 'with us' etc., and *quōcum, quibuscum* 'with whom'.
- 3 *cum* 'although' is often signposted by e.g. *tamen* or *nihilōminus* in the main clause, e.g. *cum sapiēns esset, stultē tamen sē gessit* 'though he was wise, all the same he acted foolishly'.
- 4 It is common for conjunctions like *cum*, *sī* 'if', *ubi* 'when' etc. to drift towards the verb, i.e. away from the start of the sentence, e.g. *ad templum cum peruēnisset*, 'when he had reached the temple'. Be prepared for this when you translate.

Exercises

- 1 Form and conjugate the pluperfect subjunctive of these verbs (form passive only where asked): *egeō, cōflagrō, commoror, sequor, accipio* (passive), *incendō* (passive), *nītor, occidō, sentiō, liberō* (passive), *accēdō*, (optional: *dēsum, circumeō, nōlō, ferō* (passive), *recordor, audeō, cōspicor, iaceō, cōstituō* (passive), *excōgitō, nāuigō*).
- 2 Translate these sentences (taking care over the meaning of *cum* = 'when, since, although'):
 (a) *cum Cleomenēs fūgisset, cēterī secūtī sunt.*
 (b) *cum praedōnēs celerrimē prōgressī essent, nāuēs Rōmānōrum postrēmae in periculō principēs erant.*

- (c) cum imperātor ad lītus celeriter accessisset, cēterī tamen tardius nāuigābant.
 (d) Cleomenēs ad lītus cum nāue cum peruēnisset, sē domī cēlāuit.
 (e) cēterī quoque, cum marī nūllō modō praedōnēs effugere potuissent, nāuīs reliquērunt.
 (f) praedōnum dux nāuīs, cum captae essent, incendi iussit.

3 Translate into Latin (using cum + pluperfect subjunctive):

- (a) When the commander had sailed to the shore . . .
 (b) Since the ships had been burned . . .
 (c) Although the pirates had delayed at Syracuse . . .
 (d) When the walls had been examined . . .
 (e) Although the crowd had caught sight of the fire . . .
 (f) Since the sailors had lacked food . . .

4 Say which of these verbs are subjunctive, which indicative: eguit, cōnflagrāset, tulerat, recordātus essēs, cōstituisse, excōgitāuerās, accēpissent, captus esse, occīsī essent, cōspiciātī sunt, (optional: iacuistī, commorātī sunt, secūta esset, fuisse, fūgissent, cēlāuerant, nāuigāssent, nōluistis, potuissēs, incēnsus esse).

125 3rd decl. neuter -i- stem nouns in -al, -ar, -re and -le, e.g. mare mar-is 3n. 'sea'

All these nouns decline in the same way, like mare:

	s.	pl.
nom.	māre	mār-ia
acc.	māre	mār-ia
gen.	mār-is	mār-ium (mar-um is found)
dat.	mār-ī	mār-ibus
abl.	mār-ī (māre is found)	mār-ibus

Cf. animal 'animal', calcar 'spur' and cubīle 'couch'.

NB. Abl. s. in -ī, nom. acc. pl. in -ia, gen. pl. in -ium – exactly like other neuter i-stems (see 44). Cf. 12 and contrast 26.

126 Relative pronoun in the genitive

cuius and quōrum quārum quōrum nearly always mean 'whose', 'of which' or 'of whom', e.g.

nāuīs cuius imperātor erat Phylarchus 'the ship the captain of which was Phylarchus'
 hominēs quōrum argentum Verrēs cupiuit 'the men whose silver Verres desired'

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Here is a slightly cut (but otherwise unadapted) passage from the original text of 4E(ii). Read the passage, analysing explicitly your procedure as you go. End, after translation, with a reading aloud of the Latin.

ita prīma Haluntīnōrum nāuīs capitur, cui praeerat Haluntīnus homo nōbilis, Phylarchus, quem ab illīs praedōnibus Locrēnsēs¹ postea publicē redēmērunt² . . . deinde Apollōniēnsis nāuīs capitur, et eius praefectus Anthrōpinus occīditur. haec dum aguntur, intereā Cleomenēs iam ad Helōrī lītus peruēnerat; iam sēsē in terram ē nāuī ēiēcerat, 5 quadrirēm³ fluctuantem in salō (=marī) reliquerat. reliquī praefectī nāuium, cum in terram imperātor exiisset, Cleomenem persecūtī⁴ sunt. (From Cicero, In Verrem II 5, 34.90–35.91)

¹ Locrēnsis Locrēns-is 3m. person from Locri.

² redimō 3 redēmī 1 ransom, buy back (thus English 'redeem').

³ quadrirēmīs quadrirēm-is 3f. ship – with 4 banks of oars.

⁴ per- intensifies the simple verb sequor.

English–Latin

1 Translate these sentences into Latin:

- (a) The crowd caught sight of the ships as they were burning.
 (b) When Cleomenes had disembarked, the rest of the ships' captains followed him.
 (c) Cleomenes, whose wife was on the shore with Verres, left harbour with the ships following.
 (d) Since they had not been able to escape the pirates by sea, the captains followed their leader and disembarked.

2 Read the text of 4E(iii) again, then translate this passage:

When the ships had been set on fire, the pirates decided to go to Syracuse. They had heard that the harbour of the Syracusans was very beautiful and knew that they would never see it except in Verres'

praetorship. When they had decided this,¹ they sailed to Syracuse. A pirate ship, in Verres' praetorship, while our ships were burning, came up to the actual harbour of the Syracusans. Ye gods! What a vile deed!

¹ Use connecting relative (*quī quae quod*).

Rēs gestae dñi Augusti

mare pācāuī ā praedōnibus. iūrāuit in mea uerba tōta Italia sponte suā, et mē bellī quō uīcī ad Actium ducem dēpoposcit; iūrāuerunt in eadem uerba prōuinciae Galliae, Hispāniae, Āfrica, Sicilia, Sardinia. omnium prōuinciārum populī Rōmānī quibus finitimae fuērunt gentēs quae nōn pārērent imperiō nostrō finīs auxī. Galliās et Hispāniās prōuinciās, item Germāniam pācāuī. Alpēs ā regiōne eā quae proxima est Hadriānō marī ad Tuscum pācificāuī. classis mea per Oceanum ab ostiō Rhēnī ad sōlis orientis regiōnem usque ad finīs Cimbrōrum nāuigāuit. Aeg̃yptum imperiō populī Rōmānī adiēcī. plūrimae aliae gentēs expertae sunt p. R. fidem, mē prīncipe, quibus antea cum populō Rōmānō nūllum exstiterat lēgatiōnum et amīcitiae commercium. (Rēs gestae 25–7)

pācō I bring peace to x (acc.) from (ā + abl.) y
praedō praedōn-is 3m. pirate
iūrō 1 in uerba I take the oath of allegiance [Await subject, if there is one quoted]

sponte suā of its own accord, willingly
mē bellī [Wait to solve both these]
quō . . . Actium [Relative clause. quō picks up bellī]

Acti-um ī 2n. (battle of) Actium, 31, when Octavian–Augustus defeated Mark Antony and Cleopatra and became sole ruler of Roman world
ducem [Acc. – with mē? Yes: mē ducem bellī solves bellī]

dēpoposcō 3 dēpoposcī I demand [Solves case of mē ducem. Who 'demanded'?
Ans.: tōta Italia from the previous clause]

iūrāuerunt [Pl., so 'they' – but who? Await subject(s)]

prōuinci-a ae 1f. province [Ah – here come(s) the subject(s)]

Galli-ae ārum 1f. pl. the provinces of Gaul

Hispāni-ae ārum 1f. pl. the provinces of Spain

omnium . . . populī Rōmānī [A long phrase in the genitive. Probably 'of all . . .', but hold till a suitable noun which it can qualify emerges]

quibus . . . nostrō [Two sub-clauses here – first quibus . . . gentēs, then quae . . . nostrō. Hold tight]

finitim-us a um close to (+ dat.) [Solves quibus – 'to which were close . . .']

gēns gent-is 3f. tribe, people

quae [By position probably picks up 'tribes'. Nom., so 'the tribes which . . .']

5 pārērent '(they) obeyed' (+ dative)

finēs fin-ium 3f. pl. boundaries [Nom. or acc.?

augeō 3 auxī I increase, enlarge [Solves finīs. But whose finīs? Ans.: omnium . . .; so we only solve omnium . . . populī at the end of the sentence]

item similarly

Germāni-a ae 1f. Germany

Alpēs Alp-ium 3f. pl. the Alps [Nom. or acc.? Hold]

regiō regiōn-is 3f. area
proxim-us a um closest (to + dat.)
Hadriān-us a um Adriatic
Tusc-us a um Tuscan (sc. mare)
pācificō 1 I pacify, bring peace to
Ocean-us ī 2m. Ocean, i.e. the North Sea

osti-um ī 2n. mouth

Rhēn-us ī 2m. Rhine

sōl oriēns sōl-is orient-is rising sun, East usque ad (+ acc.) right up to

Cimbr-ī ōrum 2m. pl. the Cimbri, a German tribe (modern Denmark)

Aeg̃ypt-us ī 2f. Egypt [Case? Hold; hold also imperiō]

adiēcō 3/4 adiēcī I add x (acc.) to y (dat.)

experior 4 dep. expert-us I experience
p. R. = populī Rōmānī

10 fidēs fidē-ī 5f. protection, trustworthiness
quibus [Pl., so who must it refer to? Case = dat. or abl. Hold]

anteā previously

nūllum [But no what? Wait]

exsistō 1 exstitī exist [What had existed? Since 'exist' cannot have a direct object, one assumes nūllum must be a subject, so 'quibus previously no something had existed']

lēgatiō lēgatiōn-is 3f. embassy, i.e. international relations

amīciti-a ae 1f. friendship

commerci-um ī 2n. [Ah! nūllum]

exchange [So 'quibus previously no exchange of . . .'. Translate quibus]

Deliciae Latinae

Word-building

Suffixes: revision

-bil-is e is the suffix often used to form adjectives with passive force, e.g. amābilis 'lovable', crēdibilis 'credible', 'which can be believed'. Cf. English '-ble'.

Exercise

Give the meaning of: stabilis, mōbilis, laudābilis, dūrābilis, nāuigābilis.

Present participles

Many English words are based on the present participle stem in -ent and -ant, and these frequently tell you what conj. the verb is. If -ant, the verbs are 1st conj., if -ent, 2nd/3rd conj., if -ient, 4th or 3rd/4th conj.

Discuss the origins of: gradient, intelligent, permanent, Vincent, inhabitant, tangent.

Some words, however, come through French, whose present participle always ends in -ant. So: descendant, defendant, tenant, attendant.

But we sometimes use the French form as a noun e.g. 'a dependant', the Latin as an adjective, 'dependent' (*dēpendeō* 2 I hang from).

Word exercises

- 1 The following words all use the stem of a Latin noun you should know. Say what is the nom. s. of the noun in each case: legal, pacify, military, ducal, capital, custodian, pedal.
- 2 Give an English word derived from the stem of: tempus, uōx, nōmen, opus, litus¹, pīnceps, multitūdō.

¹ Clue: double the -t-.

Everyday Latin

Ablative absolutes and present participles

D.V. = *Deō uolente* '(with) God willing'

nem. con. = *nēmine contrādicente* '(with) no-one contradicting', 'unanimously'

A *locum* in medical parlance means someone who takes the place of a doctor who is away for whatever reason. Its origin is *locum tenēns* '(one) taking the place' (cf. French 'lieu-tenant', identical in formation)

et seq. = *et sequēns* 'and (the one) following', *et seqq.* = *et sequentēs* 'and (the ones) following'. Note how a double letter indicates the plural. Cf. *ex.* = example; *exx.* = examples.

timeō Danaōs, et dōna ferentīs 'I fear the Greeks even (though they are) bearing gifts' (Virgil, *Aeneid* 2, 49).

volentī nōn fit iniūria 'to one willing, injury does not happen' (i.e. no wrong is done to one who consents). An important legal principle at the heart of many cases involving e.g. rape.

Adapted mediaeval Latin: St Columba subdues the Loch Ness Monster¹

ōlim sāctus Columba in prōuinciā Pictōrum per aliquot diēs manēbat et necesse habuit transire fluuium Nēsam. ubi ad ripam aduēnit, aliquōs ex incolīs huius regiōnis aspiciit humanēs miserum homunculum quem, ut ipsī incolae dicēbant, natantem paulō ante in fluuiō aquātilis bēstia dentibus magnīs momorderat. uir sāctus haec audiēns iussit unum ex comitibus suis natāre ad alteram ripam et nāuigium, quod ibi stābat, ad sē

reducere. comes ille, nōmine Lugneus Mocumin, sine morā uestimenta exuit et, tunicam sōlam gerēns, immittit sē in aquās.

sed bēstia quae in profundō flūminis latuerat, sentiēns aquam super sē turbātam, subitō emergēns ad hominem in mediō flūmine natantem cum ingentī fremitū, apertō ore, properāuit. inter Lugneum et bēstiam nōn amplius erat quam longitūdō unius contī. tum uir beātus haec uidēns, dum barbarī et frātrēs timōre pauent, sāctam manum eleuāns, signum crucis in āere facit dicēns bēstiae: 'nōlī ultrā prōcedere; nōlī hominem tangere sed celeriter abī.' tum uērō bēstia iussū sāctī uirī retrō uelōciter fūgit tremefacta. frātrēs cum ingentī admīratiōne glōrificāuerunt Deum in beātō uirō, et barbarī, propter mīraculum quod ipsī uiderant, Deum magnificāuerunt Christiānōrum.

ōlim one day

sāct-us a um holy, Saint

Columb-a ae 1m. Columba

Pict-ī ōrum 2m. pl. Picts

aliquot several

necesse habēō I find it necessary

trāseō trānsire I cross

rip-a ae 1f. bank

fluui-us ī 2m. loch (lit. river)

incol-a ae 1m. inhabitant

regiō regiōn-is 3f. region

aspiciō 3/4 I spot

humō 1 I bury

natō 1 I swim

aquātil-is bēsti-a ae 1f. monster, water beast

5 dēns dent-is 3m. tooth

mordeō 2 momordī I bite

nāuigi-um ī 2n. boat

Lugne-us ī 2m. Lugneus

(Mocumin = indecl.)

mor-a ae 1f. delay

uestiment-um ī 2n. clothes

exuō 3 I take off

tunic-a ae 1f. tunic

gerō 3 I wear

immittō 3 I hurl into

profund-um ī 2n. depths

medi-us a um middle of

flūmen flūmin-is 3n. loch (lit. river)

lateō 2 I lie hidden

10 turbāt-us a um disturbed

ēmergō 3 I emerge

fremīt-us ūs 4m. roar

apert-us a um opened

ōs ōr-is 3n. mouth

properō 1 I hurry

amplius more

longitūdō longitūdin-is 3f. length

cont-us ī 2m. pole

beāt-us a um blessed

barbar-ī ōrum 2m. pl. locals

timor timōr-is 3m. fear

pauēō 2 I shake, tremble

ēleuō 1 I raise

crux cruc-is 3f. cross

āēr āēr-is 3m. air

ultrā any further

prōcedō 3 I advance

15 iussū 'at the command'

retrō back

tremefact-us a um terrified

admīratiō admīratiōn-is 3f. wonder

glōrificō 1 I glorify

mīracul-um ī 2n. miracle

magnificō 1 I magnify

Christiān-us ī 2m. a Christian

¹ Adapted by Sidney Morris (*Fons perennis*) from Adomnan's Life of St Columba, the Irish saint, who was the founder of the monastery of Iona. St Columba lived from about 545 to 615. The original of this passage can be read in Keith Sidwell, *Reading Medieval Latin* (Cambridge 1995), pp. 89–90.

Section 4F

Running vocabulary for 4F(i)

<i>abiciō abicere abiēcī abiectus</i> I throw down	<i>compleō 2 complēū</i> <i>complētus</i> I fill
<i>abūtor</i> 3 dep. (+abl.) I misuse	<i>concidō 3 concidī</i> I fall down, collapse
<i>accidit ut</i> (+subj.) it happened that	<i>cui</i> 'to whom', 'whose'
<i>ad</i> (+acc.) for the purpose of, to fulfil (l. 280)	<i>Cupīdō Cupīdin-is</i> 3m. (statue of) Cupid
<i>adesset</i> (impf. subj. of <i>adsum adesse</i>) '(he) was present'	<i>dē</i> (+abl.) from
<i>adfluō</i> 3 I flow, drip	<i>dētis</i> (pres. subj. of <i>dō</i>) '(to) give' '(that) you (pl.) should give'
<i>adīret</i> (impf. subj. of <i>adīre</i>) '(to) come (sc. to him)' '(that) he should come (sc. to him)'	<i>diligēns diligent-is</i> careful
<i>agō causam</i> I plead a case, conduct a case before (+dat.)	<i>exspectētis</i> (pres. subj. of <i>exspectō</i>) '(not to) await', '(and that) you (pl.) should (not) await'
<i>argente-us a um</i> (of) silver	<i>fortūn-a ae</i> 1f. fortune
<i>argūment-um ī</i> 2n. proof	<i>iacentī</i> 'to the disadvantage of him as he lay': tr. 'as he lay'
<i>bon-a ōrum</i> 2n. pl. goods	<i>immortāl-is e</i> immortal
<i>C. = Gaiō: Gai-us ī</i> 2m. Gaius	<i>latus later-is</i> 3n. side
<i>caederent</i> (impf. subj. of <i>caedō caedere</i>) '(to) beat', '(that) they should beat'	<i>lepōs lepōr-is</i> 3m. charm
<i>caus-a ae</i> 1f. case; reason	<i>līctor līctōr-is</i> 3m. magistrate's attendant, lictor
<i>circumsisterent</i> (impf. subj. of <i>circumsistō</i>) '(to) stand round' '(that) they should stand round'	<i>Lilybae-um ī</i> 2n. Lilybaeum (locative <i>Lilybaei</i>)
<i>clāmitantī</i> 'to the disadvantage of him, as he kept shouting': tr. 'as he shouted'	<i>loquerētur</i> (impf. subj. of <i>loquor</i> 3 dep.) '(he) talked'
	<i>morior</i> 3/4 dep. <i>mortuus</i> I die
	<i>nēue</i> 'and (that x should) not . . .'
	<i>nihilōminus</i> nevertheless
	<i>nocturn-us a um</i> night-time, nocturnal

<i>persuādeō 2 persuāsī</i> I persuade x (dat.) (to: ut + subj.; not to nē + subj.)
<i>pertineō</i> (ad) 2 I am relevant (to)
<i>proxim-us a um</i> nearest
<i>quā in causā</i> and in this case
<i>quibus</i> 'to whom', 'before whom'
<i>quibus modīs</i> '(and) by these means'
<i>respondēret</i> (impf. subj. of <i>respondeō respondēre</i>) '(to) reply', '(that) he should reply'
<i>salūs salūt-is</i> 3f. safety
<i>sanguis sanguin-is</i> 3m. blood
<i>sēmimortu-us a um</i> half-dead
<i>Seruīli-us ī</i> 2m. Servilius
<i>Sexti-us ī</i> 2m. Sextius
<i>sit</i> (pres. subj. of <i>sum</i>) '(to) be' '(that) it should be'
<i>soci-us ī</i> 2m. ally
<i>tacēret</i> (impf. subj. of <i>taceō</i>) '(and not to) be silent' '(and that) he should (not) be silent'
<i>testis test-is</i> 3m. witness
<i>tunderet</i> (impf. subj. of <i>tundō tundere</i>) '(to) beat' '(that) he should beat'
<i>tundō</i> 3 I beat
<i>uehementer</i> strongly
<i>Venere-us a um</i> devoted to Venus

Venus Vener-is 3f. Venus
uenīret (impf. subj. of *ueniō uenīre*) '(to) come' '(that) he should come'
uenustās uenustāt-is 3f. elegance, desirability

uerber uerber-is 3n. blow
uirg-a ae 1f. rod (symbol of a lictor's authority when bound in a bundle (also called *fascēs*))

uōt-um ī 2n. vow
ut (+subj.) 'to . . .', 'that . . . should'

Learning vocabulary for 4F(i)

Nouns

caus-a ae 1f. case; reason
līctor līctōr-is 3m. magistrate's attendant, lictor

salūs salūt-is 3f. safety
sanguis sanguin-is 3m. blood

testis test-is 3m. witness
uerber uerber-is 3n. blow; whip

Adjectives

proxim-us a um nearest; next

Verbs

abiciō abicere abiēcī abiectus
 I throw down/away
accidit 3 *accidit* (ut/ut nōn + subj.) it happens (that/that not)

concidō 3 concidī I fall, collapse; am killed
morior 3/4 dep. *mortuus* I die, am dying

persuādeō 2 persuāsī
persuāsum I persuade x (dat.) (ut/nē + subj. 'that/that . . . not' 'to . . ./not to')

Others

ad (+acc.) for the purpose of (towards; at)
dē (+abl.) from; down from, (about, concerning)

nēue 'and (that x should) not . . .', 'and not to'
uehementer strongly

ut (+subj.) 'to . . .', 'that . . . should' (negative *nē* 'not to . . .', 'that . . . should not')

Running vocabulary for 4F(ii)

ā quō by whom
agō 3 I drive
ardeō 2 I blaze
atrōciter appallingly
audīretur (impf. subj. pass. of *audiō audire*) '(it) was heard'

caedant (pres. subj. of *caedō* 3) '(to) beat' '(that) they should beat'
caedātur (pres. subj. pass. of *caedō* 3) 'should be beaten'

caederet (impf. subj. of *caedō caedere*) '(not to) beat' '(that) he should (not) beat'
caederētur (impf. subj. pass. of *caedō caedere*) '(he) was beaten'

<i>clāmāret</i> (impf. subj. of <i>clāmō clāmāre</i>) 'he was shouting'	<i>Gaius</i> <i>ī</i> 2m. Gavius
<i>cognitor cognitor-is</i> 3m. one who would know him, a referee	<i>itūrum</i> sc. <i>esse</i>
<i>comparārētur</i> (impf. subj. pass. of <i>comparō comparāre</i>) '(it) was obtained/prepared'	<i>lautumi-ae</i> <i>ārum</i> 1f. pl. stone quarries
<i>Cōnsān-us a um</i> from Consa [See map in Text]	<i>Lūci-us Raeci-us</i> <i>ī</i> 2m. Lucius Raecius (a Roman <i>eques</i>)
<i>crūdēlitās crūdēlitāt-is</i> 3f. cruelty	<i>medi-us a um</i> middle (of) Messān-a <i>ae</i> 1f. Messana (city on E. coast of Sicily)
<i>crux cruc-is</i> 3f. cross	<i>minitor</i> 1 dep. I threaten (+ dat.)
<i>defferētur</i> (impf. subj. pass. of <i>dēferō dēferre</i>) '(it) should be reported'	<i>modo</i> only
<i>dēlātūrum</i> sc. <i>esse</i>	<i>nōmināret</i> (impf. subj. of <i>nōminō nōmināre</i>) '(he) was naming'
<i>dēligēt</i> (pres. subj. of <i>dēligō</i> 1) '(that) they should bind' '(to) bind'	<i>nūdent</i> (pres. subj. of <i>nūdō nūdāre</i>) '(to) strip' '(that) they should strip'
<i>dēligētur</i> (pres. subj. pass. of <i>dēligō</i> 1) '(that) he should be bound'	<i>nūdētur</i> (pres. subj. pass. of <i>nūdō nūdāre</i>) '(that) he should be stripped'
<i>ēmineō</i> 2 I project, stand out	<i>ōs</i> <i>ōr-is</i> 3n. face
<i>eques equit-is</i> 3m. 'knight' (Roman business class)	<i>parceret</i> (impf. subj. of <i>parcō parcere</i>) '(to) spare' '(that) he should spare'
<i>furor furor-is</i> 3m. rage, fury	<i>perficiō</i> 3/4 <i>perfēcī</i> <i>ut</i> + subj. I bring it about that

<i>profugeret</i> (impf. subj. of <i>profugiō profugere</i>) 'he escaped'	<i>queror</i> 3 dep. <i>questus</i> I complain
<i>perueniret</i> (impf. subj. of <i>perueniō peruenire</i>) 'arrived'	<i>quibus uerbis</i> 'and these words' (object of <i>ūsus</i>)
<i>quor</i> 3 dep. <i>questus</i> I complain	<i>quō</i> (ll. 283, 287) 'to which place' tr. '(and) there'
<i>quibus uerbis</i> 'and these words' (object of <i>ūsus</i>)	<i>quō in locō</i> 'in which (= this) place'
<i>quō</i> (ll. 283, 287) 'to which place' tr. '(and) there'	<i>retrahō</i> 3 <i>retrāxī</i> <i>retractus</i> I drag back
<i>quō in locō</i> 'in which (= this) place'	<i>Sertōri-us</i> <i>ī</i> 2m. Sertorius (opponent of Sulla (the former dictator) who led resistance to the regime from Spain and attracted Romans and local Spaniards to his cause)
<i>retrahō</i> 3 <i>retrāxī</i> <i>retractus</i> I drag back	<i>ueniret</i> (impf. subj. of <i>ueniō uenire</i>) '(he) came'
<i>Sertōri-us</i> <i>ī</i> 2m. Sertorius (opponent of Sulla (the former dictator) who led resistance to the regime from Spain and attracted Romans and local Spaniards to his cause)	<i>uinc(u)l-um</i> <i>ī</i> 2n. chain, bond
<i>ueniret</i> (impf. subj. of <i>ueniō uenire</i>) '(he) came'	<i>uirg-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f. rod
<i>uinc(u)l-um</i> <i>ī</i> 2n. chain, bond	
<i>uirg-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f. rod	

Learning vocabulary for 4F(ii)

Nouns

<i>furor furor-is</i> 3m. rage, fury; madness	<i>ōs</i> <i>ōr-is</i> 3n. face; mouth
---	--

Adjectives

<i>medi-us a um</i> middle (of)

Verbs

<i>agō</i> 3 <i>ēgī</i> <i>actus</i> I drive, lead, direct (do, act)	<i>perficiō</i> 3/4 <i>perfēcī</i> <i>perfectus</i> <i>ut/ut nōn</i> + subj. I bring it about that/that not; (finish, complete, carry out)	<i>profugiō</i> 3/4 <i>profūgī</i> I escape, flee away
<i>nūdō</i> 1 I strip		

Others

<i>modo</i> only	not only . . . but also
<i>nōn modo</i> . . . <i>sed etiam</i>	(also <i>nōn solum</i> . . . <i>sed etiam</i>)

Grammar and exercises for 4F

127 Present subjunctive active

	1	2	3	4	3/4
1st s.	ám-e-m	hábe-a-m	díc-a-m	aúdi-a-m	cápi-a-m
2nd s.	ám-ē-s	hábe-ā-s	díc-ā-s	aúdi-ā-s	cápi-ā-s
3rd s.	ám-e-t	hábe-a-t	díc-a-t	aúdi-a-t	cápi-a-t
1st pl.	am-ē-mus	habe-ā-mus	dīc-ā-mus	audi-ā-mus	capi-ā-mus
2nd pl.	am-ē-tis	habe-ā-tis	dīc-ā-tis	audi-ā-tis	capi-ā-tis
3rd pl.	ám-e-nt	hábe-a-nt	díc-a-nt	aúdi-a-nt	cápi-a-nt

Notes

- 1 Observe the regular personal endings *-m -s -t -mus -tis -nt*.
- 2 The key vowel in conjs. 2–3/4 is *A* while in 1st conj. it is *E* (to distinguish it from the indicative). One could summarise the present subjunctive with the following chart:

1	2	3	4	3/4
E	EA	A	IA	IA

- 3 There is no way of distinguishing between *dīcam* meaning 'I shall say' (future) and *dīcam* as the subjunctive except by context. The same goes for *audiam* and *capiam*.
- 4 Particular attention should be paid to the learning of which conjugation each verb belongs to, since the *subjunctive endings* of 1st conj. are almost identical to the *present indicative endings* of 2nd conj. (cf. *amem amēs amet* with *habeō habēs habet* etc.), whilst the *subjunctive endings* of the 3rd conj. are almost the same as those of the *indicative endings* of the 1st conj. (cf. *dīcam dīcās dīcat* with *amō amās amat* etc.).

128 Present subjunctive deponent

	1	2	3
1st s.	mín-e-r	pollice-a-r	lóqu-a-r
2nd s.	min-ē-ris (-re)	pollice-ā-ris (-re)	loqu-ā-ris (-re)
3rd s.	min-ē-tur	pollice-ā-tur	loqu-ā-tur
1st pl.	min-ē-mur	pollice-ā-mur	loqu-ā-mur
2nd pl.	min-ē-minī	pollice-ā-minī	loqu-ā-minī
3rd pl.	min-ē-ntur	pollice-ā-ntur	loqu-ā-ntur
	4	3/4	
1st s.	ménti-a-r	prōgrēdi-a-r	
2nd s.	menti-ā-ris (-re)	prōgredi-ā-ris (-re)	
3rd s.	menti-ā-tur	prōgredi-ā-tur	
1st pl.	menti-ā-mur	prōgredi-ā-mur	
2nd pl.	menti-ā-minī	prōgredi-ā-minī	
3rd pl.	menti-ā-ntur	prōgredi-ā-ntur	

Notes

- 1 Observe the regular personal endings *-r -ris (-re) -tur -mur -minī -ntur*
- 2 For notes on regularities and ambiguities, see notes 2–4 of the active above.

129 Present subjunctive passive

	1	2	3
1st s.	ám-e-r	hábe-a-r	dīc-a-r
2nd s.	am-ē-ris (-re)	habe-ā-ris (-re)	dīc-ā-ris (-re)
3rd s.	am-ē-tur	habe-ā-tur	dīc-ā-tur
1st pl.	am-ē-mur	habe-ā-mur	dīc-ā-mur
2nd pl.	am-ē-minī	habe-ā-minī	dīc-ā-minī
3rd pl.	am-ē-ntur	habe-ā-ntur	dīc-ā-ntur
	4	3/4	
1st s.	aúdi-a-r	cápi-a-r	
2nd s.	audi-ā-ris (-re)	capi-ā-ris (-re)	
3rd s.	audi-ā-tur	capi-ā-tur	
1st pl.	audi-ā-mur	capi-ā-mur	
2nd pl.	audi-ā-minī	capi-ā-minī	
3rd pl.	audi-ā-ntur	capi-ā-ntur	

Notes

- 1 See under deponent (above) for notes.
- 2 Learn these irregular subjunctives:

	<i>sum</i>	<i>possum</i>	<i>uolō</i>	<i>nōlō</i>	<i>mālō</i>
1st s.	s-i-m	pós-sim	uél-i-m	nól-i-m	mál-i-m
2nd s.	s-ī-s	pós-sīs	uél-ī-s	nól-ī-s	mál-ī-s
3rd s.	s-i-t	pós-sit	uél-i-t	nól-i-t	mál-i-t
1st pl.	s-ī-mus	pos-sīmus	uel-ī-mus	nól-ī-mus	mál-ī-mus
2nd pl.	s-ī-tis	pos-sītis	uel-ī-tis	nól-ī-tis	mál-ī-tis
3rd pl.	s-i-nt	pós-sint	uél-i-nt	nól-i-nt	mál-i-nt

- 3 The subjunctive of *eō* is regular: *e-a-m, e-ā-s* etc.

130 Imperfect subjunctive active

	1	2	3	4	3/4
1st s.	amāre-m	habēre-m	dīcere-m	audīre-m	cāpere-m
2nd s.	amārē-s	habērē-s	dīcerē-s	audīrē-s	cāperē-s
3rd s.	amāre-t	habēre-t	dīcere-t	audīre-t	cāpere-t
1st pl.	amārē-mus	habērē-mus	dīcerē-mus	audīrē-mus	cāperē-mus
2nd pl.	amārē-tis	habērē-tis	dīcerē-tis	audīrē-tis	cāperē-tis
3rd pl.	amāre-nt	habēre-nt	dīcere-nt	audīre-nt	cāpere-nt

Notes

- 1 Remember the imperfect subjunctive as formed from the present infinitive plus the personal endings. Thus *amāre-m amārē-s* etc. Even irregulars follow this rule, e.g. *sum* → *esse* → *essem*; *eō* → *īre* → *īrem*; *ferō* → *ferre* → *ferrem*; cf. *uellem, nōllem, māllem, possem*. Cf. pluperfect subjunctive active, 121¹.
- 2 Note the alternative impf. subjunctive of *sum*: *fore-m, forē-s, fore-t* etc. (formed from the future inf. *fore*: see 97³).

131 Imperfect subjunctive deponent

	1	2	3
1st s.	mināre-r	pollicēre-r	lóquere-r
2nd s.	minārē-ris (-re)	pollicērē-ris (-re)	loquerē-ris (-re)
3rd s.	minārē-tur	pollicērē-tur	loquerē-tur
1st pl.	minārē-mur	pollicērē-mur	loquerē-mur
2nd pl.	minārē-minī	pollicērē-minī	loquerē-minī
3rd pl.	minārē-ntur	pollicērē-ntur	loquerē-ntur

	4	3/4
1st s.	mentīre-r	prōgrēdere-r
2nd s.	mentīrē-ris (-re)	prōgrederē-ris (-re)
3rd s.	mentīrē-tur	prōgrederē-tur
1st pl.	mentīrē-mur	prōgrederē-mur
2nd pl.	mentīrē-mini	prōgrederē-mini
3rd pl.	mentīrē-ntur	prōgrederē-ntur

NB. The imperfect deponent subjunctive may be regarded as formed by taking a hypothetical ACTIVE infinitive, and adding the deponent personal endings, e.g. not *minārī* but *mināre* giving *mināre-r -ris -tur* etc. Likewise with *pollicērī* → *pollicēre-r*, *loquī* → *loquere-r*, *mentīrī* → *mentīre-r*, *prōgredī* → *prōgredere-r*.

132 Imperfect subjunctive passive

	1	2	3
1st s.	amāre-r	habēre-r	dīcere-r
2nd s.	amārē-ris (-re)	habērē-ris (-re)	dicerē-ris (-re)
3rd s.	amārē-tur	habērē-tur	dicerē-tur
1st pl.	amārē-mur	habērē-mur	dicerē-mur
2nd pl.	amārē-mini	habērē-mini	dicerē-mini
3rd pl.	amārē-ntur	habērē-ntur	dicerē-ntur

	4	3/4
1st s.	audīre-r	cāpere-r
2nd s.	audīrē-ris (-re)	caperē-ris (-re)
3rd s.	audīrē-tur	caperē-tur
1st pl.	audīrē-mur	caperē-mur
2nd pl.	audīrē-mini	caperē-mini
3rd pl.	audīrē-ntur	caperē-ntur

For notes, see deponent (above).

133 Summary of subjunctive forms

Present subjunctive

Present stem + key vowel + personal endings. Key vowels: 1st conj. -e-, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 3rd/4th -a-. Personal endings, active: -m -s -t etc.; deponent/passive: -r -ris (-re) -tur etc. Irregular: *sim*, *uēlim*, *nōlim*, *mālim*, *possim*.

Imperfect subjunctive

Active infinitive + personal endings (active: -m -s -t etc.; deponent/passive: -r/-ris (-re) -tur etc.)

Deponent verbs are constructed on a hypothetical active infinitive, e.g.

- 1st conj. *minārī* becomes *mināre*-
- 2nd conj. *pollicērī* becomes *pollicēre*-
- 3rd conj. *loquī* becomes *loquere*-
- 4th conj. *mentīrī* becomes *mentīre*-
- 3rd/4th conj. *prōgredī* becomes *prōgredere*-

Exercises

Morphology

- 1 Form and conjugate the present and imperfect subjunctive of these verbs (where '(passive)' is written, give active and passive; for other active verbs give only active tenses): *concidō*, *hortor*, *moriōr*, *sum*, *timeō*, *auferō* (passive), *reuocō* (passive), *nāuigō*, (optional: *abiciō* (passive), *cōnor*, *egeō*, *uolō*, *dēsum*, *perlegō* (passive), *excōgitō*, *ūtor*).
- 2 Say which of these verbs is subjunctive, which indicative or infinitive (state tense of all verbs): *clāmet*, *amat*, *dormīret*, *auferret*, *cōnspicātus esse*, *cōnātī essent*, *dat*, *dīcētur*, *excōgitat*, *cūret*, *nescīrem*, *cupīuisse*, *loquitur*, *abstulisset*, *moneāris*, *accidat*, *aget*, *persuādet*, *perficiās*, (optional: *commorātur*, *moriātur*, *placēret*, *redībat*, *rogāssent*, *concliderēmus*, *accūsētis*, *parcēmus*, *profūgis*, *nītātur*, *proficīscitur*, *oppugnantur*, *uocant*, *uincant*, *uincientur*, *uocāuissētis*).
- 3 Form 3rd s. of present, imperfect and pluperfect indicative and subjunctive of these verbs (where '(passive)' is written, give active and passive; for other active verbs give only active tenses): *agō* (passive), *perficiō*, *commoror*, *liberō* (passive), *iaceō*, *sequor*, *nōlō*, *accidit*, (optional: *īnspiciō* (passive), *circumeō*, *mālō*, *ōrō*, *persuādeō*, *recordor*, *patior*, *caedō* (passive)).

134 Indirect (reported) commands *ut/nē* + subjunctive

Observe the following sentences:

- (a) *Caesar imperat militibus ut prōgrediantur* 'Caesar gives orders to the soldiers that they should advance' or 'to advance'.

- (b) *eōs hortātus sum nē hoc facerent* 'I urged them that they should not do this' or 'not to do this'.
 (c) *mihi persuādēbit ut sēcum ambulem* 'he will persuade me that I should walk with him' or 'to walk with him'.

To express these *reported* commands (the original command of (a) was 'Soldiers, advance!', of (b) 'Do not do this' etc.), Latin commonly adopts the form 'that x should' (*ut* + subjunctive) or 'that-not x should' (*nē* + subjunctive).

English does use this construction with verbs like e.g. ordain (e.g. 'he ordained that I should go'), though English more commonly uses the straight 'to / not to' form: e.g. (a) above is most easily translated 'Caesar gives orders to the soldiers to advance'.

Translate literally to start with, then convert to normal English.

Which verbs take *ut/nē*?

hortor + *ut/nē* 'I urge x (acc.) that he should / should not'
orō + *ut/nē* 'I beg x (acc.) that he should / should not'
imperō + *ut/nē* 'I give orders to x (dat.) that he should / should not'
persuādeō + *ut/nē* 'I persuade x (dat.) that he should / should not'
petō + *ut/nē* 'I beg *ā/ab* x (abl.) that he should / should not'
postulō + *ut/nē* 'I demand *ā/ab* x (abl.) that he should / should not'
rogō + *ut/nē* 'I ask x (acc.) that he should / should not'

moneō 'I advise', *obsecrō* 'I beseech', *precor* 'I pray' also take *ut/nē*.

Exceptions

iubeō 'I order' and *uetō* 'I forbid', 'tell x not to' both, like English, usually take a plain present infinitive. Compare:

iubeō tē abire
imperō tibi ut abeās } 'I order you to go'
uetō uōs manēre
imperō uōbis nē maneātis } 'I tell you not to stay'

Notes

- 1 The subjunctive will be *present* when the main verb is 'primary', *imperfect* when it is 'secondary/historic' (see **A-G Intro. (a)**).
 2 Any reference, inside the *ut/nē* clause, to subject of main verb will be *reflexive*, e.g.

Caesar imperat nōbīs ut sibi pāreāmus 'Caesar gives orders to us to obey him (= Caesar)'

- 3 Note that 'that no-one' = *nē quis*, 'that nothing' = *nē quid*, e.g.

imperat nē quis exeat 'he orders that no-one should go out'

For the forms of *quis* (indefinite) see **I4**. Cf. 'that never' = *nē umquam*; 'that none', 'not any' = *nē ūllus*; 'that nowhere' = *nē usquam*.

Exercises

- 1 Translate these sentences (remember *ut* + indicative means 'as' or 'when' and that *ut* may be used without a verb to mean 'as'):

- (a) Verrēs Seruiliō persuāsīt ut Lilybaeum adīret.
 (b) Seruilius, ut Lilybaeum peruēnit, ā lictōribus caesus est.
 (c) Verrēs lictōribus imperāuerat ut uirum caederent.
 (d) Seruilius, ut ciuis Rōmānus, Verrem orat nē sē caedat nēue necet.
 (e) ut Verrēs ciuis Rōmānōs caedit, ita ipsum affirmō ā ciuibz Rōmānīs caesum irī.
 (f) Verrēs seruōs quōsdam hortātur nē Seruiliō parcant nēue orantī auxilium dent.

- 2 Translate the underlined words into Latin (using *ut/nē* + subjunctive); take care to get the correct sequence (see **134¹**):

- (a) Verres orders Servilius to come to Lilybaeum.
 (b) I beg you (pl.) not to go away.
 (c) Verres ordered the lictors to beat Servilius.
 (d) In the end Verres persuaded Servilius not to keep quiet.
 (e) How can I persuade you to believe me?
 (f) I ordain¹ that no one shall escape and that you (pl.) shall not go away.

¹ *dēcernō* 3.

135 *accidit, perficiō ut* + subjunctive

accidit ut (nōn) 'it happens that (not)', and *perficiō ut (nōn)* (and *nē*) 'I bring it about that (not)' are followed by the subjunctive, e.g.

accidit ut perfugeret 'it happened that he escaped' (= so-called 'result' clause – see 144)
perficiam ut effugiam 'I shall bring it about that I escape' (= so-called 'purpose' clause – see 145).

In primary sequence the subjunctive is *present*; in secondary, *perfect* (still to be met) or *imperfect*.

Exercises

1 Translate these sentences (take care to check the tense of subjunctive in clauses introduced by *accidit*, since *accidit* may be present or perfect):

- accidit ut Seruilius de Verris nequitia paulo liberius loquatur.*
- Verrēs perfecit ut Seruilius Lilybaeum adiret.*
- accidit ut Seruilius, cum Lilybaeum peruēnisset, a lictoribus caederetur.*
- Gaius, cum in uinculis Syracusis esset, dixit se perfecturum ut profugeret Messanamque perueniret.*
- Verrēs perficiet ut ciues Romanī necentur.*

2 Prefix each of these statements with *perficiam ut* (following rules for primary sequence) and *accidit ut* (following rules for secondary sequence). You will thus need to change the verbs to present subjunctive (for *perficiam ut*) and imperfect (for *accidit ut*). Translate the new sentences:

- Verrēs Lilybaeum adit.*
- uir a lictoribus caeditur.*
- serui eum ad terram abiciunt.*
- uerberibus moritur.*
- socii Romam profugiunt.*

136 Present participle

When a participle is used on its own, and in agreement with no other word, there are two ways in which it may be being used:

- As a noun 'a/the person —ing', e.g.

iacet corpus dormientis ut mortui 'The body of a person sleeping lies like (that) of a dead person' (Cicero)

Cf. *morituri te salutant* 'men about to die salute you'

- Agreeing with a noun or pronoun which has been left out, referring to a person already mentioned, e.g.

haec dicentis latus hasta transfixit 'He pierced with a spear the side of (the man) as he was saying this' (Curtius). Note that 'the man' must be known to us already (he has just spoken *haec*).

137 Relative pronoun (dat. and abl.)

- cui* and *quibus* (dat.) normally mean 'to whom, for whom', e.g.

puer cui pecuniam dedi 'the boy to whom I gave the money'

But since the verb in the relative clause may control a dative, or require a dative of disadvantage etc, it will usually be necessary to 'hold' the relative pronoun until it is 'solved' by the construction, e.g.

navis cui praeerat Phylarchus 'the ship of which Phylarchus was in charge' (because *praesum* 'I am in charge of' takes a dat.)

uir cui Verrēs pocula abstulerat 'the man from whom Verres had taken the cups' (because *auferō* has its meaning completed by a dative of disadvantage)

- quō/quā* and *quibus* (abl.) bear a very wide range of meanings, but 'by', 'with', 'in/at' and 'from' should all be kept in mind. It will often be necessary to 'hold' the abl. relative pronoun until 'solved' by the construction (as with the dative). E.g.

incendium quō urbs incensa est 'the fire by which the city was burned'

genus quō natus erat 'the family from which he was born'

celeritas quā nauem cepit 'the speed with which he took the ship'

Bear in mind again that some verbs put objects in the ablative, e.g.

consilium quō usus sum 'the plan which I used' ('which' is object of *utor*; *utor* takes the abl.)

- quō* very often means '(to) where'; *quā* can mean 'where'.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Gaius hic, quem dico, Consanus, cum in illō numero ciuium Romanorum ab istō in uincla coniectus esset et nesciō quā ratione clam ē

lautumiis profūgisset Messānamque uēnisset, quī tam prope iam Italiam et moenia Rēginōrum, cīuium Rōmānōrum, uidēret, et ex illō metū mortis ac tenebrīs quasi lūce libertātis et odōre aliquō lēgum recreātus reuīxisset, loquī Messānae et querī coepit sē cīuem Rōmānum in uincla coniectum, sibi rēctā iter esse Rōmam, Verrī sē praestō aduenientī futūrum. (Cicero, in Verrem II 5, 61.160 (original of F(ii)))

Cōnsān-us a um from Consa
nesciō quis (lit. 'I do not know who')
some (or other)
quī + subj. = 'since he'
Itali-a ae 1f. Italy
Rēgin-ī ōrum 2m. pl. inhabitants of
Rhegium (on the toe of Italy)
5 tenebr-ae ārum 1f. pl. darkness, shadows
quasi as if
lūx lūc-is 3f. light
libertās libertāt-is 3f. liberty
odor odōr-is 3m. smell, scent

recreāt-us a um renewed
reuīuō 3 reuīxī I revive, come back to
life
Messānae: locative of Messān-a ae 1f.
Messana
queror 3 dep. I complain
coniectum: understand esse
rēctā directly
iter itiner-is 3n. way, route
praestō 'to face' (+ dat. + part of esse)
adueniō 4 I arrive
futūrum: understand esse

English-Latin

Read the text of 4F(ii) again and translate this passage into Latin:

Verres had thrown into chains a man whose name was Gavius¹. This² Gavius had managed to escape and arrive at Messana³. He declared that he would accuse Verres at Rome. Verres, however, when he had heard this, ordered his slaves to capture the man. They⁴ dragged him back as he was embarking⁵ and took him to the magistrate. When Verres had arrived at Messana³, he gave orders that Gavius be stripped in the middle of the forum and beaten. The lictors did not spare the man⁵ although he was begging and kept asserting⁵ that he was a Roman citizen. In this way it happened that a Roman citizen was murdered by Verres.

¹ Use dative with *sum*. Remember that the idiom is to put the name into dative also.

² 'This': use connecting relative.

³ 'at Messana': use accusative, since movement towards is indicated, although English idiom is different.

⁴ 'They': change of subject; use part of *ille*.

⁵ 'him as he was embarking': use present participle on its own; 'the man although he was begging and kept asserting': use present participles and join 'begging' to 'kept asserting' with *et* or *-que*.

Rēs gestae dīuī Augustī

quī parentem meum trucidāuerunt, eōs in exsilium expulī iūdicīis lēgitimīs ultus eōrum facinus, et postea bellum inferentis rēi pūblīcae uīcī bis aciē.

bella terrā et marī cīuīlia externaue tōtō in orbe terrārum saepe gessī, uictorque omnibus ueniam petentibus cīuibz pepercī. externās gentīs, quibus tūtō ignōscī potuit, cōseruāre quam excīdere mālū. in triumphīs meis ductī sunt ante currum meum rēgēs aut rēgum liberī nouem.

cum ex Hispāniā Galliāque, rēbus in iīs prōuinciīs prosperē gestīs, Rōmam redī, Ti. Nerōne P. Quīntiliō cōsulibus, āram Pācis Augustae senātus prō reditū meō cōsacrandam cēnsuit ad campum Mārtium, in quā magistrātūs et sacerdotēs uirginēsque Vestālēs anniuersārium sacrificium facere iussit.

Iānum Quirīnum, quem clausum esse maiōrēs nostrī uoluērunt cum per tōtum imperium populī Rōmānī terrā marīque esset parta uictōriīs pāx, cum, priusquam nāscerer, ā conditā urbe bis omnīnō clausum fuisse prodātur memoriae, ter mē prīncipe senātus claudendum esse cēnsuit.

lēgibus nouīs mē auctōrē lātīs, multa exempla maiōrum exolēscentia iam ex nostrō saeculō redūxī et ipse multārum rērum exempla imitanda posterīs trādidi. (Rēs gestae 2-4, 12-13, 8)

quī [To be picked up by eōs]
parentem [i.e. Julius Caesar (by adoption)]
trucidō 1 I slaughter
exsili-um ī 2n. exile
expellō 3 expulī I drive out
iūdicī-um ī 2n. tribunal [But why dat./abl.? Hold]
lēgitim-us a um legal
ulcīscor 3 ultus I punish [Explains iūdicīis – the means by which he acted]
postea afterwards
bellum [Nom. or acc.? Wait]
inferō 3 I bring, wage x (acc.) against y (dat.) [Participle, so possibly 'waging war'. Case is acc. pl. (-īs). Does it agree with anyone? Yes, with eōs 'them', which is not repeated. So it must mean 'them waging war' – in the acc.]
rēi pūblīcae [Must surely be dat. after bellum inferō]

uīcī [Subject and verb, explaining why inferentis is acc.]
bis twice
aciēs aciē-ī 5f. battle-line [Why abl.?]
bella [Nom. or acc. pl.? Wait]
cīuīl-is e civil
extern-us a um foreign
orbis orb-is 3m. (terrārum) the world
5 uictor uictōr-is 3m. victor
omnibus [Dat. or abl. pl.? And who are these 'all'?]
ueni-a ae 1f. pardon
petentibus [What are the 'all' doing?]
cīuibz [Ah. Who the 'all' are]
parcō 3 pepercī I spare (+ dat.) [Explains omnibus . . . cīuibz]
gēs gent-is 3f. nation [externās confirms it must be acc., so wait]
quibus . . . potuit lit. 'to whom it could safely be pardoned' i.e. 'whom one could pardon safely'
cōseruō 1 I protect, preserve

- quam than [Await verb taking infinitive + *quam*]
excīdō 3 I exterminate
triumph-us ī 2m. triumph
ducti sunt ['some masculine plurals were led': wait to find out who]
curr-us ūs 4m. chariot
liber-ī ōrum 2m. pl. children
nouem nine
cum [Followed by ablative? No. So 'when', 'since', 'although']
Hispani-a ae 1f. Spain
Galli-a ae 1f. Gaul
rēbus . . . *gestis* [Looks suspiciously like an abl. abs., and so it is]
prosperē successfully
Nerō Nerōn-is 3m. Nero
Quintili-us ī 2m. Quintilius [i.e. the year 13]
ār-a ae 1f. *Pācis* altar of peace [Why acc.? Wait]
August-us a um of Augustus
 10 *redit-us* ūs 4m. return
cōnsacrādam (*esse*) 'should be consecrated' [Acc. and (inf.) after *cēnsuit*. Since *cōnsacrādam* is acc. s. f., it must agree with *āram*]
cēnsēō 2 I vote
camp-us *Mārti-us* *camp-ī* *Mārt-ī* 2m. the Campus Martius (of Mars), in Rome [in *quā* (f.), so refers back to what?]
magistrāt-us ūs 4m. magistrate [But nom. or acc. pl.? Do any of the following nouns (to *Vestālēs*) tell you definitely?]
sacerdōs *sacerdōt-is* 3m. or f. priest(ess)
uirgō Vestāl-is *uirgin-is* *Vestāl-is* 3f. + 3 adj. Vestal Virgin [Still problem whether these nom. or acc., so continue to hold]
anniuersāri-us a um yearly
sacrifici-um ī 2n. sacrifice [Also nom. or acc., so hold!]
iussit [Singular. So *magistrātūs* . . . *uestālēs* cannot be the subject. A 'yearly sacrifice' cannot 'order'. So 'senate' must be the understood subject from the previous clause.]

- Hence 'on which the senate ordered . . .']
lān-us ī *Quirīn-us* ī 2m. the archway (or arched passage) of Janus Quirinus in the forum, with doors at both ends, forming the god's shrine [Why acc.? Hold, till the end of the sentence]
claudō 3 *clausī* *claus(s)us* I close
maiōrēs *maiōr-um* 3m. pl. ancestors
pariō 3/4 *peperī* *partus* I win, gain [Hold *parta*]
uictoriīs [Abl. of means after *parta*]
 15 *pāx* [Solves *parta*]
cum although
priusquam [+ subj.] before
nāscor 3 dep. I am born
condita urbs the founded city i.e. the foundation of the city
bis twice
omnīnō in all
prōdō 3 I transmit x (acc.) to y (dat.) [The dative is given by *memoriae* 'to history/memory': but what is the subject of *cum prodātur*? No subject is quoted, so try 'it', i.e. 'although it is transmitted to memory/history', when *clausum fuisse* becomes acc. and inf., i.e. 'that (it) had been closed']
ter thrice
claudendum esse 'that it should be closed' [What is 'it'? Back to the start of the sentence – *lānum Quirīnum*]
nou-us a um new
auctor auctōr-is 3m. initiator
exempl-um ī 2n. example
maiōrēs *maiōr-um* 3m. pl. ancestors
exolēscō 3 I go out of fashion
saecul-um ī 2n. age
redūcō 3 *redūxī* I bring back
imitanda 'to be copied' [Refers to *exempla*. But still hold case]
poster-ī ōrum 2m. pl. future generations
trādō 3 *trādidi* I hand down x (acc.) to y (dat.)

Deliciae Latinae

(Word-building, word exercises and everyday Latin sections are no longer supplied. From now on there will be further reading in real Latin in the *Deliciae Latinae* sections.)

Martial

ut recitem tibi nostra rogās epigrammata. nōlō.
 nōn audīre, Celer, sed recitāre cupīs. (1.63)

recitō 1 I read out loud, *epigramma* *epigrammat-is*
 recite my own poetry 3n. epigram

Elio Giulio Crotti c. 1564

NARCISSUS

(who fell in love with himself, looking at his reflection in a pool)

hicne amor est? hicne est furor? aut insānia mentis?
 nōlō, uolō, atque iterum nōlō, iterumque uolō.
 hicne gelū est? hicne est ignis? nam spīritus aequē
 mī ignēscit, gelidō et torpet in ōre anima.
 uērum nōn amor aut furor est, ignisue gelūue: 5
 ipse ego sum, quī mē mī ēripiū ac rapuī.

amor amōr-is 3m. love
insāni-a ae 1f. madness
mēns ment-is 3f. mind
gelū n. ice
spīrit-us ūs 4m. spirit
aequē equally
mī = *mihi* (dat. of advantage/
 disadvantage)

ignēscō 3 I catch fire
gelid-us a um cold
torpeō 2 I am numb
anim-a ae 1f. breath
 5 -ue or
ēripiō 3/4 *ēripiū* I tear x (acc.) away
 from y (dat.)
rapiō 3/4 *rapuī* I seize, snatch

Notes

- Crotti uses much elision (cutting off a final vowel before a following vowel). In l. 1 *hicn(e) est*; l. 2 *atqu(e) iterum, nōl(ō) iterumque*; l. 3 *gel(ū) est, hicn(e) est*; l. 4 *m(ī) ignēscit, gelid(ō) et . . . ōr(e) anima*; l. 6 *ips(e) ego . . . m(ī) ēripi(i) ac . . .*
- He also shortens a long vowel in l. 2: *nōlō* for *nōlō*.
- See p. 318 for rules of Latin metre and 185 for the elegiac couplet (the metre Crotti uses here).

Section 4G

Running vocabulary for 4G(i)

<i>āctum</i> [Understand <i>esse</i> : perf. inf. pass.]	<i>dūcāris</i> '(you) (s.) were to be led' (pres. subj. pass. of <i>dūcō</i>)
<i>adesset</i> '(he) were present' (impf. subj. of <i>adsum</i>)	<i>dulc-is e</i> sweet
<i>anteā</i> before (adv.)	<i>effugi-um</i> ī 2n. escape
<i>archipīrāt-a</i> ae 1m. chief pirate	<i>eximi-us a um</i> excellent
<i>assecūtūrum</i> [Understand <i>esse</i> : fut. inf.]	<i>extrēm-us a um</i> farthest
<i>assequor</i> 3 <i>assecūtus</i> I achieve, gain	<i>futūram</i> [Understand <i>esse</i> : fut. inf.]
<i>at enim</i> 'but, one may object'	<i>Gaii-us</i> ī 2m. Gavius
<i>audīret</i> 'he were hearing' (impf. subj. of <i>audiō</i>)	<i>haereō</i> 2 I stick
<i>captam</i> [Understand <i>esse</i> : perf. inf. pass.]	<i>ignōscō</i> 3 (+ dat.) I forgive
<i>cūitās cūitāt-is</i> 3f. state	<i>immortāl-is e</i> immortal
<i>clāmēs</i> 'would you shout' (pres. subj. of <i>clāmō</i>)	<i>incēnsam</i> [Understand <i>esse</i> : perf. inf. pass.]
<i>clāmitō</i> 1 I keep on shouting	<i>Indi-a</i> ae 1f. India
<i>cōnfiteor</i> 2 dep. I confess, acknowledge	<i>iūdicāret</i> 'he were judging' (impf. subj. of <i>iūdicō</i>)
<i>cōstituās</i> 'you (s.) were to decide' (pres. subj. of <i>cōstituō</i>)	<i>iūs iūr-is</i> 3n. law, justice
<i>content-us a um</i> happy, satisfied	<i>liberātum</i> [Understand <i>esse</i> : perf. inf. pass.]
<i>crux cruc-is</i> 3f. cross	<i>libertās libertāt-is</i> 3f. freedom
<i>dīcās</i> 'you (s.) were to say' (pres. subj. of <i>dīcō</i>)	<i>mor-a</i> ae 1f. delay
<i>dīceret</i> 'would he be saying' (impf. subj. of <i>dīcō</i>)	<i>neglegenti-a</i> ae 1f. carelessness
	<i>ō</i> oh! [Exclamation]
	<i>obscur-us a um</i>
	<i>undistinguished, mean</i>
	<i>omittō</i> 3 I pass over
	<i>ops op-is</i> 3f. help
	<i>orbis (orb-is</i> 3m.) <i>terrārum</i> the world
	<i>per</i> (+ acc.) in the name of

<i>percussōs</i> [Understand <i>esse</i> : perf. inf. pass.]
<i>Pers-ae ārum</i> 1m. pl. the Persians
<i>petō</i> 3 I seek
<i>possēs?</i> 'would you (s.) be able?' (impf. subj. of <i>possum</i>)
<i>posset?</i> 'would he be able?' (impf. subj. of <i>possum</i>)
<i>praeclūdās</i> 'you (s.) would shut off' (pres. subj. of <i>praeclūdō</i> 3)
<i>praesidi-um</i> ī 2n. protection, defence [<i>praesidiō</i> predicative dat., lit. 'for a protection']
<i>putēs</i> 'you (s.) would think' (pres. subj. of <i>putō</i>)
<i>quaerō</i> 3 I seek, look for
<i>rēgn-um</i> ī 2n. kingdom
<i>speculātor speculātōr-is</i> 3m. spy
<i>supplici-um</i> ī 2n. punishment
<i>tenu-is e</i> small, humble
<i>tollās</i> 'you (s.) were to remove' (pres. subj. of <i>tollō</i>)
<i>ueni-a</i> ae 1f. pardon
<i>uirg-a</i> ae 1f. lictor's rod

Learning vocabulary for 4G(i)

Nouns

libertās libertāt-is 3f.
freedom, liberty

mor-a ae 1f. delay
neglegenti-a ae 1f.
carelessness

praesidi-um ī 2n.
protection, defence,
guard

Adjectives

immortāl-is e immortal

tūt-us a um safe

Verbs

clāmitō 1 I keep on
shouting (= *clāmō* + *it-*)
cōnfiteor 2 dep. *cōnfessus* I
confess, acknowledge

ignōscō 3 (+ dat.) *ignōuī*
ignōtum I forgive
petō 3 *petuī* *petitus* I seek

quaerō 3 *quaesiuī* *quaesitus*
I seek, look for; ask

Others

anteā before (adv.: cf.
ante)

per (+ acc.) in the name
of (through, by)

Running vocabulary for 4G(ii)

appellō 1 I call
bēsti-a ae 1f. beast
caus-a ae 1f. cause
cūitās cūitāt-is 3f. state
cognitor cognitōr-is 3m. one
who would support
(him), referee
cognōsceret '(he) had
recognised' (impf. subj.
of *cognōscō*)
commouērentur '(they)
would be moved'
(impf. subj. of
commouēō)
commūn-is e common
conqueror 3 dep. I
complain of
cōstituerēs 'you would
have established' (impf.
subj. of *cōstituō*)
crux cruc-is 3f. cross
dēplōrō 1 I denounce

dīcam 'should I say' (pres.
subj. of *dīcō*)
dign-us a um worthy
eques equit-is 3m. 'knight'
(member of Roman
business class)
Gaii-us ī 2m. Gavius
ignōrāret 'he had not
known', 'he had been
unacquainted with'
(impf. subj. of *ignōrō* 1)
inanim-us a um inanimate
īfest-us a um hateful,
hostile
inimic-us a um hostile,
enemy
iūs iūr-is 3n. law, justice
Lūci-us ī 2m. Lucius
mūt-us a um mute, dumb
nōminō 1 I name
nou-us a um new

parricidi-um ī 2n.
parricide; treason
quamuīs (+ subj.)
although
Raeci-us ī 2m. Raecius
mitterēs 'you would
have remitted' (x (acc.)
from y (*dē* + abl.))
(impf. subj. of *remittō*)
supplici-um ī 2n.
punishment; *summum*
supplicium the death
penalty
tollerēs 'you would have
lifted' (impf. subj. of
tollō)
uellem 'I were wishing'
(impf. subj. of *uolō*)
uidērētur 'it had seemed
right' (impf. subj. pass.
of *uideō*)

Note

1. 334 *sed quid ego plura de Gaiō? sc. dīcam* (pres. subj.); tr. 'But why should I say more ...'

Learning vocabulary for 4G(ii)

Nouns

<i>caus-a</i> ae 1f. cause; (case; reason)	<i>eques equit-is</i> 3m. 'knight'; (member of Roman business class)	<i>iūs iūr-is</i> 3n. law, justice
<i>cīuitās cīuitāt-is</i> 3f. state	(horseman; pl. cavalry)	<i>supplici-um</i> ī 2n. punishment; <i>summum supplicium</i> the death penalty

Adjectives

<i>inimīc-us</i> a um hostile, enemy	<i>nou-us</i> a um new
--------------------------------------	------------------------

Grammar and exercises for 4G

138 The subjunctive: special usages

Subjunctive means 'subordinated' (*subiungō subiūctus* 'I join under'), and came to be used in clauses just because they were subordinate (e.g. *cum* + subjunctive 124, which always took the indicative in early Latin, and does occasionally in classical). But it does have a specific meaning of its own: to simplify, it indicates that the speaker wants an action to take place (because he thinks it should or because it is his desire that it should) or that the speaker thinks it possible that under certain conditions it *could* take place. (Sometimes, but rarely, it indicates that the speaker expects the action to take place, but this function is normally carried out by the future indicative.)

Observe how the subjunctives met so far fit into these categories: indirect commands ('he ordered him to go': *ut/nē* + subjunctive) use the subjunctive to express the speaker's *will* that something should happen; 'it happens that' (*accidit ut* (*nōn*) + subjunctive) uses the subjunctive to indicate that *conditions make it possible* for x to happen; 'I bring it about that' (*perficiō ut/nē* + subjunctive) often expresses the speaker's *intentions* that something should happen.

139 Conditionals with subjunctive verbs ('if x were . . . y would')

Given the above functions of the subjunctive, it is not surprising that Latin uses the subjunctive in conditional sentences where the conditions stated are *unreal* or *unfulfilled*, i.e. they contain the words 'would' or 'should' in English. E.g.

'If I were rich, I would not (now) be working' (referring to present time)

'If I were to become rich, I would give all my money to the poor' (referring to future time)

Consider the Latin translations:

sī dīues essem, nōn labōrārem

sī dīues fīam, omnem pecūniam pauperibus dem

Observe that the imperfect subjunctive is used in *both clauses* where reference is to the present time, and the present subjunctive in *both clauses* where the reference is to the future time. Study the following examples and check this rule:

sī pater adesset, quid dīceret? 'if father were (now) here, what would he (now) be saying?'

sī Verrī ignōscātis, nēmo uōbīs ignōscat 'if you were to pardon Verres (some time in the future), no-one would pardon you'

sī fugiant, sequāmur 'if they were to flee, we would follow'

sī mentīrēris, tē caederem 'if you were (now) lying, I would (now) be beating you'

So the basic rules are:

sī + subjunctive (followed by a main clause with subjunctive verb) indicates conditions with 'would' or 'should'

sī + imperfect subjunctive (main clause verb in imperfect subjunctive): 'if x were (now) the case, y would (now) be the case'

sī + present subjunctive (main clause verb in present subjunctive) 'if x were to be (in the future) the case, y would be the case'

We say 'basic' rules, because Latin is flexible and can mix subjunctive and indicative in these clauses.

Notes

- 1 *sī quis* = 'if anyone', e.g. *sī quis exeat, puniātur* 'if anyone were to go out, he would be punished' (cf. on *nē quis* 134³ and 145²; forms I4).
- 2 *nisi* 'if not', 'unless' follows the same rules, e.g. *nisi pulcher essēs, tē nōn amārem* 'if you were not (now) so handsome, I would not (now) be in love with you'. *nisi quis* = 'unless anyone', see n.1 above.
- 3 In some instances, the imperfect subjunctives refer to the past, e.g. *sī Raecius cognōsceret hominem, aliquid . . . remitterēs* 'if Raecius had recognised the fellow, you would have remitted something'.
- 4 Quite often, a statement includes only the main clause of a condition omitting the *sī* clause, e.g. *uidērēs* 'you would have seen', *uelim* 'I would like'.

Exercises

Morphology/syntax

1 Translate these sentences:

- sī Verris pater adesset, filium suum cūitātī nostrae hostem esse iūdicāret* (2 possibilities).
- sī Verrī ignōscāmus, stultī sīmus.*
- sī Verrēs mea pōcula postulet, ego sine morā ad eum litterās mittam.*
- etiam animālia, sī haec audīrent, commouērentur* (2 possibilities).
- nisi tē cūem Rōmānum esse clāmitēs, necēris.*
- sī hoc praesidium habērēs, etiam hostēs tibi parcerent* (2 possibilities).
- sī esset prōuidētia, nūlla essent mala.* (Gellius)
- uīna parant animum Venerī, nisi plūrima sūmās.* (Ovid)

prōuidēti-a ae 1f.

foresight, providence

uīn-um ī 2n. wine

Venus Vener-is 3f. Venus;

love-making

sūmō 3 I take

2 Give the Latin for the following (remember reference to future 'were to' = present subjunctive, and 'would' also = present; 'were —ing', 'were (now)' = imperfect subjunctive; 'would have' also = imperfect subjunctive):

- If I were (now) a Roman citizen . . .
- If he were to demand protection . . .

- If there were not (now) a delay . . .
- If our friends were to be moved . . .
- If we were asking for protection . . .
- If I were to keep shouting . . .
- I would like to say . . .
- I would have liked to ask . . .
- I would have demanded . . .
- I would be moved . . .

140 Subjunctive in relative clauses

The subjunctive can be used in relative clauses as well, sometimes with virtually no change in meaning at all, but note the following specific usages:

- 1 Consecutive (so-called 'generic'): establishing conditions for possible action, especially common after (a) *est quī / sunt quī* 'there exists/exist the sort of person/people who', (b) *is quī* 'the sort of person who', e.g.

- sunt quī sciunt* 'there are (those of the sort) who know'
- ea nōn est quae hoc faciat* 'she is not the one who does this' = 'not the sort of person who . . .'

- 2 Causal, i.e. the relative clause shows the reason why something is happening, e.g.

sānus tū nōn es quī mē fūrem uocēs (Plautus) 'you are not sane who call me a thief' = 'because you call me a thief'

This usage is sometimes strongly 'signposted' by the addition of the fixed form *quippe* 'in as much as', e.g.

sōlis candor inlūstrior est quam ūllius ignis, quippe quī inmēnsō mundō tam longē lātēque conlūceat (Cicero) 'The brightness of the sun is more brilliant than that of any fire, inasmuch as it shines so far and wide in an immeasurable universe'

141 cum, quamuis + subjunctive

- 1 We have already met *cum* + pluperfect subjunctive meaning 'when', 'since', 'although' 'x had —ed' (124). *cum* is also used with the imperfect subjunctive, to mean 'when', 'since', 'although' 'x was —ing', and with the present subjunctive, to mean 'since', 'although' 'x is —ing'. (NB. NOT 'when'.)

- 2 *quamuis* means 'although' (really 'however') and takes the subjunctive, e.g. *quamuis fortis esset ab hostibus fugit* 'although he was courageous, he fled from the enemy' (really 'however brave he might have been, he still fled from the enemy'. Contrast *quamquam* 'although', which takes the indicative.)

142 Subjunctive in reported speech

In reported speech subordinate clauses have their verb in the subjunctive. Since this is simply a way of showing that the clause belongs in the indirect quotation, the meaning is the same as the indicative, e.g.

Direct: 'because I am handsome, everyone loves me' *quod pulcher sum, omnes me amant*

Indirect (past): 'he said that, because (as he said) he was handsome, everyone loved him' *dixit omnis se, quod pulcher esset, amare*

Indirect (present): 'he says that, because he is handsome, all love him' *dicit omnis se, quod pulcher sit, amare*

Cf. *Gaium . . . dicit . . . clamitasse se ciuem Romanum esse quod moram morti quaereret* 'you say that Gaius shouted continually that he was a Roman citizen because he was seeking a delay to his death'

Note

Generally speaking, it will be obvious from context what tense in the original statement is represented by the subjunctive. Here is a summary of the main rules determining the tense of the subjunctive:

	Subjunctive used in 'reported' speech	
	Primary sequence	Secondary sequence
If the 'unreported' verb was originally present indicative	Present	Imperfect
If the 'unreported' verb was originally future indicative	-urus (i.e. fut. part.) + <i>sim</i> (sometimes present)	-urus essem (sometimes imperfect)
If the 'unreported' verb was originally past indicative	Perfect	Pluperfect

143 Infinitives without *esse* in reported speech

In accusative and infinitive constructions, *esse* is often dropped, e.g.

dixit se moriturum (esse) 'he said that he would die'

dixerunt urbem captam (esse) 'they said that the city had been captured'

negat se secuturam (esse) 'she says that she will not follow' (how do you know it is 'she'?)

Here are two examples from *Text, 4G(i)*:

si audiret a te ciuis Romanos securi percussos 'if he heard that Roman citizens had been executed by you'

arbitrati . . . hanc rem sibi praesidio futuram 'thinking that this would be a protection for them'

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Here is part of the original of section 4F(ii). Gavius has just been arrested at Messana. Remember that Latin literature was composed to be read aloud. The final product of your study of each passage should be a well-phrased recitatio ('reading aloud').

itaque ad magistratum Mamertinum statim deducitur Gavius, eoque ipsa die casu Messanam Verris uenit. res ad eum defertur, esse ciuem Romanum qui se Syracusis in lautumis fuisse quereretur; quem iam ingredientem in nauem et Verri nimis atrociter minitatem ab se retractum esse et adseruatum . . . agit hominibus gratias et eorum beneuolentiam erga se diligentiamque conlaudat, ipse inflammatus scelere et furore in forum uenit; ardabant oculi, toto ex ore crudelitas eminebat . . . repente hominem praeipere atque in foro medio nudari ac deligari et uirgas expediri iubet. clamabat ille miser se ciuem esse Romanum municipem Consanum; meruisse cum L. Raecio, splendidissimo equite Romano, qui Panhormi negotiaretur, ex quo haec Verris scire posset. tum iste, se comperisse eum in Siciliam a ducibus fugitiuorum esse missum . . . deinde iubet undique hominem uehementissimae uerberari. caedebatur uirgis in medio foro Messanae ciuis Romanus, iudices, cum interea nullus gemitus, nulla uox alia illius miseri inter dolorem crepitumque plagarum audiebatur nisi haec 'ciuis Romanus sum'. hac se commemoratone ciuitatis omnia uerba depulsurum cruciatumque a corpore deiecturum arbitrabatur; is non modo hoc non perfecit, ut uirgarum uim deprecaretur, sed cum

implōrāret saepius ūsūrpāretque nōmen cīuitātis, crux – crux, inquam – 20
infēlicī et aerumnōsō, quī numquam istam pestem uīderat,
comparābātur. (Cicero, In Verrem II 5, 62.160–2)

- Māmertīn-us a um of Messana
cāsū 'by chance'
esse cīuem . . . [Acc. + inf. after *dēfertur*]
sē [Hold – expect reflexive verb or
acc. + inf.]
lautumi-ae ārum 1f. pl. stone-quarries
queror 3 dep. I complain
quem [Connecting relative – who is the
antecedent?]
Verrī [Hold: it will be governed by
minitāntem]
minitor 1 dep. I threaten continually
[minor + -it-]
sē [I.e. the people reporting to Verres]
5 retrahō 3 retrāxī retractus I drag back
[Subject of *agit* is Verres]
beneuolenti-a ae 1f. good will
ergā (+ acc.) towards
dīligenti-a ae 1f. care
conlaud-ō 1 I praise
ārdeō 2 I burn (intrans.)
crūdēlitās crūdēlitāt-is 3f. cruelty
ēmineō 2 I stand out
prōripiō 3/4 I drag forward
dēligō 1 I bind
uirg-a ae 1f. rod
expediō 4 I get ready
ille miser [I.e. Gavius]
10 mūniceps mūnicip-is 3m. citizen of a
mūnicipium (= free town)
Cōnsān-us a um of Consa
meruisse [Acc. + inf. construction
continues with *sē* still as subject]
mereō 2 I serve (in the army)
splendid-us a um distinguished
Panorm-us ī 2f. Palermo [Cf. Lilybaei
for case]
negōtior 1 dep. I do business
haec [Hold]

- iste [Change of subject to Verres. The
introductory verb for the acc. + inf.
sē comperisse is omitted – supply
dixit]
comperiō 4 comperī I find out, learn
eum [I.e. Gavius]
fugitiū-us ī 2m. deserter
undique from all sides
15 gemit-us ūs 4m. groan
[Note lack of *et* between *nūllus gemitus*,
nūlla uōx (though they are to be taken
together): this is called *asyndeton*: see
p. 314(c)]
dolor dolōr-is 3m. pain
crepit-us ūs 4m. noise
plāg-a ae 1f. blow
sē [Hold: it is part of an acc. + inf.
phrase (in unemphatic position: see
98⁴)]
commemorātiō commemorātiōn-is 3f.
mention
cīuitās cīuitāt-is 3f. (here) citizenship
dēpulsūrum [Understand *esse*]
dēpellō 3 dēpulī dēpulsus I turn away,
prevent
cruciāt-us ūs 4m. torture [Cf. *crux cruc-*
is]
corpus corpor-is 3n. body
dēiectūrum [Understand *esse*]
dēiciō 3/4 dēiēcī dēiectus I drive away
hoc [Refers forward to the *ut* clause]
dēprecor 1 dep. I ward off (by earnest
prayer)
20 implōrō 1 I implore, beseech
ūsūrpō 1 I use
crux cruc-is 3f. cross
infēlix infēlic-is unfortunate [Used as
noun here]
aerumnōs-us a um miserable [Used as
noun here]
pestis pest-is 3f. curse, bane [Refers to
crux]

English–Latin

Reread the text of 4G(ii) and then translate this passage into Latin:

Although¹ Gavius had named Raecius as his guarantor, you did not send a letter to him. I would like² you to tell me, Verres, this. Why did you delay? Why did you not send him a letter at once? Did not Gavius say³, 'If you were to⁴ send a letter to Raecius, he would⁵ say that I am a Roman citizen. If he were⁵ present, here, he would⁵ declare that I, whom you are accusing⁶, am innocent.' But you, Verres, with the utmost disregard for Gavius, got a cross ready. If I were telling⁵ this story⁷ to wild beasts, even they would⁵ be moved.

¹ *quamquam* + indicative: *quamuis* or *cum* + subjunctive.

² Potential – use present subjunctive. See 139⁴.

³ 'say': open inverted commas and start the next part before inserting *inquit*.

⁴ 'were to . . . would': present subjunctives.

⁵ 'were . . . would': use imperfect subjunctives.

⁶ Subordinate clause in indirect speech: use present subjunctive verb.

⁷ 'story': use n. s. or pl. of *hic*, or use *rēs*.

Rēs gestae dīuī Augustī

in cōsulātū sextō et septimō, postquam bella cīuilia exstīxeram, per cōsēsum ūniuersōrum potītus rērum omnium, rem pūblicam ex meā potestāte in senātūs populīque Rōmānī arbitrium trānstulī. quō prō meritō meō, senātūs cōsultō, Augustus appellātus sum et laureīs postēs aedium meārum uestītī pūblicē corōnaque cīuica super iānuam meam 5
fixa est et clupeus aureus in cūriā lūliā positus, quem mihi senātum populumque Rōmānum dare uirtūtis clēmentiaeque et iūstītie et pietātis caussā testātum est per eius clupeī īnscripitiōnem. post id tempus, auctōritāte omnibus praestitī, potestātis autem nihilō amplius habuī
quam cēterī quī mihi quōque in magistrātū conlēgae fuērunt. 10

tertium decimum cōsulātum cum gerēbam, senātus et equester ōrdō populusque Rōmānus ūniuersus appellāuit mē patrem patriae, idque in uestibulō aedium meārum īscribendum et in cūriā lūliā et in forō Aug. sub quadrīgīs quae mihi ex s.c. positae sunt cēnsuit. cum scripsī haec, annum agēbam septuagēsumum sextum. (Rēs gestae 34–5) 15

- cōsulāt-us ūs* 4m. consulship
sext-us a um sixth
septim-us a um seventh } [i.e. 28 and 27]
postquam after
cūil-is e civil
exstinguō 3 *exstīnxī* I put out
cōnsēns-us ūs 4m. agreement
ūniuers-ī ōrum 2m. pl. everyone
potior 4 dep. (+ gen.) I gain control of
potestās potestāt-is 3f. power
arbitri-um ī 2n. judgement, arbitration
trānsferō 3 *trānstulī* I transfer
quō [Connecting relative, governed by *prō*]
merit-um ī 2n. good deeds
cōnsult-um ī 2n. decree
appellō 1 I call
laure-a ae 1f. laurel-wreath [Dat. or abl.? Hold]
postis post-is 3m. doorpost
 5 *uestiō* 4 I clothe [Solves *laureīs*]
pūblicē publicly
cūic-us a um civic
super (+ acc.) above
fīgō 3 4th p.p. *fīx-us* I place, fix
clupe-us ī 2m. shield [see frontispiece]
cūri-a ae 1f. senate-house
Iūli-us a um Julian
quem . . . dare lit. 'which (that) the senate and the Roman people gave to me'
clēmenti-a ae 1f. mercy
iūstiti-a ae 1f. justice
pietās pietāt-is 3f. respect for gods, family and homeland

- caus(s)ā* (+ gen.) for the sake of
 [Follows the noun(s) it qualifies]
testātum est 'it was witnessed'
īnscriptiō īnscriptiōn-is 3f. inscription
post (+ acc.) after
auctōritās auctōritāt-is 3f. authority, prestige
praestō 1 *praestitī* I excel x (dat.) in y (abl.)
nihilō amplius nothing more, no more
 [Governs *potestātis*]
 10 *magistrāt-us ūs* 4m. office
conlēg-a ae 1m. colleague
terti-us decim-us a um thirteenth
cōsulāt-us ūs 4m. consulship
 [i.e. 2]
equester equestr-is e of knights
ōrdō ōrdin-is 3m. order
patri-a ae 1f. fatherland
ūniuers-us a um whole
uestibul-um ī 2n. forecourt
īnscrībendum to be inscribed [Wait to solve *īnscrībendum* and *id*, which agree, till end of sentence]
Aug. = *Augustō*, from *August-us a um* of Augustus
quadrīg-ae ārum 1f. pl. four-horse chariot
s.c. = *senātūs cōsultō* (*cōnsult-um ī* 2n. decree)
cēnsēō 2 I vote [Solves *id* . . . *īnscrībendum*. Subject of *cēnsuit*?]
 15 *agō* 3 I pass, live
septuagēsum-us sext-us a um seventy-sixth

SECTION FIVE

Section 5A

Notes

- 1 From now on you will find notes on new grammar at the end of each running vocabulary. Consult these as you read the chapter.
- 2 Names are given only on their first occurrence in this section. Consult the list on *Text* pp. 89–92 if you forget them.

Running vocabulary for 5A(i)

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| <i>adeō</i> to such an extent | <i>cōsulāt-us ūs</i> 4m. consulship | <i>īnsum inesse īnfui</i> (+ dat.) I am in |
| <i>agitō</i> 1 I stir up, discuss [See note] | <i>Curi-us ī</i> 2m. Quintus | <i>interdum</i> sometimes |
| <i>Antōni-us ī</i> 2m. Gaius Antonius | <i>Curius</i> | <i>inuidi-a ae</i> 1f. envy, hatred |
| <i>C.</i> = <i>Gāi-us ī</i> 2m. Gaius | <i>dēclārō</i> 1 I declare | <i>inuid-us a um</i> envious |
| <i>Catilin-a ae</i> 1m. Catiline | <i>dēdit-us a um</i> devoted to (+ dat.) | <i>Itali-a ae</i> 1f. Italy |
| <i>cēnsor cēnsōr-is</i> 3m. censor (official appointed every 5 years to vet senate) | <i>efficiō</i> 3/4 <i>effēcī effectus</i> I bring (it) about (that: ut + subj.) | <i>libidō libidin-is</i> 3f. lust |
| <i>Cicerō Cicerōn-is</i> 3m. Cicero | <i>ēgregi-us a um</i> outstanding | <i>mandō</i> 1 I entrust (x acc. to y dat.) |
| <i>comiti-a ōrum</i> 1 n. pl. elections | <i>fact-um ī</i> 2n. deed, happening | <i>M.</i> = <i>Mārc-us ī</i> 2m. Marcus |
| <i>concutiō</i> 3/4 <i>concussī</i> | <i>Faesul-ae ārum</i> 1f. pl. Faesulae (Fiesole) | <i>Mānli-us ī</i> 2m. Manlius |
| <i>concussus</i> I shake, alarm | <i>ferōx ferōc-is</i> savage, wild | <i>minuō</i> 3 I diminish, weaken |
| <i>coniūrātiō coniūrātiōn-is</i> 3f. conspiracy | <i>Fului-a ae</i> 1f. Fulvia | <i>mōns mont-is</i> 3m. mountain |
| <i>coniūrātor coniūrātōr-is</i> 3m. conspirator | <i>glōrior</i> 1 dep. I boast | <i>moueō</i> 2 I remove (x acc. from y abl.) |
| <i>cōnsuētūdō cōnsuētūdin-is</i> 3f. amorous association (+ gen. 'involving') | <i>grāt-us a um</i> pleasing (to x: dat.) | <i>namque</i> for, in fact |
| | <i>in diēs</i> day by day | <i>nārrātae</i> 'told' (nom. pl. f.) |
| | <i>in prīmīs</i> especially | <i>nārrō</i> 1 I tell, relate |
| | <i>īnsolēns īnsolent-is</i> arrogant | <i>nōbilitās nōbilitāt-is</i> 3f. nobility |
| | <i>īnsolenti-a ae</i> 1f. arrogance | |

obnoxius a um servile (to x: dat.) [see note on l. 9]
obscurus a um ignoble (lit. 'dark')
opportunus a um strategic
parō 1 I get ready [See note]
periculōsus a um dangerous
plērusque plēraque
plērumque the majority of
polluō 3 I pollute
portāre [See note]
post '(put) behind (them)'

Q. = *Quintus* *ī* 2m.
Quintus
quaecumque whatever (things) (acc. pl. n.)
quamuīs however [See note]
rēs public-a rē-ī public-ae (5f. + 1/2 adj.) state
reticeō 2 I keep quiet (about)
stupr-um ī 2n. sexual intercourse [Outside marriage, and frowned upon because of Fulvia's status]

superbi-a ae 1f. pride, arrogance
Tulli-us ī 2m. Tullius
uānitās uānitāt-is 3f. vanity, boasting
uetus ueter-is old, long-established (like *dīues*. See 47)
ut (+ subj. preceded by *adeō*, *tantus*, *tam*: indicating result) that

Notes

- l. 2 *adeō* points forward to *ut* (= 'that': result).
- ll. 3, 4 *tanta* points forward to *ut* (= 'that': result).
- l. 6 *tam* points forward to *ut* (= 'that': result).
- l. 7 *adeō* points forward to *ut* (= 'that': result).
- l. 8 *tam* points forward to *ut* (= 'that': result).
- l. 9 *nisi* . . . *esset* reports his conditional statement 'if you don't lick my boots, I'll . . .' Translate 'if she were not . . .'
- l. 10 *causā cognitā* 'with the reason having been found out' (ablative absolute). *tam* points forward to *ut* (= 'that': result).
- l. 13 *tam* points forward to *ut* (= 'that': result).
- l. 14 *nouus homo* i.e. a man whose family had not previously held a consulship. *nōllent* is pl. because *plēraque nōbilitās* = 'most of the nobles'.
- l. 15 *quamuīs* qualifies *ēgregius*: 'a *homo nouus* however *ēgregius*'.
- ll. 16–17 *comitiīs habitīs* 'with the elections having been held' (ablative absolute).
- l. 19 *agitāre*: infinitive, but used as main verb: translate 'he stirred up'.
- l. 20 *parāre*: infinitive but used as main verb: translate 'he got ready'.
- l. 21 *portāre*: infinitive but used as main verb: translate 'he conveyed'.

Learning vocabulary for 5A(i)

Nouns

<i>arm-a ōrum</i> 2n. pl. arms; armed men	<i>coniūrātor coniūrātōr-is</i> 3m. conspirator	<i>mōns mont-is</i> 3m. mountain
<i>coniūrātiō coniūrātiō-is</i> 3f. conspiracy	<i>cōsulāt-us ūs</i> 4m. consulship	<i>rēs public-a rē-ī public-ae</i> (5f. + 1/2 adj.) state, republic

Adjectives

grāt-us a um pleasing (to x: dat.)

uetus ueter-is (like *dīues*, 47) old; long-established

Verbs

agitō 1 I stir up, incite (*agō* + *-it-*)
efficiō 3/4 *effēcī effectus* I bring about (often followed by *ut* + subj.); cause, make; complete

īsum inesse īfuī I am in (x: dat.)
mandō 1 I entrust (x acc. to y dat.)
moueō 2 *mōuī mōtus* I remove; move; cause, begin

nārrō 1 I tell, relate (x acc. to y dat.)
parō 1 I prepare, get ready; provide; obtain

Others

adeō to such an extent
in diēs day by day
in primīs especially

quamuīs however, ever such a (qualifying an adj.; cf. *quamuīs* + subj. – 'although')

Running vocabulary for 5A(ii)

absurd-us a um foolish, silly
accēns-us a um on fire, aroused
adiungō 3 *adiūnxī adiūnctus* I join (x acc. to y dat.)
aes aliēn-um aer-is aliēn-ī (3n. + 1/2 adj.) debt (lit. 'someone else's bronze')
aetās aetāt-is 3f. age
aliquot several
cant-us ūs 4m. singing
cār-us a um dear
committō 3 *commīsī* I commit
decus decor-is 3n. honour
doct-us a um skilled (in x: abl.)
facēti-ae ārum 1f. pl. wit
fortūnāt-us a um fortunate

(in x: abl.)
incidō 3 *incidī* I fall into (in + acc.)
ingeni-um ī 2n. intellect
interficiō 3/4 *interfēcī interfectus* I kill
ioc-us ī 2m. joke (*iocum mouēre* = 'to crack a joke')
Latīn-us a um Latin
lepōs lepōr-is 3m. charm
liber-ī ōrum 2m. pl. children
libidō libidin-is 3f. lust
litter-ae ārum 1f. pl. literature
mātrōn-a ae 1f. lady, wife and mother
modest-us a um chaste
moll-is e gentle
petō 3 I proposition, court

procāx procāc-is bold, forward
prōrsus in a word
puḍicitī-a ae 1f. chastity
quaest-us ūs 4m. living
saltātiō saltātiōn-is 3f. dancing
Semprōni-a ae 1f. Sempronia
sollicitō 1 I stir up
stupr-um ī 2n. prostitution
tolerō 1 I sustain
uel . . . uel . . . uel either . . . or . . . or
uers-us ūs 4m. verse; (pl.) poetry
uirīl-is e of a man
urbān-us a um of the city
ut (+ subj.) in order that / to [See notes ll. 25–6]
ut (+ subj.) that [Result: see note on l. 33]

Notes

- ll. 25–6 *ut* + subjunctive = ‘in order to’ (purpose).
 ll. 30–1 *genere atque fōrmā*, . . . *uirō atque liberīs*: ablatives (of respect) – await *fortūnāta* to solve them.
 ll. 31–2 *litterīs Graecīs et Latīnīs* and then *cantū et saltātiōne*: ablatives of respect – await *docta* to solve them.
 l. 33 *sic* ‘so’ points forward to *ut* (‘that’: result). Supply *erat* with *accēnsa*.
 l. 34 *uērūm* . . . *absurdūm*: no verb, so supply *erat* or *fuit*.
 l. 35 *posse*: infinitive, but used as main verb, so translate ‘she could’.
 l. 36 *inerat* is governed by both *facētia* and *lepōs*, but it is singular by attraction to the last-mentioned nominative noun. A common phenomenon.

Learning vocabulary for 5A(ii)

Nouns

<i>aes aliēn-um aer-is aliēn-ī</i> 3n. + 1/2 adj. debt (lit. ‘someone else’s bronze’)	<i>liber-ī ōrum</i> 2m. pl. children <i>libidō libidin-is</i> 3f. lust <i>litter-ae ārum</i> 1f. pl. literature; (letter)	<i>mātrōn-a ae</i> 1f. wife, mother; lady <i>uers-us ūs</i> 4m. verse; (pl.) poetry
<i>aetās aetāt-is</i> 3f. age; lifetime; generation		

Adjectives

<i>doct-us a um</i> skilled (in x: abl.), learned	<i>fortūnāt-us a um</i> fortunate, lucky (in x: abl.)	<i>Latīn-us a um</i> Latin <i>modest-us a um</i> chaste, modest, discreet
--	--	---

Verbs

<i>adiungō</i> 3 <i>adiūnxī adiūctus</i> I join (x acc. to y dat.)	<i>interficiō</i> 3/4 <i>interfēcī</i> <i>interfectus</i> I kill	<i>petō</i> 3 <i>petiui petitus</i> I proposition, court; (beg; seek); attack, make for
---	---	--

Others

<i>aliquot</i> several	<i>uel</i> . . . <i>uel</i> either . . . or
------------------------	---

Running vocabulary for 5A(iii)

<i>agere</i> [See note on l. 44] <i>armāt-us a um</i> armed C. = <i>Gai-us</i> ī 2m. Gaius <i>collocō</i> 1 I place [For <i>collocāre</i> see note on l. 44] <i>comiti-a ōrum</i> 2n. pl. elections <i>conuocō</i> 1 I call together, summon <i>Cornēli-us</i> ī 2m. Gaius Cornelius <i>dē imprōuīsō</i> : see <i>imprōuīsō</i> <i>dīuers-us a um</i> different <i>ēnūntiō</i> 1 I declare, announce (x acc. to y dat.) <i>esse</i> [See note on l. 45] <i>ēuitō</i> 1 I avoid <i>Faesul-ae ārum</i> 1f. pl. Faesulae (Fiesole) <i>fatīgō</i> 1 I tire [For <i>fatīgārī</i> see note on l. 47] <i>festīnāre</i> [See note on l. 46] <i>frūstrā</i> in vain <i>hortārī</i> [See note on l. 46] <i>impediō</i> 4 I impede, hinder <i>impendeō</i> 2 I hang over, threaten (x: dat.) <i>imprōuīsō</i> : <i>dē imprōuīsō</i> unexpectedly	<i>initi-um</i> ī 2n. beginning <i>īnsidi-ae ārum</i> 1f. pl. ambush, trap <i>īnsomni-a ae</i> 1f. sleeplessness (pl. = bouts of sleeplessness) <i>intent-us a um</i> vigilant <i>intro-eō</i> (-īre) I go in <i>Itali-a ae</i> 1f. Italy <i>itaque</i> and so, therefore <i>item</i> likewise L. = <i>Lūci-us</i> ī 2m. Lucius <i>labor labōr-is</i> 3m. toil, hard work <i>nē</i> (+ subj.) in order that . . . not [See notes on ll. 51, 57] <i>nihilōminus</i> nevertheless <i>obsideō</i> 2 I besiege [See note on l. 45 for <i>obsidēre</i>] <i>oper-a ae</i> 1f. service <i>opportūn-us a um</i> strategic <i>parāre</i> [See note on l. 44] <i>parāt-us a um</i> prepared <i>pars part-is</i> 3f. part <i>perterrit-us a um</i> terrified <i>petō</i> 3 I stand for <i>postquam</i> after <i>praemittō</i> 3 <i>praemisi</i> I send in advance	<i>prius</i> first <i>prōcēdō</i> 3 <i>prōcessī</i> I go forward, succeed <i>prōdō</i> 3 I betray, reveal <i>prohibeō</i> 2 <i>prohibui</i> <i>prohibitus</i> I keep x (acc.) away from y (abl.) <i>properē</i> hastily <i>quiēt-us a um</i> quiet <i>repuls-a ae</i> 1f. defeat <i>repulsam ferre</i> to be defeated <i>senātor senātōr-is</i> 3m. senator <i>soci-us</i> ī 2m. ally <i>suscipiō</i> 3/4 <i>suscēpī</i> I undertake <i>tēl-um</i> ī 2n. weapon <i>Varguntēi-us</i> ī 2m. Lucius Vargunteius <i>uigilō</i> 1 I stay awake [For <i>uigilāre</i> see note on l. 47] <i>uiuō</i> 3 I am alive, live <i>ut</i> (+ subj.) in order to [See notes on ll. 39, 42, 55]
---	---	---

Notes

- l. 37 *hīs rēbus comparātīs* ‘with these things having been prepared’ (ablative absolute).
 l. 39 *ut* . . . (*ēuitāret*) ‘in order to . . .’ (purpose).
 l. 42 *ut* . . . (*habēret*) ‘in order to . . .’ (purpose).
 l. 44 *agere*: infinitive but used as main verb: translate ‘he did’. Similarly *collocāre* ‘he placed’, *parāre* ‘he prepared’.

- l. 45 *obsidēre* 'he besieged'. *esse* 'he was' (i.e. 'went around').
 l. 46 *hortārī* 'he urged'. *festināre* 'he hurried'.
 l. 47 *uigilāre* 'he stayed awake'. *fatīgārī* 'he was made weary'.
 ll. 49–50 *quī* . . . *faciant* 'to make' (purpose: *quī* + subjunctive).
 l. 51 *nē* . . . (*impediat*) 'in order that . . . not' (negative purpose).
 l. 52 *perterritis ceteris coniuratoribus* 'with the rest of the conspirators terrified' (ablative absolute).
 l. 55 *ut* . . . *interficerent* 'in order to . . . ' (purpose).
 l. 57 *nē* . . . *interficerentur* 'in order that . . . not' (negative purpose).

Learning vocabulary for 5A(iii)

Nouns

<i>insidi-ae</i> ārum 1f. pl. trap, ambush	<i>oper-a</i> ae 1f. service (attention)	<i>pars part-is</i> 3f. part
<i>Itali-a</i> ae 1f. Italy		<i>soci-us</i> ī 2m. ally, friend
		<i>tēl-um</i> ī 2n. weapon

Adjectives

<i>armāt-us</i> a um armed	<i>dīuers-us</i> a um different	<i>opportūn-us</i> a um strategic, suitable, favourable
----------------------------	---------------------------------	--

Verbs

<i>collocō</i> 1 I place, station	<i>petō</i> 3 <i>petiūi</i> <i>petītus</i> I stand for (public office);	<i>prohibeō</i> 2 I prevent, hinder, keep x (acc.)
<i>conuocō</i> 1 I summon, call together	(beg; seek; proposition, court; make for,	away from y (abl. or ā (ab) + abl.)
<i>impediō</i> 4 I prevent, impede, hinder	attack)	

Other

<i>frustrā</i> in vain	<i>postquam</i> after (+ indicative – usually perfect: translate 'after . . . had —ed')	<i>prius</i> before, previously, first
<i>itaque</i> and so, therefore		

Grammar and exercises for 5A

144 Result (or 'consecutive') clauses: 'so . . . that'

Result clauses are expressed in Latin by an introductory word such as *tam*, *adeō*, *sic*, *ita* (all 'so'), *tot* 'so many', *tantus* 'so big' picked up by *ut* 'that'

(negative *ut nōn/numquam/nēmo/nūllus* etc.) The verb in the *ut* clause is in the subjunctive (present or perfect (to be met) in primary sequence, perfect or imperfect in secondary sequence).

Diagrammatically:

<u>'so' word</u>	<u>that (not)</u>
<i>tam</i> 'so'	} <i>ut (nōn) + verb in subjunctive</i>
<i>adeō</i> 'to such an extent'	
<i>sic</i>	
<i>ita</i> 'in such a way'	
<i>tantus</i> 'so great'	
<i>tot</i> 'so many'	
<i>tālis</i> 'of such a kind'	

E.g.

tam ferōx est ut omnēs eum timeant 'he is so fierce that everyone fears him'

tam pauper erat ut fēminīs grātus nōn esset 'he was so poor that he was not attractive to women'

sic . . . Deus dīlēxit mundum, ut . . . daret 'God so loved the world that he gave . . . ' (John 3.16)

Cf. this example from Text 5A(i):

huic hominī tanta uānitās inerat ut nōn posset reticēre quae audierat
'There was so much vanity in this man that he could not keep quiet what he had heard'

Notes

- These are often called 'consecutive' clauses – from *cōnsequor cōnsecūtus* 'I follow closely' – because the result follows closely on, is the consequence or result of, the action.
- Compare this construction with *accidit ut* (135). Both establish the conditions that make the result possible, and so fall within the range of specific usages of the subjunctive (138). Compare *est/sunt quī* and *is quī* 140.1 and *perficiō ut* 135.
- Similar constructions are:

longē abest ut + subjunctive 'he is far from —ing', e.g. *longē abest ut timeat* 'he is far from being afraid'

fieri potest ut + subjunctive 'it can come about that', e.g. *fieri potest ut rem perficiat* 'it can happen that he will achieve his ends'

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- Catilinae tantus furor inerat ut in diēs plūra agitāret.
- tantum periculum est ut Fulvia omnia cōsulī nārrāre uelit.
- Sempronia litterīs Latīnīs tam docta erat ut uersūs faceret.
- coniūrātiō tanta facta est ut hominī nōbilī cōsulātus nōn mandārētur.
- Catilina furōre adeō incenditur, ut cōsulibus īnsidiās collocet, sociōs saepe hortētur, ipse cum tēlō sit, numquam dormiat.

2 Translate into Latin the underlined words:

- So great (s. f.) was the senate's anxiety, that the consulship was entrusted to a new man.
- Sempronia is so clever that she writes poetry.
- Catiline was inflamed to such an extent by his eagerness for revolution, that he placed armed men in strategic spots throughout Italy.
- Curius was so vile, that he was removed from the Senate.
- The conspirators are undertaking such an important crime, that no-one can sleep.

145 Purpose (or 'final') clauses: 'in order that/to', 'to'

Purpose (or 'final': *fīnis* 'end') clauses in Latin are expressed by *ut* ('in order that, in order to, to') or its negative *nē* ('lest', 'in order that . . . not', 'in order not to', 'not to'), followed by the subjunctive: present subjunctive in primary sequence, imperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence. E.g.

hoc facit ut grātus sit 'he is doing this (in order) to be popular', '(in order) that he may be popular'

hoc fēcit nē inuidiōsus esset 'he did this (in order) not to be unpopular', 'lest he be unpopular', '(in order) that he might not be unpopular'

(Observe how English favours 'may' in primary sequence, and 'might' in secondary.)

Cf. this example from *Text 5A(ii)*:

igitur sē Catilinae adiūnxērunt ut sē aere aliēnō liberārent 'They joined Catiline in order to free themselves from debt'

The construction falls within the scope of specific usages of the subjunctive. It shows the speaker's *intention* that something should happen. Cf. *perficiō ut* (135).

Notes

- Any references to the subject of the main verb inside the *ut/nē* clause will be reflexive, e.g.

'Cicero said this in order that Catiline should fear him (= Cicero)' *Cicerō haec dīxit ut Catilina sē timēret*

- The Latin for 'in order that no-one' is *nē quis* (lit. 'lest anyone'); 'in order that nothing' is *nē quid* (lit. 'lest anything') etc. E.g.:

'Euclio hides the gold in order that no-one may see it' *Eucliō aurum cēlat nē quis id uideat*

See 134³ for *nē quis* in Indirect Command, and I4 for forms.

- quī quae quod* + subjunctive can express purpose, especially after a main verb of motion, e.g.

nūntiōs mīsit quī nūntiārent . . . 'he sent messengers who would announce', '. . . to announce'
cōsiliū patefēcit quō effugerent 'he revealed the plan by which they might escape', 'for them to escape by'
locum petit unde (= ex quō) hostem inuādat 'he is looking for a position from which to attack the enemy'

Cf. this example from *Text 5A(iii)*:

praemīsī . . . aliōs . . . quī initium bellī faciant 'I have sent ahead others to begin the war'

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- mulierēs aliquot sē Catilinae adiūnxēre ut sē aere aliēnō liberārent.*
- Catilina Mānlium ad exercitum mīsit, quī bellum parāret.*
- Cornēlius et Varguntēius ad Cicerōnem eunt ut eum interficiant.*

- (d) custōdēs Cicerōnis domūs Cornēlium et Varguntēium ianuā prohibuērunt, nē cōsul necārētur.
 (e) Fulvia omnia quae audierat cōsulī nārrāuit, ut ille magnum perīculum effugeret.
 (f) scribēbat Aelius ōrātiōnēs¹ quās aliī dīcerent. (Cicero)
 (g) nihil tam absurdē² dīcī potest quod nōn dīcātur ab aliquō philosophōrum³ (Cicero).

¹ ōrātiō ōrātiōn-is 3f. speech.

² absurdē stupidly. See 140.1 for the construction in this sentence.

³ philosoph-us ī 2m. philosopher.

2 Translate the underlined words into Latin (take care to get the right sequence of tenses – see 145):

- (a) Curius went to Fulvia to ask for money.
 (b) Catiline sent two comrades to¹ kill Cicero.
 (c) Curius told Fulvia everything, so that she would believe him².
 (d) Fulvia relates the story to the consul, so that he will not be killed.
 (e) In order not to be attacked by the conspirators, Cicero orders the guards to lock the door.

¹ Use *quī* + subjunctive.

² 'him': use part of *sē*.

146 The historic infinitive

In places where the narrative is drawn in rapid, broad strokes, especially where one action follows swiftly upon another, Latin can use the *infinitive* where we would expect an indicative (usually perfect or imperfect). The infinitive tells us what the verbal action is; subject is nominative, tense has to be gathered from the broad context. E.g.

intereā Catilīna Rōmae multa simul agere; īnsidiās collocāre, parāre incendia, loca obsidēre, ipse cum tēlō esse.

'Meanwhile, Catiline put many schemes into operation simultaneously in Rome: he set up ambushes, prepared fires, laid siege to places, went around himself under arms'.

Note the atmosphere of busy activity, in which historic infinitives most commonly occur.

Exercise

Translate these sentences and say whether the infinitive is *prolative* (i.e. completes the meaning of a verb, e.g. uolō, possum etc.), *reporting speech* (accusative and infinitive), or *historic*:

- (a) nōbilēs Catilīnae cōsulātum mandāre nōluērunt.
 (b) Fulvia multīs Catilīnam coniūrātiōnem parāre dīxerat.
 (c) Catilīna in diēs plūra agitāre, arma collocāre, pecūniam ad Mānlium mittere.
 (d) coniūrātiōnem sē facere negat Catilīna.
 (e) Semprōnia uersūs facere, sermōne utī modestō.
 (f) Cicerō Cornēlium et Varguntēium in aedīs suās intrāre uetuit.

147 Ablative of respect: 'in point of'

A common use of the ablative, especially in poetry, is to specify the *respect* in which something is the case. E.g.

numquam uictus est uirtūte 'he was never conquered in point of / in respect of courage'

litterīs Latīnīs docta 'learned in point of / in respect of Latin literature'

genere fortunāta 'lucky in point of / in respect of her birth'

Exercise

Translate these sentences; pick out ablatives, distinguishing ablatives of respect from other usages:

- (a) Semprōnia, genere nōbilī nāta, litterīs Latīnīs docta erat.
 (b) uir quīdam, Curius nōmine, eō tempore Fuluiam amābat.
 (c) nōn tōtā rē, sed temporibus errāstī.¹ (Cicero)
 (d) eā nocte Cornēlius et Varguntēius Cicerōnis iānuā prohibiti sunt.
 (e) Catilīna, quamuis genere atque fōrmā fortunātus esset, uir tamen minimā sapientiā fuit.

¹ *errō* I am wrong.

Reading: ut

You have now met *ut* as a conjunction in several different senses.

ut + indicative

- (a) 'how!'
- (b) 'as', 'when'.

ut + subjunctive

- (a) Indirect command (after e.g. *imperō*, *persuādeō* etc.) 'to . . .'
- (b) Result (after e.g. *tam*, *tantus*, *adeō* etc.) 'so . . . that'.
- (c) Purpose 'in order that/to'.
- (d) After *perficiō* 'I bring it about that', *accidit* 'it happens that'.

To solve *ut*, watch out for: (i) indicative or subjunctive? (ii) if subjunctive, a verb of commanding will suggest (a), a 'flag' such as *tam*, *tantus* will suggest (b), and a negative *ut nōn* will suggest (b) or (d), while the negative *nē* will suggest (a) or (c). E.g.

Cicerō custōdibus imperat ut . . . 'Cicero to the guards gives orders that . . .'

solves itself very quickly. But

Cicerō ut custōdibus . . . leaves doubts about *ut* and *custōdibus*, so hold these words till solved.

NB. *ut* is also found in the meaning 'as', qualifying a noun. e.g. *canem et fēlem ut deōs colunt* 'They worship the dog and the cat as gods'.

Exercise

Read these sentences, making explicit your steps in understanding, especially when you reach *ut* (or equivalent). State the moment when you can solve *ut*:

- (a) *eōs ut armātī essent hortābātur*.
- (b) *Semprōnia tam docta est ut uersūs facillimē faciat*.
- (c) *ut ego iubēbō, ita tū faciēs*.
- (d) *hōrum contumēliās¹ sapiēns² ut iocōs accipit*. (*Seneca*)
- (e) *Cicerō effēcit ut nōn interficerētur*.

¹ *contumēli-a* ae 1f. 'insult'.

² *sapiēns* nom. s. m. 'wise man'.

- (f) *nē cōsulem Catilīnae sociī necārent, rem tōtam Fulvia amīcīs suīs nārrāuit*.
- (g) *ut fortūnāta Semprōnia est!*

Reading: quī

quī too has different meanings, as follows.

quī + indicative

This is the descriptive relative 'who', 'which', 'what', 'that'.

quī + subjunctive

- (a) Purpose (with verbs of motion).
- (b) Consecutive (*est quī, is quī*) 'the sort of person who'.
- (c) Causal, 'since'.
- (d) Indirect speech, where it may = ordinary relative, unless context demands otherwise.
- (e) Concessive 'although' e.g. *uir quī fortis esset tamen effūgit* 'the man, who was brave, nevertheless fled' i.e. 'the man, although he was brave, fled'.

Exercise

Read these sentences, using the information just outlined. State the moment when *quī* is solved:

- (a) *Catilīna Rōmam sociōs mittit, quī urbem incendant*.
- (b) *Semprōnia, quae uirōs semper petēbat, mātṛōna Rōmāna erat*.
- (c) *Clūsīnī¹ lēgātōs Rōmam, quī auxilium ā senātū peterent, mīsere*. (*Livy*)
- (d) *multī arbitrābantur coniūrātiōnem uiam esse, quā aere aliēnō sē liberāre possent*.
- (e) *fēminae etiam aliquot sē coniūrātiōnī adiūnxērunt, quae in aes aliēnum maximum conciderant*.
- (f) *quī rēi pūblīcae sit hostis, fēlīx² esse nēmo potest*. (*Cicero*)
- (g) *tē amō quī sīs tam fortis*.

¹ *Clūsīnī* 2m. pl. 'the people of Clusium'.

² *fēlīx fēlīc-is* 'fortunate'.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Catiline has just made a speech to his fellow conspirators, rousing them to action. Sallust describes their demand for a clear-cut goal and Catiline's promises of various rewards.

postquam accēpēre ea hominēs, quibus mala abundē omnia erant, sed neque rēs neque spēs bona ūlla, tametsī illīs quiēta mouēre magna mercēs uidēbatur, tamen postulāuēre plērique ut prōpōneret condiciōnēs belli et praemia. tum Catilīna pollicērī tabulās nouās, prōscripciōnem locuplētium, magistrātūs, sacerdotia, rapīnās, alia omnia, quae bellum 5 atque libidō uictōrum fert. (Sallust, Catiline 21, slightly adapted)

ea [Refers back to Catiline's speech]
abundē plentifully
spēs spēs-ī 5f. hope
tametsī although
quiēt-us a um quiet, peaceful
mercēs mercēd-is 3f. reward
plērique plēraeque plēraque the majority
prōpōnō 3 I state
condiciō condiciōn-is 3f. term
praemi-um ī 2n. reward
Catilīna pollicērī [Note (1) case of
Catilīna (2) What part of the verb
pollicērī is: refer, if necessary, to 146]

tabul-ae ārum 1f. pl. accounts [tabulae
nouae implies the cancellation of
existing debts]
prōscripciō prōscripciōn-is 3f. proscription
(i.e. notice proclaiming someone an
outlaw, and confiscation of his
goods)
5 locuplēs locuplēt-is rich
sacerdoti-um ī 2n. priesthood
rapīn-a ae 1f. plunder, forcible seizure
of property
uictor uictōr-is 3m. victor

English-Latin

Re-read the text of 5A(iii), then translate this passage:

Although Catiline¹ had got ready the conspiracy, he nevertheless stood for the consulship again. Meanwhile, he kept attempting to persuade his allies to attack Cicero. Cicero, however, had made plans in order to escape the danger. Through Fulvia and Curius he had managed to hear of Catiline's plans.

Again the nobles were so afraid that they did not entrust the consulship to Catiline. He then decided to wage war. He stationed his supporters in various parts of Italy. Meanwhile at Rome he set a trap² for the consul, went around² with a weapon, and³ encouraged² his supporters to be brave.

¹ Catiline is subject of both clauses, so place him before the conjunction.

² Use historic infinitives.

³ Omit – use asyndeton (no connections: see p. 314(c)).

Roman poetry

Introduction

Consider the following lines from Pope's *Epistle to a Lady* (1735):

Pleasures the Sex, as Children Birds, pursue,
Still out of Reach, but never out of View

Put bluntly, it means 'The (female) sex pursues pleasures as children pursue birds; the pleasures remain out of reach, but never out of view.' The utterance is different from prose in a number of important ways:

- It is in metre.
- The word-order is different from prose.
- It is very compressed ('pursue' serves for both limbs of the first line).
- It is cleverly balanced (e.g. the balance of 'Pleasures [object] the Sex [subject] as Children [subject] Birds [object]').
- The image is striking: women pursuing pleasure as children pursue birds.

Until one gets used to it, reading this sort of poetry, even in English, is quite hard work. Balance, compression, striking word-order and powerful imagery are all features of Latin poetry too, and since Latin is an inflected language, the dislocation of expected symmetry by means of calculated asymmetry (= *uariātiō*) can be that much more violent. But no less important to a Roman poet is balance. Consider the following haunting lines from Virgil:

tum pinguēs agnī, et tum mollissima uīna,
tum somnī dulcēs, dēnsaeque in montibus umbrae

'then fat the lambs, and then most sweet the wine,
then sleep (is) sweet, and deep on the mountains (are) the shadows'

Observe the compression (no verbs), and the balance with variety. Of the four *cōla* (limbs), three start with *tum*, but not the fourth; the first line runs adjective-noun, adjective-noun; the second runs noun-adjective, adjective (prepositional phrase) noun. The metre adds to the effect by being slow and heavy, and allowing, unusually, two adjacent vowels (*agnī et*) their full value. (Note that in l. 2 *dēnsaeque in* the -e of -que is, as normally, lost before the following *i*.)

- (j) Hyperbaton: a figure in which the natural word-order is upset, e.g.

Milton (translating Horace's *rīdentem dīcere uērum quid uetat?*):
'Laughing to teach the truth, what hinders?'

i.e. 'What hinders one-who-is-laughing from teaching the truth?' The Latin word-order, however, is normal.

Poetic word-order

Adjectives and nouns

One of the most frequent word-orders in poetry is adjective, then something else, then the noun with which the adjective agrees, e.g.

Lāuīnaque uēnit lītora 'and he came to the Lavinian shores'
altae moenia Rōmae 'the walls of high Rome'
Trōiānō ā sanguine 'from Trojan blood'
Rōmānam condere gentem 'to found the Roman race'
quem dās finem? 'what end do you give?'
noua pectore uersat cōsilia 'she turned over new plans in her heart'

Here is a double example:

saeuae memorem Iūnōnis ob iram 'on account of the unforgetting anger of savage Juno'

The best tactic to adopt is to register the adjective and *move on*: concentrate your attention on nouns and verbs first and foremost, and try to solve them as you come to them. This will lay clear the bare bones of the sentence. You can then reread, concentrating on the adjectives and seeing where they fit. Thus a first reading should concentrate on the underlined words:

ingentia cernēs
moenia surgentemque nouae Karthāginis arcem.

'(something about 'large') you will see the walls and (something about 'rising' and 'new') the citadel of Carthage'.

Then reread, concentrating on *ingentia*, *surgentem* and *nouae*, seeing where they agree:

'you will see the *huge* walls and *arising* the citadel of *new* Carthage'

NB. When adjectives precede and are separated from their nouns in prose, the effect is to emphasise strongly one element or the other (usually the first).

Exercise

Translate the following (adjectives underlined):

- (a) Tyriam quī aduēneris urbem.
- (b) templum Iūnōnī ingēns.
- (c) uidet Īliacās ex ordine pugnās.
- (d) bellaque iam fāmā tōtam uulgāta per urbem.
- (e) feret haec aliquam tibi fāma salūtem.
- (f) animum pictūrā pāscit inānī.
- (g) ardentisque āuertit equōs.
- (h) iuuat ire et Dōrica castra dēsertōsque uidēre locōs.
- (i) summā dēcurrit ab arce.
- (j) tacitae per amīca silentia lūnae.

Tyri-us a um Carthaginian
quī aduēneris 'since you have come to'
Iūnō Iūnōn-is 3f. the goddess Juno
Īliac-us a um of Troy, Trojan
fām-a ae 1f. rumour
uulgāt-us a um spread
aliquam (acc. s. f.) some

fām-a ae 1f. reputation
pictūr-a ae 1f. scene
pāscō 3 I feed
inān-is e illusory
ardēns ardent-is fiery
āuertō 3 I turn aside
equ-us ī 2m. horse
iuuat it gives pleasure
Dōric-us a um Greek
dēsert-us a um abandoned

summ-us a um top (of)
dēcurrō 3 I run down
arx arc-is 3f. citadel
tacit-us a um quiet
amīc-us a um friendly
silenti-a ōrum 2n. pl. silences
lūn-a ae 1f. moon

Verbs

It is extremely common for verbs to come early in the sentence, sometimes well before the quoted subject. So you must hang on to the person of the verb and wait for a subject to appear, e.g.:

obstupuit prīmō aspectū Sīdōnia Dīdō 'he/she/it fell silent at the first look' – ah, that is 'Carthaginian Dido fell silent . . .'
conticuēre omnēs 'they fell silent' – ah, 'everyone fell silent'

NB. Verb-subject is also a common order in prose.

Word groups

We have 'phrased' together words that can usefully be taken in groups together, e.g.

tālibus ōrantem dictīs ārāsque tenentem
audiit Omnipotēns

'the one begging (*acc.*) with such words and holding (*acc.*) the
 altars the All-powerful (*i.e.* Jupiter) heard'

Delayed introductory word

Conjunctions like *cum*, *dum*, *ubi*, *sī*, *sed*, *et* are often held back in the sentence, (as in prose: see 124⁴) e.g.

namque sub ingentī lūstrat dum singula templō 'for while he surveys
 individual items under the great temple'
magnum rēginae sed enim miserātus amōrem 'but pitying the queen's
 great love'

Latin metre

Latin metre is more complex than English because in Latin metre *every syllable counts* (cf. English, where metre depends largely on stress).

For the purpose of metre, every syllable in Latin counted as either *heavy* (—) or *light* (∪). Heavy syllables may be compared to longer notes in music, light to shorter.

Heavy and light syllables

Here are some basic rules:

- (a) A syllable is *heavy* if its vowel is pronounced *long* e.g. *pōnō*, *īrātō*
- (b) A syllable is *heavy* if the vowel is followed by two consonants or a double consonant (*x*, *z*) e.g. *īngentēs*.

Word division makes no difference, e.g. *et* is 'light', but *et fugit* would make *et* heavy, because the *t* is followed by an *f*, making two consonants.

- (c) A syllable is *heavy* if it contains a diphthong, e.g. *aēdēs*. (cf. 1 above).
- (d) A syllable is *light* if it contains a short vowel followed by only one consonant (or none), e.g. *et omnibus*. Contrast *et vēnīō*.

Elision

If a word ends in a vowel or in *-m*, and the next word begins with a vowel (or *h*), the final vowel or *-m* syllable is 'elided' ('crushed out of existence') and does not count for the purposes of the metre, e.g.:

eg[o] et tū
uirtūt[em] et
c[um] habeās

Notes

- 1 The 'heaviness' or 'lightness' of a vowel *has no effect on its natural pronunciation*. Thus the *et* of *et fugit* may count as heavy for the purposes of scansion, but it would not be pronounced *ēt* as a consequence. To help you to see the difference between *vowel length* and *syllable quantity* we have continued to mark long vowels (immediately above the letter), as well as setting out the metrical pattern (above the line), e.g. *cōrrī pīdēre* indicates that the first vowel (-o-) is pronounced *short*, but belongs in a *heavy* syllable (because followed by two consonants -rr-); the fourth vowel, however (-ē-), is pronounced *long* (the syllable will therefore be *heavy*).
- 2 Verse was read with the *normal* word stress (see p. xv). Do not allow the rhythmic stress of the metre to distort the natural stress of the words.

The hexameter: Virgil's metre

The hexameter has six feet, consisting of a mixture of dactyls (— ∪ ∪) and spondees (— —), on the following pattern:

1	2	3	4	5	6
— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— ∪ ∪	— —
— —	— —	— —	— —	(— —)	— —

Here are the first three lines of the first Virgil passage scanned for you:

cōrrīpū|ēre ūi|am| īntēre|ā, quā| sēmīta| mōnstrāt|
īamqu[e]| āscendēb|ant collēm, quī| plūrimū| ūrbī|
īmmīnēt| aduers|āsqu[e]| aspēctāt| dēsūpēr| arcēs.

Notes

- 1 Foot 5 is usually a dactyl, very occasionally a spondee.
 2 The line usually has a word-division (*caesūra*, lit. 'cutting') in the middle of the third foot or the fourth. E.g. the *caesura* in the above examples is after *intereā* (4th foot), *ascendēbant*, *aduersāsqu(e)* (3rd foot).

Exercise

Scan the next ten lines (p. 321), adding the correct word stress (see rule, p. xv). Mark foot divisions with |, caesuras with {. Then read aloud, thinking through the meaning as you read.

Virgil reading exercises: introduction

Pūblius Vergilius Marō (Virgil) was born in 70 near Mantua. He early on established powerful connections, notably with the governor of Cisalpine Gaul, C. Asinius Pōlliō, himself a scholar and poet. It was Pōlliō who introduced him to Octavian. In the early 30s Virgil became a member of the circle of Maecēnās, the great literary patron and powerful political ally of Octavian.

Virgil was the author of three major works. The first two were the *Bucolics* (or *Eclogues*), and *Georgics*, whose apparently rural themes have political overtones, e.g. at the end of *Georgics* I, there is an appeal to the native gods of Italy to allow Octavian to come to the aid of the civil-war-stricken land. His final work, begun around 30 and still undergoing final revision at his death in 19, was the *Aeneid*, an epic in twelve books, relating how Aeneas, mythical founder of the Roman race, escaped from the burning city of Troy and finally established a foothold in Italy, after defeating the Rutulian King Turnus in single combat. The ancients saw the purpose of Virgil in this work as twofold: to rival Homer (on whose *Iliad* and *Odyssey* the poem draws heavily) and to glorify Augustus. The latter he achieved in three ways. First he accepted and stressed the family connection between Aeneas and the *gēns Iūlia* (family of Julius Caesar and Augustus), so that the early history of the Roman race is also the family history of Augustus. Secondly, he introduced mentions of Augustus into the poem in prophecies (by Jupiter in Book I and Anchises in Book VI) and on the shield of Aeneas (Book VIII). Thirdly, he reflected the old Roman values which Augustus propagated and supported even by

legislation, in the characters of his epic, especially that of Aeneas, a man distinguished by his *pietās* (respect for gods, family, home and country).

Virgil's *Aeneid*

*Aeneas, storm-tossed from Troy, arrives after many adventures off the North African coast, and is led by his divine mother, Venus, to Carthage. Here he sees the city of Carthage being built.*¹

corripuēre uiam intereā, quā sēmita mōnstrat,
 iamque ascendēbant collem, quī plūrimus urbī
 imminet aduersāsque aspectat dēsuper arcēs.
 mīrātur mōlem Aenēās, māgālia quondam,
 mīrātur portās strepitumque et strāta uiārum. 5
 īstant ārdentēs Tyriī: pars dūcere mūrōs
 mōlīrique arcem et manibus subuoluere saxa.
 pars optāre locum tectō et conclūdere sulcō;
 iūra magistrātūque legunt sānctumque senātum.
 hīc portūs aliī effodiunt; hīc alta theātrīs 10
 fundāmenta locant aliī, immānīske columnās
 rūpibus excīdunt, scaenīs decora apta futūrīs;

quālis apēs aestāte nouā per flōrea rūra
 exercet sub sōle labor, cum gentis adultōs
 ēdūcunt fētūs, aut cum līquentia mella 15
 stīpant et dulcī distendunt nectare cellās,
 aut onera accipiunt uenientum, aut agmine
 factō
 ignāuum fūcōs pecus ā praesēpibus arcent;

They were like bees at the beginning of summer, busy in the sunshine in the flowery meadows, bringing out the young of the race just come of age or treading the oozing honey and swelling the cells with sweet nectar, or taking the loads as they came in or mounting guard to keep the herds of idle drones out of their farmstead.

feruet opus redolentque thymō fraglantia mella.
 'ō fortūnātī, quōrum iam moenia surgunt!' 20
 Aenēās ait et fastīgia suspicit urbis. (*Aeneid* 1.418–37)

¹ In all the Virgil extracts, phrases which you should take as a whole are marked with

corripio 3/4 *corripui* I seize, devour, hasten along
quā where
sēmit-a ae 1f. path
mōnstrō 1 I show
ascendō 3 I climb
collis coll-is 3m. hill
quī plūrimus 'which in its great bulk' [Register nom., so subject]
urbī [Why dat? Wait]
immineō 2 (+ dat.) I overlook, loom over [Solves *urbī*]
aduers-us a um facing [The -que suggests another clause or phrase, so 'and the facing . . .', but *aduersās* is acc. pl. f., so we are waiting for a noun which can be described as 'facing', and then (presumably) a verb which explains the acc. case]
aspectō 1 I look at, observe [So probably 'and looks at the facing . . .']
dēs super from above
arx arc-is 3f. citadel, stronghold [Solves *aduersās*]
mīror 1 dep. I marvel at
mīratur [Subject? Wait]
mōlēs mōl-is 3f. mass, bulk, size (of the city)
Aenē-ās ae 1m. [Greek declension, see H6] Aeneas [Subject]
māgālia māgāl-ium 3n. pl. huts
quondam once upon a time
 5 *port-a* ae 1f. gate
strepit-us ūs 4m. hustle and bustle
strāt-um ī 2n. (lit. 'laid flat') paving
īnstō 1 I press on [Subject? Wait]
ārdēs ārdent-is enthusiastic, eager
Tyri-us ī 2m. Carthaginian [Subject]
pars part-is 3f. some [So we may be waiting for 'others']
dūcō 3 (here) build [Infinitive: so why? Wait]
mūr-us ī 2m. wall
mōlior 4 dep. I work at [Note infinitive]
manibus [Dat. or abl. pl., but since the men are working, probably abl.]

subuoluō 3 I roll uphill [Note infinitive]
sax-um ī 2n. stone [Solved infinitive yet?]
pars [Must mean 'others']
optō 1 I decide on [Note: still infinitive]
tect-um ī 2n. building, house
conclūdō 3 I contain, mark out enclose [Infinitive]
sulc-us ī 2m. furrow, trench [But why these infinitives? There appears to be no controlling verb. So they must be – what sort of infinitives?]
iūs iūr-is 3n. law [Subj. or obj? No clue. Wait]
magistrātūs [Subj. or obj? No clue. Wait]
legō 3 I select [Do 'laws and magistrates' select?]
sānct-us a um holy, revered [Case? What does this suggest about *iūra* etc?]
 10 *port-us ūs* 4m. harbour [Case? So wait]
aliī [Looks like another string of the *pars* sort above. Await another *aliī*]
effodiō 3/4 I dig
hīc [So here is another place where they are working: we can surely expect another *aliī* soon]
alt-us a um deep [Case? Many possibilities. Wait]
theātr-um ī 2n. theatre [Cannot agree with *alta*, so register dat. or abl. pl. and wait. So far 'here, something about deep things, something about theatres']
fundāment-um ī 2n. foundation [Solves *alta*: 'here, something about deep foundations'. So what case is *theātrīs*, with what meaning, probably?]
locō 1 I place [And *aliī* follows, solving the whole thing]
immān-is e gigantic [Register case, pl.]
column-a ae 1f. column [Immediate agreement, happily]
rūpes rūp-is 3f. rock [Dat. or abl. pl. Something about 'rocks']

excīdō 3 I cut out, quarry [All solved (note force of *ex-*)]
scaenīs [Register cases, wait]
decus decor-is 3n. ornament, decoration
apt-us a um fit for (+ dat.) [That solves *scaenīs*]
ferueō 2 I seethe
redoleō 2 I give off a smell (of x: abl.) [Plural, so await subject. 'They give off a smell']
thym-um ī 2n. thyme (plant noted for its nectar) [Case? Construe with *redolent*? Or wait?]

fraglāns fragrant-is sweet [Make *thymum* depend on *fraglantia*?]
mel mell-is 3n. honey [Pl. for s. A common poetic device]
 20 *fortūnāt-us* ī 2m. lucky man, person
moenia moeni-um 3n. walls
surgō 3 I rise
ait said
fastīgi-um ī 2n. roof, height
suspiciō 3/4 I look up to [Aeneas has by now descended the hill]

SECTION 5B

Running vocabulary for 5B(i)

addūcō 3 *addūxī* *adductus* I lead to, draw to
adductī (nom. m. pl.) (having been) drawn into
Allobrogēs *Allobrog-um* 3m. pl. Allobroges [Gallic tribe, see name list, Text p. 91 and map]
ampl-us a um large, great
aperiō 4 I reveal
arcessō 3 I summon
auāriti-a ae 1f. avarice, greed
auctōritās auctōritāt-is 3f. weight, authority
bellicōs-us a um warlike
cās-us ūs 4m. fortune
cōspiciō 3/4 *cōspexī* I catch sight of

dīmittō 3 I send away
existimō 1 I think, consider
fore ut (+ subj.) 'that it would happen that . . .'
Gabīni-us ī 2m. P. Gabinius Capito
Galli-a ae 1f. Gaul
Gallic-us a um Gallic
gēns gent-is 3f. race
idōne-us a um qualified (for), suitable (for) (+ dat.)
impellō 3 I urge, persuade
innoxi-us a um innocent
Lentul-us ī 2m. P. Cornelius Lentulus
Sura
misereor 2 dep. I take pity on (+ gen.)

miseri-a ae 1f. misery, distress
nātūr-a ae 1f. nature
negōtiōr 1 dep. I do business
nōminō 1 I name
nōscō 3 *nōuī* *nōtus* I get to know (*nōuī* = I know)
nōt-us a um known (to x: dat.)
nouae rēs nouārum rērum (1/2 adj. + 5f. noun) revolution (lit. 'new things')
P. = Pūbliō: Pūbli-ūs ī 2m. Publius
pauc-ī ae a a few
perdūcō 3 I bring to
plēriūque plēraeque plēraque the majority of

praecipio 3/4 *praecipio* I
instruct, order
praesens praesent-is present
pruātum individually
propinqu-us a um near (to
x: dat.)
pūblicē publicly, as a state
queror 3 dep. I complain
quicumque quaecumque
quodcumque whoever,
whatever (declines like
quī quae quod)

quō + comparative +
subjunctive 'in order
that . . . more' [See
notes on ll. 75–76, 77–
8]
remedi-um ī 2n. cure
requirō 3 I seek out
sicutī (+ indicative) just as
societās societāt-is 3f.
alliance, partnership
(+ gen. expressing

sphere of alliance; tr.
'in x')
sollicitō 1 I rouse up,
incite to revolt
spēs spē-ī 5f. hope
stat-us ūs 4m. state
ubi primum as soon as
Vmbren-us ī 2m. Publius
Umbrenus

Notes

- l. 62 *belli* governed by *societās* and completing the idea of partnership by expressing what the partners will share in.
l. 63 *oppressōs*: sc. *esse* (see 143 for the suppression of *esse* in reported speech).
l. 69 *quod* . . . *esset*: subjunctive within reported speech (see 142)
l. 71 *quā* . . . *effugiātis*: note the mood of the verb. See 145³.
l. 72 *orāre*: historic infinitive.
l. 73 *quod* . . . *factūrī essent*: subjunctive within reported speech (see 142). There is strong emphasis on the future, hence the composite future subjunctive (= fut. participle + subj. of *sum*)
ll. 75–6, 77–8 *quō maior . . . inesset* } All express purpose, with a com-
quō facilius . . . } parative idea: 'in order the more
persuādēret } —ly to —' (adv.); 'in order that
quō . . . amplior esset } more —' (adj.)

Learning vocabulary for 5B(i)

Nouns

auctoritās auctoritāt-is 3f.
weight, authority

gēns gent-is 3f. tribe; race;
family; people
nātūr-a ae 1f. nature

spēs spē-ī 5f. hope(s);
expectation

Adjectives

ampl-us a um large, great
idōne-us a um suitable
(for), qualified (for)
(+ dat.)

nōt-us a um known, well-
known
pauc-ī ae a (pl.) a few, a
small number of

plērīque plēraeque plēraque
the majority of

Verbs

aperio 4 *aperui apertus* I
open; reveal
dimitto 3 *dixi dimissus* I
send away (dis-
+ *mittō*)
existimo 1 I think,
consider (*ex* + *aestimo*
= I value)

nōscō 3 *nōui nōtus* I get to
know (perfect tenses = I
know etc.)
queror 3 dep. *questus* I
complain

requirō 3 *requisiui requisitus*
I seek out; ask for (*re*-
+ *quaerō*)
sollicitō 1 I stir up, arouse;
incite to revolt

Others

ubi primum as soon as
(with perfect
indicative)

Running vocabulary for 5B(ii)

cert-us a um sure, certain
cōsiderō 1 I ponder,
consider
diū for a long time
Fabi-us ī 2m. Fabius
[Quintus Fabius Sanga]
fortūn-a ae 1f. fortune
incert-us a um uncertain
manifest-us a um in the
open, caught in the act,
plainly guilty

mercēs mercēd-is 3f. profit,
reward
nōndum not yet
opēs op-um 3f. pl.
resources
patrōn-us ī 2m. patron
praecipio 3 I give
instructions to (x dat.:
to do y: *ut* + subj.)
praemi-um ī 2n. reward,
prize
prō (+ abl.) instead of

Q. = *Quintō*: *Quint-us ī*
2m. Quintus
quam maximē as much as
possible
Sang-a ae 1m. Q. Fabius
Sanga
simulō 1 I feign
studi-um ī 2n. enthusiasm
(for) (+ gen.)
tūt-us a um safe
uoluō 3 I turn over,
reflect on
utī = *ut*

Notes

- l. 82 *at in alterā*: supply *parte* and *erant*.
l. 86 *cōsiliō cognitō*: 'with the plan having been discovered' (abl. abs.).
l. 87–8 *simulent . . . adeant . . . polliceantur dentque*: all verbs in the *ut* clause introduced by *praecipit* (l. 86).
l. 87 *bene polliceantur*: tr. 'make fine promises'.

Learning vocabulary for 5B(ii)

Nouns

fortūn-a ae 1f. fortune,
luck; (pl.) wealth

opēs op-um 3f. pl.
resources; wealth (s. *ops*
op-is help, aid)

praemi-um ī 2n. prize,
reward
studi-um ī 2n. enthusiasm,
zeal

Adjectives

cert-us a um sure, certain

manifest-us a um in the
open; obvious, clear;
caught in the act**Verbs**cōnsiderō 1 I consider,
ponderpraecipio 3/4 praecipī
praeceptus I instruct,
give orders to (x dat.
to do y: ut + subj.)
(prae + capiō)

simulō 1 I feign

Othersdiū for a long time
(comp. diūtius, sup.
diūtissimē)nōndum not yet
prō (+abl.) instead of
(for, in return for; on
behalf of; in front of)quam + superlative adv. as
... as possible
utī = ut

Running vocabulary for 5B(iii)

actiō actiōn-is 3f. public
action

adit-us ūs 4m. approach

Bēsti-a ae 1m. Lucius

Bestia

caedēs caed-is 3f. carnage,
slaughter

Cethēg-us ī 2m. C.

Cornelius Cethegus

contiō contiōn-is 3f. public
meeting; contiōnemhabēre to hold a public
meeting

diuidō 3 I divide

duodecim twelve

ērupō 3 I break out, rush
outexsequor 3 dep. exsecutus I
carry outfrangō 3 frēgī fractus I
break (down)

L. = Lūci-us ī 2m. Lucius

nōbilitās nōbilitāt-is 3f.
nobility

obsideō 2 I besiege

parēns parent-is 3m. parent

percellō 3 perculī percussus I
scare, unnervepropius nearer (comp. of
prope)quō + comp. + subj. 'in
order that ... more'

[See note on ll. 95–6]

Statili-us ī 2m. L. Statilius

Notes1. 90 parātīs . . . magnīs cōpiīs: 'with great forces having been got ready'
(ablative absolute).11. 91, 92 (eā) contiōne habitā: 'with a (this) public meeting having been
held' (ablative absolute).11. 95–6 quō faciliior . . . fieret: 'in order that there might be . . . an
easier . . .' (purpose with comparative idea).1. 97 iānuā frāctā: 'with the door having been broken (down)' (ablative
absolute). filiī familiārum i.e. sons subject to patria potestās. The power
of a father over his children was absolute: he could even kill them with
impunity.

1. 98 urbe incēnsā: 'with the city having been burned' (ablative absolute).

1. 99 Cicerōne necātō: 'with Cicero having been killed' (ablative absolute).
percussīs omnibus: 'with everyone unnerved (by . . .)' (ablative
absolute).

Learning vocabulary for 5B(iii)

Nounscaedēs caed-is 3f. slaughter,
carnageparēns parent-is 3m. father,
parent; f. mother**Adjectives**

duodecim twelve

Verbsfrangō 3 frēgī fractus I
breakobsideō 2 obsēdī obsessus I
besiege (ob + sedeō)

Grammar and exercises for 5B

148 Purpose clauses: quō + comparative + subjunctive 'in order that
... more'When a purpose clause contains a comparative (adverb or adjective), it is
introduced NOT by ut but by quō, e.g.hoc fēcit quō celerius perueniret 'he did this (in order) to arrive more
quickly'

Cf.

quō faciliior aditus ad cōsulem fieret 'in order that there might be an
easier approach to the consul'The verb in the quō clauses follows the normal rule, and will be either
present or imperfect subjunctive. This construction is not difficult to
spot, since it has three markers in a sentence: (i) quō (ii) a comparative (iii)

verb in the subjunctive. Remember, when these clues are given, to translate *quō* by 'in order that/to'.

149 *fore ut* + subjunctive 'that it will/would come about that. . .'

Latin often 'talks its way round' (the technical term for this is 'periphrasis') the so-called future infinitive passive (see 118) by using *fore ut* + subjunctive, e.g.

dixit sē captum irī 'he said that he would be seized' (lit. 'he said that there was a movement towards seizing him')

could also be expressed thus:

dixit fore ut (fixed form) *caperetur* lit. 'he said that it would come about that he would be seized'

Thus both *dicit eōs remissum irī* and *dicit fore ut remittantur* mean 'he says that they will be sent back'.

So in reported speech, watch out for *fore ut* (*nōn*) + subjunctive, and translate literally 'that it will/would (not) come about that', then retranslate for smoother final effect.

Exercise

Translate these sentences:

- Catilīna sociīs suīs nūntiāuit *fore ut* incendium et caedēs in urbe fierent.
- Vmbrēnus Gabīnium uocāuit, quō facilius Allobrogibus uerbīs suīs persuādēret.
- Allobrogēs, quippe quī praemia bellī magna *fore* arbitrārentur, rem diū cōsiderābant.
- sed lēgātī tandem sēserunt *fore ut* opibus ciuitātis Rōmānae facillimē uincerentur.
- igitur Allobrogum lēgātī Cicerōnī omnia nārrāuerunt, quō maius auxilium ciuitātī suae ferrent.

150 Ablative absolute

You have already seen (109, 120⁶) how Latin likes to put a noun with another noun, adjective or present participle in the ablative as a separate phrase in a sentence, e.g. *Verre praetōre* 'with Verres as praetor', *Cleomenē ēbriō* 'with Cleomenes drunk', *Cleomenē pōtante* 'with Cleomenes drinking'.

The most common usage, however, is to put the noun with a *past participle*, e.g.

nāuibis captīs '(with) the ships having been captured'
hominibus interfectīs '(with) the men having been killed'

151 Past (perfect) participle passive

The past (or perfect) participle of deponent verbs is *active* in meaning, e.g. *morātus* 'having delayed', *locūtus* 'having spoken' etc. (Cf. *locūtus sum* 'I have spoken'.)

The past (or perfect) participle of all other verbs is *passive* in meaning, e.g. *amātus* 'having been loved', *audītus* 'having been heard', *factus* 'having been made', *captus* 'having been captured' etc. (Cf. *captus sum* 'I have been captured'.) Like deponents, they act as 1/2 adjectives (*amāt-us a um*) in agreeing with the person or thing 'having been —ed' and in describing action prior to the main verb. But they are most frequently used predicatively (see 77). E.g.

mulieris amātae 'of the woman having-been-loved', 'of the woman when she had been loved'
lēgātī audītī 'the ambassadors having-been-heard', 'the ambassadors after they had been heard'
nāuis capta 'the ship having-been captured', 'the ship after it had been captured'

Watch out for this usage in the ablative absolute construction, e.g.

nāue captā '(with) the ship having been captured'
uirō necātō '(with) the man having been killed'
signō uīsō '(with) the signal having been seen'

This style of ablative absolute construction is very common indeed in Latin. Since it is not very common in English, it is best not to settle for a wholly literal translation. Try the following suggestions:

signō uīsō, coniūrātōrēs fūgērunt (lit.) 'with the signal having been seen, the conspirators fled'

This can be translated as:

- 'Because/when/after they saw the signal, the conspirators fled'
- 'The conspirators saw the signal and fled'
- 'The signal was seen and the conspirators fled'
- 'After/when/because the signal was seen, the conspirators fled'

Notes

- 1 Sometimes 'although' will be the best translation for an abl. abs., e.g. *mīlitibus captīs, Catilīna tamen pugnābat* 'though the soldiers were taken, Catiline fought on'. As with *cum* = 'although' and *quī* = 'although', some word for 'nevertheless' (*tamen, nihilōminus* etc.) will often be found. Cf. *exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit* 'though only a small part of the summer remained, Caesar hastened to set out for Britain' (Caesar).
- 2 The construction is called 'absolute' (*absoluō absolūtus* 'having been released': note the passive past participle!) because the phrase does not appear to be integral to its clause, since it qualifies neither subject nor object – it seems to stand all alone, 'released' from its surroundings.
- 3 Cf. *uice uersā* '(with) the position turned/changed'; *pollice uersō* '(with) the thumb turned' (*up* to indicate death, the evidence suggests).

Exercises

- 1 Form the perfect participle passive of these verbs and translate them: *dīmittō, requirō, opprimō, aperiō, simulō, cōsiderō, frangō, obsideō, existimō, sollicitō*, (optional: *quaerō, petō, tollō, agitō, mandō, parō, nārrō, efficiō, moueō, interficiō*).
- 2 Say which of these perfect participles are deponent and which passive (translating each example): *adiūctus, questus, profectus, impeditus, adeptus, locutus, nixus, conuocatus, prohibitus, collocatus, adlocutus, mortuus, abiectus, actus, perfectus*, (optional: *repulsus, secutus, positus, cultus, solitus, relictus, ausus, uetitus, mentitus, occisus, expectatus, uisus, iratus, passus, acceptus*).
- 3 Translate these ablative absolute phrases (at first use the pattern 'with x having been —ed'):

- (a) *coniūratiōne parātā*.
- (b) *hīs rēbus nārrātīs*.
- (c) *conuocātīs mīlitibus*.
- (d) *exercitū collocātō*.
- (e) *datō signō*.
- (f) *simulātō studiō*.
- (g) *hostibus oppressīs*.
- (h) *praemiīs cōsiderātīs*.
- (i) *interfectīs parentibus*.
- (j) *paucīs dīmissīs*.

- 4 Translate these sentences. Say whether the ablative absolute is better regarded as temporal ('when — had been —ed'), causal ('because — had been —ed'), or concessive ('although — had been —ed'):

- (a) *Catilīnā ex urbe ēgressō Lentulus nouōs sociōs petēbat*.
- (b) *lēgātīs Allobrogum Rōmae manentibus Vmbrēnus ā sociō quōdam uocātus est*.
- (c) *Vmbrēnus, Gabiniō uocātō quō maior auctōritās sermōnī inesset, cōsiliū aperuit*.
- (d) *cōsiliō apertō, nōminātīs sociīs, Vmbrēnus tamen Allobrogibus persuādere nōn poterat ut coniūrātōrēs fierent*.
- (e) *Cicerō cōsiliō cognitō coniūrātōrēs quam maximē manifestōs habere uolēbat*.
- (f) *bene facta male locūta¹ male facta arbitror*. (Ennius)
- (g) *nihil est simul inuentum et perfectum*. (Cicero)

¹ *locūta* 'spoken of', 'described'. (For passive usage of deponent past participle see Reference Grammar C4 Note 2.)

English–Latin

- 1 Translate these clauses into Latin, using ablative absolute with past participle:
 - (a) When all hope had been taken away . . .
 - (b) Although the soldiers had been sent away . . .
 - (c) Because allies had been sought out . . .
 - (d) Once things had been pondered . . .
 - (e) Although a reward had been given . . .
 - (f) If the city had been besieged . . .
- 2 Reread the text of 5B(i)–(ii), then translate this passage:

Umbrenus led the ambassadors of the Allobroges out of the forum into a certain person's house. Next he called Gabinius, a man of great

weight, so as to persuade them more quickly. When Gabinius had been¹ called, Umbrenus persuaded the ambassadors to promise their aid. But they had not yet decided to join the conspiracy, inasmuch as they thought that they would be defeated² by the resources of the Roman state. Finally, they revealed the whole matter to Sanga. When Cicero had found out the plan¹ via Sanga, he instructed the Allobroges to feign enthusiasm, so that he might more easily capture the conspirators.

¹ Use ablative absolute.

² Use *fore ut* + subjunctive ('that it would turn out that . . .').

Virgil's Aeneid

Aeneas, welcomed warmly into Carthage by the queen Dido (who is slowly falling in love with him) is encouraged to tell the story of the destruction of his homeland Troy. Here Aeneas describes how the wooden horse was brought into the city – and laments the blindness of the Trojans.

dīuidimus mūrōs et moenia pandimus urbis.
 accingunt omnēs operī pedibusque rotārum
 subiciunt lāpsūs, et stuppea uincula collō
 intendunt; scandit fātālis māchina mūrōs
 fēta armīs. puerī circum innūptaeque puellae 5
 sacra canunt fūnemque manū contingere gaudent;
 illa subit mediaeque mināns inlābitur urbī.
 ō patria, ō dīuum domus Īlium et incluta bellō
 moenia Dardanidum! quater ipsō in līmine portae
 substitit atque uterō sonitum quater arma dedēre; 10
 īnstāmus tamen immemorēs caecīque furōre
 et mōnstrum īnfēlīx sacrātā sistimus arce.

tunc etiam fātīs aperit Cassandra futūrīs
 ōra deī iussū nōn umquam crēdita Teucrīs.
 nōs dēlūbra deum miserī, quibus ultimus 15
 esset
 ille diēs, festā uēlāmus fronde per urbem.

Even at this last moment Cassandra opened her lips to prophesy the future, but the gods had ordained that those lips were never believed by Trojans. This was the last day for a doomed people, and we spent it adorning the shrines of the gods throughout the city with festal garlands.

(Aeneid 2.234–49)

dīuidō 3 I open up
 mūr-us ī 2m. wall
 moenia moeni-um 3n. pl. buildings
 [Nom. or acc.? Wait]
 pandō 3 I reveal, disclose
 urbis [Gen., so must qualify moenia]
 accingō 3 I get ready for (+ dat.)
 pedibusque [-que shows another clause/
 phrase, so hold 'and something to
 do with feet in the dat./abl.']
 rot-a ae 1f. wheel [Can this be 'feet of
 the wheels'? Seems unlikely]
 subiciō 3/4 I place x (acc.) under y
 (dat.) [Are pedibus y?]
 lāps-us ūs 4m. slipping [So: 'they place
 slippings under the feet'. Can
 rotārum construe with 'slippings', i.e.
 'they place slippings of wheels under
 the feet'? But under whose feet?
 Ans.: the feet of whatever is coming
 into Troy. In other words . . .
 What might 'slippings of wheels'
 mean?]
 stuppe-us a um made of tow [Hold case
 possibilities]
 uincul-um ī 2n. halter, rope [Solves
 stuppea: n. pl., nom. or acc. Which?
 Wait. 'And something about tow
 halters']
 coll-um ī 2n. neck [Must be 'on the
 neck' (dat.)]
 intendō 3 I stretch, draw tight x (acc.)
 on(to) y (dat.) [Solves it]
 scandō 3 I climb [What climbs? Wait]
 fātāl-is e deadly
 māchin-a ae 1f. device, siege-engine
 [Subject]
 5 fēt-us a um pregnant with (+ abl.)
 [Agreeing with what?]
 puerī [Probably subject, but hold]
 circum around about
 innūpt-us a um unwed
 sacra [Cannot agree with 'boys and
 girls', whatever else it agrees with]
 canō 3 I sing [So 'boys and girls
 sing . . .' – perhaps sacra. What
 gender and case is sacra?]

fūnis fūn-is 3m. rope ['And something
 to do with a rope in the acc.']
 contingō 3 I touch [Infinitive. Why?]
 gaudeō 2 I rejoice, delight (to) [Solves
 the infinitive]
 illa [Change of subject. illa is f. – so
 what does it refer to?]
 subeō I come up
 mediaeque ['and something about the
 middle'; numerous case possibilities.
 Wait for agreement]
 mināns [Something in the nom.
 'threatening'. Presumably illa is
 threatening. minor takes a dat. – is
 there one about? Not yet . . .]
 inlābor 3 dep. I slide in, slip into
 (+ dat.)
 urbī [Ah! Dat., and f., so what agrees
 with it?]
 patri-a ae 1f. fatherland
 dīuum = dīuōrum 'of the gods'
 Īli-um ī 2n. Troy
 inclut-us a um famous [But famous
 what? Wait]
 bellō [Perhaps shows you in what
 whatever-it-is is famous, i.e. 'famous
 in war']
 moenia moeni-um 3n. pl. walls, town
 [Solves it]
 Dardanid-ae 1m. pl. (gen. Dardanidum)
 Trojans
 quater four times
 līmen līmin-is 3n. threshold
 port-a ae 1f. gate(way)
 10 subsistō 3 substiti I stop, halt. [What
 must the subject be?]
 uter-us ī 2m. belly, womb [Case?
 Hold]
 sonit-us ūs 4m. sound [Register case]
 arma [Subject? Object? Probably
 subject, since sonitum must be obj.
 So the weapons do something to a
 sound. H'm]
 dedēre = dedērunt [Of course, that's what
 they do to the sound! This should
 now solve uterō]
 īnstō 1 I press on

immemor immemor-is mindless(ly), forgetful
caec-us a um blind
furor furōr-is 3m. madness [Dependent on *caecī?*]
mōnstr-um ī 2n. monster [Subject or object? Hold]

infēlīx (n.s.) catastrophic, ill-boding
sacrāt-us a um sacred [Register case.
 Can you solve it yet? No]
sistō 3 I bring to a halt [Solves
mōnstrum infēlīx]
arce [Solves *sacrātā*]

Section 5C

Running vocabulary for 5C(i)

<i>ad hoc</i> in addition	<i>impellō 3 I</i> drive to, persuade	<i>prius quam</i> before (+ subj.)
<i>aliter</i> otherwise	<i>infim-us a um</i> lowest	<i>propius</i> nearer
<i>breuī</i> (sc. <i>tempore</i>) shortly, soon	<i>infra</i> below	<i>repudiō 1 I</i> reject
<i>Cassi-us ī 2m.</i> L. Cassius	<i>item</i> likewise	<i>signāt-us a um</i> sealed (<i>signō 1</i>)
Longinus	<i>iūs iūrāndum iūr-is iūrānd-ī</i> (3n. + 1/2 adj.) oath	<i>societās societāt-is</i> 3f. alliance
<i>cūctor 1 dep.</i> I delay, hesitate (+ inf.)	<i>mandāt-um ī 2n.</i> order	<i>T. = Titō: Tit-us ī 2m.</i> Titus
<i>eō</i> to that place (i.e. to the Allobroges' territory)	<i>nē + subj.</i> don't	<i>Volturci-us ī 2m.</i> Titus
<i>exempl-um ī 2n.</i> copy	<i>perferō perferre</i> I carry to	<i>Volturcius</i>
	<i>praecept-um ī 2n.</i> instruction	

Notes

1. 103 *quod . . . perferant*: note mood of verb (*quī + subj.* expressing purpose).
1. 104 *fore ut*: assume a verb of saying before this, 'they said'.
1. 105 *uentūrum*: *esse* has been suppressed.
1. 111 *intellegās*: subjunctive 'you should understand', 'understand'.
1. 112 *cōnsiderēs*: subjunctive 'you should consider', 'consider'. *petās*: subjunctive 'you should seek', 'seek'.
1. 115 *accipiās*: subjunctive 'you should take on', 'take on'. *proficīscāris*: subjunctive 'you should set out', 'set out'.

Learning vocabulary for 5C(i)

Nouns

exempl-um ī 2n. copy;
 example

iūs iūrāndum iūr-is iūrānd-ī (3n. + 1/2 adj.) oath

Verbs

cūctor 1 dep. I delay, hesitate (+ inf.)

Others

breuī shortly, soon (sc. *tempore*)

eō to that place
item likewise

propius nearer

Running vocabulary for 5C(ii)

<i>citō</i> quickly	<i>diffidō 3 I</i> distrust, despair of (+ dat.)	<i>militār-is e</i> military
<i>cohōtor 1 dep.</i> I encourage	<i>ēdoct-us a um</i> having been informed (of x: acc.)	<i>Mulvi-us a um</i> Mulvian
<i>comitāt-us ūs 4m.</i> retinue	<i>exorior 4 dep.</i> <i>exortus 1</i> arise	<i>occultē</i> secretly, in hiding
<i>cūct-us a um</i> the whole (of)	<i>Gall-ī ōrum 2m. pl.</i> the Gauls	<i>pōns pont-is 3m.</i> bridge
<i>dēprehendō 3 I</i> capture, arrest	<i>gladi-us ī 2m.</i> sword	<i>sēsē = sē</i>
<i>dēsērō 3 dēsērui dēsertus 1</i> desert	<i>itum est</i> 'they went' (pf. pass. of <i>eō</i>) [see note]	<i>sicutī</i> just as
		<i>timid-us a um</i> frightened
		<i>trādō 3 I</i> hand over
		<i>tumult-us ūs 4m.</i> noise
		<i>uelut</i> as, just as

Notes

1. 117 *quā proficīscerentur*: note mood of verb (*quī + subj.* indicating purpose.)
1. 118 *cūcta ēdoctus*: verbs which take two accusatives in the active (like *doceō* 'I teach x y') often retain one of them in the passive: here it expresses the thing taught.
1. 120 *itum est*: lit. 'it was gone'; tr. 'they went', 'there was a general movement to the bridge'.
1. 121 *praeceptum erat*: note the gender of the part.
1. 122 *ad id locī*: 'to that place' (cf. *quid cōsiliī*).

Learning vocabulary for 5C(ii)

Nouns

gladi-us ī 2m. sword
pōns pont-is 3m. bridge

Pronouns

sēsē = *sē*

Adjectives

militār-is e military
timid-us a um frightened,
 fearful

Verbs

cohortor 1 dep. I encourage, exhort (*con-*
+ hortor)
exorior 4 dep. *exortus* I arise (*ex + orior*)
trādō 3 *trādidī trāditus* I hand over; hand down, relate (*trāns + dō*)

Others

sicutī or *sicut* (just) as
uelut as, just as

Running vocabulary for 5C(iii)

aduocō 1 I summon
afferre = *adferre*
anxi-us a um worried, anxious
committō 3 *commīsī* I commit
Concordi-a ae 1f. Concord
cōficiō 3/4 *cōnfēcī cōnfectus* I finish
cōstāns cōstant-is resolute, steady
cōstanti-a ae 1f. resolution, steadiness
deceat it is fitting (for x acc. to do y inf.)
dēclārō 1 I declare, report
dēdecorī est it is a disgrace (to x dat.)
dederō 'I shall have given' [Tr. 'I give'] (fut. pf. of *dō*)
dēprehendō 3 *dēprehendī dēprehēsus* I catch, detect
eōdem to the same place
ēripiō 3/4 *ēripiū ēreptus* I rescue x (acc.) from y (dat.)
Flacc-us ī 2m. L. Valerius Flaccus
interfectī erunt '(they) will have been killed' [Tr. '(they) are killed'] (fut. pf. pass. of *interficiō*)
intrōducō 3 I bring in, lead in
iussū by the order (of x: gen.)
laetor 1 dep. I rejoice, am happy
nihilōminus nevertheless
noceō 2 I harm (+ dat.)
occupō 1 I seize
onerī est it is a burden (to x dat.)
paenitet 2: *mē paenitet* I regret (x gen.)
patefaciō 3/4 *patefēcī patefactus* I reveal, expose
perducō 3 I lead
poen-a ae 1f. penalty
porrō furthermore, besides

postulāuerō 'I shall have demanded' [Tr. 'I demand'] (fut. perf. of *postulō*)
praebeō 2 I show (*mē*: myself [to be] y acc.)
praepōnō 3 I put x (acc.) before y (dat.)
properē hastily
pūniō 4 I punish
pūnītī erunt 'they will have been punished' [Tr. 'they are punished'] (fut. pf. pass. of *pūniō*)
quod sī but if

saltem at least
sententi-a ae 1f. opinion
seruāuerō 'I shall have saved' (fut. pf. of *seruō*)
uocāuerimus 'we shall have called' [Tr. 'we call'] (fut. pf. of *uocō*)

Notes

- ll. 134–5 *sī eīs ā nōbīs parcātur, magnō sit rēi pūblicaē dēdecorī*: remember the rule for *sī* + pres. subj. (if x were to happen, y would happen). *eīs ā nōbīs parcātur*: *parcō* takes dative in active forms; in passive 'it' is the subject; *eīs* the people to be spared, *ā nōbīs* the agent (the people sparing). *dēdecorī* is further defined by *magnō*.
 l. 136 *noceātur*: passive of a verb which takes dative object in active. 'It' is subject (cf. *parcātur*), *rēi pūblicaē* the thing to be harmed.
 l. 141–2 *ut huius cōstantiae mē umquam paeniteat: mē paenitet* = I regret, taking a genitive of what is regretted.

Learning vocabulary for 5C(iii)

Nouns

poen-a ae 1f. penalty
sententi-a ae 1f. opinion;
 judgement; sentence;
 maxim

Verbs

committō 3 *commīsī commissus* I commit
cōficiō 3/4 *cōnfēcī cōnfectus* I finish
ēripiō 3/4 *ēripiū ēreptus* I snatch away, rescue (x acc. from y dat.)
noceō 2 I harm (+ dat.)
occupō 1 I seize
patefaciō 3/4 *patefēcī patefactus* I reveal, expose, throw open
praebeō 2 I show, display (myself to be x: *mē* + acc. adj. or noun)
pūniō 4 I punish

Others

iussū by the order (of x: gen.)
nihilōminus nevertheless
porrō besides, moreover

Predicative dative phrases

dēdecorī est it is a disgrace (for x: dat.)
onerī est it is a burden (to x: dat.)

Grammar and exercises for 5C**152 Jussive subjunctives**

Jussive subjunctives (*iubeō iussus* 'ordered') are so called because the subjunctive in these cases acts as an imperative (cf. on specific usages of the subjunctive 138). A subjunctive in this sense stands on its own as the main verb of a sentence (it is thus an 'independent' use), e.g.

- (1st pl.) *audiāmus* 'let us listen'; *interficiāmus* 'let us kill'; *eāmus* 'let's go'
 (2nd s./pl.) *accipiās* 'please welcome', 'welcome!', 'see that you welcome' (often used in poetry)
 (3rd s./pl.) *fīat* 'let there become' 'may there be' (cf. *fīat lūx* 'let there be light' (Genesis))

Cf. phrases very often used in English: *habeās corpus* 'you may have the body'; *caueat emptor* 'let the buyer beware'; *stet* 'let it stand'.

Notes

- 1 When a jussive subjunctive occurs in a question, it is known as 'deliberative' (from *dēliberō* 1 'I weigh carefully', 'consider'), e.g.

quid scribam? 'What am I to write?' (Plautus)
utrum Karthāgō dīruātur . . . ? 'Should Carthage be destroyed . . . ?' (Cicero)
quid ego faciam? maneam aut abeam? 'What should (shall) I do? Should (shall) I stay, or leave?' (Plautus)

In these circumstances, the negative is *nōn*. The imperfect subjunctive indicates past time here, e.g.

'nōn ego illī argentum redderem?' *'nōn redderēs.'* 'Shouldn't I have paid the money to him?' 'You shouldn't have paid it.' (Plautus)

- 2 The negative for jussives is *nē*, e.g. *nē ueniant* 'let them not come'.

Exercises**1 Translate:**

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| (a) <i>abeās.</i> | (g) <i>ueniat.</i> |
| (b) <i>commorēmur.</i> | (h) <i>abeāmus.</i> |
| (c) <i>maneāmus.</i> | (i) <i>quid dīcerem?</i> |
| (d) <i>nē querātur.</i> | (j) <i>quid dīcam?</i> |
| (e) <i>nē praemium requīrant.</i> | (k) <i>quid faceret?</i> |
| (f) <i>nē frūstrā moriāmur.</i> | |

2 Translate these sentences:

- (a) *moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus.* (Virgil)
 (b) *uiuāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus.* (Catullus)
 (c) *nē difficilia optēmus.* (Cicero)
 (d) *cautus sīs, mī Tīrō.* (Cicero)
 (e) *faciāmus hominem ad imāginem et similitūdinem nostram et praesit piscibus maris . . .* (Genesis)
 (f) *et dīxit Deus: 'fiat lūx!' et lūx facta est.* (Genesis)
 (g) *dīxit quoque Deus: 'fiat firmāmentum in mediō aquārum et dīuidat aquās ab aquīs.'* (Genesis)
 (h) *sapiās, uīna liquēs, et spatiō breuī spem longam resecēs.* (Horace)
 (i) *quid faciat?*¹ *pugnet? uincētur fēmina pugnāns. clāmet? at in dextrā quī uetet, ēnsis erat.* (Ovid)
 (j) *haec cum uidērem, quid agerem, iūdicēs?* (Cicero)

¹ The subject of the verbs *faciat*, *pugnet*, *clāmet* is 'she'.

<i>ruō</i> 3 I rush	<i>piscis pisc-is</i> 3m. fish	<i>spati-um</i> ī 2n. space,
<i>optō</i> 1 I wish for	<i>firmāment-um</i> ī 2n. prop,	distance
<i>caut-us a um</i> careful (perf. participle of <i>caueō</i>)	<i>firmament</i>	<i>resecō</i> 1 I cut back, prune
<i>imāgō imāgin-is</i> 3f. image	<i>dīuīdō</i> 3 I divide	<i>dextr-a ae</i> 1f. right hand
<i>similitūdō similitūdin-is</i> 3f. likeness	<i>sapiō</i> 3/4 I am sensible	<i>quī</i> + subj. expressing purpose
	<i>uīn-um</i> ī 2n. wine	<i>ēnsis ēns-is</i> 3m. sword
	<i>liquō</i> 1 I strain	

153 Subjunctives expressing wishes and possibility

There are two other independent uses of the subjunctive.

1 Expressing wishes

This usage is often marked by *utinam* (negative *utinam nē*). The tenses are used as for conditions (see S2(c)).

Present is used to express a wish for the FUTURE, e.g.

ualeant cīuēs meī! 'May my fellow-citizens fare well!' (Cicero)

Imperfect is used to express a wish for the PRESENT (see also Note), e.g.

illud utinam nē uērē scrīberem 'Would that I were not writing this in all truth' (Cicero)

Pluperfect is used to express a regret about what happened (or did not happen) in the PAST, e.g.

utinam susceptus nōn essem 'I wish I'd never been reared!' (Cicero)

NB. Imperfect subjunctive, as with conditionals and jussives, sometimes refers to the past. See 139³, 152¹

2 Expressing possibility – the 'potential' subjunctive (cf. 138)

The range of expressions covers much of what is expressed in English by 'may/might', 'can/could', 'should' and 'would'. In 1st s. we have:

uelim 'I would like'

nōlim 'I would not like'

mālim 'I would prefer'

These are commonly followed by another subjunctive, e.g.

uelim adsīs 'I should like you to be here'

Other 1st s. expressions are

ausim 'I would dare' (from *audeō*; normal subjunctive *audeam*)

possim 'I would be able'

(Note the imperfect *uellem* 'I would have wished' etc.)

2nd s. is used in 'generalising' statements, e.g.

(present) *haud inueniās* 'you (=one) may scarcely find'

(imperfect) *crēderēs* 'you (=one) would have believed'

3rd s. expressions include, e.g.

(present) *dīcat aliquis* 'someone may say' (Livy) (see 171)

(imperfect) *quis arbitrārētur* 'who would have thought . . .?' (Cicero)

Exercise

Translate:

- uellem mē ad cēnam inuitāssēs*¹. (Cicero)
- putārēsne umquam accidere posse ut mihi uerba dēessent?* (Cicero)
- utinam populus Rōmānus ūnam ceruīcem*² *habēret*. (Caligula)

¹ *inuitō* I I invite.

² *ceruīx* *ceruīc-īs* 3f. neck

154 Impersonal verbs: active

These impersonal verbs appear *only in the 3rd person singular active*, but in any tense (present, future, imperfect, perfect etc.) in indicative or subjunctive. They also possess an infinitive form, so that they can appear in accusative and infinitive constructions.

You have already met (88.5) *licet licēre licuit* (or *licitum est*) 'it is permitted to x (dat.) to y (inf.)', e.g.

illīs licuit exīre 'it was permitted to them to leave', 'they were allowed to leave'

and *placet placēre placuit* (or *placitum est*) 'it is pleasing to x (dat.) to y (inf.)', e.g.

mihi placēbit sequī 'it will be pleasing for me to follow', 'I shall vote to follow'

negat sibi placuisse hoc dīcere 'he denies that it was pleasing (lit. 'it to have been pleasing') to him to say this', 'he denies that he voted to say this'

and (4B(iii)) *oportet oportēre oportuit* 'it is right/proper for x (acc.) to y (inf.)' 'x should/ought', e.g.

mē oportuit abīre 'it was right for me to leave', 'I ought to have left'

Now learn the following, some of which take a slightly different construction:

decet decēre decuit 'it is fitting for x (acc.) to y (inf.)'

dēdecet dēdecēre dēdecuit 'it is unseemly for x (acc.) to y (inf.)'

paenitet paenitēre paenituit 'it repents x (acc.) of y (gen.)' or 'it repents x (acc.) to y (inf.)' (i.e. 'x regrets / is dissatisfied with y')

miseret miserēre miseruit 'it moves x (acc.) to pity at/for y (gen.)'
pudet pudēre puduit 'it moves x (acc.) to shame for y (gen.)' (i.e. 'x is ashamed at/for y')

libet libēre libuit (or *libitum est*) 'it is pleasing/agreeable for x (dat.) to y (inf.)' 'x chooses to'

Examples of these are:

uōs decēbit nihil dīcere 'it will be fitting for you to say nothing'
tē dēdecet audīre 'it is unseemly for you to hear'

eōs paenituit illius uerbū 'it repented them of that word', 'they regretted that word'

tē paenitēbit hoc facere 'it will repent you to do this', 'you will repent/regret doing this'

hominēs miseruit poenae 'it moved the men to pity at the punishment', 'the men were moved to pity / felt sorry at the punishment'

mē eius miseret 'it moves me to pity for him', 'I feel sorry for him'
miseret tē aliōrum, tuī tē nec miseret nec pudet 'you feel sorry for others, but for yourself you have neither pity nor shame' (Plautus)

libet mihi tē accusāre 'it is pleasing to me to accuse you', 'I want to accuse you', 'I choose to accuse you'

NB. Differentiate *licet* 'it is permitted' (cf. licence) from *libet* 'it is agreeable' (cf. libidinous; *ad lib.* = *ad libitum* 'to the point that pleases').

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- mē decet hanc sententiam dīcere.*
- abīre tē oportēbat.*
- lēgātīs placuit studium coniūratiōnis simulāre.*
- Lentulum illius iūris iūrāndī paenitēbit.*
- omnibus licet spem habēre.*
- nōn omnibus eadem placent. (Pliny)*

2 Translate into Latin:

- I regret my enthusiasm for the conspiracy.
- Catiline decided to leave Rome.
- You may complain.
- You (pl.) ought to hand yourselves over to the consul.
- It is fitting for a man to die in battle.

155 Impersonal verbs: passive

Verbs which control any other case than the plain accusative (such as e.g. *parcō* (+ dat.) 'I spare') only occur in the passive in the 3rd person singular, e.g.

mihi parcēbātur lit. 'it was being spared to me', i.e. 'I was being spared', 'clemency was being extended to me'

eīs nocētur lit. 'it is being harmed to them', i.e. 'they are being harmed', 'harm is being done to them'

eī nōn crēdētur lit. 'it will not be trusted to him', i.e. 'he will not be trusted', 'there will be no trust extended to him'

Hint: when a verb controlling the dative appears in the passive, LOOK FOR THE DATIVE TO BE THE SUBJECT.

Notes

- Note the common impersonal passive idiom with verbs of 'going' and 'coming' to denote general movement, e.g.

ītur lit. 'it is being gone', i.e. 'people are going'

itum est lit. 'it was gone', i.e. 'people went'

uentum est lit. 'it has been come', i.e. 'there has been an arrival'

- There is a passive impersonal *infinitive*, for use in accusative and infinitive constructions, e.g.

dixit militibus imperārī lit. 'he said it to be being ordered to the soldiers', i.e. 'he said that orders were being given to the soldiers', 'he said that the soldiers were being given their orders'

nescit feminae fautum esse lit. 'he does not know it to have been favoured to the woman', i.e. 'he does not know that the woman was favoured / given support'

See 149 for futures, where *fore ut* is always used.

- 3 The *agent* (person by whom the action of the passive verb is done) is expressed, as usual, by *ā/ab* + abl. e.g.

ā militibus mihi crēditum est 'I was believed by the soldiers'

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- concurritur. (*Horace*)
- diū pugnātum est.
- ad forum uentum est.
- itur ad arma.
- tibi nōn crēditum est.
- ā nōbīs nōn parcetur labōrī.¹ (*Cicero*)
- ā coniūratoribus ciuitātī nocēbitur.
- nōbīs imperātum est, ut in proelium inirēmus.
- cibus, somnus,² libidō – per hunc circulum³ curritur.⁴ (*Seneca*)

¹ labor labōr-is 3m. work, toil.

² somn-us ī 2m. sleep.

³ circul-us ī 2m. unending cycle.

⁴ currō 3 I run, continue, go on.

2 Translate into Latin:

- Fighting is going on.
- There was a rush.
- You (s.) will not be spared.
- Catiline was not believed by Cicero.
- An instruction had been given to Lentulus.

156 Future perfect indicative active 'I shall have —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I shall have loved'	'I shall have had'	'I shall have said'
1st s.	amāu-er-ō (amārō etc.)	habu-er-ō	dix-er-ō
2nd s.	amāu-eri-s	habu-eri-s	dix-eri-s
3rd s.	amāu-eri-t	habu-eri-t	dix-eri-t
1st pl.	amāu-eri-mus	habu-eri-mus	dix-eri-mus
2nd pl.	amāu-eri-tis	habu-eri-tis	dix-eri-tis
3rd pl.	amāu-eri-nt	habu-eri-nt	dix-eri-nt

	4	3/4
	'I shall have heard'	'I shall have captured'
1st s.	audiu-er-ō (audierō etc.)	cēper-ō
2nd s.	audiu-eri-s	cēp-eri-s
3rd s.	audiu-eri-t	cēperi-t
1st pl.	audiu-eri-mus	cēp-eri-mus
2nd pl.	audiu-eri-tis	cēp-eri-tis
3rd pl.	audiu-eri-nt	cēp-eri-nt

Notes

- 1 The fut. perf. means 'I shall have —ed'. It is often best translated into English either as the plain present or as the plain perfect ('I have —ed'), because English does not express the strict temporal relationship between two future events, one of which is prior to the other, as Latin usually does, e.g.

ubi cōsulēs uocauerō, sententiam dīcam 'When I (shall) have called the consuls, I shall speak my mind'

nisi pūnītī erunt, rēī pūblicaē nocēbō 'unless they are (= shall have been) punished, I shall be hurting the republic'

- 2 The future perfect active is formed by taking the stem of the 3rd p.p. and adding: -erō -eris -erit -erimus -eritis -erint. Note that the normal active personal endings (-ō, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt) are used.
- 3 Note the alternative forms of 1st and 4th conjugation *amārō* and *audierō*, where -u- has been dropped. This also occurs with some other verbs, e.g. *dēlēō* = *dēlēuerō*.

157 Future perfect indicative deponent 'I shall have —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I shall have threatened'	'I shall have promised'	'I shall have spoken'
1st s.	mināt-us a um érō	pollícit-us a um érō	locūt-us a um érō
2nd s.	mināt-us a um éris	pollícit-us a um éris	locūt-us a um éris
3rd s.	mināt-us a um érit	pollícit-us a um érit	locūt-us a um érit
1st pl.	mināt-ī ae a érimus	pollícit-ī ae a érimus	locūt-ī ae a érimus
2nd pl.	mināt-ī ae a éritis	pollícit-ī ae a éritis	locūt-ī ae a éritis
3rd pl.	mināt-ī ae a érint	pollícit-ī ae a érint	locūt-ī ae a érint
	4	3/4	
	'I shall have lied'	'I shall have advanced'	
1st s.	mentīt-us a um érō	prōgrēss-us a um érō	
2nd s.	mentīt-us a um éris	prōgrēss-us a um éris	
3rd s.	mentīt-us a um érit	prōgrēss-us a um érit	

1st pl.	mentītī ae a érimus	prōgrēssī ae a érimus
2nd pl.	mentītī ae a éritis	prōgrēssī ae e éritis
3rd pl.	mentītī ae a érun	prōgrēssī ae a érun

NB. The future perfect deponent is formed by taking the stem of the perfect participle, adding the appropriate endings *-us -a -um* etc. to agree with the subject, and adding *erō eris erit erimus eritis erunt*, the future of *sum*.

158 Future perfect indicative passive 'I shall have been —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I shall have been loved'	'I shall have been held'	'I shall have been said'
1st s.	amāt-us érō	hábit-us érō	díct-us érō
2nd s.	amāt-us éris	hábit-us éris	díct-us éris
3rd s.	amāt-us érit	hábit-us érit	díct-us érit
1st pl.	amāt-ī érimus	hábit-ī érimus	díct-ī érimus
2nd pl.	amāt-ī éritis	hábit-ī éritis	díct-ī éritis
3rd pl.	amāt-ī érun	hábit-ī érun	díct-ī érun
	4	3/4	
	'I shall have been heard'	'I shall have been captured'	
1st s.	audīt-us érō	cápt-us érō	
2nd s.	audīt-us éris	cápt-us éris	
3rd s.	audīt-us érit	cápt-us érit	
1st pl.	audīt-ī érimus	cápt-ī érimus	
2nd pl.	audīt-ī éritis	cápt-ī éritis	
3rd pl.	audīt-ī érun	cápt-ī érun	

NB. For formation of the future perfect indicative passive, see note on future perfect deponent (above) 157.

Exercises

- Form and conjugate these verbs in the future perfect tense (where 'passive' is written, give active and passive – give deponent and passive in *m. form*). *cūctor*, *trādō*, *occupō* (passive), *ēripiō*, *praebeō*, *committō* (passive), *exorior*, *sum*, (optional: *cohortor*, *pūniō* (passive), *nōlō*, *adeō*, *patefaciō* (passive), *ūtor*, *patior*, *noceō*).
- Translate these future perfects, then change *s.* to *pl.* or vice versa: *mōuerit*, *īnfueritis*, *parāta erit*, *conuocātī erunt*, *putāuerint*, *cōnātus eris*,

impediūerimus, *uīxerō*, *exorta erunt*, *potuerint*, (optional: *adiūnxerit*, *mandāuerimus*, *agitātus erit*, *petiuerint*, *nārrāta erunt*, *recordātus eris*, *prohibuerō*, *simulātus erit*, *profecti eritis*, *questa erit*).

- Give the Latin for: I shall have lived; he will have attacked; they will have thought; she will have been sought out; it will have seemed; you (*pl.*) will have handed over; they will have been seized; you (*s.*) will have punished; (optional: it will have arisen; they will have hesitated; I shall have rescued; it will have been revealed; she will have committed; we will have finished; you (*pl.*) will have besieged; they (*n.*) will have been broken).

- Locate and translate the future perfects in this list (say which tense the others are): *cupiueram*, *cohortātī erunt*, *parāuerās*, *pūnīta eris*, *seruāuissent*, *ērepta erit*, *imperāuistī*, *exortī eritis*, *trādīdistis*, *uocāuerātis*, *nocuerō*, *cōnsiderāuerit*, *liberāuimus*, *cūctāta esset*, *praeberit*, *questus erō*, *aperuistis*, *nārrāuerunt*, *simulāuerint*, *requīsīuit*, *adierimus*, *aggressus esset*, *effēcerit*, *uīsum erat*.

- Translate these sentences:

- nisi cōsulibus Rōmānōs in periculō esse nūtiāuerimus, coniūrātōrēs rem pūblicam occupābunt.*
- cōsul ubi cūis malōs pūniuerit, omnibus nūtiābit rem pūblicam saluam esse.*
- sī coniūrātōrēs in templum Concordiae ire iusserō, illi nōn cūctābuntur.*
- paucīs diēbus illi interfecti erunt.*
- ubi coniūrātōrēs occīsī erunt, Cicerōnī poena eōrum onerī erit.*
- nisi cōstituerit cōsul fore ut coniūrātōrēs necentur, ciuitās in magnō periculō erit.*
- sapiētī¹ nōn nocetur ā paupertāte,² nōn ā dolōre.³ (Seneca)*

¹ *sapiēns* *sapiēt-is* 3m. wise man.

² *paupertās* *paupertāt-is* 3f. poverty.

³ *dolor* *dolōr-is* 3m. pain.

159 Numerals: cardinal 11–90 and ordinal 1st–10th

Cardinal

11	XI	ūndecim
12	XII	duódecim
13	XIII	trēdecim
14	XIV	quattuórdecim
15	XV	quīndecim

16	XVI	sēdecim
17	XVII	septēdecim
18	XVIII	duodēuigintī
19	XIX	ūndēuigintī
20	XX	uigintī
30	XXX	trīgintā
40	XL	quādrāgintā
50	L	quīnquāgintā
60	LX	sexāgintā
70	LXX	septuāgintā
80	LXXX	octōgintā
90	XC	nōnāgintā

Ordinal

1st	prīmus (prior)
2nd	secūndus (āter)
3rd	tērtius
4th	quārtus
5th	quīntus
6th	sēxtus
7th	sēptimus
8th	octāuus
9th	nōnus
10th	dēcimus etc.

Notes

- 1 Ordinals decline like *mult-us a um*.
 2 See 54 for cardinals 1–10, 100–1,000.

English–Latin

Reread the text of 5C(iii), then translate this passage into Latin:
 Cicero was seized by great anxiety¹. He therefore spoke to himself as follows: 'You should realise² that you have saved the state from danger. Do not hesitate to demand the death-penalty from the conspirators. If they are spared^{3,4} by you, the state will be harmed³. If Roman citizens are killed⁴ on the say-so of a consul, this death-penalty will be a burden on you. Nevertheless, you ought to be bold. I think that you won't regret⁵ this boldness. For you will have saved the state.'

¹ Turn the sentence into the active, with 'anxiety' as subject, 'Cicero' as object.

² Use jussive subjunctive.

³ Remember that *noceō/parcō* take dative, so you must use impersonal passives here ('they' and 'the state' will be dative; 'by you' *ā* + abl.).

⁴ Use future perfect tense.

⁵ Use *fore ut* + subjunctive.

Virgil's Aeneid

Aeneas, still telling the story of the fall of Troy, recounts how Achilles' son Pyrrhus (also called Neoptolemus) caught up with Troy's aged king Priam and slaughtered him at the very altar where he and his family had been taking refuge. His headless corpse now lies on the beach.

sic fātus senior tēlumque imbelle sine ictū
 coniecit, raucō quod prōtinus aere repulsum
 et summō clipeī nequiquam umbōne pependit.
 cū Pyrrhus: 'referēs ergō haec et nūntius ībis
 Pēlidae genitōrī. illī mea trīstia facta
 dēgeneremque Neoptolemum nārrāre mementō.
 nunc morere.'

With these words the old man hurled his spear, but it did no damage. There was no strength in it. It rattled on the bronze of Pyrrhus' shield without penetrating, and hung there useless, sticking in the central boss on the surface of the shield. Pyrrhus then made his reply. 'In that case you will take this message from me and go with it to my dead father Achilles. Describe my cruelty to him and remember to tell him that Neoptolemus [= Pyrrhus] is a disgrace to his father. Now, die.'

hoc dīcēns altāria ad ipsa trementem
 trāxit et in multō lāpsantem sanguine nātī,
 implicuitque comam laeuā, dextrāque coruscum 10
 extulit ac laterī capulō tenuis abdidit ēnsem.
 haec finis Priamī fātōrum, hic exitus illum
 sorte tulit Trōiam incēnsam et prōlāpsa uidentem
 Pergama, tot quondam populīs terrīsque superbum
 rēgnātōrem Asiae. iacet ingēns lītore truncus, 15
 āuulsumque umerīs caput et sine nōmine corpus.

(Aeneid 2.544–58)

hoc dīcēns [Take together to solve hoc (n.) at once]
 altāri-um ī 2n. altar
 tremō 3 I tremble [With age not fear, here. Present participle in acc., so something or someone is 'trembling'. If no noun, 'the person trembling'. Await subject and verb]
 trahō 3 trāxī I drag [Solves trementem: and who is it who is 'trembling'?]
 in multō [But multō what? Wait]

lāpsō 1 I slip [Surely the same person as trementem]
 sanguine [Solves multō]
 nāt-us ī 2m. son [Priam's son Polites had just been killed by Neoptolemus]
 10 implicō implicuī 1 I wrap x (acc.) in y (abl.)
 com-a ae 1f. hair
 laeu-a ae 1f. left hand
 dextr-a ae 1f. right hand

corusc-us a um gleaming [But what? 'something gleaming, nom. or acc.']
extulit [Probably what he does to whatever it is that is gleaming]
exferō 3 extulī I take out
latus later-is 3n. side [Register dative, wait]
capul-us ī 2m. hilt [Dat. or abl. Wait]
tenu-s (+abl.) as far as, right up to [Solves *capulō*]
abdō 3 abdidī I bury
ēnsis ēns-is 3m. sword [So 'he buried the sword right up to the hilt *laterī*': whose *laterī*? Can you now solve *coruscum*?]
fīnis fīn-is 3f. end [Sc. *fuit*]
fāt-a ōrum 2n. pl. fate, destiny
exit-us ūs 4m. death
illum [Presumably Priam, in acc.. Wait]
sors sort-is 3f. allocation, lot, fate [Hold]
tulit [So 'this death took him off *sorte*'. Meaning of *sorte*?]
Trōiam incēnsam [What is this acc. doing? The meaning appeared to be complete, but we now have an unaccountable acc.. Be patient. 'Something about "burned Troy" in the acc.']
prōlābor 3 prōlāpsus I collapse, fall [Probably acc. pl. n., to complement *Trōiam* in the acc. So 'and something fallen']
uidentem [Acc. s. m. At last! Who must this agree with? What does it solve?]

Pergam-a ōrum 2n. pl. the citadel of Troy [Solves *prōlāpsa*]
tot [Here we go again, when we thought the sense complete]
quondam once upon a time
populīs terrisque [Probably with *tot*. Hold dat. or abl.]
superb-us a um proud, splendid [Could this be acc. s. m. referring to Priam, who has just seen Troy burnt (etc.)? Wait]
15 *rēgnātor rēgnātōr-is 3m.* ruler [Acc. s. m., so *superbum rēgnātōrem* looks very much as if it does refer to Priam]
Asiae [Confirms the above]
iaceō 2 I lie [Who? Probably Priam . . . but wait. *ingēns* 'mighty Priam'? Wait]
lītus lītōr-is 3n. shore
trunc-us ī 2m. torso [Ah. 'He lies, a mighty torso, *lītore*.' How did it get *lītore*? One tradition held Priam was killed at Achilles' tomb on the shore, so Virgil has moved from palace to shore to accommodate it. There may be another reason: Pompey was beheaded on a beach in Egypt (see **6C(iii)**). Virgil may be reminding his readers of that]
āuellō 3 āuulsī āuuls-us I rip ['Something ripped']
umer-us ī 2m. shoulder [Abl., perhaps 'ripped from']

Deliciae Latinae

From the 'Life of Aurelian'

A ditty composed by fellow-soldiers of Aurelian (Emperor A.D. 270) on the basis of his exploits against the Sarmatians (before his principate). He was reported to have slain over 950 in the course of just a few days.

mille mille mille dēcollāuimus.
 ūnus homo! mille dēcollāuimus.
 mille bibat quī mille occīdit.
 tantum uīnī habet nēmo, quantum fūdit sanguinis.

<i>mille</i> 'a thousand men' (acc.)	<i>tantum . . . quantum</i> as much . . . as [cf. <i>satis</i> / <i>nimis</i> + gen. 31]	<i>fundō 3 fūdī</i> I spill, shed (the subject is Aurelian, who is also the <i>ūnus</i> <i>homo</i> of l. 2)
<i>dēcollō 1</i> I behead, decapitate	<i>uīn-um ī 2n.</i> wine	

The Vulgate: *creātiō caelī et terrae*

in prīncipiō creāuit Deus caelum et terram. terra autem erat inānis et uacua, et tenebrae erant super faciem abyssi, et Spīritus Deī ferēbātur super aquās. dixitque Deus, 'fiat lūx', et facta est lūx. et uīdit Deus lūcem quod esset bona: et dīuīsīt lūcem ā tenebrīs. appellāuitque lūcem Diem, et tenebrās Noctem: factumque est uespere et māne, diēs ūnus. 5

dixit quoque Deus, 'fiat firmāmentum in mediō aquārum: et dīuidat aquās ab aquīs.' et fēcīt Deus firmāmentum, dīuīsītque aquās, quae erant sub firmāmentō, ab hīs, quae erant super firmāmentum. et factum est ita. uocāuitque Deus firmāmentum Caelum: et factum est uespere et māne, diēs secundus. 10

dixit uērō Deus, 'congregentur aquae, quae sub caelō sunt, in locum ūnum, et appāreat ārida.' et factum est ita. et uocāuit Deus āridam Terram, congregātiōnēque aquārum appellāuit Maria. et uīdit Deus quod esset bonum. et ait, 'germinet terra herbam uirentem et facientem sēmen, et lignum pōmiferum faciēns frūctum iuxtā genus suum, cuius sēmen in sēmetipsō sit super terram.' et factum est ita. et prōtulit terra herbam uirentem, et facientem sēmen iuxtā genus suum, lignumque faciēns frūctum, et habēns ūnumquodque sēmentem secundum speciem suam. et uīdit Deus quod esset bonum. et factum est uespere et māne, diēs tertius. 15 20

dixit autem Deus, 'fiant lūmināria in firmāmentō caelī, et dīuidant diem ac noctem, et sint in signa et tempora, et diēs et annōs; ut lūceant in firmāmentō caelī, et illūminent terram.' et factum est ita. fēcītque Deus duo lūmināria magna: lūmināre maius ut praeesset diēi: et lūmināre minus ut praeesset noctī: et stellās. et posuit eās in firmāmentō caelī, ut lūcērent super terram et praeessent diēi ac noctī, et dīuiderent lūcem ac tenebrās. et uīdit Deus quod esset bonum. et factum est uespere et māne, diēs quārtus. 25

dixit etiam Deus, 'prōdūcant aquae rēptile animae uīuentis et uolātile

super terram sub firmamentō caelī.' creāuitque Deus cētē grandia, et omnem animam uiuentem atque mōtābilem, quam prōdūxerant aquae in speciēs suās, et omne uolātile secundum genus suum. et uīdit Deus quod esset bonum. benedixitque eīs, dīcēns, 'crēscite, et multiplicāminī, et replēte aquās maris: auēsque multiplicentur super terram.' et factum est uespere et māne, diēs quīntus.

dixit quoque Deus, 'prōdūcat terra animam uiuentem in genere suō, iūmenta, et rēptilia, et bēstiās terrae secundum speciēs suās.' factumque est ita. et fēcit Deus bēstiās terrae iuxtā speciēs suās, et iūmenta, et omne rēptile terrae in genere suō. et uīdit Deus quod esset bonum. et ait, 'faciāmus hominem ad imāginem et similitudinē nostram, et praesit piscibus maris, et uolātilibus caelī, et bēstiīs, ūniuersaeque terrae, omnīque rēptilī, quod mouētur in terrā.' et creāuit Deus hominem ad imāginem suam: ad imāginem Deī creāuit illum, masculum et fēminam creāuit eōs. benedixitque illis Deus, et ait, 'crēscite et multiplicāminī, et replēte terram, et subicite eam, et domināminī piscibus maris, et uolātilibus caelī, et ūniuersīs animantibus, quae mouentur super terram.' dixitque Deus, 'ecce dedī uōbīs omnem herbam afferentem sēmen super terram, et ūniuersa ligna quae habent in sēmetipsīs sēmentem generis suī, ut sint uōbīs in ēscam: et cūctīs animantibus terrae, omnīque uolucrī caelī, et ūniuersīs quae mouentur in terrā, et in quibus est anima uiuēns, ut habeant ad uēscendum.' et factum est ita. uīditque Deus cūcta quae fēcerat, et erant ualdē bona. et factum est uespere et māne, diēs sextus.

igitur perfectī sunt caelī et terra, et omnis ōrnātus eōrum. complēuitque Deus diē septimō opus suum quod fēcerat: et requiēuit diē septimō ab ūniuersō opere quod patrārat. et benedixit diēi septimō et sāctificāuit illum, quia in ipsō cessauerat ab omnī opere suō quod creāuit Deus ut faceret. (*Genesis 1.1–2.3*)

creātiō creātiōn-is 3f. creation
cael-um ī 2n. heaven, sky; pl. cael-ī ōrum
2m.

prīncipi-um ī 2n. beginning

creō 1 I create

inān-is e empty

uacu-us a um void

tenebr-ae ārum 1f. pl. shadows, darkness

faci-ēs faciē-ī 5f. face

abyss-us ī 2f. depths of the sea

super (+ acc.) over, above

spīrit-us ūs 4m. spirit; breath

lūx lūc-is 3f. light

quod that (+ subj.) [*Also in ll. 14, 19, 27, 33, 39*]

dīuidō 3 dīuīsi 1 divide

appellō 1 I call

5 uespere n. evening

māne n. morning

ūnus = prīmus

firmament-um ī 2n. prop; stay; sky

above the earth

sub (+ abl.) underneath

11 congregō 1 I gather

appareō 2 I appear

ārid-a ae 1f. dry land

congregātiō congregātiōn-is 3f. gathering
ait 'he said'

germinō 1 I produce

herb-a ae 1f. grass

uirēns uirent-is green

15 sēmen sēmin-is 3n. seed

lign-um ī 2n. wood, tree

pōmifer pōmifer-a um fruit-bearing

fruct-us ūs 4m. fruit

iuxtā (+ acc.) in accordance with

genus gener-is 3n. kind, type

sēmetipsō 'itself' [Pl. 1. 48: sēmetipsīs

'themselves']

prōferō prōferre prōtulī 1 produce

ūnumquodque each one

sēmentis sēment-is 3f. sowing

secundum (+ acc.) in accordance with

speciēs speciē-ī 5f. species

20 lūmināre lūminār-is 3n. light

in (+ acc.) for the purpose of [*Also*

1. 49]

lūceō 2 I shine

illūminō 1 I light up

25 stell-a ae 1f. star

prōdūcō 3 prōdūxī 1 produce, bring

forth

rēptile rēptil-is 3n. crawling creature

anim-a ae 1f. soul, animal

uolātile uolātil-is 3n. flying creature

30 cētē n. pl. sea-beasts, monsters

grand-is e huge, vast

mōtābil-is e moving

in (+ acc.) in accordance with

benedicō 3 benedixī 1 bless (+ dat.)

crēscō 3 I increase

multiplicor 1 dep. I multiply

34 replēō 2 I fill

auis au-is 3f. bird

iūment-um ī 2n. beast

bēsti-a ae 1f. wild beast

imāgō imāgin-is 3f. image

40 similitūdō similitūdīn-is 3f. likeness

piscis pisc-is 3m. fish

ūniuers-us a um whole, all

mascul-us ī 2m. male

subiciō 3/4 I subdue

45 dominor 1 dep. I rule (+ dat.)

animāns animant-is 3m./f. animal

in ēscam 'for food'

uolucris uolucr-is 3f. bird

51 ad uēscendum 'for eating'

cūct-us a um every, all

ualdē very

ōrnāt-us ūs 4m. decoration, trimmings

complēō 2 complēuī 1 finish

requiēscō 3 requiēuī 1 rest

patrō 1 I effect

sāctificō 1 I sanctify

cessō 1 I stop, cease

Section 5D

Running vocabulary for 5D(i)

acerb-us a um bitter

an: see *utrum*

arcessō 3 I summon

arx arc-is 3f. citadel

aspect-us ūs 4m.

appearance

atrōcitās atrōcitāt-is 3f.

harshness

attribuō 3 I assign, give x

(acc.) to y (dat.) (as his

share)

bacchor 1 dep. I rave,

revel, act like a

Bacchant

clēmēns clēmēt-is merciful

concitō 1 I incite

coniūnx coniug-is 3f. wife

contrā (+ acc.) against
crūdēl-is *e* cruel
diripiend-us *a um* to be
 torn apart (*diripiō* 3/4)
dolor dolōr-is 3m. pain,
 anguish
domicili-um *ī* 2n. dwelling
dūcend-us *a um* to be led
etenim for in fact, and
 indeed
ēuertend-us *a um* to be
 overturned (*ēuertō* 3)
ferre-us *a um* made of
 iron, unfeeling
fug-a *ae* 1f. flight
fundāment-um *ī* 2n.
 foundation
Gall-ī *ōrum* 2m. pl. Gauls
hūmānitās hūmānitāt-is 3f.
 humanity, kindness
idcirco for this reason,
 therefore
importūn-us *a um* cruel,
 savage
incendend-us *a um* to be
 burned
inhūmān-us *a um* cruel,
 savage
interficiend-us *a um* to be
 killed

lāmentātiō lāmentātiōn-is 3f.
 lamentation
lēniō 4 I soothe
lūx lūc-is 3f. light
māter familiās mātr-is
familiās 3f. mother (of
 the household)
miserand-us *a um* to be
 pitied
miser cordi-a *ae* 1f. pity
miser cord-is
 compassionate
mīt-is *e* gentle, mild
necand-us *a um* to be
 killed
neglegend-us *a um* to be
 ignored
orbis terrārum orb-is
terrārum 3m. the world
 (lit. the circle of lands)
pater familiās patr-is
familiās 3m. father
 (head of the household)
perhorrēscō 3 I shudder
 greatly at, have a great
 fear of
prōpōnō 3 I imagine (*mihi*
prōpōnō = I set before
 my mind's eye)

rēgnō 1 I rule (as king)
remiss-us *a um* mild, slack
seuēr-us *a um* strict, stern
sīn but if
singulār-is *e* unparalleled,
 extraordinary
singul-ī *ae* *a* individual
sūmō 3 I take
supplicium sūmere to exact
 the penalty (from *x*:
dē + abl.)
timend-us *a um* to be
 feared
trucidō 1 I butcher
uāstand-us *a um* to be laid
 waste (*uāstō* 1)
uehemēns uehement-is
 violent
uersor 1 dep. I stay
Vestāl-is *e* Vestal
 (belonging to the
 goddess Vesta)
uexātiō uexātiōn-is 3f. ill-
 treatment
ūniuers-us *a um* whole,
 entire
utrum . . . an = double
 question, i.e. A or B?

Notes

- l. 153 *in uestrā caede* 'in your slaughter' = 'in slaughter of you'. Possessive adjectives are often used in this way.
- ll. 159–62 *sī . . . sūmat, . . . uideātur*: note mood of verbs, and remember *sī* + pres. subj., pres. subj. = 'if *x* were to happen, *y* would happen.'
- l. 160 *quam acerbissimum* 'as bitter as possible'. See learning vocabulary 5B(iii).
- ll. 163–4 *uideātur . . . nisi . . . lēniat*: see note on ll. 159–62. *nocentis* 'of the person who harmed him': pres. part. used as a noun.
- ll. 170–1 *ad ēuertenda fundāmenta*: tr. 'to overturn the foundations'.
- l. 171 *ad incendendam urbem*: tr. 'to set the city on fire'.
- l. 172 *ad dūcendum . . . exercitum*: tr. 'to lead an army'.

Learning vocabulary for 5D(i)

Nouns

arx arc-is 3f. citadel

dolor dolōr-is 3m. pain,
 anguish

fug-a *ae* 1f. flight
lūx lūc-is 3f. light

Adjectives

crūdēl-is *e* cruel

miserand-us *a um* to be
 pitied

miser cord-is
 compassionate
seuēr-us *a um* strict, stern
uehemēns uehement-is
 impetuous, violent

Vestāl-is *e* Vestal
 (belonging to the
 goddess Vesta)

Verbs

arcessō 3 *arcessiū* *arcessit*
 I summon

attribuō 3 *attribuī* *attribūt*
 I assign, give
 (*ad* + tribuō)

prōpōnō 3 *prōposuī*
prōpositus I set before;
 imagine; offer
 (*prō* + *pōnō*)

sūmō 3 *sūmpsī* *sūmptus* I
 take; put on; eat;
supplicium sūmere dē
 (+ abl.) to exact the
 penalty from *x*

Others

contrā (+ acc.) against
idcirco for this/that reason,
 therefore

utrum . . . an = double
 question, i.e. A or B?
 (negative: *annōn*, i.e. A
 or not?)

Running vocabulary for 5D(ii)

acerb-us *a um* bitter

adit-us *ūs* 4m. entrance

commūn-is *e* shared, in
 common

cōscript-us *a um* chosen,
 elected

cōseruand-us *a um* to be
 preserved (*cōseruō* 1)

cum . . . tum both . . . and

diligenti-a *ae* 1f. diligence
genus gener-is 3n. kind,
 type

imperi-um *ī* 2n. power,
 authority, dominion

nē (+ subj.) that, lest
nefand-us *a um* impious,
 execrable
ōrdō ordin-is 3m. rank
patrēs cōscriptī =

senātōrēs senators
patri-a *ae* 1f. fatherland
prōuideō 2 *prōuīdī* *prōuīsus*
 I take care of
remissiō remissiōn-is 3f.
 remission, relaxation
retinend-us *a um* to be
 retained (*retineō* 2)

timend-us *a um* to be
 feared (*timeō* 2)
trānsigend-us *a um* to be
 accomplished (*trānsigō*
 3)
uerend-us *a um* to be
 feared (*ueeor* 2 dep.)
ueeor 2 dep. I fear, am
 afraid ('that': *nē* +
 subj.; 'that not': *ut* +
 subj.)
uoluntās uoluntat-is 3f.
 will, wish
ut (+ subj.) (after *ueeor*)
 'that . . . not'

Notes

ll. 174, 175, 177 *nē*: following *timeō* or *uereor* – ‘(I am afraid) that x will happen’.

l. 175 *seuēriōrēs*: remember that comparatives may mean ‘rather’ and ‘too’ as well as ‘more’.

ll. 178–9 *uerērī . . . ut*: ‘be afraid that x will not happen’.

l. 179 *ad cōsilia . . . trānsigenda*: tr. ‘to accomplish your plans’.

l. 180–1 *cum . . . tum*: ‘both . . . and’ – a favourite construction in Cicero.

l. 181–2 *ad summum . . . retinendum*: tr. ‘to retain the sovereign power’.

l. 182 *ad commūnīs . . . cōnservandās*: tr. ‘to preserve the fortunes we share’.

Learning vocabulary for 5D(ii)

Nouns

genus gener-is 3n. type, kind (family; stock; tribe)

imperium ī 2n. power, authority, dominion (order, command)

ōrdō ordin-is 3m. rank (i.e. section of society or line of soldiers)

patrēs cōscriptī = *senātōrēs*
senators

patri-a ae 1f. fatherland
uoluntās uoluntāt-is 3f.
will, wish

Adjectives

acerb-us a um bitter

commūn-is e shared in, common, universal

Verbs

cōservuō 1 I keep safe, preserve (*con* + *servuō*)

prōuideō 2 *prōuīdī prōuīsus*
I take care (often followed by *nē* + subj.) (*prō* + *uideō*)

uereor 2 dep. *ueritus* I fear, am afraid (usually followed by *nē/ut* + subj.)

Others

cum . . . tum both . . . and (especially common in Cicero)

Running vocabulary for 5D(iii)

aspect-us ūs 4m.
appearance

cār-us a um dear, valued
concordi-a ae 1f. harmony
coniungō 3 I bring x (acc.)
to support y (*ad* + acc.)

cōsentio 4 I agree

cōnservand-us a um to be preserved (*cōnservuō* 1)

dēfendend-us a um to be defended (*dēfendō* 3)

dignitās dignitāt-is 3f.
position

diligenti-a ae 1f. care, diligence

dulc-is e sweet

iūcund-us a um pleasant

par par-is equal

parāt-us a um prepared (to: *ad* + acc. – *parō* 1)

perhorrēscō 3 I shudder greatly at

possessio possessiōn-is 3f.
possession

quantum as much as

tribūn-us ī aerārius 2m.
citizen of the class below *equitēs*

Notes

l. 186 *in quā . . . sentiant*: the subjunctive is generic (see 140.1).

ll. 187–8 *ad salūtem . . . dēfendendam dignitātemque cōservandam*: tr. ‘to defend the safety . . . and preserve the position’.

ll. 186–8 *quī nōn . . . cōsentiat*: the subjunctive is generic (see 140.1).

ll. 188, 189 *quis eques: quis tribūnus aerārius*: *quis* is used here as an adjective (cf. 102³).

ll. 188–9 *quem . . . nōn . . . coniungat*: the subjunctive is generic (see 140.1).

l. 190 *dēfendendae rēi pūblicae*: tr. ‘of defending the state’.

ll. 189–90 *quī nōn . . . conueniat*: the subjunctive is generic (see 140.1).

ll. 190–1 *cui nōn . . . sit*: the subjunctive is generic (see 140.1).

l. 192 *nēmo*: here used as an adjective (= *nūllus*).

ll. 192–4 *quī nōn . . . perhorrēscat, quī nōn . . . cupiat, quī nōn . . . sit*: generic statements, using the subjunctive (see 140.1).

ll. 193–4 *ad salūtem . . . dēfendendam*: tr. ‘to defend . . . the safety . . .’

Learning vocabulary for 5D(iii)

Nouns

concordi-a ae 1f. harmony

dignitās dignitāt-is 3f.
distinction, position;
honour; rank, high
office

diligenti-a ae 1f. care,
diligence

Adjectives

dulc-is e sweet

iūcund-us a um pleasant

Others

quantum as much as

Running vocabulary for 5D(iv)

<i>anim-a ae</i> 1f. soul, life	<i>immō uērō</i> nay rather	<i>paene</i> almost
<i>ār-a ae</i> 1f. altar	<i>impi-us a um</i> with no	<i>parāt-us a um</i> prepared
<i>auct-us a um</i> increased	respect for gods,	(to: <i>ad</i> + acc. – <i>parō</i> 1)
(<i>augeō</i> 2)	parents or fatherland	<i>Penātēs Penāt-ium</i> 3m. pl.
<i>benignitās benignitāt-is</i> 3f.	<i>iūdicand-us a um</i> to be	gods of the household
kindness	judged (<i>iūdicō</i> 1)	<i>posthāc</i> after this time,
<i>commendō</i> 1 I entrust x	<i>labor labōr-is</i> 3m. toil,	hereafter, in future
(acc.) to y (dat.)	hard work, trouble	<i>prōuidend-us a um</i> to be
<i>coniūnx coniug-is</i> 3f. wife	<i>libertās libertāt-is</i> 3f.	taken care about
<i>cōsentiō</i> 4 I agree	freedom	(<i>prōuideō</i> 2)
<i>cōseruand-us a um</i> to be	<i>memor memor-is</i> mindful	<i>sempitern-us a um</i> eternal
preserved (<i>cōseruō</i> 1)	of (x: gen.)	<i>stabilīt-us a um</i> made firm
<i>cūrānd-us a um</i> to be taken	<i>mēns ment-is</i> 3f. mind	(<i>stabilīō</i> 4)
care of (<i>cūrō</i> 1)	<i>nē</i> (+ subj.) after <i>prōuideō</i>	<i>supplex supplic-is</i> suppliant
<i>dēfendend-us a um</i> to be	‘in case’, ‘lest’	<i>tendō</i> 3 I stretch forth
defended (<i>dēfendō</i> 3)	<i>oblīuīscor</i> 3 dep. <i>oblītus</i> I	uel even
<i>fax fac-is</i> 3f. torch,	forget (+ gen. of	<i>ūniuers-us a um</i> whole
firebrand	person)	<i>Vest-a ae</i> 1f. Vesta
<i>fundāt-us a um</i> established	<i>obsess-us a um</i> besieged	(goddess of the hearth)
(<i>fundō</i> 1)	(<i>obsideō</i> 2)	

Notes

- l. 196 *prōuidendum est nē*: lit. ‘it is to be taken care about lest . . .’.
- l. 197 *ad uītā suā dēfendendam*: ‘to defend his own life’.
- ll. 197–8 *ad uestram salūtem cūrādam*: ‘to take care of your safety’.
- ll. 198–9 *ad cōseruandam rem pūblicā*: ‘to keep the state safe’.
- ll. 200–1 *uōbīs sē . . .*: not solved until *commendat* in l. 8. Tr. ‘to you herself (obj.) . . .’ etc.
- l. 204 *uōbīs iūdicandum est*: tr. ‘you ought to judge’ (lit. ‘it is to-be-judged as-far-as-you-are-concerned’).
- ll. 209–10 *nē . . .*: ‘that’, ‘lest’, picked up by *prōuidendum est*, lit. ‘it is to be taken care about’.
- l. 210 *uōbīs prōuidendum est nē . . .*: tr. ‘you must take care, lest . . .’ (lit. ‘it is to-be-taken-care-about as-far-as-you-are-concerned’).

Learning vocabulary for 5D(iv)

Nouns

ār-a ae 1f. altar
labor labōr-is 3m. toil,
 hard work; trouble

Adjectives

<i>impi-us a um</i> with no	<i>memor memor-is</i>	<i>supplex supplic-is</i> suppliant
respect for gods,	remembering (x: gen.),	(also a noun)
parents or fatherland	mindful of (x: gen.)	

Verbs

<i>augeō</i> 2 auxī <i>auctus</i> I	<i>oblīuīscor</i> 3 dep. <i>oblītus</i> I	<i>tendō</i> 3 <i>tetendī tēnsus</i> or
increase (trans.)	forget (+ gen. of	<i>tentus</i> I stretch (out);
	person)	offer; direct; travel

Others

paene almost
uel even (either . . . or)

Grammar and exercises for 5D

160 Gerundives: *-ndus -nda -ndum* ‘to be —ed’

The gerundive is an adjective based on a verb and declining like *mult-us a um*. Its meaning is passive, ‘to be —ed’. Here is the formation:

1	2	3
<i>amā-nd-us a um</i>	<i>habē-nd-us a um</i>	<i>dīc-ē-nd-us a um</i>
‘to be loved’	‘to be had’	‘to be said’
<i>minā-nd-us a um</i> ¹	<i>pollicē-nd-us a um</i>	<i>loqu-ē-nd-us a um</i>
‘to be threatened’	‘to be promised’	‘to be said’
4	3/4	
<i>audi-ē-nd-us a um</i>	<i>capi-ē-nd-us a um</i>	
‘to be heard’	‘to be captured’	
<i>menti-ē-nd-us a um</i> ¹	<i>prōgredi-ē-nd-us a um</i> ¹	
‘to be lied’	‘to be advanced’	

¹ These verbs, being intransitive, would normally be found only in the neuter. See 161¹.

161 Uses of the gerundive

- 1 As an adjective meaning ‘to be —ed’, e.g.

trādīdīt nōs necandōs ‘he handed us over to be killed’

A number of other verbs take this construction e.g. *dō*, *petō*, *cūrō* etc., e.g.

Caesar pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat 'Caesar saw to the making of a bridge over the Arar.' (Caesar)

- 2 With any tense of *sum*, carrying the idea of obligation, duty, necessity (i) personally, e.g.

mīlitēs erant reuocandī 'the soldiers were to be called back', 'had to be recalled', 'needed to be recalled'

- (ii) impersonally, in the neuter singular, e.g.

prōuidendum est 'it is to be taken care about', 'care needs to be taken'

eundum est 'it is to be gone', 'one must go'

- 3 With nouns, especially *ad* + acc. to denote purpose, e.g.:

ad ēuertenda fundāmenta 'for the foundations to be overturned', i.e. 'for overturning the foundations' / 'with a view to overturning foundations'.

The ablatives *causā*/*grātiā* 'for the sake of' (which follow the phrase which they govern), are commonly used with a gerundive construction to express purpose, e.g.

templī uidendī causā 'for the sake of the temple-to-be-seen', 'for the sake of seeing the temple', 'to see the temple'.

(Cf. *honōris causā* (or *grātiā*) 'for honour's sake', 'as an honour'; e.g. = *exemplī grātiā* 'for (the sake of) an example'.)

NB. Where awkwardness results from literal translation of the gerundive, turn the phrase into an active form in English, e.g. *ad mīlitēs necandōs* lit. 'with a view to the soldiers to be killed' → 'with a view to killing the soldiers'.

Notes

- 1 The impersonal construction is very common with verbs which do not take a direct object in the accusative. These cannot be used personally in the passive, so appear in the passive impersonally with a number of adjustments (cf. 155), e.g.

parcendum est fēminae 'it is to be spared to the woman', 'the woman must be spared'

Deponents also are used thus, e.g.

ūtendum est sapientiā 'one should use wisdom'

- 2 'By' a person is normally expressed by a plain dative with gerundives, e.g. *omnia sunt paranda Caesarī* 'everything is to be prepared by Caesar'. But where the verb in gerundive form normally takes the dative, *ā*/*ab* + abl. is used instead, e.g. *parcendum est fēminae ā mē* 'the woman must be spared by me', 'I must spare the woman'.

Exercises

- 1 Form the gerundive of the following verbs and translate (using n.s. for intransitive verbs, 'it must be —ed'): *arcessō*, *dēleō*, *augeō*, *prōpōnō*, *necō*, *dormiō*, *commoror*, *uereor*, *prōgredior*, (optional: *attribuō*, *sūmō*, *cōnservō*, *tendō*, *praebeō*, *ūtor*, *pūniō*, *cohortor*).

- 2 Translate:

- mihi prōuidendum est.*
- ad urbem dēlendā.*
- labōris agendī causā.*
- dux mīlitibus supplicem interficiendum trādidit.*
- ad arcem dēfendendam.*
- nōbīs prōgrediendum erat.*
- Cicerō cīuīs cōnservandōs cūrat.*
- ad manūs tendendās.*
- ducis necandī grātiā.*
- tibi eundum erit.*
- Cicerō custōdibus coniūrātōrēs cūrandōs trādet.*
- ad ārās dēlendās.*
- Catilīnae arcessendī causā.*
- ad uoluntātem cōnservandam.*
- Lentulus omnia Catilīnae dēlenda attribuit.*
- dēlenda est Karthāgō.*
- arx capienda erat.*
- dolor augendus nōn est.*
- supplicium sūmendum erit.*
- supplicēs trādendī nōn sunt.*
- ā tē cīuibus parcendum est.*
- cīuibus ā mē nocendum nōn erat.*

- (w) moriendum est omnibus. (Cicero)
 (x) nīl sine ratiōne faciendum est. (Seneca)
 (y) ōrandum est ut sit mēns¹ sāna² in corpore sānō. (Juvenal)
 (z) nūllī enim nisi audītūrō dīcendum est. (Seneca)

¹ mēns ment-is 3f. mind.

² sān-us a um healthy.

3 Give the Latin for:

- (a) I must go away.
 (b) Cicero will have to take care.
 (c) To preserve harmony. (Use *ad* + *acc.*)
 (d) For the sake of exacting the penalty. (Use *causā* or *grātiā* + *gen.* after the phrase)
 (e) To summon the citizens. (Use *ad* + *acc.*)
 (f) We had to go forward.
 (g) Our fatherland must be preserved.
 (h) The conspirators must be punished.
 (i) We must not harm our fatherland.
 (j) Cicero should spare no conspirator.

162 timeō, metuō, uereor 'I am afraid to/that/lest'

These 'verbs of fearing' can take an infinitive or subjunctive construction.

They take an *infinitive* construction when English does, e.g.

timeō īre 'I am afraid to go'

ueritī sunt dīcere 'they were afraid to say'

They take a *subjunctive* construction with *nē* (negative *ut* or *nē nōn*) when the meaning is 'fear that/lest'. One would expect a subjunctive here: the certainties about the usual conditions and nature of events have disappeared (cf. 138). E.g.

uereor *nē* Caesar mox redeat 'I am afraid that/lest Caesar will soon return'

timent *ut* ad patriam ueniant 'they are afraid that they will not reach their fatherland'

metuimus *nē* Cicerō satis praesidī nōn habeat 'we fear that Cicero does not have enough of a guard'

Observe that

fearing + *nē* = 'fear that/lest' (i.e. what you want *not* to happen may happen)

fearing + *ut/nē nōn* = 'fear that . . . NOT' (i.e. what you want to happen may *not*)

Notes

1 The subjunctive is controlled by rules of sequence (see **A-G Intro.(a)**).

2 Any verb of effort or precaution (i.e. which expresses the idea of apprehension, worry, danger or anxiety) can use this construction, e.g.

prōuidendum est *nē* populō Rōmānō dēsīs 'care must be taken lest you fail the Roman people'

3 As with purpose clauses, any reference to the subject of the main verb inside the clause will be reflexive; cf. 145¹.

Exercises

1 Translate:

- (a) uereor *nē* urbs incendātur.
 (b) prōuidendum est *nē* hostēs in urbem ingrediantur.
 (c) perīculum est *nē* supplex captus interficiātur.
 (d) Cicerō metuēbat ut satis seuērus esse uidērētur.
 (e) omnēs ōrdinēs ueritī sunt *nē* hostēs impiī urbem caperent.
 (f) cūra erat *nē* uirginēs Vestālēs agitārentur.
 (g) tibi haec omnia dīcere uereor.
 (h) multī ciuēs timēbant *nē* cōsul satis īratus nōn esset.
 (i) ante senectūtem¹ cūrāuī ut² bene uiuerem, in senectūte¹ ut² bene moriar. bene autem morī est libenter³ morī (Seneca)

¹ senectūs senectūt-is 3f. old age.

² ut. Is the construction 'fearing'?

³ libenter willingly.

2 Give the Latin for:

- (a) I am afraid that I will see the flight of our citizens.
 (b) Everyone was afraid to speak.

- (c) Cicero feared that the senate would not be strict enough.
- (d) A suppliant does not fear his enemies.
- (e) There is anxiety in case children are killed.
- (f) There was a danger of the city being destroyed.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Caesar, advancing against the Gallic tribe the Nervii, has pitched camp on the other side of a river-valley from them. As the work of building proceeds, the Nervii launch an unexpected attack.

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: uexillum prōpōnendum, quod erat īnsigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret; signum tubā dandum; ab opere reuocandī mīlītēs; quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī; aciēs īnstruenda; mīlītēs cohortandī; signum dandum. quārum rērum magnam partem temporis breuitās et successus hostium impediēbat . . . Caesar, necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs mīlītēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēuenit. (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* 2.20.1–2 and 2.21.1)

Caesarī [Hold until solved by agenda]
 uexill-um ī 2n. flag
 prōpōnendum [Supply erat – watch out
 for suppression of esse throughout
 this passage with gerundives]
 īnsigne īnsign-is 3n. mark
 concurrī [See 155²]
 tub-a ae 1f. trumpet
 opus oper-is 3n. the work of building a
 camp
 agger agger-is 3m. material for an
 earthwork

prōcēdō 3 prōcessī 1 advance
 aciēs aciē-ī 5f. battle-line
 īnstruō 3 1 draw up
 5 breuitās breuitāt-is 3f. shortness
 success-us ūs 4m. coming up close,
 approach
 necessāri-us a um necessary
 fors fort-is 3f. fortune, luck
 offerō offerre obtulī 1 bring
 dēcurrō 3 dēcucurrī 1 run down
 dēueniō 4 dēuenī 1 come down

English–Latin

1 Translate into Latin (refer back to 140.1 for the grammar of consecutive quī clauses):

- (a) The suppliant stretches forth his hands towards the sort of people who are compassionate.
- (b) Lentulus is the sort of man everyone fears.
- (c) He is the sort who performs wicked acts.

- (d) There is no one who doesn't desire the harmony of all the sections of society.
- (e) I fear the sort of man who is always complaining.

2 Reread the text of 5D(iv), then translate this passage into Latin:

Conscript fathers, you must take care¹, lest you fail the Roman people. I, the consul, am prepared to² defend the safety of the state. All ranks are in agreement. There is not a slave who³ is not prepared to² defend the state. Our land herself stretches forth to you suppliant hands. You must protect⁴ our land. All are afraid that other conspirators may destroy our freedom. You must¹ take care that this cannot happen ever again.

¹ Use impersonal gerundive (n.) + dat. of 'you'.

² parātus ad + gerundive construction.

³ Use subjunctive.

⁴ Use gerundive in nom. with 'land', dat. of 'you'.

Virgil's Aeneid

Dido, for all her prayers and entreaties, has fallen irrevocably in love with Aeneas. She lives in his company all day, and when he is absent, clutches Aeneas' son Ascanius to her bosom. All work on the city stops.

heu, uātum ignārae mentēs! quid uōta furentem,
 quid dēlūbra iuuant? ēst mollis flamma medullās
 intereā et tacitum uīuit sub pectore uulnus.
 ūritur infēlix Dīdō totāque uagātur
 urbe furēns,

5 quālis coniectā cerua sagittā,
 quam procul incautam nemora inter Crēsia fixit
 pāstor agēns tēlis liquitque uolātile ferrum
 nescius: illa fugā siluās saltūsque peragrat
 Dictaeōs; haeret laterī lētālis harundō.

like a wounded deer on the wooded
 hills of Crete. The shepherd who has
 been hunting her has shot his iron-
 tipped arrow from long range and
 caught her by surprise. As she takes to
 flight and runs over the hills and
 woods of Crete, the huntsman does
 not know it but the arrow that will
 bring her to her death is sticking in her
 side.

10 nunc media Aenēān sēcum per moenia dūcit
 Sīdoniāsque ostentat opēs urbemque parātam,
 incipit effārī mediāque in uōce resistit;

nunc eadem lābente diē conuīuia quaerit,

Iliacōsque iterum dēmēns audire labōrēs

15 exproscit pendetque iterum nārrantis ab ōre.

post ubi dīgressī, lūmenque obscura uicissim
lūna premit suādentque cadentia sīdera somnōs,
sōla domō maeret uacuā strātisque relictis
incubat.

After they had parted, when the
fading moon was now beginning to
quench its light and the setting stars
seemed to speak of sleep, she was alone
in her empty house, lying in despair on
the couch where Aeneas had lain to
banquet.

illum absēns absentem auditque uidetque,

20 aut gremiō Ascanium genitōris imāgine capta

dētinet, infandum sī fallere possit amōrem.

nōn coeptae adsurgunt turrēs, nōn arma iuuentūs

exercet portūsue aut prōpugnācula bellō

tūta parant: pendent opera interrupta minaeque

25 mūrōrum ingentēs aequātaque māchina caelō.

(Virgil, Aeneid 4.65–89)

Dido, yielding to her passion, gets her sister Anna to act as the go-between with Aeneas. But he will not be moved by their pleas.

tālibus ōrābat, tālisque miserrima flētūs

fertque refertque soror. sed nūllis ille mouētur

flētibus aut uōcēs ūllās tractābilis audit;

fāta obstant placidāsque uirī deus obstruit aurīs.

30 ac uelut annōsō ualidam cum rōbore quercum

Alpīnī Boreae nunc hinc nunc flātibus illinc

ēruere inter sē certant; it strīdor, et altae

cōnsternunt terram concussō stīpīte frondēs;

ipsa haeret scopulis et quantum uertice ad aurās

35 aetheriās, tantum rādīce in Tartara tendit;

As the North winds off the Alps vie
with each other to uproot a mighty
oak whose timber has strengthened
over long years of life; they blow upon
it from this side and from that and
whistle through it; the foliage from its
head covers the ground and the trunk
of it feels the shock, but it holds on to
the rocks with roots plunging as deep
into the world below as its crown soars
towards the winds of heaven.

haud secus adsiduīs hinc atque hinc uōcibus hērōs

tunditur, et magnō persentit pectore cūrās;

mēns immōta manet, lacrimae uoluuntur inānēs.

tum uērō infēlix fātis exterrita Dīdō

40 mortem ōrat.

(Virgil, Aeneid 4.437–51)

heu alas!

uātēs uāt-is 3m. seer

ignār-us a um ignorant, blind

mēns ment-is 3f. intellect, mind

quid 'in what respect?'

uōt-um ī 2n. prayer [Subject or object?]

furō 3 I am mad [Since the participle is

acc., one assumes uōta is subject. So

'in what respect do prayers

something the one-who-is-mad?']

dēlūbr-um ī 2n. shrine [Looks like a

repeat, i.e. 'in what respect do

prayers, in what respect shrines

something one-who-is-mad?']

iuuō I help

iuuant [Solves it]

ēst; 3rd s. pres. of edō, I eat, consume

[Await subject]

moll-is e gentle, soft [NB. case. So

hold]

flamm-a ae 1f. flame (of love)

medull-a ae 1f. marrow, inmost being

tacitum [New phrase/clause, so hold till

solved]

pectus pector-is 3n. breast

uulnus uulner-is 3n. wound (caused by

love)

4 ūror 3 I burn

infēlix (nom. s.f.) unhappy

Dīdō Dīdōn-is 3f. Dido

uagor 1 (dep.) I range, wander

urbe [Solves totāque]

10 Aenēan [Acc. of Aenēās]

Sīdoni-us a um Carthaginian [Case?

Hold]

ostentō 1 I show off, display

opēs op-um 3f. pl. wealth

incipiō 3/4 I begin

effor 1 (dep) I speak out

resistō 3 I stop

eadem [Nom. s.f. (i.e. Dido)? But why

call her 'the same woman'? What

other form might it be? Hold]

lābor 3 (dep.) I slip by

Īliac-us a um Trojan [Acc. pl. m., so

hold]

dēmēns mad [Nom., so whom does it

refer to?]

audire [Why inf.? Hold]

labōrēs [Solves Īliacōs]

15 exproscō I demand to (+ inf.) [Solves

audire]

pendeō 2 I hang on (ab + abl.)

nārrantis [Genitive present participle.

No noun to agree with it, so 'of the

one narrating']

20 illum . . . absentem [Take together;

absēns 'she, absent' (i.e. not in

Aeneas' presence: subject).]

gremi-um ī 2n. breast, lap [Hold]

Ascani-us ī 2m. Ascanius, son of

Aeneas [Acc., wait for verb]

genitor genitōr-is 3m. father

imāgō imāgin-is 3f. likeness to (+ gen.)

capta: 'Dido, captivated'

dētineō 2 I hold. [So, 'she holds

Ascanius gremiō' – must be 'in her

lap']

infand-us a um unspeakable, appalling

[Neuter nom.? Masc. acc.? Hold]

sī sc. 'to see'
fallō 3 I elude, beguile, solace
amōrem [Solves *infandum*]
nōn . . . *adsurgunt*: *adsurgō* 3 I rise
coept-us a um begun
turris turr-is 3f. tower [Solves *coeptae*]
arma [Nom. or acc. pl.? Wait]
iuuent-ūs iuuentūt-is 3f. young men
 [Subject, so *arma* must be acc. So
 'the young men do not — their
 arms']
exerceō 2 I practise with
 -ue or
port-ūs [Case possibilities?]
prōpugnācul-um ī 2n. ramparts (of the
 city). [Has this solved case
 problem?]
 25 *tūt-us a um* safe [Solves *bellō*: 'in time
 of war']
parant [Who must the subject be, even
 though that noun is s.? So what case
 are *portūs*, *prōpugnācula*?]
pendeō 2 I hang idle, stand in idle
 suspension [Pl., three subjects
 follow]
interruptus a um broken off
min-ae ārum 2f. pl. (lit.) menaces,
 threats [But these 'threats' are
 'threats' *mūrōrum*, i.e. 'threats
 (consisting) of walls', i.e.
 'threatening walls']

Rēs gestae dīuī Augustī

In this passage we read how Augustus was offered oversight of public morals. One wonders how he might have responded to Virgil's picture of Aeneas' entanglement with Dido.

cōsulibus M. Viniciō et Q. Lucrētiō, et postea P. Lentulō et Cn. Lentulō, et tertium Paullō Fabiō Maximō et Q. Tuberōne, senātū populōque Rōmānō cōsentientibus, ut cūrātor lēgum et mōrum summā potestāte sōlus creārer, nūllum magistrātum contrā mōrem maiōrum dēlātum recēpī. (Rēs gestae 6.)

aequāt-us a um raised up to, equal (to
 x: dat.)
māchin-a ae 1f. crane
cael-um ī 2n. sky

- 26 *tālibus*: abl. 'with such (words, prayers,
 pleas)'
tālisque [Await agreeing acc. pl.]
miserrima 'wretched' [Nom. s. f.?
 Hold]
flēt-us ūs 4m. tears
referō 3 *rettulī* I bring back
soror [miserrima, of course]
tractābil-is e amenable
 29 *fāt-um ī* 2n. fate
placid-us a um gracious, kindly, ready
 to yield [Case? Hold]
obstruō 3 I block up
auris aur-is 3f. ear [Solves *placidās*]
 36 *secus* differently
adsidu-us a um persistent
hinc atque hinc from this side and that
hērōs (nom) hero
tundō 3 I pound, assault
persentiō 4 I feel, am aware of
immōt-us a um unmoved
lacrim-a ae 1f. tear
uoluō 3 I roll down
inān-is e useless(ly), (in) vain
 39 *infēlix* (nom. s.f.) unhappy
fāt-um ī 2n. fate
exterrit-us a um terrified

postea afterwards
tertium for a third time [The dates are
 19, 18 and 11]
cōsentiō 4 I agree (ut + subj. 'agree
 that' x should happen)
cūrātor cūrātor-is 3m. guardian

Section 5E

Running vocabulary for 5E(i)

<i>appellāt-us a um</i> called (<i>appellō</i> 1)	<i>discēdō</i> 3 <i>discessī</i> 1 depart; <i>discēdō in sententiam</i> (x: gen.) I go over to x's view	<i>nouō</i> 1 I make changes <i>odor odōr-is</i> 3m. smell, stench
<i>capitāl-is e</i> involving a capital charge, punishable by death <i>carcer carcer-is</i> 3m. prison <i>Catō Catōn-is</i> 3m. M. Porcius Cato	<i>dispōnō</i> 3 <i>disposuī dispositus</i> I place, station <i>dum</i> (+ indicative) while; (+ subjunctive) until	<i>patrici-us ī</i> 2m. patrician (member of a select group of families)
<i>circiter</i> about <i>cōsulār-is e</i> consular <i>Cornēli-ī ōrum</i> 2m. pl. the Cornelii	<i>faciēs faciē-ī</i> 5f. appearance <i>fact-um ī</i> 2n. deed <i>foedāt-us a um</i> made foul (<i>foedō</i> 1)	<i>tenebr-ae ārum</i> 1f. pl. darkness
<i>dēduct-us a um</i> led down (<i>dēducō</i> 3)	<i>gul-a ae</i> 1f. throat (tr. 'neck')	<i>terribil-is e</i> frightful, dreadful
<i>dēmiss-us a um</i> sent down (<i>dēmittō</i> 3)	<i>humī</i> in the ground	<i>triumuir-ī ōrum</i> 2m. pl. triumvirs (a commission responsible for prisons and executions)
<i>dēpress-us a um</i> sunk (<i>dēprimō</i> 3)	<i>incult-us ūs</i> 4m. neglect <i>iuss-us a um</i> ordered (<i>iubeō</i> 2)	<i>Tulliān-um ī</i> 2n. Tullianum
<i>dign-us a um</i> worthy of (x: abl.)	<i>laque-us ī</i> 2m. garotte	<i>uindex uindic-is</i> 3m. punisher

Notes

- ll. 212–13 *nē quid* . . . *nouārētur*: *quid* is accusative of respect. Tr. 'in any respect'. *nouārētur* impersonal passive 'changes might be made' (with the overtone of 'revolution', the expression for which was *rēs nouae*).
 ll. 219–20 *dum* . . . *frangerent*: 'until . . . they should break', 'for . . . to break'. *uindicēs rerum capitālium*: i.e. the executioners.
 l. 222 *cōsulāre*: he had been consul in 71.

Learning vocabulary for 5E(i)

Nouns

carcer carcer-is 3m. prison;
barrier

faciēs faciē-is 5f.
appearance; face
fact-um ī 2n. deed

hum-us ī 2f. ground (NB,
humum (acc.) to the
ground; *humī* (locative)
on or in the ground)

Adjectives

dign-us a um worthy;
worthy of (x: abl.)

terribil-is e dreadful,
frightening

Verbs

discēdō 3 *discessi* *discessum* I
depart; (with *in*
sententiam + gen.) I go
over to x's view (*dis-*
+ *cēdō*)

dispōno 3 *disposui* *dispositus*
I set, place (in different
places) (*dis-* + *pōnō*)

Running vocabulary for 5E(ii)

abdūcō 3 I lead away
absum abesse I am distant
addūcō 3 *adduxi* I bring
aduentō 1 I approach,

advance
aduers-us a um
unfavourable
aequ-us a um level
agmen agmin-is 3n.
column

antequam (+ subj.) before
asper asper-a um rough
Celer Celer-is 3m. (Q.
Metellus) Celer
circiter about

claudō 3 *clausi* *clausus* I
shut in
commūnicō 1 I share (x
(acc.) with y
(*cum* + abl.))

cōnflīgō 3 I fight (with x:
cum + abl.)
coniungō 3 *coniunxi* I join
(I join x: *mē coniungō*
+ dat.)

cōnsidō 3 *cōnsēdī* I take up
position, encamp
cōpi-a ae 1f. multitude,
crowd

dēscēns-us ūs 4m. descent
difficultās difficultāt-is 3f.
difficulty

dilābor 3 dep. I slip away
dum (+ ind.) while;
(+ subj.) until (see note
on l. 241); (+ subj.)
provided that (l. 232)

fugitū-us a um runaway
Galli-a ae 1f. Gaul
īstituō 3 *īstituī* I draw
up

īstrūct-us a um (l. 227)
equipped; (l. 237)
drawn up

interclūdō 3 I cut off
iter itiner-is 3n. journey;
route; *magnum iter* = a
forced march

lance-a ae 1f. lance, spear

Metell-us ī 2m. Q.

Metellus Celer
miss-us a um sent (*mittō* 3)
modo . . . modo at one
time . . . at another
occāsiō occāsiōn-is 3f.
opportunity (for x:
gen.)

occultē secretly

perfug-a ae 1m. deserter
perfugiō 3/4 I flee for
refuge

perturbāt-us a um worried,
disturbed (*perturbō* 1)

Picēn-us a um of Picenum
Pistōriēns-is e of Pistoria
praeacūt-us a um sharpened
to a point (*praeacūō* 3)

procul far off

properē hastily

properō 1 I hurry

pugn-a ae 1f. battle

Q. = *Quint-us* ī 2m.

Quintus

quā where [See 137.3]
quam primum as soon as
possible
rādīx rādīc-is 3f. foot (lit.
'root')
rapīn-a ae 1f. plunder

repudiō 1 I reject
spar-us ī 2m. hunting-
spear
spērō 1 I hope, expect
sub (+ abl.) beneath
sudis sud-is 3f. stake

temptō 1 I test, try
Trānsalpīn-us a um across
the Alps, Transalpine
utpote (quī) (+ subj.)
inasmuch as, since (he)

Notes

l. 227 *pars quārta* i.e. $\frac{1}{4}$.

ll. 230–1 *facere . . . mouēre . . . dare*: see 146.

l. 232 *habitūrum*: *esse* suppressed.

ll. 234ff. *nūntius*: remember that a noun may generate an indirect
statement quite as easily as a verb, i.e. 'a messenger (with a message to
the effect that . . .)'.
l. 236 *sūmptum*: *esse* suppressed

ll. 236–7 *quī sē . . . coniūnxissent*: causal clause, see 140.2.

l. 241 *dum . . . mouēret*: 'until . . . 'for . . . to . . . ' (purpose).

ll. 245–6 Note *properantī* agreeing with *Catilīnae*, dat. of advantage or

possession.
l. 248 *in urbe* i.e. in Rome (often known simply as *urbs*).

Learning vocabulary for 5E(ii)

Nouns

agmen agmin-is 3n.
column

iter itiner-is 3n. journey;
route

occāsiō occāsiōn-is 3f.
opportunity
pugn-a ae 1f. battle, fight

Adjectives

aequ-us a um level (fair,
balanced, equal)
asper asper-a um rough

Verbs

absum abesse āfuī I am
distant (am absent,
away)

cōnsidō 3 *cōnsēdī* *cōnsessum*
I settle down; encamp

īstruō 3 *īstruxi* *īstrūctus*
I draw up; prepare,
equip
properō 1 I hurry, make
haste

spērō 1 I hope, expect
temptō 1 I try, test,
attempt; attack

Others

circiter about (adv.)

modo . . . modo at one
time . . . at another

quam primum as soon as
possible

Grammar and exercises for 5E

163 Passive perfect participles

You have already met passive perfect participles being used in ablative absolute construction (151). They can, of course, be used in agreement with any noun in any case, though they are less often used as adjectives (*nāuis capta* = 'the captured ship') than predicatively (*nāuis capta* = 'the ship, having been captured' . . .). See 77.

militēs captī in carcerem dēductī sunt 'the soldiers, having been captured, were taken off to prison'. (Here *captī* is nom. pl. m. to agree with 'soldiers', the subject of the sentence.)

custōdēs uīsōs secūtī sunt 'they followed the guards after they had been seen', 'they saw the guards and followed them'. (Here *uīsōs* is acc. pl. m. to agree with 'the guards', the object of the sentence.)

mihi captō auxilium dedit 'he gave help to me having-been-captured', 'though I had been captured, he gave me help'. (*captō* is dat. s. m. to agree with *mihi*.)

NB. Another common meaning of *nāuis capta* is 'the capture of the ship', e.g.

ab urbe conditā 'from the foundation of the city'
Hannibal uictus Rōmānōs metū liberāuit 'the defeat of Hannibal freed the Romans from fear'

164 Summary of participles

- Present participles, '—ing': 1 *-āns* (-ant-), 2 *-ēns* (-ent-), 3 *-ēns* (-ent-), 4 and 3/4 *-iēns* (-ient-); cf. 120
- Future participles, 'about to —': stem of perfect participle + *-ūrus -ūra -ūrum*; cf. 81–3
- Perfect participles, (deponent) 'having —ed': stem of perfect participle + *-us -a -um*; (others) 'having been —ed'; cf. 77, 151

All are adjectives, and agree with the person or thing they describe.

NB. Only active verbs which take an object in the accusative have a passive participle used as an adjective. For example, *uentus* and *parsus* are impossible in that form because both come from verbs which are

intransitive: *ueniō* takes *ad* + acc., and *imperō* takes a dative. These forms exist only in the impersonal perfect passive, e.g. *uentum est* lit. 'it has been come', i.e. 'people have come'; *imperatum est* lit. 'it has been ordered' i.e. 'orders have been given'. You will have noticed that the 4th p.p. of intransitive verbs is always given in the *-um* form.

Exercises

- Translate the participles in this list. Say whether they are deponent or passive: *commoratus*, *coctus*, *mortuus*, *usus*, *datus*, *adiutus*, *agitatus*, *latus*, *gestus*, *cognitus*, *cōnatus*, *secutus*, *intellēctus*, *locutus*, *exortus*, *prōmissus*, *sūmptus*, *fractus*, *mōtus*, (optional: *portatus*, *pollicitus*, *inuentus*, *hortatus*, *nūntiatus*, *minatus*, *necatus*, *reductus*, *perfectus*, *uocatus*, *amplexus*, *arbitratus*, *seruatus*, *instructus*, *dispositus*, *ueritus*, *tēsus*, *obsessus*, *questus*).

- Translate these sentences:

- Lentulus tenebrās cōspicātus nihilōminus negāuit sē mortem timēre.*
- cēterī custōdēs ā cōsulibus dispositōs sequēbantur.*
- cōsul sēcum multa locūtus supplicium sūmere cōstituerat.*
- Celer ā senātū missus in agrō Pīcēnō erat.*
- agmen ā cōsule instructum Catilīna uidit.*
- Catilīnae montibus et cōpiīs hostium clausō¹ fuga erat nulla.*

¹ *claudō* 3 *clausī* *clausus* I shut in, cut off.

- Translate into Latin using perfect participles passive to translate 'when' and 'as' clauses. NB. None of these sentences calls for the ablative absolute.

- When they had captured the soldier, the guards killed him.
- After the column had been seen, Catiline hurried towards it.
- When the guards had been set Cicero gave them instructions.
- The appearance of the column as it had been drawn up was not worthy of the commander.
- Catiline's soldiers advanced, using weapons previously¹ captured.

¹ Leave out 'previously'.

165 *dum, antequam/priusquam*1 *dum* + indicative 'while'

dum takes the present indicative where 'while' means 'at one point during', e.g.

dum Cicerō haec loquitur, Catilīna abiit '(At one point) while Cicero was speaking, Catiline left'

But *imperfect* indicative is used where the 'while' clause covers the whole period described by the main verb, e.g.

dum Cicerō sequēbatur, Catilīna fugiēbat 'while Cicero was following, Catiline was fleeing'

2 *dum* 'until'

dum + indicative indicates the idea of time only, e.g.

manē dum redierō 'wait until I get back'

dum + subjunctive indicates anticipation or intention, e.g.

manē dum redeam 'wait for me to come back'

Cf. *manēbat dum Catilīna castra mouēret* (subjunctive) 'he was waiting for Catiline to move camp'

mānsit dum Catilīna castra mōuīt (indicative) 'he waited until Catiline (actually) moved camp'

3 *antequam/priusquam* 'before'

antequam and *priusquam* work rather like *dum*: indicative expresses purely time, subjunctive anticipation or intention, e.g.

with indicative: *antequam abiit, epistolam scrīpsit* 'before he left, he wrote a letter'

with subjunctive: *Catilīna abiit antequam legiōnēs Rōmānae peruenīrent* 'Catiline left before the Roman legions should arrive'

NB. *ante-* and *prius-* are often split from *quam*, e.g. *ante uenī quam uir* 'I arrived before the man' (Ovid).

4 *dum (dummodo, modo)* + subjunctive

A specialised meaning of *dum* is 'provided that', 'on condition that', e.g.

omnia faciam dum amīcus fīās 'I will do anything provided you become my friend'

166 *utpote quī (quae quod)* + subjunctive

utpote reinforces the causal sense of *quī* i.e. 'as is natural for one who'. The verb is subjunctive. Cf. *quippe quī* 140.2. E.g.

miser sum, utpote quem Cynthia amet 'I am wretched, as is natural for one whom Cynthia loves'

NB. *ut quī* is also used in this way.

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- dum senātus rem cōsīderābat, Catilīna legiōnēs suās īnstruēbat.*
- Catilīna exspectābat, dum sociī cōsilia Rōmae perficerent.*
- Catilīna, antequam in Galliam īret, nouās cōpiās ex urbe exspectābat.*
- dum Catilīna prope Pistōriam manet, Rōmae Cicerōnī sē coniūrātōrēs trādiderunt.*
- cōsul laetus est, dum salua sit rēs pūblica.*
- tē omnēs amant mulierēs, quī sīs tam pulcher.* (Plautus)

2 Translate into Latin:

- While this was happening at Rome, Catiline spoke to his soldiers.
- He said, 'I shall wait until our friends arrive.'
- 'Provided they are safe, our plans can be completed.'
- 'I must relate certain matters to Lentulus, before I depart for Gaul.'
- But all the time Catiline was speaking, the consul was preparing war.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

Note especially in reading this passage (i) the use of the participle in Latin, where a clause or other formulation would be needed in English; (ii) that accusative future and perfect participles may actually be infinitives without *esse* and form part of an indirect statement.

L. Tarquinius, another captured Catilinarian, gives information to the senate, similar to that of Volturcius.

post eum diem quīdam L. Tarquinius ad senātum adductus erat, quem ad Catilinam proficiscentem ex itinere retractum aiēbant. is cum sē diceret indicātūrum dē coniūratiōne, sī fidēs pūblica data esset, iussus ā cōsule quae scīret ēdicere, eadem ferē quae Volturcius dē parātīs incendiīs, dē caede bonōrum, dē itinere hostium senātum docet; praetereā sē missum quī Catilinae nūntiāret nē eum Lentulus et Cethēgus aliūque ex coniūratiōne dēprehēnsī terrērent, eōque magis properāret ad urbem adcedere, quō et cēterōrum animōs reficeret et illī facilius ē periculō ēriperentur. (Sallust, Catiline 48.3–4)

post (+ acc.) after

addūcō 3 addūxī adductus I bring (to)

retrahō 3 retrāxī retractus I drag back

aiō 3 I say

indicō 1 I make a declaration, give information

fidēs pūblica (5f. + 1/2 adj.) public pledge (of impunity or protection)

ēdicō 3 I declare

eadem . . . quae 'the same . . . as'

ferē almost

dē parātīs incendiīs [See 163 Note]

5 doceō 2 I inform (x acc. of y acc.)

quī . . . nūntiāret [Expresses purpose]

dēprehendō 3 dēprehendī dēprehēnsus I

capture [Tr. aliī . . . dēprehēnsi 'the

capture of the others . . . ' – what

does it mean literally?]

terreō 2 I frighten

eō magis 'by that much the more'

adcedere = accēdere

reficiō 3/4 I revive, restore

English–Latin

Reread the text of 5E(ii), then translate this passage into Latin.

While at Rome this punishment was being exacted¹ from Lentulus, Catiline drew up his forces. He was waiting until² troops should be sent from his allies. But after it was reported that Lentulus was dead and the conspiracy revealed, he started to make³ his way through the mountains. The consul Antonius, sent by the senate with the purpose of⁴ defeating him in battle, pursued him. Metellus also moved his camp from Picenum, to obstruct Catiline as he hurried towards Transalpine Gaul. After Catiline saw that he was shut in by mountains and enemy troops, he decided to join battle as soon as possible with Antonius, in order to give more⁵ hope to his soldiers.

¹ Use *dum* + present indicative.

² Use *dum* + imperfect subjunctive.

³ Use historic infinitive.

⁴ Either *eō cōsiliō ut* or *quī* + subjunctive.

⁵ *quō* + comparative adjective + subjunctive.

Virgil's Aeneid

At the command of the gods, Aeneas abandons Dido (who commits suicide) and continues on his journey. Eventually he arrives in Italy, befriends the local King Latinus, and is offered the hand of his daughter Lavinia in marriage. This causes civil war to break out between Aeneas and Turnus, to whom Lavinia had previously been betrothed. In preparation for this epic contest, Venus has Vulcan make Aeneas a special shield, on which the whole of Roman history to come is foreshadowed. Aeneas gazes in wonder at it: the final scene his eyes rest on is that of Augustus triumphant over his enemies.

at Caesar, triplici inuectus Rōmāna triumphō

moenia, dīs Italīs uōtum immortalē sacrābat,

maxima ter centum tōtam dēlūbra per urbem.

laetitiā lūdisque uiae plausūque fremēbant;

5 omnibus in templīs mātrum chorus, omnibus ārae;

ante ārās terram caesī strāuere iuuenci.

ipse sedēns niueō candentis līmine Phoebī

dōna recognōscit populōrum aptatque superbīs

postibus; incēdunt uictae longō ōrdine gentēs,

10 quam uariae linguīs, habitū tam uestis et armīs.

hīc Nomadum genus et discinctōs Mulciber Āfrōs,

hīc Lelegās Cārāsque sagittiferōsque Gelōnōs

finxerat; Euphrātēs ibat iam mollior undīs,

extrēmūque hominum Morinī, Rhēnusque bicornis,

15 indomitūque Dahae, et pontem indignātus Araxēs.

tālia per clipeum Volcānī, dōna parentis,

mirātur rērumque ignārus imāgine gaudet

attollēns umerō fāmamque et fāta nepōtum.

Here Vulcan had moulded the Nomads and the Africans with their streaming robes; here were the Lelegians and Carians of Asia and the Gelonians from Scythia carrying their quivers; there was the Euphrates moving now with a chastened current; here were the Morini from the ends of the earth in Gaul, the two-horned Rhine, the Scythians from beyond the Caspian, never conquered before, and the River Araxes chafing at his bridge. Such was the shield that Vulcan made, and Venus gave her son. Aeneas marvelled at it, and rejoicing at the things pictured on it without knowing what they were, he lifted onto his shoulder the fame and fates of his descendants.

(Virgil, Aeneid 8.714–31)

Caesar: i.e. Augustus
triplex triplic-is threefold [*triplicī* and
Rōmāna are both adjectives awaiting
 solution]
inuehor 3 dep. *inuectus* I am carried
 into, ride into (+ acc.)
triumph-us ī 2m. triumph [Solves —?]
moenia moen-ium 3n. pl. city walls
 [Solves —?]
dīs from *deus* 16 [Cases? Hold]
Ital-us a um of Italy
uōt-um ī 2n. offering
immortāl-is e immortal, everlasting
sacrō 1 I consecrate x (acc.) to y (dat.)
ter centum 300 [*maxima* and *tōtam* both
 await solution]
dēlūbr-um ī 2n. shrine
laetiti-a ae 1f. joy
lūd-us ī 2m. game, revel
uīae ['games of/for the road'? Or is this
 nom. pl.? Answer coming up in
 verb]
plaus-us ūs 4m. applause, cheers [Note
 case and -que, linking it with which
 previous nouns?]
fremō 3 I resound, echo [With x: abl. —
 solves it]
 5 *chor-us* ī 2m. chorus, choir [Sc. est]

ār-a ae 1f. altar
caedō 3 *cecīdī caesus* I kill, slaughter
sternō 3 *strāuī* I lie over (+ acc.)
iuuenc-us ī 2m. bullock
ipse [I.e. Augustus]
sedeō 2 I sit
niueō candentis [Both adjectives. Hold
 for their solution]
niue-us a um white
candeō 2 I shine
līmen līmin-is 3n. threshold
Phoeb-us ī 2m. Phoebus (Apollo)
dōn-um ī 2n. gift
recognoscō 3 I review
aptō 1 I fit x (acc.) to y (dat.) [What is
 the (understood) x?]
superb-us a um fine, proud
postis post-is 3m. door-post, portal
incēdō 3 I march past
 10 *quam . . . tam as . . . as*
uari-us a um different
lingu-ae ārum 2f. pl. tongues, languages
 [Abl. of respect]
habit-us ūs 4m. look, fashion [Abl. of
 respect]
uestis uest-is 3f. clothes

Deliciae Latinae

Martial

quem recitās meus[†] est, ō Fidentīne, libellus.
 sed male cum recitās, incipit esse tuus. (1.38)

recitō 1 I read out, recite *libell-us* ī 2m. book [This *incipiō* 3/4 I begin
Fidentīn-us ī 2m. is the antecedent of
 Fidentinus quem]

nīl recitās et uīs, Māmerce, poēta uidērī?
 quidquid uīs estō, dummodo nīl recitēs. (2.88)

Māmerc-us ī 2m. *poēt-a ae* 1m. poet *estō* be! (= es, 2nd. s.
 Mamercus quidquid whatever imperative of sum)

The Vulgate: nātīuitās Christī

factum est autem in diēbus illīs, exiit ēdictum ā Caesare Augustō ut
 dēscriberētur ūniuersus orbis. haec dēscriptiō prīma facta est ā praeside
 Syriae Cyrīnō; et ibant omnēs ut profitērentur singuli in suam ciuitātem.
 ascendit autem et Iōsēph ā Galilaeā dē ciuitāte Nazareth in Iūdaeā in
 ciuitātem Dāuid, quae uocātur Bēthlehem, eō quod esset dē domō et
 familiā Dāuid, ut profitēretur cum Mariā dēspōnsātā sibi uxōre
 praegnante. factum est autem, cum essent ibi, implētī sunt diēs ut pareret.
 et peperit filium suum prīmōgenitum et pannīs eum inuoluit et reclīnāuit
 eum in praesēpiō, quia non erat eīs locus in dīuersōriō.

et pāstōrēs erant in regiōne eādē uigilantēs et custōdientēs uigiliās
 noctis super gregem suum. et ecce angelus Dominī stetit iuxtā illōs, et
 clārītās Deī circumfulsit illōs, et timuērunt timōre magnō, et dīxit illīs
 angelus: 'nōlīte timēre; ecce enim euangelizō uōbīs gaudium magnum,
 quod erit omnī populō; quia nātus est uōbīs hodiē Saluātor quī est
 Christus Dominus, in ciuitāte Dāuid. et hoc uōbīs signum: inueniētis
 infāntem pannīs inuolūtum et positum in praesēpiō. et subitō facta est
 cum angelō multitudō militiae caelestis laudantium Deum et dīcentium:

Glōria in altissimīs Deō,
 et in terrā pāx hominibus bonae uoluntātis. (Luke 2:1–14)

ēdict-um ī 2n. edict
dēscribor 3 (pass.) I am subject of a
 census
ūniuers-us a um all, whole
orbis orb-is 3m. world
dēscriptiō dēscriptiōn-is 3f. census
praeses praesid-is 3m. governor
Syri-a ae 1f. Syria
Cyrīn-us ī 2m. Quirinius
profiteor 2 dep. I make a census return
singul-ī ae a (as) individuals
ascendō 3 I go up
Iōsēph nom. Joseph
Galilae-a ae 1f. Galilee
Nazareth [Abl. with ciuitāte]
Iūdae-a ae 1f. Judaea
 5 *Dāuid* (gen.) of David
Bēthlehem (nom.) Bethlehem
eō quod + subj. 'for this reason, that'
Mari-a ae 1f. Mary
dēspōnsāt-us a um betrothed

praegnāns praegnant-is being pregnant
impleō 2 *implēuī implētus* I complete
pariō 3/4 *peperi* I give birth (to)
prīmōgenit-us a um first-born
pann-ī ōrum 2m. pl. rags, pieces of
 cloth, swaddling clothes
inuoluō 3 *inuoluī inuolūtus* I wrap
praesēpi-um ī 2n. enclosure, pen, fold;
 manger
dīuersōri-um ī 2n. hostel, inn
 10 *pāstor pāstōr-is* 3m. shepherd
regiō regiōn-is 3f. area
uigilō 1 I am on watch, keep awake
custōdiō 4 I guard, keep
uigili-ae ārum 1f. pl. watches
grex greg-is 3m. flock
angel-us ī 2m. messenger
iuxtā (+ acc.) beside
clārītās clārītāt-is 3f. clearness, brightness
circumfulgeō 2 *circumfulsi* I shine around
timor timōr-is 3m. fear

euangelizō I announce, tell good news
gaudi-um ī 2n. joy
saluator saluator-is 3m. saviour
 15 *Christ-us* ī 2m. Christ

infāns infant-is 3m. child, infant
caelest-is e celestial, heavenly
laudō 1 I praise
alt-us a um high

Section 5F

Running vocabulary for 5F(i)

<p><i>ā/ab</i> (+abl.) from (the direction of) <i>addō</i> 3 I add, increase <i>aduers-us a um</i> hostile <i>aduocō</i> 1 I summon <i>attulerit</i> '(it) has brought' (perf. subj. of <i>adferō</i>) <i>cēdō</i> 3 <i>cessī</i> I yield <i>certō</i> 1 I contend, fight <i>contio contion-is</i> 3f. meeting, assembly <i>conuocāuerim</i> 'I have called together' (perf. subj. of <i>conuocō</i> 1) <i>decus decor-is</i> 3n. honour <i>dextr-a ae</i> 1f. right hand <i>dūiti-ae arum</i> 1f. pl. riches <i>dubi-us a um</i> doubtful <i>egestās egestāt-is</i> 3f. lack <i>equidem</i> at any rate <i>ex</i> [Here = instead of]</p>	<p><i>ferr-um</i> ī 2n. sword <i>frument-um</i> ī 2n. corn <i>fuert</i> '(he) has been' (pf. subj. of <i>sum</i>) <i>Galli-a ae</i> 1f. Gaul <i>huiusmodi</i> of this kind <i>ignāui-a ae</i> 1f. laziness; cowardice <i>ignāu-us a um</i> idle; cowardly <i>impendeō</i> 2 I threaten, overhang (+dat.) <i>iūst-us a um</i> just <i>meminī</i> I remember (perfect in form) <i>memineritis</i> '(you) remember' (subj. of <i>meminī</i> 'I remember' – perfect in form) <i>necessitūdō necessitudin-is</i> 3f. necessity</p>	<p><i>oratio oration-is</i> 3f. speech; <i>orationem habeo</i> I make a speech <i>persecuti sint</i> '(they) have pursued' (perf. subj. of <i>persequor</i>) <i>posueritis</i> 'you (pl.) have placed' (perf. subj. of <i>pōnō</i> 3) <i>potenti-a ae</i> 1f. power <i>pristin-us a um</i> former <i>quant-us a um</i> how much, how big <i>quīn</i> (+subj.) (ll. 261, 266 after <i>nōn dubium est</i>) that; (l. 269) 'who . . . not' [See 140.1] <i>quō</i> (+subj.) (l. 254) in order to <i>quocumque</i> wherever <i>quominus</i> (+subj.) from (—ing) <i>quot</i> how many</p>
---	--	---

Notes

l. 254 *quō pauca monērem*: 'in order to give advice on a few points' lit. 'advise a few things'.

l. 257 *quantum periculī*: see 31.

Learning vocabulary for 5F(i)

Nouns

<p><i>contio contion-is</i> 3f. meeting, assembly <i>decus decor-is</i> 3n. honour; beauty <i>dextr-a ae</i> 1f. right hand</p>	<p><i>dūiti-ae arum</i> 1f. pl. riches <i>ferr-um</i> ī 2n. sword; iron <i>frument-um</i> ī 2n. corn <i>ignāui-a ae</i> 1f. laziness; cowardice</p>	<p><i>oratio oration-is</i> 3f. speech <i>potenti-a ae</i> 1f. power</p>
---	--	---

Adjectives

<p><i>aduers-us a um</i> hostile; opposite; unfavourable</p>	<p><i>ignāu-us a um</i> lazy; cowardly</p>	<p><i>quant-us a um</i> how much, how great</p>
--	--	---

Verbs

<p><i>addō</i> 3 <i>addidī</i> <i>additus</i> I add; increase <i>aduocō</i> 1 I summon <i>cēdō</i> 3 <i>cessī</i> <i>cessum</i> I yield; go</p>	<p><i>certō</i> 1 I struggle, fight; vie <i>meminī</i> <i>meminisse</i> (defective: perfect form only) I remember</p>	<p><i>persequor</i> 3 dep. <i>persecutus</i> I pursue, follow after</p>
---	--	---

Others

<p><i>orationem habere</i> to make a speech</p>	<p><i>quocumque</i> (to) wherever</p>	<p><i>quot</i> how many</p>
---	---------------------------------------	-----------------------------

Running vocabulary for 5F(ii)

<p><i>agō</i> 3 <i>ēgī</i> I spend, pass <i>anim-a ae</i> 1f. life <i>bon-a orum</i> 2n. pl. goods <i>caute</i> (+subj. or <i>nē</i> +subj.) beware of —ing <i>cōgō</i> 3 <i>cōgē</i> I compel (x acc. to y inf.) <i>cōsiliū capere</i> to make a plan <i>conuocāuerim</i> 'I have summoned' (pf. subj. of <i>conuocō</i> 1) <i>cruent-us a um</i> bloody <i>dementi-a ae</i> 1f. madness <i>dēspērō</i> 1 I lose hope <i>exsili-um</i> ī 2n. exile <i>foed-us a um</i> disgraceful</p>	<p><i>intolerand-us a um</i> unbearable <i>inuideō</i> 2 <i>inuīdī</i> I begrudge, envy (+dat.) <i>inult-us a um</i> unavenged <i>locutus sim</i> 'I have spoken' (pf. subj. of <i>loquor</i>) <i>luctuōs-us a um</i> grief-stricken, mournful <i>mōre</i> in the manner of (x: gen.) <i>necessitūdō necessitudin-is</i> 3f. necessity <i>necne</i> or not (following <i>utrum</i> 'whether') <i>neu</i> = <i>nēue</i> and that . . . not</p>	<p><i>opus est</i> there is need of (x: abl.) <i>particeps particip-is</i> sharer in (+gen.) <i>pecus pecor-is</i> 3n. sheep; cattle <i>quīn</i> (+subj.) from (—ing) <i>quod sī</i> but if <i>quominus</i> (+subj.) from (—ing) <i>rem bene gerere</i> to succeed <i>trucidō</i> 1 butcher <i>turpitūdō turpitudin-is</i> 3f. disgrace, dishonour <i>utrum . . . necne</i> whether . . . or not</p>
--	---	---

Notes

ll. 272–3 *nisi . . . facti fuissetis . . . egissetis*: 'if . . . had not . . . , . . . would have'. There are several other examples of this construction. *si* / *nisi* + pluperfect subjunctive, pluperfect subjunctive. The basic formula is 'if x had / had not happened, y would not have happened'. Other examples are in lines 274–5, 275–6, 278–9, 281–2. See 173, cf. 139³.

Learning vocabulary for 5F(ii)

Nouns

bon-a ōrum 2n. pl. goods *exsili-um* ī 2n. exile *necessitūdō* necessitudin-is 3f. necessity

Verbs

agō 3 *ēgī* *actus* I spend, pass (do, act; drive, lead, direct) *inuideō* 2 *inuīdī* *inuīsum* I envy, begrudge (+ dat.) *trucidō* 1 I butcher, slaughter

cōgō 3 *coēgī* *coactus* I force, compel; gather

Others

mōre in the manner of, like (x: gen.)
opus est there is need of (x: abl.)

Grammar and exercises for 5F

167 Perfect subjunctive active

	1	2	3
1st s.	amāu-eri-m (amārim etc.)	habu-eri-m	dix-eri-m
2nd s.	amāu-erī-s	habu-erī-s	dix-erī-s
3rd s.	amāu-erī-t	habu-erī-t	dix-erī-t
1st pl.	amāu-erī-mus	habu-erī-mus	dix-erī-mus
2nd pl.	amāu-erī-tis	habu-erī-tis	dix-erī-tis
3rd pl.	amāu-erī-nt	habu-erī-nt	dix-erī-nt

	4	3/4
1st s.	audīu-eri-m (audierim etc.)	cēp-eri-m
2nd s.	audīu-erī-s	cēp-erī-s
3rd s.	audīu-erī-t	cēp-erī-t
1st pl.	audīu-erī-mus	cēp-erī-mus
2nd pl.	audīu-erī-tis	cēp-erī-tis
3rd pl.	audīu-erī-nt	cēp-erī-nt

Notes

- 1 The perfect subjunctive active is formed by taking the stem of the 3rd p.p. and adding *-erim -erīs -erit -erīmus -erītis -erint*. Observe that, in this respect, it is *almost identical* in form to the future perfect (see 156). (The only difference is that the future perfect has the 1st s. in *-erō* and usually a short *i* at *-eris, -erimus, -eritis*.) Note the normal active personal endings (*-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt*).
- 2 Note that in 1st and 4th conjugations the forms *amā-rim* etc. and *audierim* are common. Cf. *dēlēu-erim* and *dēlē-rim*.

168 Perfect subjunctive deponent

	1	2	3
1st s.	mināt-us a um sim	pollicit-us a um sim	locūt-us a um sim
2nd s.	mināt-us a um sīs	pollicit-us a um sīs	locūt-us a um sīs
3rd s.	mināt-us a um sit	pollicit-us a um sit	locūt-us a um sit
1st pl.	mināt-ī ae a sīmus	pollicit-ī ae a sīmus	locūt-ī ae a sīmus
2nd pl.	mināt-ī ae a sītis	pollicit-ī ae a sītis	locūt-ī ae a sītis
3rd pl.	mināt-ī ae a sint	pollicit-ī ae a sint	locūt-ī ae a sint

	4	3/4
1st s.	mentīt-us a um sim	prōgrēss-us a um sim
2nd s.	mentīt-us a um sīs	prōgrēss-us a um sīs
3rd s.	mentīt-us a um sit	prōgrēss-us a um sit
1st pl.	mentīt-ī ae a sīmus	prōgrēss-ī ae a sīmus
2nd pl.	mentīt-ī ae a sītis	prōgrēss-ī ae a sītis
3rd pl.	mentīt-ī ae a sint	prōgrēss-ī ae a sint

NB. The perfect subjunctive deponent is formed by taking the stem of the perfect participle, adding the appropriate endings *-us -a -um* etc. to agree with the subject, and adding *sim sīs sit sīmus sītis sint*, the present subjunctive of *sum*.

169 Perfect subjunctive passive

	1	2	3	4	3/4
1st s.	amāt-us sim	hābit-us sim	díct-us sim	audīt-us sim	cápt-us sim
2nd s.	amāt-us sis	hābit-us sis	díct-us sis	audīt-us sis	cápt-us sis
3rd s.	amāt-us sit	hābit-us sit	díct-us sit	audīt-us sit	cápt-us sit
1st pl.	amāt-ī sīmus	hābit-ī sīmus	díct-ī sīmus	audīt-ī sīmus	cápt-ī sīmus
2nd pl.	amāt-ī sītis	hābit-ī sītis	díct-ī sītis	audīt-ī sītis	cápt-ī sītis
3rd pl.	amāt-ī sint	hābit-ī sint	díct-ī sint	audīt-ī sint	cápt-ī sint

NB. For formation of perfect subjunctive passive, see note on deponent (above) 168.

Summary

Perfect active subjunctive: 3rd p.p. in *-erim -erīs -erit -erīmus -erītis -erint*.

Perfect deponent/passive subjunctive: perfect participle + *sim sis sit sīmus sītis sint*.

Exercises

- 1 Form and conjugate the perfect subjunctive of these verbs (form passive only when requested): *dispōnō* (passive), *cohōtor*, *perueniō*, *occupō*, *pūniō* (passive), *moueō*, *ūtor*, *cōficiō*, *uereor*, *sūmō* (passive), (optional: *portō*, *oblīuīscor*, *eō*, *possum*, *ferō* (passive), *audeō*, *cōnsīdō*, *īnstruō* (passive), *persequor*, *aduocō* (passive)).
- 2 Pick out the perfect subjunctives in this list, detailing tense and mood (i.e. indicative or subjunctive) of the others: *frēgistī*, *curāuerīs*, *mōueris*, *āfueram*, *ēgisset*, *īnstrūxerō*, *sūmpserim*, *properāuit*, *adlocūtus sit*, *ūsus esset*, *praebuerit*, *rogāuerint*, *arbitrātus erit*, *iussī sītis*, *nōluimus*, *mīseritis*, *dūxerīmus*, *conuocāta sit*, *interfectus erit*, *petīta sīs*, (optional: *uīceram*, *uīnxerīs*, *secūtae sīmus*, *passa est*, *prohibitus sit*, *conuocāuerītis*, *temptāuerimus*, *impediūissem*, *cōsiderāuimus*, *exorta essem*, *uīsum sit*, *collocāuerim*, *questus erō*, *oppresserīmus*).

170 Use of perfect subjunctive

It is used in certain constructions already met, e.g.

- (a) Subordinate clauses in indirect speech (142)
- (b) Result clauses, *tam* (etc.) . . . *ut* + subj. '(so) . . . that', 144, e.g.

potest fieri ut irātus dīxerit 'it may be that he spoke in anger' (Cicero).

- (c) *cum* + subj. 'since', 'although' 124, 141 (but not usually 'when').
- (d) *quī* + subj. in generic or causal sense, 140.
- (e) Fearing clauses (*timeō* (etc.) *nē*), 162.

In these cases it should be translated as a plain past ('I —ed') or perfect ('I have —ed'), whichever fits better.

171 Perfect subjunctive: independent usages

The use of the present subjunctive in an imperative or potential sense has already been met (152 and 153). The perfect subjunctive is also used in these senses, e.g.

- (a) Jussive: *nē petīuerīs* 'do not seek' (= *nōlī petere*).
- (b) Potential: *dīxerit aliquis* 'someone may say'
errāuerim fortasse 'I may/could perhaps have been wrong'.

Exercises

1 Translate:

- (a) *tū nē quaesierīs* . . . (Horace)
- (b) *nūllam aciem, nūllum proelium timuerīs*. (Livy)
- (c) *nē hostibus cesserīs*.
- (d) *nūllī inuīderīs*.
- (e) *nē restiterīs*.
- (f) *quis tibi hoc dīxerit?*

2 Translate into Latin (using *nē* + perfect subjunctive for prohibitions):

- (a) Do not be daring.
- (b) Do not reveal this plan.
- (c) Do not give yourself up.
- (d) Do not harm the state.
- (e) Do not kill the consul.
- (f) Someone may assert.

172 Indirect (reported) questions

You have already met indirect statements ('I say *that*': 98–9, 143) and indirect commands ('I tell/urge/persuade etc. someone *to*': 134). Consider the following examples:

- (a) *rogō quid faciās* 'I ask what you are doing'.
- (b) *nesciuit cūr uēnisset* 'he did not know why he had come'.
- (c) *quaerō quō itūrus sīs* 'I am enquiring to where you are about to go'.

All these report direct questions: (a) 'What are you doing?' (b) 'Why have you come?' etc. Quite simply, Latin reports these questions in exactly the same way that English does, except that the verb is in the *subjunctive*. All you have to do is to translate the subjunctive as if it were the identical tense of the indicative.

Notes

- 1 *num* (or *an*) in indirect questions mean 'if', 'whether'; *num quis* means 'if anyone' (cf. *nē quis*, *sī quis* 134³, 145², 139¹; forms I4).
- 2 *necne* in indirect questions means 'or not'.
- 3 As with indirect statements and commands, references to the subject of the main verb are reflexive, e.g.

Caesar milites rogauit utrum se audire possent necne 'Caesar asked the soldiers whether they could hear him (= Caesar) or not'

- 4 Where Latin uses future participle + *sim/essem* to express the future, you should translate this into a simpler future in English, e.g.

Strobilus nesciuit ubi aulam celaturus esset 'Strobilus did not know where he was about to hide the pot' i.e. 'would hide the pot'

Exercises

1 Translate these sentences:

- (a) *omnes rogant num seruos acciperit Catilina*.
- (b) *nescit consul utrum ad urbem an ad Galliam Catilina iturus sit*.
- (c) *Metellus sciebat quo Catilina progressurus esset*.
- (d) *nemo scit quot milites habuerit Manlius*.
- (e) *nescio quantam praedam Catilina adeptus sit*.

- (f) *cives rogant num consul coniuratores punire constituerit*.
- (g) *quis rogauit utrum ignauus esset Lentulus necne?*
- (h) *Sallustius narrat qualis Tulliani facies fuerit*.
- (i) *omnes scimus quot legiones Catilina instruxerit*.
- (j) *consules rogauerunt num copiae Catilinae magnae futurae essent*.
- (k) *scire uelim utrum Catilina an consul uicturus sit*.
- (l) *rogauit utrum Catilina ipse suos milites in proelium duxisset necne*.

2 Translate these sentences:

- (a) *scribis te uelle scire qui sit status¹ rei publicae*. (Cicero)
- (b) *quid faciendum sit, a faciente discendum² est*. (Seneca)
- (c) *considerabimus quid fecerit, quid faciat, quid facturus sit*. (Cicero)
- (d) *uiuam an³ moriar, nulla est in me metus⁴*. (Ennius)
- (e) *nihil est difficilius quam quid deceat uidere*. (Cicero)

¹ *stat-us* *us* 4m. situation

² *discō* 3 I learn.

³ *an* or: note that there is no preceding *utrum*.

⁴ *metus* (unusually) is f. here.

3 Translate into Latin (See R3 Note 4 for strict rules):

- (a) I would like to tell you why you have been called together.
- (b) You all know how idle Lentulus has been.
- (c) Do not tell me how many enemies are pursuing us.
- (d) I urge you to remember how much hope you have placed in this battle.
- (e) Someone may ask why we are fighting.

173 Conditional clauses: 'if x had happened, y would have happened'

Where a *sī* ('if') clause uses the pluperfect subjunctive and the main clause uses a pluperfect subjunctive, the meaning is 'if x had happened, y would have happened' (cf. 139), e.g.

sī Catilinam uidissem, fugissem 'if I had seen Catiline, I would have fled'

sī effugissent, Roma delēta esset 'if they had escaped, Rome would have been destroyed'

Notes

- 1 This meaning is sometimes expressed by imperfect subjunctives (see 139³).
- 2 Mixtures of the set formulae are also possible, e.g. *sī hoc fēcissem, laetus essem* 'If I had done this, I would (now) be happy'.

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- (a) nisi Lentulus ignāuus fuisset, rēs pūblica magnō in periculō fuisset.
- (b) sī coniūrātōrēs dīuitiās habuissent, Catilīnae sē numquam adiūnxissent.
- (c) Catilīnae mīlitēs, nisi eōs necessitudō pugnāre coēgisset, effugere cōnātī essent.
- (d) uīcisset Catilīna, nisi Fortūna eī inuīdisset.
- (e) sī Catilīnae satis frūmentī fuisset, in montibus manēre cōstituisset.

2 Translate into Latin:

- (a) You would all have lived your life in exile, if I had not made this plan.
- (b) If Lentulus had been brave, our danger would not now be so great.¹
- (c) If you had possessed wealth, you would now be fighting against me.²
- (d) Catiline would have gone into exile, if he had foreseen the idleness of Lentulus.
- (e) If Catiline had not made a speech, his soldiers would not have realised how much danger there was.

¹ Use *sī* + plup. subj., impf. subj.

² Use *sī* + plup. subj., impf. subj.

174 *quōminus, quīn* + subjunctive

- 1 *quōminus* (= *quō minus*, 'so that . . . not') is used after verbs of preventing, hindering, restraining, obstructing, and is an extension of the purpose or result clause constructions already met (144, 148). The best translation in these circumstances is usually 'from', e.g.

mē impedit quōminus eam 'he hinders me so that I cannot go / from going'
eīs obstitit quōminus īrent 'he stood in their way so that they could not go', 'he opposed their departure'
nāuēs uentō tenēbantur quōminus in portum uenīre possent 'The ships were prevented by the wind from coming (= 'so that they could not come') into the harbour'

NB. See further Reference Grammar S2(f).

- 2 *quīn* (*quī ne* 'how not?') is generally found in a negative context and has a number of usages of deliberative, consecutive and indirect force using the subjunctive:

- (a) After negative expressions of preventing e.g. *nīl tē impedit quīn eās* 'nothing prevents you from going / so that you cannot go'.
- (b) Meaning 'but that', 'without', 'that not' in negative contexts, e.g. *numquam eum uideō quīn rīdeam* 'I never see him but that I laugh / without laughing', *numquam ēgressus sum quīn uidērer* 'I never went out but that I was seen / without being seen'; *nēmo tam sapiēns est quīn erret* 'no-one is so wise but that he makes a mistake / that he does not make a mistake'.

Note also the expressions *facere nōn possum quīn* 'I cannot do (a thing) but that' 'I cannot help —ing'; *fieri nōn potest quīn* 'it cannot come about but that . . .', 'it is impossible that . . . not'; *nōn multum abest quīn* 'it is not far from being the case that . . .'

- (c) In certain negative expressions of doubting meaning '(but) that', e.g. *dubium nōn est quīn* 'there is no doubt (but) that . . .'; *nōn dubitō quīn* 'I do not doubt (but) that . . .'; *dubitārī nōn potest quīn* 'it cannot be doubted (but) that'.

Examine the following examples:

nōn dubium erat quīn Catilīna uincerētur 'there was no doubt that Catiline was being defeated'

nēmo dubitābit quīn Lentulus ignāuus fuerit 'no-one will doubt that Lentulus was a coward'

nēmo est quīn sciat 'everyone knows'

fieri nōn potest quīn rēs pūblica salua sit 'it is impossible that the state will not be safe'

Catilīna facere nōn poterat quīn frūstrā loquerētur 'Catiline could not help speaking to no purpose'

NB. See further Reference Grammar Q2(a), S2(a) 3(i)–(iv), S2(e).

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- impedior quōminus tibi nārrem quid Catilīna dīxerit.
- nec aetās impedit quōminus et cēterārum rērum et in prīmīs agrī colendī studia teneāmus. (Cicero)
- nōn dubium est quīn Catilīna coniūrātor fuerit.
- quīn loquar, numquam mē potes dēterrere.¹ (Plautus)
- dubitārī nōn potest quīn Fortūna Catilīnae inuīderit.
- quis dubitet quīn in uirtūte dīuītiaē sint? (Cicero)
- nēmo est tam senex quī sē annum nōn putet posse uīuere (Cicero)
- nōn potest iūcundē² uīuī nisi cum uirtūte uīuātur. (Cicero)

¹ dēterrere 2 I frighten off, prevent.² iūcundē happily.

2 Translate into Latin (see Note on 174 for references to Reference Grammar discussions):

- Nothing stops you from speaking.¹
- There is no doubt that² this is true.
- Catiline was prevented from³ leaving the mountains.
- I am being held back by necessity from following the rest of the army.⁴
- There was no doubt that Catiline was forced to fight.

¹ quōminus or quīn.² quīn.³ nē or quōminus.⁴ 'I hold back' = teneō 2; nē or quōminus.

Reading exercise / Test exercise

In indirect speech there are three basic constructions: (i) statements are expressed by acc. + inf.; (ii) commands by ut/nē + subjunctive; (iii) indirect questions by a question word + subjunctive. As you know, subordinate clauses within it also have subjunctive verbs. You need also to know that in extended passages, indirect commands are often represented by subjunctive alone. In reading, the most important thing is to be aware when such an extended passage begins: once the fact of indirect speech is spotted, the next thing is to remember that the tense of the introductory verb will affect the tense of all subjunctives.

58: Caesar has just won a battle at the river Arar against one canton (pāg-us ī 2m.) of the migrating Helvetii. They send him an embassy, headed by Divico.

is ita cum Caesare ēgit: sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Heluetiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse uoluisset; sīn bellō persequī perseuērāret, reminiscerētur et ueteris incommodī et prīstinae uirtūtis Heluetiōrum. quod imprōuīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī quī flūmen trānsissent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere uirtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret. sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse, ut magis uirtūte quam dolō contenderent aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

(Caesar, Dē Bellō Gallicō 1, 13, 3–7)

is = Diuicō

agō 3 ēgī I deal, do business [Indirect Speech begins after the colon]

faceret [Indirect: it represents either *faciat* ('were to make') or *faciet* ('is going to make')]

itūrōs, futūrōs sc. *esse*: 'they would go . . . and stay' [Both refer to the Helvetii]

cōstitutō 3 cōstituī I place, put
sīn but if

perseuērāret [Indirect: represents either *perseuēret* ('were to continue') or *perseuērābit* ('is going to continue')]

perseuērō 1 I continue

reminiscerētur [Indirect command]

reminiscor 3 dep. I remember (+ gen.)
incommod-um ī 2n. misfortune [Inflicted by the Helvetii upon L. Cassius in 107.]

prīstin-us a um former

quod 'as for the fact that' [The reported speech continues]

imprōuīsō unexpectedly

5 adortus 4 dep. *adortus* I attack

flūmen flūmin-is 3n. river

trānsēō trānsire trānsiī I cross

nē [introduces an indirect command, negative]

suae [Hold until solved]

tribuō 3 I attribute [I.e. 'it', 'the fact that' – the *quod* clause is the object of this verb]

ipsōs [I.e. the Helvetii]

dēspiciō 3/4 I look down on

sē [I.e. the Helvetii]

discō 3 didici I learn

contendō 3 I struggle, fight

quārē therefore

nē [Introduces another negative indirect command]

committeret [Tr. 'act in such a way']

cōsistō 3 cōstitiī I stop

10 interneciō interneciōn-is 3f. killing, slaughter

memori-a ae 1f. remembrance, record

prōdō 3 I hand down, transmit;
produce

NB. For rules governing conditions in indirect speech, see Reference Grammar R4(b).

English–Latin

Reread the text of 5F(i), then translate this passage into Latin:

'You can see, soldiers, in what danger our affairs are. Two armies prevent us from leaving these mountains without a battle. If we had not relied

upon Lentulus, we would have already escaped. Now, however, we must fight, for our fatherland, for our liberty and for our lives. Do not be¹ cowards. If we win² there is no doubt that³ safety is ours. If we yield² through fear, nothing will stop us from⁴ being butchered.'

¹ *nē* + perfect subjunctive. ³ *quīn* + subjunctive.

² Use future perfect. ⁴ *quōminus* + subjunctive or *quīn* + subjunctive.

Virgil's Aeneid

Eventually, Aeneas and his rival Turnus come face to face. Aeneas is about to kill him, but Turnus pleads for his life. In this passage, Aeneas is about to yield to Turnus' entreaty, when he sees Pallas' sword-belt glittering on him (see note). Aeneas kills him, and the Aeneid ends.

stetit ācer in armīs

Aenēās uoluēns oculōs dextramque repressit;
et iam iamque magis cūctantem flectere sermō
coeperat, infēlix umerō cum appāruit altō
balteus et nōtīs fulserunt cingula bullīs 5
Pallantis puerī, uictum quem uulnere Turnus
strāuerat atque umerīs inimicum īsigne gerēbat.
ille, oculīs postquam saeuī monimenta dolōris
exuuiāsque hausit, furiīs accēsus et irā
terribilis: 'tūne hinc spoliīs indūte meōrum 10
ēripiāre mihī? Pallās tē hōc uulnere, Pallās
immolat et poenam scelerātō ex sanguine sūmit.'
hoc dīcēns, ferrum aduersō sub pectore condit
feruidus; ast illī soluuntur frīgore membra
uītaque cum gemitū fugit indignāta sub umbrās. 15
(Virgil, Aeneid 12.935–52)

stetit [Subject? Wait]

uoluō 3 I roll, shift

reprimō 3 repressī I check, restrain

iam iamque magis 'now more and more'

cūctantem [Refers to Aeneas. Register case and hold]

flectō 3 I bend, persuade

sermō [I.e. the words (of Turnus)]

infēlix infēlic-is ill-starred, disastrous

[Wait for noun for infēlix and introduction word to this new clause]

umer-us ī 2m. shoulder [Dat. or abl.?

Hold]

cum [Introduces the clause]

appāreō 2 I appear, come into view
[Where? umerō]

alt-us a um on the top of

5 balte-us ī 2m. sword-belt

nōt-us a um well-known

fulgeō 2 fulsī I shine, glitter

cingul-a ōrum 2n. pl. baldrick

bull-a ae 1f. stud [Solves nōtīs. But what case?]

Pallās Pallant-is 3m. Pallas, the young man entrusted to Aeneas' charge by his father Evander. Turnus killed Pallas in battle (Aeneid 10.439ff.)

uictum quem [quem introduces the clause, object of strāuerat]

uulnus uulner-is 3n, wound

sternō 3 strāuī I lay low

inimic-us a um hostile, of his enemy

īsigne īsign-is 3n. insignia, a sign

gerō 3 I wear [What? Where? Solves umerīs]

ille [I.e. Aeneas]

postquam [Introduces clause]

moniment-um ī 2n. memorial (to + gen.)

exuui-ae ārum 2f. pl. spoils

hauriō 4 hausī I drink in

furi-ae ārum 1f. pl. the spirits of vengeance

accendō 3 accendī accēsus I burn up, consume

ir-a ae 1f. anger

10 spoli-a ōrum 2n. pl. spoils

indūt-us a um dressed in (+ abl.)

meōrum 'of mine' [I.e. 'of my people']

ēripiō 3/4 I snatch away [Deliberative subj. 'are you to be . . .?']

immolō 1 I sacrifice

poenam sūmō 3 I take revenge

scelerāt-us a um villainous

aduers-us a um facing

pectus pector-is 3n. chest

condō 3 I hide, bury

feruid-us a um hot, in passion

ast = at

illī (dat.) [I.e. Turnus]

frīgus frīgor-is 3n. cold, chill (of death)

membr-um ī 2n. limb

15 gemit-us ūs 4m. groan

indignāt-us a um complaining

sub (+ acc.) down to

umbr-a ae 1f. shade

Deliciae Latinae

Martial

quārē nōn habeat, Fabulle, quaeris,
uxōrem Themisōn? habet sorōrem. (12.20)

Themisōn Themisōn-is 3m.

Themison [Subject of habeat and habet]

aestiuō seruēs ubi piscem tempore, quaeris?
in thermīs seruā, Caeciliāne, tuīs. (2.78)

aestiu-us a um hot,

summer [Hold aestiuō

until solved by tempore]

seruēs deliberative

subjunctive [See 152¹]

piscis pisc-is 3m. fish

therm-ae ārum 1f. pl. baths

(which were supposed to be hot)

Caeciliān-us ī 2m.

Caecilianus (a bath-keeper)

Section 5G

Running vocabulary for 5G(i)

<i>accendō</i> 3 I fire	<i>interficiendum</i> killing (acc. gerund of <i>interficiō</i>)	<i>post</i> (+ acc.) after; ((adv.) afterwards, later)
<i>aciēs aciē-ī</i> 5f. battle-line	<i>latrō latrōn-is</i> 3m. bandit	<i>praeficiō</i> 3/4 <i>praefēcī</i>
<i>aeger aegr-a aegr-um</i> ill	<i>lēgāt-us ī</i> 2m. commander	<i>praefectus</i> I put x (acc.) in charge of y (dat.)
<i>amplius</i> more than	<i>locō</i> 1 I place	<i>prō</i> (+ abl.) in accordance with
<i>appellō</i> 1 I address	<i>M. = Mārcō: Mārc-us ī</i> 2m. Marcus	<i>pugnandum</i> fighting (acc. gerund of <i>pugnō</i>)
<i>canō</i> 3 I sound (lit. 'sing')	<i>moriendum</i> dying (acc. gerund of <i>moriō</i>)	<i>quemque</i> (acc. s. m.) (l. 301) each; (l. 293)
<i>centuriō centuriōn-is</i> 3m. centurion (commander of a century – actually less than 100 men)	<i>nārrandō</i> by relating (abl. gerund of <i>nārrō</i>)	<i>optimum quemque</i> = all the best men; (ll. 298, 302) <i>ūnum</i>
<i>circumeundō</i> by going round (abl. gerund of <i>circumeō</i>)	<i>nōminandō</i> by naming (abl. gerund of <i>nōminō</i>)	<i>quemque</i> = each individual
<i>corn-ū ūs</i> 4n. wing (dat. s. <i>cornū</i>)	<i>nōminō</i> 1 I name	<i>remoueō</i> 2 <i>remōuī remōtus</i> I remove
<i>cuiusque</i> (gen. s. m.) of each (man)	<i>parāt-us a um</i> prepared (to: <i>ad</i> + gerund)	<i>sign-um ī</i> 2n. (l. 288) trumpet-call; (l. 292) standard
<i>dexter dextr-a um</i> right	<i>pedes pedit-is</i> 3m. foot-soldier	<i>sinister sinistr-a um</i> left
<i>exaequō</i> 1 I make equal	<i>permittō</i> 3 I entrust x (acc.) to y (dat.)	<i>subsidi-um ī</i> 2n. (or pl.) reserve
<i>Faesulān-us ī</i> 2m. man from Faesulae	<i>Petrēi-us ī</i> 2m. M. Petreius	<i>ueterān-us a um</i> veteran
<i>foc-us ī</i> 2m. hearth		
<i>frōns front-is</i> 3f. front		
<i>inerm-is e</i> unarmed		

Notes

l. 290 *quō . . . esset* see 148.l. 292 *reliquārum*: sc. '(of the) cohorts'.

Learning vocabulary for 5G(i)

Nouns

<i>aciēs aciē-ī</i> 5f. battle-line; sharp edge, point; keenness (of sight)	<i>latrō latrōn-is</i> 3m. robber, bandit	<i>sign-um ī</i> 2n. standard, trumpet-call (seal; signal, sign; statue)
<i>centuriō centuriōn-is</i> 3m. centurion	<i>lēgāt-us ī</i> 2m. commander (pl. ambassadors)	<i>subsidi-um ī</i> 2n. reserve; help
<i>corn-ū ūs</i> 4n. wing (of army); horn		

Adjectives

<i>aeger aegr-a um</i> ill	<i>dexter dextr-a um</i> right, favourable	<i>sinister sinistr-a um</i> left; unfavourable
----------------------------	--	---

Verbs

<i>appellō</i> 1 I name, call; address	<i>cūrō</i> 1 I am in command (look after, care for)	<i>praeficiō</i> 3/4 <i>praefēcī</i>
	<i>nōminō</i> 1 I name	<i>praefectus</i> I put x (acc.) in charge of y (dat.)

Others

<i>amplius</i> more than (from <i>ampl-us a um</i> great)	<i>post</i> (+ acc.) behind; after (adv. afterwards, later; behind)	<i>prō</i> (+ abl.) in accordance with (for, in return for; on behalf of; in front of; instead of)
---	---	--

Running vocabulary for 5G(ii)

<i>ācriter</i> fiercely, spiritedly	<i>incurrō</i> 1 I run into	<i>praetōri-us a um</i> praetorian (i.e. the best fighters)
<i>alibi</i> (with <i>aliōs</i>) in different places [See 102']	<i>inducō</i> 3 I lead (x: acc. into y: in + acc.)	<i>pristin-us a um</i> former
<i>cadō</i> 3 I fall, die	<i>īnfest-us a um</i> hostile; <i>cum īnfestīs signīs</i> = 'with standards set for attack'	<i>proelium committere</i> to join battle
<i>comminus</i> to close quarters	<i>īnstō</i> 1 I press on, approach	<i>reor</i> 2 dep. <i>ratus</i> I think, believe, suppose
<i>committō</i> [See <i>proelium committere</i>]	<i>integer integr-a um</i> fresh, not wounded	<i>resistō</i> 3 I resist
<i>cōnfert-us a um</i> close-packed	<i>labōrō</i> 1 I am in difficulties	<i>sauci-us a um</i> wounded
<i>cōnfodiō</i> 3/4 I stab	<i>latus later-is</i> 3n. flank	<i>strēnu-us a um</i> energetic
<i>contrā ac</i> (+ indic.) contrary to what	<i>omittō</i> 3 I leave out, leave aside; let fall	<i>succurrō</i> 3 I run to help (+ dat.)
<i>expedit-us ī</i> 2m. light-armed soldier	<i>paulatim</i> little by little, gradually	<i>tendō</i> 3 I struggle, fight
<i>explōrō</i> 1 I investigate, reconnoitre	<i>perturbō</i> 1 I disturb, confuse	<i>tub-a ae</i> 1f. trumpet
<i>exsequor</i> 3 dep. I carry out, perform	<i>pīl-um ī</i> 2n. heavy javelin (normally thrown by soldiers before hand-to-hand fighting began)	<i>uersor</i> 1 dep. I am occupied
<i>ferentāri-us ī</i> 2m. light-armed soldier (armed only with missiles)		<i>ueterān-us ī</i> 2m. veteran
<i>fundō</i> 3 <i>fūdī fūsus</i> I rout		<i>unde</i> from where
<i>incēdō</i> 3 I advance		<i>uterque</i> (nom. s. m.) each (of two) [Note the pl. verb]
		<i>utrōque</i> (abl. s. n.) each (of the two)

Notes

- l. 307 *eō*: 'to that place . . .' picked up by *unde* 'from where'.
 l. 308 *uentum est* } impersonal passives (see 155).
 l. 311 *certātur* }
 l. 311 *instāre* }
 l. 312 *uersārī, succurrere* }
 l. 313 *arcessere, prōuidēre, pugnāre,* } historic infinitives.
 l. 314 *ferīre* }
 ll. 319 *fūsās . . . relictum*: sc. *esse*.

Learning vocabulary for 5G(ii)

Nouns

latus later-is 3n. side; flank
pīl-um ī 2n. heavy javelin

Adjectives

integer integr-a um whole, untouched
prīstin-us a um former; original
sauci-us a um wounded

Verbs

cadō 3 *cecidī cāsum* I fall, die
instō 1 *instīti* I press upon; urge; pursue; am at hand, approach; strive after (*in + stō*)
omittō 3 *omīsī omīssus* I give up; let fall; omit, leave aside (*ob + mittō*)
reor 2 dep. *ratus* I think, believe, suppose
resistō 3 *restitī* (+ dat.) I resist; stand back, halt; pause (*re + sistō*)
succurrō 3 *succurrī succursum* I run to help, assist (+ dat.) (*sub + currō*)
tendō 3 *tetendī tēnsus* or *tentus* I strive, fight; (stretch (out); offer; direct; (intrans.) travel)
uersor 1 dep. I am occupied; stay, dwell; am in a certain condition

Others

alibī somewhere else
paulātim little by little, gradually
unde from where, whence

Running vocabulary for 5G(iii)

aduers-us a um in front
anim-a ae 1f. soul, life
cadāuer cadāuer-is 3n. corpse
cernō 3 I see
cognāt-us ī 2m. kinsman, blood-relative
corpus corpor-is 3n. body
ferē almost
gaudi-um ī 2n. joy
hostīl-is e of the enemy
incruent-us a um bloodless

ingenu-us a um free-born
lūct-us ūs 4m. mourning
maeror maerōr-is 3m. grief
occidō 3 *occidī* I die, fall
paululum a very little
prōcēdō 3 *prōcessī* I advance, proceed, come forth
pugnandō by fighting (abl. gerund of *pugnō*)
quisquam (nom. s. m.) (l. 325) anyone (pronoun); (l. 328) any (adj.)

quisque (nom. s. m.) (l. 323) each person; (l. 331) *strēnuissimus*
quisque all the most energetic men
spīrō 1 I breathe
spoliandī of stripping (corpses) (gen. gerund of *spoliō* 1)
strēnu-us a um energetic
tegō 3 I cover
uariē in different ways

uīsēdī of visiting/viewing (gen. gerund of *uīsō* 3)
uīu-us a um living, alive
uoluō 3 I turn (over) (trans.)
uulnerō 1 I wound
uulnus uulner-is 3n. wound
uult-us ūs 4m. face, expression

Notes

- l. 322 *cernerēs*: referring to the past (see 153.2).
 l. 323 *quem* with *locum*: *locum* picked up by *eum*.
 l. 334 *aliī . . . pars*: 'some . . . others'. A variant of *aliī . . . aliī*.

Learning vocabulary for 5G(iii)

Nouns

anim-a ae 1f. soul, life, breath
lūct-us ūs 4m. grief, mourning
corpus corpor-is 3n. body
gaudi-um ī 2n. joy
uulnus uulner-is 3n. wound
uult-us ūs 4m. face, expression

Adjectives

aduers-us a um in front (i.e. facing the enemy) (hostile; opposite; unfavourable)
uīu-us a um alive, living

Verbs

occidō 3 *occidī occāsum* I fall, die (*ob + cadō*)
tegō 3 *tēxī tēctus* I cover
uoluō 3 *uoluī uolūtus* I roll, turn (over) (trans.)
uulnerō 1 I wound

Grammar and exercises for 5G

175 Gerunds: -nd- forms, '-ing'

We have already seen that verbs can form adjectives (i.e. participles and gerundives), when they act like adjectives in agreeing with nouns or pronouns, e.g.

nāue captā nautae effūgērunt 'with the ship captured, the sailors fled'

hic homo monendus est 'this man is to be / must be warned'.

Verbs can also form nouns. As such, verbs take the form of the *infinitive*, or the *gerund*, which has exactly the same forms as the neuters of the *gerundive* (see 160). The declension is as follows (acc. to abl. as for 2n. nouns):

	1	2	3
	'loving'	'having'	'speaking'
nom.	amā-re	habē-re	dīc-e-re
acc.	amā-nd-um	habē-nd-um	dīc-ē-nd-um
	amā-re	habē-re	dīc-e-re
gen.	amā-nd-ī	habē-nd-ī	dīc-ē-nd-ī
dat.	amā-nd-ō	habē-nd-ō	dīc-ē-nd-ō
abl.	amā-nd-ō	habē-nd-ō	dīc-ē-nd-ō

	4	3/4
	'hearing'	'capturing'
nom.	audī-re	cāp-e-re
acc.	audi-ē-nd-um	capi-ē-nd-um
	audī-re	cāp-e-re
gen.	audi-ē-nd-ī	capi-ē-nd-ī
dat.	audi-ē-nd-ō	capi-ē-nd-ō
abl.	audi-ē-nd-ō	capi-ē-nd-ō

Deponents have exactly the same forms and *active* meaning, i.e. *mina-nd-um* 'threatening', *pollice-nd-um* 'promising', *loqu-e-nd-um* 'speaking', *menti-e-nd-um* 'lying', *prōgredi-e-nd-um* 'advancing'.

Usages

- 1 The infinitive is used as a noun-gerund in e.g. *dulce est amāre* 'it is sweet to make love' 'love-making is pleasant'. Here *amāre* is noun-subject. Cf. *cupiō ambulāre* 'I desire to walk' 'I like walking'. Here the infinitive is a noun-object. With prepositions, the -nd- form is used, e.g. *ad amandum* 'with a view to loving'.
- 2 *ad* + acc. 'for the purpose of', e.g. *ad dīcendum* 'for the purpose of speaking', 'with a view to speaking'. The gerund may take an object, e.g. *ad nāuem capiendum* 'to capture the ship'. Cf. 161.3 (gerundives).
- 3 *causā/grātiā* + gen. 'for the sake of', 'for the purpose of', e.g. *dīcendī causā* 'for the sake of speaking' (note word-order), *habendī grātiā* 'for the sake of having', 'in order to have'. Cf. 161.3 (gerundives).
- 4 In the abl., e.g. *dīcendō* 'by speaking', *ambulandō* 'by walking' (cf. *innuendō* 'by hinting'), e.g. *ūnus homō nōbīs cūctandō restituit rem* 'one man (i.e. Q. Fabius Maximus Cunctator) restored our fortunes by delaying' (Ennius).

N.B. Remember the irregular gerunds *eund-um* 'going' (*eō*), *oriund-um* 'rising' (*orior*). *faciundum* 'making', 'doing', *gerundum* 'doing' etc. are also found, for *faciendum gerendum*. The key vowel was originally -u-.

Exercises

- 1 Form, translate and decline the gerunds of the following verbs: *exorior*, *dormiō*, *petō*, *nōscō*, *fugiō*, *commoror*, *teneō*, *eō*, (optional: *uoluō*, *uulnerō*, *occidō*, *uersor*, *reperiō*, *agō*, *gerō*, *taceō*).
- 2 Translate:
 - (a) *ad ūtendum*.
 - (b) *eundī causā*.
 - (c) *discēdendō*.
 - (d) *resistendī grātiā*.
 - (e) *ad uulnerandum*.
 - (f) *uidendō*.
 - (g) *uoluendī causā*.
- 3 Give the Latin for (using gerunds):
 - (a) To wound.
 - (b) For the purpose of delaying.

- (c) By holding.
- (d) For the sake of arising.
- (e) To assist.
- (f) Of seeking.
- (g) In doing.

4 Translate these sentences or phrases saying whether gerund or gerundive is being used:

- (a) ad militēs uulnerandōs.
- (b) mihi eundum est.
- (c) prōgrediendī causā.
- (d) militibus nōminandīs.
- (e) fortiter resistendō.
- (f) ad corpora uoluenda.
- (g) sauciīs ab integrīs succurrendum erat.
- (h) coniūrātōrēs cōsul praetōribus pūniendōs trādīdit.
- (i) discēdendī grātiā.
- (j) ad exercitum instruendum.
- (k) hominis mēns¹ discendō² alitur³ et cōgitandō. (Cicero)
- (l) nihil tam difficile est quā quaerendō inuestīgārī possit. (Terence)

¹ mēns ment-is 3f. mind.

² discō 3 I learn.

³ alitur 'is fed', 'grows'.

⁴ inuestīgō 1 I trace out.

176 quisque and quisquam

quisque means 'each and every', 'everyone'. It is often used with the superlative, e.g. *optimus quisque* 'each and every best (male)', 'all the best men'; *pessima quaeque* 'each and every most wicked woman', 'all the most wicked women'.

quisquam means 'anyone', 'any' and is normally found in negative contexts, e.g. *nec quisquam* 'and not anyone', 'and no-one'.

quisque and *quisquam* decline like *quis* (29) + *que/quam*. Note the neuter of *quisquam* is *quicquam* and the neuter of *quisque* is *quidque* or *quodque*.

177 uterque

uterque means 'both', 'each (of two)' and declines as follows:

	s.		
	m.	f.	n.
nom.	utēr-que	útr-a-que	utr-úm-que
acc.	utr-úm-que	utr-ám-que	utr-úm-que
gen.	← utr-īús-que →		
dat.	← utr-īús-que →		
abl.	utr-ō-que	utr-ā-que	utr-ō-que
	pl.		
	m.	f.	n.
nom.	utr-ī-que	utr-aé-que	útr-a-que
acc.	utr-ōs-que	utr-ās-que	útr-a-que
gen.	utr-ōrúm-que	utr-ārúm-que	utr-ōrúm-que
dat.	← utr-īs-que →		
abl.	← utr-īs-que →		

Cf. *alter*, *nūllus*, *tōtus*, *ūnus*, *sōlus* etc. which also decline exactly like *mult-us a um* except for the gen. s. in *-īus* and the dat. s. in *-ī*.

178 4th declension neuter corn-ū ūs 'horn', 'wing of army'

	s.	pl.
nom.	córnu	córnu-a
acc.	córnu	córnu-a
gen.	córnu-s	córnu-um
dat.	córnu	córnu-ibus
abl.	córnu	córnu-ibus

NB. The only other noun of this type you are likely to meet is *genū* 'knee' (cf. 'genuflect', to bend the knee).

Exercises

1 Translate these sentences:

- (a) pessimus quisque coniūratiōnī fauet.
- (b) stultissimus quisque haec intellegere potest.

- (c) nec quisquam hoc dicere ausus est.
 (d) interdicitque¹ omnibus nē quemquam interficiant. (Caesar)
 (e) in omnī arte² optimum quidque rārissimum³ est. (Cicero)
 (f) remedia utriusque fortunae. (Title of a book by fourteenth-century Italian Petrarch)
 (g) tū mihi uidēris utrumque factūrus. (Cicero)
 (h) aut enim nēmo aut, sī quisquam, ille sapiēns fuit. (Cicero)
 (i) prō sē quisque ad populum loquēbatur. (Cicero)
 (j) . . . nec quisquam ex agmine tantō
 audet adire uirum. (Virgil)

¹ interdico 3 (+ dat.) I forbid.

² ars art-is 3f. art.

³ rār-us a um rare.

⁴ sapiēns sapient-is wise.

2 Give the Latin for:

- (a) All the best men resist their enemies.
 (b) Nor did the commander send anyone wounded into battle.
 (c) The commander of each of the two armies encouraged his soldiers.
 (d) It is not possible to say anything good¹.
 (e) Petreius encouraged each individual.
 (f) By relating each man's deeds he encouraged the soldiers.

¹ Genitive; cf. quid negōtī.

179 Further comparative clauses

1 atque/ac

atque/ac is used after adjectives or adverbs which express 'likeness' or 'unlikeness', such as *īdem* 'the same', *alius* 'different', 'other', *aliter* 'differently', *contrā* 'opposite', 'contrary', *par* 'equal', *pariter* 'equally', *perinde* 'in like manner', *similis* 'like', 'similar'. E.g.

iussērunt simulācrum Iouis, contrā atque antea fuerat, ad orientem conuertere 'they ordered (them) to turn the statue of Jupiter towards the East, contrary to what it had been before'
perinde ēgit ac dixit 'he acted just as he said'

2 Correlatives

You have already met *ut* meaning 'as', which acts as a correlative to *sic* or *ita* 'thus', e.g. *ut tū imperās, sic/ita ego faciō* 'as you order, so I do'. In the same way, *tam* 'so' is answered by *quam* 'as', e.g.

tam beātus erat ille quam miser ego 'he was as (lit. so) happy as I unhappy'

tot 'so many' is answered by *quot* 'as many', e.g.

tot uirī sunt quot fēminae 'so many men there are, as many (as) (there are) women', 'there are as many men as women'

Cf. *tantus* ('so great') . . . *quantus* ('as great', 'as'); *tālis* ('of such a sort') . . . *quālis* ('of which sort', 'as'), e.g.

tanta sapientia eī inest quanta uīs 'there is so great wisdom in him as great (as there is) force', 'he is as much brain as brawn'
tālem uirtutem praebebat quālem Horātius 'he showed bravery of such a sort as the sort (which) Horatius (showed)'

3 Unreal comparisons

quasi, *uelut*, *tamquam* mean 'as if', 'as though' and (with or without *sī* added) take a *subjunctive* where the comparison is unreal or hypothetical. Constructions under 179.1 add *sī*. e.g.

ita sē gerit quasi stultus sit 'he is behaving as though he were a fool'
 (but he is not)
perinde agit ac sī hostis sit 'he acts just as though he were an enemy'
 (but is not)

Exercises

1 Translate into English:

- (a) Catilīna aliter ac Petrēius ratus erat agēbat.
 (b) tam ignāuus erat Gabīnius quam Lentulus.
 (c) perinde atque eī imperātum erat, sīc Mānlius ēgit.
 (d) rēs gestae sunt contrā atque expectāuerat Petrēius.
 (e) loquitur quasi stultus sit.

2 Translate these sentences:

- (a) nihil est hominī tam timendum quam inuidia. (Cicero)
 (b) nihil est tam fallāx quam uīta hūmāna, nihil tam insidiōsum. (Seneca)
 (c) quot hominēs, tot sententiae. (Terence)
 (d) plērīque habēre amīcum tālem uolunt, quālēs ipsī esse nōn possunt. (Cicero)
 (e) parū sīc iacent, tamquam omnīnō sine animō sint. (Cicero)

inuidi-a ae 1f. envy, hatred	hūmān-us a um human	omnīnō altogether,
fallāx fallāc-is deceitful	insidiōs-us a um dangerous	completely
	parū = babies	

3 Give the Latin for (using comparative clauses):

- (a) This man is as good as that man.
 (b) My son is acting against my wishes.
 (c) You are the sort of person that your father was.
 (d) He is acting differently from the way he was told to.
 (e) I will act in accordance with your commands.
 (f) He was walking as though he had been wounded.

Reading exercises / Test exercises

- 1 The speaker is Cato the Censor (234–149). He is talking about old age with Gaius Laelius (b. 186) and Publius Scipio Africanus (Minor) (c 185–129), who are pictured as young men at the time of the conversation. His particular theme here is what can be done to overcome what are normally seen as the peculiar drawbacks of old age.

resistendum, Laelī et Scīpiō, senectūtī est eiusque uitia dīligentiā compēnsanda sunt, pugnandum tamquam contrā morbum sīc contrā senectūtem, habenda ratiō ualētūdinis, ūtendum exercitātiōnibus modicīs, tantum cibī et pōtiōnis adhibendum, ut reficiantur uīrēs, nōn opprimantur. nec uērō corporī solum subueniendum est, sed mentī atque animō multō magis; nam haec quoque, nisi tamquam lūminī oleum instillēs, exstinguuntur senectūte. et corpora quidem exercitātiōnum dēfatīgatiōne ingrauēscunt, animī autem sē exercendō leuantur. nam quōs ait Caecilius 'cōmicōs stultōs senēs', hōs significat crēdulōs obliuīōsōs dissolutōs, quae uitia sunt nōn senectūtis, sed inertis ignāuae somniculōsae senectūtis. ut petulantia, ut libīdō magis

est adulēscēntium quam senum, nec tamen omnium adulēscēntium, sed nōn probōrum, sīc ista senīlis stultitia, quae dēlīratiō appellārī solet, senum leuium est, nōn omnium. (Cicero, Dē senectūte (Catō Maior) 35–6)

senectūs senectūt-is 3f. old age
 uiti-um ī 2n. fault, shortcoming
 compēnsō 1 I balance
 pugnandum sc. est [Note the ellipse of est, which is understood from the previous part of the sentence
 resistendum . . . est (also in l. 3: habenda, ūtendum; l. 4: adhibendum)]
 tamquam just as, as though
 morb-us ī 2m. disease
 ratiō ratiōn-is 3f. method, regimen
 ualētūdō ualētūdīn-is 3f. health
 exercitātiō exercitātiōn-is 3f. exercise
 modic-us a um moderate
 pōtiō pōtiōn-is 3f. drink
 adhibeō 2 I use
 reficiō 3/4 I refresh
 5 corporī [Hold until solved, reading as a phrase with solum]
 subueniō 4 (+ dat.) I help
 mēns ment-is 3f. mind
 lūmen lūmin-is 3n. light
 ole-um ī 2n. oil
 instillō 1 I drop x (acc.) into y (dat.)
 [Note mood of instillēs: subjunctive expressing generalised 2nd s. (see 153.2)]
 exstinguō 3 I quench, put out

quidem indeed [Emphasising corpora]
 dēfatīgatiō dēfatīgatiōn-is 3f. exhaustion, weariness
 ingrauēscō 3 I grow heavier (i.e. stiffer)
 exerceō 2 I train, exercise
 leuō 1 I relieve [The prevalent metaphor centres on the stems grau- 'heavy', leu- 'light']
 ait '(he) calls'
 Caecilius = C. Statius, an early Roman comic poet
 cōmic-us a um comic
 significō 1 I mean
 10 crēdul-us a um credulous
 obliuīōs-us a um forgetful
 dissolut-us a um slack
 iners inert-is idle
 somniculōs-us a um drowsy
 ut [Hold until solved]
 petulantī-a ae 1f. impudence, waywardness
 adulēscēns adulēscēnt-is 3m. youth
 prob-us a um honest, upright
 senīl-is e of old men
 stultiti-a ae 1f. foolishness
 dēlīratiō dēlīratiōn-is 3f. dementia, dotage, madness
 leu-is e frivolous, weak

- 2 The rape of Ceres' daughter Proserpina. She is picking flowers with her girlfriends. Her uncle, the god of the Underworld, Pluto, sees her, falls in love with her and snatches her off to Hades. Suspension of adjective in the first half of the line is particularly noticeable in this piece. (See 185 for the metre)

filia, cōnsuētis ut erat comitāta puellīs,
 errābat nūdō per sua prāta pede.
 ualle sub umbrōsā locus est aspergine multā
 ūuidus ex altō dēsiliēntis aquae.
 tot fuerant illīc, quot habet nātūra, colōrēs,
 pictaque dissimilī flōre nitēbat humus.
 quam simul aspexit, 'comitēs, accēdite', dīxit

'et mēcum plēnōs flōre referte sinūs!
 praeda puellārīs animōs prōlectat inānis,
 et nōn sentitur sēdulitāte labor. 10

Proserpina wanders off, by chance not followed by any of her friends.

hanc uidet et uīsam patruus uēlōciter aufert,
 rēgnāque caeruleīs in sua portat equīs.
 illa quidem clāmābat, 'iō, cārissima mātēr,
 auferor!' ipsa suōs abscideratque sinūs:
 panditur intereā Dītī uia, namque diurnum 15
 lūmen inassuētī uix patiuntur equī.
 at chorus aequālis, cumulātae flōre ministrae,
 'Persephonē', clāmant 'ad tua dōna uenī!
 ut clāmāta silet, montīs ululātibus implent,
 et feriunt maestā pectora nūda manū. 20

(Ovid, *Fasti* 4.425–34 and 445–54)

cōnsuētīs [Hold until solved]
 cōnsuēt-us a um usual
 comitō 1 I accompany
 errō 1 I wander
 nūdō [Hold until solved]
 nūd-us a um naked
 prāt-a ōrum 2n. pl. meadows
 uallis uall-is 3f. valley
 umbrōs-us a um shady
 aspergō aspergin-is 3f. spray
 ūuid-us a um wet [Read *aspergine multā*
 ūuidus as one phrase]
 alt-um ī 2n. high place
 dēsiliō 4 I leap down [Read *ex altō*
 dēsiliēntis aquae as one phrase,
 dependent on *aspergine*]
 5 tot . . . quot as many . . . as
 color colōr-is 3m. colour
 picta [Hold until solved]
 pingō 3 pīnxī pictus I paint
 dissimil-is e diverse
 flōs flōr-is 3m. flower
 niteō 2 I shine
 humus [Remember this is f.]
 simul as soon as
 aspiciō 3/4 aspexī I spot
 plēnōs [Hold until solved: *plēnus* takes
 gen. or abl. when it means 'full of']

referō referre I bring back
 sin-us ūs 4m. fold of garment, bosom
 puellār-is e girlish
 prōlectō 1 I entice away
 inān-is e vain, empty
 10 sentitur [Passive: await subject]
 sēdulitās sēdulitāt-is 3f. earnest
 application, concentration
 uīsam [Refers to Proserpina]
 patru-us 2m. uncle
 uēlōciter swiftly
 rēgna [Hold until solved]
 rēgn-um ī 2n. kingdom, realm
 caeruleīs [Hold until solved]
 caerule-us a um dark
 portat sc. 'her'
 quidem indeed
 iō help!
 cār-us a um dear
 suōs [Hold until solved]
 abscindō 3 abscidī I tear apart
 -que = even
 15 panditur [Passive: await subject]
 pandō 3 I open
 Dīs Dīt-is 3m. Hades, Pluto
 [Dītī = dative of agent, 'by']
 namque for in fact

diurn-us a um of the day [Don't stop
 reading at the line-end]
 lūmen lūmin-is 3n. light
 inassuētī [Hold until solved]
 inassuēt-us a um unaccustomed
 uix with difficulty
 chor-us ī 2m. group
 aequāl-is e of the same age
 cumulō 1 I load
 ministr-a ae 1f. attendant

cumulātae . . . ministrae [In apposition
 to chorus aequālis]
 Persephonē [Vocative]
 dōn-um ī 2n. gift
 sileō 2 I am silent
 ululāt-us ūs 4m. cry, wail
 impleō 2 I fill (x acc. with y abl.)
 20 maestā [Hold until solved]
 maest-us a um sad
 pectus pector-is 3n. breast

English-Latin

Reread the text of 5G(iii) and then translate this passage into Latin:

When the fighting¹ was finished, you would have seen many corpses in the place. It was also possible to see² how much daring¹ there had been in Catiline and in his army. Each man had fallen in the place which he had seized by fighting. Nor had anyone run away. Catiline, who had run into the middle of the enemy for the purpose of dying quickly, was found far from his own men. He still retained the ferocity of expression³ he had had³ when⁴ alive. But the victory was not a joyful event for the Romans. All the best men had died or been wounded seriously. Those who had come out for the purpose of stripping corpses found not only enemies, but also friends and relatives as they turned over the cadavers. There were both joy and sorrow in the camp that night.

¹ Do not use a gerund here, but a noun.

² Use *uidērī poterat* (lit. 'it could be seen').

³ Do not forget to insert a *quī* clause here, though English neglects it.

⁴ Not needed: use adj. alone, agreeing with subject.

Deliciae Latinae

Martial

cūr nōn mitto meōs¹ tibi, Pontiliāne, libellōs?
 nē mihi tū mittās, Pontiliāne, tuōs. (7.3)

libell-us ī 2m. book

Pontiliān-us ī 2m.
 Pontilianus

crās tē uictūrum, crās dīcis, Postume, semper.
 dīc mihi, crās istud, Postume, quando uenit?
 quam longē est crās istud? ubi est? aut unde petendum?
 numquid apud Parthōs Armeniōsque latet?
 iam crās istud habet Priamī uel Nestoris annōs.
 crās istud quantī, dīc mihi, possit emī?
 crās uīuēs: hodiē iam uīuere, Postume, sērum est.
 ille sapit, quisquis, Postume, uīxit heri. (5.58)

5

crās tomorrow	Nestor (Greek
numquid 'can it be that it . . .?'	warrior-king)
Parth-i ōrum 2m. pl. Parthians	[both renowned
Armeni-i ōrum 2m. pl. Armenians	for their longevity!]
lateō 2 I lie hidden	quantī (gen.) 'at what price'
5 Priam-us ī 2m. Priam	emō 3 I buy
(king of Troy)	sērum too late
Nestōr Nestor-is 3m.	sapiō 3/4 I am wise
	quisquis who
	heri yesterday

īnscrīpsit tumulīs septem 𐀀 scelerāta 𐀀 uirōrum
 'sē fēcisse' Chloē. quid pote simplicius? (9.15)

īnscrībō 3 īnscrīpsī I write	scelerāt-us a um infamous	pote (sc. est) 'can be'
upon (+ dat.)	Chloē Chloe (Greek f.	simplex simplic-is
tumul-us ī 2m. tomb	nom.)	straightforward, frank

The Vulgate: sapiēns iūdicium Salamōnis

tunc uēnērunt duae mulierēs meretrīcēs ad rēgem, stetēruntque cōram
 eō. quārum ūna ait, 'obsecrō, mī domine; ego et mulier haec
 habitābāmus in domō ūnā, et peperī apud eam in cubiculō. tertiā autem
 diē postquam ego peperī, peperit et haec; et erāmus simul, nūllusque alius
 nōbīscum in domō, exceptīs nōbīs duābus. mortuus est autem filius
 mulieris huius nocte, dormiēns quippe oppressit eum. et cōnsurgēs
 intempestae noctis silentiō, tulit filium meum dē latere meō ancillae tuae
 dormientis, et collocāuit in sinū suō: suum autem filium, quī erat
 mortuus, posuit in sinū meō. cumque surrēxissem māne ut darem lac filiō
 meō, apparuit mortuus; quem dīligentius intuēns clārā lūce, dēprehendī
 nōn esse meum quod genueram.'

5

10

responditque altera mulier, 'nōn est ita ut dīcis, sed filius tuus mortuus
 est, meus autem uīuit.' ē contrāriō illa dīcēbat, 'mentīris: filius quippe

meus uīuit, et filius tuus mortuus est.' atque in hunc modum
 contendēbant cōram rēge.

15

tunc rēx ait, 'afferte mihi gladium.' cumque attulissent gladium cōram
 rēge, 'dīuidite', inquit, 'īnfantem uīuum in duās partīs, et date dīmidiam
 partem ūnī, et dīmidiam partem alterī.'

dīxit autem mulier, cuius filius erat uīuus, ad rēgem (commōta sunt
 quippe uīscera eius super filiō suō), 'obsecrō, domine, date illī īnfantem
 uīuum, et nōlīte interficere eum.' ē contrāriō illa dīcēbat, 'nec mihi, nec
 tibi sit: sed dīuidātur.' respondit rēx et ait, 'date huic īnfantem uīuum, et
 nōn occīdātur: haec est enim māter eius.' audīuit itaque omnis Israel
 iūdicium quod iūdicāset rēx et timuērunt rēgem, uidentēs sapientiam
 Deī esse in eō ad faciendum iūdicium. (I Kings 3.16ff. (Vulgate: III Kings
 3.16ff), slightly abridged)

cōram (+ abl.) in the presence of	lac lact-is 3n. milk
ait 'said'	10 appāreō 2 I appear
pariō 3/4 peperī I give birth	dīligēns dīligent-is close, careful
cubicul-um ī 2n. bedroom	intueor 2 dep. I examine
simul = together	lūx lūc-is 3f. light
5 excipiō 3/4 excēpī exceptus I except	dēprehendō 3 dēprehendī I realise
quippe since [Tends to come late in the	gignō 3 genuī I bear, produce
clause it controls]	ē contrāriō in reply, contradicting
cōnsurgō 3 I rise, get up	15 contendō 3 I squabble
intempest-us a um middle of, 'dead of'	īnfāns īnfant-is 3m. baby
silenti-um ī 2n. silence	dīmidī-us a um half
ancillae 'that is (of me), your	uīscer-a um 3n. pl. heart, deepest
maidservant'	feelings
sin-us ūs 4m. breast, bosom	super (+ abl.) for, over
surgō 3 surrēxī I get up	Israel (nom.) Israel
māne in the morning	iūdicī-um ī 2n. judgement
	sapienti-a ae 1f. wisdom

SECTION SIX

Section 6A

Running vocabulary for 6A(i)

amor amōr-is 3m. love
[See note for meaning
of pl.]

arāne-a ae 1f. cobweb
cachinn-us ī 2m. laugh
candid-us a um beautiful
Catull-us ī 2m. Catullus
cēnō 1 I have dinner, dine
contrā in return
Cupīdō Cupīdin-is 3m.
Cupid (god of desire)

dōnō 1 I give;
dōnārunt = *dōnāuērunt*
[See Ref. Gr. A4]
ēlegāns ēlegant-is elegant
Fabull-us ī 2m. Fabullus
mer-us a um unmixed,
pure
mī vocative of *meus*
nās-us ī 2m. nose
noster = *mī* (vocative)
olfaciō 3/4 I smell

saccul-us ī 2m. little purse
sal sal-is 3m. salt; wit
seu or *if* [See note]
suāu-is e sweet
-ue or
Venus Vener-is 3f. Venus
(goddess of love)
uenust-us a um charming,
smart [Used as a noun
here]
uīn-um ī 2n. wine
unguent-um ī 2n. perfume

Notes

1. 2 Hold *paucīs* (which is solved by *diēbus*).
1. 8 *plēnus*: placed early to set up a surprise: remember it takes gen.
sacculus: diminutive. See p. 255.
1. 9 The pl. *amōrēs* in Catullus usually means 'girl-friend': but it can mean 'sexual intercourse' or 'passion'; 'the gods of love' or 'an object arousing love' are other suggestions you may like to consider.
1. 10 *seu quid*: after *sī*, *nē* and *num*, *quis* = anyone/anything (see 139¹).
seu = *sīue*. Tr. 'or something that . . .'
1. 11 *meae puellae*: dative, solved by *dōnārunt*.
1. 14 *tōtum*: with *tē*: the joke is held back until the last word.

Learning vocabulary for 6A(i)

Nouns

amor amōr-is love; (pl.)
girl-friend; sexual
intercourse
uīn-um ī 2n. wine

Adjectives

mer-us a um unmixed,
pure

Verbs

dōnō 1 I give

Running vocabulary for 6A(ii)

aestimātiō aestimātiōn-is 3f.
value
Asini-us ī 2m. Asinius
[See note]
bellē nicely, properly
differt-us a um crammed
with (+ gen.)
Fabull-us ī 2m. Fabullus
facēti-ae ārum 1f. pl. wit
fūrt-um ī 2n. theft
hendecasyllab-us ī 2m.
hendecasyllable [the
Greek metre used for
poems of personal
abuse: the metre also of
this poem: see 180]
Hibēr-ī ōrum 2m. pl.
Spaniards
inept-us a um stupid

inuenust-us a um not
smart, charmless
ioc-us ī 2m. joke, joking,
fun
lepōs lepōr-is 3m. charm
linte-um ī 2n. table-napkin
Marrūcīn-us ī 2m.
Marrucinus [See note]
mnēmosyn-um ī 2m.
keepsake (a Greek
word Latinised)
mūnus mūner-is 3n. gift
[*mūnerī* 'as a gift':
predicative dative, see
L(e)2]
mūtō 1 I change
neglegēns neglegent-is
careless [Note the
comparative form]

Pōlliō Pōlliōn-is 3m. (C.
Asinius) Pollio
quamuīs ever such a
quārē therefore
remittō 3 I send back
Saetab-us a um from
Saetabis (a Spanish
town famous for its
linen goods)
sals-us a um witty, smart
sodālīs sodāl-is 3m. friend
sordid-us a um cheap, low,
dirty
sūdārī-um ī 2n.
handkerchief, napkin
talent-um ī 2n. talent [A
huge sum, see note]
Vērāniol-us ī 2m. dear
Veranius
Vērāni-us ī 2m. Veranius

Notes

1. 1 Marrūcīnus may be this man's *cognōmen*, normally the last of three – *praenōmen* (e.g. Gāius), *nōmen* (e.g. Valērius, the family name), *cognōmen* (e.g. Āfricānus, sometimes from some exploit or ancestor's

exploit). Asinius will be the *nōmen*. *manū sinistrā*: the abl. is solved in l. 2 by *ūteris*.

- l. 2 *in iocō atque uīnō* i.e. *in conuīuiō*.
- l. 3 *neglegentiōrum*: comp. adj. used as a noun. Tr. 'rather . . .' (not 'more').
- l. 4 *fugit tē*: lit: 'it escapes you'. Tr. 'you're wrong'.
- l. 7 *talentō*: abl. of the price Pollio would be willing to pay. Tr. 'for a talent'. Reference Grammar **L(f)4(v)**.
- l. 8 *uelit*: 'he would like': potential subjunctive, see **153.2**.
- ll. 8–9 *lepōrum*: hold: it is solved by *differtus* (which also governs *facētiārum*).
- ll. 16–17 *haec amem necesse est: ut* has been left out before the clause *haec amem*. This is common: see **6A(iii)**, ll. 18, 19. Tr. 'that I should . . .' The *ut* in l. 17 means 'as' sc. 'I love'.
- l. 17 *Vērāniolum*: diminutive. See p. 255.

Learning vocabulary for 6A(ii)

Nouns

<i>facēti-ae ārum</i> 1f. pl. wit	<i>lepōs lepōr-is</i> 3m. charm	<i>sodālis sodāl-is</i> 3m. friend
<i>ioc-us</i> ī 2m. joke, joking, fun	<i>mūnus mūner-is</i> 3n. gift; duty	

Verbs

mūtō 1 I change, alter, exchange (trans.)

Others

quārē therefore (lit. (abl.) 'from which thing' = wherefore; as question = why?)

Running vocabulary for 6A(iii)

<i>caue</i> + subjunctive beware of —ing [See note]	<i>dēfess-us a um</i> tired out	<i>hestern-us a um</i> yester- (with <i>diē</i>)
<i>cauētō</i> beware of (+ infin.) [See note]	<i>dēlicāt-us a um</i> sophisticated, decadent, gay	<i>indomit-us a um</i> uncontrollable
<i>conuenit</i> 4 <i>conuēnit</i> it is agreed	<i>dēspuō</i> 3 I spit out, reject completely	<i>iuuat</i> 1 (it) pleases
		<i>laedō</i> 3 I harm, do down

lectul-us ī 2m. bed
[Diminutive of *lectus*: see p. 255]

Licini-us ī 2m. Licinius
[See note]

lūdō 3 *lūsī* I play, have a good time, make jokes

membr-um ī 2n. limb

mūtū-us a um in return, reciprocal [Sc. 'verses']

Nemesis f. (Greek word) Nemesis, goddess of revenge

numer-us ī 2m. metre

ocell-us ī 2m. (l. 10) eye; (l. 19) apple of my eye

ōtiōs-us a um at leisure, enjoying oneself

perspiciō 3/4 I see clearly, understand fully [See note]

poēma n. (Greek word) poem (from the Greek equivalent of *faciō*)

precēs prec-um 3f. pl. prayers

quiēs quiēt-is 3f. sleep, rest

repscō 3 I exact (in return)

sēmimortu-us a um half-dead

simul together (sc. with you)

somn-us ī 2m. sleep

uēmēns = *uehemēns*

uersicul-us ī 2m. scrap of verse, epigram

[Diminutive of *uersus*: see p. 255]

uersor 1 (passive) I toss and turn

Notes

- l. 1 *Licini*: C. Licinius Calvus Macer, orator and poet.
- l. 5 *illōc*: = *illō*. Cf. *hōc* – in earlier Latin both words had the suffix *-ce*.
- l. 6 *per iocum atque uīnum*: cf. *in iocō atque uīno* in **6A(ii)** l. 2.
- l. 9 *ut*: 'with the result that'.
- l. 11 *tōtō*: hold – it is solved by *lectō*, not *furōre*, which is abl. of cause after *indomitus*.
- l. 16 *iūcunde*: the adjective is used in the vocative as a noun; cf. *uenuste noster* in **6A(i)**.
- l. 17 *ex quō perspicerēs*: purpose clause introduced by relative pronoun (see **145.3**).
- ll. 18, 19 *caue sīs* and *caue dēspuās*: 'beware of —ing'. Here you would normally expect *nē* (see **S2(d)** 'verbs of fearing'), but as with *haec amem necesse est* in **6A(ii)** l. 16, the conjunction has been omitted. This is a common idiom with certain words.
- l. 21 *cauētō*: future imperative, i.e. 'beware (in future)'. Reference Grammar **A2** Note 1.

Learning vocabulary for 6A(iii)

Nouns

<i>membr-um</i> ī 2n. limb	<i>quiēs quiēt-is</i> 3f. sleep, rest	<i>somn-us</i> ī 2m. sleep
----------------------------	---------------------------------------	----------------------------

Adjectives

ōtiōs-us a um at leisure

Verbs

<i>iuuat</i> 1 <i>iūuit</i> it pleases	<i>laedō</i> 3 <i>laesī laesus</i> I harm	<i>lūdō</i> 3 <i>lūsī lūsum</i> I play
--	---	--

Running vocabulary for 6A(iv)

<i>aestimō</i> 1 I value [See note]	<i>Lesbi-a</i> ae 1f. Lesbia [See Intro. to 6A]	<i>semel</i> once; <i>cum semel</i> = as soon as
<i>as ass-is</i> 3m. as (a coin of small value) [Tr. 'penny', 'dime'; see note]	<i>mī</i> = <i>mihi</i>	<i>sōlēs</i> (pl. of <i>sōl</i>) = 'light of the sun' 'the sun each day'
<i>bāsi-um</i> ī 2n. kiss	<i>occidō</i> 3 <i>occidī</i> I set (other meanings: I fall, die)	<i>usque</i> continually, without a break
<i>conturbō</i> 1 I confuse; wreck the account of <i>dein</i> = <i>deinde</i>	<i>perpetu-us a um</i> unending	
	<i>rūmor rūmōr-is</i> 3m. (piece of) gossip, unfavourable report	

Notes

1. 2 *rūmōrēs*: acc. – hold until solved (by *aestimēmus*). *seuēriōrum*: cf. *neglegentiōrum* in 6A(ii) 1. 3. Tr. 'rather . . .' (not 'more').
 1. 3 *ūnius* . . . *assis*: genitive of price or value after *aestimēmus*. Tr. 'at one penny/dime'.
 1. 5 *nōbīs*: hold until solved (by *dormienda*).
 1. 10 *fēcerīmus*: future perfect (not perf. subj.), despite the long -i of -īmus.
 1. 13 *tantum* . . . *bāsiōrum*: cf. *satis/nimis* + gen.(31). Tr. 'so many . . .' (lit. 'such and such an amount of . . .').

Learning vocabulary for 6A(iv)

Nouns

rūmor rūmōr-is 3m.
 rumour, (piece of)
 gossip, unfavourable
 report

Verbs

aestimō 1 I value; estimate
occidō 3 *occidī* *occāsum* I set
 (intrans.); (I fall; die)

Others

dein = *deinde* then, next
mī = *mihi* [NB. *mī* is also
 vocative of *meus*]

semel once (*cum semel* = as
 soon as)

usque continually,
 without a break
 (often used with *ad* =
 right up to)

Running vocabulary for 6A(v)

<i>aestuōs-us a um</i> sweltering, hot	<i>Cyrēn-ae ārum</i> 1f. pl. Cyrene (city in N.W. Libya, or the territory of Cyrene)	<i>Libyss-a</i> ae f. adj. African
<i>bāsiātiō bāsiātiōn-is</i> 3f. kiss [See note]	<i>fascinō</i> 1 I bewitch, cast a spell on	<i>lingu-a</i> ae 1f. tongue [See note]
<i>bāsiō</i> 1 I kiss	<i>fūrtiu-us a um</i> stolen	<i>ōrācl-um</i> ī 2n. oracle
<i>bāsi-um</i> ī 2n. kiss	<i>harēn-a</i> ae 1f. sand	<i>pernumerō</i> 1 I tally up
<i>Batt-us</i> ī 2m. Battus (first king of Cyrene)	<i>lāsarpcifer lāsarpcifer-a um</i> silphium-bearing	<i>sepulcr-um</i> ī 2n. tomb
<i>cūriōs-us a um</i> inquisitive, prying		<i>sīdus sīder-is</i> 3n. star
		<i>super</i> more than enough (adv.)
		<i>uēsān-us a um</i> crazed, maddened

Notes

1. 1 *bāsiātiō*: a sort of abstract noun (!) formed from the usual word *bāsiūm*.
 1. 3 *quam magnus*: lit. 'how great . . .', picked up eventually by *tam* . . . *multa* (l. 9) 'so many'.
 1. 5 *inter*: the preposition governs *ōrāclum*: notice the word pattern in ll. 5–6.
 1. 7 *quam* . . . *multa*: lit. 'how many', picked up by *tam* . . . *multa* (l. 9) 'so many'. Cf. *quam magnus* (l. 3).
 1. 8 *fūrtiuōs*: hold until solved (by *amōrēs*).
 1. 9 *bāsia bāsiāre*: cf. *pugnam pugnāre* 'to fight a fight'. Note that here *tē* is the object, *bāsia* is an internal or cognate accusative. Eng. 'to give you . . . kisses'.
 1. 10 *uēsānō*: hold until solved (by *Catullō*).
 1. 11 *possint*: potential subjunctive (see 153.2).
 1. 12 *mala lingua*: another subject of *possint*.

Learning vocabulary for 6A(v)

Nouns

harēn-a ae 1f. sand

lingu-a ae 1f. tongue;
 language

ōrācl(u)-um ī 2n. oracle
sepulcr(h)-um ī 2n. tomb
sīdus sīder-is 3n. star

Others

super (adv.) more than
 enough; above, over;
 (prep. + acc./abl.) over,
 above; (+ abl.) about

Running vocabulary for 6A(vi)

<i>bell-us a um</i> beautiful	<i>inuīt-us a um</i> unwilling	<i>pereō perīre perīi</i> I pass
<i>candid-us a um</i> bright	[See note]	away, die
<i>dēsīnō</i> 3 I cease (from x: infin.) [See note]	<i>iocōs-us a um</i> full of fun	<i>perferō perferre</i> I endure
<i>dēstināt-us a um</i> stubborn, obstinate	<i>labell-um ī</i> 2n. lip	(to the end)
<i>doleō</i> 2 I grieve, feel anguish	<i>mēns ment-is</i> 3f. mind	<i>quondam</i> once
<i>dūcō</i> 3 (l. 2) I consider, think [See note]	<i>mordeō</i> 2 I bite	<i>sector</i> 1 dep. I keep
<i>fulgeō</i> 2 <i>fulsī</i> I shine	<i>nōbīs</i> tr. 'by me' [See note]	pursuing (= <i>sequor</i> + -it-)
<i>ineptiō</i> 4 I play the fool, am silly	<i>nūlla</i> (l. 5) 'no woman'; (l. 14) 'not at all'	<i>sōlēs</i> (pl. of <i>sōl</i>) 'light of the sun'
<i>inpotēns</i> inpotent-is powerless (sc. 'as you are')	<i>obdūrō</i> 1 I am firm, hold out	<i>uae</i> (+ acc.) alas for
	<i>obstināt-us a um</i> resolute, stubborn	<i>uentitō</i> 1 I keep coming (= <i>ueniō</i> + -it-)
	<i>perdō</i> 3 <i>perdidī</i> <i>perditus</i> I lose, destroy	<i>uērē</i> truly
		<i>uolt</i> = <i>uult</i>

Notes

1. 1 *dēsīnās*: jussive subjunctive (see 152).
1. 2 *quod*: tr. 'that which', picked up by *perditum*. *dūcās*: jussive subjunctive, cf. *dēsīnās* (see 152).
1. 5 *nōbīs*: pl. for s. is very common in poetry, especially with personal pronouns. The dative expresses the agent (usually expressed by *ā*/ *ab* + abl.).
1. 6 *illa*: n. pl. 'those things (sc. I am reflecting on)'. Note *cum* is postponed, though it introduces the clause. *iocōsa* is used as a noun.
1. 10 *quae fugit*: the clause is introduced by the next word *sectāre*: sc. *eam* to make sense of it.
1. 13 *inuītam*: agrees with *tē*: sc. 'since you are . . .'
1. 18 *cūr*: sympathetic dative (!); see 88.2.

Learning vocabulary for 6A(vi)

Adjectives

<i>candid-us a um</i> white; bright, beautiful	<i>inuīt-us a um</i> unwilling
--	--------------------------------

Verbs

<i>doleō</i> 2 I suffer pain, grieve	<i>obdūrō</i> 1 I am firm, hold out, persist	<i>perferō perferre pertulī</i>
<i>dūcō</i> 3 <i>dūxī</i> <i>ductus</i> I think, consider (lead)	<i>pereō perīre perīi peritum</i> I perish, die; (<i>perīi</i> I am lost)	<i>perlātus</i> I endure (to the end); complete; carry to; announce
<i>fulgeō</i> 2 <i>fulsī</i> I shine		

Running vocabulary for 6A(vii)

<i>aequor aequor-is</i> 3n. l. 8 plain; l. 11 sea	<i>Hyrkān-ī ōrum</i> 2m. pl. the Hyrcani (a people dwelling to the S.E. of the Caspian sea)	<i>rumpō</i> 3 I burst
<i>Alpēs Alp-ium</i> 3f. pl. Alps	<i>identidem</i> again and again	<i>Sag-ae ārum</i> 1m. pl. the Sacae (a Scythian people: dwelling to the N.E. of Rome's borders)
<i>alt-us a um</i> high	<i>ilia il-ium</i> 3n. pl. groin, private parts	<i>sagittifer sagittifer-a um</i> arrow-bearing
<i>Arabs Arab-is</i> 3m. Arab (Greek acc. pl. <i>Arabas</i>)	<i>Ind-ī ōrum</i> 2m. pl. the Indians	<i>septemgemin-us a um</i> sevenfold (i.e. with seven mouths)
<i>arātr-um ī</i> 2n. plough	<i>moech-us ī</i> 2m. adulterer	<i>seu</i> or (if) [= <i>sīue</i> : see note on structure]
<i>Aurēli-us ī</i> 2m. Aurelius	<i>moll-is e</i> soft, luxurious, effeminate	<i>simul</i> together
<i>Britann-ī ōrum</i> 2m. pl. Britons	<i>moniment-um ī</i> 2n. testimonial	<i>sīue . . . sīue (seu)</i> whether . . . or [See note on structure]
<i>caelitēs caelit-um</i> 3m. pl. gods (lit. 'dwellers in heaven')	<i>Nīl-us ī</i> 2m. the River Nile	<i>trāns</i> (+ acc.) across
<i>Caesar Caesar-is</i> 3m. (C. Julius) Caesar [See note]	<i>Parth-ī ōrum</i> 2m. pl. the Parthians (a people on Rome's eastern boundaries)	<i>tundō</i> 3 I beat, pound
<i>colōrō</i> 1 I dye, stain [See note]	<i>penetrō</i> 1 I make my way, penetrate as far as	<i>ualeō</i> 2 lit. 'I am well' [See note]
<i>complector</i> 3 dep. <i>complexus</i> I embrace	<i>praetereō praeterīre</i> I pass by [See note]	<i>-ue</i> (added to the end of a word) or
<i>culp-a ae</i> 1f. fault (often used of sexual misconduct)	<i>prāt-um ī</i> 2n. meadow, field	<i>uērē</i> truly
<i>dict-um ī</i> 2n. word	<i>quicumque quaecumque quodcumque</i> whoever, whatever	<i>uīsō</i> 3 I go and look at, view, visit
<i>Eō-us a um</i> Eastern, oriental	<i>resonō</i> 1 I re-echo	<i>ultim-us a um</i> (ll. 11–12) furthest; (l. 23) the edge of
<i>extrēm-us a um</i> furthest	<i>respectō</i> 1 I look for, count on	<i>und-a ae</i> 1f. water, wave
<i>flōs flōr-is</i> 3m. flower	<i>Rhēn-us ī</i> 2m. the River Rhine [See note]	<i>ut</i> (l. 3, + indic.) where
<i>Fūri-us ī</i> 2m. Furius		
<i>Gallic-us a um</i> Gallic, of Gaul		
<i>gradior</i> 3/4 dep. I go		
<i>horribil-is e</i> terrible, dreadful [See note]		

Notes

Structure: in l. 1, Furius and Aurelius are addressed as friends of Catullus, and in ll. 2–12, their friendship is shown by the number of places they are prepared to go to with Catullus – whether (*sīue*) Catullus will go to x or (*sīue/seu*) y or (*sīue*) z. Ll. 13–14 summarise the past 12 lines, describing Furius and Aurelius as *parātī* (ready) to do all this (*omnia haec* (13)). At 15, we find out what they should in fact do: *nūntiāte* ‘give a message’ to Lesbia. Ll. 17–24 describe the content of the message, in subjunctives (*uīuat . . . ualeat . . . respectet*) – ‘let her . . .’

- l. 2 *extrēmōs*: hold until solved (by *Indōs*).
 ll. 3–4 *lītus*: subject of the *ut* clause. Take *longē* closely with *resonante* and hold *longē resonante Eōā* until solved (by *undā*: the function of the abl. phrase is revealed by the passive form of *tunditur*). NB. Here *ut* means ‘where’.
 ll. 7–8 *quae*: n. pl. – hold until solved (by *aequora*: ‘the plains which . . .’ obj. of *colōrat*). *colōrat*: possibly refers to the silt left by the Nile after its annual flood.
 l. 9 *altās*: hold until solved (by *Alpēs*).
 ll. 10–12 Caesar was engaged in the conquest of Gaul from 58–49. In 55 he crossed the Rhine and made an expedition into Germany. In the same year came the first of his two forays across the Channel to Britain. The words in l. 11–12 are in apposition to *monimenta*. The *horribile aequor* may refer to the English Channel (which caused Caesar many problems). But it is a scholar’s correction, not the version preserved by the MSS.
 l. 17 *cum suīs*: hold until solved (by *moechīs*). *ualeat*: a 3rd. person form of *ualē* ‘farewell’ (but see also the basic meaning of the verb).
 l. 18 *trecentōs*: agreeing with *quōs* – ‘300 of them’ (!) – held back for effect.
 l. 21 *meum*: hold until solved (by *amōrem*)
 ll. 23–4 The word-order is complex: hold *praetereunte* until solved by *arātrō* – the abl. is not absolute, but instrumental after the passive verb *tāctus . . . est*. As often, *postquam*, which introduces the clause, is postponed. The subject is *flōs*.

Learning vocabulary for 6A(vii)

Nouns

aequor aequor-is 3n. plain; sea
culp-a ae 1f. fault; blame (often of sexual misconduct)

Adjectives

alt-us a um high; deep
extrēm-us a um furthest

quicumque quaecumque
quodcumque whoever, whatever [Declines like *quī* 106 + *cumque*]

ultim-us a um furthest; last; greatest

Verbs

gradior 3/4 dep. *gressus* I
 step, walk, go (cf. compounds in *-gredior*)

praetereō praeterīre praeterī
praeteritus I pass by; neglect, omit

ualeō 2 I am strong; am well; am powerful; am able (cf. *ualē* ‘Farewell!’)

Others

simul together (at the same time)

sīue (seu) . . . sīue (seu)
 whether . . . or
trāns (+ acc.) across

-ue (added on to the end of a word: cf. *-ne* and *-que*) or

180 Hendecasyllables (= ‘eleven syllables’)

The first five poems of Catullus which you have read make use of the following new metrical elements:

$\underline{\cup} = \text{anceps}$ (‘doubtful’, ‘two-edged’)
 $-\cup\cup-\cup- = \text{choriambocretic}$ (*choriamb* $-\cup\cup-$ blended together with *cretic* $-\cup-$)
 $\cup-\underline{\cup} = \text{bacchiac}$

The poems scan as follows:

$\underline{\cup}\underline{\cup}|- \cup\cup-\cup-| \cup-\underline{\cup}$

i.e. two *anceps*, *choriambocretic*, *bacchiac*, e.g.

$\bar{c}\bar{e}\bar{n}\bar{a}\bar{b}\bar{i}\bar{s} \quad \bar{b}\bar{e}\bar{n}\bar{e} \quad \bar{m}\bar{i} \quad \bar{F}\bar{a}\bar{b}\bar{u}\bar{l}\bar{l}[e] \quad \bar{a}\bar{p}\bar{u}\bar{d} \quad \bar{m}\bar{e}$

Exercise

Using the above scheme, scan any one of the five poems in this metre, adding the correct word-stress (see rule, p. xv). Then read it aloud, thinking through the meaning as you read.

NB. Remember to check for elision.

181 *Scazon* ('limping iambics')

Poem 6A(vi) makes use of the following metrical elements:

◡ = *anceps* (doubtful syllable)
 – ◡ – = *cretic*

(The combination *anceps* + *cretic* is known as an iambic 'measure'.) The poem scans as follows:

◡ – ◡ – | ◡ – ◡ – | ◡ – – ◡

i.e. two iambic measures + ◡ – – ◡, e.g.

miser Catulle dēsinās ineptīre

The metre is called 'limping iambics' because it seems to limp to a close. The sprightly iambics of the first two measures are rounded off not by a third, but by the 'limping' ◡ – – ◡.

Exercise

Using the above scheme, scan 6A(vi), adding the correct word stress (see rule, p. xv). Then read it aloud, thinking through the meaning as you read.

NB. Remember to check for elision.

182 *Sapphics*

Poem 6A(vii) is made up of stanzas in *Sapphic* metre, so named after the seventh-century Greek poetess from Lesbos, Sappho, who specialised in them. *Sapphics* use the following metrical elements, all of which you have already met:

– ◡ – = *cretic*
 ◡ = *anceps* (doubtful syllable)
 – ◡ ◡ – ◡ – = *choriambocretic* (see 180)
 – ◡ ◡ – = *choriamb*

Sapphics scan as follows:

First three lines: – ◡ – | ◡ | – ◡ ◡ – ◡ – | ◡
 Last line: – ◡ ◡ – | ◡

i.e. *cretic*, *anceps*, *choriambocretic*, *anceps* (× 3), *choriamb*, *anceps*. E.g.

Fūr[ī] et Aurēlī comītēs Catullī . . .
tunditur undā

Exercise

Using the above scheme, scan poem 6A(vii), adding the correct word-stress (see rule, p. xv). Then read it aloud, thinking through the meaning as you read.

NB. Remember to check for elision.

Section 6B

Running vocabulary for 6B(i)

A.V.C. = *ab urbe conditā*

'from the city having
 been founded', 'from
 the city's foundation'

adroganti-a ae 1f. conceit,
 presumption

animaduertō 3 I observe,
 take note of

argūt-us a um verbose,
 wordy

certior fīō I am informed
 (lit. 'I am made more
 certain')

certiōrem faciō I inform x
 (acc.) (lit. 'make x
 more certain')

commod-us a um
 satisfactory, convenient

condemnō 1 I condemn x
 (acc.) for y (gen.)

cūriōs-us a um curious
dēlectō 1 I please

dēlectārit = *dēlectāuerit*

dēlēgō 1 I entrust

dēprecor 1 dep. I pray
 earnestly

diligēns diligent-is careful

ēdict-um ī 2n. edict

excūsō 1 I excuse

exhibeō 2 I cause

exīstimātiō *exīstimātiōn-is*
 3f. view

expectātiō *expectātiōn-is*
 3f. expectation

fābul-a ae 1f. story

forte by chance, perchance

impēns-a ae 1f. expense

memori-a ae 1f.

remembering, memory

molesti-a ae 1f. annoyance

nimum = *nimis*

omnīnō altogether,

completely

operāri-us ī 2m. hireling

peregrīnō 1 I am abroad,
 travel

perscribō 3 *perscripsi*

perscriptus I write in
 detail

quem ad modum how

quīn 'that . . . not'

S. = *salūtem dicit* 'greet's'
 (+ dat.)

sēdulitās *sēdulitāt-is* 3f.

zeal, earnestness

senātūs cōsult-um ī 2n.

decree of the senate

suāu-is e delightful, sweet,

pleasant

tametsī however, though

uolūmen *uolūmin-is* 3n.

volume (i.e. papyrus
 roll)

urbān-us a um of the city,
 city

Running vocabulary for 6B(iii)

<i>abs = ab</i>	<i>gladiātor gladiātōr-is</i> 3m.	<i>praesēns praesent-is</i> present
<i>aedifici-um</i> ī 2n. building	gladiator	<i>praeteritus a um</i> past (perf.
<i>complector</i> 1 dep. I	<i>habētō</i> 'be sure' [See note]	part. pass. of <i>praetereō</i>)
embrace	<i>M. = Mārcus (Mārcō</i> with	<i>PRŌCŌS. = prōcōsul</i>
<i>complūr-ēs a</i> several	<i>Caeliō</i>)	<i>prōcōsul-is</i> 3m.
<i>compositiō compositiōn-is</i> 3f.	<i>mandō</i> 1 I order (x dat.)	proconsul (i.e.
pairing, match	to (<i>ut</i> + subj.)	governor of a
<i>cūrō</i> 1 I want [See note]	<i>nē . . . quidem</i> not even	province)
<i>diffērō differe distulī dīlātus</i>	(emphasising the word	<i>prōspiciō</i> 3/4 I look
I put off, postpone	enclosed)	forward, see ahead
<i>ēgregi-us a um</i>	<i>pertineō</i> 2 I affect, relate	<i>quāl-is e</i> what sort of
outstanding, excellent	to (<i>ad</i> + acc.)	<i>tantum</i> (just) so much
	<i>poster-um</i> ī 2n. future	<i>uadimōni-um</i> ī 2n. court
		appearance (lit. 'bail')

Notes

- ll. 27–8 *ea quae . . . audeat*: generic subjunctive (see 140.1).
 l. 28 (*cūrō*) . . . *scribās*: 'you to write' – cf. *caue* + subj. in 6A(iii) 18, 19 and *fac* + subj. in 6B(ii) 17. *illa* is the object of *scribās*.
 l. 32 *ut*: purpose, solved (eventually) by *scīre possim*.
 l. 37 *habētō*: future imperative, cf. *cauētō* in 6A(iii). The force may not be strongly future, since this is a common form with *habeō*. See Reference Grammar A2 Note 1.
 ll. 39–40 *īdem . . . quī*: 'the same people . . . as'.

Learning vocabulary for 6B(iii)

Adjectives

<i>complūr-ēs a</i> several	<i>ēgregi-us a um</i>	<i>praesēns praesent-is</i> present
	outstanding, excellent	<i>quāl-is e</i> what sort of

Verbs

<i>complector</i> 3 dep.	<i>mandō</i> 1 I order (x (dat.)
<i>complexus</i> I embrace	to Y (<i>ut</i> + subj.));
	(entrust X (acc.) to Y
	(dat.))

Others

nē . . . quidem not even
 (emphasising the word
 enclosed)

Running vocabulary for 6B(iv)

<i>Āfricān-us a um</i> African	<i>dēportō</i> 1 I transport	<i>Patisc-us</i> ī 2m. Patiscus, a
<i>aiō</i> irr. I say	<i>ferē</i> almost	Roman businessman in
<i>alō</i> 3 I tend, feed	<i>istō</i> to the place where	Asia
<i>Cibyrāt-a ae</i> from Cibyra	you are	<i>seorsus</i> apart
[See map]	<i>labōrō</i> 1 I am concerned	<i>simulatque</i> as soon as
<i>collēg-a ae</i> 1m. colleague	with	
<i>Cūriō Cūriōn-is</i> 3m. C.	<i>Pamphylī-a ae</i> 1f.	
Scribonius Curio:	Pamphylia [See map]	
tribune in 50, friend	<i>panthēr-a ae</i> 1f. panther	
and correspondent of		
Cicero		

Notes

- l. 42 *multīs partibus*: 'by many parts' i.e. 'many times' (abl. of measure of difference, 100B.5).
 l. 44 *Cibyrātās*: understand *panthērās*.
 l. 46 *collēgā*: M. Octavius was the other curule aedile with Curio.
 l. 47 *paranda*: understand *esse. amābō tē*: 'please' (lit. 'I shall love you').
imperā tibi hoc: hoc is direct object (in the place usually taken by *ut* + subj.). *nūlla tua*: hold until solved (by *cūra*).
 l. 49 *habēs eōs*: Caelius had sent some men to deal with a financial transaction in the vicinity. *quī alant . . . dēportent*: subjunctive, to indicate purpose (see 145³).
 l. 50 *missūrum*: sc. *esse*.

Learning vocabulary for 6B(iv)

Nouns

collēg-a ae 1m. colleague

Verbs

aiō irr. I say
alō 3 *aluī altus* or *alitus* I
 feed, nourish, rear;
 support; strengthen

Others

ferē almost
simulatque as soon as (also
simulac or *simul*)

Running vocabulary for 6B(v)

<i>aedil-is aedil-is</i> 3m. aedile [See explanation in Text 6B(iii)]	<i>dēcēdō</i> 3 I leave <i>fit</i> : impersonal 'it is being done' (i.e. 'things are being done')	<i>paucitās paucitāt-is</i> 3f. paucity, lack
<i>agitur</i> impersonal 'it is being done' (i.e. 'things are being done')	<i>mandāt-us ūs</i> 4m. order	<i>quisquis quicquid</i> whoever, whatever
<i>Cāri-a</i> ae 1f. Caria [See map]	<i>mīr-us a um</i> amazing	<i>sēdulō</i> assiduously
<i>cognōrō</i> = <i>cognōuerō</i>	<i>panthēr-a</i> ae 1f. panther	<i>stat-us ūs</i> 4m. position
<i>curul-is e curule</i>	<i>Patisc-us ī</i> 2m. Patiscus (see previous letter)	<i>ualdē</i> very much, strongly
		<i>uēnor</i> 1 dep. I hunt

Notes

- l. 52 *ualdē*: hold – it qualifies *querī*.
 l. 53 *nihil cuiquam insidiarum*: tr. 'no (of) ambushes for anyone'.
 l. 56 *esset*: lit. 'was going to be'. Cicero writes as if the time of the letter were when Caelius was actually reading it. Hence *nesciēbāmus* and *esset*. Tr. 'we (=I) don't know, what it is (going to be)'.
 ll. 57–8 *tū uelim . . . perscribās*: 'I would like you to write'; *uelim* is potential subjunctive (see 153.2). For *perscribās*, subjunctive without a conjunction, cf. *caue* + subj. 6B(ii) ll. 18 and 19, *fac* + subj. 6B(ii) l. 17 and *cūrō* + subj. 6B(iii) l. 28.

Learning vocabulary for 6B(v)

Adjectives

<i>mīr-us a um</i> amazing, wonderful	<i>quisquis quicquid</i> whoever, whatever (declines like <i>quis</i> + <i>quis</i> , but it is not found in all forms)
--	--

Others

ualdē very much, strongly

Running vocabulary for 6B(vi)

<i>aliter</i> for a second time	<i>discordi-a</i> ae 1f. strife, quarrel	<i>pars part-is</i> 3f. side (part)
<i>alter uter</i> one or the other	<i>dubitō</i> 1 I doubt	<i>Parthic-us a um</i> Parthian
<i>appāreō</i> 2 I appear	<i>ēligō</i> 3 I choose	<i>perturbō</i> 1 I disturb
C. = <i>Gāi-um</i> : <i>Gāi-us ī</i> 2m. Gaius	<i>eō</i> [See note on l. 60]	<i>potior</i> 4 dep. I control (+ gen.)
<i>clār-us a um</i> clear	<i>ērumpō</i> 3 I break out (with <i>sē</i>)	<i>prōposit-um ī</i> 2n. question
<i>condiciō condiciōn-is</i> 3f. condition, term	Gn. (l. 62) = <i>Gnaeus ī</i> 2m. Gnaeus; (l. 69) = <i>Gnaeum</i>	<i>quō</i> (l. 60) [See note]
<i>condiciōnem ferre</i> to propose a condition	<i>impendeō</i> 2 I impend, threaten, am at hand	<i>recēdō</i> 3 <i>recessī</i> I leave (ab + abl.)
<i>cōnferō cōnferre</i> I compare	<i>inuidiōs-us a um</i> odious	<i>recidō</i> 3 I come to, issue in (ad + acc.)
<i>coniūctiō coniūctiōn-is</i> 3f. union	<i>obtrectātiō obtrectātiōn-is</i> 3f. backbiting	<i>spati-um ī</i> 2n. time
<i>contentiō contentiōn-is</i> 3f. struggle	<i>occult-us a um</i> secret, covert	<i>spectācul-um ī</i> 2n. show
<i>dēliberātiō dēliberātiōn-is</i> 3f. question		<i>summ-a</i> ae 1f. total; <i>ad summam</i> to sum up
<i>dimicō</i> 1 I fight		<i>timor timōr-is</i> 3m. fear <i>uter</i> see <i>alter</i>

Notes

- l. 59 *summā*: i.e. 'high politics'. *in annum*: 'in a year's time'.
 l. 60 *quō* (+ comp.) . . . *eō* (+ comp.): 'the . . . —er, the . . . —er' (lit. 'by how much the more . . . by so much the more'). (Watch for comparative adverbs in *-ius*.)
 l. 64 *Caesarī persuāsum est*: impersonal passive: lit. 'it has been persuaded to Caesar' i.e. 'Caesar has been persuaded' (see 155).
 l. 65 *fert*: subject is Caesar.
 l. 66 *occultam*: hold until solved (by *obtrectātiōnem*).
 l. 67 *capiam*: the subjunctive is deliberative (indirect); see 152¹.
 l. 69 *quīque*: 'and those who' (i.e. senators and men of equestrian rank – rich and respectable).
 l. 70 *habitūrum*: understand *esse*. *accessūrōs*: understand *esse*.
 ll. 70–1 *quī . . . uīuant*: subjunctive in indirect speech, but probably generic. *exercitum . . . esse*: still in indirect statement after *uideō*.
 ll. 74–5 *sī . . . nōn eat*: note mood of verb – the main clause, unusually, has an indicative verb, *uideō*.
 ll. 75–6 *sī . . . posset*: see note on ll. 74–5. The main verb is *parābat* – see next note for its tense.
 l. 77 *parābat*: Caelius writes as if the time of the letter were when Cicero was actually reading it. See previous letter; tr. 'is preparing'. This usage is known as 'epistolary tense'.

Learning vocabulary for 6B(vi)

Nouns

condiciō condiciōn-is 3f.
condition, term;
condiciōnem ferre to
make terms

discordi-a ae 1f. strife,
quarrel

pars part-is 3f. side; (part)
spati-um ī 2n. space; time
timor timōr-is 3m. fear

Adjectives

clār-us a um clear (famous,
well-known)

Verbs

dīmīcō 1 I fight

dubitō 1 I doubt; hesitate
(+ infin.)

potior 4 dep. I control
(+ gen.)

Others

quō + comparative . . .
eō + comparative
'the more . . . the
more . . .'

Running vocabulary for 6B(vii)

aduent-us ūs 4m. arrival
aduērsāri-us ī 2m. enemy
amīciti-a ae 1f. friendship
atrōx atrōc-is fierce,
unyielding
cēnseō 2 I propose; think
[See note]
cognōrim = cognouerim
cōsulō 3 I take measures
contendō 3 *contendī* 1 strive
for
dēcernō 3 I decide
dēmīttō 3 I let fall, cast
down
dēprecātiō dēprecātiōn-is 3f.
asking for pardon
dēspērāt-us a um hopeless
ēligō 3 I choose
errō 1 I am wrong

etiam atque etiam again
and again
ēuertō 3 I upset, overturn
exanimāt-us a um upset
exit-us ūs 4m. way out
expōnō 3 *exposuī* I relate
funditus utterly
hauē greetings, hello
Hispani-a ae 1f. Spain
(there were two
provinces)
iactātiō iactātiōn-is 3f.
vanity
ilicō at once
incitō 1 I rouse
incolumitās incolumitāt-is
3f. safety
īsolenti-a ae 1f. insolence

intercessiō intercessiōn-is 3f.
veto
medius fidius I call heaven
to witness; so help me
God
meherculēs by Hercules
nōn nūll-ī ae a some
optimātēs optimāt-ium 3m.
pl. optimates
pariō 3/4 *peperī partus* I
obtain
percurrō 3 *percurrī* I run
along
praedicō 3 *praedixī* I
foretell, tell in advance
prūdēns prūdēt-is
foreseeing
quod sī but if
remaneo 2 I remain

saltem at least
sapienter wisely
scītur: impersonal passive
'it is known'

significō 1 I make clear to
temere casually,
thoughtlessly
testificor 1 dep. I call to
witness

tōtum (adv.) completely
uacu-us a um free (from)
(*ā* + abl.)
ubicumque wherever

Notes

- l. 79 *scrīpsī*: epistolary perfect 'I am writing'.
- l. 81 *gravius*: tr. 'too serious'.
- ll. 83–4 *conuēnerim* . . . *cognōrim*: subjunctives in a subordinate clause in indirect speech.
- l. 87 *hīs intercessiōnibus*: vetoes moved by the tribune L. Metellus to obstruct Caesar.
- ll. 89–90 *quid* . . . *agāmus*: i.e. whether we win there or not.
- l. 90 *istī*: i.e. Pompey's supporters ('those people of yours').
- l. 101 *eō* . . . *unde*: 'to that point . . . from where'.
- l. 102 *optimātium*: the supporters of the Senate.
- l. 103 *ēligās cēnseō*: 'I propose that you should . . .' For subjunctive without conjunction, cf. 6A(iii) ll. 18, 19, (*caue*), 6B(ii) l. 17 (*fac*), 6B(iii) l. 28 (*cūrō*) and 6B(v) ll. 57–8 (*uelim*).

Learning vocabulary for 6B(vii)

Nouns

amīciti-a ae 1f. friendship

Adjectives

atrōx atrōc-is fierce,
unyielding

nōn nūll-ī ae a some (lit.
'not none' – often
written as one word)

uacu-us a um empty; free
(from) (+ abl. or
ā + abl.)

Verbs

errō 1 I am wrong;
wander

pariō 3/4 *peperī partus* I
bring forth, bear,
produce; obtain,
acquire

Others

etiam atque etiam again
and again

quod sī but if
saltem at least

ubicumque wherever

Running vocabulary for 6B(viii)

<i>acerbitās acerbitāt-is</i> 3f. anguish, affliction, bitterness	<i>Hispaniēns-is</i> e Spanish, in Spain	<i>prīuat-us a um</i> private
<i>adulēscēns adulēscēt-is</i> 3m. youth	<i>Hortēnsi-us</i> ī 2m. Q Hortensius Hortalus, consul in 69; Rome's leading forensic orator before Cicero; they were not always on the best of terms	<i>profectō</i> undoubtedly, assuredly
<i>aliquandō</i> at some time		Q. = <i>Quīntum</i> : <i>Quīnt-us</i> ī 2m. Quintus
<i>astūtē</i> craftily, cunningly		<i>quandō</i> at any time
<i>cās-us ūs</i> 4m. outcome		<i>quidem</i> indeed
<i>cīuīl-is</i> e civil [See note]		<i>redimō</i> 3 <i>redēmī</i> I buy off
<i>cōstanti-a</i> ae 1f. constancy, steadfastness	<i>imitor</i> 1 dep. I imitate	x (acc.) from y (ā + abl.)
<i>dēspērātiō dēspērātiōn-is</i> 3f. hopelessness, despair	<i>impendēō</i> 2 I threaten (+ dat.)	<i>sīn</i> but if
<i>dēspērō</i> 1 I lose hope of	<i>incommod-um</i> ī 2n. inconvenience, misfortune	<i>solitūdō solitūdīn-is</i> 3f. deserted place
<i>domestic-us a um</i> domestic, personal	<i>intersum interesse interfui</i> I take part in (+ dat.) [See note]	<i>temere</i> rashly, thoughtlessly
<i>etenim</i> for; and indeed	<i>laus laud-is</i> 3f. praise	<i>terreō</i> 2 I make afraid, frighten
<i>exit-us ūs</i> 4m. outcome	<i>libentissimē</i> very gladly	<i>tribuō</i> 3 I put down [See note]
<i>extrēm-us a um</i> final, last (i.e. word)	<i>miseri-a</i> ae 1f. misery	<i>tueor</i> 2 dep. I look after, stand by
<i>familiāris familiār-is</i> 3m. friend	<i>orbis terr-ārum orb-is terr- ārum</i> 3m. the world (lit. 'the circle of the lands')	<i>turbulenter</i> violently, seditiously
<i>fidēs fidē-ī</i> 5f. loyalty, honour	<i>perturbātiō perturbātiōn-is</i> 3f. disturbance	<i>uāticinor</i> 1 dep. I prophesy; rave, talk wildly
<i>fid-us a um</i> faithful, loyal		<i>uiti-um</i> ī 2n. defect, fault
<i>fortasse</i> perhaps		
<i>glōrior</i> 1 dep. I boast		

Notes

1. 107 *uelim* + subj: 'I would like (you to . . .)'. See 1. 125 (and cf. 6A(iii) ll. 18, 19 (*caue*), 6B(ii) 1. 17 (*fac*), 6B(iii) 1. 28 (*cūrō*), 6B(v) ll. 57–8 (*uelim*), 6B(vii) 1. 103 (*cēnsēō*)).
1. 109 *tam* . . . *quam*: 'so much . . . as' (see 179.2). *arma cīuīlia* = *bellum cīuīle* (ll. 111–12). *huius mē cōstantiae*: *huius* . . . *cōstantiae* gen. and *mē* acc. with *paeniteat* '(of) this . . . I . . . regret'.
1. 112 *interfuisset*: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect speech (see 142). *hōc* . . . *quod*: 'in this respect . . . that'. *illī*: 'in his case'. *tribuēbatur*: impersonal – the subject is 'Hortensius' refusal to take part in the Civil War'.
1. 114 *ad timōrem*: i.e. 'to make me afraid'.
- ll. 115–16 *omnibus*: dat. – hold until solved (by *impendēre*).

1. 116 *hāc* . . . *perturbātiōne*: locative–temporal abl. *uideātur*: generic subjunctive (see 140.1). *quam*: i.e. *acerbitātem*.
1. 117 *meīs prīuātīs et domesticīs incommodīs*: . . . 'at the cost of . . .' abl. of price. Cf. *talentō*, 6A(ii) 1. 7.
1. 125 *uelim* + subj: 'I would like (it to)'. See 1. 107 and note.
1. 127 *quibuscumque*: hold until solved (by *in terrīs*).

Learning vocabulary for 6B(viii)

Nouns

<i>adulēscēns adulēscēt-is</i> 3m. youth	<i>cās-us ūs</i> 4m. outcome; event, occurrence; disaster, death; <i>cāsū</i> by accident, by chance	<i>fidēs fidē-ī</i> 5f. loyalty, honour; trust, faith; promise; protection
---	---	--

Adjectives

fid-us a um faithful, loyal

Verbs

<i>imitor</i> 1 dep. I imitate	<i>terreō</i> 2 I frighten	<i>tueor</i> 2 dep. I look after, protect; look at
--------------------------------	----------------------------	---

Others

<i>aliquandō</i> at some time	<i>quidem</i> indeed (places emphasis on the preceding word)	<i>sīn</i> but if
<i>fortasse</i> perhaps		

Section 6C

Running vocabulary for 6C(i)

<i>abūtor</i> 3 I misuse (+ abl.)	<i>ēuocāt-us</i> ī 2m. recalled veteran	<i>reciperō</i> 1 I regain, recover
<i>alteruter alterutr-a um</i> one or the other (declines like <i>alter</i>)	<i>exposcō</i> 3 I entreat	<i>respicō</i> 3/4 I turn my gaze upon, look round at
<i>ārdeō</i> 2 I burn (intrans.)	<i>faciō ut</i> (+ subj.) I bring it about that	<i>singulār-is</i> e outstanding, remarkable
<i>commemorō</i> 1 I mention, recall	<i>prīuō</i> 1 I deprive (x acc. of y abl.)	<i>supersum superesse</i> I am left, remain
<i>Crāstin-us</i> ī 2m. Crastinus	<i>prōcurrō</i> 3 <i>prōcucurrī</i> I run forward, advance	<i>tub-a</i> ae 1f. trumpet

Notes

- l. 1 Caesar is subject throughout the 1st paragraph.
 l. 2 *testibus*: 'as witnesses' (predicative with *militibus*).
 ll. 8–9 *quam* . . . : hold until picked up (by *operam*).
 ll. 11–12 *uīuō mihi aut mortuō*: solved by *grātiās agās*.

Learning vocabulary for 6C(i)

Verbs

<i>ardeō</i> 2 <i>arsī</i> <i>arsūrus</i> I burn; am in love	<i>prōcurrō</i> 3 <i>prōcucurrī</i> <i>prōcursum</i> I run forward, advance	<i>respi-ciō</i> 3/4 <i>respexī</i> <i>respectus</i> I look round (back) at, turn my gaze upon; reflect upon; care for
<i>faciō</i> ut + subj. I bring it about that . . . (cf. <i>efficiō/perficiō</i> ut)		

Running vocabulary for 6C(ii)

<i>adorior</i> 4 dep. <i>adortus</i> I attack	<i>exanimō</i> 1 I deprive of breath, exhaust	<i>intermittō</i> 3 <i>intermisi</i> <i>intermissus</i> I leave, let pass
<i>alacritās</i> <i>alacritāt-is</i> 3f. enthusiasm, liveliness	<i>excēdō</i> 3 I depart, leave (+ abl. of separation 'from')	<i>lassitūdō</i> <i>lassitūdin-is</i> 3f. weariness
<i>animum aduertō</i> = <i>animaduertō</i>	<i>excipiō</i> 3/4 <i>excēpī</i> I sustain, receive	<i>mittō</i> 3 <i>misi</i> <i>missus</i> I throw <i>nātūrālīter</i> by nature naturally
<i>appropinquō</i> 1 I approach	<i>excurs-us</i> <i>ūs</i> 4m. attack	<i>perīt-us</i> <i>a um</i> skilled
<i>concur-s</i> <i>us</i> 4m. attack, engagement	<i>exercitō</i> 1 I train	<i>Pompēiān-i</i> <i>ōrum</i> 2m. pl. the followers of Pompey
<i>cōnficiō</i> 3/4 <i>cōnfēcī</i> <i>cōnfectus</i> I weaken	<i>explicō</i> 1 I unfold; <i>mē</i> <i>explicō</i> I deploy	<i>praedicō</i> 3 <i>praedixī</i> I tell x (dat.) beforehand
<i>cōnsistō</i> 3 <i>cōnstiitī</i> I stop, stand my ground	<i>funditor funditōr-is</i> 3m. slinger	<i>profundō</i> 3 <i>profūdī</i> I pour out; <i>sē profundere</i> to pour forth
<i>cōnsūmō</i> 3 <i>cōnsūmpsī</i> <i>cōnsūptus</i> I use up	<i>incitō</i> 1 I set in motion; (passive) I rush	<i>prōtinus</i> at once
<i>conuertor</i> 3 dep. <i>conuersus</i> I turn round	<i>incitātiō</i> <i>incitātiōn-is</i> 3f. energy	<i>renouō</i> 1 I renew, start again
<i>curs-us</i> <i>ūs</i> 4m. distance to run; running	<i>inerm-is</i> <i>e</i> unarmed	<i>reprimō</i> 3 <i>repressī</i> I hold back, check
<i>dēstituō</i> 3 <i>dēstitui</i> <i>dēstitūtus</i> I leave, abandon	<i>īnfest-us</i> <i>a um</i> hostile [With <i>pīlum</i> = 'at the ready'; with <i>signa</i> = 'indicating attack']	<i>rūrsus</i> again
<i>distendō</i> 3 I stretch out	<i>īnfringō</i> 3 I break	
<i>distrahō</i> 3 I pull apart	<i>innāt-us</i> <i>a um</i> innate (in x: dat.)	
<i>duplicō</i> 1 I double		
<i>equitāt-us</i> <i>ūs</i> 4m. cavalry		

sagittāri-us *i* 2m. archer
sponte of one's own
 accord; *suā sponte* of
 their own accord
stringō 3 *strinxī* I draw

summoueō 2 *summōuī*
summōtus I dislodge
superior *superiōr-is* earlier
sustineō 2 I withstand
terg-um *i* 2n. back

turmātim in squadrons
uertō 3 *uertī* I turn (trans.)
ūniuers-us *a um* all
 together
ūs-us *ūs* 4m. experience

Notes

- l. 14 *tantum* governs *spatī*.
 l. 24 *cum*: 'when' (not governing *īnfestīs pīlīs*).
 l. 25 *nōn concurrī ā*: impersonal passive (indirect speech) – 'that it was not
 being rushed together by . . . ' i.e. 'that . . . were not making a charge'
 (see 155²).
 l. 30 *neque* . . . *dēfuērunt*: i.e. they were equal to the situation.
 l. 36 *hōc*: 'at this', 'because of this' (abl.).
 l. 37 *ā latere apertō*: i.e. from the left (the sword was in the right hand).

Learning vocabulary for 6C(ii)

Nouns

<i>curs-us</i> <i>ūs</i> 4m. running; course; direction; voyage	<i>equitāt-us</i> <i>ūs</i> 4m. cavalry <i>terg-um</i> <i>i</i> 2n. back
---	---

Adjectives

<i>inerm-is</i> <i>e</i> unarmed	<i>īnfest-us</i> <i>a um</i> hostile; at the ready; indicating attack	<i>ūniuers-us</i> <i>a um</i> all together, whole, entire
----------------------------------	---	--

Verbs

<i>adorior</i> 4 dep. <i>adortus</i> I attack, rise up against	<i>excēdō</i> 3 <i>excessī</i> <i>excessum</i> I depart, go out; surpass	<i>reprimō</i> 3 <i>repressī</i> <i>repressus</i> I hold back, check
<i>animum aduertō</i> = <i>animaduertō</i>	<i>excipiō</i> 3/4 <i>excēpī</i> <i>exceptus</i> I sustain, receive, welcome; catch; make an exception	<i>sustineō</i> 2 <i>sustinuī</i> <i>sustentus</i> I withstand; support
<i>appropinquō</i> 1 I approach (+ dat.)	<i>mittō</i> 3 <i>misi</i> <i>missus</i> I throw; (send)	<i>uertō</i> 3 <i>uertī</i> <i>uersus</i> I turn (trans.)
<i>cōnsistō</i> 3 <i>cōnstiitī</i> I stop, stand my ground		

Running vocabulary for 6C(iii)

agō 3 (*dē* + abl.) I discuss
aquor 1 dep. I fetch water
circummūniō 4 I fortify,
 enclose (by a wall)
cōnficiō 3/4 *cōnfēcī cōnfectus*
 I weaken
coniungō 3 *coniūnxī* I join
 (trans.); *mē coniungō*
 (+ dat.) I join x
contendō 3 *contendī* I
 demand (of x: *ā* + abl.;
 that y: *ut* + subj.)
continēns continent-is
 continual
dēditiō *dēditiōn-is* 3f.
 surrender
diffidō 3 semi-dep. *diffīsus*
 I distrust (+ dat.)
dīuidō 3 *dīuīsi* I divide
etsī although, even
 though

facultās facultāt-is 3f.
 opportunity
flūmen flūmin-is 3n. river
impetrō 1 I obtain by
 request
īstituō 3 *īstituī* I begin
iug-um ī 2n. ridge
Lārīs-a ae 1f. Larisa
mūnitiō mūnitiōn-is 3f.
 fortification
noctū by night
occupāt-us a um busy (with
 x: *in* + abl.)
occurrō 3 I intercept
 (+ dat.)
opus oper-is 3n.
 earthwork, fortification
pass-us ūs 4m. pace, step;
mīlle passūs = 1 Roman
 mile (pl. *mīlia passuum*)

Pompēiān-ī ōrum 2m. pl.
 the followers of
 Pompey
potior 4 dep. I gain
 control of (+ abl.)
recipiō 3/4: *mē recipiō*
 I retreat
remaneō 2 I remain
remittō 3 *remīsī* I send
 back
sēclūdō 3 *sēclūsī* I cut off
 (x acc. from y *ā* + abl.)
senatori-us a um senatorial
subsum subesse I am close
 at hand
subluō 3 I flow at the foot
 of
uersus (placed after an
 acc.) in the direction of

Notes

l. 51 *iugīs*: 'on . . .', 'by means of . . .'

Learning vocabulary for 6C(iii)

Nouns

flūmen flūmin-is 3n. river
opus oper-is 3n.
 fortification; (job,
 work, task)

Verbs

agō 3 *ēgī āctus* I discuss;
 (do, act; drive, lead;
 spend, pass; direct)
cōnficiō 3/4 *cōnfēcī cōnfectus*
 I weaken; (finish)
diffidō 3 semi-dep. *diffīsus*
 I distrust (+ dat.)

impetrō 1 I obtain by
 request
īstituō 3 *īstituī* *īstitutus*
 I begin; construct;
 resolve
potior 4 dep. I gain
 control of (+ abl.);
 (control (+ gen.))

recipiō 3/4: *mē recipiō*
 I retreat; (welcome,
 receive, take in)
remaneō 2 *remānsī*
remānsus I remain
remittō 3 *remīsī remissus*
 I send back; remit

Others

etsī although, even
 though, even if

noctū by night

Running vocabulary for 6C(iv)

adhibeō 2 I show, use
commendō 1 I charge (x:
 dat., that y should not
 happen: *nē* + subj.)
cōnsōlor 1 dep. I reassure
cōnsurgō 3 I get up
dēscendō 3 I descend
dēsiderō 1 I lose, find
 missing
fleō 2 I weep
inuicem in turn

Lārīs-a ae 1f. Larisa
lēnitās lēnitāt-is 3f.
 clemency
neu = *nēue* ('and that . . .
 not')
occurrō 3 I come to meet
 (+ dat.)
palm-a ae 1f. palm, hand
pandō 3 *pandī passus* I
 spread out (trans.)

plānitiēs plānitiē-ī 5f. plain
prōiciō 3/4 *prōiēcī prōiectus*
 I throw down
recūsatiō recūsatiōn-is 3f.
 objection, refusal
requiēscō 3 I rest
reuertor 3 dep. I return
superior superiōr-is higher
uiolō 1 I maltreat

Notes

l. 63 *prīmā lūce*: i.e. at dawn.

l. 66 *cōnsōlātus*: the subject is Caesar.

l. 67 *quō minōre essent timōre*: purpose clause (see 148). For the abl., cf. *bonō animō esse*.

l. 68 *nē quī*: 'that none . . .'

l. 69 *quid suī*: 'anything of his own (possession)'.

ll. 70–1 The infinitives are solved by *iussit*.

Learning vocabulary for 6C(iv)

Adjectives

superior super-ius (gen.
superiōr-is) higher;
 earlier

Verbs

dēscendō 3 *dēscendī*
dēscēsum I descend
fleō 2 *flēuī flētum* I weep

occurrō 3 *occurrī occursum* I
 run to meet, meet;
 attack (+ dat.)

prōiciō 3/4 *prōiēcī prōiectus*
 I throw down
reuertor 3 dep. *reuertus* I
 return

Others

neu = *nēue* and that . . .
 not

Section 6D

Running vocabulary for 6D(i)

<i>adiungō</i> 3 <i>adiūnxī</i> I join, add	<i>locō</i> 1 I place mage = magis	<i>prōstrāt-us a um</i> prostrate
<i>cael-um</i> ī 2n. heaven, sky	<i>mēns ment-is</i> 3f. mind	<i>quadrupēs quadruped-is</i> 3m. (four-footed) beast
<i>cernō</i> 3 I discern, perceive, see	<i>min-ae arum</i> 1f. pl. threats	<i>rapid-us a um</i> rapid, swift
<i>dēlūbr-um</i> ī 2n. temple, shrine	<i>minōrēs minōr-um</i> 3m. pl. descendants	<i>rationēs</i> 'workings'
<i>dīu-us</i> ī 2m. god	<i>murmur murmur-is</i> 3n. murmur	<i>sēdēs sēd-is</i> 3f. abode
<i>faciō</i> 3/4 I suppose, imagine (l. 5)	<i>nectō</i> 3 I link, string together (x acc. to y dat.)	<i>spargō</i> 3 I sprinkle
<i>fax fac-is</i> 3f. torch	<i>nix niu-is</i> 3f. snow	<i>templ-um</i> ī 2n. region (inhabited by particular beings), quarter
<i>flamm-a ae</i> 1f. flame	<i>noctiuag-us a um</i> wandering in the night	<i>tempor-a um</i> 3n. pl. seasons
<i>flectō</i> 3 I steer, guide, control	<i>nūbil-a ōrum</i> 2n. pl. clouds	<i>tribuō</i> 3 I assign
<i>fremīt-us ūs</i> 4m. roar	<i>nūt-us ūs</i> 4m. nod, command	<i>uari-us a um</i> diverse, various
<i>fulmen fulmin-is</i> 3n. lightning, thunderbolt	<i>ōrdō ōrdin-is</i> 3m. order	<i>uēlāt-us a um</i> veiled, with covered head [See note]
<i>gemit-us ūs</i> 4m. groan	<i>palm-a ae</i> 1f. palm, hand	<i>uent-us</i> ī 2m. wind
<i>grandō grandin-is</i> 3f. hail	<i>pandō</i> 3 I spread out, extend	<i>uertier</i> : passive infinitive (present) of <i>uertō</i> 3 (passive means 'I turn' intrans.)
<i>hūmān-us a um</i> human	<i>perfugi-um</i> ī 2n. refuge	<i>uertor</i> 3 passive = <i>reuertor</i> (l. 2)
<i>imber imbr-is</i> 3m. rain, storm	<i>pietās pietāt-is</i> 3f. respect for the gods	<i>uolō</i> 1 I fly
<i>infēlix infēlic-is</i> unhappy	<i>plācāt-us a um</i> calm, tranquil	<i>uōt-um</i> ī 2n. vow, prayer
<i>īr-a ae</i> 1f. anger	<i>prōcumbō</i> 3 I bow down	
<i>lacrim-a ae</i> 1f. tear		
<i>lapis lapid-is</i> 3m. stone		
<i>locārunť = locāuērunť</i>		

Notes

For the metre see p. 318 and 183.

l. 1 *praetereā*: Lucretius has noted that men have an inborn knowledge of the gods' existence, but misinterpret the evidence of their senses so as to think the gods responsible for phenomena in the world. *caeli rationēs*: part of an indirect statement introduced by *cernēbant* (verb *uertī*).

l. 2 *uaria*: acc. pl. n. Hold until solved (by *tempora*) – second subject of *uertī*.

l. 3 *quibus*: abl. pl. f. – solved by *causīs*; normal order would be: *nec poterant cognōscere quibus causīs id fieret*.

l. 5 *trādere et . . . facere*: these two infinitives are in apposition to *perfugium*, i.e. 'handing over . . . supposing . . .'. *omnia flectī*: indirect statement depending on *facere* (*illōrum nūtū* also belongs to this indirect statement).

l. 6 *-que*: postponed – it joins this line to the previous one. *deum*: gen. pl. (see 16).

l. 7 *quia*: postponed (it introduces the clause which begins *per caelum uolū*).

l. 8 *noctis signa seuēra*: i.e. the stars.

l. 9 *noctiuagae . . . facēs, flammae . . . uolantēs*: i.e. shooting-stars or meteors.

l. 11 The two phenomena referred to in this line are probably both the same: thunder. *minārum*: i.e. the threats of the gods (as men imagine these noises signify).

l. 13 *cum*: postponed – it introduces the clause beginning *tālia dīuīs*.

ll. 14–15 This sentence is arranged as a *tricolon* with *anaphora* (see p. 315). The verb (*peperēre*) is held back until the third limb. The subject is *ipsī* (i.e. early men), the exclamatory words (*quantōs . . . quanta . . . quās*) are all acc., agreeing with the objects. The verb constructs with acc. and dative to mean 'I produce x for y'. *minōribu* = *minōribus* (the *s* is cut off to make the syllable light).

l. 16 *ūllast* = *ūlla est*. *uēlātum*: sc. 'for a person (to . . .)'. It was the Roman custom to pray with the head veiled.

l. 17 *uertier ad lapidem*: Romans approached statues of the gods from the right, then, after praying, turned right to face them, and prostrated themselves (see l. 18). Apart from stone statues, though, there were boundary-stones (*terminī*) and other sacred rocks which were venerated by the placing of garlands on them, or the pouring of oil. *omnis*: acc. pl. f. Hold until solved (by *ad arās*).

l. 18 *pandere palmās*: i.e. to stretch out the arms with the hands palm-uppermost.

l. 19 *deum*: gen. pl. (see above l. 6).

l. 21 *plācātā*: abl. s. f. Hold until solved (by *mente*).

Learning vocabulary for 6D(i)

Nouns

cael-um ī 2n. sky, heaven
dīu-us ī 2m. god
flamm-a ae 1f. flame
mēns ment-is 3f. mind

nix niu-is 3f. snow
ōrdō ordin-is 3m. order
 (rank)

pietās pietāt-is 3f. respect
 for the gods (also for
 one's family, home and
 native land)
uent-us ī 2m. wind
uōt-um ī 2n. vow, prayer

Adjectives

uari-us a um diverse,
 various

Verbs

pandō 3 *pandī passus* I
 spread out, extend;
 throw open, disclose

Running vocabulary for 6D(ii)

Acherōn Acheront-is 3m.
 Acheron (one of the
 rivers of the
 Underworld)
aes aer-is 3n. bronze statue
aestuō 1 I boil, seethe
amict-us ūs 4m. cloak
ann-us ī 2m. season
apric-us a um sunny
arceō 2 I keep away (x
 acc. from y abl.)
ars art-is 3f. skill, art,
 accomplishment
ast = at
āter ātr-a um black
avis au-is 3f. bird
autumn-us ī 2m. autumn,
 fall
caen-um ī 2n. mud
cānitiēs cānitiē-ī 5f. white
 hair
Charōn Charont-is 3m.
 Charon (the ferryman
 of the dead)

Cōcūt-us ī 2m. Cocytus
 ('the wailing river')
 [See note]
color colōr-is 3m. colour
condō 3 *condidī* I hide
cont-us ī 2m. pole
crūd-us a um (lit. 'unripe')
 youthful, vigorous
cumb-a ae 1f. boat
dēbellō 1 I subdue,
 conquer
dēfungor 3 dep. *dēfūctus* I
 have done with, finish
 (+ abl.)
dēpendeō 2 I hang down
dēscribō 3 I delineate
Dīs Dīt-is 3m. Dis
 (= Pluto, god of the
 Underworld)
effūs-us a um hurrying,
 rushing (lit. 'poured
 out')
equidem indeed; for my
 part

ēructō 1 I belch forth,
 spout up
excūdō 3 I beat out,
 fashion
ferrūgine-us a um dark (lit.
 'rust-coloured')
ferō ferre I lead (intrans.)
foli-um ī 2n. leaf
frigid-us a um cold
frīgus frīgor-is 3n. cold
fugō 1 I put to flight
glomeror 1 (passive) I
 gather, assemble
gurgis gurgit-is 3m.
 torrent, flood, sea,
 river
hērōs hērō-is 3m. hero
 (human being of divine
 parentage)
horrend-us a um dreadful,
 terrible (lit. 'to be
 shuddered at')
immittō 3 I send (x acc. to
 y dat.)

impōnō 3 *imposuī impositus*
 (l. 41) I put on (to x:
 dat.); (l. 55) I add (x
 acc. to y dat.)
inān-is e empty,
 insubstantial
incult-us a um neglected,
 disordered
innūpt-us a um unmarried
lābor 3 dep. *lāpsus* I fall
lūmin-a um 3n. pl. eyes
magnanim-us a um great-
 hearted [*magnanimum* is
 gen. pl. Cf. *deum* in
 6D(i) l. 6]
malign-us a um niggardly,
 grudging
marmor marmor-is 3n.
 marble
meāt-us ūs 4m. motion,
 revolution
mementō remember, be
 sure (to: + infin.)
 (imperative of *meminī*)
ment-um ī 2n. chin
ministrō 1 I attend to
 (+ dat.)
moll-is e soft, pliant,
 flexible
mōs mōr-is 3m. civilisation

nāuit-a ae 1m. sailor
 (= *nauta*)
nōd-us ī 2m. knot
obscur-us a um dark (tr. 'in
 darkness')
pont-us ī 2m. sea
portitor portitōr-is 3m.
 harbour-officer, excise-
 man
quāle just as [See note]
radi-us ī 2m. rod
ratis rat-is 3f. boat
regō 3 I govern, direct
rēgn-um ī 2n. kingdom,
 realm
rīp-a ae 1f. bank
rog-us ī 2m. funeral pyre
ruō 3 I rush
senectūs senectūt-is 3f. old
 age
senior seniōr-is very old
 (comparative of *senex*)
seruō 1 I guard
silu-a ae 1f. wood
sōl-us a um lonely
sordid-us a um dirty, filthy
spīrō 1 I breathe
squālor squālōr-is 3m. filth,
 squalor (lit. 'stiffness')

subiect-ī ōrum 2m. pl. the
 conquered
subigō 3 I push on, thrust
 forward
subuectō 1 I convey,
 transport
summueō 2 *summōuī*
summōtus I drive away,
 remove
superb-us a um proud,
 arrogant
surgō 1 I rise
Tartare-us a um of
 Tartarus, Tartarean
trāsmittō (cursum) 3 I
 make a crossing [See
 note]
turbid-us a um thick,
 murky (with: + abl.)
uāst-us a um huge, vast
uēl-um ī 2n. sail
uirid-is e green
ulterior ulteriōr-is further
umbr-a ae 1f. shadow,
 darkness
umer-us ī 2m. shoulder
und-a ae 1f. water
uorāgō uorāgin-is 3f. abyss,
 gulf

Notes

- 1 For the metre, see p. 319. *ībant*: the subjects are Aeneas and the Sibyl. *sōlā*: with *sub nocte*. The adjectives are, in a sense, both with the wrong noun (a figure called *hypallage*) – *obscurus* would describe *nox* well, and *sōlus* the travellers.
- 2 *inānia rēgna*: also governed by *per*.
- 3 *quāle . . . iter*: lit. 'what sort of journey (there is)'. Understand 'they were going on' from l. 1. and tr. 'the sort of journey one makes . . .'
- 4 *caelum*: object – hold until solved (by *condidit . . . Iuppiter*).
- 5 *Iuppiter*: Jupiter controls the weather (along with much else). *rēbus*: dat. of disadvantage (solved by *abstulit*). Tr. 'the world'.
- 28 *hinc uia*: sc. *est*. *Tartareī*: gen. s. m. Hold (until solved by *Acherontis*). It belongs in the clause introduced by *quae*.

- l. 29 *turbidus*: with abl. of respect *caenō*. Used predicatively with *gurgēs* (i.e. 'a torrent, murky . . . ' not 'a murky torrent'). *uāstā* . . . *uorāgine*: abl. of description (qualifying *gurgēs*). The prose order of this line would be: *hīc gurgēs, turbidus caenō, uāstāque uorāgine, aestuat* . . .
- l. 30 *omnem*: acc. s. f. Hold (solved by *harēnam*). *Cōcētō*: = *in Cōcētum*.
- l. 31 *portitor*: in apposition to the subject *Charōn*. Tr. 'as harbour-officer' (since he, like similar people in the Roman world, collects tolls and controls access to the harbour where his boat stands). *hās*: acc. pl. f. Hold until solved (by *aquās*); the phrase is the object of *seruat*.
- l. 32 *terribilī squālōre*: abl. of description. *cūt* . . . *mentō*: lit. 'for whom on the chin'. Tr. 'on whose chin'. Dative is commonly used in poetry for genitive in such expressions. *plūrima*: nom. s. f. Hold until solved (by *cānitiēs*).
- l. 33 *stant flammā*: lit. 'stand with flame' i.e. 'are staring and ablaze'.
- l. 34 *sordidus*: nom. s. m. Hold until solved (by *amictus*). *nōdō*: abl. of means 'by -'. Charon is wearing a cloak knotted (not fastened with a pin) over his left shoulder, leaving his right arm and shoulder bared for his work.
- l. 36 *ferrūgineā*: abl. s. f. Hold until solved (by *cumbā*: the abl. expresses place). *corpora*: i.e. the dead.
- l. 37 *sed crūda deō uiridisque senectūs*: sc. *est. deō* 'the god's'.
- ll. 39–41 All these people make up the *turba* of l. 38; the nominatives (*mātrēs, uirī, corpora, puerī, puellae* and *iuuenēs*) are in apposition to *turba*.
- l. 39 *dēfūcta*: nom. pl. n. governs *uītā*, and is used predicatively with *corpora* (i.e. 'bodies finished with . . . ' not 'finished-with bodies'. Cf. *turbidus* in l. 29).
- l. 40 *magnanimum hērōum*: depends on *corpora*.
- l. 41 *impositi*: nom. pl. m. – cf. *dēfūcta* . . . *corpora* (l. 39). Used predicatively with *iūuenēs*, i.e. 'youths placed . . . ' not 'placed youths . . . '
- ll. 42, 44 *quam multa* . . . *quam multae*: 'as many as (the . . . which)'.
- l. 42 *autumnī frīgore primō*: *autumnī* depends on *frīgore*. The abl. phrase expresses time.
- l. 43 *cadunt*: here tr. 'die' (or *lāpsa* as 'having slipped' (sc. 'off the tree') and *cadunt* as 'fall' (sc. 'to the ground')). *aut ad terram gurgite ab altō*: this belongs in the new simile, introduced by *quam multae* in l. 44.
- l. 45 *fugat*: sc. *eās* (= 'the birds').
- l. 46 *trāsmittēre*: infinitive of indirect command (poetic use of a Greek construction instead of the normal *ut* + subj.; see 134). *primī* belongs with *trāsmittēre cursum*.
- l. 47 *amōre*: abl. of cause 'from desire (for)'.

- l. 48 *sed*: postponed (normally first word in a clause). *nunc hōs*: sc. *accipit*.
- l. 49 *harēnā*: = *rīpīs* (where the boat is standing and where access is gained to it). This line is the cue for Aeneas to ask the Sibyl why some people are allowed to sail, while others are kept on the shore. The answer is that only the buried may cross; the unburied, quite apart from the religious taboo on their crossing, have no coin with which to pay for their passage. Among the unburied, Aeneas meets his steersman Palinurus, who was lost overboard before the Trojans arrived in Italy.
- l. 50 *aliī* i.e. the Greeks (also for the other things mentioned in ll. 50–3).
- ll. 50–2 *mollius* . . . *melius*: the comparison is with the Romans, sc. 'than you Romans'. *mollius*: qualifies *spīrantia*. Tr. 'in more flowing (i.e. lifelike) lines'.
- l. 51 *uīuōs*: acc. pl. m. Hold until solved (by *uultūs*: possibly the adjective is used predicatively (cf. lines 39 and 41 above), i.e. 'faces which live', not 'living faces'). *dūcent*: in the sense 'bring forth'.
- l. 52 *caelī*: i.e. 'of the heavenly bodies'. The phrase *caelī meātūs* is object of *dēscribent*.
- l. 54 *surgentia sīdera*: i.e. 'the risings of the stars'. Cf. 163 Note.

Learning vocabulary for 6D(ii)

Nouns

<i>ars</i> art-is 3f. skill, art, accomplishment	<i>frīgus</i> frīg-or-is 3n. cold; pl. cold spells	<i>silu-a</i> ae 1f. wood
<i>autumn-us</i> ī 2m. autumn, fall	<i>lūmen</i> lūmin-is 3n. light; (pl.) eyes	<i>umbr-a</i> ae 1f. shadow, darkness; shade, ghost
	<i>rīp-a</i> ae 1f. bank	<i>umer-us</i> ī 2m. shoulder
		<i>und-a</i> ae 1f. water, wave

Adjectives

<i>obscur-us</i> a um dark; obscure; mean, ignoble	<i>sōl-us</i> a um lonely (alone)	<i>superb-us</i> a um proud, haughty, arrogant
--	-----------------------------------	--

Verbs

<i>fugō</i> 1 I put to flight	<i>lābor</i> 3 dep. <i>lāpsus</i> I slip, glide, fall down; make a mistake	<i>surgō</i> 3 <i>surrēxī</i> <i>surrēctum</i> I rise, arise, get up
<i>impōnō</i> 3 <i>imposuī</i> <i>impositus</i> I put x (acc.) on y (dat.)		

Running vocabulary for 6D(iii)

abruptō 3 I break
adiciō 3/4 I add
Aenēās (Greek nom.)
 Aeneas (Trojan hero, mythical founder of Roman race)
aestās aestāt-is 3f. summer
alm-us a um bountiful, nourishing [See note]
amīc-us a um friendly [See note]
an whether
Anc-us ī 2m. Ancus (third king of Rome)
arbitri-um ī 2n. judgement
arbor arbor-is 3f. tree
avid-us a um greedy
brūm-a ae 1f. winter
caelest-is e in the heavens
camp-us ī 2m. field, plain
cār-us a um dear
chor-us ī 2m. dance
com-a ae 1f. foliage
crāstin-us a um tomorrow's
cūnct-us a um all, the whole of
damn-um ī 2n. loss
dēcidō 3 I go (lit. 'fall') down
dēcrēscō 3 I decrease

Diān-a ae 1f. Diana [See note]
diffugiō 3/4 *diffūgī* I disperse, scatter (intrans.)
effundō 3 *effūdī* I pour out
fācundī-a ae 1f. eloquence
frūgēs frūg-um 3f. pl. produce, fruits
gemin-us a um twin
grāmen grāmin-is 3n. grass
Grāti-a ae 1f. Grace (one of the three Graces)
hērēs hērēd-is 3m. heir
Hippolyt-us ī 2m. Hippolytus [See note]
hodiern-us a um today's
iners inert-is sluggish, motionless
īfern-us a um of the Underworld
intereō interīre interīi
interitum I die
Lēthae-us a um of Lethe [See note]
Mīnōs Mīnō-is 3m. Minos (one of the judges in the Underworld)
mītēscō 3 I grow mild
nūd-us a um naked
Nymph-a ae 1f. Nymph

Pēritho-us ī 2m. Perithous [See note]
pōmifer pōmifer-a um apple-bearing
prōterō 3 I trample on
pudīc-us a um chaste
pulvis puluer-is 3m. dust
rapiō 3/4 I snatch (away)
recurrō 3 I run back, return
reparō 1 I make good
restituō 3 I bring back, revive
simul = *simulatque*
splendīd-us a um splendid, brilliant
summ-a ae 1f. total
super-ī ōrum 2m. pl. the gods above
tenebr-ae ārum 1f. pl. shadows, darkness
Thēseus (Greek nom.)
 Theseus [See note]
Torquāt-us ī 2m. Torquatus
Tull-us ī 2m. Tullus (second king of Rome)
uēr uēr-is 3n. spring
uic-ēs 3f. pl. successive forms/conditions
Zephyr-us ī 2m. West Wind

Notes

For the metre, see 184.

1. 3 *dēcrēscētia*: nom. pl. n. – solved by *flūmina praetereunt*: i.e. flow between.
1. 7 *immortālia*: 'immortality'. *almum*: acc. m. s. – hold (solved by *diem*). *hōra* and *annus* are both subjects of *monet*. The prose order would be: *hōra quae diem alnum rapit*.
1. 9 *Zephyrīs*: abl. of cause.
1. 13 *celerēs* . . . *lūnae*: i.e. months passing quickly.
1. 15 *quō*: '(to) where': understand *deciderunt* with *Aenēās*, *Tullus* and *Ancus* as subject.

11. 17–18 *hodiernae*: dat. s. f. – solved by *summae*. *crāstina*: acc. pl. n. solved by *tempora*: the subject of *adiciant* is *dī superī*.
1. 19–20 *amīcō* . . . *animō*: dat. 'to your friendly heart' (imitating a Greek expression meaning 'to your dear heart'). The clause means 'whatever you have gratified your dear heart with'.
1. 21 *occiderīs*: future perfect, despite the long vowel in *-īs*. *splendida*: acc. pl. n. – hold until solved (by *arbitria*).
11. 23–4 *genus*, *fācundia* and *pietās* are all subjects of *restituēt*. Note the anaphora (*nōn* . . . *nōn tē* . . . *nōn tē*): see p. 315.
1. 25 *īfernīs* . . . *tenebrīs*: abl. of separation 'from'. *pudīcum*: acc. s. m. – hold until solved (by *Hippolytum*).
11. 25–6 Diana, goddess of the hunt and of chastity, could not save her dearest devotee Hippolytus (whose death was devised by Aphrodite, whom he had spurned).
1. 27 *Lēthaea*: acc. pl. n. – hold until solved (by *uincula*). Lethe was the River of Forgetfulness.
11. 27–8 *cārō* . . . *Pērithoō*: abl. of separation 'from'. See Reference Grammar L(f)1. Theseus had gone down to Hades with his friend Perithous, to bring back Persephone, with whom Perithous was in love, and who had been abducted by Pluto. Both had been enchained, but Theseus had been rescued by Heracles, and returned to the world above. Now dead, and back in Hades for ever, he is unable to rescue his friend.

Learning vocabulary for 6D(iii)

Nouns

arbor arbor-is 3f. tree
camp-us ī 2m. field, plain
com-a ae 1f. hair; foliage
tenebr-ae ārum 1f. pl. shadows, darkness

Adjectives

caelest-is e in the heavens
cūnct-us a um all, the whole of
nūd-us a um naked

Verbs

rapiō 3/4 *rapuī raptus* I snatch, seize, carry off, plunder

Others

an whether (in indirect questions, + subj.: = *num*); = *ne* (= ?) (in direct question)

Running vocabulary for 6D(iv)

adapert-us a um open
adpōnō 3 *adposuī* I lay
aegrē with difficulty
aest-us ūs 4m. (lit. 'heat')

hot part of the day
apt-us a um fit
castīgāt-us a um well-
 formed (lit. 'well-
 disciplined')

claus-us a um closed
coll-um ī 2n. neck [Pl.
 used for s.]

Corinn-a ae 1f. Corinna
crepuscul-um ī 2n. twilight
 [Pl. used for s.]

dēripīō 3/4 *dēripuī* I tear
 off

dīuidu-us a um parted
exigō 3 *exēgī* I complete
femur femor-is 3n. thigh
fēnestr-a ae 1f. window

iūuenāl-is e youthful
lacert-us ī 2m. arm

Lāis Lāid-is 3f. Lais (a
 famous Corinthian
 courtesan)

lass-us a um weary, tired
 out

latebr-ae ārum 1f. pl.
 hiding-place
laudābil-is e worthy of
 praise

leuō 1 I relieve, rest
mend-a ae 1f. blemish
nusquam nowhere

orior 4 dep. *ortus* I arise
papill-a ae 1f. breast [See
 note]

Phoeb-us ī 2m. (lit.
 Phoebus, god of the
 sun) the sun

plān-us a um flat
pōnō 3 *posuī positus* I lay
 aside

praebeō 2 I provide, offer
premō 3 *pressī* I press
prōditiō prōditiōn-is 3f.

betrayal
prōueniō 4 I turn out, am
 successful

pudor pudōr-is 3m.
 modesty, sense of
 shame

quālia/quāle [See note]

quāliter just as, just the
 way in which
rār-us a um thin [See note]

recingō 3 *recīnxī recīctus* I
 unfasten, unbelt
referō referre I relate [See
 note]

requiēscō 3 *requiēuī* I take a
 rest, relax
Semīramis Semīramid-is 3f.

Semiramis (legendary
 queen of Assyria)

singul-ī ae a individual,
 one by one
sublūceō 2 I glow faintly

thalam-us ī 2m. bedroom
 [Pl. used for s.]
tor-us ī 2m. bed, couch

[See note]
tunic-a ae 1f. tunic
uēlāmen uēlāmin-is 3n.

clothing
uēlō 1 I clothe
uenter uentr-is 3m.

stomach
uerēcund-us a um shy,
 modest

Notes

For the metre, see 185.

1. 1 *mediam*: acc. s. f. – hold until solved (by *hōram*).
 1. 2 *mediō*: dat. s. m. – hold until solved (by *torō*). *torō*: dat. of motion
 towards. Tr. 'on . . .' Cf. 6D(ii) l. 30 *omnem Cōcūtō ērūctat harēnam*
 'belches forth all its sand into Cocytus.'

1. 3 *pars . . . pars altera*: the window had two shutters. *clausa*: sc. *fuit*.

1. 4 *quāle . . . lūmen*: lit. 'what sort of light'. Tr. 'the sort of light
 which . . .'

1. 5 *quālia . . . crepuscula*: lit. 'what sort of twilight . . .' Tr. 'the sort of
 twilight which . . .' *fugiente*: abl. s. m. Hold until solved (by *Phoebō* –
 abl. abs.).

1. 6 *orta*: sc. *est*.

1. 7 *illa*: nom. s. f. – *lūx* is the complement. Tr. 'that is the (sort of)
 light . . .' *uerēcundīs*: dat. pl. f. Hold until solved (by *puellīs*). (The dat.
 means 'to'.)

1. 8 *timidus*: nom. s. m. Hold until solved (by *pudor*). *spēret*: generic
 subjunctive (see tr. for *illa*, l. 7). (See 140.1.)

1. 10 *candida*: acc. pl. n. Hold (solved by *colla* – but await a verb still).
dīuiduā: abl. s. f. Hold until solved (by *comā*) – *tegente* is also abl. s. f., and
 provides the verb governing *candida* . . . *colla*. The phrase is abl. abs.

1. 12 *multīs*: dat. pl. m. Hold until solved (by *uirīs*). The dative expresses
 agent 'by', after the passive participle *amāta*. Cf. 6A(vi) l. 5 *amāta nōbīs*
 'loved by me'. See Reference Grammar L(e)(iv). *Lāis*: second subject
 (with *Semīramis*) of *dīcitur*. Carry over also in *thalamōs* . . . *īsse*.

1. 13 *multum* . . . *nocēbat*: adverbial acc. (or internal). Tr. 'did it do much
 harm'. *rāra*: i.e. *tunica*. Tr. 'being thin'.

1. 14 *tunicā*: abl. of instrument 'with', 'by'. Solved by *tegī*. *sed tamen*:
 postponed – normally one would expect these words at the beginning
 of a clause.

1. 15 *ita* . . . *tamquam quae* . . . *nōllet*: 'just like one who did not want . . .'
 Generic subjunctive (see above, l. 8).

1. 17 *ut* = 'when'.

1. 18 in *tōtō*: await a solving noun (*corpore*).

1. 19–22 *quōs* . . . *quālīs* . . . *quam* . . . *quam* . . . *quantum* . . . *quāle* . . .
quam: all exclamatory. Cf. 6D(i) ll. 14–15.

1. 19 *quōs umerōs, quālīs* . . . *lacertōs*: obj. of *uīdī tetigīque*. Hold *quālīs* as obj.
 until solved by *lacertōs*.

1. 20 *fōrma papillārum*: = *papillae fōrmōsae*. The subject of the exclamation
 here precedes the introductory words *quam* . . . *apta*. *premī*: explana-
 tory (epexegetic) infin. after *apta*. Tr. *premō* here as 'caress'.

1. 21 *quam*: qualifies *plānus*. *castīgātō*: abl. s. n. Hold until solved (by *sub*
pectore).

1. 23 *referam*: deliberative subj.: see 152¹. Cf. *quid plūra dīcam?* 'Why
 should I say more?'

1. 24 *nūdā*: acc. s. f., adj. used as a noun. It refers to Corinna. *corpus ad*
usque meum: normal order would be *usque ad corpus meum*.

1. 26 *prōueniant*: subjunctive expressing a wish for the future. See
 Reference Grammar L–V Intro. (a)4. *mediū*: nom. pl. m. Hold until
 solved (by *diēs*).

Learning vocabulary

Nouns

coll-um ī 2n. neck
lacert-us ī 2m. arm, upper
 arm
latebr-ae ārum 1f. pl.
 hiding-place, lair

pudor pudōr-is 3m.
 modesty, sense of
 shame
thalam-us ī 2m. chamber,
 bedchamber

tor-us ī 2m. couch; bed
tunic-a ae 1f. tunic

Adjectives

plān-us a um level, flat;
 plain, distinct

singul-ī ae a individual,
 one by one

Verbs

orior 4 dep. *ortus* I rise;
 spring from, originate

pōnō 3 *posuī* *positus* I lay
 aside (= *dēpōnō*); (place,
 position, put)

praebeō 2 I provide, offer;
 (show, display)
premō 3 *pressī* *pressus* I
 press; oppress

Others

aegrē with difficulty

Grammar and exercises for 6D

See pp. 318–20 for the principles of Latin metre, and the scheme for hexameter.

183 The hexameter in Lucretius

The metre is used by both Lucretius and Virgil, but Lucretius is in some ways less strict. Lucretius for instance allows elision of -s to produce a light syllable, e.g.

min|lōribu' n|lōstrīs (for *min|lōribūs n|lōstrīs*)

Here are the first three lines of the Lucretius passage scanned for you:

prae|tē|rē|lā cā|ellī rā|tī|lōnēs | ō|rdī|nē|cē|tō
et uā|rī|[a] ā|nnō|rūm cēr|nē|bānt | tē|mpō|rā | uē|rtī
nēc pō|tē|rānt quī|būs | id fī|er|lēt cō|gnō|scē|rē clā|usīs.

NB. The caesura (see above p. 320, note 2) comes after *caellī*, *annōrum*, *id* (3rd foot).

184 Archilochean

The metre Horace uses in Odes 4.7 is called Archilochean, after the seventh-century BC poet Archilochus of Paros. The scheme is a couplet, made up as follows:

- (a) Hexameter (see above p. 000).
 (b) Half-hexameter, with dactyls (—uu) only: —uu|—uu|u.

E.g.

dī|ffū|glē|rē nī|ulēs, rē|dē|lūnt iām gl|rā|minā clā|mpīs
ā|rbō|rib|us|quē cō|mlāe

185 Elegiac couplet

The metre used by Martial (e.g. pp. 208–9), Crotti (p. 287) and Ovid in *Fasti* (p. 405) and *Amōrēs* I.5 is the elegiac couplet. It consists of a hexameter (see above p. 319), followed by a pentameter, the scheme of which is:

—uu|—uu|—||—uu|—uu|u

E.g.

ad|pō|sulī mē|dī|lō || mē|mbra lē|ulā|ndā tō|r|lō

There is always a caesura (see p. 320, note 2) in the place marked by || in the example and the scheme.

Exercise

Scan the lines which you have translated in each section, taking care to watch for elisions. Mark foot divisions with |. Mark caesuras in hexameters with {, in pentameters with ||. Add the correct word stress (see rule, p. xv). Read each piece aloud, thinking through the meaning as you read.

REFERENCE GRAMMAR

The Reference Grammar pulls together the Running Grammar sections, and adds to them features of the language which did not seem appropriate for a beginner dealing with basics. For the fuller philological picture we recommend:

L. R. Palmer, *The Latin Language*, London 1954

E. C. Woodcock, *A New Latin Syntax*, London 1959 (Bristol Classical Press reprint 1985)

A-G Verbs

Introduction

(a) Sequence

When the main verb of a sentence is PRESENT, FUTURE, FUTURE PERFECT, or PERFECT (meaning 'have —ed'), the sequence is 'primary', and subordinate subjunctives can only be present, perfect, or future participle + *sim*. When the main verb of a sentence is IMPERFECT, PERFECT ('I —ed'), or PLUPERFECT, the sequence is 'secondary' or 'historic', and subordinate subjunctives can only be imperfect, pluperfect, or future participle + *essem* (or *fórem*). (For an exception, see 144.)

(b) Transitive/intransitive

A verb is said to be 'transitive' (*trānseō trānsitus* 'I cross over') when it controls a direct object in the accusative, e.g. *pórtō* 'I carry' is transitive (in *aúlam pórtō* 'I carry a pot' *aúlam* = object, accusative), but *páreō* 'I obey' is not (in *éi páreō* 'I obey him' *éi* = object, but dative), nor is *uénio* 'I come' (in *ad pórtam uénio* 'I come to the gate', *pórtam* is controlled by *ad*).

(c) Meaning

témpus tríbus pártibus cōstat ('consists of' + abl.): *praetérítō*, *praesente*, *futūrō* (Seneca).

A-G Verbs: Introduction

Present tense (durative)

This is a durative form, and means 'I am —ing', but also serves to mean 'I —', 'I do —'. It can also mean 'I begin to —', 'I can —', 'I try to —' and 'I have —ed and still am —ing', e.g. *sexāgíntā ánnōs uíuō* 'I have been living for sixty years (and still am)'.

The present tense can also be used where one would naturally expect a past tense. It makes the action more vivid. This usage is called the 'historic' present.

Future tense (durative)

This is again durative, and means 'I shall be —ing', but is used also for 'I shall —'.

Imperfect tense (durative)

This means 'I was —ing', 'used to —', 'kept on —ing', 'tried to —', 'began to —'. But it can also be translated 'I —ed', since English does not always pay as close attention to the durative aspect of the verb as Latin.

Perfect tense (completed)

This means 'I have —ed', 'I did —', 'I —ed', 'I have done with —ing'.

Pluperfect tense (completed)

This means 'I had —ed', 'I had been —ing', 'I finished —ing'.

Future perfect tense (completed)

This means 'I shall have —ed'. Frequently it is best translated 'I shall —' or 'I have —ed' in English, e.g. *póstquam líbrum légerō* 'after I have read the book'.

(d) Principal parts

Active verbs generally have four principal parts, deponents have three (see the list at G). The principal parts give the key to all the forms of the verb, as follows.

Active verbs

hábe-ō: stem of active/passive forms of the present, future and imperfect indicative, subjunctive, imperative, gerund(ive) and present participle. (Note that 1st conj. verb stems end in

-a-, e.g. *ámō*, stem *ama-*; contrast *hábe-ō*, stem *habe-*; *dīc-ō*, stem *dīc-*; *aúdi-ō*, stem *audi-*; *cápi-ō*, stem *capi-*)

habē-re: key to correct conjugation (so the correct endings of present, future and imperfect forms). Stem of imperfect subjunctive (*habēre-m* etc.)

hábu-ī: key to all the perfect active forms

hábit-us: key to all the perfect passive forms, and the future participle/infinite active

Deponent verbs

pollice-or: stem of all present, future and imperfect forms. (See note on 1st conj. stems above, under *hábeō*)

pollicē-rī: key to conjugation

pollicit-us: key to all perfect forms, and future participle/infinite

NB. We give the fourth principal part of all deponent and transitive verbs in the form of the perfect participle (ending in *-us*), e.g. *amātus* (*ámō*). Intransitive verbs have the 4th p.p. printed in the n.s. (*-um*), e.g. *cúrsum* (*cúrrō*). Where no perfect participle exists, we have printed the 4th p.p. in the form of the future participle (ending in *-ūrus*), e.g. *fugitūrus* (*fúgiō*). Where neither future part. nor past part. is known, we print — in the 4th p.p. position. All dictionaries give as the 4th p.p. the 'supine' (see A7 for form and function).

A1 Present active: personal endings: -ō -s -t -mus -tis -nt

Present indicative active 'I —', 'I am —ing', 'I do —'

Key: A E I I I

	1st conjugation	2nd conjugation	3rd conjugation
	'I love'	'I have'	'I say'
1st s.	<i>ámō</i>	<i>hábeō</i>	<i>dīcō</i>
2nd s.	<i>ámās</i>	<i>hábēs</i>	<i>dīcis</i>
3rd s.	<i>ámat</i>	<i>habet</i>	<i>dīcit</i>
1st pl.	<i>amāmus</i>	<i>habēmus</i>	<i>dīcimus</i>
2nd pl.	<i>amātis</i>	<i>habētis</i>	<i>dīcitis</i>
3rd pl.	<i>ámant</i>	<i>hábent</i>	<i>dīcunt</i>

A1 Active verbs

	4th conjugation	3rd/4th conjugation
	'I hear'	'I capture'
1st s.	<i>aúdiō</i>	<i>cápiō</i>
2nd s.	<i>aúdis</i>	<i>cápis</i>
3rd s.	<i>aúdit</i>	<i>cápit</i>
1st pl.	<i>audīmus</i>	<i>cápinus</i>
2nd pl.	<i>audītis</i>	<i>cápitis</i>
3rd pl.	<i>aúdiunt</i>	<i>cápiunt</i>

Present participle active '—ing'

Key: -NT-

1	2	3
'loving'	'having'	'saying'
<i>ámāns</i> (<i>amánt-</i>)	<i>hábēns</i> (<i>habént-</i>)	<i>dīcēns</i> (<i>dīcént-</i>)
4	3/4	
'hearing'	'capturing'	
<i>aúdiēns</i> (<i>audiént-</i>)	<i>cápiēns</i> (<i>capiént-</i>)	

Pattern of declension

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	<i>ámāns</i>	<i>ámāns</i>	<i>amántēs</i>	<i>amántia</i>
acc.	<i>amántem</i>	<i>ámāns</i>	<i>amántis</i> (<i>amántēs</i>)	<i>amántia</i>
gen.	← <i>amántis</i> →		← <i>amántium</i> (<i>amántum</i>) →	
dat.	← <i>amántī</i> →		← <i>amántibus</i> →	
abl.	← <i>amántē</i> (<i>amántī</i>) →		← <i>amántibus</i> →	

Present infinitive active 'to —'

Key: -ĀRE -ĒRE -ERE -ĪRE -ERE

1	2	3	4	3/4
'to love'	'to have'	'to say'	'to hear'	'to capture'
<i>amāre</i>	<i>habēre</i>	<i>dīcere</i>	<i>audīre</i>	<i>cápere</i>

Gerund (a noun, cf. present participles) '(the act of) —ing'

Key: -ND-

1	2	3
'(the act of) loving'	'(the act of) having'	'(the act of) saying'
amāre, amānd-um ī 2n.	habēre, habēnd-um ī 2n.	dīcere, dīcēnd-um ī 2n.
4	3/4	
'(the act of) hearing'	'(the act of) capturing'	
audīre, audīend-um ī 2n.	cāpere, capiēnd-um ī 2n.	

Notes

- 1 The only gerund forms which verbs have are as above, based on the present stem.
- 2 The infinitive form often acts as a nominative noun, e.g. *errāre hūmānum est* 'to err (i.e. the act of erring) is human'. The gerund itself has no nominative.

Present imperative active '—!'

Key: Ā Ē E/I Ī E/I

	1	2	3
	'love!'	'have!'	'demand!'
2nd s.	āmā	hábē	pósce ¹
2nd pl.	amāte	habēte	póscite
	4	3/4	
	'hear!'	'capture!'	
2nd s.	aúdī	cápe	
2nd pl.	audíte	cápite	

¹ We use *poscō* here because *dīcō* has an irregular s. imperative.**Present subjunctive active 'I —', 'I may —', 'I would —'**

Key: E A

	1	2	3	4	3/4
1st s.	ámem	hábeam	dīcam	aúdiam	cápiam
2nd s.	ámēs	hábeās	dīcās	aúdiās	cápiās
3rd s.	ámet	hábeat	dīcat	aúdiat	cápiat

A1-2 Active verbs

1st pl.	amēmus	habeāmus	dīcāmus	audiāmus	capiāmus
2nd pl.	amētis	habeātis	dīcātis	audiātis	capiātis
3rd pl.	ament	habeant	dīcant	aúdiant	cápiant

A2 Future active**Future indicative active 'I shall/will —', 'I shall/will be —ing'**

Key: ĀBI ĒBI E IE IE

	1	2	3	4	3/4
	'I shall love'	'I shall have'	'I shall say'	'I shall hear'	'I shall capture'
1st s.	amābō	habēbō	dīcam	aúdiam	cápiam
2nd s.	amābis	habēbis	dīcēs	aúdiēs	cápiēs
3rd s.	amābit	habēbit	dīcet	aúdiet	cápiet
1st pl.	amābimus	habēbimus	dīcēmus	audiēmus	capiēmus
2nd pl.	amābitis	habēbitis	dīcētis	audiētis	capiētis
3rd pl.	amābunt	habēbunt	dīcent	aúdient	cápiant

Future participle active 'about to —' 'on the point of —ing', 'with a view to —ing'

Key: perfect participle stem + ŪR-US A UM

1	2	3
'about to love'	'about to have'	'about to say'
amātūr-us a um	habitūr-us a um	dictūr-us a um
4	3/4	
'about to hear'	'about to capture'	
audītūr-us a um	captūr-us a um	

NB. -ūr-us a um declines like *lóngus*, J1(a).**Future infinitive active 'to be about to —'**

Key: perfect participle stem + ŪR-US A UM + ESSE

1	2	3
'to be about to love'	'to be about to have'	'to be about to say'
amātūr-us a um esse	habitūr-us a um esse	dictūr-us a um esse

4	3/4
'to be about to hear'	'to be about to capture'
audītūr-us a um esse	captūr-us a um esse

NB. -ūr-us a um declines like *lóngus*, J1(a).

Notes

- 1 The future (or 'second') imperative is formed by adding -tō (s.), -tōte (pl.) to the present stem (e.g. *amātō*, *habētō*, *póscitō*, *audītō*, *cápitō*). It expresses an order which is not to be obeyed immediately. E.g. *laédere hanc cauētō* 'Take care (in future) not to rub her up the wrong way' (Catullus).
- 2 'Future' subjunctive active is formed by future participle + *sim sīs sit*, e.g. *amatūr-us sim* etc. or future participle + *essem éssēs éssēt* (sometimes *fórem fóres fóret*), e.g. *amātūrus essem* (*amātūrus fórem*). Sequence (see A-G Intro.(a)) determines whether *sim* or *essem*/*fórem* is used.

A3 Imperfect active

Imperfect indicative active 'I was —ing', 'I used to —', 'I began —ing'

Key: ĀBA ĒBA

	1	2	3
	'I was loving'	'I was having'	'I was saying'
1st s.	amābam	habēbam	dīcēbam
2nd s.	amābās	habēbās	dīcēbās
3rd s.	amābat	habēbat	dīcēbat
1st pl.	amābāmus	habēbāmus	dīcēbāmus
2nd pl.	amābātis	habēbātis	dīcēbātis
3rd pl.	amābant	habēbant	dīcēbant
	4	3/4	
	'I was hearing'	'I was capturing'	
1st s.	audiēbam ¹	capiēbam	
2nd s.	audiēbās	capiēbās	
3rd s.	audiēbat	capiēbat	

¹ Sometimes *audībam audībās* etc.

A2-4 Active verbs

1st pl.	audiēbāmus	capiēbāmus
2nd pl.	audiēbātis	capiēbātis
3rd pl.	audiēbant	capiēbant

Imperfect subjunctive active 'I was —ing', 'I might —', 'I would —'

Key: infinitive + endings

	1	2	3	4	3/4
1st s.	amārem	habērem	dīcerem	audiērem	caperem
2nd s.	amārēs	habērēs	dīcerēs	audiērēs	caperēs
3rd s.	amāret	habēret	dīceret	audiēret	caperet
1st pl.	amārēmus	habērēmus	dīcerēmus	audiērēmus	caperēmus
2nd pl.	amārētis	habērētis	dīcerētis	audiērētis	caperētis
3rd pl.	amārent	habērent	dīcerent	audiērent	caperent

NB. No imperfect participles, imperatives or infinitives exist.

A4 Perfect active

Perfect indicative active 'I —ed', 'I have —ed'

Key: perf. stem + Ī ISTĪ etc.

	1	2	3
	'I loved', 'I have loved'	'I had', 'I have had'	'I said', 'I have said'
1st s.	amāuī	hābuī	dīxī
2nd s.	amāuīstī (amāstī)	habuīstī	dīxīstī (dīxtī)
3rd s.	amāuit	habuit	dīxit
1st pl.	amāuimus	habuimus	dīximus
2nd pl.	amāuīstis (amāstis)	habuīstis	dīxīstis
3rd pl.	amāuērunt (amāuēre/amārunt)	habuērunt (habuēre)	dīxērunt (dīxēre)
	4	3/4	
	'I heard', 'I have heard'	'I captured', 'I have captured'	
1st s.	audīuī	cēpī	
2nd s.	audīuīstī (audīistī/audīstī)	cēpīstī	
3rd s.	audīuit	cēpit	
1st pl.	audīuimus	cēpimus	
2nd pl.	audīuīstis (audīstis)	cēpīstis	
3rd pl.	audīuērunt (audīuēre/audīērunt/audīēre)	cēpērunt (cēpēre)	

Perfect infinitive active 'to have —ed'

Key: perf. stem + -ISSE

1	2	3
'to have loved'	'to have had'	'to have said'
amāuisse (or amāsse)	habuisse	dixisse
4	3/4	
'to have heard'	'to have captured'	
audiuisse (or audisse)	cēpisse	

NB. No perfect participle active; perfect imperative only found for *meminī* (see **F1(a)**).

Perfect subjunctive active 'I —ed', 'I have —ed'

Key: perf. stem + -ERIM -ERIS etc.

1	2	3
1st s. amāuerim (amārim etc.)	habuerim	dixerim
2nd s. amāueris	habueris	dixeris
3rd s. amāuerit	habuerit	dixerit
1st pl. amāuerimus	habuerimus	dixerimus
2nd pl. amāueritis	habueritis	dixeritis
3rd pl. amāuerint	habuerint	dixerint
4	3/4	
1st s. audiuerim (audierim etc.)	cēperim	
2nd s. audiueris	cēperis	
3rd s. audiuerit	cēperit	
1st pl. audiuerimus	cēperimus	
2nd pl. audiueritis	cēperitis	
3rd pl. audiuerint	cēperint	

A5 Pluperfect active**Pluperfect indicative active 'I had —ed'**

Key: perf. stem + -ERAM -ERAS etc.

A4-5 Active verbs

1	2	3
'I had loved'	'I had had'	'I had said'
1st s. amāueram (amāram etc.)	habueram	dixeram
2nd s. amāuerās	habuerās	dixerās
3rd s. amāuerat	habuerat	dixerat
1st pl. amāuerāmus	habuerāmus	dixerāmus
2nd pl. amāuerātis	habuerātis	dixerātis
3rd pl. amāuerant	habuerant	dixerant
4	3/4	
'I had heard'	'I had captured'	
1st s. audiueram (audieram etc.)	cēperam	
2nd s. audiuerās	cēperās	
3rd s. audiuerat	cēperat	
1st pl. audiuerāmus	cēperāmus	
2nd pl. audiuerātis	cēperātis	
3rd pl. audiuerant	cēperant	

NB. No pluperfect participles, infinitives or imperatives.

Pluperfect subjunctive active 'I had —ed', 'I would have —ed'

Key: perf. stem + -ISSEM -ISSĒS etc.

1	2	3
1st s. amāuissem (amāssem etc.)	habuissem	dixissem
2nd s. amāuissēs	habuissēs	dixissēs
3rd s. amāuisset	habuisset	dixisset
1st pl. amāuissēmus	habuissēmus	dixissēmus
2nd pl. amāuissētis	habuissētis	dixissētis
3rd pl. amāuissent	habuissent	dixissent
4	3/4	
1st s. audiuissem (audissem etc.)	cēpissēm	
2nd s. audiuisssēs	cēpissēs	
3rd s. audiuisset	cēpisset	
1st pl. audiuissemus	cēpissēmus	
2nd pl. audiuissetis	cēpissetis	
3rd pl. audiuisissent	cēpissent	

A6 Future perfect active

Future perfect indicative active 'I shall have —ed'

Key: perf. stem + -ERŌ -ERIS etc.

	1	2	3
	'I shall have loved'	'I shall have had'	'I shall have said'
1st s.	amāuerō (amārō etc.)	habuerō	dixerō
2nd s.	amāueris	habueris	dixeris
3rd s.	amāuerit	habuerit	dixerit
1st pl.	amāuerimus	habuerimus	dixerimus
2nd pl.	amāueritis	habueritis	dixeritis
3rd pl.	amāuerint	habuerint	dixerint

	4	3/4
	'I shall have heard'	'I shall have captured'
1st s.	audīuerō (audierō etc.)	cēperō
2nd s.	audīueris	cēperis
3rd s.	audīuerit	cēperit
1st pl.	audīuerimus	cēperimus
2nd pl.	audīueritis	cēperitis
3rd pl.	audīuerint	cēperint

NB. No future perfect participles, imperatives, infinitives or subjunctives.

A7 Supine

1	2	3	4	3/4
'to love'	'to have'	'to say'	'to hear'	'to capture'
amātum	hābitum	dīctum	audītum	cāptum

Notes

- 1 The stem is identical with that of the perfect participle. The form is identical with acc. s. of 4th declension nouns. It is used in the acc. (-um) and abl. (-ū).

A6-7, B1 Passive verbs

2 The main uses are:

- (i) To express purpose, after verbs of motion, e.g. *lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxiliū* 'They send ambassadors to Caesar to ask for help' (Caesar).
- (ii) To form the 'future infinitive passive'. See below B2, 118²⁻³.
- (iii) In the ablative with a few adjectives, e.g. *mīrābile dīctū* 'wonderful to relate'.

B1 Present passive: personal endings -r -ris -tur -mur -minī -ntur

Present indicative passive 'I am (being) —ed'

Key: A E I I I

	1	2	3
	'I am (being) loved'	'I am (being) held'	'I am (being) said'
1st s.	āmor	hābeor	dīcor
2nd s.	amāris (amāre)	habēris (habēre)	dīceris (dīcere)
3rd s.	amātur	habētur	dīcitur
1st pl.	amāmur	habēmur	dīcimur
2nd pl.	amāminī	habēminī	dīciminī
3rd pl.	amāntur	habēntur	dīcuntur

	4	3/4
	'I am (being) heard'	'I am (being) captured'
1st s.	aūdior	cāpior
2nd s.	audīris (audīre)	cāperis (cāpere)
3rd s.	audītur	cāpitur
1st pl.	audīmur	cāpimur
2nd pl.	audīminī	capīminī
3rd pl.	audiūntur	capiūntur

Present infinitive passive 'to be —ed'

Key: -ĀRĪ -ĒRĪ -Ī -ĪRĪ -Ī

1	2	3	4	3/4
'to be loved'	'to be held'	'to be said'	'to be heard'	'to be captured'
amārī	habērī	dīcī	audīrī	cāpī

Present imperative passive 'be —ed!'

Key: -RE -MINĪ

	1	2	3	4	3/4
	'be loved!'	'be held!'	'be said!'	'be heard!'	'be captured!'
2nd s.	amāre	habēre	dīcere	audīre	cāpere
2nd pl.	amāminī	habēminī	dīciminī	audīminī	capīminī

Gerundive 'to be —ed', 'requiring, needing to be —ed', 'must be —ed'

Key: -ND-

1	2	3
'to be loved'	'to be held'	'to be said'
amānd-us a um	habēnd-us a um	dīcēnd-us a um

4	3/4
'to be heard'	'to be captured'
audiēnd-us a um	capīēnd-us a um

Pattern of declension

See *lóng-us a um* (J1(a)).

Notes

- 1 The only gerundive forms which verbs have are as above, based on the present stem.
- 2 Many verbs retain the old form in -ūnd-, e.g. *eūndum*, *oriūndum*, *gerūndus*.

Present subjunctive passive 'I am —ed', 'I may be —ed', 'I would be —ed'

Key: E A

	1	2	3
1st s.	āmer	hābear	dīcar
2nd s.	amēris (amēre)	habēāris (habēāre)	dīcāris (dīcāre)
3rd s.	amētur	habēātur	dīcātur
1st pl.	amēmur	habēāmur	dīcāmur
2nd pl.	amēminī	habēāminī	dīcāminī
3rd pl.	amēntur	habēāntur	dīcāntur

B1-2 Passive verbs

	4	3/4
1st s.	aúdiar	cápiar
2nd s.	audiāris (audiāre)	capīāris (capīāre)
3rd s.	audiātur	capīātur
1st pl.	audiāmur	capīāmur
2nd pl.	audiāminī	capīāminī
3rd pl.	audiāntur	capīāntur

B2 Future passive

Future indicative passive 'I shall be —ed'

ĀBI ĒBI E IE IE

	1	2	3
	'I shall be loved'	'I shall be held'	'I shall be said'
1st s.	amābor	habēbor	dīcar
2nd s.	amāberis (amābere)	habēberis (habēbere)	dīcēris (dīcēre)
3rd s.	amābitur	habēbitur	dīcētur
1st pl.	amābimur	habēbimur	dīcēmur
2nd pl.	amābiminī	habēbiminī	dīcēminī
3rd pl.	amābuntur	habēbuntur	dīcēntur

	4	3/4
	'I shall be heard'	'I shall be captured'
1st s.	aúdiar	cápiar
2nd s.	audiēris (audiēre)	capīēris (capīēre)
3rd s.	audiētur	capīētur
1st pl.	audiēmur	capīēmur
2nd pl.	audiēminī	capīēminī
3rd pl.	audiēntur	capīēntur

NB. The future (or 'second') imperative s. is formed as for the active (see above **A2 Note 1**), but with -r added at the end, e.g. *amātor* 'be loved'. There is no 2nd person pl. form.

Form traditionally described as 'future infinitive passive': used only in indirect statement (acc. + inf.)

Key: -UM -IRĪ

1	2	3
'that there is a movement to love'	'that there is a movement to have'	'that there is a movement to say'
amātum ¹ irī	hābitum ¹ irī	dīctum ¹ irī

4	3/4
'that there is a movement to hear'	'that there is a movement to capture'
audītum ¹ irī	cāptum ¹ irī

¹ These are fixed forms: see above A7.

NB. There are no future passive participles, or future passive subjunctives.

B3 Imperfect passive

Imperfect indicative passive 'I was (being) —ed'

Key: ĀBA ĒBA

	1	2	3
	'I was (being) loved'	'I was (being) held'	'I was (being) said'
1st s.	amābar	habēbar	dīcēbar
2nd s.	amābāris (amābāre)	habēbāris (habēbāre)	dīcēbāris (dīcēbāre)
3rd s.	amābātur	habēbātur	dīcēbātur
1st pl.	amābāmur	habēbāmur	dīcēbāmur
2nd pl.	amābāminī	habēbāminī	dīcēbāminī
3rd pl.	amābāntur	habēbāntur	dīcēbāntur

	4	3/4
	'I was (being) heard'	'I was (being) captured'
1st s.	audiēbar	capiēbar
2nd s.	audiēbāris (audiēbāre)	capiēbāris (capiēbāre)
3rd s.	audiēbātur	capiēbātur
1st pl.	audiēbāmur	capiēbāmur
2nd pl.	audiēbāminī	capiēbāminī
3rd pl.	audiēbāntur	capiēbāntur

B2-4 Passive verbs

NB. There are no imperfect passive participles, imperatives or infinitives.

Imperfect subjunctive passive 'I was being —ed', 'I might be —ed', 'I would be —ed'

Key: active infinitive + endings

	1	2	3
1st s.	amārer	habērer	dīcerer
2nd s.	amārēris (amārēre)	habērēris (habērēre)	dīcerēris (dīcerēre)
3rd s.	amārētur	habērētur	dīcerētur
1st pl.	amārēmur	habērēmur	dīcerēmur
2nd pl.	amārēminī	habērēminī	dīcerēminī
3rd pl.	amārēntur	habērēntur	dīcerēntur

	4	3/4
1st s.	audīrer	cāperer
2nd s.	audīrēris (audīrēre)	caperēris (caperēre)
3rd s.	audīrētur	caperētur
1st pl.	audīrēmur	caperēmur
2nd pl.	audīrēminī	caperēminī
3rd pl.	audīrēntur	caperēntur

B4 Perfect passive

Perfect indicative passive 'I was —ed', 'I have been —ed'

Key: perfect participle + SUM

	1	2	3
	'I was loved', 'I have been loved'	'I was held', 'I have been held'	'I was said', 'I have been said'
1st s.	amāt-us a um sum	hābit-us a um sum	dīct-us a um sum
2nd s.	amāt-us a um es	hābit-us a um es	dīct-us a um es
3rd s.	amāt-us a um est	hābit-us a um est	dīct-us a um est
1st pl.	amāt-ī ae a sumus	hābit-ī ae a sumus	dīct-ī ae a sumus
2nd pl.	amāt-ī ae a estis	hābit-ī ae a estis	dīct-ī ae a estis
3rd pl.	amāt-ī ae a sunt	hābit-ī ae a sunt	dīct-ī ae a sunt

Perfect subjunctive passive 'I was —ed', 'I have been —ed'

Key: perfect participle + SIM

	1	2	3
1st s.	amātus sim	hábitus sim	díctus sim
2nd s.	amātus sīs	hábitus sīs	díctus sīs
3rd s.	amātus sit	hábitus sit	díctus sit
1st pl.	amātī símus	hábitī símus	díctī símus
2nd pl.	amātī sītis	hábitī sītis	díctī sītis
3rd pl.	amātī sint	hábitī sint	díctī sint

	4	3/4
1st s.	audītus sim	cáptus sim
2nd s.	audītus sīs	cáptus sīs
3rd s.	audītus sit	cáptus sit
1st pl.	audītī símus	cáptī símus
2nd pl.	audītī sītis	cáptī sītis
3rd pl.	audītī sint	cáptī sint

B5 Pluperfect passive

Pluperfect indicative passive 'I had been —ed'

Key: perfect participle + ERAM

	1	2	3
	<i>'I had been loved'</i>	<i>'I had been held'</i>	<i>'I had been said'</i>
1st s.	amātus eram	hábitus eram	díctus eram
2nd s.	amātus erās	hábitus erās	díctus erās
3rd s.	amātus erat	hábitus erat	díctus erat
1st pl.	amātī erāmus	hábitī erāmus	díctī erāmus
2nd pl.	amātī erātis	hábitī erātis	díctī erātis
3rd pl.	amātī erant	hábitī erant	díctī erant

	4	3/4
	<i>'I had been heard'</i>	<i>'I had been captured'</i>
1st s.	audītus eram	cáptus eram
2nd s.	audītus erās	cáptus erās
3rd s.	audītus erat	cáptus erat

	4	3/4
	<i>'I was heard'</i> <i>'I have been heard'</i>	<i>'I was captured'</i> <i>'I have been captured'</i>
1st s.	audīt-us a um sum	cápt-us a um sum
2nd s.	audīt-us a um es	cápt-us a um es
3rd s.	audīt-us a um est	cápt-us a um est
1st pl.	audīt-ī ae a sumus	cápt-ī ae a sumus
2nd pl.	audīt-ī ae a estis	cápt-ī ae a estis
3rd pl.	audīt-ī ae a sunt	cápt-ī ae a sunt

Perfect participle passive 'having been —ed'

Key: perfect participle ending in -US -A -UM

1	2	3
<i>'having been loved'</i>	<i>'having been held'</i>	<i>'having been said'</i>
amāt-us a um	hábit-us a um	díct-us a um

4	3/4
<i>'having been heard'</i>	<i>'having been captured'</i>
audīt-us a um	cápt-us a um

Pattern of declension

See *lóng-us a um*, J1(a).

Perfect infinitive passive 'to have been —ed'

Key: perfect participle ending in -US -A -UM + ESSE

1	2	3
<i>'to have been loved'</i>	<i>'to have been held'</i>	<i>'to have been said'</i>
amāt-us a um esse	hábit-us a um esse	díct-us a um esse

4	3/4
<i>'to have been heard'</i>	<i>'to have been captured'</i>
audīt-us a um esse	cápt-us a um esse

1st pl.	audītī erāmus	cāptī erāmus
2nd pl.	audītī erātis	cāptī erātis
3rd pl.	audītī erant	cāptī erant

Pluperfect subjunctive passive 'I had been —ed', 'I would have been —ed'

Key: perfect participle + ESSEM

	1	2	3
1st s.	amātus essem	hābitus essem	dīctus essem
2nd s.	amātus essēs	hābitus essēs	dīctus essēs
3rd s.	amātus esset	hābitus esset	dīctus esset
1st pl.	amātī essēmus	hābitī essēmus	dīctī essēmus
2nd pl.	amātī essētis	hābitī essētis	dīctī essētis
3rd pl.	amātī essent	hābitī essent	dīctī essent

	4	3/4
1st s.	audītus essem	cāptus essem
2nd s.	audītus essēs	cāptus essēs
3rd s.	audītus esset	cāptus esset
1st pl.	audītī essēmus	cāptī essēmus
2nd pl.	audītī essētis	cāptī essētis
3rd pl.	audītī essent	cāptī essent

B6 Future perfect passive

Future perfect indicative passive 'I shall have been —ed'

Key: perfect participle + ERŌ

	1	2	3
	'I shall have been loved'	'I shall have been held'	'I shall have been said'
1st s.	amātus erō	hābitus erō	dīctus erō
2nd s.	amātus eris	hābitus eris	dīctus eris
3rd s.	amātus erit	hābitus erit	dīctus erit
1st pl.	amātī erimus	hābitī erimus	dīctī erimus
2nd pl.	amātī eritis	hābitī eritis	dīctī eritis
3rd pl.	amātī erunt	hābitī erunt	dīctī erunt

B5–6, C1 Deponent verbs

	4	3/4
	'I shall have been heard'	'I shall have been captured'
1st s.	audītus erō	cāptus erō
2nd s.	audītus eris	cāptus eris
3rd s.	audītus erit	cāptus erit
1st pl.	audītī erimus	cāptī erimus
2nd pl.	audītī eritis	cāptī eritis
3rd pl.	audītī erunt	cāptī erunt

C1 Present deponent

Present indicative deponent 'I —', 'I am —ing', 'I do —'

Key: as for passive

	1	2	3
	'I threaten'	'I promise'	'I speak'
1st s.	mīnor	polliceor	loquor
2nd s.	mīnāris (mīnāre)	pollicēris (pollicēre)	loqueris (loquere)
3rd s.	mīnātur	pollicētur	loquitur
1st pl.	mīnāmur	pollicēmur	loquimur
2nd pl.	mīnāminī	pollicēminī	loquiminī
3rd pl.	mīnāntur	pollicēntur	loquūntur

	4	3/4
	'I lie'	'I advance'
1st s.	mēntior	prōgrēdior
2nd s.	mēntīris (mēntīre)	prōgrēderis (prōgrēdere)
3rd s.	mēntītur	prōgrēditur
1st pl.	mēntīmur	prōgrēdimur
2nd pl.	mēntīminī	prōgrēdīminī
3rd pl.	mēntiūntur	prōgrēdiūntur

Present participle deponent '—ing'

1	2	3
'threatening'	'promising'	'speaking'
mīnāns (mīnānt-)	pōllicēns (pollicēnt-)	lōquēns (loquēnt-)

4	3/4
'lying'	'advancing'
mentiens (mentiént-)	prōgrēdiēns (prōgrēdiént-)

NB. For declension, see A1.

Present infinitive deponent 'to —'

1	2	3	4	3/4
'to threaten'	'to promise'	'to speak'	'to lie'	'to advance'
minārī	pollicērī	lōquī	mentīrī	prōgrēdī

Present imperative deponent '—!'

	1	2	3	4	3/4
	'threaten!'	'promise!'	'speak!'	'lie!'	'advance!'
2nd s.	mināre	pollicēre	lōquere	mentīre	prōgrēdere
2nd pl.	mināminī	pollicēminī	lōquiminī	mentīminī	prōgrēdīminī

Gerundive 'to be —ed', 'requiring, needing to be —ed', 'must be —ed' (see 160 footnote)

1	2	3
'to be threatened'	'to be promised'	'to be spoken'
minānd-us a um	pollicēnd-us a um	lōquēnd-us a um

4	3/4
'to be lied'	'to be advanced'
mentiēnd-us a um	prōgrēdiēnd-us a um

Notes

- 1 For declension, see *lōng-us* (J1(a)).
- 2 *ōrior* 'rise' retains the old gerundive form *oriūndum*.

Gerund '(the act of) —ing'

1	2	3
'(the act of) threatening'	'(the act of) promising'	'(the act of) speaking'
minārī, minānd-um ī 2n.	pollicērī, pollicēnd-um ī 2n.	lōquī, lōquēnd-um ī 2n.

C1-2 Deponent verbs

4	3/4
'(the act of) lying'	'(the act of) advancing'
mentīrī, mentiēnd-um ī 2n.	prōgrēdī, prōgrēdiēnd-um ī 2n.

NB. The infinitive form often acts as a nominative noun; the gerund itself has no nominative.

Present subjunctive deponent 'I —', 'I may —', 'I would —'

	1	2	3
1st s.	minēr	pollicear	lōquar
2nd s.	minēris (minēre)	pollicēaris (pollicēare)	loquāris (loquāre)
3rd s.	minētur	pollicēatur	loquātur
1st pl.	minēmur	pollicēamur	loquāmur
2nd pl.	minēminī	pollicēaminī	loquāminī
3rd pl.	minentur	pollicēantur	loquāntur

	4	3/4
1st s.	mentiar	prōgrēdiar
2nd s.	mentiāris (mentiāre)	prōgrēdiāris (prōgrēdiāre)
3rd s.	mentiātur	prōgrēdiātur
1st pl.	mentiāmur	prōgrēdiāmur
2nd pl.	mentiāminī	prōgrēdiāminī
3rd pl.	mentiāntur	prōgrēdiāntur

C2 Future deponent

Future indicative deponent 'I shall —', 'I shall be —ing'

	1	2	3
	'I shall threaten'	'I shall promise'	'I shall speak'
1st s.	minābor	pollicēbor	lōquar
2nd s.	mināberis (minābere)	pollicēberis (pollicēbere)	loquēris (loquēre)
3rd s.	minābitur	pollicēbitur	loquētur
1st pl.	minābimur	pollicēbimur	loquēmur
2nd pl.	minābiminī	pollicēbiminī	loquēminī
3rd pl.	minābuntur	pollicēbuntur	loquēntur

	4	3/4
	'I shall lie'	'I shall advance'
1st s.	mentiar (<i>rarely</i> mentībor)	prōgrēdiar
2nd s.	mentiēris (mentiēre)	prōgrediēris (progrediēre)
3rd s.	mentiētur	prōgrediētur
1st pl.	mentiēmur	prōgrediēmur
2nd pl.	mentiēmini	prōgrediēmini
3rd pl.	mentiēntur	prōgrediēntur

Future participle deponent 'about to —', 'on the point of —ing', 'with a view to —ing'

Key: perfect participle stem + ŪR-US -A -UM

1	2	3
'about to threaten'	'about to promise'	'about to speak'
minātūr-us a um	pollicitūr-us a um	locūtūr-us a um

4	3/4
'about to lie'	'about to advance'
mentītūr-us a um	prōgressūr-us a um

Future infinitive deponent 'to be about to'

Key: future participle + ESSE

1	2	3
'to be about to threaten'	'to be about to promise'	'to be about to speak'
minātūr-us a um esse	pollicitūr-us a um esse	locūtūr-us a um esse

4	3/4
'to be about to lie'	'to be about to advance'
mentītūr-us a um esse	prōgressūr-us a um esse

Notes

- 1 For future (or 'second') imperative, see **A2 Note 1**.
- 2 For 'future' subjunctive, see **A2 Note 2**.

C3 Imperfect deponent

Imperfect indicative deponent 'I was —ing', 'I used to —', 'I began —ing'

	1	2	3
	'I was threatening'	'I was promising'	'I was speaking'
1st s.	minābar	pollicēbar	loquēbar
2nd s.	minābāris (minābāre)	pollicēbāris (pollicēbāre)	loquēbāris (loquēbāre)
3rd s.	minābātur	pollicēbātur	loquēbātur
1st pl.	minābāmur	pollicēbāmur	loquēbāmur
2nd pl.	minābāmini	pollicēbāmini	loquēbāmini
3rd pl.	minābāntur	pollicēbāntur	loquēbāntur

	4	3/4
	'I was lying'	'I was advancing'
1st s.	mentiēbar	prōgrediēbar
2nd s.	mentiēbāris (mentiēbāre)	prōgrediēbāris (prōgrediēbāre)
3rd s.	mentiēbātur	prōgrediēbātur
1st pl.	mentiēbāmur	prōgrediēbāmur
2nd pl.	mentiēbāmini	prōgrediēbāmini
3rd pl.	mentiēbāntur	prōgrediēbāntur

NB. No participles, infinitives or imperatives.

Imperfect subjunctive deponent 'I was —ing', 'I might —', 'I would —'

	1	2	3
1st s.	minārer	pollicērer	loquerer
2nd s.	minārēris (minārēre)	pollicērēris (pollicērēre)	loquerēris (loquerēre)
3rd s.	minārētur	pollicērētur	loquerētur
1st pl.	minārēmur	pollicērēmur	loquerēmur
2nd pl.	minārēmini	pollicērēmini	loquerēmini
3rd pl.	minārēntur	pollicērēntur	loquerēntur

	4	3/4
1st s.	mentīrer	prōgrēderer
2nd s.	mentīrēris (mentīrēre)	prōgrēderēris (prōgrēderēre)
3rd s.	mentīrētur	prōgrēderētur
1st pl.	mentīrēmur	prōgrēderēmur
2nd pl.	mentīrēmini	prōgrēderēmini
3rd pl.	mentīrēntur	prōgrēderēntur

C4 Perfect deponent

Perfect indicative deponent: 'I —ed', 'I have —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I threatened', 'I have threatened'	'I promised', 'I have promised'	'I spoke', 'I have spoken'
1st s.	mināt-us a um sum	pollicit-us a um sum	locūt-us a um sum
2nd s.	mināt-us a um es	pollicit-us a um es	locūt-us a um es
3rd s.	mināt-us a um est	pollicit-us a um est	locūt-us a um est
1st pl.	mināt-ī ae a sumus	pollicit-ī ae a sumus	locūt-ī ae a sumus
2nd pl.	mināt-ī ae a estis	pollicit-ī ae a estis	locūt-ī ae a estis
3rd pl.	mināt-ī ae a sunt	pollicit-ī ae a sunt	locūt-ī ae a sunt
	4	3/4	
	'I lied', 'I have lied'	'I advanced', 'I have advanced'	
1st s.	mentīt-us a um sum	prōgrēss-us a um sum	
2nd s.	mentīt-us a um es	prōgrēss-us a um es	
3rd s.	mentīt-us a um est	prōgrēss-us a um est	
1st pl.	mentīt-ī ae a sumus	prōgrēss-ī ae a sumus	
2nd pl.	mentīt-ī ae a estis	prōgrēss-ī ae a estis	
3rd pl.	mentīt-ī ae a sunt	prōgrēss-ī ae a sunt	

Perfect participle deponent 'having —ed'

Key: perfect participle stem + -US -A -UM

	1	2	3
	'having threatened'	'having promised'	'having spoken'
	mināt-us a um	pollicit-us a um	locūt-us a um
	4	3/4	
	'having lied'	'having advanced'	
	mentīt-us a um	prōgrēss-us a um	

Notes

- 1 The perfect participle of many deponents is used to mean '—ing' (i.e. as a present participle): e.g. *rātus* 'thinking', *uēritus* 'fearing', *arbitrātus* 'thinking' etc.

C4 Deponent verbs

- 2 Many deponents have a *passive* as well as an active meaning in the perfect participle: e.g. *pollicitus* 'having promised' or 'having been promised'.

Perfect infinitive deponent 'to have —ed'

Key: perfect participle + ESSE

	1	2	3
	'to have threatened'	'to have promised'	'to have spoken'
	mināt-us a um esse	pollicit-us a um esse	locūt-us a um esse
	4	3/4	
	'to have lied'	'to have advanced'	
	mentīt-us a um esse	prōgrēss-us a um esse	

NB. There is no perfect imperative.

Perfect subjunctive deponent 'I —ed', 'I have —ed'

	1	2	3
1st s.	minātus sim	pollicitus sim	locūtus sim
2nd s.	minātus sis	pollicitus sis	locūtus sis
3rd s.	minātus sit	pollicitus sit	locūtus sit
1st pl.	minātī simus	pollicitī simus	locūtī simus
2nd pl.	minātī sitis	pollicitī sitis	locūtī sitis
3rd pl.	minātī sint	pollicitī sint	locūtī sint
	4	3/4	
1st s.	mentītus sim	prōgrēssus sim	
2nd s.	mentītus sis	prōgrēssus sis	
3rd s.	mentītus sit	prōgrēssus sit	
1st pl.	mentītī simus	prōgrēssī simus	
2nd pl.	mentītī sitis	prōgrēssī sitis	
3rd pl.	mentītī sint	prōgrēssī sint	

C5 Pluperfect deponent

Pluperfect indicative deponent 'I had —ed'

	1	2	3
1st s.	minātus éram	pollicitus éram	locūtus éram
2nd s.	minātus érās	pollicitus érās	locūtus érās
3rd s.	minātus érat	pollicitus érat	locūtus érat
1st pl.	minātī erāmus	pollicitī erāmus	locūtī erāmus
2nd pl.	minātī erātis	pollicitī erātis	locūtī erātis
3rd pl.	minātī érant	pollicitī érant	locūtī érant
	4	3/4	
	'I had lied'	'I had advanced'	
1st s.	mentītus éram	prōgrēssus éram	
2nd s.	mentītus érās	prōgrēssus érās	
3rd s.	mentītus érat	prōgrēssus érat	
1st pl.	mentītī erāmus	prōgrēssī erāmus	
2nd pl.	mentītī erātis	prōgrēssī erātis	
3rd pl.	mentītī érant	prōgrēssī érant	

NB. There is no pluperfect participle, infinitive or imperative.

Pluperfect subjunctive deponent 'I had —ed', 'I would have —ed'

	1	2	3
1st s.	minātus essem	pollicitus essem	locūtus essem
2nd s.	minātus essēs	pollicitus essēs	locūtus essēs
3rd s.	minātus esset	pollicitus esset	locūtus esset
1st pl.	minātī essēmus	pollicitī essēmus	locūtī essēmus
2nd pl.	minātī essētis	pollicitī essētis	locūtī essētis
3rd pl.	minātī essent	pollicitī essent	locūtī essent
	4	3/4	
1st s.	mentītus essem	prōgrēssus essem	
2nd s.	mentītus essēs	prōgrēssus essēs	
3rd s.	mentītus esset	prōgrēssus esset	
1st pl.	mentītī essēmus	prōgrēssī essēmus	
2nd pl.	mentītī essētis	prōgrēssī essētis	
3rd pl.	mentītī essent	prōgrēssī essent	

C6 Future perfect deponent

Future perfect indicative deponent 'I shall have —ed'

	1	2	3
	'I shall have threatened'	'I shall have promised'	'I shall have spoken'
1st s.	minātus erō	pollicitus erō	locūtus erō
2nd s.	minātus eris	pollicitus eris	locūtus eris
3rd s.	minātus erit	pollicitus erit	locūtus erit
1st pl.	minātī erimus	pollicitī erimus	locūtī erimus
2nd pl.	minātī eritis	pollicitī eritis	locūtī eritis
3rd pl.	minātī erunt	pollicitī erunt	locūtī erunt
	4	3/4	
	'I shall have lied'	'I shall have advanced'	
1st s.	mentītus erō	prōgrēssus erō	
2nd s.	mentītus eris	prōgrēssus eris	
3rd s.	mentītus erit	prōgrēssus erit	
1st pl.	mentītī erimus	prōgrēssī erimus	
2nd pl.	mentītī eritis	prōgrēssī eritis	
3rd pl.	mentītī erunt	prōgrēssī erunt	

Notes

1 There is no future perfect participle, infinitive, imperative or subjunctive.

2 For supine forms and meanings see above, A7.

D Semi-deponents

Some verbs in Latin have present, future and imperfect tenses in ACTIVE forms, but perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses in DEPONENT forms. Meaning is NOT affected by this change. E.g.

aúdeō 2 aús-us 'I dare'	fīō fierī fāctus 'I become', 'I am made', 'I am done'
aúdeō 'I dare'	fīō 'I become'
audēbō 'I shall dare'	fīam 'I shall become'
audēbam 'I was daring'	fīēbam 'I was becoming'
aúsus sum 'I have dared'	fāctus sum 'I became'
aúsus éram 'I had dared'	fāctus éram 'I had become'
aúsus érō 'I shall have dared'	fāctus érō 'I shall have become'

Note the irregular conjugation of *fīdō*:

1st s.	fīdō
2nd s.	fīs
3rd s.	fit
1st pl.	— ¹
2nd pl.	— ¹
3rd pl.	fīunt

¹ *fīmus* and *fītis* are not found.

Notes

- 1 Semi-deponents have past participles just like full deponents, e.g. *aūsus* 'having dared', *fāctus* 'having been made', 'having become'.
- 2 Similar verbs are *gaūdeō* 2 *gāuīsus* 'I rejoice', *sóleō* 2 *sólitus* 'I am accustomed; *fīdō* 3 *fīsus* 'I trust'.
- 3 *aūdeō* has a regular subjunctive *aúdeam* -ās etc. and a form *aúsim* used only as a potential, meaning 'I would dare'. Cf. *uélīm* 'I would like'. See 153.2.

E1 Irregular verbs: *sum*

sum *esse* *futūr-us* 'I am'

Present	Future	Imperfect
Indicative 'I am'	Indicative 'I shall be'	Indicative 'I was'
1st s. <i>sum</i>	<i>erō</i>	<i>eram</i>
2nd s. <i>es</i>	<i>eris</i>	<i>erās</i>
3rd s. <i>est</i>	<i>erit</i>	<i>erat</i>
1st pl. <i>sūmus</i>	<i>erimus</i>	<i>erāmus</i>
2nd pl. <i>estis</i>	<i>eritis</i>	<i>erātis</i>
3rd pl. <i>sunt</i>	<i>erunt</i>	<i>erant</i>
Infinitive 'to be'	Infinitive 'to be about to be'	
<i>esse</i>	<i>futūr-us</i> a <i>um</i> <i>esse</i> or <i>fóre</i>	
	Participle 'about to be'	
	<i>futūr-us</i> a <i>um</i>	
Imperative 'be!'	Imperative	
2nd s. <i>es</i>	2nd/3rd s. <i>estō</i> 'be!'	
2nd pl. <i>este</i>	'let him be!'	
	2nd pl. <i>estōte</i> 'be!'	
	3rd pl. <i>súntō</i> 'let them be!'	

D, E1-2 Irregular verbs

	Subjunctive	Subjunctive
1st s.	<i>sim</i>	<i>essem</i> (sometimes <i>fórem</i> <i>fórēs</i> etc.)
2nd s.	<i>sīs</i>	<i>essēs</i>
3rd s.	<i>sit</i>	<i>esset</i>
1st pl.	<i>simus</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
2nd pl.	<i>sītis</i>	<i>essētis</i>
3rd pl.	<i>sint</i>	<i>essent</i>

NB. All perfect forms regularly derived from *fú-ī*.

E2 Irregular verbs: *ferō*

Active

ferō *ferre* *tūlī* *lātus* 'I bear', 'I carry', 'I endure', 'I lead'

Present	Future	Imperfect
Indicative 'I carry'	Indicative 'I shall carry'	Indicative 'I was carrying'
1st s. <i>ferō</i>	<i>fēram</i>	<i>ferēbam</i>
2nd s. <i>fers</i>	<i>fērēs</i>	<i>ferēbās</i>
3rd s. <i>fert</i>	<i>fēret</i>	<i>ferēbat</i>
1st pl. <i>fērimus</i>	<i>ferēmus</i>	<i>ferēbāmus</i>
2nd pl. <i>fērtis</i>	<i>ferētis</i>	<i>ferēbātis</i>
3rd pl. <i>fērunt</i>	<i>fērent</i>	<i>ferēbant</i>

Infinitive 'to carry'
ferre

Imperative 'carry!'
2nd s. *fer*
2nd pl. *ferte*

Participle 'carrying'
fērēns (*ferént-*)

Subjunctive	Subjunctive
1st s. <i>fēram</i>	<i>fērrem</i>
2nd s. <i>fērās</i>	<i>fērres</i>
3rd s. <i>fērat</i>	<i>fērret</i>
1st pl. <i>ferāmus</i>	<i>ferrēmus</i>
2nd pl. <i>ferātis</i>	<i>ferrētis</i>
3rd pl. <i>fērant</i>	<i>fērrent</i>

Passive

	Present	Future	Imperfect
	Indicative	Indicative	Indicative
	'I am being carried'	'I shall be carried'	'I was (being) carried'
1st s.	fēror	fērar	ferēbar
2nd s.	fērris	ferēris (ferēre)	ferēbāris (ferēbāre)
3rd s.	fērtur	ferētur	ferēbātur
1st pl.	fērimur	ferēmur	ferēbāmur
2nd pl.	ferīminī	ferēminī	ferēbāminī
3rd pl.	ferūntur	ferēntur	ferēbāntur
	Infinitive		
	'to be carried'		
	fērrī		
	Imperative		
	'be carried!'		
	2nd s. fērrē		
	2nd pl. ferīminī		
	Subjunctive	Subjunctive	
1st s.	fērar	fērrer	
2nd s.	ferāris (ferāre)	ferrēris (ferrēre)	
3rd s.	ferātur	ferrētur	
1st pl.	ferāmur	ferrēmur	
2nd pl.	ferāminī	ferrēminī	
3rd pl.	ferāntur	ferrēntur	

NB. All perfect forms are regularly derived from *túl-ī lāt-us*.

E3 Irregular verbs: *possum*

Pōssum pōsse pōtuī 'I can', 'I am able'

	Present	Future	Imperfect
	Indicative 'I can'	Indicative 'I shall be able'	Indicative 'I was able'
1st s.	pōssum	pōterō	pōteram
2nd s.	pōtes	pōteris	pōterās
3rd s.	pōtest	pōterit	pōterat
1st pl.	pōssumus	potērimus	poterāmus
2nd pl.	potēstis	potēritis	poterātis
3rd pl.	pōssunt	pōterunt	pōterant

E2-4 Irregular verbs

Infinitive 'to be able'

pōsse

Subjunctive

1st s.	pōssim
2nd s.	pōssīs
3rd s.	pōssit
1st pl.	possīmus
2nd pl.	possītis
3rd pl.	pōssint

Subjunctive

pōssēm
pōssēs
pōsset
possēmus
possētis
pōssent

NB. All perfects regularly derived from *pōtu-ī*.

E4 Irregular verbs: *eō*

Active

	Present	Future	Imperfect
	Indicative 'I go'	Indicative 'I shall go'	Indicative 'I was going'
1st s.	éō	ībō	ībam
2nd s.	īs	ībis	ībās
3rd s.	it	ībit	ībat
1st pl.	īmus	ībimus	ībāmus
2nd pl.	ītis	ībitis	ībātis
3rd pl.	éunt	ībunt	ībant

Infinitive 'to go'

īre

Infinitive 'to be about to go'

itūr-us a um esse

Imperative 'go!'

2nd s. ī

2nd pl. īte

Participle 'going'

īēns (eūnt-is)

Participle 'about to go'

itūr-us a um

Gerund 'to go'

'(the act of) going'

īre, eūnd-um ī 2n.

	Subjunctive
1st s.	éam
2nd s.	éās
3rd s.	éat
1st pl.	eāmus
2nd pl.	eātis
3rd pl.	éant

Subjunctive
īrem
īrēs
īret
īrēmus
īrētis
īrent

Passive (used in compounds)

	Present
	Indicative 'I am approached'
1st s.	ádeor
2nd s.	adīris (adīre)
3rd s.	adītur
1st pl.	adīmur
2nd pl.	adīminī
3rd pl.	adeúntur

NB. All other parts are regularly formed from *īu-ī/ī-ī it-us*.

E5 Irregular verbs: *uolō, nōlō, mālō*

uolō uēlle uólui 'I wish'
nōlō nōlle nōlui 'I am unwilling', 'I refuse'
mālō mälle máluī 'I prefer'

These are formed regularly as third conjugation verbs except in the following forms.

	Present	Present	Present
	Indicative 'I wish'	Indicative 'I refuse'	Indicative 'I prefer'
1st s.	uólō	nólō	mālō
2nd s.	uīs	nōn uīs	máuīs
3rd s.	uult	nōn uult	máuult
1st pl.	uólumus	nólumus	málumus
2nd pl.	uúltis	nōn uúltis	máuúltis
3rd pl.	uólunt	nólunt	málunt
	Infinitive 'to wish'	Infinitive 'to refuse'	Infinitive 'to prefer'
	uēlle	nōlle	mälle

E4-5, F1 Defective verbs, impersonal verbs

		<i>Imperative 'do not (wish)!'</i>	
		2nd s. nōlī	
		2nd pl. nōlīte	
	<i>Present subjunctive</i>	<i>Present subjunctive</i>	<i>Present subjunctive</i>
1st s.	uélīm	nólīm	málim
2nd s.	uélīs	nólīs	mális
3rd s.	uélit	nólit	málit
1st pl.	uelīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
2nd pl.	uelītis	nólītis	málītis
3rd pl.	uélint	nólint	málint
	<i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>
1st s.	uéllem	nóllem	mállem
2nd s.	uélles etc.	nóllēs etc.	mállēs etc.

Notes

- 1 -se was the original infinitive ending (cf. *és-se*). Since *s* becomes *r* in between vowels (cf. *ónus*, **H3(d)Note**), *amāse* becomes *amāre*. When attached to a consonant stem, *s* becomes assimilated to it, e.g. *uel-se* → *uēlle*; *nōl-se* → *nōlle*.
- 2 *uólō* and *mālō* have no imperative. But the original imperative of *uólō*, *uel*, became the conjunction meaning 'or'.

F1 Defective verbs

These verbs lack certain forms.

(a) *coepī, meminī, ōdī*

coepī 'I have begun' (generally), *meminī* 'I remember' and *ōdī* 'I hate' (always) have only perfect-stem forms. Note that *meminī* and *ōdī* are present in meaning.

	Indicative	
Perfect	coépī 'I began'	meminī 'I remember'
Future perfect	coéperō 'I shall have begun'	memínerō 'I shall remember'
Pluperfect	coéperam 'I had begun'	memíneram 'I remembered'

Perfect	ôdī 'I hate'	
Future perfect	ôderō 'I shall hate'	
Pluperfect	ôderam 'I hated'	
<i>Infinitive, imperative, participles</i>		
Perfect infinitive	coepisse 'to have begun'	meminisse 'to remember'
Future infinitive	coeptū-us a um esse 'to be about to begin'	none
Imperative	none	2nd s. meméntō 2nd pl. mementôte } 'remember!'
Perfect participle	coépt-us a um 'having begun', 'having been begun'	none
Future participle	coeptū-us a um 'about to begin'	none
<i>Subjunctive</i>		
Perfect	coeperim	memínerim ôderim
Pluperfect	coepissem	meminíssem ôdissem

NB. *nōscō* 'I get to know' has a perfect form *nōuī*, meaning 'I have got to know' i.e. 'I know'. Thus *nōuerō* (often *nōrō*) 'I shall know', *nōueram* (often *nōram*) 'I knew', *nōuísse* (often *nōsse*) 'to know'.

(b) *aiō*

	Present indicative 'I say'	Imperfect indicative 'I said', 'I was saying'
1st s.	áiō	aiēbam
2nd s.	áis	aiēbās etc.
3rd s.	áit	
1st pl.	—	
2nd pl.	—	
3rd pl.	áiunt	

F1-2 Defective verbs, impersonal verbs

(c) *inquam* 'I say'

	Present indicative 'I say'	Future indicative 'I will say'	Imperfect indicative 'I was saying', 'I said'
1st s.	inquam	—	—
2nd s.	inquis	inquiēs	—
3rd s.	inquit	inquiet	inquiēbat
1st pl.	inquimus	—	—
2nd pl.	inquitis	—	—
3rd pl.	inquiunt	—	—

NB. *inquam* is used only to introduce direct speech.

F2 Impersonal verbs

These verbs have only the third person singular in each tense, an infinitive and a gerund:

- opórtet* 'it is right for (the accusative) to (infinitive)'
- décet* 'it is fitting for (the accusative) to (infinitive)'
- dēdecet* 'it is unseemly for (the accusative) to (infinitive)'
- míseret* 'it moves (the accusative) to pity for/at (the genitive)', 'x (acc.) is sorry for y (gen.)'
- paénitet* 'it repents (the accusative) of (the genitive)', 'x (acc.) regrets y (gen.)'
- píget* 'it vexes (the accusative) at (the genitive)', 'x (acc.) is sick of y (gen.)'
- púdet* 'it moves (the accusative) to shame at (the genitive)', 'x (acc.) feels shame at y (gen.)'
- taédet* 'it wearies (the accusative) at (the genitive)', 'x (acc.) is tired of y (gen.)'
- libet* 'it is agreeable to (the dative) to (infinitive)', 'x (dat.) chooses to y (infin.)'
- lícet* 'it is permitted to (the dative) to (infinitive)' (also with *ut* + subj.)
- plácet* 'it is pleasing to (the dative) to (infinitive)', 'x (dat.) decides to y (infin.)'

Note the principal parts: they are all regular 2nd conjugation, e.g. *opórtet oportēre opórtuit*. *libet*, *lícet* and *plácet* are also commonly used in the passive

perfect, *lībitum est* 'it pleased', *līcītum est* 'it was allowed', *plācītum est* 'it was decided'.

The following impersonal verbs are followed by *ut* + subjunctive or accusative and infinitive constructions:

accidit 'it happens (that)' (*ut* + subj.)
appāret 'it is evident (that)' (*ut* + subj. or acc. + inf.)
cōnstat 'it is agreed (that)' (acc. + inf.)
rēfert } 'it is important (that)' (acc. + inf. or *ut* + subj.)
īnterest }

NB. 'It is of importance to me, you etc.' *mēā, tuā, suā, nōstrā, uēstrā rēfert* or *īnterest*. Both *rēfert* and *īnterest* take a genitive, e.g. *īnterest omnium* 'it is in the interests of all' (Cicero).

Verbs which do not control an object in the accusative cannot be turned into the passive directly, and have to adopt an impersonal third person singular form, e.g.

ītur lit. 'it is being gone', i.e. 'people are going'
uēntum est lit. 'it has been come', i.e. 'there has been an arrival', 'people came'
mīhi nōn crēditur lit. 'it is not being believed to me', i.e. 'credence is not being given to me'
ēis parcēbātur lit. 'it was being spared to them', i.e. 'they were being spared', 'clemency was being extended to them'

G Principal parts of irregular verbs

This list contains the principal parts of all irregular verbs met in the course together with a few important additions. Verbs are listed without their prefixes (e.g. for *īnuēniō* see under *uēniō*). There are two exceptions:

- Where a verb is normally found only with a prefix, e.g. *cōnflīgō*.
- Where a verb has been met in the course only with a prefix.

The Total Learning Vocabulary (p. 557) contains the principal parts of all compound irregular verbs learned. Note that where a verb has no perfect participle, the future participle appears where that exists.

abiciō see *iāciō*
accumbō 3 *accūbuī accūbitum* I lie at table
adipīscor 3 dep. *adēptus* I get, gain, acquire

F2, G Principal parts of irregular verbs

adiungō see *iungō*
adiuuō see *iūuō*
āgō 3 *ēgī āctus* (compounds *-igō* 3 *-ēgī -āctus*) I do, act; drive, lead, direct; spend, pass; discuss
aiō (no inf., perf. or perf. part.) I say
ālō 3 *āluī āltus* I feed, nourish, rear; support, strengthen
aperiō 4 *aperuī apertus* I open; reveal
arcessō 3 *arcessuī arcessitus* I summon
ārdeō 2 *ārsī ārsurus* I burn; am in love
arguō 3 *arguī argutus* I charge; make clear, prove
audeō 2 semi-dep. *ausus* I dare
aufferō *aufferre abstulī ablātus* I take away
augeō 2 *auxī auctus* I increase
bibō 3 *bibī* — (*pōtus* used as perf. part; *pōturus* as fut. part.) I drink
cādō 3 *cēcidī cāsum* (compounds *-cidō* 3 *-cidī -cāsus*) I fall; die
caedō 3 *cecīdī caesus* (compounds *-cidō* 3 *-cidī -cīsus*) I cut (down); flog, beat; kill
cānō 3 *cēcinī* — (compounds *-cinō*) I sing; play
cāpiō 3/4 *cēpī cāptus* (compounds *-cāpiō* 3/4 *-cēpī -cēptus*) I take, capture
cārpō 3 *cārpsī cārptus* (compounds *-cērpō* 3 *-cērpsī -cērptus*) I pluck
cāueō 2 *cāuī cāutus* I am wary
cēdō 3 *cēssī cēssum* I yield; go
cērnō 3 *crēuī crētus* I decide; see
cīngō 3 *cīnxī cīnctus* I gird; surround
circumsēdeō see *sēdeō*
claudō 3 *clausī clausus* (compounds *-clūdō* 3 *-clūsī -clūsus*) I shut
colō 3 *coluī cūltus* I worship; cultivate, till; inhabit
coepī coepisse coeptus I have begun
complēctor 3 dep. *complēxus* I embrace
cōmpleō 2 *complēuī complētus* I fill up; accomplish
comprehēndō see *prehēndō*
concūtiō 3/4 *concūssī concūssus* (see *quātiō*) I shake violently; disturb, alarm
cōnfiteor see *fāteor*
cōnflīgō 3 *cōnflīxī cōnflīctus* I fight
cōnfōdiō see *fōdiō*
coniciō see *iāciō*
coniungō see *iungō*
cōnsīdō 3 *cōnsēdī* — I settle down; encamp
cōnsistō 3 *cōnstitī* — (see *sistō*) I stop, stand my ground

cōspiciō 3/4 *cōspēxī cōspēctus* I catch sight of; observe, gaze on
cōsulō 3 *cōsulū cōsultus* I consult
cōquō 3 *cōxī cōctus* I cook
crēdō 3 *crēdidī crēditum* I believe (in); entrust
crépō 1 *crēpuī crēpitus* I rattle
crēscō 3 *crēuī crētum* (=sprung from) I grow (intrans.)
cubō 3 *cubuī cubitum* I lie; sleep; recline at table
cupiō 3/4 *cupiū cupītus* I desire, yearn for; want desperately
currō 3 *cucurrī cūsum* (compounds often have perf. -*currī*) I run
dēfendō 3 *dēfēndī dēfēsus* I defend
dēfūngor see *fūngor*
dēleō 2 *dēlēuī dēlētus* I destroy
dēprehēndō see *prehēndō*
dēscēndō see *scāndō*
dēserō see *sērō*
dēspuō see *spūō*
dīcō 3 *dīxī dictus* I speak, say
diffidō see *fidō*
dīscō 3 *dīdicī* — I learn
dīuidō 3 *dīuīsi dīuīsus* I divide
dō 1 *dēdī dātus* (compounds -*dō* 3 -*didī -ditus*) I give
dōceō 2 *dōcuī dōctus* I teach
dūcō 3 *dūxī dūctus* I lead; think, consider
edō *esse ēdī ēsus* (3rd s. pres. *est*) I eat
ēciō see *iāciō*
ēmō 3 *ēmī ēmptus* (compounds -*imō* 3 -*ēmī -ēmtus*) I buy
ēō *īre īī itum* I go/come
expellō see *pellō*
extinguō 3 *extīnxī extīnctus* I extinguish
fāciō 3/4 *fēcī fāctus* (most compounds -*ficiō* 3/4 -*fēcī -fēctus*) I make;
do
fāllō 3 *fefēllī fālsus* I deceive
fāteor 2 dep. *fāssus* (compounds -*fiteor* 2 dep. -*fēssus*) I
acknowledge
fāueō 2 *fāuī fāutū* I am favourable to
fēriō 4 (*percūssī percūssus*) I strike; beat; kill
fērō *fērre tūlī lātus* I bear; lead
fēruēō 2 *fēruī* (or *fērūī*) — I boil
fidō 3 semi-dep. *fīsus* I trust
fīgō 3 *fīxī fīxus* I fix

fīō fierī fāctus (semi-dep.) I become; am done, am made
findō 3 *fidī fīssus* I cleave, split
fīngō 3 *fīnxī fīctus* I make up, fabricate
flēctō 3 *flēxi flēxus* I bend
flēō 2 *flēuī flētum* I weep
fluō 3 *fluxī* — I flow
fōdiō 3/4 *fōdī fōssus* I dig
frāngō 3 *frēgī frāctus* (compounds -*frīngō* 3 -*frēgī -frāctus*) I break
frūor 3 dep. *frūctus* I enjoy
fūgiō 3/4 *fūgī fugitūrus* I escape, run off, flee
fūlgeō 2 *fūlsī* — I shine
fūndō 3 *fūdī fūsus* I pour; rout
fūngor 3 dep. *fūnctus* I perform, discharge
gaudeō 2 semi-dep. *gauīsus* I am glad, rejoice
gērō 3 *gēssī gēstus* I do, conduct
gīgnō 3 *gēnuī gēnitus* I beget, produce
grādiōr 3/4 dep. *grēssus* (compounds -*grēdiōr* 3/4 -*grēssus*) I step,
walk, go
haēreō 2 *haēsī haēsum* I stick
haūriō 4 *haūsī haūstus* I drain, draw
iāciō 3/4 *iēcī iāctus* (compounds -*īciō* 3/4 -*iēcī -iēctus*) I throw
incēndō 3 *incēndī incēnsus* I set fire to; burn
indūlgeō 2 *indūlsī* — I yield, give myself up to
īnduō 3 *īnduī indūtus* I put on
īnquam no inf. *īnquī* — I say
īnstituō see *stātuō*
īnstruō see *struō*
īnuādō see *uādō*
īrāscōr 3 dep. *īrātus* I grow angry
īrrīdeō see *rīdeō*
iūbeō 2 *iūssī iūssus* I order, command
iūngō 3 *iūnxī iūnctus* I yoke; join
iūuō 1 *iūuī iūutus* I help; delight, please
lābor 3 dep. *lāpsus* I slip, glide, fall down; make a mistake
lacēssō 3 *lacēssī lacēssītus* I provoke
laēdō 3 *laēsī laēsus* (compounds -*līdō* 3 -*līsī -līsus*) I harm
lauō 1 *lauī lauātus/laūtus/lōtus* I wash
lēgō 3 *lēgī lēctus* (compounds -*ligō* 3 -*lēgī -lēctus*) I read; choose
libet 2 *libuit* or *libitum est* it pleases
licet 3 *licuit* or *licitum est* it is permitted

loquor 3 dep. *locutus* I speak, say
ludō 3 *lusi* *lūsum* I play
malō *malles* *malui* — I prefer
maneō 2 *mansi* *mansum* I remain, wait
memini *meminisse* (perfect form) I remember
metuō 3 *metui* *metutus* I fear
minuō 3 *minui* *minutus* I lessen
misceō 2 *misui* *mixtus* or *mixtus* I mix
mittō 3 *misit* *missus* I send; throw
mordeō 2 *momordi* *morsus* I bite
morior 3/4 dep. *mortuus* I die, am dying
moveō 2 *mouit* *motus* I move; remove; cause, begin
nanciscor 3 dep. *nactus/nactus* I gain
nascor 3 dep. *natus* I am born
nectō 3 *nexi* *nexus* I link together
nequeō see *queo*
nitō 3 dep. *nixus/nixus* I lean on; strive, exert myself
nolō *nolle* *nolui* — I refuse, am unwilling
nosco 3 *noui* *notus* (compounds: some have perf. part. *-nitus*, e.g. *cognitus* from *cognosco*) I get to know (perfect tenses = I know etc.)
nubo 3 *nupsi* *nuptus* I marry (of a bride; + dat. of man)
obliviscor 3 dep. *oblitus* I forget
odi *odisse* *odus* (perfect participle = 'hating') I hate
offendō 3 *offendi* *offensus* I meet with; offend
orior 4 dep. *ortus* (note pres. *orēris*, *oritur*, *orimur*; fut. part. *oriturus*; gerundive *oriundum*; compound *adorior* has 4th conjugation present) I rise; spring from, originate
paciscor 3 dep. *pactus* I make an agreement
pandō 3 *pandi* *passus* I spread out, extend; throw open, disclose
parcō 3 *peperi* (or *parsi*) *parsurus* (compounds *-percō* 3 *-persi*) I spare
pario 3/4 *peperi* *patus* (fut. part. *pariturus*; compounds *-perio* 4 *-peri* *-pertus*) I bring forth, bear, produce; obtain, acquire
patrior 3/4 dep. *passus* (compounds *-petior* 3/4 dep. *-pessus*) I endure, suffer; allow
pello 3 *pepuli* *pulsus* (compounds *-pellō* 3 *-puli* *-pulsus*) I push, drive back
pendeō 2 *pendi* — (compounds: perf. *-pendi*) I hang (intrans.)
percellō 3 *perculi* *percussus* I strike down; unnerve, scare

pergō 3 *perrēxi* *perrēctum* (see *regō*) I go on, go ahead, continue
petō 3 *petiui* *petitus* I beg; seek; proposition, court; attack, make for; stand for (public office)
piget 2 *piguit* or *pigitum est* it vexes
pingō 3 *pinxi* *pictus* I paint
plaudō 3 *plausi* *plausus* (compounds sometimes *-plōdō* 3 *-plōsi* *-plōsus*) I clap
pōnō 3 *pōsi* *pōitus* I place, position, put; lay aside
pōscō 3 *popōsci* — I demand
possideō see *sedēō*
pōssum *pōsse* *pōtūi* — I am able, can; am powerful, have power
pōtō 1 *pōtāui* *pōtus* ('having drunk' — see *bibō*) I drink
prehēdō 3 *prehēdi* *prehēsus* I lay hold of
prēmō 3 *prēssi* *prēssus* (compounds *-primō* 3 *-prēssi* *-prēssus*) I press; oppress
procūmbō 3 *procūbui* *procūbitum* I collapse
proficiscor 3 dep. *profectus* I set out
prōspiciō 3/4 *prōspēxi* *prōspēctus* I look out (on); foresee
pudet 2 *puduit* or *puditum est* it shames
quaerō 3 *quaesiui* *quaesitus* (compounds *-quīrō* 3 *-quīsui* *-quīsitus*) I seek, look for; ask
quatiō 3/4 — *quassus* (compounds *-cūtiō* 3/4 *-cūssi* *-cūssus*) I shake (trans.)
queo *quīre* *quīui* *quītus* I am able
queror 3 dep. *questus* I complain
quiescō 3 *quieui* *quēctus* I rest
radō 3 *raui* *rasus* I scrape, shave
rapio 3/4 *rapui* *rapus* (compounds *-rīpiō* 3/4 *-rīpui* *-rēptus*) I snatch, seize, carry away, plunder
redimō see *emō*
regō 3 *rēxi* *rēctus* (compounds *-rigō* 3 *-rēxi* *-rēctus*: except *pergō*, *surgō*, q.v.) I keep straight, rule
relinquō 3 *reliqui* *relictus* I leave, abandon
reor 2 dep. *ratus* I think, believe, suppose
repō 3 *repsi* — I creep
repellō see *pellō*
requiescō see *quiescō*
resistō 3 *restiti* — (see *sistō*) I resist
respiciō 3/4 *respēxi* *respēctus* I look round (back) at, turn my gaze upon; reflect upon; care for

respōdeō 2 *respōdī respōnsum* I reply
rétrahō see *tráhō*
rídeō 2 *rísi rísus* I smile, laugh
rúmpō 3 *rūpi rúptus* I break
ruō 3 *ruī rūtus* (fut. part. *ruitūrus*: compounds have perf. part. *-rūtus*) I rush; fall
scándō 3 (compounds *-scéndō* 3 *-scéndī -scēnsus*) I climb
 climb
scíndō 3 *scídī scíssus* I tear, cut
scrībō 3 *scrípsi scríptus* I write
sécō 1 *sécuī séctus* I cut
sédeō 2 *sēdī séssus* (some compounds *-sídēō* 2 *-sēdī -séssus*) I sit
sentiō 4 *sēnsī sēnsus* I feel; understand; perceive, realise
sepéliō 4 *sepeliūi sepúltus* I bury
séquor 3 dep. *secūtus* I follow
sérō 3 — — (compounds *-serō* 3 *-seruī -sértus*) I put in rows
sídō 3 *sídī* — (compounds have perf. and perf. part. of *sédeō*: *-sēdī -séssus*) I settle (intrans.)
sínō 3 *síuī sítus* (compounds drop *-u-* in perf., e.g. *dēsínō* 3 *dēsīi*) I allow
sístō 3 *stítī* (or *stétī*) *státus* (compounds all intransitive, with no perf. part.: cf. *cōsístō*, *resístō*) I set, stay
sóleō 2 semi-dep. *sólitus* I am accustomed, am used
sóluō 3 *sóluī solútus* I release, undo; pay
spárgō 3 *spársī spársus* (compounds *-spérgō* 3 *-spérsī -spérsus*) I scatter, sprinkle
spérnō 3 *sprēuī sprētus* I reject, despise
spúō 3 *spúī spútum* I spit
státuō 3 *státuī statútus* (compounds *-stítuō* 3 *-stítuī -stitútus*) I set up, settle
stérnō 3 *stráui strátus* I throw on the ground, strew
stō 1 *stétī státum* (most compounds *-stō* 3 *-stítī* with fut. part. *-statūrus*, but no perf. part.) I stand
stríngō 3 *strínxi stríctus* I draw; strip; graze
strúō 3 *strúxi strúctus* I heap up, build
suádeō 2 *suási suásus* I recommend
suēscō 3 *suēuī suētus* I accustom myself
sum esse fūi futūrus I am
súmō 3 *súmpsī súmptus* I take; consume
súrgō 3 *surrēxi surrēctum* (see *régō*) I rise, arise, get up

taedet 2 *taesum est* it wearies
tángō 3 *tétigī tāctus* (compounds *-tíngō* 3 *-tigī -tāctus*) I touch, lay hands on
tégō 3 *téxi téctus* I cover
témnō 3 *-témpsi -témptus* (perf. and perf. part. in compounds only) I despise
téndō 3 *teténdī téntus* (or *tēnsus*) (compounds *-téndō* 3 *-téndī -téntus*) I stretch (out); offer; direct; travel; strive, fight
téneō 2 *ténuī téntus* (compounds *-tíneō* 2 *tínuī -téntus*) I hold
térō 3 *tríui trítus* I rub
tóllō 3 *sústulī sublātus* I lift, remove, take away
tóndeō 2 *totóndī tōnsus* I shear
tráhō 3 *trāxi tráctus* I drag
tríbuō 3 *tríbuī tribútus* I assign, grant
túeor 2 dep. *túitus* (or *tútus*) I look after, protect; look at
túndō 3 *tútudī túsus* (or *túnsus*) (compounds *-túndō* 3 *-tudi -túsus/-túnsus*) I beat, strike, pound
uádō 3 — — (compounds *-uádō* 3 *-uási -uásus*) I go
uéhō 3 *uēxi uéctus* I carry
uéllo 3 *uéli* (or *uúlsī*) *uúlsus* I pull, pluck
uénio 4 *uēni uéntum* I come, arrive
uértō 3 *uértī uérsus* I turn (trans.)
uétō 1 *uétuī uétitus* I forbid
uídeō 2 *uídī uísus* I see (passive: I seem)
uíncio 4 *uínxi uíctus* I bind
uíncō 3 *uīci uíctus* I conquer
uísō 3 *uísī* — I visit
uíuō 3 *uíxi uíctum* I am alive, live
ulciscor 3 dep. *últus* I avenge myself on, avenge
uólō *uélle uóluī* — I wish, want
uóluō 3 *uóluī uolútus* I roll, turn over (trans.)
úrō 3 *ússi ústus* I burn
utor 3 dep. *usus* I use, make use of; adopt

H-I Nouns, pronominal nouns/adjectives

H1 Nouns: first declension

séru-a ae 1f. 'slave-woman'

	s.	pl.
nom.	sérúa	sérúae
acc.	sérúam	sérúās
gen.	sérúae (seruāi)	seruārum
dat.	sérúae	sérúis
abl.	sérúā	sérúis

Notes

- 1 1st decl. nouns are feminine except for e.g. *agrícola* 'farmer', *naúta* 'sailor' and other males.
- 2 *fília* 'daughter' and *déa* 'goddess' have dat./abl. pl. in *-ābus*, i.e. *fíliābus*, *deābus* (to avoid confusion with *fílius* and *déus*).

H2 Nouns: second declension

(a) *séru-us* ī 2m. 'male slave'

	s.	pl.
nom.	séruus	sérui
acc.	séruum	sérúos
gen.	sérui	seruōrum
dat.	sérui	sérúis
abl.	sérui	sérúis

Notes

- 1 Virtually all 2nd decl. nouns are masculine. An exception is *húm-us* ī f. 'ground'.
- 2 Originally, this noun declined *séru-os séru-om* – forms often found in inscriptions and early Latin. The gen. pl. sometimes ends in plain *-um* rather than *-ōrum* (cf. H2(e) *deus*).

H1-2 Nouns

(b) *púer púer-ī* 2m. 'boy'

	s.	pl.
nom.	púer	púerī
acc.	púerum	púerōs
gen.	púerī	puerōrum
dat.	púerō	púerīs
abl.	púerō	púerīs

(c) *cúlter cúltr-ī* 2m. 'knife'

	s.	pl.
nom.	cúlter	cúltri
acc.	cúltrum	cúltrōs
gen.	cúltri	cultrōrum
dat.	cúltrō	cúltrīs
abl.	cúltrō	cúltrīs

(d) *uir uír-ī* 2m. 'man'

	s.	pl.
nom.	uir	uiri
acc.	uirum	uirōs
gen.	uiri	uirōrum (uirum – cf. <i>déus</i>)
dat.	uirō	uirīs
abl.	uirō	uirīs

(e) *dé-us* ī 2m. 'god'

	s.	pl.
nom.	déus	dī (dēi, dīi)
acc.	déum	dēos
gen.	dēi	deōrum (déum)
dat.	dēo	dīs
abl.	dēo	dīs

(f) (Neuter) *sómni-um* ī 2n. 'dream'

	s.	pl.
nom.	sómnum	sómnia
acc.	sómnum	sómnia
gen.	sómni (or <i>sómniī</i>)	somniōrum
dat.	sómniō	sómniīs
abl.	sómniō	sómniīs

H3 Nouns: third declension

(a) (Consonant stem): *fūr fūr-is* 3m. 'thief'

	s.	pl.
nom.	fūr	fūrēs
acc.	fūrem	fūrēs
gen.	fūris	fūrum
dat.	fūrī	fūrībus
abl.	fūre	fūrībus

NB. Monosyllables with *two* consonants at the end of the stem have genitive plural in *-ium*, e.g. *mōns mōnt-is* 'mountain', gen. pl. *mōntium*. Such nouns are in fact *i*-stem.

(b) (*i*-stem): *aedis aed-is* 3f. 'temple'; pl. 'temples' or 'house'

	s.	pl.
nom.	aedis	aedēs
acc.	aedem	aedīs (aedēs)
gen.	aedis	aedium
dat.	aedī	aedībus
abl.	aede (aedī)	aedībus

NB. Historically, the *-i-* was wholly dominant, cf. the declension of *tūrris* 'tower': *tūrris tūrrim tūrris tūrrī tūrrī*.

(c) (Neuter consonant stem) *nōmen nōmin-is* 3n. 'name'

	s.	pl.
nom.	nōmen	nōmina
acc.	nōmen	nōmina
gen.	nōminis	nōminum
dat.	nōminī	nōminībus
abl.	nōmine	nōminībus

H3 Nouns

(d) (Neuter consonant stem) *onus oner-is* 3n. 'load, burden'

	s.	pl.
nom.	onus	ónera
acc.	onus	ónera
gen.	óneris	ónerum
dat.	ónerī	onérībus
abl.	ónere	onérībus

NB. The original stem was *onos-* alternating with *ones-*. The final *-o-* became *-u-* in nom. s. (*onus*), and the *-s-* became *-r-* between vowels, i.e. *onesis* → *óneris* (a common feature of Latin).

(e) (Neuter *i*-stem) nouns in *-al -ar -re* and *-le*: *māre mar-is* 3n. 'sea'

	s.	pl.
nom.	māre	māria
acc.	māre	māria
gen.	māris	mārium (mārum is found)
dat.	mārī	mārībus
abl.	mārī (māre is found)	mārībus

Cf. *ánimal* 'animal', *cálcār* 'spur' and *cubīle* 'couch'.

(f) Four irregular 3rd declension nouns: *Iuppiter, bōs, uīs, nēmo*

Iuppiter Ióu-is 3m. 'Jupiter'

nom.	Iúppiter
acc.	Ióuem
gen.	Ióuis
dat.	Ióuī
abl.	Ióue

bōs bóu-is 3m. 'ox', 3f. 'cow'.

	s.	pl.
nom.	bos	bóuēs
acc.	bouem	bóuēs
gen.	bouis	bóum
dat.	bouī	bóbus (búbus)
abl.	boue	bóbus (búbus)

uīs 3f. (s.) 'force', (pl.) 'strength'

	s.	pl.
nom.	<i>uīs</i>	<i>uīrēs</i>
acc.	<i>uim</i>	<i>uīrēs</i>
gen.	—	<i>uīrium</i>
dat.	—	<i>uīribus</i>
abl.	<i>uī</i>	<i>uīribus</i>

nēmo 3 m.f. 'no-one', 'none', 'no' (pronoun)

	s.
nom.	<i>nēmo</i>
acc.	<i>nēminem</i>
gen.	<i>nūllius</i>
dat.	<i>nēminī</i>
abl.	<i>nūllō</i>

Notes

- 1 Consonant- and *i*-stem nouns can be masculine, feminine or neuter. The following clues can help:

Masculine: nouns ending in *-ōs*, *-ō*, *-or*, *-er* (main exceptions: *dōs* 'dowry', f.; *ōs* *ōris* 'mouth', n.; *arbor* 'tree', f.)

Feminine: nouns ending in *-x*, *-ās*, *-dō*, *-gō*, *-iō*, *-ūs* (if polysyllabic), *-ns* (main exceptions: *dux* 'leader', m.; *fās* 'right', n.; *ōrdō* 'rank', m.; *mōns* 'mountain', *pōns* 'bridge', *fōns* 'fountain'; *dēns* 'tooth'; all m.)

Neuter: nouns ending in *-us*, *-ūs* (if monosyllabic), *-en*, *-al*, *-ar*, *-re*, *-le*

- 2 Finding the nominative can be difficult with such nouns. Note the following clues:

- Gen. s. ending in *-cis*, *-gis*: nominative in *-x* (e.g. *pācis* → *pāx*)
- Gen. s. ending in *-tis*, *-dis*: nominative in *-s* (e.g. *uirtūtis* → *uirtūs*)
- Gen. s. ending in *-pis*: nominative in *-ps* (e.g. *prīncipis* → *prīnceps*)
- Gen. s. ending in *-ris*: nominative in *-s*, *-r* (e.g. *tēporis* → *tēmpus*, *mātris* → *māter*)
- Gen. s. ending in *-lis*: nominative in *-l* (e.g. *sōlis* → *sōl*)

- 3 As a general rule (a) nouns with the same number of syllables in the nominative singular as in the genitive singular (parisyllabic) have genitive plurals in *-ium*, e.g. *cīuis*, gen. s. *cīuis*, gen. pl. *cīuium*. These are *i*-stem. (b) nouns with more syllables in the genitive singular than in the

nominative (imparisyllabic) have gen. pl. in *-um*, e.g. *uirtūs*, gen. s. *uirtūtis*, gen. pl. *uirtutum*. These are consonant stem.

The major exceptions to (a) are *cānis* *cān-is* m. or f. 'dog', *iūuenis* *iūuen-is* m. 'young man', *sénex* *sén-is* m. 'old man', *sédēs* *séd-is* f. 'abode', *pāter* *pātr-is* m. 'father', *māter* *mātr-is* f. 'mother', *frāter* *frātr-is* m. 'brother', *accipiter* *accipitr-is* m. 'hawk', all of which have gen. pl. in *-um*. The rule for major exceptions to (b) is given in the note under *fūr*.

H4 Nouns: fourth declension

(a) *mān-us ūs* 4f. 'hand'

	s.	pl.
nom.	<i>mānus</i>	<i>mānūs</i>
acc.	<i>mānum</i>	<i>mānūs</i>
gen.	<i>mānūs</i>	<i>mānuum</i>
dat.	<i>mānuī</i>	<i>mānibus</i>
abl.	<i>mānū</i>	<i>mānibus</i>

(*mānubus*)

Notes

- Most 4th decl. nouns are *masculine*.
- The gen. s. in *-ī* is found in early Latin.

(b) (Neuter) *cōrn-ū ūs* 4n. 'horn', 'wing of army'

	s.	pl.
nom.	<i>cōrnū</i>	<i>cōrnua</i>
acc.	<i>cōrnū</i>	<i>cōrnua</i>
gen.	<i>cōrnūs</i>	<i>cōrnuum</i>
dat.	<i>cōrnū</i>	<i>cōrnibus</i>
abl.	<i>cōrnū</i>	<i>cōrnibus</i>

(c) (Irregular) *dōmus* 4f. 'house'

	s.	pl.
nom.	<i>dōmus</i>	<i>dōmūs</i>
acc.	<i>dōmum</i>	<i>dōmūs</i> or <i>dōmōs</i>
gen.	<i>dōmūs</i> or <i>dōmī</i>	<i>domōrum</i> or <i>dōmuum</i>
dat.	<i>dōmuī</i> or <i>dōmō</i>	<i>dōmibus</i>
abl.	<i>dōmō</i>	<i>dōmibus</i>

H5 Nouns: fifth declension

rēs rē-ī 5f. 'thing', 'matter', 'business', 'affair'

	s.	pl.
nom.	rēs	rēs
acc.	rem	rēs
gen.	rēī (rē)	rērum
dat.	rēī (rē)	rēbus
abl.	rē	rēbus

NB. 5th decl. nouns are mostly feminine, but *dīēs* 'day' is usually m. (f. when it means the goddess 'Dīēs', or a special day) and its compound *merīdiēs* 'midday', 'south' is always m.

H6 Greek declensions

Roman poets often use the Greek forms of Greek nouns, especially for names. Mostly only nom., acc. and gen. s., nom. and acc. pl. are found. The other cases have the normal Latin forms. Here are some examples.

1st declension *Aenē-ās ae* m. 'Aeneas', *Priamid-ēs ae* m. 'son of Priam', *Eurýdic-ē ēs* f. 'Eurydice'

nom.	Aenē-ās	Priamid-ēs	Eurýdic-ē
voc.	Aenē-ā	Priamid-ē	Eurýdic-ē
acc.	Aenē-ān	Priamid-ēn	Eurýdic-ēn
gen.	Aenē-ae	Priamid-ae	Eurýdic-ēs
dat.	Aenē-ae	Priamid-ae	Eurýdic-ae
abl.	Aenē-ā	Priamid-ē (-ā)	Eurýdic-ē

Notes

- The pl. of such nouns is as for *sēru-a*, except that nouns in *-dēs* have gen. pl. in *-um*, e.g. *Aenéad-um* 'of the followers of Aeneas'.
- The Latin form of names like *Eurýdicē* is often found e.g. *Cýbel-a* *Cýbel-am* etc. 'Cybele'.

H5-6, I1 Pronominal nouns/adjectives

2nd declension *Dēl-os ī* f. 'Delos', *Pēli-on ī* n. 'Pelion'

nom.	Dēl-os	Pēli-on
acc.	Dēl-on	Pēli-on
gen.	Dēl-ī	Pēli-ī
dat./abl.	Dēl-ō	Pēli-ō

3rd declension *crātēr crātēr-os/crātēr-is* m. 'mixing-bowl'

	s.	pl.
nom./voc.	crātēr	crātēr-es
acc.	crātēr-a/-em	crātēr-as
gen.	crātēr-os/-is	crātēr-um
dat.	crātēr-ī	crātēr-ibus
abl.	crātēr-e	crātēr-ibus

NB. Other 3rd declension forms are e.g. 'hero' m.: nom. *hērōs*, acc. *hērō-a*; 'Orpheus' m.: nom. *Órpheus*, voc. *Órpheu*, acc. *Órphea*, gen. *Órpheos*; 'Paris' m.: nom. *Páris*, voc. *Pári*, acc. *Párin/Párida*, gen. *Páridos*; 'Socrates' m.: nom. *Sōcratēs*, voc. *Sōcratē*, acc. *Sōcratem*.

I1 Personal pronouns

(a) *ego* 'I', *tū* 'you'

	s.		pl.		s.
pl.					
nom.	égo 'I'	nōs 'we'	tū 'you'	uōs 'you'	
acc.	mē	nōs	tē	uōs	
gen.	mēī	nóstrum/nóstrī	túī	uéstrum/uéstrī	
dat.	míhi (mī)	nóbīs	tíbi	uóbīs	
abl.	mē	nóbīs	tē	uóbīs	

(b) Reflexive pronoun *sē* 'himself', 'herself', 'itself', 'themselves'

s./pl.	
nom.	—
acc.	sē (sēsē) 'himself', 'herself', 'itself', 'themselves'
gen.	sūī
dat.	síbi
abl.	sē (sēsē)

Notes

1 Possessive adjectives based on personal pronouns are:

mé-us a um 'my', 'mine' } declining like *lóng-us a um* **J1(a)** (but
tú-us a um 'your', 'yours' } note *mī* voc. s. m. of *mé-us*)
nóster nóstr-a um 'our', 'ours' } declining like *púlcher púlchr-a*
uéster uéstr-a um 'your', 'yours' } **um J1(b)**
sú-us a um 'his', 'hers', 'its', 'theirs' (reflexive – i.e. the 'he', 'she',
 'it', 'them' being referred to are the same person as the subject
 of the clause in which they stand, but see 'reflexives' in the
Index of Grammar for five important exceptions.)

These usually follow their noun (unless emphatic). But *mī* (vocative s. of *méus*) usually precedes.

2 *cum* 'with' is linked with the ablative on the pattern *mécum*, *técum*, *secum* etc.

I2 Demonstrative pronouns

(a) *is ea id* 'that', 'those', 'that person', 'he', 'she', 'it'

s.			pl.		
m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom. is	éa	id	ēī (īī)	éae	éa
acc. éum	éam	id	éōs	éās	éā
gen. ← éius →			eōrum	eārum	eōrum
dat. ← ēī →			← éīs (īīs) →		
abl. éō	éā	éō	← éīs (īīs) →		

Compare the definitive pronoun *īdem éadem idem* 'the same':

s.			pl.		
m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom. īdem	éadem	īdem	eīdem (īdem)	eaēdem	éadem
acc. eūdem	eādem	īdem	eōsdem	eāsdem	éadem
gen. ← eiūsdem →			eōrūdem	eārūdem	eōrūdem
dat. ← eīdem →			← eīsdem (īsdem) →		
abl. eōdem	eādem	eōdem	← eīsdem (īsdem) →		

I1-2 Pronominal nouns/adjectives

(b) *hic haec hoc* 'this', 'this person', 'this thing', 'the latter', pl. 'these'

s.			pl.		
m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom. hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
acc. hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
gen. ← huius →			hōrum	hārum	hōrum
dat. ← huic →			← hīs →		
abl. hōc	hāc	hōc	← hīs →		

NB. Originally *hi-ce*, *hae-ce*, *hod-ce* etc. The strengthened forms *huiusce*, *hōsce*, *hāsce*, and *hīsce* are reasonably common.

(c) *ille illa illud* 'that', 'that person', 'that thing' 'the former', pl. 'those'

s.			pl.		
m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom. ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
acc. illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
gen. ← illius →			illōrum	illārum	illōrum
dat. ← illi →			← illīs →		
abl. illō	illā	illō	← illīs →		

(d) *iste ista istud* 'that (of yours)'

s.			pl.		
m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom. iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
acc. istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
gen. ← istius →			istōrum	istārum	istōrum
dat. ← isti →			← istīs →		
abl. istō	istā	istō	← istīs →		

(e) *ipse ipsa ipsum* 'very', 'actual', 'self'

s.			pl.		
m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom. ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
acc. ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
gen. ← ipsius →			ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
dat. ← ipsi →			← ipsīs →		
abl. ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	← ipsīs →		

I3 Relative pronoun

quī quae quod 'who', 'which', 'what'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
gen.	← cuius →			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
dat.	← cui →			← quibus (quīs) →		
abl.	quō	quā	quō	← quibus (quīs) →		

Notes

- 1 *quōcum*, *quācum*, *quibuscum* 'with whom/which'.
- 2 *quī* as an old abl. form is found mostly in the word *quīcum* 'with whom', where it is m. f. or n. s., and even occasionally pl.

I4 Interrogative (indefinite) pronoun/adjective

quis/quī, quae/quis, quid/quod 'who?', 'which?', 'what?'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	pron. quis	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae (qua)
	adj. quī	quae (qua)	quod			
acc.	pron. quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae (qua)
	adj. quem	quam	quod			
gen.	← cuius →			quōrum	quārum	quōrum
dat.	← cui →			← quibus (quīs) →		
abl.	quō	quā	quō	← quibus (quīs) →		

Notes

- 1 After *sī*, *nē*, *nisi*, *num*, the meaning of *quis* (Indefinite) is 'any', 'anyone', and nom. s. f. and n. pl. nom./acc. are always *qua*.
- 2 *quis* is quite often used for *quī* (adj.) e.g. *quis . . . puer?* 'What boy?' (Horace) Cf. *aliquis* I5(b) Note 2 below.
- 3 *quī*, an old ablative form, as an interrogative means 'how?', e.g. *quī fit, Maecenas?* 'How does it come about, Maecenas?' (Horace).

I3-5 Pronominal nouns/adjectives

I5 Compound pronouns

(a) *quīdam quaēdam quōddam* 'a', 'a certain'

	s.		
	m.	f.	n.
nom.	quīdam	quaēdam	quōddam (quīddam)
acc.	quēdam	quādam	quōddam (quīddam)
gen.	← cuiusdam →		
dat.	← cuidam →		
abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

	pl.		
	m.	f.	n.
nom.	quīdam	quaēdam	quaēdam
acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaēdam
gen.	quōrūdam	quārūdam	quōrūdam
dat.	← quibusdam →		
abl.	← quibusdam →		

(b) *aliquis aliqua aliquid* 'someone' and *aliquī aliqua aliquod* 'some'

	<i>aliquis</i> 'someone'			<i>aliquī</i> 'some' (adj.)		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod
acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid	aliquam	aliquam	aliquod
gen.	← alicuius →			← alicuius →		
dat.	← alicui →			← alicui →		
abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

Notes

- 1 The pl. is the same as for *ali-* + *quī* (I4 above), except that the n. pl. is *aliqua*.
- 2 *aliquis* is quite often used for *aliquī* (adj.) e.g. *num igitur aliquis dolor in corpore est* 'Surely there isn't any pain in your body?' (Cicero). Cf. *quis*, I4 Note 2.

(c) Other compound pronouns

- (i) *quisque quaeque quodque* 'each and every', 'everyone'.
quisque is very often used to mean 'every(one)', e.g. *sua cuique nationi religio est, nostra nobis* 'every nation has its own religion, and we have ours' (Cicero). Note *optimus quisque* 'all the best men' and *quotus quisque* 'how few!'
- (ii) *quisquam quisquam quicquam* 'anyone', 'any'.
quisquam is normally found in negative contexts (or in questions where a negative is implied, e.g. *quid quisquam suspicari aliud potest?* 'what else can anyone suspect?' (Cicero)).
- (iii) *quisquis* 'whoever' *quidquid* or *quicquid* 'whatever'; *quicumque quaecumque quodcumque* 'whoever', 'whatever'.
quisquis and *quicumque* are used to introduce relative clauses; e.g. *ferreus est, heu, heu, quisquis in urbe manet* 'anyone who stays in Rome (oh dear, oh dear) is made of iron' (Tibullus). *di tibi dent quaecumque optes* 'may the gods give you whatever you want' (Plautus).
- (iv) *ecquis* 'anyone?' adj. *ecqui ecqua/ecquae ecquod* 'any?'
ecquis introduces questions and means 'Is there anyone (who)?', e.g. *heus, ecquis hic est?* 'Hey, is there anyone here?' (Plautus).

NB. Compounds of *quis* decline like *quis*. See above I4. Compounds of *qui* decline like *qui*. See above I3. But not all forms are found in all of these pronoun/adjectives.

I6 Special pronoun-adjectives

(a) *alius alia aliud* 'other', 'another'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	alius	alia	aliud	alii	aliae	alia
acc.	alium	aliam	aliud	alios	alias	alia
gen.	← alius →			aliorum	aliarum	aliorum
dat.	← alii →			← aliis →		
abl.	alio	alia	alio	← aliis →		

NB. Genitive and dative s. are not common, and occasionally the 2nd declension forms (gen. s. m./n. *alii* f. *aliae*; dat. s. m. *alii* f. *aliae*) are found. *alterius* (gen. s. of *alter*) is also used for gen. s.

(b) *null-us a um* 'no(one)', 'not any', 'no man'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	nullus	nulla	nullum	nulli	nullae	nulla
acc.	nullum	nullam	nullum	nullos	nullas	nulla
gen.	← nullius →			nullorum	nullarum	nullorum
dat.	← nulli →			← nullis →		
abl.	nullo	nulla	nullo	← nullis →		

(c) *alter alter-a alter-um* 'one (of two)', 'the one . . . the other'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	alter	altera	alterum	alteri	alterae	altera
acc.	alterum	alteram	alterum	alteros	alteras	altera
gen.	← alterius →			alterorum	alterarum	alterorum
dat.	← alteri →			← alteris →		
abl.	altero	altera	altero	← alteris →		

(d) *uterque* 'both', 'each (of two)'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	uterque	utraque	utrumque	utrique	utraeque	utraque
acc.	utrumque	utramque	utrumque	utrosque	utrasque	utraque
gen.	← utriusque →			utrorumque	utarumque	utrorumque
dat.	← utrique →			← utrisque →		
abl.	utroque	utraque	utroque	← utrisque →		

NB. The following special pronoun/adjectives also decline like *long-us a um* elsewhere, but have gen. s. in *-ius* and dat. s. in *-i*: *un-us a um* 'one', *sol-us a um* 'alone', *tot-us a um* 'the whole', *ull-us a um* 'any', *uter uter-a um* 'which of two?', 'whichever of two', *neuter neuter-a um* 'neither'.

I7 Numerals

Cardinal

Ordinal¹

		m.	f.	n.		
1	I	unus	una	unum ²	1st	primus (prior)
2	II	nom. duo	duae	duo	2nd	secundus (alter)
		acc. duos/duo	duas	duo		
		gen. duorum	duarum	duorum		
		dat./abl. duobus	duabus	duobus		

		m./f.	n.		
3	III	nom. trēs	tría	3rd	tértius
		acc. trēs (trīs)	tría		
		gen. ← trīum →			
		dat. ← trībus →			
		abl. ← trībus →			
4	IV/IIII	quáattuor		4th	quártus
5	V	quínque		5th	quíntus
6	VI	sex		6th	séxtus
7	VII	séptem		7th	séptimus
8	VIII	óctō		8th	octáuus
9	IX/VIIII	nóuem		9th	nónus
10	X	décem		10th	décimus
11	XI	úndecim		11th	úndécimus
12	XII	duódecim		12th	duodécimus
13	XIII	trēdecim		13th	tértius décimus
14	XIV	quattuórdecim		14th	quártus décimus
15	XV	quíndecim		15th	quíntus décimus
16	XVI	sēdecim		16th	séxtus décimus
17	XVII	septēdecim		17th	séptimus décimus
18	XVIII	duodēuigintī		18th	duodēuicēsimus
19	XIX	úndēuigintī		19th	úndēuicēsimus
20	XX	uigintī		20th	uicēsimus
30	XXX	trīgintā		30th	trīcēsimus
40	XL	quādrāgintā		40th	quādrāgēsimus
50	L	quīnquāgintā		50th	quīnquāgēsimus
60	LX	sexāgintā		60th	sexāgēsimus
70	LXX	septuāgintā		70th	septuāgēsimus
80	LXXX	octōgintā		80th	octōgēsimus
90	XC	nōnāgintā		90th	nōnāgēsimus
100	C	céntum		100th	centēsimus
200	CC	ducent-ī ae a (like pl. of lóng-us)		200th	ducentēsimus
300	CCC	trecent-ī ae a		300th	trēcentēsimus
500	D	quīngent-ī ae a		500th	quīngentēsimus
1,000	M	mīlle (indecl. adj.) pl. mīlia gen. mīlium dat./abl. mīlibus (see Note 1)		1,000th	mīllēsimus

¹ These decline like *lóng-us a um*.

² Like *tótus* i.e. gen. s. *úntūs*, dat. s. *úntī*; pl. *úntī*, *úntae*, *únta*, like pl. of *lóngus* (I6(d) Note).

Notes

- 1 Normally, *mīlle* is used as an adjective and *mīlia* as a noun, e.g.

mīlle mīlitēs = one thousand soldiers

duo mīlia mīlitum = two thousand(s) (of) soldiers

tría mīlia mīlitum = three thousand(s) (of) soldiers etc.

17, J Adjectives, adverbs

- 2 Latin has three other sets of numerals. One answers the question 'How many each?', e.g. *síngul-ī ae a* 'one each', then *-nī*. e.g. *bín-ī ae a* 'two each' (distributive adjectives). A second answers the question 'How many times?', e.g. *sémel* 'once', *bis* 'twice', *ter* 'three times', *quáter*, then *-iēns*, e.g. *mīliēns* 'a thousand times' (numeral adverbs). A third answers the question 'Of how many parts?', e.g. *tríplex tríplic-is* 'threefold' (multiplicative adjectives).
- 3 The ending *-ēsimus* was, after the Augustan period, often written *-ésimus*.

J-K Adjectives, adverbs and prepositions

J Introduction

- (a) Adjectives agree with the word they describe in *gender* (m., f. or n.), *case* (nom., acc., gen., dat., abl.) and *number* (s. or pl.). Thus an adjective which is genitive plural masculine can only agree with a noun which is genitive plural masculine.
- (b) Adjectives in agreement with no nouns will take their meaning from context. They will usually refer to a person or thing, e.g.

bónī (nom. pl. m.) 'good men'.

bónae (nom. pl. f.) 'good women'.

bóna (nom. pl. n.) 'good things' 'goods'.

fugientēs (nom. pl. m. or f.) 'people as they are fleeing'.

rogántī (dat. s. m. or f.) 'to the person asking'.

mors málum est 'death is a bad thing'.

- (c) Some adjectives are often used predicatively. That is, instead of being best translated as adjectives (e.g. *uir bónus* 'a good man'), they should be translated as adverbs (e.g. *uir laétus ábiit* 'the man went away happily') or nouns (e.g. *súmmō mōnte* 'at the top of the mountain'). The words most commonly used thus include those denoting position (e.g. *súmmus*, *médius*, *próximus*), quantity or order (e.g. *prímus*, *sólus*, *tótus*), and attitude of mind or manner (e.g. *laétus* 'happily', *inuítus* 'unwillingly').

- (d) Some words commonly double as nouns or adjectives, e.g. *hic*, *ille*, *is* (etc.). Note that *uetus* 'old', 'old man', *pauper* 'poor', 'poor man', *dives* 'rich', 'rich man' are like this. They decline like third declension nouns, but they often perform as adjectives, e.g.

ubi pauper est? 'where is the poor man?'
cum diuite senatore ambulat 'he walks with the rich senator'

J1 Adjectives: first/second declension

(a) *long-us a um* 'long'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	longus	longa	longum	longi	longae	longa
acc.	longum	longam	longum	longos	longas	longa
gen.	longi	longae	longi	longorum	longarum	longorum
dat.	longo	longae	longo	longis	longis	longis
abl.	longo	longa	longo	longis	longis	longis

(b) *pulcher pulchr-a um* 'beautiful', 'handsome'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum	pulchri	pulchrae	pulchra
acc.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum	pulchros	pulchras	pulchra
gen.	pulchri	pulchrae	pulchri	pulchrorum	pulchrarum	pulchrorum
dat.	pulchro	pulchrae	pulchro	← pulchris →		
abl.	pulchro	pulchra	pulchro	← pulchris →		

(c) *miser miser-a miser-um* 'unhappy'

	s.			pl.		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	miser	miserā	miserum	miseri	miserāe	miserā
acc.	miserum	miserā	miserum	miseros	miserās	miserā
gen.	miseri	miserāe	miseri	miserorum	miserarum	miserorum
dat.	miserō	miserāe	miserō	← miseris →		
abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō	← miseris →		

J2 Adjectives: third declension

(a) *omnis omne* 'all', 'every'

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	omnis	omne	omnes	omnia
acc.	omnem	omne	omnes (omnes)	omnia
gen.	← omnis →		← omnium →	
dat.	← omni →		← omnibus →	
abl.	← omni →		← omnibus →	

(b) *ingens ingens (ingent-)* 'huge'

	s.		pl.	
	m./f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	ingens	ingens	ingentes	ingentia
acc.	ingentem	ingens	ingentes (ingentes)	ingentia
gen.	← ingentis →		← ingentium →	
dat.	← ingenti →		← ingentibus →	
abl.	← ingenti →		← ingentibus →	

(c) *celer celer-is celer-e* 'swift', 'fast'

	s.			pl.	
	m.	f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	celer	celeris	celere	celerēs	celeria
acc.	celerem	celerem	celere	celeris (celerēs)	celeria
gen.	← celeris →			← celerium →	
dat.	← celeri →			← celeribus →	
abl.	← celeri →			← celeribus →	

(d) *acer acris acre* 'keen', 'sharp'

	s.			pl.	
	m.	f.	n.	m./f.	n.
nom.	acer	acris	acre	acrēs	acria
acc.	acrem	acrem	acre	acris (acrēs)	acria
gen.	← acris →			← acrium →	
dat.	← acri →			← acribus →	
abl.	← acri →			← acribus →	

NB. All these are *i*-stems.

(e) Consonant-stem adjectives: *dīues* and *paúper*

	s.	n.	pl.	n.
	m/f.		m/f.	
nom.	dīues (dīs)	dīues (díte)	dīuitēs (dītēs)	dīuita (dītia)
acc.	dīuitem (ditem)	dīues (díte)	dīuites (dītēs)	dīuita (dītia)
gen.	←dīuitis (dītis)→		←dīuitum (dītium)→	
dat.	←dīuitī (dītī)→		←dīuitibus (dītibus)→	
abl.	←dīuite (dītī)→		←dīuitibus (dītibus)→	

	s.	n.	pl.	n.
	m/f.		m/f.	
nom.	paúper	paúper	paúperēs	paúpera
acc.	paúperem	paúper	paúperēs	paúpera
gen.	←paúperis→		←paúperum→	
dat.	←paúperī→		←paúperibus→	
abl.	←paúpere→		←paúperibus→	

Notes

- 1 *dīues* has also a set of *i*-stem endings (in brackets), which are commonly used. Both *dīues* and *paúper* are often used as nouns. See 47.
- 2 Other consonant-stem adjectives are *caélebs caélib-is* 'unmarried', *cómpos cómpot-is* 'possessing', *ínops ínop-is* 'poor' (abl. s. -ī), *mémor mémor-is* 'mindful' (abl. s. -ī), *párticeps partícip-is* 'sharing', *sóspes sóspit-is* 'safe', *supérstes superstit-is* 'surviving', *uétus uéter-is* 'old'.

J3 Comparative and superlative adjectives

These are formed as follows:

Comparatives ('more —', 'rather —', 'quite —'): gen. s. stem + *-ior*, (neuter *-ius*)

Superlatives ('very —', '—est', 'most —', 'extremely —'): gen. s. stem + *-íssimus*, or nom. s. + *-rimus* (in the case of adjectives which end in *-er* in the nominative, e.g. *púlcher* → (comparative) *púlchrior* → (superlative) *pulchérrimus*)

Note also the irregular superlative, gen. s. stem + *-limus*, of six adjectives in *-ilis*, viz. *fácilis* 'easy', *diffícilis* 'difficult', *símilis* 'similar', *dissímilis* 'dissimilar', *grácilis* 'slender', *húmilis* 'lowly': e.g. *fácil-limus*.

J2-3 Adjectives, adverbs

The declension of comparative and superlative forms is as follows:

(a) Comparative adjectives: *lóngior lóngius* 'longer'

	s.	n.	pl.	n.
	m./f.		m./f.	
nom.	lóngior	lóngius	longiōrēs	longiōra
acc.	longiōrem	lóngius	longiōrēs	longiōra
gen.	←longiōris→		←longiōrum→	
dat.	←longiōrī→		←longiōribus→	
abl.	←longiōre→		←longiōribus→	

NB. These adjectives are *consonant*-stems (cf. *dīues*, *paúper*, J2(e) above).

(b) Superlative adjectives: *longíssimus a um* 'longest' (sometimes *-íssimus*)

	s.	f.	n.
	m.		
nom.	longíssimus	longíssima	longíssimum
acc.	longíssimum	longíssimam	longíssimum
gen.	longíssimī	longíssimae	longíssimī
dat.	longíssimō	longíssimae	longíssimō
abl.	longíssimō	longíssimā	longíssimō

	pl.	f.	n.
	m.		
nom.	longíssimī	longíssimae	longíssima
acc.	longíssimōs	longíssimās	longíssima
gen.	longíssimōrum	longíssimārum	longíssimōrum
dat.	←longíssimīs→		
abl.	←longíssimīs→		

(c) Irregular comparatives and superlatives: *bónus, málus, múltus, mágnus, páruus*

bón-us a um	mélior (meliōr-is)	óptim-us a um	'good', 'better', 'best' (cf. <i>ameliorate</i> , <i>optimise</i>)
mál-us a um	péior (peiōr-is)	péssim-us a um	'bad', 'worse', 'worst' (cf. <i>pejorative</i> , <i>pessimist</i>)

múlt-us a um	plūs (plūr-is)	plūrim-us a um	'much', 'more', 'most' (cf. <i>plus</i> (+))
mágn-us a um	maior (maiōr-is)	máxim-us a um	'big', 'bigger', 'biggest' (cf. <i>major</i> , <i>maximise</i>)
páru-us a um	mīnor (minōr-is)	mīnim-us a um	'small/few', 'smaller/fewer/less', 'smallest/fewest/least' (cf. <i>minor</i> , <i>minimise</i>)

NB. These decline quite regularly (see *lōngior longissimus*) except for *plūs*:

	s. (<i>plūs</i> here = noun)	pl. m./f.	n.
nom.	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
acc.	plūs	plūrīs (plūrēs)	plūra
gen.	plūris	plūrium	
dat.	—	plūribus	
abl.	plūre	plūribus	

NB. *plūs* is really the comparative of the adverb *múltum* 'much', while *plūrēs* is the comparative of the plural *múlt-ī ae a*. The s. *múltus* has no true comparative.

J4 Adverbs

(a) Regular and irregular positive adverbs

1 Regular adverbs

A common way of forming adverbs in English is to add '—ly' to an adjective (e.g. 'slow-ly', 'quick-ly', 'passionate-ly'). In Latin, adverbs (which never change) are also regularly formed from adjectives as follows:

Adverbs based on 1st/2nd declension adjectives: add *-ē* to the stem, e.g. *stúltus* → *stúltē* 'foolishly'; *miser* → *miserē* 'unhappily'; *púlcher* → *púlchrē* 'beautifully'. A very few end in *-ter*, e.g. *hūmānus* → *hūmāniter* 'gently', and some in *-ō*, e.g. *cértō* 'for a fact'.

Adverbs based on 3rd declension adjectives: add *-(i)ter* to the stem, e.g. *fórtis* → *fórtiter* 'bravely'; *aúdāx* → *audācter* 'boldly'; *céler* → *celériter* 'swiftly'. But note an important exception: *fácile* 'easily'

J3-5 Adjectives, adverbs

2 Irregular adverbs

bónus → *béne* 'well'.

páruus → *paúlum* '(a) little', 'slightly'.

múltus → *múltum* 'much'.

mágnus → *magnópere* 'greatly'.

NB. *lóngē* (regularly formed from *lóngus* 'long') 'far'.

(b) Regular comparative and superlative adverbs 'more —ly', 'most —ly'

Comparative and superlative adverbs are formed from the comparative and superlative adjectives.

	'foolishly'	'more foolishly'	'most foolishly'
Adjective	stúlt-us	stúlt-ior	stultíssim-us
Adverb	stúlt-ē	stúlt-ius	stultíssim-ē
	'quickly'	'more quickly'	'most quickly'
Adjective	celér	celér-ior	celérrim-us
Adverb	celér-iter	celér-ius	celérrim-ē

NB. The comparative adverb has the same form as the neuter of the comparative adjective.

(c) Irregular comparative and superlative adverbs

Most of these are only irregular in so far as the corresponding adjective has irregular comparative and superlative forms. If you already know the adjective forms, most of these adverbs are formed quite regularly from the adjective:

béne	'well'	mélius	'better'	ótimē	'best'.
mále	'badly'	péius	'worse'	péssimē	'worst', 'very badly'.
paúlum	'a little'	minus	'less'	mínimē	'very little'; 'no'.
múltum	'much'	plūs	'more'	plūrimum	'most'; 'a lot'.
magnópere	'greatly'	mágis	'more'	máximē	'very much'; 'most'; 'yes'.

J5 'Comparative' constructions

(a) Comparative

¹ *quam* means 'than' when it is used with a comparative, e.g. *tū sánior es quam ego* 'you are saner than I'. Cf. *málō pácem quam béllum* 'I prefer

peace to war' (*mālo* = *māgis uolo* 'I want x more than y'). Observe that the two things compared are in the same case, e.g. *maiores habeo librum quam tuum (librum)* 'I have a larger book than yours'.

- 2 But Latin can also compare two items by dropping *quam* and putting the item compared in the ablative, e.g.

tū mē sanior es 'you are saner than I'
quis sapiētiōr sapiēte est? 'who is wiser than the wise?'

- 3 Note the use of the comparative + *quam quī* + subjunctive in the idiom 'too — to do something', e.g.

sapiētiōr est quam quī hoc faciat '(lit.) he is wiser than one who would do that', i.e. 'he is too wise to do that'

- 4 Note the use of the ablative of the measure of difference (see **L(f)4(iv)**) with comparative adjectives or adverbs in sentences meaning 'the more . . . the more . . .', e.g.

quō prōpius ea contētiō accēdit . . . ēō clārius id periculum appāret 'the closer that fight comes, the more clearly that danger appears' (Caelius)

tantō brēuius omne quāntō fēliciū tempus 'the happier a period (is), the shorter it (is)' (or 'seems to be') (Pliny) (lit. 'by so much shorter every (time is), by how much the happier the time (is)', i.e. 'time flies when you're enjoying yourself').

(b) Superlative

quam with the superlative means 'as — as possible', e.g.

cēnam quam máximam habeo 'I have the largest dinner possible'

This usage applies equally to adverbs, e.g.

quam celerrimē 'as fast as possible'

(c) Other 'comparative' constructions

1 *atque/ac*

atque/ac is used after adjectives or adverbs which express 'likeness' or 'unlikeness', such as *īdem* 'the same', *alius* 'different', 'other', *aliter*, 'differently', *contrā* 'opposite', 'contrary', *par* 'equal', *pārter* 'equally', *perinde* 'in like manner', *similis* 'like', 'similar'. E.g.

J5 Adjectives, adverbs

iussērunt simulācrum Iouis, contrā atque antea fuerat, ad orientem conuētere 'They ordered (them) to turn the statue of Jupiter towards the East, contrary to what it had been before' (Cicero).

perinde ēgit ac dixit 'He acted just as he said'.

2 Correlatives

ut meaning 'as' acts as a 'correlative' to *sic* or *ita* 'thus', e.g. *ut tū imperās, sic/ita ego faciō* 'as you order, so I do'. In the same way, *tam* 'so' is answered by *quam* 'as', e.g.

tam beātus erat ille quam miser ego 'he was as (lit. so) happy as I unhappy'

tot 'so many' is answered by *quot* 'as many', e.g.

tot uirī sunt quot fēminae 'so many men there are as many (as) (there are) women', 'there are as many men as women'

Cf. *tāntus* 'so great' . . . *quāntus* 'as great', 'as'; *tālis* 'of such a sort' . . . *quālis* 'of which sort', 'as', e.g.

tanta sapiētia ēī inest quāta uīs 'there is so great wisdom in him as great (as there is) force', 'he has as much brain as brawn'
tālem uirtutem praebēbat quālem Horātius 'he showed bravery of such a sort as the sort (which) Horatius (showed)'

NB. See **J5(a)4** above for other correlative usages.

3 Unreal comparisons

quāsi, *uēlut*, *tāquam* mean 'as if', 'as though' and (with or without *sī* added) take a subjunctive where the comparison is unreal or hypothetical. Constructions under **J5(c)1** add *sī*. E.g.

ita sē gerit quāsi stultus sit 'he is behaving as though he were a fool' (but he is not).

perinde agit ac sī hostis sit 'he acts just as though he were an enemy' (but he is not).

NB. *tāquam*, *quāsi*, *uēlut*, *sicut* and *ut* are all used with nouns to express 'like', 'as it were', e.g. *mōnte decurrēns uēlut amnis* 'like a river as it runs down from the mountain' (Horace — speaking of Pindar).

K List of prepositions

This list is in alphabetical order and contains the most important prepositions (some of which have not been met in the course).

- ā*, *ab* or *abs* (+ abl.) away from; by; on the side of
ābsque (+ abl.) (= *sine*)
ad (+ acc.) towards; at, near; for the purpose of; note *ūsque ad* right up to
aduērsus/aduēsus (+ acc.) opposite to; against
ānte (+ acc.) before, in front of
āpud (+ acc.) at the house of, in the hands of, in the works of; among
circum/circā/circiter (+ acc.) around, about
cis/citrā (+ acc.) this side of
clam (+ acc./abl.) unknown to
cōntrā (+ acc.) against
cōram (+ abl.) in the presence of
cum (+ abl.) with
dē (+ abl.) about, concerning; from; down from
ē, *ex* (+ abl.) out of, from; in accordance with; after
ērgā (+ acc.) towards
ēxtrā (+ acc.) outside
in (+ acc.) into, onto; against; (+ abl.) in, on
īnfrā (+ acc.) below
īter (+ acc.) among; between
īntrā (+ acc.) within
iūxtā (+ acc.) close to, near
ob (+ acc.) on account of, because of; before, so as to obstruct
pēnes (+ acc.) with, in the possession of
per (+ acc.) through, by; in the name of, by the aid of
post (+ acc.) behind, after
prae (+ abl.) before; in comparison with; for, as a result of
praeter (+ acc.) past; beyond; except
prō (+ abl.) for, in return for; on behalf of; in front of; instead of; in accordance with
prōpe (+ acc.) near
prōpter (+ acc.) on account of
secūndum (+ acc.) behind; along; after; according to

K, L-V Constructions: Introduction

- sine* (+ abl.) without
sub, subter (+ acc.) under, beneath; just after, just before; (+ abl.) beneath, under; at
sūper (+ acc.) over, above; beyond; (+ abl.) over, above; about, concerning
sūprā (+ acc.) above
tēnus (+ gen./abl.) as far as (placed *after* the word it governs)
trāns (+ acc.) across
uērsus, uērsum (+ acc.) towards, in the direction of (placed *after* the word it governs)
ūltrā (+ acc.) beyond
ūsque (+ acc.) all the way to

Note also the abl. nouns *caūsā* and *grātiā* (+ gen.), placed *after* the word they govern, meaning 'for the sake of', 'for the purpose of'.

When prepositions are followed by the noun they govern, their accent is determined by treating the two words as one, e.g. *āpud* (natural accent) and *apūd mē* (as though it were *apudmē*).

L-V Constructions

Introduction

(a) Simple sentences

Simple sentences may be classified into four categories

- 1 *Statements (including exclamations)*: e.g. *Caesar ābit* 'Caesar leaves', *quam tristis est* 'how sad he is!'

'Potential' statements ('would', 'should', 'could') are expressed by the subjunctive, e.g. *uēlim* 'I should wish', *dīcat/dīxerit aliquis* 'someone would/may say', as are 'generalising' statements, e.g. *haud inuēniās* 'you (i.e. one) would scarcely find', *crēderēs* 'you would have believed'.
- 2 *Questions*: e.g. *abīsne?* 'are you leaving?' (-ne turns a statement into a question.) *quis ābit* 'who is leaving?'

Double questions are asked with *útum* . . . *an*, e.g. *útum ábīs an mánēs?* 'are you going or staying?' *ánnon* means 'or not' in direct speech; indirect uses *nécne* 'or not'. *útum* is sometimes omitted (in direct and indirect speech), e.g. *ábīs an mánēs?*

an is very flexible. It can introduce a plain question (like *-ne*), or mean 'whether' or 'or'. *num* means 'surely not?', expecting the answer 'no' (*num* means 'if' 'whether' in indirect questions, e.g. *rógō num ábeās* 'I ask whether you depart'). *nōne* means 'surely?', expecting the answer 'yes'. *écquis* means 'anyone' in a question, e.g. *écquis ábit?* 'is anyone leaving?' (See above **I5(c)(iv)** and **Note**.)

'Deliberative' questions take the form 'what am I to', 'should I -?' and are expressed by the subjunctive, e.g. *quid fáciām* 'what am I to do?' *quid fácerem* 'what was I to do?'

- 3 **Commands**: e.g. *ábī!* 'leave!'; *nōlī abīre* 'don't leave!'

nē + perfect subjunctive also expresses prohibitions, e.g. *nē trānsierīs* 'do not cross'. *nē* + present subjunctive is used in general prohibitions, e.g. *nē pétās* 'you (i.e. one) should not seek'. *nē* + imperative is common in poetry, e.g. *nē fúgite hospítium* 'do not shun our hospitality' (Virgil).

Jussives ('let us', 'let him', 'let them') are expressed by the subjunctive (present), e.g. *abeāmus* 'let us leave', *fíat* 'let there be'.

'Polite' subjunctives express 'please', e.g. *ábeās* 'kindly leave' (poetic), or general precepts, e.g. *sápiās* 'you (i.e. one) should be wise'. Often commands are made more polite by the use of *fac*, *uídē* 'see to it (that)', *cáuē* 'take care (not to)', *uélím* 'I would like (x to)' with subjunctive, e.g. *fac míhi scríbās* 'make sure you write to me'.

- 4 **Wishes**: e.g. *uólō abīre* 'I want to leave'. The subjunctive is also used to express wishes, e.g. *uáleant cíuēs* 'may the citizens flourish'. Sometimes *útinam* (negative *útinam nē*) precedes the wish, e.g. *útinam nē hoc scrípsíssēs* 'would you had not written this'.

uólō + subjunctive sometimes combine, e.g. *uólō tū hoc fáciās* 'I wish (that) you would do this'.

NB. In general, the tenses are used as in subjunctive conditionals (see **S2(c)**), present referring to a wish for the future, imperfect to a wish for the present, pluperfect to a wish for the past.

(b) Agreement

- 1 A verb agrees with its subject in number and person, e.g.

Caésar ádest

ádest is third person, singular, because *Caésar* (subject) is third person, singular.

- 2 An adjective agrees with the word it describes in number, gender and case, e.g.

fēminam trístem uídeō 'I see the unhappy woman'

fēminam is accusative, singular, feminine, so *trístem* is accusative, singular, feminine (see **J Intro.**).

Notes

- The verb 'to be' is often omitted in sentences, e.g. *níhil bónum nísi quod honéstum* 'nothing [is] good except what is honourable'.
- A singular subject will sometimes take a plural verb, if the subject implies 'a number of people', e.g. *pars mílítum cápti sunt* 'part of the soldiers was captured', 'some soldiers were captured'. Likewise, a list of subjects can be taken all together and the verb be singular, or the verb be singular because the last in the list is singular. Where there are both masculine and feminine subjects described by one adjective, the adjective will tend to agree with the masculine.
- More information may be added about a noun or pronoun by further nouns or pronouns in the same case, e.g. *thēsaurus Dēmaénetī, áuī Eucliōnis* 'the treasure of Demaenetus, grandfather of Euclio'. *áuī* is genitive, because it refers to *Dēmaénetī*: it is said to be 'in apposition' to *Dēmaénetī*.

(c) Sequence of tenses

Primary sequence means that the main verb is present, future, future perfect, or perfect with 'have' (e.g. 'I have loved', not 'I loved'). In these cases, subjunctives used in subordinate clauses are restricted to the present, perfect and future participle + *sim*.

Secondary or *historic sequence* means that the main verb is imperfect, perfect without 'have' (e.g. 'I loved') or pluperfect. In these cases, subjunctives used in subordinate clauses are restricted to imperfect, pluperfect and future participle + *essem*.

L The cases

(a) Nominative

The nominative case is used for:

- 1 The subject of a sentence or clause, e.g. *Eúcliō aúlam pórtat* 'Euclio carries the pot' (note that the subject of an indirect statement goes into the accusative – see R1).
- 2 The complement, especially with the verb 'to be', e.g. *Eúcliō sénex est* 'Euclio is an old man'; *Caésar cōsul fit* 'Caesar becomes consul'.

(b) Vocative

The vocative case is used to indicate *the person or thing addressed* e.g. (ō) *Eúcliō, cūr aúlam pórtās?* 'Euclio, why are you carrying a pot?'; *et tū, Brúte?* 'you too, Brutus?'

(c) Accusative

The accusative case limits or defines. It is used in a number of ways.

- 1 For the direct object of a verb, e.g. *Eúcliō aúlam pórtat* 'Euclio carries a pot'.

Some verbs take a double accusative. Some examples are:

dóceō 'I teach x (acc.) y (acc.)'

rógō 'I ask x (acc.) for y (acc.)'; cf. *órō* 'I beg x (acc.) for y (acc.)'

cēlō 'I hide x (acc.) from y (acc.)'

E.g. *Eúcliō Lycōnidem prūdēntiam dócet* 'Euclio teaches Lyconides wisdom'; *mē cōsília cēlat* 'he hides his plans from me'.

The 'cognate' accusative expresses the same idea as the verb, e.g. *uíam* it 'he travels on a road'; *lúdum lúdit* 'he plays a game'.

- 2 To express motion towards, often with *ad* or *in*, e.g.

Eúcliō ad aédīs uénit 'Euclio comes to the house'

Rōmam éunt 'they go to Rome'

- 3 To express time throughout, e.g.

trēs díēs 'for three days'

L(a)–(d) Cases

- 4 To express extent of space and its measurement, e.g.

tría mília pássuum ambulāuērunt 'they walked for three miles'
céntum pédēs áltus 'one hundred feet high'

- 5 To express the idea 'in respect of', e.g.

pédēs trémit 'he trembles in respect of his feet'
míhi símilis fáciem 'like me in respect of the face'

This is very common in poetry.

- 6 To express an adverbial idea, e.g.

dúlce 'sweetly'

quid? 'to what extent?'

múltum 'much'

- 7 To express exclamations, e.g.

mē míserum! 'unhappy me!'

(d) Genitive

The genitive often defines or completes the meaning of a noun. Its most frequent translation is 'of'. Note the different number of relationships that 'of' can indicate.

- 1 Possession, author or source ('belonging to', 'written by', 'derived from') e.g.

Eucliōnis aédēs 'the house of Euclio'

Vérgilī líber 'a book of Virgil' (i.e. written by Virgil)

Note that possession of a characteristic is indicated by the genitive in the following idiom:

stúltī est haec dīcere 'it is (the mark) of a fool to say this'

- 2 Part of a whole, e.g.

mágnā pars cívium 'a great part of the citizens'

Cf. *nímis* 'too much', *sátis* 'enough', *párum* 'too little', *áliquid* 'some', *quid?* 'some', 'what?': all take the 'partitive' genitive.

- 3 Description of content or material ('consisting of', 'containing'), e.g.

pōculum áquae 'a cup of water'

- 4 Description of quality or character (always with an adjective), e.g.

uir mágnae sapiéntiae 'a man of great wisdom'

- 5 Value, e.g.

hómo níhilī 'a fellow of nothing' i.e. 'of no worth'
fēmina plūrimī 'a woman of very great (worth)'

- 6 Subjective and objective genitives. Consider the ambiguity of *ámor pátris* 'the love of the father' – does it mean 'the love which the father shows' (i.e. 'father loves' – father is subject, so 'of the father' is subjective genitive) or 'the love which is shown to the father' (i.e. someone loves father, when father is the object, so 'of the father' is objective genitive)? The context will tell you, but you must be aware of both possibilities. Note that *mēī, túī, súī, nóstrī, uéstrī*, are objective genitives, i.e. *ámor nóstrī* can only mean 'love which is shown to us', not 'love which we feel'.

- 7 Many verbs and adjectives control the genitive case, especially words involving:

Remembering and forgetting (*méminī, oblīuīscor*)
 Pitying (*miseret*)
 Losing or lacking (*égeo*) (also with abl.)
 Filling (*plēnus*) (also with abl.)

E.g.

uerbōrum oblīuīscor 'I forget the words'
mē miseret túī 'I feel pity for you'
cībī égeo 'I need food'
plēnus aquae 'full of water'

- 8 *similis* 'like', 'resembling' takes the genitive or dative, e.g.

uir mēī similis 'a man like me'.

(e) Dative

The dative case is best dealt with in two parts.

1 People in the dative

The common idea behind all these usages is that the person in the dative will be interested or involved in the action, often to his advantage or

L(d)–(e) Cases

disadvantage. The action, in other words, has some consequence for the person in the dative. Often 'to', 'for' or 'from' will translate it adequately. In this sense, the dative case is used in the following ways.

- (i) To indicate the indirect object of the sentence – that is, the person to whom something is given, told, said, promised, shown, e.g.

aulam tíbi dō 'I give you (= to you) the pot'
fābulam míhi nārrā! 'tell me (= to me) the story'
quid Caēsari dīxistī? 'what did you say to Caesar?'

- (ii) To indicate the person to whose advantage or disadvantage something is done, e.g.

bēne est míhi 'it's fine for me'

- (iii) To indicate possession, with the verb 'to be', e.g.

est míhi pecūnia 'there is money to me', 'I have money'

See also 88.1.

- (iv) As agent, showing by whom something is done, e.g.

haec míhi dicta sunt 'these things have been said by me'
hoc míhi faciendum est 'this is to be done by me'

(The dative of agent is most frequently used with gerundives.)

- (v) To indicate the person interested in the action (only personal pronouns, always used in lively way) e.g.

quid míhi Cēlsus agit? 'what is Celsus doing? It interests me / I should like to know / please tell me' (Horace).

- (vi) To indicate the person judging, in whose eyes something is the case, e.g.

Quíntia fōrmōsa est múltīs 'Quintia is beautiful to many / in the eyes of many' (Catullus).

- (vii) With certain verbs, and adjectives. Examples of verbs are:

crēdō 'I believe'.
fāueō 'I favour'.
fīdō 'I trust'.
ignōscō 'I pardon'.
imperō 'I order'.
inuīdeō 'I envy'.

irāscor 'I am angry at'.
minor 'I threaten'.
noceō 'I harm'.
parcō 'I spare'.
pareō 'I obey'.
persuadeō 'I persuade'.
placeō 'I please'.
resistō 'I resist'.
subueniō 'I come to help'.

Many compound verbs, especially those compounded with *ob-*, *sub-*, *prae-*, *bene-*, *male-*, *satis-*, take the dative also.

Adjectives which imply advantage or disadvantage (e.g. nearness, likeness, helpfulness, kindness, trust etc.) take the dative, e.g.

proximus ei 'near (to) him'
Caesarī similis 'resembling Caesar'
mihi utilis 'useful to me'

2 Nouns (often abstract) in the dative ('predicative' dative)

Nouns in the dative usually show that which a thing serves for, or what its purpose is, e.g.

odiō sum Rōmānīs 'I serve for a hatred to the Romans' i.e. 'am hated by the Romans'
uoluptatī sum ei 'I serve for a pleasure to him/her'
militēs auxiliō misit 'he sent the soldiers to serve for / to be a help'

(f) Ablative

The ablative case has four basic usages. 'By', 'with', 'from', 'in' often translate it effectively.

1 The 'true' ablative denoting separation away from, e.g.

ex urbe 'out of the city'
nātus Ioue 'born from Jupiter'
dominātiōne liberātus 'freed from tyranny'

Under this heading we may list the ablative of comparison ('starting from a point of comparison with'), e.g.

quid mollius undā? 'what is softer than water?'

L(e)-(f)

2 The 'locative/temporal ablative'. This shows place/time in, on, or at, e.g.

in urbe 'in the city'
terrā marique 'on land and sea'
dextrā 'on the right'
tribus hōrīs '(with)in three hours'

3 The 'accompanying' ablative, e.g.

- (i) Of description: *uir magnā uirtūte* 'a man (with) of great bravery'.
- (ii) Of manner (how something is done): *sūmmā (cum) celeritāte uēnit* 'he came with very great speed'.
- (iii) The ablative absolute, e.g. *tē dūce uincēmus* 'with you as leader, we shall win' (this shows the accompanying circumstances). Cf. P Note 3.

4 The 'instrumental' ablative, e.g.

- (i) Of agent (by whom a thing is done): *ab hīs laudātur* 'he is praised by these people'.
- (ii) Of instrument or means (by which something is carried out): *saxīs sē dēfēdunt* 'they defend themselves with rocks'.
- (iii) Of cause (why something happens): *amōre pēriit* 'he died (because) of love'.
- (iv) Of measure of difference: *tū multō altior es* 'you are much taller' (lit. 'taller by much'). Note *ēō* 'by so much'; *quō* 'by how much'; *tantō* 'by so much'; *quāntō* 'by how much'; *paūlō* 'by a little'; *hōc* 'by this amount'; *aliquāntō* 'by a certain amount'. See J5(a)4.
- (v) Of price (cf. genitive of value at L(d)5): *multō aurō hanc aulam ēmi* 'I bought this pot at a price of much gold'; cf. *magnō* 'at a high price', *paruō* 'at a small price', *uīlī* 'at a cheap price'.
- (vi) Of respect: *uir pietāte grāuis* 'a man serious in respect of his piety' (Virgil). (This may also be classified as a locative ablative.)

5 Many verbs and some adjectives are followed by the ablative case. Some examples of verbs are:

fūngor 'I perform'
frūor 'I enjoy'
utor 'I use'
pōtior 'I take possession of' (also genitive)
dōnō 'I present x (acc.) with y (abl.)'

abundō 'I abound in'
opus est 'there is a need of x (abl.) to y (dat.)'

Some adjectives are:

frēt-us a um 'relying on'
plēn-us a um 'full of' (also genitive)
dign-us a um 'worthy of'

- 6 Note the following phrases, all of which can be explained in the terms set out above:

silētiō 'in silence'
iūre 'rightly'
mōre maiōrum 'in the fashion of our ancestors'
mēa spōnte 'on my own initiative'
ūsū 'in practice'
fōrte 'by chance'
uī 'by force'
nātū maior 'older' (lit. 'greater in respect of birth')
aéquō animō 'with equanimity'
bōnā fidē 'in good faith'
mēa sententiā 'in my opinion'
mēa causā 'for my sake'

(g) Locative

The locative is the remnant of an old case. It is used to express 'at' with names of towns and one-town islands. It has the same form as the genitive in first and second declensions singular, and as the ablative in the first and second declensions plural; in third declension nouns it adopts a form in *-ī* in the s., *-ibus* in the pl. E.g.

1st decl. s. *Rōmae* 'at Rome'
 2nd decl. s. *Corinthī* 'at Corinth'
 1st decl. pl. *Athēnīs* 'at Athens'
 3rd decl. s. *Carthāginī* 'at Carthage'
 3rd decl. pl. *Sārdibus* 'at Sardes'

Note also the following special usages:

dómī 'at home'
húmī 'on the ground'
rūrī 'in the country' (or *rūre*)

L(f)-(g), M(a)-(c) Infinitive

béllī 'at war'
mīlītiaē 'on military service'
ánimī 'in the mind'

NB. With towns and one-town islands 'to', 'into' are expressed by the plain accusative and '(away) from' by the plain ablative, e.g.

Rómam 'to Rome'
Rómā 'from Rome'
Syrācúsās 'to Syracuse'

M The infinitive

The infinitive acts as a verb, when it is active or passive, has a present, future or past tense and can govern cases. The infinitive can also act as a noun, when it is neuter and stands in the nominative or accusative case.

(a) As a noun (= gerund)

The infinitive often acts as a nominative or accusative gerund, e.g.

hūmānum est errāre 'to err is human', 'error is human'
errāre málum dūcimus 'we consider error (lit. 'to do wrong') wicked'

(b) As a verb/noun (prolative infinitive)

The infinitive is used after certain verbs, e.g. *póssum* 'I am able to', *dēbeō* 'I ought to', *uólō* 'I wish to', *cōnor* 'I try to', *incipiō* 'I begin to', *dúbitō* 'I hesitate to', *sóleō* 'I am accustomed to', etc.

It is common with verbs of being said or thought, e.g.

dīcitur málus esse 'he is said to be wicked'
uidētur bōnus esse 'he seems to be good'

(c) Indirect speech

The verb of indirect statements (see **R1**) is in the infinitive, e.g.

pútō tē abiisse 'I think that you have gone away' (lit. 'I think you to have gone away')

(d) Historic infinitive

The 'historic' infinitive is used to describe vividly an action which would normally be in the imperfect indicative, e.g.

multī séquī, fūgere, occīdī, cāpī 'many were following, fleeing, being killed and captured'

N Gerund

A gerund is a neuter noun, formed from a verb, with exactly the same form as the neuter s. of the gerundive (see **O**), e.g. *amānd-um* ī 2n. 'love', 'loving'. All such gerunds end in *-ndum*, e.g. *monéndum*, *capiéndum*, *regéndum* etc. This form is *never* nominative. It is most commonly used with a preposition or defining noun, e.g.

ad regéndum 'with a view to ruling', 'in order to rule'
ars dīcendī 'the art of speaking'
regendī grātiā 'for the sake of ruling'
capiendī causā 'for the sake of taking', 'in order to take'.

It can take an object e.g. *nāuīs capiendī causā* 'to capture the ships' (though some writers might express this by noun + gerundive + *causā* – *nāuium capiendārum causā*, see **O Note 3**). It can stand on its own in the dative and ablative, e.g.

docendō et discendō 'by teaching and learning'
operam legendō dat 'he pays attention to reading'

Infinitives also act as gerunds, in the nominative or accusative (without preposition). See **M**.

O Gerundive

The gerundive is a passive adjective, based on a verb, ending in *-nd-us a um*, meaning 'to be —ed', 'requiring to be —ed', 'needing to be —ed', 'must be —ed', e.g.

Rōma liberāda est 'Rome is to be freed', 'Rome must be freed',
 'Rome needs to be freed'
captīuōs necandōs trādidit 'he handed over the captives to be slain'

M(d), N, O, P Participles**Notes**

- 1 The gerundive usually has the agent in the dative, e.g.

Rōma Brūtō liberāda est 'Rome must be freed by Brutus'.

But verbs which take a dative object have the agent expressed by *ā/ab* + abl., e.g. *mīhi parcéndum est ā tē* 'it is to be spared to me by you', 'you must spare me'.

- 2 Where a verb is intransitive, the gerundive becomes impersonal, e.g.

eúndum est mīhi 'it is to be gone by me', 'I must go'.

- 3 In cases where a gerundive + noun, translated literally, sound odd, turn the phrase round into an active form, e.g.

ad mīlitēs capiendōs (lit.) 'with a view to soldiers to be captured' → 'with a view to capturing soldiers'
in liberāda patriā (lit.) 'in the fatherland to be freed' → 'in freeing the fatherland'
regī creandō 'for a king to be made' → 'for making a king'

See **N** above for this construction expressed by the gerund.

P Participles

There are three tenses of participle in Latin:

- The present participle **ACTIVE** (see **A1**), meaning '—ing', 'while —ing'.
- The future participle **ACTIVE** (see **A2**), meaning 'about to —', 'on the point of —ing', 'with a view to —ing'.
- The perfect participle **ACTIVE** (used by deponent verbs), 'having —ed' (sometimes just '—ing': see also **C4 Note 2** for passive meaning in some verbs) and the perfect participle **PASSIVE** (used by transitive, active verbs), meaning 'having been —ed' (see **C4, B4**).

Participles are adjectives and agree in case, number and gender with the noun or pronoun to which they refer. Sometimes they are used as adjectives, merely to describe a noun, e.g. *āqua fēruēns* 'boiling water'. But their commonest use is predicative, e.g. *Plātō scribēns est mōrtuus* 'Plato died while writing' (Cicero). Contrast *Plātō nōster est mōrtuus* 'our Plato has died'. See under 'Predicative' in the Glossary of Latin – English Grammar, p. xxi.

Notes

- 1 A participle standing on its own either means 'a/the person —ing etc.', e.g.

moritūri 'the (masculine plurals) about to die', 'those about to die'

or agrees with a noun or pronoun left out, and refers to a person already mentioned e.g.

rogānti respondit 'to (him) as he was asking he replied', 'he replied to his question'

- 2 Participles indicate the *time* of the action in relation to the adjoining verb, i.e. a present participle indicates the action is going on *at the same time as the verb*, future participle that it will happen *after the verb*, perfect that it has happened *before the verb*.
- 3 Participles, especially present and perfect passive, are often used with a noun or pronoun in the ablative (*ablative absolute*) to form an accompaniment to the action of a clause. E.g.

Cethēgus, recitātis litterīs, repente conticuit 'when the letter had been read out, Cethegus suddenly fell silent' (Cicero)

Cf. *tē dūce* 'under your leadership' (L(f)3(iii)).

- 4 The relationship between verb and participle can be more than merely temporal and suggest cause, concession, or condition, e.g.

tīmeō Dánaōs et dōna ferētis 'I fear the Greeks, even though bringing gifts'

nōn mihi nisi admōnitō uēnisset in mētem 'it wouldn't have entered my head if I hadn't been reminded' (Cicero)

- 5 The passive participle often expresses not the thing or person acted on, but the very act itself, e.g.

uiolātī hōspitēs, lēgātī necātī, fāna uexāta hanc tātam effēcērunt uāstitātem lit. 'violated guests, slaughtered ambassadors, ravaged shrines brought about this massive devastation', but better 'the violation of guests, the slaughter of ambassadors, the destruction of shrines . . .' etc.

Q1 Relative clauses: *quī* + indicative

A relative clause, introduced in Latin by some form of the relative pronoun *quī quae quod* 'who', 'which', 'what', 'that' (see I4) is an adjectival clause which describes a noun, e.g.

'The girls who are present'

'The book which I gave you is very old'

The word to which the relative pronoun refers is called the antecedent. In the above examples, the antecedent of 'who' is 'the girls', and the antecedent of 'which' is 'the book'.

The relative gets its *gender* (m., f. or n.) and its *number* (s. or pl.) from the *antecedent*; it gets its *case* from its *function* within the relative clause. Observe the following examples:

āmō puellās quae adsunt 'I like the girls who are present'

quae: feminine, plural (because 'girls' is the antecedent); nominative, because 'who' is the subject of 'are present'.

ubi est frāter meus, quem uidēre nōn pōssum 'where is my brother, whom I cannot see?'

quem: masculine, singular (because 'brother' is the antecedent); accusative, because 'whom' is the object of 'I cannot see'.

ābest rēx cuius milites adsunt 'the king, whose soldiers are present, is absent'

cuius: masculine, singular (antecedent 'king'); genitive, because 'whose' means 'of whom', 'belonging to whom', so genitive of possession.

puerī quibus pecūniam dedī effūgērunt 'the boys to whom I gave the money have run off'

quibus: masculine, plural ('boys'); dative, because I gave the money to them.

ubi est saxum quō percussus sum 'where is the rock by which I was hit?'

quō: neuter, singular ('rock'); ablative, because it was the instrument by which I was hit.

Notes

- 1 The 'connecting' relative joins the sentence closely to the previous one, e.g.

Caesar milites misit. quos ubi misit . . . 'Caesar sent the soldiers. Whom when he had sent', i.e. 'when he had sent them'

- 2 Observe the following idioms:

milites quos habebat optimos misit 'he sent the soldiers whom best he had', i.e. 'he sent the best soldiers he had'
qua es prudentia, nihil te effugiet lit. 'with what wisdom you are, nothing will escape you' i.e. 'such is your wisdom . . .'

Q2 Relative clauses: *qui* + subjunctive

When a relative clause 'hides' a clause of result, purpose, cause or concession, the verb is subjunctive:

- (a) Hidden result clause, often called 'generic', e.g.

is est qui pauperibus noceat 'he is the sort of person who harms the poor'

sunt qui putent 'there are people (of the sort) who think . . .'

nemo est qui hoc faciat 'there is no one who does this'

nemo est quin probet 'there is no one who does not approve' (note that here *quin* = *ut non*)

NB. *est qui*, *sunt qui*, when they refer to a definite antecedent, take the indicative, e.g. *multi sunt qui putant* 'there are many who think . . .'

- (b) Hidden purpose, e.g.

milites misit qui hostis circumdarent 'he sent soldiers who would / to surround the enemy'

- (c) Hidden cause, e.g.

amo te qui me ames 'I love you who (i.e. because you) love me'

These clauses often occur with *utpote qui* or *quippe qui*.

- (d) Hidden concession, e.g.

Q1-2, R-R1 Indirect speech

Verrēs, qui uisus multis diebus non esset, tamen se in conspectum dedit
 'Verres, who had not been seen for many days, nevertheless presented himself to view', i.e. 'Verres, although he . . .'
 (concessive)

Note

Observe the following idioms:

- 1 *dignus est qui imperet* 'he is worthy to govern'.
- 2 *quo* + comparative + subjunctive indicates purpose, e.g. *quo celarius effugiat* 'in order that he may escape more quickly'.
- 3 *maior est quam quem vincere possim* 'he is greater than one whom I can defeat', 'he is too great for me to defeat'.

R Indirect speech

When words are not quoted direct but given in reported form (e.g. 'he claimed that she was gone', 'we told him to leave at once', 'she asked where they were'), Latin

- Uses the accusative and infinitive to express indirect statements.
- Uses *ut/ne* + subjunctive (sometimes plain infinitive) to express indirect commands.
- Uses question word + subjunctive to express indirect questions.
- Puts all subordinate verbs into the subjunctive (except that *dum* 'at one point while' occasionally remains indicative).
- Makes all references to the speaker reflexive.

R1 Indirect statements

When you come across a verb of saying, thinking, reporting, etc., or even a noun implying these actions (e.g. *nuntius*), be ready for an accusative and infinitive construction. This reports what is being said or thought, e.g.

Caesar dixit hostis appropinquare 'Caesar said the enemy to be approaching' i.e. 'that the enemy were approaching'.

puto te pulchrum fuisse 'I consider you to have been handsome' i.e. 'that you were handsome'.

spero te mox discessurum esse 'I hope you to be about to go soon' i.e. 'that you will go soon'.

Notes

- 1 Observe that the subject of the indirect statement is in the accusative, and the verb in the infinitive. The tense of the infinitive is the same as what was originally said.
- 2 Note how *English* changes in response to the tense of the introductory verb of saying or thinking, e.g.

Caesar dicit hostis appropinquare lit. 'Caesar says the enemy to be approaching' 'that the enemy *are* approaching'

Caesar dixit hostis appropinquare 'Caesar said the enemy to be approaching' 'that the enemy *were* approaching'.

- 3 *negō* means 'I say that . . . NOT'.
- 4 A reflexive refers to the speaker of the main verb, e.g.

Caesar dixit se discessurum esse 'Caesar said that he (i.e. Caesar) would leave'.

Cf. *Caesar dixit eum discessurum* 'Caesar said that he (someone else) would leave'.

Note that *se* and the other personal pronouns tend to come second in the clause unless emphatic.

- 5 *esse* is sometimes dropped from the infinitive (see above example).
- 6 *fore ut* + subjunctive 'that it should come about that' is often used in indirect statements to get round future passive expressions.
- 7 Remember to start your translation into English with the word 'THAT' – a word which does not appear in the Latin in these constructions at all.

R2 Indirect commands

Indirect commands are signposted by a word of ordering, persuading, commanding etc. followed by *ut* or *nē*. The verb is in the subjunctive – present in primary sequence, imperfect in secondary. E.g.

mihi imperavit ut abirem 'he ordered me that I should go / to go away'

eos hortati sunt ne tristes essent 'they urged them that they should not be / not to be unhappy'

R1-3 Indirect speech

Notes

- 1 Observe *nē* . . . *quis* 'that no one' (see I4 for declension of *quis* indefinite), *nē* . . . *ullus* 'that not any', *nē* . . . *umquam* 'that never'.
- 2 References in the indirect command to the subject of the ordering verb are reflexive, e.g.

Caesar militibus imperavit ut sibi parerent 'Caesar ordered the soldiers to obey him' (i.e. Caesar: *ei* would mean 'him', i.e. someone else)

- 3 Some verbs take an infinitive construction as in English, e.g. *iubeo* 'I order', *vetō* 'I forbid', 'order not to', e.g.

iussit me abire 'he ordered me to leave'
eos progredi vetuit 'he forbade them / told them not to advance'.

- 4 In extended indirect speech, commands are sometimes introduced without *ut*, with just the plain subjunctive.

R3 Indirect questions

An indirect question puts the verb in the *subjunctive*. The rules are complex (see below), but the simplest thing to do is to translate the subjunctive as if it were the similar tense in the indicative, e.g.

rogat cur veneris 'he asks why you have come'
nesciuit quid faceres 'he did not know what you were doing'
petebam quid dicturus esset 'I was asking what he was about to say / would say'

Notes

- 1 *num* and *an* in an indirect question mean 'if', 'whether'. *num quis* means 'if/whether anyone' (cf. *nē quis*, *sī quis*, *nisi quis*).
- 2 *utrum* . . . *neque* in an indirect question means 'whether . . . or not'.
- 3 References to the subject of the verb of asking (etc.) will be reflexive, e.g.

Caesar rogavit cur omnes se timerent 'Caesar asked why everyone feared him (i.e. Caesar)'

4 Here are some examples from which you can deduce the chart, given below. They give the full picture of the exact relationship between the sequence, tense of verb and subjunctive required:

main verb primary	question word	subjunctive	main verb primary	question word	subjunctive
rōgo	cūr	uēnerit	I ask	why	he came / has come / was coming / had come
rōgō	cūr	uēniat	I ask	why	he is coming
rōgō	cūr	uentūrus sit	I ask	why	he will come / he is going to come
main verb secondary	question word	subjunctive	main verb secondary	question word	subjunctive
rogāuī	cūr	uēnisset	I asked	why	he had come
rogāuī	cūr	uenīret	I asked	why	he was coming
rogāuī	cūr	uentūrus esset	I asked	why	he would come / he was going to come

Summary chart

	Question refers to		
	Present	Future	Past
Introductory verb primary (e.g. <i>rōgat</i> 'he asks')	Pres. subj. 'is — ing'	Fut. part. + <i>sim</i> 'will —', is going to —'	Perf. subj. '— ed' / 'has —ed' 'was —ing' 'had —ed'
Introductory verb secondary (e.g. <i>rogāuit</i> 'he asked')	Imperf. subj. 'was —ing'	Fut. part. + <i>essem</i> 'would —', 'was going to —'	Plupf. subj. 'had —ed', 'had been —ing'

R4 Subjunctives in indirect speech

- (a) All subordinate clauses in indirect speech (except occasionally *dum* 'at one point while') have their verbs in the subjunctive. The subjunctives follow the rule of sequence, i.e.

Primary main verb: subjunctives used are present (referring to present and future time) and perfect (referring to past time)

R3-4, S Subjunctive

Secondary main verb: subjunctives used are imperfect (referring to present and future time) and pluperfect (referring to past time).

Occasionally future time will be referred to by means of the future participle + *sim* (primary) or *essem* (*fōrem*) secondary. See 142 Note.

- (b) Conditional sentences in indirect speech have a subjunctive in the *sī/nīsi* clause ('protasis'), and an accusative + infinitive in the other part ('apodosis'). The rules of sequence for the subjunctives are the same as those in R4(a) above. Note that only context will now allow you to distinguish between a future indicative condition and a subjunctive condition referring to the future, e.g. (he said that) *sī pācem pōpulus Rōmānus cum Heluētīs fāceret*, in *eam partem itūrōs* could represent (Direct Speech) either (1) or (2):

- (1) *sī pācem . . . fāciat*, in *eam partem eāmus* 'if (the Roman people) were to make peace (with the Helvetii), we would go to that place . . .' Present subjunctive (referring to the future).
- (2) *sī pācem . . . fāciat*, in *eam partem ibimus* 'if (the Roman people) is going to make peace (with the Helvetii), we shall go to that place . . .' Future indicative.

In the other subjunctive conditions (imperfect and pluperfect), 'would be —ing' and 'would have —ed' (the apodosis) are both represented by future participle + *fuisse*. E.g. *uidēmur quiētūrī fuisse, nīsi essēmus lacessītī* 'It seems we would have kept quiet, had we not been provoked' (Cicero) (representing direct speech *sī* + pluperfect subjunctive, pluperfect subjunctive).

S The subjunctive

The subjunctive originally expressed the will, desire, or hope on the part of the speaker that something should be (e.g. *uīuat rēx* 'may the king live' — this is the speaker's desire). It is used in main clauses and subordinate clauses. In subordinate clauses in classical Latin it is often used merely as a convention, and does not carry its original force (e.g. in indirect questions, see R3).

S1 Main clauses

(Cf. L–V Intro.)

(a) As an imperative

Expresses an order, or prohibition, e.g.

nē trānsierīs 'do not cross'

or the 'jussive' subjunctive 'let us/him' etc, e.g.

eāmus 'let us go'*amēmus* 'let us make love'

(b) 'Deliberative' subjunctive

This takes the form 'what am I to?', e.g.

quid faciā 'what am I to do?'

(c) Wishes

Examples are:

sīs fēlix 'may you be happy'*uolō tū scribās* 'I want you to write'or, with *utinam* 'O that!':*utinam adessēs* 'O that you were present'

(See L–V Intro. (a)4.)

(d) Conditional/potential

Examples:

uelim 'I should like to'*dixerit* } *aliquis* 'someone might/would say'*dīcat**sī adfuisset, uīdisset* 'if he had been there, he would have seen'

S1–2 Subjunctive

S2 Subordinate clauses

The subjunctive may be found in a number of clauses already dealt with elsewhere, i.e. indirect commands, indirect questions, and subordinate clauses in indirect speech (on all of which, see **R2** and **R3** and **R4**), relative clauses (see **Q2**), temporal clauses (see **T**), causal clauses (**U**) and concessive clauses (**V**).

(a) Result (or consecutive) clauses 'so . . . that', 'so . . . as to'

1 The 'that' clause is expressed by *ut* + subjunctive (negative *nōn*). The subjunctive is normally present, imperfect or perfect.

2 There are a number of different words for 'so'. These include: *adeō*, *ita*, *tam*, *sic*, *ēō*.

Note also *tāntus* 'so great', *tot* 'so many', *tālis* 'of such a sort', e.g.

tantum est periculum ut nemo uenerit 'so great is the danger that no-one has come'

tam fortis erat ut uinci nōn posset 'he was so brave that he could not be defeated'

ita agere debemus ut omnes nos laudent 'we ought so to act that all praise us'

3 Consecutive constructions are also used in the following idioms:

(i) *tantum abest ut . . . ut* 'x is so far from . . . (ut) . . . THAT' (*ut* consecutive); *facere nōn possum quin* 'I cannot do (a thing) but that . . .', 'I cannot help —ing'; *feri nōn potest quin* 'it cannot come about but that . . . not'.

(ii) *qui* + subjunctive can mean 'of such a kind that' (generic), when it is followed by a consecutive construction, e.g. *nōn sum is qui quiescere possim* 'I am not the sort of person who can keep quiet'.

Cf. *nemo est quin probet* 'there is no one of the sort who does not approve' (Cicero) (*quin* = *qui nōn*).

(iii) *accidit ut* (*nōn*) + subjunctive 'it happens that . . .'; *perficiō* / *efficiō* / *fāciō ut* (*nōn*) 'I bring it about that . . .'; *nōn multum abest quin* 'it is not far from being the case that . . .'

(iv) *numquam accedō quin abeam doctior* 'I never approach (you) without going away more learned' (Cicero).

(b) Purpose (or final) clauses 'in order to / that', 'to'

Purpose clauses are commonly expressed by *ut* (negative *nē*) + subjunctive. The subjunctive is present in primary sequence, imperfect in secondary. E.g.

uēnio ut uideam 'I come in order to / to / in order that I may see'

uēnī ut uidērem 'I came in order (etc.) to see'

Note that *nē quis* = 'that no-one' (see I4 for declension of *quis* indefinite), *nē ūmquam* 'that never', *nē ūllus* 'that not . . . any', 'lest any'.

Notes

- 1 *quī* + subjunctive frequently expresses purpose, especially with verbs of movement, e.g.

lēgātōs mīsit quī pācem pēterent 'they sent ambassadors who should seek / to seek peace'

- 2 References in the purpose clause to the subject of the main verb are expressed by the reflexive, e.g.

Caesar uēnit ut mīlitēs sē uidērent 'Caesar arrived so that his soldiers should see him (i.e. Caesar)'.

- 3 *quō* + subjunctive expresses purpose when there is a comparative in the purpose clause, e.g.

quō celērius effūgiat 'so that he may escape more quickly'

- 4 *perficiō/efficiō/faciō ut* (neg. *nē*) + subjunctive ('I bring it about that') may express purpose, as well as result (see S2(a)3(iii)).

- 5 Observe how many ways there are of expressing purpose in Latin:

- (i) *ut/nē* + subjunctive
- (ii) *quī* + subjunctive
- (iii) *ad* + gerund/gerundive 'with a view to —ing' (see N, O).
- (iv) *causā* + gerund/gerundive
- (v) The supine (see A7 for formation): used especially with verbs of motion, e.g. *mīlitēs mīsit pācem petītum* 'he sent soldiers to seek peace'.

(c) Conditional sentences

The 'if' clause of a conditional sentence is often called the 'protasis', the main clause the 'apodosis'.

S2 Subjunctive**1 Indicative**

Where a conditional sentence uses an indicative in both clauses, translate normally, e.g.

sī tū sāpiēns es, ēgo stūltus 'if you are wise, I am a fool'

(But see **Note 1** below.)

Note that English is less accurate about future and future perfects than Latin, e.g.

sī puēlla discēdet, laetus erō 'if the girl departs (lit. 'will depart') I shall be delighted'

sī hoc fēceris, habēbō grātiā 'if you do this (lit. 'will have done this') I shall be grateful'

2 Subjunctive

Where a conditional sentence has the subjunctive in both clauses, translate with 'would', 'should', 'were', as follows:

- (i) Present subjunctive (refers to future time) 'If x were to happen y would happen'.
- (ii) Imperfect subjunctive (refers to present time) 'If x were now happening, y would be happening'.
- (iii) Pluperfect subjunctive (refers to past time) 'If x had happened, y would have happened'.

E.g.

sī puēlla discēdat, laetus sim 'if the girl were to depart, I would be delighted'

sī puēlla discēderet, laetus essem 'if the girl were (now) departing, I would (now) be happy'

sī puēlla discessisset, laetus fuisset 'if the girl had departed, I would have been delighted'

Notes

- 1 Latin sometimes mixes indicatives and subjunctives in conditional sentences. Generally speaking, such conditions should be treated on the 'would/should' pattern, e.g.

pōns iter paēne hōstibus dedit, nīsi ūnus uir fuisset 'the bridge almost gave the enemy a way across (and would have done), if there had not been one man' (Livy)

- 2 The imperfect subjunctive can be used to refer to past time, e.g.

uidērēs 'you would have seen'

- 3 *nisi*, *nī* and *sī nōn* all mean 'if . . . not', 'unless'.
 4 *sī/nīsi quis* means 'if/unless anyone' (see I4 for declension of *quis* indefinite). Cf. *sī/nīsi quāndō* 'if/unless at any time'.
 5 *sīue . . . sīue (seu . . . seu)* means 'whether . . . or' and introduces alternative conditions, e.g.

sīue haec uēra sīue falsa sunt, proficīscar 'whether these things are false or true, I shall set out'

- 6 The indicative is normal in the main clause (apodosis) of a condition using subjunctive, where it involves the ideas of possibility (e.g. *pōssum*) or obligation (e.g. *dēbeō* or gerundive), e.g.

nīsi fēlicitās in socórdiam uertīssset, exūere iūgum potuēre 'if their success had not turned to sloth, they would have been able to throw off the yoke' (Tacitus)

sī ūnum diem morātī essētis, moriēdum omnibus fūit 'if you had delayed for one day, you would all have had to die' (Livy)

- 7 For conditional sentences in indirect speech see R4(b).

(d) Verbs of fearing

uēreor/tīmeō meaning 'I fear to' take the infinitive as in English.

uēreor/tīmeō meaning 'I fear that/lest' take the subjunctive, and are introduced by *nē* ('that', 'lest'), *ut* ('that . . . not') or *nē . . . nōn* ('that . . . not'). The subjunctive follows normal rules of sequence, e.g.

tīmeō nē uēniat 'I fear lest he (will) come'

tīmēbam nē uēnīssset 'I was afraid that he had come'

NB. As with purpose clauses, any reference to the subject of the main verb inside the *nē/ut/nē nōn* clause will be reflexive.

(e) Verbs of doubting

nōn dūbitō 'I do not doubt', *nōn dūbium est* 'there is no doubt' and similar negative expressions of doubting are followed by *quīn* + subjunctive, e.g.

nōn dūbium est quīn errēs 'there is no doubt that you are wrong'

Notes

- 1 This amounts to an indirect question (see above R3), since it reports 'Are you not wrong?' *quīn* is composed from *quī* (old abl. of *quī quae quod*) and the negative *-ne*. The original meaning (common in Plautus) is 'How not?', 'Why not?'.
 2 The affirmative (even more clearly an indirect question) is *dūbitō an* + subj. 'I doubt whether . . .'

(f) Verbs of hindering, preventing, forbidding

Verbs like *impēdiō* 'I hinder', *dēterreō* 'I deter', *prohībeō* 'I prevent', *ōbstō* 'I stand in the way of (x doing something)' are followed by *nē* or *quōminus* with the subjunctive, unless negative, when they take *quōminus* or *quīn*. E.g.

tē impēdiam nē/quōminus ābeās 'I shall prevent you from leaving'

But

tē nōn impēdiam quōminus/quīn ābeās 'I shall not prevent you from leaving'

NB. The infinitive or accusative and infinitive is common after *prohībeō*, e.g. *prohībeō tē īre* 'I prevent you from going'.

(g) 'Provided that'

dum, dūmodo, mōdo can mean 'provided that' (negative *dum nē* etc.), when the verb is subjunctive, e.g.

ōderint dum mētuant 'let them hate, provided that they fear'
 (Accius – Roman tragedian: a favourite quote of Caligula)

T Temporal clauses

These clauses indicate the time at which something takes place, e.g. 'when', 'as soon as', 'after', 'while', 'until', 'whenever', etc.

- (a) *ūbi, ut* ('when'), *pōstquam* 'after', *sīmulac, quam primum* ('as soon as') take the indicative.

Note that when Latin uses the perfect indicative, English frequently translates with the pluperfect, e.g.

ūbi Caēsar peruēnit 'when Caesar arrived/had arrived'

- (b) *dum, donec*, 'while' take the indicative, e.g.

dum uiuō, sperō 'while I live, I hope'

Note that when 'while' means 'at one point when', the indicative is present, e.g.

dum loquor, homo intrāuit 'while I was speaking, the fellow entered'

- (c) *dum, donec* 'until' and *antequam, priusquam* 'before' take:

- 1 The indicative when the clause conveys nothing but the idea of pure time, e.g. *manēbat dum Caēsar peruēnit* 'he waited till Caesar arrived'.
- 2 The subjunctive when the action is expected or waited for or intention is being expressed, e.g. *manēbat dum Caēsar uenīret* 'he waited until Caesar should come'; *abiit priusquam Caēsar eum uidēret* 'he left before Caesar should see him'.

- (d) *cum* 'when' takes:

- 1 The indicative when referring to present or future, e.g. *cum uidēbis, tum scīēs* 'when you (will) see, then you will know'.
- 2 The subjunctive (pluperfect or imperfect) when referring to past, e.g. *cum haec dīxisset, abiit* 'when he had said this, he left'.

- (e) An exception to **T(d)2** is that *cum* takes the indicative when referring to the past in the following circumstances:

- 1 When it expresses pure time, e.g. *cum ego Rōmae eram, tū Londīni ērās* 'when I was at Rome, you were in London'.
- 2 When it means 'whenever', e.g. *cum mē uīderat, laetābātur* 'whenever he saw me, he rejoiced'.
- 3 'Inverted' *cum*, e.g. *abibam cum nūntius peruēnit* 'I was going away when a messenger arrived'.

U Causal clauses: 'because', 'since'

quod, quia, quoniam, quāndō all mean 'since', 'because' and their verbs take the indicative when the speaker is vouching for the reason, e.g.

adsunt quod officium sequuntur 'they are present because they follow their duty' (that is the speaker's explanation)

T, U, V Concessive clauses

adsunt quod officium sequantur would mean 'they are present on the grounds that (i.e. the reason is not the speaker's) they follow their duty'.

cum 'since' nearly always takes the subjunctive. After certain verbs, however, it can take the indicative, e.g.

doleō cum aeger es 'I grieve because you are ill'

Cf. *laudō* 'I praise', *gaudeō* 'I rejoice'.

Notes

1 *quī* + subjunctive can denote cause, e.g.

amō tē quī mē amēs 'I love you who (= because you) love me'

quī in such utterances is often strengthened by the addition of *quippe*, *utpote* or *ut*.

2 Causal clauses are often signposted or picked up by *ēō* or *idcirco* 'for this reason'.

V Concessive clauses

These are introduced by *etsi, etiāmsi* 'even if'; *quāquam, quāmuīs* 'although' and *quī* + subjunctive. *etsi* and *etiāmsi* take indicative or subjunctive like conditional clauses, e.g.

etiāmsi tacent, satis dicunt 'though they are silent, they say enough'
etiāmsi taceant, satis dicant 'though they were to be silent, they would say enough'

quāquam 'although' takes indicative; *quāmuīs* 'however' takes subjunctive, e.g.

quāquam inimicus es 'although you are hostile'
quāmuīs inimicus sis 'however hostile you may be'

quī 'who' can be used with concessive force, when it takes the subjunctive, e.g.

ego quī fortis sim tamen fugiam 'I, who am brave, nevertheless will flee' i.e. 'I, though brave . . .'

NB. *licet* 'it is allowed' is quite often followed by a subjunctive verb. In this case it means 'though', e.g. *frémant omnes licet, dicam quod sentiō*. 'Though they may all make a commotion, I will say what I think' (Cicero).

W Word-order

(a) Emphasis and scene-setting

- 1 *Caesar in Galliam contendit* 'Caesar marched into Gaul' may be called for convenience the 'normal' or 'narrative' order of that sentence in Latin. An 'emphatic' order would be *in Galliam Caesar contendit* 'it was into Gaul that Caesar marched' (answering the question 'Where was Caesar marching?'), or *contendit in Galliam Caesar* (answering the question 'What was it that Caesar was doing re Gaul?'). Putting the verb first is common in vivid or excited narrative, when we want to know what is happening at once or when there is no stated subject to the verb, so verb-ending is the only clue to it.

Observe how 'emphasis' affects the position of 'attributive' adjectives, normally placed *after* the noun (e.g. *uir bonus* 'good man'). They come first when they define it (emphatically) rather than merely add a description, e.g. *utram tunicam mauis – albam an purpuream?* *purpuream tunicam malo* 'Which tunic do you prefer – the white or the purple?' 'The purple's the one I prefer.'

- 2 *Gallia est omnis diuisa in partibus tres* 'As for Gaul, the whole of it, it is divided into parts – how many? – Well, three actually.' Caesar 'sets the scene' – we are talking about the whole of Gaul – and leaves to the end the real importance of what he is to say: that it is divided into three parts. Observe how he continues: *quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani* 'of which, well, we have one part lived in by – Belgians – and the other by – Aquitanians'. Again, Caesar sets the scene and then gives the really important information: it was Belgians and Aquitanians who lived in two of the parts.

English also uses 'scene-setting' word-order to emphasise in this way, e.g. 'Talent, Mr. Micawber has; capital, Mr. Micawber hasn't' (Dickens).

(b) Shadowing

- 1 Latin tends to alternate emphatic and unemphatic words or phrases within the sentence. In the example of the coloured tunics given above, the word *purpuream* in the answer is emphatic, and the word *tunicam* – less necessary, since we already know that tunics are what is being discussed – carries less emphasis. It is useful to think metaphorically of *tunicam* being cast into the shadow by the emphatic *purpuream* which precedes it.
- 2 Certain classes of words tend to be placed in the shadow of the first

W Word-order

important word in the sentence or clause (regardless of whether they are connected with it grammatically or logically). These are: (i) particles like *enim*, *autem*, which connect the sentence they occur in with what precedes; (ii) unemphatic personal and demonstrative pronouns like *me*, *tibi*, *eum*, *nos*: e.g. *his mihi rebus*, *Scipio*, *levis est senectus* (Cicero) 'it is because of these things, Scipio, that old age is no burden for me'. Note that *mihi* interposes itself between two grammatically connected words: *his* and *rebus*. (iii) The verb, when unemphatic, often gravitates to a position just after the first emphatic word: this happens especially with *est* as an auxiliary verb, e.g. *in Galliam est Caesar profectus* 'it was for Gaul that Caesar set out'.

- 3 Adverbial phrases may be 'shadowed' (or 'sandwiched') between two grammatically connected words when they are logically connected with the enclosing phrase: *magna in hac re prudentia utendum est* 'great prudence must be used in this matter' (*in hac re* limits the application of the prudence to this matter); *clarorum uirorum post mortem honores permanent* 'the honours paid to great men remain after death' (*post mortem* warns us in good time that we are thinking of a special kind of honour – the sort that may be paid after death).

(c) Some consequences of emphasis, scene-setting and shadowing

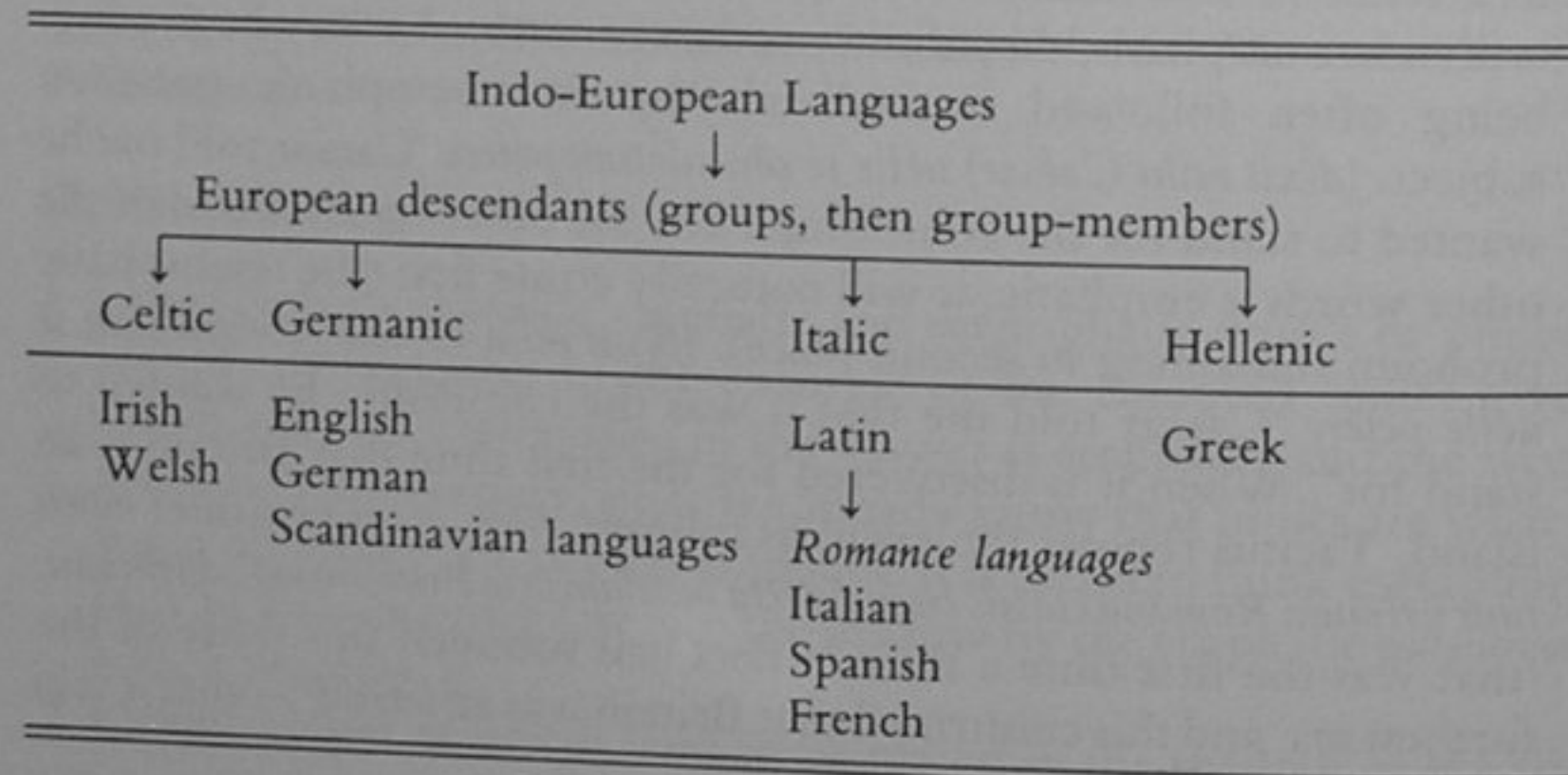
- 1 The normal place for subordinating conjunctions is at the beginning of their clause, but when other words in the clause are used for 'scene-setting' (as often in temporal or conditional clauses), the conjunction often ends up immediately before the verb: *Caesar in Galliam cum contendisset* 'when Caesar had marched into Gaul'.
- 2 In accusative and infinitive constructions, if there is no other word with more emphasis, the infinitive often comes at the very beginning, being often followed immediately by an unemphatic pronoun subject: (*dixit mihi Caesar*) *uolle se consulatum petere* 'Caesar told me he wanted to stand for the consulship'. On the other hand, if one of the other words is emphatic, it will naturally come first (the unemphatic pronoun remaining in second place): (*dixit mihi Caesar*) *consulatum se uolle petere* 'Caesar told me that it was the consulship he wanted to stand for'. When it is discovered for the first time that Britain is an island, Tacitus reports the event as follows: *hanc oram nouissimum maris tunc primum Romana classis circumuecta insulam esse Britanniam adfirmavit*, 'that was the first time a Roman fleet had rounded this shore of the furthest sea, and this confirmed that Britain was an island' – 'that it was an island Britain was'.

APPENDIX: THE LATIN LANGUAGE

A brief history of the Latin language

The beginnings

Latin is one of the many languages belonging to the Indo-European family whose members extend from the Atlantic coasts of Europe to India. In Europe itself these languages can be divided into groups: Hellenic, represented by the various dialects of Greek; Italic, consisting of Latin and its close relatives in central Italy: Germanic, including English, German, and the Scandinavian languages; and Celtic, including Welsh and Irish (see Table). Latin is in the unique position of being not only a member of the Italic group but also the ancestor of the last European group, Romance (including Italian, Spanish, and French) which developed later than the rest, within historic times. Though Latin, settled in Latium, was only one of the members of the Italic group that also included Oscan and Umbrian, by the fourth century the energy of the Romans had reduced their neighbours to the status of subject allies, and their languages, known to us only from inscriptions and isolated words taken into Latin, never attained any recorded literary cultivation and succumbed to Latin during classical times.



Early Latin

The remains of early Latin consist of later quotations from the works of authors not preserved entire, and of inscriptions, beginning with a brooch from Praeneste (c. 600 B.C.) which reads in Greek letters *MANIOS MED FHE FHAKED NUMASIOI* (= *Mānius mē fēcit Numeriō*) 'Manius made me for Numerius'¹. Between this date and the beginnings of surviving literary texts with the plays of Plautus (c. 254–184 B.C.) many changes in the language took place, as even these few words show: *-os* became *-us*, and *-om* became *-um* (see **H2(a) Note 2**); *-d* dropped in *med* (= *mē*) and the ablative singulars *Gnaiuod* (= *Gnaeō*), *sententiad*; *fhefhaked* shows a reduplicated perfect (*fhe fhaked*) in contrast to *fēcit*; the dative singular of the second declension is in *-oi* and distinct from the ablative; and single intervocalic *-s-* (*Numasioi*) becomes *-r-* (see **H3(d) Note**). Other evidence shows the early diphthongs *ei* becoming *i* (as *quei*, *sei*) and *oi*, *ou* becoming *u*, as *oinom* (= *ūnum*), *abdoucit*. Whereas classical Latin limits the position of the accent to the second or third syllable from the end of the word, at an early period the accent was on the first syllable of all words and was very strong; as a result the vowels in the syllables immediately after this accent were reduced, and these changes survived the later shift in the position of the accent and can still be seen in verbs compounded with prepositions, e.g. *capiō*: *incipiō*; *sedeō*: *obsideō*; *aestimō*: *existimō*; *caedō*: *incidō*; *claudō*: *inclūdō*, and also in adjectives with the negative prefix *in-*, e.g. *aptus*: *ineptus*; *arma*: *inermis*; *aequus*: *inīquus*.

¹ There is controversy over this inscription – it may be a forgery – but the linguistic lessons it encapsulates are not affected.

The Empire

By the end of the Republic in 31 Roman rule extended to territories almost completely encircling the Mediterranean, with gaps only on the north coast of Africa, and including all the islands. In the eastern Mediterranean Greek was already established as the second language of the users of a great variety of tongues, but in the West Latin had no such competition, and passed with surprising rapidity from being a *lingua franca* to being adopted as the language of the country in the Iberian peninsula and Gaul. The conquest by the emperor Claudius in the first century A.D. introduced Latin to Britain but, as in other peripheral parts of the Empire, it did not long survive the collapse of central authority in the Western Empire in the fifth century.

The Middle Ages

From this point the history of Latin divides into two. (1) In the older Roman territories of Spain and Gaul, where it had ousted the native languages, it gradually developed in its spoken form into the various Romance languages. (2) As the medium of Western Christianity it continued, primarily as a *written* language of liturgy and administration throughout the old Roman lands and wherever Christianity became established, on the borders of the Empire as in Britain, or beyond them as in Germany and Scandinavia and among some of the Western Slavs. This Christian Latin, though open to local influences on vocabulary and idiom, was transmitted by education, and each generation of students learned it consciously and painfully in an unchanging form. Within communities of the educated such as monasteries and, later, universities, it became a spoken language also, as well as being the normal medium of teaching and writing on serious and technical subjects such as grammar, rhetoric, logic, mathematics, law, medicine, theology and history (though in Britain both Celtic and Anglo-Saxon, and in parts of Scandinavia the vernacular languages were cultivated in written form for learned purposes earlier than elsewhere). As the context of mediaeval Latin was first and foremost a religious one the language of St Jerome's late fourth-century revision of previous Latin translations of the Bible (the *editiō uulgāta*) was immensely influential, and sanctified late popular usages such as a simple sentence structure, changes in the use of cases and the subjunctive, and the abandonment of the accusative and infinitive construction in reported speech. At the same time the ancient practice, more appropriate to native speakers than to learners, of confining literary study to the poets, especially Virgil, was continued, though not without Christian misgivings about their pagan subject-matter, and thus constructions proper to verse found their way into medieval prose works.

The renaissances

As the standard and even the continued existence of this mediaeval Christian Latin depended on the efficiency of educational institutions it fluctuated with the stability and prosperity of the region, and its history is marked by a series of renaissances following periods of declining standards. One such was the Carolingian Renaissance under the Emperor Charlemagne c. 800 A.D., who summoned to his court Alcuin of York to advise him and direct a reform of clerical education, and who made provision for cathedral and monastic schools. A good many classical Latin authors would have been lost to us if their works had not been

The Romance languages

collected and recopied at this time. A similar renaissance took place in the twelfth century, more concerned with creation than conservation, and associated with a greater emphasis on secular learning and the first universities with their devotion to dialectic and professional training in medicine and law. The renaissance to which the title 'Renaissance' is normally applied began in the late thirteenth and early fourteenth centuries in Northern Italy and at the papal court at Avignon. It was characterised by an eagerness to search out, copy, and edit new texts, and by an admiration for the style and a sympathetic appreciation of the virtues of the classical period, above all of Cicero, and it marked the beginning of the end of the Middle Ages, which it unfairly stigmatised as a period of barbarism and ignorance.

The Romance languages

Evolution

In one sense Latin is not a dead language but the unchanging *written* form that has survived down the centuries in parallel with the Romance languages, which represent the further evolution of its *spoken* form at various times and places. It took quite a long time for the magnitude of the difference to be appreciated: at first, Latin was the written norm and the spoken forms were regarded simply as less careful and less correct forms of the same language, and it is not until about the ninth century A.D. that the first attempts at writing the spoken forms continuously reveal that these had come to be perceived as different languages from Latin. Wherever Latin had become the ordinary language, by late classical times its differing local development created dialects distinct in small ways from their neighbours, and as new states came into being after the Dark Ages, in each a particular dialect, usually associated with the seat of government, acquired prestige; as the size of states increased these prestige dialects took the first steps toward becoming national languages. Thus, in addition to the well-known modern national languages of French, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, and all their dialects, the Romance group includes languages representing cultural or former political units such as Provençal and Catalan, as well as the Romance dialects spoken in the Alpine regions and the various islands. Far to the east lies Romanian, first recorded in the sixteenth century, whose survival is something of a mystery. Dalmatian, in present-day Yugoslavia, died out about a century ago. Since the Middle Ages trade and colonisation have carried Romance languages all over the world, so that Portuguese became

established in Brazil, Africa, and the Far East; Spanish in Mexico and the rest of South America (hence the term 'Latin America'); and French in North America and Africa.

Variety

While all these languages have diverged from Latin they have not done so in the same way or to the same degree, and the range of variation extends from French at the extreme of innovation to the Sardinian dialects at the conservative end of the spectrum. The process of differentiation must have begun long before the records and was probably detectable to the ear, though not in writing, before the fall of the Empire. To an undeterminable extent the changes as regards sounds represent the influence of the languages spoken before Latin was adopted (the 'substratum'), and as regards vocabulary the contact with other languages since then, e.g. with Frankish (a Germanic language) in France, Arabic in Spain, Magyar and Bulgarian in Romania.

Characteristics

We normally work backwards from the members of a language family in order to reconstruct their unrecorded common ancestor. When we do this with the Romance languages we do not produce a result which exactly tallies with classical Latin, but one which represents a more popular and less literary spoken style, unhappily called Vulgar Latin. While most of the detail is peculiar to each language and dialect, some general statements about the nature of the evolution from Latin to Romance can be made.

I. *Nouns and adjectives.* (A) All the languages (with the limited exception of Romanian) abandoned the Latin case system, reducing the noun to two forms, a singular and a plural. (1) The singular continues the Latin accusative singular minus the *-m* (which was already weak, perhaps only a nasalisation, in Latin), e.g. *corōna(m)*, It. *corona*, *annu(m)*, It. *anno*. (2) The plural either adds *-s* from the accusative plural (so in Fr., Sp., Port.) e.g. the Latin *corōnās* becomes Sp. *coronas*, the Latin *annōs*, becomes Sp. *anos*; or changes the final vowel (so in It., Rom.) as in the nominative plural of the first two declensions, e.g. *corōnae*, It. *corone*; *annī*, It. *anni*. (B) The three gender classes of Latin were reduced to two by the loss of the neuter, with neuter nouns generally becoming masculine. (C) The inflected forms of the degrees of comparison in adjectives and adverbs were replaced by phrases with *plūs* (It., Fr.) or *magis* (Sp., Port., Rom.), e.g. Latin *aqua calidissima*, It. *l'acqua più calda*, Fr. *l'eau la plus chaude*, Sp. *el*

agua más cálida, with the comparative replacing the superlative. In place of the inflected adverb, e.g. *lentē*, the Romance languages formed phrases with the Latin ablative *mente*, e.g. *lentā mente*, It., Sp. *lentamente*, Fr. *lentement*. (D) The indefinite and definite articles were introduced, utilising *ūnus*, *ille*, e.g. Latin *ūnus homo*, *ūna domina/fēmina*, It. *un uomo*, *una donna*, Fr. *un homme*, *une femme*; Latin *ille homo*, It. *l'uomo*, Fr. *l'homme*; Latin *illī/illōs hominēs*, It. *gli uomini*, Fr. *les hommes*. (E) The insubstantial demonstratives *is* and *hic* were replaced by *iste*, *ipse*, and compounds of these with *ecce*, e.g. *iste*, Sp. *este*; *ipse*, Sp. *ese*; *ecce(m) istu(m)*, It. *questo*, Fr. *ce*, *cet*; *ecce illu(m)/illōs/illās*, Fr. *celui*, *celle(s)*, *ceux*.

II. *Verbs.* (A) The four conjugations were sometimes reduced to three by the redistribution of the third between the second and fourth. (B) The whole inflected passive was lost, except for the participle, which combined with *esse* to form a new phrasal passive, e.g. Latin *amātur* but It. *è amato*, Fr. *il est aimé*. (C) The future and future perfect and, in most parts, the pluperfect indicative, disappeared, while the pluperfect subjunctive generally replaced the imperfect subjunctive, e.g. *cantāuisset/cantāsset*, It. *cantasse*, Fr. *il chantât*. (D) The Latin future was replaced by a combination of *habeō* (less frequently *uolō* or *dēbeō*) with the infinitive of the main verb to give a new Romance future, e.g. *cantāre-habet*, It. *canterà*, Fr. *il chantera*. (E) Beside the Latin perfect a new past tense was formed with the present of *habēre* or *tenēre* (in intransitive verbs sometimes with *esse*), plus the past participle, e.g. *habet cantātum*, It. *ha cantato*, Fr. *il a chanté*; and in parallel with this a new pluperfect was created using the imperfect of the auxiliary verb, e.g. *habēbat cantātum*, Fr. *il avait chanté*. (F) The other notable Romance creation was the conditional, formed like the new future but with the imperfect or perfect of *habeō* added to the infinitive, e.g. *cantāre-habēbat/habuit*, Fr. *il chanterait*, It. *canterebbe*; a parallel past conditional was then formed from the conditional of *habeō* plus the past participle, e.g. Fr. *il aurait chanté*. (G) The future participle did not survive, and the present one, except in purely adjectival use, was generally replaced by the ablative of the gerund, e.g. It. *cantando*.

Vocabulary

The vocabulary of the Latin that developed into Romance often differs from the literary terms for a variety of reasons: the classical word may be physically too slight to survive sound-change and so be expanded by prefixes or suffixes or be replaced by a more substantial approximate synonym, or the classical term may simply have gone out of fashion generally or at that particular social level. So, for example, *edō* 'eat' is

replaced by *comedō* or *mandūcō*; *ōs* (*ōris*) 'mouth' by *bucca* (though *os*, *ossis* 'bone' survives); *ignis* 'fire' by *focus*; *magnus* 'great' by *grandis*; *apis* 'bee' by *apicella*; *avis* 'bird' by *auicellus* or *passer*; *ferre* 'to bring' by *portāre* or *leuāre*; *equus* 'horse' by *caballus*; *brevis* 'short' by *curtus*; *pulcher* 'beautiful' by *bellus* or *fōrmōsus*; and *domus* 'house' by *casa* or *mānsiō*. However, as the Romance languages never lost the sense of being connected in some way with Latin they continued to draw new vocabulary from book Latin, and from each other, as they developed into cultivated literary languages in the course of the Middle Ages. These later acquisitions can often be recognised because they are closer in form to their Latin source than the words that have shared the whole development of their particular Romance language.

The Latin element in English

First-fourth centuries A.D.

The Romans attempted the conquest of Britain unsuccessfully under Julius Caesar in 55 and successfully under the Emperor Claudius in A.D. 43, after which they remained in control of Britain (but not of Ireland) until about the end of the fourth century. During this period at least the town-dwelling Britons became familiar with Latin and many words were taken over into their own language and survive to the present day in its descendant, Welsh. At this time the Angles and Saxons, Germanic tribes speaking a language that was to be the ancestor of English, were still on the Continent, living along the North Sea coast of the present Netherlands, though some had already been introduced into Britain to act as a coastal defence force against other Germanic raiders. In the course of trade and service with the Roman army on the Continent some Latin words had been adopted by the Germanic peoples generally, and so were part of their language when the Angles and Saxons began in the fifth century to migrate to Britain and settle there. Some of these words were in fact Greek in origin but were already naturalised in Latin. A number of modern English words have survived from this early period, absorbed partly on the Continent and partly during their first century in Britain.

We have: ark (*arca*, chest; also the surname Ark-wright), bishop (*episcopus*), butter (*būtyrum*), candle (*candēla*), chalk (*calc-em*), cheap (*caupō*; place-names Cheapside, Chipping- 'market'; surname Chapman 'trader'), cheese (*cāseus*), Chester (*castra*; and names in -caster, -cester, -chester), church (*kyriakon*), copper (*cuprum*), coulter (*culter*), devil (*diabolus*), dish (*discus*), fever (*febris*), inch (*uncia*), kiln (*culīna*),

kitchen (*coquīna*), line (*līnea*), mallow (*malua*), mile (*mīlle passūs*), mill (*molīna*), mint (coinage, *monēta*), mint (plant, *menta*), -monger, as fish-monger (*mangō*), pitch (tar, *pic-em*), purple (*purpura*), pillow (*puluīnus*), pile (as in pile-driver, *pīlum*), pin (*penna*), pine (tree, *pīnus*), port (*portus*), post (*postis*), priest (*presbyter*), plant (*planta*), pit (*puteus*), pound (weight, *pondō*), sack (*saccus*), sickle (*secula*), street (*strāta uia*), shrive (*scribere*), shrine (*scrīnium*), tile (*tēgula*), toll (tax, *telōnium*), turtle (-dove, *turtur*), wall (*uallum*), wine (*uīnum*).

Many others have fallen out of use in the course of time while others survive in dialect, as *sikker* (*sēcūrus*) 'certain' (later taken over in its French form as 'sure', and then again from Latin as 'secure'), *neep* (*nāpus*) 'turnip', *soutar* (*sūtor*) 'shoemaker' (and as a surname), or have undergone a change of meaning which obscures the relationship, as 'shambles' (*scamellum*, originally 'butcher's stall'), 'pine' (*poena*, originally 'punish', 'torment').

Fifth-sixth centuries A.D.

A little later the English acquired more Latin words of a very similar kind from British speakers in the period immediately after the settlement and before their conversion to Christianity in the seventh century had made any of them familiar with Latin as a written language. Some examples are: anchor (*anchora*), cat (*cattus*), chervil (*ceresfolium*), chest (*cista*), cowl (*cucullus*), fork (*furca*), minster (*monastērium*), monk (*monachus*), mortar (pestle and m., *mortārium*), mussel (*musculus*), nun (*nonna*), provost (*praepositus*), punt (*pontō*), relic (*reliquiae*), Satur-day (*Saturnus*; the other days of the week were given Germanic names on the pattern of the Latin ones), stop (up), (*stuppāre*, from *stuppa* 'tow'), strap (*stroppus*), trivet (*tripod-em*), trout (*tructa*).

A few others are now archaic or poetical, or of historical interest only: cockle (weed, *cocculus*), kirtle (tunic, *curtus*), lave (*lauāre*), soler (*sōlārium*; the sunny room or parlour in a medieval castle, now reintroduced in its Latin form in a new context).

Seventh-tenth centuries

During the remaining centuries before the Norman Conquest of 1066 many new Latin words appeared in English books but the majority of them were only superficially anglicised and never became widely used. Their survival rate is accordingly low. Some examples are: alms (*eleemosyna*), altar (*altāre*), apostle (*apostolus*), arch- (*archi-*), balsam (*balsamum*), beet (*bēta*), camel (*camēlus*), cole-wort, kail (*caulis*), cook

(*coquus*), cope (garment, *cap(p)a*), creed (*crēdō*), idol (*īdōlum*), lily (*līlium*), martyr (*martyr*), mass (service; *missa*), offer (*offerre*), paradise (*paradisus*), plaster (medical; (*em*)*plastrum*), part (*part-em*), pope (*papa*), psalm (*psalmus*), purse (*bursa*), school (*schola*), spend ((*e*)*xpendere*), title (*titulus*), and perhaps verse (*uersus*).

In some cases where the word has survived the original meaning is no longer current, as 'prime' and 'noon' (*prīma* and *nōna hōra*) the first and ninth hours of the monastic day, or 'scuttle' (*scutella*, diminutive of *scūtum*, originally 'dish', 'platter').

Some members of this late group are more likely to have been borrowed a second time from French than to have survived from pre-Conquest times, and this was certainly the case with many of the Latin loan-words found in Anglo-Saxon, when the modern forms show that they were lost and re-acquired in this way.

Eleventh–fifteenth centuries and after

From the Conquest to the Renaissance a very large number of words of ultimately Latin origin found their way into Middle English, but almost invariably they did so either through French or with the same modifications of endings as similar words had undergone in French, so that direct borrowings are hard to identify. From the sixteenth century this type of borrowing continues but at the same time a substantial number of words come into English as unmodified Latin and retaining such features as Latin plural formations. The largest number of these came in during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries with a sharp decline thereafter, apart from the terminology of the natural sciences. A few examples from each century will illustrate the process.

Sixteenth century: alias, arbiter, area, circus, compendium, decorum, delirium, exit, genius, ignoramus, interim, interregnum, medium, peninsula, radius, species. *Seventeenth century*: affidavit, agenda, census, complex, curriculum, fulcrum, honorarium, lens, pendulum, premium, rabies, series, specimen, squalor, tedium. *Eighteenth century*: alibi, bonus, deficit, inertia, insomnia, propaganda, ultimatum, via. *Nineteenth century*: aquarium, consensus, omnibus, referendum.

TOTAL LATIN-ENGLISH LEARNING VOCABULARY

TOTAL ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY FOR EXERCISES

Total Latin–English learning vocabulary

Note

This vocabulary contains all the words in the Learning Vocabularies, together with words learned in the Running Grammar. Words which appear in sections of *Text* in forms significantly different from the basic form are also entered, with a reference to the basic form, e.g. *ablāt-* see *auferō*; *cuius* gen. s. of *quī/quis*.

A	manner as, just as	<i>ad</i> (+ acc.) towards; at
<i>ā/ab</i> (+ abl.) away from	<i>similis ac</i> similar to	1A; for the purpose
1D; by 4D(i)	(See 5G Gr.)	of 4F(i); <i>usque ad</i>
<i>abeō abire abiit abitum</i> I go	<i>accēdō</i> 3 <i>accessi accessum</i> I	right up to 6A(iv)
/ come away 1C	approach, reach	<i>addō</i> 3 <i>addidi additus</i> I add;
<i>abiciō</i> 3/4 <i>abieci abiectus</i> I	4E(iii)	increase 5F(i)
throw down, throw	<i>access-</i> : see <i>accēdō</i>	<i>adeō adire adiit aditum</i> I go/
away 4F(i)	<i>accidit</i> 3 <i>accidit</i> it happens	come to, approach
<i>ablāt-</i> : see <i>auferō</i>	(<i>ut</i> / <i>ut nōn</i> + subj.)	1C
<i>absēns</i> absent-is absent,	4F(i)	<i>adeō</i> to such an extent
away 4C(ii)	<i>accipiō</i> 3/4 <i>accepi acceptus</i> I	5A(i)
<i>abstul-</i> : see <i>auferō</i>	receive, welcome;	<i>adept-</i> : see <i>adipiscor</i>
<i>absum abesse āfui</i> I am	learn; obtain 2E;	<i>adferō adferre attuli allatus</i> I
away from, am	sustain, meet with	bring to 2B
absent 4C(i); I am	4E(ii)	<i>adgredior</i> (<i>aggredior</i>) 3/4
distant 5E(ii)	<i>accūsō</i> 1 I accuse (x acc. of	dep. <i>adgressus</i>
<i>ac</i> (or <i>atque</i>) and 2A(i)	y gen.) 4A(iii)	(<i>aggressus</i>) I go up to
<i>aliter ac</i> otherwise than	<i>ācer ācr-is e</i> keen, sharp	2B; attack 4E(i)
<i>alius ac</i> different from	2A Gr.	<i>adhuc</i> up to now 6B(ii)
<i>contrā ac</i> contrary to	<i>acerb-us a um</i> bitter 5D(ii)	<i>adipiscor</i> 3 dep. <i>adeptus</i> I
what	<i>aci-ēs ēī</i> 5f. battle-line;	get, gain, acquire 3B
<i>īdem ac</i> the same as	sharp edge, point;	<i>adiungō</i> 3 <i>adiunxi adiunctus</i>
<i>par ac</i> equivalent to	keenness (of sight)	I join (x acc. to y
<i>pariter ac</i> equally as	5G(i)	dat.) 5A(ii)
<i>perinde ac</i> in like	<i>āct-</i> : see <i>agō</i>	

- adiuuō* 1 *adiuūi* *adiūtus* I help 2A
adloquor (*alloquor*) 3 dep. *adlocūtus* (*allocūtus*) I address 3B
adorior 4 dep. *adortus* I attack, rise up against 6C(ii)
adscribō 3 *adscripti* *adscriptus* I write in addition 2A
adseruō 1 I keep, guard 2A
adsum *adesse* *adfuī* I am present, am at hand 2D
aduersus *a um* hostile; opposite; unfavourable 5F(i); in front 5G(iii)
aduertō see *animaduertō*
adulēscēns *adulēscēt-is* 3m. youth 6B(viii)
aduocō 1 I summon 5F(i)
aedis *aed-is* 3f. temple; pl. *aed-ēs* *aed-ium* house 1B
aeger *aegr-a um* ill 5G(i)
aegrē with difficulty 6D(iv)
aequor *aequor-is* 3n. plain; sea 6A(vii)
aequ-us *a um* fair, balanced, equal 1G; level 5E(ii)
aes *aer-is* 3n. bronze
aes aliēn-um *aer-is* *aliēn-i* debt (lit. 'someone else's bronze') 5A(ii)
aestimō 1 I value, estimate 6A(iv)
aetās *aetāt-is* 3f. age; lifetime; generation 5A(ii)
affirmō 1 I state strongly, assert 4A(iii)
age come! 1G
- ager* *agr-i* 2m. land, field, territory 3B
aggredior: see *adgredior*
agitō 1 I stir up, incite 5A(i)
agmen *agmin-is* 3n. column 5E(ii)
agō 3 *ēgi* *actus* I do, act 2B; drive, lead, direct 4F(ii); spend, pass 5F(ii); (*dē* + abl.) discuss 6C(iii)
grātiās agō (+ dat.) I thank 3D
Agrigentīn-us *i* 2m. person from Agrigentum 4A(i)
aiō irr. I say 6B(iv)
alibi somewhere else 4B Gr. and 5G(ii)
alicubi somewhere 4B Gr.
aliēn-us *a um* someone else's
aes aliēn-um *aer-is* *aliēn-i* debt (lit. 'someone else's bronze') 5A(ii)
aliquandō at some time 6B(viii)
aliquantō to some extent 4B Gr.
aliqui *aliqua* *aliquod* some (adj.) 4B
aliquis *aliqua* *aliquid* someone (pron.) 4B
aliquot several 5A(ii)
aliter *ac* otherwise than 5G Gr.
ali-us *a ud* other 4B(iii) (two different cases in same clause = 'different . . . different': see 4B Gr.)
aliī . . . *aliī* some . . . others 4B Gr.
alius *ac* other than 5G Gr.
- alloquor*: see *adloquor*
alō 3 *aluī* *altus* I feed, nourish, rear; support; strengthen 6B(iv)
alter *alter-a um* one (or other) of two 2A (see also 2B Gr.)
alt-us *a um* high; deep 6A(vii)
ambō *ambae* *ambō* both 2E (declined as *duo*, see 2A Gr.)
ambulō 1 I walk 3A
amīc-a *ae* 1f. mistress 2A
amīciti-a *ae* 1f. friendship 6B(vii)
amīc-us *i* 2m. friend, ally 4A(iii)
amittō 3 *amīsī* *amissus* I lose 1F
amō 1 I love, like 1B
amor *amōr-is* 3m. love; pl. girl-friend, sexual intercourse 6A(i)
amplexor 1 dep. I embrace 2E
amplius more than 5G(i)
ampl-us *a um* large, great 5B(i)
an = *-ne* = ? (in direct questions); whether, if (in indirect questions: + subj. = *num*) 6D(iii)
utrum . . . *an* = double question, i.e. A or B? (negative *annōn*) 5D(i)
utrum . . . *an* (+ subj.) whether . . . or (Indirect question: negative *necne*) 5F Gr.
anim-a *ae* 1f. soul, life, breath 5G(iii)
animaduertō (or *animum*

- aduertō* 3 *animaduerti* *animaduversus* I observe, take note of 6B(i)
anim-us *i* 2m. mind, spirit, heart 1E
annōn or not? (see *an* or *utrum*) 5D(i)
ann-us *i* 2m. year 2D
ante (+ acc.) before, in front of 2D; (adv.) earlier, before 4E(ii)
anteā (adv.) before 4G(i)
antequam (conjunction) before 5E Gr.
aperiō 4 *aperuī* *apertus* I open; reveal 5B(ii)
appellō 1 I address; name, call 5G(i)
appropinquō 1 (+ dat.) I approach 6C(ii)
apud (+ acc.) at the house of, in the hands of, in the works of 1F; among 4A(i)
aqu-a *ae* 1f. water 1C
ār-a *ae* 1f. altar 5D(iv)
arbitror 1 dep. I think, consider; give judgement 2C
arbor *arbor-is* 3f. tree 6D(iii)
arcessō 3 *arcessuī* *arcessitus* I summon 5D(i)
ardeō 2 *arsī* *arsūrus* I burn; am in love 6C(i)
argent-um *i* 2n. silver; silver-plate; money 4C(i)
arm-a *ōrum* 2n. pl. arms; armed men 5A(i)
armāt-us *a um* armed 5A(iii)
ars *art-is* 3f. skill, art, accomplishment 6D(ii)
arx *arc-is* 3f. citadel 5D(i)
- Asi-a* *ae* 1f. Asia Minor 4B(i)
asper *asper-a um* rough 5E(ii)
astūti-a *ae* 1f. astuteness; pl. tricks 2A
at but 2B
atque (or *ac*) and 2A (see *ac* for list of comparative expressions learned in 5G Gr.)
atrōx *atrōc-is* fierce, unrelenting 6B(vii)
attribuō 3 *attribuī* *attributus* I assign, give 5D(i)
attul-: see *adferō*
auctōritās *auctōritāt-is* 3f. weight, authority 5B(i)
audāci-a *ae* 1f. boldness, cockiness 1G
audāx *audāc-is* brave, bold, resolute 1F
audeō 2 semi-dep. *ausus* I dare 2E (see 3A Gr.)
audiō 4 I hear, listen to 1D
auferō *auferre* *abstulī* *ablātus* I take away (x acc. from y dat.) 1F
augeō 2 *auxī* *auctus* I increase (trans.) 5D(iv)
aul-a *ae* 1f. pot 1B (NB. the normal Classical Latin form is *olla*, while *aula* generally means 'court' or 'palace')
aure-us *a um* golden 2C
aur-um *i* 2n. gold 1A
aus-: see *audeō*
aut or 1F
aut . . . *aut* either . . . or 4D(ii)
autem but, however (2nd word) 1A
- autumn-us* *i* 2m. autumn, fall 6D(ii)
auxili-um *i* 2n. help 3D
- B**
bell-um *i* 2n. war: *bellum*
gerō I wage war 3A
bell-us *a um* pretty, beautiful 6B(ii)
bene well, thoroughly, rightly 1E; good! fine! 2A (see 3B Gr.)
bibō 3 *bibī* — I drink 4B(iii)
bon-a *ōrum* 2n. pl. goods 5F(ii)
bon-us *a um* good, brave, fit, honest 1E
breu-is *e* short, brief 3D
breuī (sc. *tempore*) shortly, soon 5C(i)
- C**
cadō 3 *cecidī* *cāsum* I fall; die 5G(ii)
caedēs *caed-is* 3f. slaughter, carnage 5B(iii)
caedō 3 *cecidī* *caesus* I cut (down); flog, beat; kill 4B(iv)
caelest-is *e* in the heavens 6D(iii)
cael-um *i* 2n. sky, heaven 6D(i)
caes-: see *caedō*
calamitās *calamitāt-is* 3f. disaster, calamity 4B(i)
camp-us *i* 2m. field, plain 6D(iii)
candid-us *a um* white; bright, beautiful 6A(vi)
capiō 3/4 *cēpī* *captus* I take, capture 2A
caput *capit-is* 3n. head; source, fount 2B

carcer *carcer-is* 3m. prison; barrier 5E(i)
 castigō 1 I rebuke 2E
 castr-a ōrum 2n. pl. camp 3B
 cās-us ūs 4m. outcome; event, occurrence; disaster, death
 cāsū by accident; by chance 6B(viii)
 caueō 2 cāuī cautus I am wary 2B
 caus-a ae 1f. case; reason 4F(i); cause 4G(ii)
 causā (+ gen. - which precedes it) for the sake of 5D Gr.
 cecid-: see cadō
 cēdō 3 cessī cessum I yield; go 5F(i)
 celer *celer-is celer-e* swift 2A
 celeritās *celeritāt-is* 3f. speed 4B(iv)
 celeriter quickly 3B
 cēlō 1 I hide 1A
 cēn-a ae 1f. dinner 1F
 centum 100 2A Gr.
 centuriō *centuriōn-is* 3m. centurion 5G(i)
 cēp-: see capiō
 cēr-a ae 1f. wax 2A
 certē without doubt 1G
 certior fīō (*fieri factus*) I am informed 6B(i)
 certiōrem faciō (3/4 *fēcī*) I inform (x acc.) 6B(i)
 certō for a fact 1G
 certō 1 I struggle, fight; vie 5F(i)
 cert-us a um sure, certain 5B(ii)
 cess-: see cēdō
 cēter-ī ae a the rest, the others 4B(i)
 cib-us ī 2m. food 4E(i)
 circiter (adv.) about 5E(ii)

circum (+ acc.) around 4C(ii)
 circumeō *circumīre circumī*
circumitum I go around 4C(ii)
 circumsedeō 2 *circumsēdī*
circumsessus I besiege, blockade 6B(ii)
 citō quickly 2C
 ciuis ciu-is 3m. and f. citizen 1F
 ciuitās *ciuitāt-is* 3f. state 4G(i)
 clam secretly 1B
 clāmītō 1 I keep on shouting 4G(i)
 clāmō 1 I shout 1A
 clāmōr *clāmōr-is* 3m. shout; outcry; noise 4A(iv)
 clār-us a um famous, well-known 4B(i); clear 6B(vi)
 classis *class-is* 3f. fleet 4D(i)
 coepī (perfect form: past participle active/passive *coeptus*) I began 4B(ii)
 cōgitō 1 I ponder, reflect, consider 1C
 cognit-: see cognōscō
 cognōscō 3 *cognōuī cognitus* I get to know, examine 2B (perf. tense = I know, plup. = I knew, fut. perf. = I shall know)
 cōgō 3 *cōgī cōactus* I force, compel; gather 5F(ii)
 cohors *cohort-is* 3f. governor's retinue; cohort 4D(i)
 cohortor 1 dep. I encourage 5C(ii)
 collēg-a ae 1m. colleague 6B(iv)
 colligō 3 *collēgī collēctus* I

collect, gather; gain, acquire 4C(ii)
 collocō 1 I place, station 5A(iii)
 coll-um ī 2n. neck 6D(iv)
 colō 3 *coluī cultus* I worship; cultivate, till; inhabit 4A(ii)
 com-a ae 1f. hair; foliage 6D(iii)
 comes *comit-is* 3m. companion, friend; (pl.) retinue 4B(i)
 committō 3 *commisī*
commissus I commit 5C(iii)
 commod-us a um satisfactory, convenient 6B(i)
 commoror 1 dep. I delay, wait 4E(iii)
 commoueō 2 *commouī*
commōtus I move; remove; excite, disturb 4C(ii)
 commun-is e shared in, common, universal 5D(ii)
 comparō 1 I prepare, provide, get ready, get 4B(iii)
 complector 3 dep. *complexus* I embrace 6B(iii)
 complūr-ēs *complūr-ium* several 6B(iii)
 concidō 3 *concidī* — I fall, collapse; am killed 4F(i)
 concordi-a ae 1f. harmony 5D(iii)
 concurrō 3 *concurrī*
concursum I run together 4B(iv)
 condemnō 1 I condemn (x acc. for y gen.) 6B(i)

condiciō *condiciōn-is* 3f. condition, term
 condiciōnem (*condiciōnēs*) *ferre* to make terms 6B(vi)
 cōnfec-: see cōnficiō
 cōnficiō 3/4 *cōnfēcī cōnfectus* I finish 5C(iii); weaken 6C(iii)
 cōnfirmō 1 I state clearly, confirm 4A(iii)
 cōnfiteor 2 dep. *cōnfessus* I confess, acknowledge 4G(i)
 cōnflagrō 1 I burn (intrans.) 4E(ii)
 coniciō 3/4 *coniecī coniectus* I throw 4A(iv)
 coniūrātiō *coniūrātiōn-is* 3f. conspiracy 5A(i)
 coniūrator *coniūrātōr-is* 3m. conspirator 5A(i)
 cōnor 1 dep. I try 2C
 cōnscriptī: *patrēs*
cōnscriptī = senators 5D(ii)
 cōnseruō 1 I keep safe, preserve 5D(ii)
 cōnsiderō 1 I consider, ponder 5B(ii)
 cōnsidō 3 *cōnsēdī* — I settle down; encamp 5E(ii)
 cōnsili-um ī 2n. plan; advice; judgement 1E
 cōnsistō 3 *cōnsistī* — I stop, stand my ground 6C(ii)
 cōnspicor 1 dep. I catch sight of 2E
 cōnstit-: see cōnsistō
 cōnstituō 3 *cōnstituī*
cōnstitutus I decide 4C(i)
 cōnsul cōnsul-is 3m. consul 4B(ii)
 cōnsulāt-us ūs 4m. consulship 5A(i)

continenti-a ae 1f. self-control, restraint 1G
 contiō *contiōn-is* 3f. meeting, assembly 5F(i)
 contrā (+ acc.) against 5D(i)
 contrā ac contrary to what 5G Gr.
 conueniō 4 *conuēnī*
conuentum I meet 4B(iii)
 conuīui-um ī 2n. party 4B(iii)
 conuocō 1 I summon, call together 5A(iii)
 cōpi-ae ārum 1f. pl. troops 3B
 coqu-ō 3 *coxi coctus* I cook 1F
 coqu-us ī 2m. cook 1A
 corn-ū ūs 4n. wing (of army); horn 5G(i)
 corpus *corpor-is* 3n. body 5G(iii)
 cotidiē daily 4D(ii)
 creber *crebr-a um* frequent; thick, close 6B(ii)
 crēdō 3 *crēdidī crēditum* I believe in (+ dat.); entrust (x acc. to y dat.) 1G
 crudēl-is e cruel 5D(i)
 cui dat. s. of *quī/quis*
cuidam dat. s. of *quīdam*
cuiquam dat. of *quisquam*
cuius gen. s. of *quī/quis*
cuiusdam gen. s. of *quīdam*
 culp-a ae 1f. fault; blame (often of sexual misconduct) 6A(vii)
 culter *cultr-ī* 2m. knife 1D Gr.
 cum (+ abl.) with 2A (+ subj.) when; since; although 4E(iii)
 cum semel as soon as 6A(iv)

cum . . . tum both . . . and 5D(ii)
 cūctor 1 dep. I delay; hesitate (+ inf.) 5C(i)
 cūct-us a um all, the whole of 6D(iii)
 cupiditās *cupiditāt-is* 3f. lust, greed, desire 4B(ii)
 cupiō 3/4 *cupiū cupītus* I desire, yearn for; want desperately 4B(i)
 cūr why? 1A
 cūr-a ae 1f. care; worry, concern 1B
 cūrō 1 I look after, care for 1B; see to it that 5D Gr.
 curs-us ūs 4m. running; course; direction; voyage 6C(ii)
 custōs *custōd-is* 3m. and f. guard 4A(i)

D

dat-: see dō
 dē (+ abl.) about, concerning 2A; from, down from 4F(i)
 dēbeō 2 I ought (+ inf.); owe 2D
 decem ten 2A Gr.
 dēcēp-: see dēcipiō
 decet 2 it befits (x acc. to y inf.) 5C(iii) and 5C Gr.
 decim-us a um tenth 5C Gr.
 dēcipiō 3/4 *dēcēpī dēceptus* I deceive 2A
 decus *decor-is* 3n. honour; beauty 5F(i)
 ded-: see dō
 dēdecet 2 it is unseemly (for x acc. to y inf.) 5C Gr.

-dēdecorī est it is a disgrace (for x dat.) 5C(iii)
dēdō 3 *dēdidī dēditus* I hand over, surrender 3B
dēdūcō 3 *dēdūxī dēductus* I lead away, lead down 3B
dēess-: see *dēsum*
dēfendō 3 *dēfendī dēfēnsus* I defend 2C
dēferō *dēferre dētulī dēlātus* I report, bring news of; accuse, denounce; transfer 4A(iii)
dēfu-: see *dēsum*
dein = *deinde* 6A(iv)
deinde then, next 1A
dēlāt-: see *dēferō*
dēlēō 2 *dēlēuī dēlētus* I destroy 2D
dēnique finally; in a word 4E(i)
dēscendō 3 *dēscendī dēscēsum* I descend 6C(iv)
dēsum *dēesse dēfuī* I am missing, am lacking; fail; abandon (+ dat.) 4D(ii)
dētul-: see *dēferō*
de-us ī 2m. god 1B (see also 1B Gr.)
dexter dextr-a um right; favourable 5G(i)
dextr-a ae 1f. right hand 5F(i)
dī nom. pl. of *deus*
dīc imperative s. of *dīcō* 1D
dīcō 3 *dīxī dictus* I speak, say 1D
dīēs dīē-ī 5m. and f. day 2B
in dīēs day by day 5A(i)
difficil-is e difficult 2A
diffidō 3 semi-dep. *diffisus*

(+ dat.) I distrust 6C(iii)
dignitās dignitāt-is 3f. distinction, position; honour; rank, high office 5D(iii)
dign-us a um worthy; worthy of (+ abl.) 5E(i)
diligenti-a ae 1f. care, diligence 5D(iii)
diligēns diligent-is careful, diligent 6B(i)
diligō 3 *dilēxī dilēctus* I love 2B
dīmīcō 1 I fight 6B(vi)
dīmīttō 3 *dīmīsī dīmīssus* I send away 5B(i)
discēdō 3 *discēssī discēssum* I depart; (in *sententiam* + gen.) go over to x's view 5E(i)
discordi-a ae 1f. strife, quarrel 6B(vi)
dispōnō 3 *disposuī dispositus* I set, place (in different places) 5E(i)
diū for a long time 5B(ii)
comp. diūtius 5B(ii)
superl. diūtissimē 5B(ii)
dīuers-us a um different 5A(iii)
dīues dīuit-is rich (as noun 3m. rich man) 1D
dīuiti-ae ārum 1f. pl. riches 5F(i)
diūtius any longer 5F(i) (see *diū*)
dīu-us ī 2m. god 6D(iii)
dō 1 *dedī datus* I give 1B
operam dō I pay attention to (x dat.) 3D
doct-us a um skilled (in x: abl.); learned 5A(ii)
doleō 2 I suffer pain, grieve 6A(vi)

dolor dolōr-is 3m. pain, anguish 5D(i)
dol-us ī 2m. trick 3C
domī at home 1D
domin-us ī 2m. master 1C
domō from home 2B
domum to home, homewards 1D
dom-us ūs 4f. (irr.) house, home 2A Gr.
dōnō 1 I give 6A(i)
dormiō 4 I sleep 1F
dōs dōt-is 3f. dowry 1E
dubitō 1 I doubt; hesitate (+ inf.) 6B(vi)
dubi-us a um doubtful 5F Gr.
dūc imperative s. of *dūcō*
ducent-ī ae e 200 2A
dūcō 3 *dūxī ductus* I lead 1D; think, consider 6B(vii)
dulc-is e sweet 5D(iii)
dum (+ indic.) while 2A; (+ indic./subj.) until; (+ subj.) provided that (also *dummodo*, *modo*) 5E Gr.
duo duae duo two 2A Gr.
duodecim 12 2A Gr.
duodēuīgintī 18 5C Gr.
dūx-: see *dūcō*
dux duc-is 3m. leader 3A

E
ē (+ abl.) out of, from (also *ex*) 1C
ea nom. s. f. or nom./acc. pl. n. of *is*
eā abl. s. f. of *is*
eadem nom. s. f. or nom./acc. pl. n. of *idem*
eādem abl. s. f. of *idem*
eae nom. pl. f. of *is*
eam acc. s. f. of *is*
eandem acc. s. f. of *idem*
eārum gen. pl. f. of *idem*

eās acc. pl. f. of *is*
eādem acc. pl. f. of *idem*
ēbri-us a um drunk 4D(i)
ecce look! 2B
ēdūcō 3 *ēdūxī ēductus* I lead out 3B
efficiō 3/4 *effēcī effectus* I bring about (ut + subj.); cause, make; complete 5A(i)
effugiō 3/4 *effūgī* — I escape 4B(iii)
ēg-: see *agō*
egeō 2 I lack, need, am in want of (+ abl. or gen.) 4E(i)
ego I 1A
ēgredior 3/4 dep. *ēgressus* I go/come out 2B
ēgregi-us a um outstanding, excellent 6B(iii)
ēgress-: see *ēgredior*
eī dat. s. or nom. pl. m. of *is*
eīs dat./abl. pl. of *is*
eius gen. s. of *is*
enim for (2nd word) 1A
eō ire ī itum I go/come 1C
eō to that place 5C(i)
quō + comparative . . .
eō + comparative 'the more x . . . the more y' 6B(vi)
eōdem abl. s. m. or n. of *idem*
eōrum gen. pl. of *is*
eōs acc. pl. m. of *is*
eōsdem acc. pl. m. of *idem*
eques equit-is 3m. horseman; pl. cavalry 3B; 'knight' (member of the Roman business class) 4G(ii)

equitāt-us ūs 4m. cavalry 6C(ii)
equus ī 2m. horse 2D
ergō therefore 2C
ēripiō 3/4 *ēripiū ēreptus* I snatch away, rescue (x acc. from y dat.) 5C(iii)
errō 1 I am wrong; wander 6B(vii)
et and; also, too; even Intro; *et* . . . *et* both . . . and 1E
etiam still, even, as well; yes indeed 3C
nōn solum (or *nōn modo*) . . . *sed etiam* not only . . . but also 4F(ii)
etiam atque etiam again and again 6B(vii)
etsī although, even though, even if 6C(iii)
Eucliō Eucliōn-is 3m. Euclio Intro.
ex (or *ē*) (+ abl.) out of, from 1C
excēdō 3 *excēssī excessum* I depart, go out; surpass 6C(ii)
excipiō 3/4 *excēpī exceptus* I sustain, receive; welcome; catch; make an exception of 6C(ii)
excōgitō 1 I think up, devise 4C(ii)
excūsō 1 I excuse 6B(i)
exempl-um ī 2n. copy; example 5C(i)
exeō exire exiī exitum I go/come out 1C
exercit-us ūs 4m. army 2D
exi-: see *exeō*
exīstimō 1 I think, consider 5B(i)
exiti-um ī 2n. death,

destruction 1B Gr.
exorior 4 dep. *exortus* I arise 5C(ii)
explicō 1 I tell, explain 1B
expugnō 1 I storm 4A(i)
exsili-um ī 2n. exile 5F(ii)
exspectō 1 I await, wait for 4D(i)
extrēm-us a um furthest 6A(vii)

F
fābul-a ae 1f. story; play 6B(i)
fac imperative s. of *faciō* 1E Gr.
facēti-ae ārum 1f. pl. wit 6A(ii)
faciēs faci-ē 5f. appearance; face 5E(i)
facil-is e easy 1F
facinus facinor-is 3n. deed; crime; endeavour 1E
faciō 3/4 *fēcī factus* I make, do 1E
certiōrem faciō I inform x (acc.) 6B(i)
faciō ut (+ subj.) I bring it about that (cf. *efficiō/perficiō ut*) 6C(i)
fact-: see *fīō*
fact-um ī 2n. deed 5E(i)
fām-a ae 1f. rumour, report; reputation 4A(i)
fāmi-li-a ae 1f. household Intro.
fān-um ī 2n. shrine 1G
fauēō 2 *fāuī fautum* I am favourable to (+ dat.) 3D
fēc-: see *faciō*
fēmin-a ae 1f. woman 1D
fer imperative s. of *ferō* 1E Gr.

Total learning vocabulary: Latin-English

ferē almost 6B(iv)
feriō 4 I strike; beat; kill
 (perfect active and
 passive tenses
 supplied by *percussī*
percussus – pf. and
 perf. part. of *percutiō*
 3/4) 4D(ii)
ferō ferre tulī lātus I bear;
 lead 1E
mē ferō I charge 3B
condiciōnem (condiciōnēs)
ferre to make terms
 6B(vi)
feroci-a ae 1f. fierceness 3B
ferociter fiercely 3B
ferr-um ī 2n. sword; iron
 5F(i)
festinō 1 I hurry 4B(iii)
fidēs fid-ē 5f. loyalty,
 honour; trust, faith;
 promise; protection
 6B(viii)
fid-us a um faithful, loyal
 6B(viii)
fili-a ae 1f. daughter
 Intro.
fili-us ī 2m. son 1D
fingō 3 *fīnxi fīctus* I make
 up, fabricate 6B(ii)
fīō fierī factus I become;
 am done, am made
 (passive of *faciō*) 2D
 (see 3A Gr.)
certior fīō I am
 informed 6B(i)
flamm-a ae 1f. flame 6D(i)
fleō 2 *flēuī flētum* I weep
 6C(iv)
flūmen flūmin-is 3n. river
 6C(iii)
fore = futūrum esse to be
 about to be 4A Gr.
fore ut (+ subj.) that it
 will / would turn
 out that . . . 5B Gr.
foris for-is 3f. door 2E

fōrm-a ae 1f. shape, looks;
 beauty 3C
fōrmōs-us a um handsome,
 graceful, shapely
 4D(ii)
fortasse perhaps 6B(viii)
forte by chance, perchance
 6B(i)
fort-is e brave, courageous
 3A; strong 3C
fortūn-a ae 1f. fortune,
 luck; pl. wealth
 5B(ii)
fortunāt-us a um fortunate,
 lucky (in x: abl.)
 5A(ii)
for-um ī 2n. forum (main
 business centre) 2D
frangō 3 *frēgī frāctus* I
 break 5B(iii)
frāter frātr-is 3m. brother
 1D
frīgus frīgōr-is 3n. cold; pl.
 cold spells 6D(ii)
fruor 3 dep. *fructus* I enjoy
 (+ abl.) 4B(i)
frustrā in vain 5A(iii)
fu-: see *sum*
fug-a ae 1f. flight 5D(i)
fugiō 3/4 *fūgī fugitūrus* I
 escape, run off, flee
 1F
fugō 1 I put to flight
 6D(ii)
fulgeō 2 *fulsī* — I shine
 6A(vi)
fūr fūr-is 3m. thief 1B
furor furōr-is 3m. rage,
 fury; madness 4F(ii)

G

gaudi-um ī 2n. joy 5G(iii)
gēns gent-is 3f. tribe; race;
 family; people 5B(i)
genus gener-is 3n. family;
 stock; tribe 4C(i);
 type, kind 5D(ii)

gerō 3 *gessī gestus* I do,
 conduct 2D
bellum gerō I wage war
 3A
gladi-us ī 2m. sword
 5C(ii)
glōri-a ae 1f. glory,
 renown, fame 4E(iii)
gradior 3/4 dep. *gressus* I
 step, walk, go (cf.
 compounds in
 -*gredior*) 6A(vii)
Graec-us a um Greek 4B(i)
grāti-a ae 1f. thanks,
 recompense 3D
grātiās agō (+ dat.) I
 thank 3D
grātiā (+ gen. — placed
 after the noun it
 qualifies) for the sake
 of 5D Gr.
grāt-us a um pleasing (to x
 dat.) 5A(i)
grau-is e serious,
 important, weighty;
 heavy 4E(ii)
grauitās grauītāt-is 3f.
 seriousness;
 solemnity;
 importance,
 authority 4B(iii)

H

habeō 2 I have 1A; hold,
 regard 1D
negōtium habeō I
 conduct business 1F
ōrātiōnem habeō I make
 a speech 5F(i)
habitō 1 I dwell Intro.
hāc this way 2E
harēn-a ae 1f. sand 6A(v)
haud not 2D
hic haec hoc this; this
 person, thing; pl.
 these 2C
hīc here 2D

Total learning vocabulary: Latin-English

hinc from here 2C Gr.
hodiē today 1E
homo homin-is 3m. man,
 fellow 1E
honor honōr-is 3m. respect
 1B
hōr-a ae 1f. hour 2D
hortor 1 dep. I urge,
 encourage 3B
hospes hospit-is 3m. host;
 friend; guest;
 connection 4B(i)
hostis host-is 3m. enemy
 3B
hūc to here 2E
hum-us ī 2f. ground
humī on the ground
 (locative)
humum to the ground
 5E(i)

I

ī imperative s. of *eō* 1E
 Gr.
i-: see *eō*
iaceō 2 I lie 4D(i)
iactō 1 I discuss; throw;
 boast; toss about
 6B(ii)
iam now, by now,
 already; presently 2C
iānu-a ae 1f. door 4B(iii)
ibi there 2E
idcirco therefore, for this/
 that reason 5D(i)
īdem eadem idem the same
 3C
īdem ac the same as 5G
 Gr.
idōne-us a um suitable
 (for), qualified (for)
 (+ dat.) 5B(i)
igitur therefore 1A
ignāui-a ae 1f. laziness;
 cowardice 5F(i)
ignāu-us a um lazy;
 cowardly 5F(i)

ignis ign-is 3m. fire 1C
ignōscō 3 *ignōuī ignōtum* I
 forgive (+ dat.)
 4G(i)
ille ill-a illud that; that
 person, thing; pl.
 those 2C
illīc there 2C Gr.
illinc from there 2C Gr.
illūc to there 2C Gr.
illūstr-is e famous 3B
imitor 1 dep. I imitate
 6B(viii)
immō more precisely i.e.
 no or yes (a strong
 agreement or
 disagreement with
 what precedes) 2D
immortal-is e immortal
 4G(i)
impediment-um ī 2n.
 hindrance 3D
impedimentō sum
 (+ dat.) I am a
 hindrance (to) 3D
 Gr.
impediō 4 I prevent,
 impede, hinder
 5A(iii)
imperātor imperātōr-is 3m.
 leader, general,
 commander 4E(i)
imperī-um ī 2n. order,
 command 3A;
 power, authority;
 dominion 5D(ii)
imperō 1 I give orders
 (to), command
 (+ dat.: often
 followed by *ut*/
nē + subj. 'to / not
 to') 3D
īmpetrō 1 I gain by
 request 6C(iii)
impet-us ūs 4m. attack 4A(i)
impetum faciō I make an
 attack 4A(i)

impi-us a um with no
 respect for gods,
 parents or fatherland
 5D(iv)
impōnō 3 *imposuī impositus*
 I put x (acc.) on y
 (dat.) 6D(ii)
in (+ acc.) into, onto;
 (+ abl.) in, on 1A;
 (+ acc.) against 2D
incendi-um ī 2n. fire 4E(ii)
incendō 3 *incendi incēsus* I
 set fire to; burn
 (trans.) 4E(ii)
incert-us a um uncertain
 6B(ii)
ineō inīre inī inītum I
 enter, go in 1F
inerm-is e unarmed 6C(ii)
īnfest-us a um hostile; at
 the ready; indicating
 attack 6C(ii)
īnflammāt-us a um
 inflamed, on fire
 4C(i)
ingeni-um ī 2n. talent,
 ability 1B Gr.
ingēns ingent-is huge,
 large, lavish 1F
ingredior 3/4 dep. *ingressus*
 I enter 2E
inimīc-us a um hostile,
 enemy 4G(ii)
innocēns innocent-is
 guiltless 4A(iii)
inquam I say (*inquīs*,
inquit; *inquiunt*) 3D
īnsidi-ae ārum 1f. pl. trap,
 ambush 5A(iii)
īnspiciō 3/4 *īnspexi*
īnspectus I look into,
 inspect, examine 2B
īnstituō 3 *īnstituī īnstitūsus* I
 begin; construct;
 resolve 6C(iii)
īnstō 1 *īnstī* — I press
 upon; urge, pursue;

am at hand,
approach; strive after
5G(ii)
instruō 3 instrūxī instrūctus
I draw up; prepare,
equip 5E(ii)
insum inesse infui I am in
(+ dat.) 5A(i)
integer integr-a um whole,
untouched 5G(ii)
intellegō 3 intellēxī
intellēctus I perceive,
understand,
comprehend, grasp
4B(iii)
inter (+ acc.) among;
between 4B(iii)
intereā meanwhile 4A(i)
interficiō 3/4 interfecī
interfectus I kill 5A(ii)
interrogō 1 I ask 3C
intrō 1 I enter 1A
intrō (adv.) inside 2B
inueniō 4 inuēnī inuentum I
find 1F
inuideo 2 inuīdī inuīsum I
envy, begrudge
(+ dat.) 5F(ii)
inuīt-us a um unwilling
6A(vi)
ioc-us ī 2m. joke, joking,
fun 6A(ii)
Iou-: see Iuppiter
ipse ips-a ips-um very,
actual, self 4B Gr.
irāscor 3 dep. irātus I grow
angry (with x: dat.)
2C
irāt-us a um angry 2C
irrideō 2 irrīsi irrīsus I
laugh at, mock 1E
is e-a id that; he/she/it 3A
iste ist-a istud that of
yours 4A(iii)
it-: see eō
ita so, thus; yes 1D
Itali-a ae 1f. Italy 5A(iii)

itaque and so, therefore
5A(iii)
item likewise 5C(i)
iter itiner-is 3n. journey,
route 5E(ii)
iterum again 2A
iubeō 2 iussī iussus I order,
command, tell 1D
iūcund-us a um pleasant
5D(iii)
iūdex iūdic-is 3m. judge
4A(i)
iūdicō 1 I judge 4A(iii)
Iuppiter Iou-is 3m. Jupiter,
Jove 3A
iūs iūr-is 3n. law, justice
4G(ii)
iūs iūrand-um iūr-is iūrand-ī
3n. oath 5C(i)
iuss-: see iubeō
iussū by the order (of x:
gen.) 5C(iii)
iuuat 1 it pleases 6A(iii)
iuuen-is iuuen-is 3m.
young man 1G

L

lābor 3 dep. lāpsus I slip,
glide, fall down;
make a mistake
6D(ii)
labor labōr-is 3m. toil,
hard work; trouble
5D(iv)
lacert-us ī 2m. arm, upper
arm 6D(iv)
laedō 3 laesī laesus I harm
6A(iii)
laetiti-a ae 1f. merriment,
festivity, joy 4B(iii)
laet-us a um happy 4A(iv)
Lampsacēn-us ī 2m. person
from Lampsacum
4B(i)
Lar Lar-is 3m. Lar,
household god 1A

latebr-ae ārum 1f. pl.
hiding-place, lair
6D(iv)
Latīn-us a um Latin 5A(ii)
latrō latrōn-is 3m. robber,
bandit 5G(i)
latus later-is 3n. side; flank
5G(ii)
lect-us ī 2m. couch, bed
2B
lēgāt-us ī 2m. commander
5G(i); pl.
ambassadors 3B
legiō legiōn-is 3f. legion
3B
legō 3 lēgī lēctus I read 2B
lepōs lepōr-is 3m. charm
6A(ii)
lēx lēg-is 3f. law 4A(iv)
liber liber-a um free 3A
liber-ī ōrum 2m. pl.
children 5A(ii)
liberō 1 I free, release
4D(i)
libertās libertāt-is 3f.
freedom, liberty
4G(i)
libet 2 (perf. libuit or
libitum est) it pleases
(x dat. to y inf.), x
chooses to y 5C Gr.
libidō libidin-is 3f. lust
5A(ii)
licet 2 it is permitted (to x
dat. to y inf.) 3D
lictor lictōr-is 3m.
magistrate's
attendant, lictor 4F(i)
lingu-a ae 1f. tongue;
language 6A(v)
litter-ae ārum 1f. pl. letter
2B; literature 5A(ii)
lītus lītōr-is 3n. shore 4E(i)
loc-us ī 2m. place; pl. loc-a
ōrum 2n. 4A(iii)
locūt-: see loquor
longē far 3B Gr.

long-us a um long 3A
loquor 3 dep. locūtus I am
speaking, say 2B
lūct-us ūs 4m. grief,
mourning 5G(iii)
lūdō 3 lūsī lūsum I play
6A(iii)
lūmen lūmin-is 3n. light;
pl. eyes 6D(ii)
lūn-a ae 1f. moon 2A
lūx lūc-is 3f. light 5D(i)

M

magis more 3C Gr.
magistrāt-us ūs 4m.
magistrate, state
official 4A(iii)
magnopere greatly 3B Gr.
magn-us a um great, large
1D
maior maiōr-is greater,
bigger 3A Gr.
mālō mālīe mālūī I prefer
(x quam y) 2A
mal-um ī 2n. trouble, evil
2E
mal-us a um bad, evil,
wicked 1C
mandō 1 I entrust (x acc.
to y dat.) 5A(i);
order (x dat. to y
ut + subj.) 6B(iii)
maneō 2 māsī māsum I
remain, wait 1C
manifest-us a um in the
open; obvious, clear;
caught in the act
5B(ii)
man-us ūs 4f. hand 2A;
band 3B
mare mar-is 3n. sea (abl.
marī) 4E(ii)
mātrōn-a ae 1f. wife,
mother; lady 5A(ii)
maximē very much; most;
yes 3C Gr.

maxim-us a um very great,
biggest 3A Gr.
mē acc. or abl. of ego
meditor 1 dep. I think,
ponder on; practise
3A
medi-us a um middle (of)
4F(ii)
melior meliōr-is better 3A
Gr.
melius (adv.) better 3C
Gr.
membr-um ī 2n. limb
6A(iii)
meminī (perfect form) I
remember 5F(i)
memor memor-is
remembering (x:
gen.); mindful of (x:
gen.) 5D(iv)
memori-a ae 1f.
remembering,
memory,
recollection; record
6B(i)
mendāx mendāc-is lying,
untruthful 2A
mēns ment-is 3f. mind
6D(i)
mentiō mentiōn-is 3f.
mention 4E(iii)
mentior 4 dep. I lie 2B
meretrīx meretrīc-is 3f.
prostitute 2C
mer-us a um unmixed,
pure 6A(i)
met-us ūs 4m. fear, terror
4E(iii)
me-us a um my, mine 1C
(vocative s. m. mī)
mī = mihi (dat. s. of ego)
6A(iv)
mī voc. s. m. of meus 1B
Gr.
mihi dat. s. of ego
mīles milit-is 3m. soldier
2C

mīlia mīl-ium 3n. pl.
thousands (see mīlle)
2A Gr.
militār-is e military 5E(ii)
mīlle 1,000 (pl. mīlia) 2A
Gr.
minimē very little; no 3C
Gr.
minim-us a um smallest,
fewest, least 3A Gr.
minor 1 dep. I threaten
(+ dat.) 2B
minor minōr-is smaller,
fewer, less 3A Gr.
minus (adv.) less 3C Gr.
mīr-us a um amazing,
wonderful 6B(v)
mīs-: see mittō
miser miser-a um
miserable, unhappy,
wretched 1C
miserand-us a um to be
pitied 5D(i)
miseret 2 it moves (x acc.)
to pity (for y gen.)
5C Gr.
misericors misericord-is
compassionate 5D(i)
miss-: see mittō
mittō 3 mīsī missus I send
1F; throw 6C(ii)
modest-us a um chaste,
modest, discreet
5A(ii)
modo now 2A; only 4F(ii)
nōn modo . . . sed etiam
not only . . . but
also 4F(ii)
modo . . . modo at one
time . . . at another
5E(ii)
mod-us ī 2m. way,
fashion, manner
4C(ii)
moenia moen-ium 3n. pl.
walls, fortifications
4E(iii)

moneō 2 I advise, warn 1C
mōns mont-is 3m. mountain 5A(i)
mor-a ae 1f. delay 4G(i)
mōre in the manner of, like (+ gen.) 5F(ii)
morior 3/4 dep. *mortuus* I die, am dying 4F(i)
mors mort-is 3f. death 2E
mōs mōr-is 3m. way, habit, custom; pl. character 2C
mōt-: see *moueō*
moueō 2 *mōuī mōtus* I remove (from: abl.); move; cause, begin 5A(i)
mox soon 2B
mulier mulier-is 3f. woman, wife 2C
multitūdō multitūdin-is 3f. mob, crowd, number 4E(ii)
multō (by) much, far 4B(iv)
multum (adv.) much 3B Gr.
mult-us a um much, many 1B
mūnus mūner-is 3n. gift; duty 6A(ii)
mūtō 1 I change, alter, exchange 6A(ii)

N

nam for 1A
nārrō 1 I tell, relate 5A(i)
nātūr-a ae 1f. nature 5B(i)
nāt-us a um born of/from (abl.) 4C(i)
nāuigō 1 I sail 4E(i)
nāuis nāu-is 3f. ship 3B
naut-a ae 1m. sailor 4D(i)
-ne (added to the first word of a sentence) = ? 1E

nē (+ subj.) 'not to', 'that x should not . . .' 4F Gr.; 'lest', 'in order that not', 'in order not to . . .' 5A Gr.; 'that', 'lest' 5D Gr.; (+ perf. subj.) 'don't' 5F Gr.
nē . . . quidem not even (emphasising the word in between) 6B(iii)
nē quis 'that no one' 4F Gr.; 'in order that no one . . .' 5A Gr.
nec and . . . not; neither; nor 1D
necesse est it is necessary (for x dat. to y inf.) 3D
necessitūdō necessitudin-is 3f. necessity 5F(ii)
necō 1 I kill 2C
nefāri-us a um wicked, vile, criminal 4D(ii)
neglegenti-a ae 1f. carelessness 4G(i)
neglegō 3 *neglēxī neglēctus* I ignore, overlook, neglect 4B(ii)
negō 1 I deny, say that x is not the case (acc. + inf.) 4A(iii)
negōti-um ī 2n. business, work, duty 4A(ii)
negōtium habeo I do business 1F
quid negōti? what (of) business/problem/trouble? 1F
nēmo nēmin-is 3m. no one, nobody 3C
neque and . . . not; neither; nor (also *nec*) 1C
nēquiti-a ae 1f. wickedness 4E(ii)

nesciō 4 I do not know 2B
nesci-us a um ignorant (of: gen.) 2B
neu = nēue 6C(iv)
nēue (+ subj.) 'and not to', 'and that x should not . . .' 4F(i)
niger nigr-a um black 3A
nihil (indecl. n.) nothing 1E
nihilī of no value, worthless 3C
nihilōminus nevertheless 5C(iii)
nīl = nihil nothing 1F
nimis too much (of x: gen.) 1D
nisi unless, if . . . not; except 2E
nītor 3 dep. *nīxus* or *nīsus* I lean on (+ abl.); strive, exert myself 4E(i)
nix niu-is 3f. snow 6D(i)
nōbil-is e renowned, distinguished; well-born, noble 4B(i)
noceō 2 I harm (+ dat.) 5C(iii)
noctū by night 6C(iii)
nōlī (+ inf.) do not 2B Gr.
nōlō nōlle nōluī I refuse, am unwilling (+ inf.) 2A
nōmen nōmin-is 3n. name 1D
nōminō 1 I name 5G(i)
nōn not 1A
nōn null-ī ae a some 6B(vii)
nōnāgintā 90 5C Gr.
nōndum not yet 5B(ii)
nōnne surely? 3C
nōn-us a um ninth 5C Gr.
nōs we 1F Gr.

nōscō 3 *nōuī nōtus* I get to know (perfect tenses = I know etc.) 5B(i)
noster nostr-a um our 2A
nōt-us a um known, well-known 5B(i)
nōu-: see *nōscō*
nou-us a um new 4G (ii)
nox noct-is 3f. night 2A
nūdō 1 I strip 4F(ii)
nūd-us a um naked 6D(iii)
null-us a um no, none 1B (gen. s. *nullius*; dat. s. *nullī*) (see 2B Gr.)
nōn null-ī ae a some 6B(vii)
num surely . . . not? 4A Gr.; (+ subj.) whether (indirect question) 5F Gr.
numer-us ī 2m. number 4D(ii)
numm-us ī 2m. coin; pl. money 2A
numquam never 1C
nunc now 1A
nūntiō 1 I announce, proclaim 3A
nūnti-us ī 2m. messenger 4A(i)
nūpti-ae ārum 1f. pl. marriage-rites 1E

O
ob (+ acc.) on account of, because of 3A
obdūrō 1 I am firm, hold out, persist 6A(vi)
oblīuīscor 3 dep. *oblītus* I forget 2B; (+ gen.) 5D(iv)
obscur-us a um dark; obscure; mean, ignoble 6D(ii)
obsecrō 1 I beseech, beg 2A

obsess-: see *obsideō*
obsideō 2 *obsēdī obsessus* I besiege 5B(iii)
obstō 1 *obstīdī* — I stand in the way of, obstruct (+ dat.) 3D
occāsiō occāsiōn-is 3f. opportunity 5E(ii)
occidī I'm done for! 1E
occidō 3 *occidī occīsum* I fall, die 5G(iii); set 6A(iv)
occidō 3 *occidī occīsus* I kill 4E(i)
occupō 1 I seize 5C(iii)
occurrō 3 *occurrī occursum* I run to meet, meet; attack (+ dat.) 6C(iv)
octāu-us a um eighth 5C Gr.
octō eight 2A Gr.
octōgintā 80 5C Gr.
ocul-us ī 2m. eye 1C
offendō 3 *offendī offēsus* I meet with; offend 6B(ii)
offici-um ī 2n. duty, job 2A
omittō 3 *omīssī omīssus* I give up; let fall; omit, leave aside 5G(ii)
omnīnō altogether, completely 6B(i)
omn-is e all, every; *omnia* everything 1F
onerī est it is a burden (to x: dat.) 5C(iii)
onus oner-is 3n. load, burden 1E
oper-a ae 1f. attention 3D; service 5A(iii)
operam dō (+ dat.) I pay attention to 3D
opēs op-um 3f. pl. resources; wealth (s. *ops op-is* 3f. help, aid) 5B(ii)

opīnor 1 dep. I think 2B
oportet 2 it is right/fitting for x (acc.) to y (inf.), x (acc.) ought to y (inf.) 4B(iii)
oppid-um ī 2n. town 2A
opportūn-us a um strategic, suitable, favourable 5A (iii)
oppress-: see *opprimō*
opprimō 3 *oppressī* *oppressus* I surprise; catch; crush 2C
oppugnō 1 I attack 3B
optimē (adv.) best 3C Gr.
optim-us a um best 1D (see 3A Gr.)
opus oper-is 3n. job, work, task 2B; fortification 6C(iii)
opus est (+ abl.) there is need of 5F(ii)
ōrāc(u)l-um ī 2n. oracle 6A(v)
ōrātiō ōrātiōn-is 3f. speech 5F(i)
ōrātiōnem habeo I make a speech 5F(i)
ōrdō ōrdin-is 3m. rank (i.e. section of society or line of soldiers) 5D(ii); order 6D(i)
orior 4 dep. *ortus* I rise; spring from, originate 6D(iv)
ōrō 1 I beg, pray 4B(iv)
ōs ōr-is 3n. face; mouth 4F(ii)
ostendō 3 *ostendī ostēsus* (or *ostentus*) I show, reveal 1G
ōtiōs-us a um at leisure 6A(iii)
ōti-um ī 2n. cessation of conflict; leisure, inactivity 3B
ouis ou-is 3f. sheep 2E

P

paene almost 5D(iv)
 paenitet 2 x (acc.) regrets
 y (gen.) 5C Gr.
 palam openly 6B(ii)
 pandō 3 pandi passus I
 spread out, extend;
 throw open, disclose
 6D(i)
 par par-is equal
 par ac equivalent to
 pariter ac equally as 5G
 Gr.
 parcō 3 pepercī parsūrus I
 spare (+ dat.) 4B(iv)
 parēns parent-is 3m. father,
 parent; f. mother
 5B(iii)
 pāreō 2 I obey (+ dat.)
 3D
 pariō 3/4 peperī partus I
 bring forth, bear,
 produce; obtain,
 acquire 6B(vii)
 parō 1 I prepare, get
 ready; provide,
 obtain 5A(i)
 pars part-is 3f. part 5A(iii);
 side 6B(vi) aliī . . .
 pars (or pars . . .
 pars) some . . .
 others 4B Gr.
 paru-us a um small 3A Gr.
 patefaciō 3/4 patefēcī
 patefactus I reveal,
 expose, throw open
 5C(iii)
 pater patr-is 3m. father 1D
 patrēs cōscripī =
 senators 5D(ii)
 patior 3/4 passus endure,
 suffer; allow 2E
 patri-a ae 1f. fatherland
 5D(ii)
 pauc-ī ae a a few 5B(i)
 paulatim little by little,
 gradually 5G(ii)

paulō slightly 4E(i)
 paulum a little, slightly 3B
 Gr.
 pauper pauper-is 3m. poor
 man 1D; (adj.) poor
 1F Gr.
 pāx pāc-is 3f. peace 3B
 pecūni-a ae 1f. money 1D
 peior peiōr-is worse 3A
 Gr.
 peper-: see pariō
 per (+ acc.) through, by
 2C; in the name of
 4G(i)
 percuss-: see feriō
 perdō 3 perdidī perditus I
 lose; destroy 6B(ii)
 pereō perire periī peritum I
 perish, die 6A(vi)
 perfēc-: } see perficiō
 perfect-: }
 perferō perferre pertulī
 perlātus I endure (to
 the end); complete;
 carry to; announce
 6A(vi)
 perficiō 3/4 perfēcī perfectus
 I finish, complete,
 carry out 2B; perficiō
 ut (+ subj.) I bring it
 about that 4F(ii)
 pergō 3 perrēxī perrēctum I
 go on, go ahead,
 continue 2B
 pericul-um ī 2n. danger 1B
 Gr.
 peri-: see pereō
 periī I'm lost 1E
 perinde ac in like manner
 as, just as 5G Gr.
 perit-: see pereō
 perlegō 3 perlēgī perlēctus I
 read through, peruse
 4C(i)
 perscribō 3 perscripsī
 perscriptus I write in
 detail 6B(i)

persequor 3 dep. persecūtus
 I pursue, follow after
 5F(i)
 persuādēō 2 persuāsī
 persuāsum I persuade
 (+ dat.) (to / not to
 ut/nē + subj.) 4F(i)
 perueniō 4 peruēnī
 peruentum I reach,
 arrive at, come to
 (ad + acc.) 4A(i)
 pēs ped-is 3m. foot 3C
 pessimē worst, very badly
 3C Gr.
 pessim-us a um worst 3A
 Gr.
 petō 3 petiūī petitus I beg
 4F Gr.; seek 4G(i);
 proposition, court;
 attack, make for
 5A(ii); stand for
 (public office) 5A (iii)
 Phaedr-a ae 1f. Phaedra
 Intro.
 pietās pietāt-is 3f. respect
 for the gods (also for
 family, home and
 native land) 6D(i)
 pīl-um ī 2n. heavy javelin
 5G(ii)
 pīrāt-a ae 1m. pirate 4D(i)
 placet 2 it is pleasing (to x
 dat. to y inf.); x
 (dat.) votes (to y
 inf.) 3C
 plānē clearly 2C
 plān-us a um level, flat;
 plain, distinct 6D(iv)
 plēn-us a um full (of)
 (+ gen. or abl.) 1A
 plērīque plēraque plēraque
 the majority of 5B(ii)
 plūrēs plūr-ium more 3A Gr.
 plūrimum (adv.) most, a
 lot 3C Gr.
 plūrim-us a um most, very
 much 3A Gr.

plūs plūr-is 3n. more 3A
 Gr.; (adv.) more 3C
 Gr.
 poen-a ae 1f. penalty
 5C(iii)
 polliceor 2 dep. I promise
 2B
 pōnō 3 posuī positus I
 place, position, put
 4A(ii); lay aside
 (= dēpōnō) 6D(iv)
 pōns pont-is 3m. bridge
 5C(ii)
 popul-us ī 2m. people
 4E(i)
 porrō besides, moreover
 5C(iii)
 portō 1 I carry 1A
 port-us ūs 4m. harbour
 4D(i)
 poscō 3 poposcī — I
 demand 1E
 posit-: see pōnō
 possideō 2 possēdī possessus
 I have, hold, possess
 1B
 possum posse potuī I am
 able, can 2A; am
 powerful, have
 power (+ adv.) 4E
 (iii)
 post (adv.) afterwards,
 later 2D; (+ acc.)
 behind, after 5G(i)
 postea afterwards 4A(ii)
 postquam (conjunction)
 after 5A(iii)
 postrēmō finally 4C(ii)
 postrēm-us a um last 4E(i)
 postulō 1 I demand 4F Gr.
 posu-: see pōnō
 pot-: see possum
 potenti-a ae 1f. power 5F(i)
 potior 4 dep. I control
 (+ gen.) 6B(vi); gain
 control of (+ abl.)
 6C (iii)

potius quam rather than
 4C(i)
 potu-: see possum
 praebeō 2 I show, display;
 mē praebeō I show
 myself (to be x: acc.
 adj./noun) 5C(iii);
 provide, offer 6D(iv)
 praecept-: see praecipiō
 praecipiō 3/4 praecēpī
 praecēptus I instruct,
 give orders to
 (+ dat.) (to / not to
 ut/nē + subj.) 5B(ii)
 praecīlār-us a um very
 famous, outstanding,
 brilliant 4D(ii)
 praed-a ae 1f. booty 2D
 praedō praedōn-is 3m.
 pirate; robber 4D(i)
 praefect-us ī 2m. captain,
 prefect; (adj.) in
 charge of (+ dat.)
 4D(i)
 praeficiō 3/4 praefēcī
 praefectus I put (x
 acc.) in charge of (y
 dat.) 5G(i)
 praemi-um ī 2n. reward,
 prize 5B(ii)
 praesēns praesent-is present
 6B(iii)
 praesidi-um ī 2n.
 protection, defence,
 guard 4G(i)
 praesum praesesse praefuī I
 am in charge of
 (+ dat.) 3D
 praetereā besides,
 moreover 4A(iv)
 praetereō praeterire praeterī
 praeteritus I pass by;
 neglect, omit 6A(vii)
 praetor praetōr-is 3m.
 praetor (Roman state
 official) 4B(iv)
 precor 1 dep. I pray 2B

premō 3 pressī pressus I
 press; oppress 6D(iv)
 primō at first 4A(iv)
 primum (adv.) first
 ubi primum as soon as
 5B(i)
 quam primum as soon as
 possible 5E(ii)
 prīm-us a um first 4C (ii)
 in prīmīs especially
 5A(i)
 princeps princip-is 3m.
 leader, chieftain;
 (adj.) first 4E(i)
 pristin-us a um former;
 original 5G(ii)
 prius (adv.) before,
 earlier; first 5A(iii)
 priusquam (conjunction)
 before 5E Gr.
 prō (+ abl.) for, in return
 for; on behalf of; in
 front of 2E; instead
 of 5B(ii); in
 accordance with
 5G(i)
 prōcurrō 3 prōcucurrī
 prōcursum I run
 forward, advance
 6C(i)
 proeli-um ī 2n. battle 3B
 proficīscor 3 dep. profectus I
 set out 3B
 profugiō 3/4 profūgī — I
 escape, flee away
 4F(ii)
 prōgredior 3/4 prōgressus I
 advance 2B
 prohibeō 2 I prevent,
 hinder, keep x (acc.)
 from y (abl. /
 ā(ab) + abl.) 5A(iii)
 prōiciō 3/4 prōiēcī prōiectus
 I throw down 6C(iv)
 prōmittō 3 prōmīsī
 prōmissus I promise
 1E

prope (adv.) almost;
(+ acc.) near 4B(i)
properō 1 I hurry, make
haste 5E(ii)
propius nearer 5C(i)
prōpōnō 3 *prōposui*
prōpositus I set
before; imagine;
offer 5D(i)
propter (+ acc.) on
account of 2E
prōuideō 2 *prōuidi* *prōuisus*
I take care of (that)
5D(ii)
prōuinci-a ae 1f. province
4C(ii)
proxim-us a um nearest,
next 4F(i)
puet 2 x (acc.) is
ashamed at/for y
(gen.) 5C Gr.
pudor pudor-is 3m.
modesty, sense of
shame 6D(iv)
puell-a ae 1f. girl 1D
puer puer-i 2m. boy 1D Gr.
pugn-a ae 1f. battle, fight
5E(ii)
pugnō 1 I fight 2D
pugn-us i 2m. fist 3C
pulcher pulchr-a um
beautiful 1D; (sup.)
pulcherrimus a um 3A
Gr.; (comp.)
pulchrior pulchrior-is
3A Gr.
pūniō 4 I punish 5C(iii)
pūtid-us a um rotten 2E
putō 1 I think 4A(iii)

Q

quā where 4F Gr.
quadrāgintā 40 5C Gr.
quadrīngent-i ae a 400 2A
Gr.
quaerō 3 *quaesui* *quaesitus*
I seek, look for; ask
4G(i)

quāl-is e what sort of
6B(iii)
tālis . . . quālis of such
a kind as 5G Gr.
quam how! (+ adj. or
adv.) 2C; (after
comp.) than 3A
tam . . . quam as . . . as
5G Gr.
(+ superl. adv.) as . . .
as possible 5B(ii)
quam primum as soon as
possible 5E(ii)
quamquam although 2E
quamuis (+ subj.)
although 4G Gr.;
(+ adj.) however
5A(i)
quandō since, when 3C
quantī: tantī . . . quantī of
as much value . . . as
2E Gr.
quantum as much as
5D(iii)
quant-us a um how much,
how great 5F(i)
tantus . . . quantus as
much . . . as 5G Gr.
quārē why? 1B; therefore
6A(ii)
quart-us a um fourth 5C
Gr.
quasi as if, like 1E
quattuor four 2A Gr.
quattuordecim 14 5C Gr.
-que (added to the end of
the word) and 1D
quemadmodum how 6B(i)
queror 3 dep. *questus* I
complain 5B(i)
quī quae quod which?
what? 1D Gr.; who,
which 4C Gr.;
(+ subj.) since (also
with *quippe*) 4G Gr.;
(+ subj.) in order
that / to 5A Gr.
quia because 2B

quicumque quaecumque
quodcumque whoever,
whatever 6A(vii)
quid what? 1C; why?
4A(ii)
quid cōsili? what (of)
plan? 1E
quid negōtī? what (of)
business? what
problem? what
trouble? 1F
quīdam quaedam quid-
quod-dam a, a certain,
some 4A(i)
quidem indeed (places
emphasis on the
preceding word)
6B(viii)
nē . . . quidem not even
(emphasising the
enclosed word)
6B(iii)
quies quīet-is 3f. sleep, rest
6A(iii)
quīn (+ subj.) from —ing;
that . . . not; (but)
that 5F Gr.
quīndecim 15 5C Gr.
quīngent-i ae a 500 2A Gr.
quīnquāgintā 50 5C Gr.
quīnt-us a um fifth 4E(i)
quippe quī (*quae quod*)
inasmuch as he (she,
it) 4G Gr.
quis quid who, what? 1D
Gr.
quis qua quid (after *sī, nisi*,
nē, num) anyone,
anything 4F and 4G
Gr.
quisquam quicquam (after
negatives) anyone
5G Gr.
quisque quaeque quodque
(*quidque*) each 5G Gr.
quisquis quidquid (or
quicquid) whoever,
whatever 6B(v)

quō to where? 1E;
whither, to where
4E(ii); (see also 4F
Gr. for *quō* as abl. s.
of *quī, quae, quod*)
(+ comp. + subj.) in
order that . . . more
5B Gr.
quō + comp. . . .
eō + comp. the more
. . . the more 6B(vi)
quodcumque (to) wherever
5F(i)
quod because 1B
quod sī but if 6B(vii)
quōminus (+ subj.) so that
. . . not; from —ing
5F Gr.
quoque also 1A
quot how many 5F(i)
tot . . . quot as many as
5G Gr.

R

rapīō 3/4 *rapui* *raptus* I
snatch, seize, carry
away, plunder
6D(iii)
ratio ratiōn-is 3f. plan,
method; reason;
count, list;
calculation 4C(ii)
recēp-: see recipiō
recipiō 3/4 *recēpī* *receptus* I
welcome, receive,
take in 4B(ii); *mē*
recipiō I retreat
6C(iii)
recordor 1 dep. I
remember 2B
reddō 3 *reddidī* *redditus* I
return, give back 1G
redeō *redire* *rediū* *reditum* I
return (intrans.) 1C
redūcō 3 *redūxī* *reductus* I
lead back 3B
relict-: see relinquo
religiōs-us a um sacred,

revered, holy,
awesome 4A(ii)
relinquō 3 *reliqui* *relictus* I
leave, abandon
4A(ii)
reliqu-us a um remaining,
left 4E(ii)
remanēō 2 *remānsi*
remānsus I remain
6C(iii)
remittō 3 *remisi* *remissus* I
send back; remit
6C(iii)
reor 2 dep. *ratus* I think,
believe, suppose
5G(ii)
repellō 3 *reppuli* *repulsus* I
drive back, drive out
4A(i)
repente suddenly 4A(i)
reperiō 4 *repperi* *repertus* I
find 4A(iii)
reprimō 3 *repressi* *repressus*
I hold back, check
6C(ii)
requirō 3 *requisiui* *requisitus*
I seek out; ask for
5B(i)
rēs rē-i 5f. thing, matter,
business; property;
affair 2B
rēs public-a rē-i public-ae
state, republic 5A(i)
resistō 3 *restiti* — I resist
(+ dat.); stand back;
halt, pause 5G(ii)
respiciō 3/4 *respexi*
respectus I look
round (back) at, turn
my gaze upon;
reflect upon; care for
6C(i)
respondeō 2 *respondi*
respōnsus I reply 2B
retineō 2 *retinui* *retentus* I
hold back, detain,
restrain; maintain
4B(ii)

reuertor 3 dep. *reuersus* I
return 6C(iv)
reuocō 1 I call back 4C(ii)
rēx rēg-is 3m. king 3A
rīp-a ae 1f. bank 6D(ii)
rogō 1 I ask 1C
Rōm-a ae 1f. Rome
(*Rōmae*, locative, at
Rome) 4C(ii)
Rōmān-us a um Roman
4B(iv)
rūmor rūmōr-is 3m.
rumour, (piece of)
gossip, unfavourable
report 6A(iv)

S

sacer sacr-a um holy,
sacred 4A(iii)
sacerdōs sacerdōt-is 3m. or
f. priest, priestess
4A(iv)
sacr-a ōrum 2n. pl. rites
4A(iii)
saepe often 4E(iii)
saev-us a um wild; angry
2B
saltem at least 6B(vii)
saluē welcome! 1E
salūs salūt-is 3f. safety
4F(i)
salūtem dicit (S. or S.D.
at a letter-head) 'he
greet's' (+ dat.) 6B(i)
salu-us a um safe 1C
sanguis sanguin-is 3m.
blood 4F(i)
sapienti-a ae 1f. wisdom
2B
satis enough (of) (+ gen.)
1D
sauci-us a um wounded
5G(ii)
scaen-a ae 1f. stage 1A
scelest-us a um criminal 2B
scelus sceler-is 3n. crime,
villainy; criminal,
villain 1E

sciō 4 I know 1F
scribō 3 scripsī scriptus I write 2A
scrips-: } see scribō
script-: }
sē himself, herself, itself / themselves 3B Gr.
secum with/to himself/herself 1E
secund-us a um second 5C Gr.
secūris secūr-is 3f. axe 4D(ii)
secūt-: see sequor
sed but 1A
sēdecim 16 5C Gr.
semel once
cum semel as soon as 6A(iv)
semper always 1A
senāt-us ūs 4m. senate 4A(iii)
senex sen-is 3m. old man 1B
sēns-: see sentiō
sententi-a ae 1f. opinion; judgement; sentence; maxim 5C(iii)
sentiō 4 sēnsī sēnsus I feel; understand; perceive, realise 4A(ii)
septem seven 2A Gr.
septendecim 17 5C Gr.
septim-us a um seventh 5C Gr.
septuāgintā 70 5C Gr.
sepulc(h)r-um ī 2n. tomb 6A(v)
sequor 3 dep. secūtus I follow 2B
sermō sermōn-is 3m. conversation, discussion 4B(iii)
seru-a ae 1f. slave-woman Intro.
seruō 1 I keep safe, preserve 4C(i)
seru-us ī 2m. slave 1A

sēsē = sē 5C(ii)
seu (or siue) . . . seu (or siue) whether . . . or 6A(vii)
seuēr-us a um strict, stern 5D(i)
sex six 2A Gr.
sexāgintā 60 5C Gr.
sext-us a um sixth 5C Gr.
sī if 1A
sī + pres. subj., pres. subj. 'if x were to happen, y would happen' 4G Gr.
sī + impf. subj., impf. subj. 'if x were happening (now), y would be happening' (sometimes: 'if x had happened, y would have happened') 4G Gr.
sī + plupf. subj., plupf. subj. 'if x had happened, y would have happened' 5F Gr.
quod sī but if 6B(vii)
sic thus, in this way, so 2B
Sicili-a ae 1f. Sicily 4C(ii)
sicutī (or sicut) (just) as 5C(ii)
sīdus sīder-is 3n. star 6A(v)
sign-um ī 2n. seal, signal, sign 2D; statue 4A(iii); standard; trumpet-call 5G(i)
silu-a ae 1f. wood 6D(ii)
sim pres. subj. of sum
simil-is e alike, similar, like (+ gen.) 2E
similis ac similar to 5G Gr.
simul at the same time 4B(iii); together 6A(vii); = simulatque as soon as 6B(iv)

simulacr-um ī 2n. image 4A(i)
simulatque (or simulac or simul) as soon as 6B(iv)
simulō 1 I feign 5B(ii)
sīn but if 6B(viii)
sine (+ abl.) without 2D
singul-ī ae a individual, one by one 6D(iv)
sinister sinistr-a um left: unfavourable 5G(i)
sinō 3 sīuī situs I allow 3C
siue (or seu) . . . siue (or seu) whether . . . or 6A(vii)
soci-us ī 2m. ally, friend 5A(iii)
sōl sōl-is 3m. sun 2A
soleō 2 semi-dep. solitus I am accustomed, am used (+ inf.) 4A(iii)
solit-: see soleō
sollicitō 1 I bother, worry 2E
solum (adv.) only 4B(iii)
nōn solum . . . sed etiam not only . . . but also 4F(ii)
soluō 3 soluī solūtus I release, undo 2D
sōl-us a um (gen. s. sōlius: dat. s. sōlī) alone 4B(iii); lonely 6D(ii)
somni-um ī 2n. dream 1B
somnia-um ī 2m. sleep 6A(iii)
soror sorōr-is 3f. sister 1D
spati-um ī 2n. space; time 6B(vi)
spērō 1 I hope; expect 5E(ii)
spēs spēs-ī 5f. hope(s); expectation 5B(i)
Staphyl-a ae 1f. Staphyla Intro.
statim at once 1C
stet-: see stō
stil-us ī 2m. stylus (for writing in wax) 2A

stō 1 steti statum I stand 1C
studi-um ī 2n. enthusiasm, zeal 5B(ii)
stultē stupidly 4C(ii)
stult-us a um stupid 2B
suāu-is e sweet, pleasant, delightful 6A(i)
sub (+ abl.) beneath, under 1A
subitō suddenly 3D
sublāt-: see tollō
subsidi-um ī 2n. reserve; help 5G(i)
succurrō 3 succurrī
succursum I run to help, assist (+ dat.) 5G(ii)
sum esse fuī futūrus I am Intro.
summ-us a um highest, top of 1G
summum supplicium the death penalty 4G(ii)
sūmō 3 sūmpsī sūmptus I take; put on; eat
supplicium sūmō (dē + abl.) I exact the penalty (from) 5D(i)
sūmpt-: see sūmō
sūmpt-us ūs 4m. expense(s) 2A
super (adv.) more than enough; above, over; (+ acc./abl.) over, above; (+ abl.) about 6A(v)
superior superiōr-is higher; earlier 6C(iv)
superō 1 I conquer, overcome; get the upper hand 3B
supplex supplic-is (adj.) suppliant (also as noun) 5D(iv)
supplici-um ī 2n. punishment
summum supplicium the death penalty 4G(ii)

supplicium sūmō (dē + abl.) I exact the penalty (from) 5D(i)
supplicō 1 I make prayers (to) (+ dat.) 1B
surgō 3 surrēxī surrēctum I rise, arise, get up 6D(ii)
suspīcor 1 dep. I suspect 2D
sustineo 2 sustinui sustentus I withstand; support 6C(ii)
sustul-: see tollō
su-us a um his, hers / theirs 3B
Syracūs-ae ārum 1f. pl. Syracuse 4D(i)
(Syracūsīs at Syracuse)
Syracūsān-us ī 2m. person from Syracuse, Syracusan 4A(iv)

T
tabell-ae ārum 1f. pl. writing-tablets 2A
taceō 2 I am silent 1C
tacit-us a um silent 2D
tāct-: see tangō
tāl-is e of such a kind 5A Gr.
tālis . . . quālis of such a kind as 5G Gr.
tam so 2B
tam . . . quam as . . . as 5G Gr.
tamen however, but (second word) 1B
tamquam as though 5G Gr.
tandem at length 1B
tangō 3 tetigī tāctus I touch, lay hands on 1G
tantī . . . quantī of as much value . . . as 2E Gr.

tant-us a um so great, so much, so important 4B(iii)
tantus . . . quantus as much . . . as 5G Gr.
tard-us a um slow 4E(ii)
tēcum with you/yourself 3C
tegō 3 tēxī tēctus I cover 5G(iii)
tēl-um ī 2n. weapon 5A(iii)
templ-um ī 2n. temple 4A(i)
temptō 1 I try, test, attempt; attack 5E(ii)
tempus tempor-is 3n. time 2D
tendō 3 tetendī tentus (or tēnsus) I stretch (out); offer; direct; travel 5D(iv); strive, fight 5G(ii)
tenebr-ae ārum 1f. pl. shadows, darkness 6D(iii)
teneō 3 tenuī tentus I hold 3D
terr-a ae 1f. land 3B
terreō 2 I frighten 6B(viii)
terribil-is e dreadful, frightening 5E(i)
terti-us a um third 5C Gr.
testis test-is 3m. witness 4F(i)
tetig-: see tangō
thalam-us ī 2m. chamber, bedchamber 6D(iv)
thēsaur-us ī 2m. treasure 1B
timeō 2 I fear, am afraid of 1A; (nē + subj.) am afraid that/lest 5D Gr.
timid-us a um frightened, fearful 5C(ii)
timor timōr-is 3m. fear 6B(vi)

tollō 3 *sustulī sublātus* I lift, remove, take away 4A(iii)

tor-us ī 2m. couch, bed 6D(iv)

tot so many 4E(iii)
tot . . . quot as many . . . as 5G Gr.

tōt-us a um (gen. s. *tōtūs*; dat. s. *tōtī*) whole, complete 4A(i)

trādō 3 *trādidī trāditus* I hand over 5C(ii)

trāns (+ acc.) across 6A(vii)

trecent-ī ae a 300 2A Gr.
trēdecim 13 5C Gr.

trēs tri-a three 2A Gr.
trīgintā 30 5C Gr.

trīst-is e sad, gloomy, unhappy 1F

trucidō 1 I butcher 5F(ii)
tū you (s.) 1A

tueor 2 dep. *tuitus* (or *tūtus*) I look after, protect; look at 6B(viii)

tul-: see *ferō*
tum then 1D

cum . . . tum both . . . and 5D(ii)

tunic-a ae 1f. tunic 6D(iv)
turb-a ae 1f. crowd, mob 1F

turp-is e disgusting, filthy, outrageous, ugly 4B(i)

tūt-us a um safe 4G(i)
tu-us a um your(s) (s.) 1C

V

uacu-us a um empty; free (from: + abl. or *ā(ab)* + abl.) 6B(vii)
ualdē very much, strongly 6B(v)

ualē goodbye! 1D

ualeō 2 I am strong; am well, am powerful; am able (cf. *ualē* = 'Farewell!')

'Goodbye!') 6A(vii)

uari-us a um diverse, various 6D(i)

ubi where (at)? 1E; when? 1F

ubi primum as soon as 5A(i)

ubicumque wherever 6B(vii)

-ue (added onto the end of a word: cf. *-ne* and *-que*) or 6A(vii)

uehemēns uehement-is impetuous, violent 5D(i)

uehementer strongly 4F(i)

uel . . . uel either . . . or 5A(ii)

uel even 5D(iv)

uelim pres. subj. of *uolō*
uellem impf. subj. of *uolō*

uelut as, just as 5C(ii)

ueniō 4 *uēnī uentum* I come, arrive 3A

uent-: see *ueniō*

uent-us ī 2m. wind 6D(i)
uerber uerber-is 3n. blow; whip 4F(i)

uerberō 1 I flog, beat 1C
uerb-um ī 2n. word 2B

uereor 2 dep. *ueritus* I fear, am afraid 5D(ii)
(*nē* + subj. that/lest 5D Gr.)

uerit-: see *uereor*
uērō indeed 2D

Verrēs Verr-is 3m. Verres 4A(i)

uersor 1 dep. I am occupied; stay, dwell; am in a certain condition 5G(ii)

uers-us ūs 4m. verse; pl. poetry 5A(ii)

uertō 3 *uertī uersus* I turn (trans.) 6C(ii)

uēr-um but 2D

uēr-us a um true 3C
uestāl-is e Vestal

(belonging to the goddess Vesta) 5D(i)

uester uestr-a um your(s) (pl.) 2A

uestis uest-is 3f. clothes, clothing, dress 4D(ii)

uetō 1 *uetuī uetitus* I forbid 4A(iv)

uetus ueter-is old; long-established 5A(i)

uexō 1 I annoy, trouble, worry 1C

ui-a ae 1f. way, road 2A
uic-: see *uincō*

uicīn-us ī 2m. neighbour 1C

uict-: see *uincō*

uictōri-a ae 1f. victory 3A
uideō 2 *uīdī uīsus* I see 1B

uideor 2 passive *uīsus* I seem 2C; am seen 4D Gr.

uīgintī 20 5C Gr.

uīnciō 4 *uīnxi uīctus* I bind 2A

uīncō 3 *uīcī uīctus* I conquer 2D

uīnc(u)l-um ī 2n. chain, bond 4F(ii)

uīn-um ī 2n. wine 6A(i)
uīr uīr-ī 2m. man,

husband 1D

uīrgō uīrgin-is 3f. young girl, virgin 4A(iii)

uīrtūs uīrtūt-is 3f. manliness, courage; goodness 1G

uīs-: see *uideō*/*uideor*
uīs 2nd s. of *uolō*

uīs irr. force, violence

(acc. *uim*; abl. *uī*); pl. *uīrēs uīr-ium* 3f.

strength; military forces 4A(i)

uīt-a ae 1f. life 2E

uīuō 3 *uīxi uīctum* I am alive, live 5A(iii)

uīu-us a um alive, living 5G(iii)

uīll-us a um (gen. s. *uīllius*; dat. s. *uīllī*) any (cf. *nūllus*) 4B(i)

ultim-us a um furthest; last; greatest 6A(vii)

umbr-a ae 1f. shadow, darkness; shade, ghost 6D(ii)

umer-us ī 2m. shoulder 6D(ii)

umquam ever 3A

und-a ae 1f. water, wave 6D(ii)

unde from where, whence 5G(ii)

undecim 11 5C Gr.

undēuīgintī 19 5C Gr.

unguent-um ī 2n. ointment 1B

ūniuers-us a um all together; whole, entire 6C(ii)

ūn-us a um (gen. s. *ūnīus*; dat. s. *ūnī*) one 2A

Gr.

uōbīscum with you (pl.) 3C

uocō 1 I call 1A

uolō uelle uoluī I wish, want 1E

uoluntās uoluntāt-is 3f. will, wish 5D(ii)

uoluō 3 *uoluī uolūtus* I roll, turn over (trans.) 5G(iii)

uoluptās uoluptāt-is 3f. desire, love, passion 3D

uōs you (pl.) 1F Gr.

uōt-um ī 2n. vow, prayer 6D(i)

uōx uōc-is 3f. voice; word 2E

urbs urb-is 3f. city 2D

ūs-: see *ūtor*

usque continually, without a break

usque ad (+ acc.) right up to 6A(iv)

ut (+ indic.) how! 1C; (+ indic.) as, when

1D; (+ subj.) to, that . . . should 4F(i)

(and 4F Gr.); (+ subj.) that (after

accidit, *perficiō* etc.) 4F Gr.; (+ subj.) that

(result) 5A Gr.; (+ subj.) in order to/

that (purpose) 5A Gr.; (+ subj.) that

. . . not (after verbs of fearing) 5D Gr.

uterque utraque utrumque each of two, both 5G Gr.

utī=ut 4B(i)

utinam I wish that 5C Gr.

ūtor 3 dep. *ūsus* I use, make use of; adopt (+ abl.) 4B(i)

utpote (*quī quae quod*) as is natural (for one who) (+ subj.) 5E

Gr.

utrimque on both sides 3B

utrum . . . an (double question) A or B?

(negative *annōn* = or not?) 5D(i); (+ subj.)

whether . . . or (indirect question)

(negative *necne* = or not) 5D(i)

uulnerō 1 I wound 5G(iii)
uulnus uulner-is 3n.

wound 5G(iii)

uult 3rd s. of *uolō*

uultis 2nd pl. of *uolō*

uult-us ūs 4m. face, expression 5G(iii)

uxor uxōr-is 3f. wife 1D

English-Latin vocabulary

Note

This vocabulary is compiled specifically for the English-Latin exercises in the Grammar and contains only those words and forms required to complete these successfully.

A

a(n): simply use noun; see also 'a certain'	affair(s) <i>rēs rē-i</i> 5f.	<i>dum</i> + same tense as main verb
abandon <i>relinquō</i> 3	affirm <i>affirmō</i> 1	Allobroges <i>Allobrog-ēs</i>
able, be <i>possum posse potuī</i>	afraid	<i>Allobrog-um</i> 3m. pl.
about to: use future participle	be . . . (of) <i>timeō</i> 2	allowed, x is <i>licet</i> 2 (x (dat.) <i>licet</i> + inf.)
absence, in x's absence: use <i>absēns</i> absent-is agreeing with x	be . . . (that) <i>uereor</i> 2 dep. <i>ueritus</i>	ally <i>soci-us</i> ī 2m.
absent (use with noun to tr. 'in x's absence') <i>absēns</i> absent-is	<i>nē</i> + subj.; <i>timeō</i> 2	alone <i>sol-us a um</i>
accordance: in accordance with <i>perinde ac</i> (+ indic.)	<i>nē</i> + subj.; <i>metuō</i> 3	already <i>iam</i>
account (noun) <i>ratio</i> <i>ratio-n-is</i> 3f.; I make an account <i>ratio-nem</i> <i>habeō</i>	<i>metuī</i> <i>nē</i> + subj. (ut + subj. that . . . not)	also <i>quoque</i> ; <i>etiam</i> ; <i>et</i> ; not only . . . but also <i>nōn solum</i> . . . <i>sed etiam</i>
accuse <i>accūsō</i> 1	be . . . to: as above, but + inf.	although <i>quamquam</i> ; or use abl. abs. with present/perfect participle; <i>cum</i> + subj.; <i>quamuis</i> + subj.
accustomed, be <i>soleō</i> 2 (semi-dep.) <i>solitus</i>	after <i>postquam</i> + perf. indicative; if a deponent verb, use perfect participle	always <i>semper</i>
a certain <i>quidam quaedam quoddam</i> ; see 92	again <i>iterum</i> ; (= after this) <i>posthac</i>	am: see 'be'
achieve one's object <i>rem perficiō</i> 3/4 <i>perfēcī perfectus</i>	against <i>in</i> (+ acc.), <i>ad</i> (+ acc.)	ambassador <i>lēgāt-us</i> ī 2m.
act (verb) <i>agō</i> 3 <i>ēgī</i> ; <i>faciō</i> 3/4 <i>fēcī</i> ; (noun) <i>facinus facinor-is</i> 3n.	against (= contrary to what) <i>contrā ac</i> (+ indic.)	amid: use abl. (of attendant circumstances); or <i>inter</i> (+ acc.)
actual <i>ipse ipsa ipsum</i>	agreement, be in <i>cōnsentiō</i> 4 <i>cōnsēnsī cōnsēnsus</i>	Amphitruo <i>Amphitruō</i> <i>Amphitruōn-is</i> 3m.
address <i>adloquor</i> 3 dep. <i>adlocūtus</i>	aid <i>oper-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f.; <i>auxili-um</i> ī 2n.	and <i>et</i> ; <i>atque/ac</i>
advance <i>prōgredior</i> 3/4 dep. <i>prōgressus</i>	Alcumena <i>Alcumēn-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f.	announce <i>nūntiō</i> 1
advantage: to x's advantage: use dat. of x	alive, be <i>uiuō</i> 3	Antonius <i>Antōni-us</i> ī 2m.
	alive <i>uiu-us a um</i>	anxiety <i>cūr-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f.
	all <i>omn-is e</i>	anxiety in case <i>cūra</i> <i>nē</i> + subj.
	all the best men <i>optimus quisque</i>	anyone (after negatives) <i>quisquam</i>
	all the time = while	anything (after negatives) <i>quicquam</i>

English-Latin vocabulary

(= <i>quid + quam</i>)	at: in time phrases use abl. alone	conditional on the completion of the before clause) <i>antequam</i> + subj.
appear <i>uideor</i> 2 dep.; <i>appāreō</i> 2	at home <i>domī</i>	beg <i>precor</i> 1 dep.; <i>orō</i> 1; <i>obsecrō</i> 1
appearance <i>faciēs</i> , <i>faci-ēi</i> 5f.	at once <i>statim</i>	believe <i>crēdō</i> 3 <i>crēdidī</i> <i>crēditum</i> (+ dat.); in passive used impersonally: x (dat.) is believed by y (<i>ā</i> + abl.)
approach <i>adeō</i> <i>adīre</i> ; <i>adgredior</i> 3/4 dep. (both use <i>ad</i> + acc.)	at the house of <i>apud</i> (+ acc.)	belonging to x: use dat. or gen. of x
are: see 'be'	at the same time <i>simul</i>	beseech <i>orō</i> 1; <i>obsecrō</i> 1
arise <i>exorior</i> 4 dep. <i>exortus</i> (gerund <i>exoriundum</i>)	attack <i>adgredior</i> 3 dep.	besiege <i>obsideō</i> 2 <i>obsēdī</i> <i>obsessus</i>
armed men <i>arm-a</i> <i>orum</i> 2n. pl.; <i>armāt-i</i> <i>orum</i> 2m. pl.	aggressus; <i>petō</i> 3 <i>petiui</i> <i>petitus</i>	best <i>optimus a um</i>
army <i>exercit-us</i> <i>ūs</i> 4m.	attempt <i>cōnor</i> 1 dep.	all the best men <i>optimus quisque</i>
arrive (at) <i>perueniō</i> 4	attention, pay <i>operam</i> <i>dō</i> 1 (to x: dat.)	bestow <i>dō dare</i>
<i>peruenī</i> <i>peruentum</i> <i>ad</i> (+ acc.) (except names of towns and one-town islands; there acc. only)	away from <i>ā(ab)</i> (+ abl.)	better <i>meli-or</i> <i>meli-us</i>
as: see 'consider'	axe <i>secūris</i> <i>secūr-is</i> 3f.	I'd better = <i>mihi melius</i> <i>est</i> + inf.
as much as: see 'worth as much as'		big <i>ingēns ingent-is</i>
as (e.g. as you ought) <i>ut</i> (+ indic.); just as <i>ita</i> . . . <i>ut</i>		black <i>niger nigra nigrum</i>
as x . . . as y <i>tam</i> (+ adj.) . . . <i>quam</i>		blame <i>castīgō</i> 1
as soon as possible <i>quam primum</i>		bold <i>audāx audāc-is</i>
as (time): use abl. abs. with present participle or any case of present participle, depending on construction of sentence		boldness <i>audāci-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f.
as follows <i>sic</i>		booty <i>praed-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f.
as though <i>tamquam</i> (+ subj.)		bore: x is a . . . to: x (nom.) <i>taediō est</i> to y (dat.)
ask <i>quaerō</i> 3 <i>quaesui</i> <i>quaesitus</i>		born (of) <i>nāt-us a um</i> (+ abl. of origin)
ask for <i>rogō</i> 1 (+ acc.)		both . . . and <i>et</i> . . . <i>et</i>
asleep, be <i>dormiō</i> 4		bother <i>sollicitō</i> 1
assert <i>affirmō</i> 1		boy <i>puer</i> <i>puer-i</i> 2m.
assist <i>succurrō</i> 3 (+ dat.)		brave <i>fort-is e</i>
astuteness <i>astūti-a</i> <i>ae</i> 1f.		break <i>frangō</i> 3 <i>frēgī</i> <i>fractus</i>
		bring <i>portō</i> 1; <i>ferō ferre</i>
		bring to land (of a ship) <i>appellō</i> 3 <i>appulī</i> <i>appulsus</i>
		bring with <i>adducō</i> 3 <i>adduxī</i> <i>adductus</i>
		brother <i>frāter frātr-is</i> 3m.
		burden <i>onus oner-is</i> 3n.

be a . . . on *oneri esse*:
 x (nom.) is a burden
 on y (dat.)
 burdensome, x is . . . to
 y: x (nom.) *oneri est*
 to y (dat.)
 burn (intrans.) *cōnflagrō* 1
 burn (trans.) *incendō* 3
incendi incēsus
 business *negōti-um* ī 2n.;
rēs rē-ī 5f.
 do business: see 'do'
 but *sed* (1st word); *autem*
 (2nd word); *tamen*
 (usu. 2nd word);
 (= except) *nisi*
 butcher *trucidō* 1
 by *ā* or *ab* + abl. (often
 after passive verbs);
 by —ing abl. of
 gerund.

C
 cadaver *cadāuer cadāuer-is*
 3n.
 call *uocō* 1
 call back *reuocō* 1
 called: use *nōmine* (abl. of
nōmen)
 call together *conuocō* 1
 calm *aequō animō*
 camp *castr-a* ōrum 2n. pl.
 can *possum posse*
 captain *praefect-us* ī 2m.
 capture *capiō* 3/4 *cēpī*
captus
 care for *cūrō* 1
 care, take *prōuideō* 2
 carry *portō* 1; *ferō ferre tulī*
 cast lots *sortior* 4 dep.
 catch sight of *cōspicor* 1
 dep.
 Catiline *Catilin-a* ae 1m.
 certain (= a) *quīdam*
quaedam quoddam
 certainly *certē*
 chain *uinc(u)l-um* ī 2n.

change (intransitive) *sē*
mutāre
 chap: omit or use *uir uir-ī*
 2m.; *homo homin-is*
 3m.
 charge, be in . . . of
praesum praeesse
 (+ dat.)
 character *mōr-ēs mōr-um*
 3m. pl.
 cheer up *bonum animum*
habeō 2
 children *liber-ī ōrum* 2m.
 pl.
 Chrysalus *Chrȳsal-us* ī
 2m.
 Cicero *Cicerō Cicerōn-is*
 3m.
 citizen *cīuis cīu-is* 3m.
 city *urbs urb-is* 3f. (city of
 x: put x in same case
 as *urbs*)
 claim *arguō* 3 *arguī*
 clearly *plānē*
 Cleomenes *Cleomen-ēs*
Cleomen-is 3m.
 clever *doct-us a um*
 coins *numm-ī ōrum* 2m. pl.
 collect *colligō* 3 *collēgī*
 column *agmen agmin-is*
 3n.
 come *eō ire iī itum; ueniō*
 4 *uēnī uentum*
 come out *exeō exīre*;
ēgredior 3/4 dep.
 come to *adeō adire adiī*
aditum
 come up to *accēdō* 3
accessī accessum
 command (noun) *imperī-*
um ī 2n.; (vb) *iubeō*
 2; *imperō* 1
 commander *imperātor*
imperātōr-is 3m.; *dux*
duc-is 3m.
 commit *committō* 3
commisī commissus

compassionate *misericors*
misericord-is (3 adj.)
 complain *queror* 3 dep.
questus
 complete *perficiō* 3/4
perfēcī perfectus;
cōnficiō 3/4 *cōnfecī*
cōnfectus
 concerning *dē* (+ abl.)
 confirm *cōfirmō* 1
 conquer *uincō* 3 *uicī*
 conscript *cōnscript-us a um*
 consider (x as y) *habeō* 2
 (x acc., y acc.);
arbitror 1 dep. (same
 construction)
 conspiracy *coniūratiō*
coniūratiōn-is 3f.
 conspirator *coniūrātor*
coniūrātōr-is 3m.
 constellation *sign-um* ī 2n.
 consul *cōsul cōsul-is* 3m.
 consulship *cōsulāt-us ūs* 4m.
 stand for consulship
cōsulātum petō 3
 contrary: see 'on the
 contrary'
 conversation *sermō*
sermōn-is 3m.
 cook (noun) *coqu-us* ī
 2m.; (vb) *coquō* 3
 corpse *corpus corpor-is* 3n.;
cadāuer cadāuer-is 3n.
 courage *uirtūs uirtūt-is* 3f.
 coward(ly) *ignāu-us a um*:
 for 'coward' use as
 noun
 crime *scelus sceler-is* 3n.
 criminal *scelest-us* ī 2m.
 cross *crux cruc-is* 3f.
 crowd *turb-a* ae 1f.;
multitūdō multitudin-is
 3f.
 cup *pōcul-um* ī 2n.
 Curius *Curi-us* ī 2m.
 custom *mōs mōr-is* 3m.
 cut (vb) *caedō* 3 *cecīdī*

D
 danger *pericul-um* ī 2n.
 danger of x happening
periculum nē + subj.
 dare *audeō* 2
 daring *audāx audāc-is*
 (adj.); *audāci-a* ae 1f.
 (noun)
 daughter *fili-a* ae 1f.
 day *di-ēs diē* 5m.
 dead *mortu-us a um*
 dear me = *mē miserum*/
miseram
 death *mors mort-is* 3f.
 death penalty *summ-um*
supplici-um ī 2n.
 deceive *dēcipiō* 3/4 *dēcēpī*
dēceptus
 decide *placet* 2 *placuit*: x
 (dat.) decides to y
 (inf.); *cōstituō* 3
cōstituī cōstitutus
 (to: infinitive)
 declare *affirmō* 1
 deed *facinus facinor-is* 3n.;
 (= something
 already done) *fact-um*
 ī 2n.
 defeat *uincō* 3 *uicī*
 defend *dēfendō* 3 *dēfendī*
dēfēsus
 defendant: use *iste ista*
istum (see 91)
 delay (vb) *moror* (1 dep.);
commoror (1 dep.);
 (noun) *mor-a* ae 1f.
 Demaenetus *Dēmaenet-us* ī
 2m.
 demand *poscō* 3; *postulō* 1
 depart (= set out)
proficiscor 3 dep.
profectus
 depart for *proficiscor ad*
 (+ acc.)
 desire (vb) *cupiō* 4
 destroy *dēleō* 2 *dēlēuī*
 destruction *exiti-um* ī 2n.

devise *excōgitō* 1
 die *moriōr* 3/4 dep.
mortuus; (= fall in
 battle) *occidō* 3 *occidī*
occāsum
 differently from *aliter ac*
 (+ indic.)
 difficult *difficil-is e*
 dinner *cēn-a* ae 1f.
 Diodorus *Diodōr-us* ī 2m.
 disadvantage, to x's: use
 dat. of x
 disembark *in terram exeō*
(exīre exī exitum)
 disregard (for) *neglegenti-a*
 ae 1f. (+ gen.)
 disturb *commoueō* 2
commōuī
 do *faciō* 3/4 *fēcī factus*; *agō*
 3 *ēgī āctus*; *gerō* 3
gessī gestus
 do business *negōti-um*
agō (3) or *gerō* (3)
 done for, I'm *periī*
 don't/do not (as
 command)
nōlī + infin.;
nē + perfect subj.
 door *foris for-is* 3f.; *iānu-a*
 ae 1f.
 doubt: use adj. *dubi-us a*
um (rephrase 'there's
 no doubt', as 'it is
 not doubtful')
 there is no . . . that *nōn*
dubium est quīn
 + subj. (see 174 for
 sequence)
 dowry *dōs dōt-is* 3f.
 drag back *retrahō* 3 *retrāxī*
retractus
 draw *ferō ferre*
 draw up *instruō* 3
instruī instrūctus
 drink *bibō* 3 *bibī*
 drive back *repellō* 3
reppulī

drunk *ēbri-us a um*
 duty *offici-um* ī 2n.
 dwell *habitō* 1
E
 each (man, woman,
 thing) *quisque*
quaeque quidque
 each individual *ūnus*
quisque
 each (of two) *uterque*
utroque utrumque
 easily *facile*
 easy *facil-is e*
 elect *creō* 1
 embark *in nāuem ingredior*
 3/4 *ingressus*
 embrace *complector* 3 dep.
complexus; amplexor 1
 dep.
 encourage *hortor* 1 dep.; x
 (acc.) to y (*ut* + subj.
 — neg. *nē*: see 134 for
 rules of sequence);
 (troops) *cohortor* 1
 dep. (with acc. or
ut + subj.)
 endure *ferō ferre*
 enemy *host-is host-is* 3m.
 enjoin *iubeō* 2 (x acc. to y
 inf.)
 enjoy *fruor* 3 dep. *fructus*
 (+ abl.)
 enough *satis* (+ gen.); or
 qualifying an adj.
 enter *intrō* 1; *ingredior* 3/4
 dep.
 enthusiasm *studi-um* ī 2n.
 enthusiasm for + gen.
 entrust *mandō* 1 x (acc.)
 to y (dat.)
 —er: use comparative adj.
 escape *fugiō* 3/4; *profugiō*
 3/4 *profūgī*
 —est: use superlative adj.
 estimate *coniciō* 3/4 *coniecī*
coniectus

Euclio *Euclio* *Euclion-is* 3m.
 even *etiam*
 event *rēs rē-i* 5f.
 ever *umquam*
 every *omn-is e*
 everything: use n. pl. of *omnis* or *omnis + rēs*
 everyone: use m. pl. of *omnis*
 evil *mal-us a um*
 exact (the penalty) *supplici-um sūmō* 3
 examine *īnspiciō* 3/4 *īnspeī īnspectus*
 excellence *uirtūs uirtūt-is* 3f.
 excellent *optim-us a um*
 except *nisi*
 execute *necō* 1
 exile *exsili-um i* 2n.
 expenses *sūmpt-us ūs* 4m.
 expression *uult-us ūs* 4m.
 extent, to such an *adeō*
 extremely: use superlative adj. or adv. or *summ-us a um* with a noun in abl. (e.g. 'extremely beautiful' = 'of very great beauty' abl.)
 eye *ocul-us i* 2m.

F
 fail *dēsum dēsse* *dēfui + dat.*
 fall (often = die) *cadō* 3 *cecidī cāsum; occidō* 3 *occidī occāsum*
 family *famili-a ae* 1f.; *genus gener-is* 3n.
 famous *illūstr-is e*
 far from *longē ā* (ab) + abl.
 father *pater patr-is* 3m.
 fatherland *patri-a ae* 1f.
 fear (vb) *timeō* 2; that . . .

not *ut + subj.*; (noun) *timor timōr-is* 3m.; *met-us ūs* 4m.
 feign *simulō* 1
 ferocity *ferōci-a ae* 1f.
 fiercely *ferōciter*
 fight *pugnō* 1; *certō* 1;
 fight a war *bellum gerō*
 fighting *pugn-a ae* 1f.; *proeli-um i* 2n.; in 'fighting is going on' use impersonal passive of *pugnō* 1
 finally *postrēmō; tandem* (= at length)
 find *inueniō* 4 *inuenī inuentus; reperiō* 4 *repperī repertus* (= something that was mislaid or lost)
 find out *cognōscō* 3 *cognōuī cognitus*
 finish *cōficiō* 3/4 *cōfēcī cōfectus*
 fire (noun) *ignis ign-is* 3m.; *incendi-um i* 2n.; (vb, = set alight) *accendō* 3 *accendī accēnsus*
 fist *pugn-us i* 2m.
 fitting, it is *deceat* (for x acc. to y infin.)
 flat-fish *mūrēn-a ae* 1f.
 flight *fug-a ae* 1f.
 follow *sequor* 3 dep.
 food *cib-us i* 2m.
 fool (noun) *stult-us i* 2m.; (vb) *dēcipiō* 3/4 *dēcēpī dēceptus*
 for: use dat.; (= because) *nam* (1st word), *enim* (2nd word); (= on behalf of) *prō* (+ abl.); for the sake of *causā* (+ gen.); *grātiā* (+ gen.) – placed after the noun

or phrase they qualify
 forbid *uetō* 1 *uetuī uetitus*
 force *cōgō* 3 *coēgī coāctus* (x acc. to: inf.)
 forces *cōpi-ae ārum* 1f. pl.; *exercit-us ūs* 2m.
 foresee *prōuideō* 2 *prōuidī prōuīsus*
 forget *oblīuīscor* 3 dep. *oblītus*
 forum *for-um i* 2n.
 free (vb) *liberō* 1
 freedom *libertās libertāt-is* 3f.
 friend *amīc-us i* 2m.; *comes comit-is* 3m.
 from (= away) *ā(ab) + abl.* or (= out of) *ē(ex) + abl.*; (= because of) use abl. of cause
 full (of) *plēn-us a um* (+ gen.)
 Fulvia *Fului-a ae* 1f.

G
 Gabinius *Gabīni-us i* 2m.
 gain *adipīscor* 3 dep. *adeptus*
 garland *corōn-a ae* 1f.
 Gaul *Galli-a ae* 1f.
 Transalpine Gaul *Galli-a Trānsalpīn-a Galli-ae Trānsalpīn-ae* 1f.
 Gavius *Gauī-us i* 2m.
 general *dux duc-is* 3m.
 get in x's way *obstō* 1 (+ dat.)
 get ready (trans.) *comparō* 1; *parō* 1
 girl *puell-a ae* 1f.
 give *dō dare dedī* (x acc. to y dat.)
 give back *reddō* 3 *reddidī redditus*
 give oneself up *sē trādere* (*trādidī trāditus*) (the

pronoun will change with the person: *mē trādō, tē trādis* etc.)
 give orders *iubeō* 2 (+ acc.); *imperō* 1 (+ dat.)
 give orders (that) *imperō ut + subj.*
 gladly *laet-us a um*
 go *eō ire iī itum*
 go around *circum-eo -īre -iī -itum*
 go away *abeō abire abiī abitum; ēgredior* 3/4 dep. *ēgressus*
 gerundives *abeundum, ēgrediendum*
 go back *redeō redire*
 go forward *prōgredior* 3/4 *prōgressus*
 go in *ineō inire*; *ingredior* 3/4 dep.
 go out *exeō exire exiī; ēgredior* (3/4 dep.)
 go on *pergō* 3
 go to *accedō* 3 *accessī accessum*
 going to —: use future participle
 god *de-us i* 2m. (pl. *dī*: see 16); household god *Lar Lar-is* 3m.
 gold *aur-um i* 2n.
 good *bon-us a um*
 good! *bene*
 goodbye! *ualē*
 great *magn-us a um*; very great *maxim-us a um*, *summ-us a um*; so great *tant-us a um*
 greater *mai-or us*
 greed *cupiditās cupiditāt-is* 3f.; greed for x: use *cupiditās + gen.*
 Greek *Graec-us a um*
 guarantor *cognitor cognitōr-is* 3m.
 guard *custōs custōd-is* 3m.

H
 hand *man-us ūs* 4f.
 hand over *trādō* 3 *trādidī trāditus*
 happen *fiō fieri factus*; or use passive of *gerō* 3 *gessī gestus*
 it happens that *accidit* (3 *accidit*) *ut + subj.*
 harbour *port-us ūs* 4m.
 harm *noceō* 2 *nocuī nocitum + dat.*; in the passive use impersonally: x (dat.) is harmed by y (*ā + abl.*)
 harmony *concordi-a ae* 1f.
 has: see 'have'
 hated, x is . . . by y; x (nom.) *odiō est* to y (dat.)
 have *habeō* 2; or use *sum + dat.* of person who has, nom. of thing/person possessed; I have —ed: use perfect tense
 have/had to x: use gerundive of the x with *sum* (have to) *eram* (had to). The person who 'has to' is in the dat. when the verb is intransitive
 he: use verb in 3rd person singular; in indirect statement (acc. + inf.) use *sē* if it refers to subject of introductory verb, *eum* if to a different person
 head, be at the . . . of *praesum praesesse* (+ dat.)
 hear (of) *audiō* 4

her: use parts of *ea*
 here *hīc*; (= to here) *hūc*
 hers: use gen. of *haec*, *illa* or *ea*
 hesitate *cūctor* 1 dep. (to: infin.)
 hide *cēlō* 1
 highest *summ-us a um*
 him: use *hic*, *ille* or *is*; in law-court speeches *iste* is often used when 'him' = 'the defendant'
 himself (acc.) *sē* (gen.) *sui* (dat.) *sibi* (abl.) *sē*; (speaks) to himself *sēcum*
 his: where it refers to the subject and there is no emphasis, use noun alone: where it refers to someone other than the subject, use gen. of *hic*, *ille* or *is*; if referring to subject with some emphasis use *su-us a um*
 hold *teneō* 2
 hold back *reprimō* 3 *repressī repressus*; *teneō* 2 *tenuī tentus*; *retineō* 2 *retinūī retentus*; x acc. from doing y: *quōminus* or *nē + subj.*
 home (= to home) *domum*; (= at home) *domī*; (= from home) *domō*
 honour *honor honor-is* 3m.
 hope *spēs spē-i* 3f.
 horse *equ-us i* 2m.
 hospitable *hospitāl-is e*
 hour *hōr-a ae* 1f.
 house *aed-ēs aed-ium* 3f. pl.; *dom-us ūs* 4f. (irr. see 56)

in the house *domi*
household *famili-a* ae 1f.
household god *Lar Lar-*
is 3m.

how! *ut* (+ indic.); how
the matter stands: see
stands; how
(qualifying an
adjective) *quam*: may
introduce indirect
question (followed
by subj. verb)

how many *quot*
(introducing direct
or indirect question:
ind. questions have
subj. verb)

how much *quant-us a*
um (introduces both
direct and indirect
questions: ind.
questions have subj.
verb)

however *tamen* (usu. 2nd
word); *autem* 2nd
word or *sed* 1st
word

huge *ingēns ingent-is*
hurry *properō* 1
husband *uir uir-i* 2m.

I

I *ego* (only when
emphatic: otherwise
use 1st person
singular of verb
only)

idle *ignāu-us a um*
idleness *ignāui-a* ae 1f.
if *sī*; (very occasionally
use abl. abs.); if . . .
not *nisi*

ignorant of *nesci-us a*
um + gen.
important, such an *tant-us*
a um

in *in* (+ abl.)
in case *nē* + subj.

in order (not) to
ut + subj., negative
nē; see 145 for rules
of sequence

in order to . . . more
quō + comp. adj./
adv. + subj. (see 148)

in x place: often just
abl. without *in*.
Some towns have a
special locative (see
under name of
town)

in x's praetorship/
consulship etc.: plain
abl. name + abl. of
praetor, cōsul etc.

in x time: plain abl.
in x way *ita; sic*; or a
phrase in abl. with
mod-us i 2m.

in —ing: abl. of
gerund

inasmuch as *quippe*
quī + subj.

individual: each
individual *ūnus*

quisque
inflamed *īnflammāt-us a um*
innocent *innocēns innocent-*
is

inside (= to inside) *intrō*
instruct *praeciō* 3/4

praecēpī praeceptus x
(dat.) to / not to do
y (*ut/nē* + subj.; see
145 for rules of
sequence)

instruction: in 'an
instruction has been
given' use
impersonal passive of
praeciō 3/4 *praecēpī*
praeceptus: give the
instructions: see
'instruct'

intend(ing) to: use future
participle

into *in* + acc.

invite (someone to
something) *inuītō* 1
(x (acc.) to y
(ad + acc.))

is see 'be'
it: use 3rd person singular
of verb

Italy *Itali-a* ae 1f.

J

join *adiungō* 3 *adiūnxī*
adiūnctus (transitive)
x (acc.) to y (dat.)

join someone or
something: *sē*
adiungere (+ dat.)

join battle with
proelium committō 3
commisī commissus
cum + abl.

joy *laetiti-a* ae 1f.; *gaudi-*
um i 2n.

joyful *laet-us a um* (x was
not a joyful event:
use adj. on its own,
or with *rēs*)

judge *iūdex iūdic-is* 3m.
Jupiter *Iuppiter Iou-is* 3m.
just as (. . . so) *ut* (. . . *ita*)

K

keep *adseruō* 1
keep/kept —ing: use
imperfect tense
keep quiet *taceō* 2
keep shouting *clāmitō* 1

kill *necō* 1; *interficiō* 3/4
interfēcī interfectus

king *rēx rēg-is* 3m.
know *sciō* 4; *cognōuī*,
cognitus;
(= understand)
intelligō 3 *intellēxī*
intellēctus

known: well known *clār-*
us a um

L

lack *egeō* 2 *eguī* (+ abl.)
lad: use adj. in

appropriate case of
masculine
(alternatively *homo*
homin-is 3m.; *puer*
puer-i 2m.)

Lampsacum, people of
Lampsacēn-i ōrum 2m.
pl.

land *terr-a* ae 1f.;
(= native land) *patri-*
a ae 1f.

Lar *Lar Lar-is* 3m.

large *ingēns ingent-is*;
magn-us a um

laugh *rīdeō* 2 *rīsī rīsus*

law *lēx lēg-is* 3f.

lead *dūcō* 3 *dūxī*

leader (= general) *dux*
duc-is 3m.; *prīnceps*
prīncip-is 3m.

leadership, under x's: use
abl. of name and abl.
of *dux duc-is* 3m.

learn *cognōscō* 3 *cognōuī*
cognitus

leave
(= go away) *abeō abīre*
(= abandon) *relinquō* 3
reliquī
(= go out) *ēgredior* 3/4
dep. *ēgressus*

leisure *ōti-um i* 2n.

Lentulus *Lentul-us i* 2m.

lest (esp. after verbs of
fearing or
apprehension)
nē + subj.

let (x . . . do y, or x be
done): use 3rd s./pl.
subj. present; let . . .
not *nē* + perf. subj.
3rd s./pl.)

letter *litter-ae ārum* 1f. pl.
liberty *libertās libertāt-is*
3f.

lictor *lictōr lictōr-is* 3m.

lie *mentior* 4 dep.

life *uīt-a* ae 1f.

like (adj.) *simil-is e* (+ dat.
or gen.); (vb) x
likes: x (dat.) *placet*;
(vb) *uolō uelle uolūi*
(only in potential
subj. usages: e.g. 'I
would like')

Lilybaeum *Lilybae-um i*
2m.; locative
Lilybaei; use acc. for
'to', abl. for 'from'

listen *audiō* 4

live *uīuō* 3 *uīxī uīctūrus*
(no past participle)

live one's life *aetātem*
agō 3 *ēgī āctus*

long *long-us a um*

look after *cūrō* 1

looks *fōrm-a* ae 1f.

lot, a . . . of: use *mult-us a*
um

love (vb) *amō* 1

lover *amātor amātor-is* 3m.

lust *cupiditās cupiditāt-is* 3f.

lying *mendāx mendāc-is*

M

madness *īnsani-ā* ae 1f.

magistrate *magistrāt-us ūs*
4m.

make *faciō* 3/4 *fēcī factus*
make a speech
ōrātiōnem habēō 2

make plans *cōsilium*

capiō 3/4 *cēpī captus*

make one's way *iter*
faciō 3/4

man: old man, see 'old':
uir uir-i 2m.; in
military contexts,
use *mīlitēs* for 'men'
(= human being) *homo*
homin-is 3m.

manage (to) *perficiō* 3/4
perfēcī perfectus

ut + subj.; *efficiō* 3/4
effēcī effectus *ut* + subj.
(Rules of sequence in
135)

many *mult-i* ae a (pl.)

married *nūpt-us a um*

marry in *mātrimōnium*
dūcō 3 *dūxī ductus* (x:
acc.)

massive *ingēns ingent-is*

master *domin-us i* 2m.

matter *rēs rē-i* 5f.

may (x may do y): x dat.
licet + inf.; sometimes

occurs in subordinate
clauses — check the

construction; in
main clause,

'someone may —',
use perfect

subjunctive
(potential)

mean (vb) *dīcō* 3 *dīxī*
dictus

meanwhile *intereā*

mention *loquor* 3 dep.

loquī locūtus

merriment *laetiti-a* ae 1f.

Messana *Messān-a* ae 1f.

Metellus *Metell-us i* 2m.

middle (of) *medi-us a um*

mind *anim-us i* 2m.

missing, be *dēsum dēesse*
dēfuī

mistress *amīc-a* ae 1f.

Mnesilochus *Mnēsiloch-us*
i 2m.

money *pecūni-a* ae 1f.

moon *lūn-a* ae 1f.

more: normally use
comparative form of

adj. or adv.

more (adv.) *magis*

more (s.) *plūs* (+ gen.);
(pl.) *plūrēs plūra* 3rd

decl. adjective

mountain *mōns mont-is*
3m.

move (=upset) *commouēō*
2 *commouī commōtus*;
(=physically move)
mouēō 2 *mouī mōtus*
much (adj.) *mult-us a um*;
too much *nimis*
(+ gen.); much
(adv.) = (by) far
multō

murder *necō* 1
must: x (dat.) *necesse est* y
(inf.); often use
gerundive (x must
do y = y nom. must
be done, gerundive
agreeing with y, by
x dat. With
intransitive verbs x
must y = y nom. n.
gerundive + *est* x dat.)
my *me-us a um* (voc. s. m.
mī)
myself: use part of *ego*

N

name (noun) *nōmen*
nōmin-is 3n.; (vb)
name x as y *nōminō*
1 x acc. y acc.
necessity *necessitūdō*
necessitūdin-is 3f.

neighbour *uicīn-us ī* 2m.
never *numquam*
nevertheless *tamen* (2nd
word); *nihilōminus*

new *nou-us a um*
new man *nouus homo*
next (=and then) *deinde*
Nicobulus Nicobul-us ī
2m.

nigh, be *adsum adesse*
night *nox noct-is* 3f.
no (adj.) *nūll-us a um*
no! *immō*

no-one *nēmo nēmin-is*
3m.; after *nē* use *quis*
there is no-one who
... *nēmo est quī* ...
+ subj. (generic)

noble *nōbil-is e*
nobles *nōbil-ēs nōbil-ium*
3m. pl.
nor *neque, nec*
not *nōn*
not to (indirect
command) *nē* + subj.
and not to *nēue* + subj.
not yet *nōndum*
nothing *nihil, nīl*
now *nunc*
number *numer-us ī* 2m.

O

O! *ō* (followed by voc. in
direct address, acc. if
an exclamation)
oar *rēm-us ī* 2m.
obey *pāreō* 2 (+ dative)
object: see 'achieve one's
object'
obstruct *obsistō* 3
obstitī + dat.
obtain *adipīscor* 3 dep.
adeptus
obviously *plānē*
of: use genitive to denote
possession, source;
use ablative in
descriptions (e.g. a
man of great
courage), or genitive

often *saepe*

old: old man *senex sen-is*
3m.

on: in a time phrase, use
ablative

on account of *propter*
(+ acc.); *ob* (+ acc.)

on the point of: use
future participle
on the contrary *immō*;
minimē

on the say so (of) *iussū*
(+ gen.)

once x had been —ed:
use abl. abs.

one *ūnus ūna ūnum* (like
nūllus, 62)

one of *ūnus ē(ex) + abl.*
only *solum*; not only ...
but also *nōn solum*
... *sed etiam*

onto in (+ acc.)
or *aut* (where two things;
either ... or *aut* ...
aut)

ordain *dēcernō* 3

order, give an ... to
iubeō 2 *iussī iussus*
(+ acc.); *imperō* 1
(+ dat.)

order x to y *iubeō*
(+ acc. + inf.); *imperō*
(x dat. *ut* + subj.);
(noun) *imperi-um ī*
2n.

other *ali-us ali-a ali-ud*
(gen./dat. s. *ali-us*
ali-ī)

ought *dēbeō* 2; x ought to
y: x acc. *oportet* + inf.

our *noster nostr-a um*
out of *ē(ex) + abl.*

over (of time) use plain
acc.

own, his: use *su-us a um* if
it refers to the
subject of the verb

P

part *pars part-is* 3f.

party *conuiui-um ī* 2n.

patron *patrōn-us ī* 2n.

pay attention to *operam dō*
dare dedī datus
(+ dat.)

peace *pāx pāc-is* 3f.

penalty *supplici-um ī* 2n.
exact the penalty
supplicium sūmō 3 *dē*
(+ abl.)

people: use *homo homin-is*
3m. in pl., or pl. of
adjective on its own;
(= nation) *popul-us ī*
2m.

perform (an act) *committō*

3 *commisī commissus*
person: use m. of adj. or
pronoun

persuade *persuādeō* 2
persuāsī persuāsum;
persuade ... x (dat.)
to y (*ut* + subj. —
negative *nē*)

Petereius *Petrēi-us ī* 2m.

Phaedra *Phaedr-a ae* 1f.

Philodamus *Philodām-us ī*
2m.

Philoxenus *Philoxen-us ī*
2m.

Picenum *ager Picēn-us*,
agr-ī Picēn-ī 2m.

piece (= coin) *numm-us ī*
2m.

pirate *pīrāt-a ae* 1m.;
praedō praedōn-is 3m.;
(adj.) *pīrātīc-us a um*

place (noun) *loc-us ī* 2m.
in x's place *in locum*
(+ gen.)

place (vb) *pōnō* 3 *posuī*
positus; collocō 1

plan *cōnsili-um ī* 2n.

plans, make *cōnsilium*
capiō 3/4

pleasure *uoluptās uoluptāt-*
is 3f.; x is a pleasure
to y: x (nom.)
uoluptātī est y (dat.)

poetry *uers-ūs uum* 4m.
pl.

write poetry *uersūs*
facere

ponder *cōnsiderō* 1;
excōgitō 1

poor, poor man *pauper*
pauper-is 3m. or adj.;
if = unhappy, miser
miser-a um

possess *habeō* 2

possible, it is etc. *potest*
(often uses a passive
infin.)

pot *aul-a ae* 1f. (the usual
Classical Latin form

is *olla*; *aula* usually
means 'court',
'palace')

pour scorn on *irrīdeō* 2
irrīsī irrīsus

praetorship, in x's ... :
use abl. of name and
abl. of *praetor praetōr-*
is 3m.

pray (to), supplicate
supplicō 1 (+ dat.);
precor 1 dep.

prefer *mālō mālle mālūī*;
prefer x to y *mālō* x
(acc.) *quam* y (acc.)

prepare *parō* 1
prepared (to) *parāt-us a*
um ad (+ acc.) (with
a gerundive phrase)

present, be *adsum adesse*
adfuī

preserve *cōnseruō* 1

pretty *pulcher pulchr-a um*
prevent *prohibeō* 2 (x acc.
from doing y infin.);

impediō 4 (x acc.
from doing y: *nē* or
quōminus if *impediō*

positive, *quīn* or
quōminus if *impediō*
negative)

priest *sacerdōs sacerdot-is*
3m.

priesthood *sacerdoti-um ī*
2n.

promise *polliceor* 2 dep.

prostitute *meretrīx*
meretrīc-is 3f.

protect *dēfendō* 3 *dēfendī*
dēfēnsus

protection *praesidi-um ī*
2n.

provided (that) *dum*
(*dummodo*) + subj.

province *prōuinci-a ae* 1f.

punish *pūniō* 4

punishment *supplici-um ī*
2n.

exact punishment from

supplicium sūmō 3
dē + abl.

purpose, with the ... of
ut + subj.; *quī* + subj.:
ut is in this case
often preceded by *eō*
cōnsiliō; for the
purpose of —ing
grātiā or *causā* + gen.
gerund/gerundive
phrase (e.g. *resistendī*
causā for the purpose
of resisting): note
they are post-
positions (i.e. come
after the word they
govern)

pursue *sequor* 3 dep.
secūtus; persequor 3
dep. *persecūtus*

Q

qualities *uirtūt-ēs uirtūt-um*
3f. pl.

quick *celer celer-is e*

quickly *celeriter*

quiet, keep *taceō* 2

R

Raccius *Raeci-us ī* 2m.

rank *ōrdō ordin-is* 3m.

rather than *potius quam*

rather x: use comparative
adjective

read *legō* 3 *lēgī lēctus*

read through *perlegō* 3

perlēgī perlēctus

ready, get (trans.) *comparō*
1; *parō* 1

realise *sentiō* 4 *sēnsī sēnsus*

rebuke *castīgō* 1

recall *recordor* 1 dep.

refer *referō referre*

refuse *nōlō nōlle nōluī*;

(= say no) *negō* 1

regret x (acc.) *paenitet*; 1

regret x *mē*

paenitet + gen.

relate *nārrō* 1

relative (= blood-kin) *cognāt-us* ī 2m.
 rely upon *nitor* 3 dep.
nīsus/nīxus (+ abl.)
 remember *recordor* 1 dep.;
meminī meminisse
 (perfect form,
 present meaning)
 remove x's *γ*, *γ* from x
auferō *γ* (acc.) x
 (dat.)
 remove *tollō* 3 *sustulī*
sublātus; *auferō auferre*
abstulī ablātus; *moueō*
 2 *mōuī mōtus* x (acc.)
 from *γ* (abl.)
 reply *respondeō* 2 *respondī*
 report (= denounce)
dēferō (irr. 3) *dēferre*
dētulī; (= announce)
nūntiō 1
 rescue *ēripiō* 3/4 *ēripiū*
ēreptus (x acc. from
γ dat.)
 resist *resistō* 3 *restitī* —
 (+ dat.)
 resolute *audāx audāc-is*
 resources *op-ēs op-um* 3f.
 pl.
 respect *honor honor-is* 3m.
 rest (of) *cēter-us a um*;
reliqu-us a um
 retain *retineō* 2 *retinūi*
retentus
 return (= go back) *redeō*
redire rediī; *regredior*
 3/4 *regressus*; (= give
 back) *reddō* 3 *reddidī*
redditus
 reveal *aperiō* 4 *aperuī*
apertus; *patefaciō* 3/4
patefēcī patefactus
 reward *praemi-um* ī 2n.
 rich (man) *dīues dīuit-is*
 3m.; or adj.
 Roman *Rōmān-us a um*
 (for 'a Roman',
 'Romans' use m.
 forms as nouns)

Rome *Rōm-a ae* 1f.;
 locative *Rōmae*; for
 'to' use acc.; for
 'from' use abl.
 rotten *pūtid-us a um*
Rubrius Rubri-us ī 2m.
 run:
 run away *fugiō* 3/4 *fūgī*
 run into *incurrō* 3
incurrī incursum
 (in + acc.)
 run together *concurrō* 2
concurrī
 rush: in 'there was a rush'
 use impersonal
 passive of *concurrō* 3
concurrī concurre

S
 safe (= saved) *salu-us a um*
 safety *salūs salūt-is* 3f.
 sail *nāuigō* 1
 sailor *naut-a ae* 1 m.
 sake, for the . . . of *causā*
 (+ gen.); *grātiā*
 (+ gen.) — placed
 after the noun or
 phrase they qualify;
 for the sake of —ing
causā/grātiā + gen.
 gerund/gerundive
 phrase (place *causā*/
grātiā after noun or
 phrase it governs)
 same *īdem eadem idem*
 at the same time *simul*
 Sanga *Sang-a ae* 1m.
 save (= keep safe)
seruō 1; save x from
γ *ēripiō* 3/4 *ēripiū*
ēreptus x acc. from *γ*
 dat.
 say *dīcō* 3 *dīxī dictus*
 introducing direct
 speech *inquam inquis*
inquit 3rd pl. *inquiunt*
 say . . . not *negō* 1
 (often with
 acc. + inf.)

say so, on the . . . of
iussū + gen.
 scene *tumult-us ūs* 4m.
 scorn: see 'pour scorn on'
 scoundrel *scelest-us a um* —
 use as a noun
 sea *mare mar-is* 3n; abl.
marī = by sea
 section of society *ōrdō*
ordin-is 3m.
 see *uideō* 2 *uīdī uīsus*
 seek *petō* 3; *quaerō* 3
 seek out *requirō* 3
requīsītū requīsītus
 seem *uideor* 2 pass. *uīsus*
 seize *occupō* 1
 senate *senāt-us ūs* 4m.
 send *mittō* 3 *mīsī missus*
 (x: acc., to *γ*:
ad + acc.)
 send away *dīmittō* 3
dīmīsī dīmīssus
 seriously *grauiter*
 seriousness *grauitās*
grauitāt-is 3f.
 Sertorius, of *Sertōriān-us a*
um
 Servilius *Seruīli-us* ī 2m.
 set *occidō* 3 (intrans.)
 set out *proficiscor* 3
profectus
 set (a trap) *īnsidiās parō*
 1 for x (dat.)
 set free *liberō* 1
 set (guards) *dispōnō* 3
disposuī dispositus
 set on fire *incendō* 3
incendī incēnsus
 shall: use future tense
 shall have: use future
 perf. tense
 shame *pudor pudōr-is* 3m.
 she: use 3rd s. of verb;
 for emphasis use *illa*
 or *haec*
 ship *nāu-is nāu-is* 3f.
 shore *lītus lītōr-is* 3n.
 should *dēbeō* 2;
 occasionally subj.

alone is used
 (jussive): e.g. 'x
 should do *γ*';
 gerundive is also
 used to express
 'should' as
 obligation, x (dat.)
 should do *γ* (n.
 gerundive + *est*).
 Where 'should'
 occurs in subordinate
 clauses check
 whether the
 conjunction takes a
 subj.; if so, then
 nothing else is
 required to express
 should (e.g. until
 troops should be sent
 . . . *dum* + subj.)
 shout *clāmō* 1
 keep shouting *clāmitō* 1
 shrine *fān-um* ī 2n.
 shut in *claudō* 3 *claudī*
clausus
 Sicily *Sicili-a ae* 1f.
 signal *sign-um* ī 2n.
 silent, be *taceō* 2
 silently *tacit-us a um*
 silver *argent-um* ī 2n.
 since *cum* + subj.
 slave *seru-us* ī 2m.
 slave-girl/woman *seru-a*
ae 1f.
 sleep (vb) *dormiō* 4
 so x (adj./adv.) *tam*
 so = to such an extent
adeō
 so as to / so that
 (purpose = in order
 that) *ut* + subj.
 (negative *nē*); see 145
 for rules of sequence
 so as to . . . more —ly
 / so that . . . more
 —ly (purpose) *quo* +
 comp. adverb
 + subj.; see 145 for
 rules of sequence

so great *tant-us a um*
 society, section of *ōrdō*
ordin-is 3m.
 soldier *mīles mīlit-is* 3m.
 someone *aliquis*
 son *fīli-us* ī 2m. (voc. s.
fīlī)
 soon *mox*; *iam*
 sorrow *lūct-us ūs* 4m.
 sort (of person/people
 who) *quī* + subj.
 (generic); sort of
 person that *tālis* . . .
quālis
 Sosia *Sōsi-a ae* 1m.
 source, x is a . . . of
 pleasure to *γ*: x
 (nom.) *uoluptātī est* *γ*
 (dat.)
 spare *parcō* 3 *pepercī*
parsūrus (+ dat.); in
 passive used
 impersonally, x
 (dat.) will be spared
 (3rd s.) by *γ*
 (*ā(ab)* + abl.)
 speak *dīcō* 3 *dīxī dictus*;
loquor 3 dep. *locūtus*
 speak to (= address)
alloquor 3 dep.
allocūtus
 speech, make a *ōrātiōnem*
habeō 2
 spirits *anim-us* ī 2m.
 (often plural in this
 sense)
 spot *loc-us* ī 2m.; pl. *loc-a*
ōrum 2n.
 stage *scaen-a ae* 1f.
 stand (vb) *stō* 1 *stetī status*;
 how the matter
 stands *ita* . . . *ut rēs*
est
 stand in x's way *obstō* 1
obstītī (+ dat.)
 stand (for consulship)
 (*cōsulātum*) *pētō* 3
petūi petītus
 Staphyla *Staphyl-a ae* 1f.

star *sign-um* ī 2n.
 start *coepī coepisse* (past
 tenses only).
 Occasionally 'started
 to' can be expressed
 by either (a) historic
 infinitive or (b)
 imperfect indicative
 state (strongly) *affirmō* 1;
dīcō 3 *dīxī dictus*
 state (noun) *rēs public-a*
rē-ī public-ae 5f. + 1/
 2f. adj.; *cīuitās cīuitāt-*
is 3f.
 station *collocō* 1; *pōnō* 3
posuī positus
 statue *simulacr-um* ī 2n.
 stay *maneō* 2 *mānsī*
mānsus
 stop *prohibeō* 2 (x acc.
 from doing *γ* infin.);
impediō 4 (x acc.
 from doing *γ*:
quōminus or *nē* when
impediō positive;
quōminus or *quīn*
 when negative)
 story *fāma ae* 1f. 'The
 story is that . . .'
fāma est followed by
 acc. + inf.; tell a
 story — use *rēs* or n.
 of *hic*
 strategic *opportūn-us a um*
 street *ui-a ae* 1f.
 stretch forth *tendō* 3
tetendī tēnsus
 strict *seuēr-us a um*
 strike *feriō* 4
 strip *nūdō* 1
 strip (= rob corpses)
spoliō 1
 stupid *stult-us a um*
 substitute *substituō* 3
substituī substitūtus
 succeed *rem bene gerō* 3
gessī gestus
 such
 to such an extent *adeō*

such an important *tantus a um*

suddenly *subitō*

suffer *patior* 3 dep. *passus*

summon *uocō* 1; *arcessō* 3

arcessiū arcessitus

suppliant *supplex supplic-is*

(adj.); also used as a noun

supporter *soci-us* ī 2m.

surely? *nōnne*; surely not?

num; surely *certē*

swift *celer celer-is* e

Syracusans *Syrācūsān-ī*

ōrum 2m. pl.

Syracuse *Syrācūs-ae ārum*

1f. pl.; locative

Syrācūsīs

T

take (= capture) *capiō* 3/4

cēpi captus; (= lead

off) *dēducō* 3 *dēdūxī*

dēductus

take away *auferō auferre*

abstulī ablātus; *tollō* 3

sustulī sublātus

take care lest/that

prōuideō 2 *prōuidī*

prōuisus

nē + subj.

take from *auferō* (take

x (acc.) from y

(dat.))

talk *loquor* 3 dep. *locūtus*

Teleboans *Tēlebo-ae ārum*

1m. (pl.)

tell *loquor* 3 dep. *locūtus*;

dīcō 3 *dīxī dictus*;

(= relate) *nārrō* 1 (x

acc. to y dat.);

(= order) *iubeō* 2

iussī iussus

temple *templ-um* ī 2n.

than *quam*; or use abl. of

comparison

that *ille illa illud*; *is ea id*

that (conjunction) use

acc. + infin.

construction after

verbs of saying

thinking, perceiving;

ut + subj. after verbs

of command (neg.

nē); so . . . that (as a

result) *ut* + subj.; see

144

the: simply use noun

their: referring to the

subject, use noun

alone

them: use pl. of *hic ille* or

is

then (= next) *deinde*;

(= at that point) *tum*

Theomnastus *Theomnāst-*

us ī 2m.

there is *est*

there are *sunt*

there was *erat*, *fuit* or

factus est

therefore *igitur* (2nd

word)

these: see 'this'

they: use 3rd pl. verb

thief *fūr fūr-is* 3m.

thing *rēs rē-ī* 5f.; or use

neut. adj.

think *opīnor* 1 dep.;

arbitror 1 dep.; *putō*

1; think x (to be) y:

habēō/arbitror x (acc.)

y (acc.)

this *hic haec hoc*;

sometimes possible

to use part of *quī*

quae quod at

beginning of

sentence

those: see 'that'

threaten *minor* 1 dep.

(+ dat.); threaten x

with y: *minor* x

(dat.) y (acc.)

three *trēs tri-um*

through *per* (+ acc.); of

extent of time use

acc. alone; = because

of: use abl. of cause

throughout: use abl. of

place (where the

noun has an

adjective); or *per*

(+ acc.)

throw *coniciō* 3/4 *coniciē*

coniectus

thus *sic*; *ita*

time *tempus tempor-is* 3n.

to (motion) *ad* (+ acc.), in

(+ acc.); (gainer)

plain dative

to x (vb): after *uolō*,

nōlō, *mālō* use

infinitive; prefer x to

y: see 'prefer'

to (as in: order x to -

indirect command)

ut + subj.; see also

'manage (to)'

to: where this indicates

purpose use *ut/nē*

(not to) + subj. For

sequence see 145. In

some cases it is

possible to use

quī + subj., see 145³;

also *ad* + gerundive

+ noun (acc.); or

ad + gerund (acc.)

to such an extent (. . .

that . . .) *adeō* . . .

(*ut* + subj.)

today *hodiē*

too much *nimis* (+ gen.)

top *summ-us a um*

touch *tangō* 3 *tetigī tāctus*

towards *ad* (+ acc.)

town *oppid-um* ī 2n.

Transalpine Gaul *Galli-*

ae Trānsalpīn-a ae 1f.

trap (set a) *īnsidiās parō* 1

for x (dat.)

treasure *thēsaur-us* ī 2m.

trick *dol-us* ī 2m.

tricks *astūti-ae ārum* 1f. pl.

troops *cōpi-ae ārum* 1f. pl.

trouble *mal-um* ī 2n.

Troy *Trōi-a* ae 1f.

true *uēr-us a um*

truly *uērō*

try *cōnor* 1 dep.

turn, do a good *bene faciō*

3/4 (+ dat.)

turn over (transitive)

uoluō 3 *uoluī uolūtus*

two *du-o du-ae du-o*

two hundred *ducent-ī* ae a

U

Umbrenus *Umbrēn-us* ī

2m.

understand *intellegō* 3

intellēxī

unhappy *miser miser-a um*

until (with idea of

purpose) *dum* + subj.

up, what's . . . ? : see

'what'

upbraid *castīgō* 1

urge *cohortor* 1 dep. (x

acc. to y: *ut* + subj.)

us: see 'we'

use *ūtor* 3 dep. *ūsus*

('using' = *ūs-us a um*)

used to — : use

imperfect indicative

utmost *summ-us a um*

V

value, of no *nihilī*

various *dīuers-us a um*

Verres *Verr-ēs Verr-is* 3m.

very: use superlative form

of adj. or adv. as

appropriate

very quickly: use

superlative adverb

(from *celer*); or abl.

phrase of manner,

summā celeritātē

via *per* (+ acc.)

victory *uictōri-a* ae 1f.

view, in my *ut opīnor*

vile *turp-is* e

visit *uīsō* 3

voice *uōx uōc-is* 3f.

W

wage (war) (*bellum*) *gerō* 3

gessī gestus; (*bellum*)

faciō 3/4

wait *expectō* 1

walk *ambulō* 1

walls *moen-ia moen-ium*

3m. pl.

want *uolō uelle uoluī*; not

want *nōlō nolle noluī*

war *bell-um* ī 2n.

was/were —ing: use

imperfect indicative

watch *īnspiciō* 3/4 *īnspexi*

īnspectus

water *aqu-a* ae 1f.

way (= habit, custom)

mōs mōr-is 3m.;

(= manner) *mod-us* ī

2m.; (= journey) *iter*

itiner-is 3n.

make one's way *iter*

faciō 3/4

ways *mōr-ēs mōr-um*

3m. pl.

we *nōs* (if emphatic:

otherwise, use plain

1st person pl.)

wealth *dīuiti-ae ārum* 2f. pl.

weapon *tēl-um* ī 2n.

weight (= authority or

influence) *auctōritās*

auctōritāt-is 3f.

well known *clār-us a um*

were to . . . in

conditional

sentences: pres. subj.

what? *quid*?; or use

appropriate form of

the adjective *quī*?

what x? *quid* (+ gen.)

what's up? *quid negoti*

est?

what a *ō* (+ acc. of

exclamation)

when *ubi* (+ perf. indic.);

with deponent verbs,

use past participle;

cum + plup. subj. Or

use abl. abs.

where to? *quō*

which?: use appropriate

form of *quī* to agree

with noun

which: use nom. of *quī*

quae quod; or use a

participle agreeing

with the noun

described

while *dum* + present

indicative (when the

main clause

interrupts the action

of the *dum* clause);

or use abl. abs. with

present participle

who? *quis*

who *quī quae quod*; see

106-7, 140; 145³

whole (of) *tōt-us a um*

(gen. s. *tōtius*: dat. s.

wife *uxor uxōr-is* 3f.
wild beast *bēsti-a* ae 1f.
will: use fut. tense
will have: use fut. perf. tense
win *uincō* 3 *uicī uictus*
wisdom *sapienti-a* ae 1f.
wish *uolō uelle uolūi*; not wish *nōlō nolle nōlūi*
with (= accompanied by) *cum* (+ abl.); (= by means of, or describing circumstances) plain abl.; with x —ing — use abl. abs. with pres. part.
without *sine* (+ abl.)
woman *fēmin-a* ae 1f.; *mulier mulier-is* 3f.
worry *cūr-a* ae 1f.
worse *pei-or* *pei-us*
worship *colō* 3 *colūi cultus*
worth as much as *tantū*
... *quantū* ...

worthy (of) *dign-us a um* + abl.
would: use fut. inf. (in acc. + inf. construction — 'that' clause — in secondary sequence); in conditional sentences use subj. (see rules in 139, 173); in purpose clauses: use correct sequence (impf. subj. see 145); I would like = *uelim* (pres. subj. — potential)
would be: in indirect statement past sequence use supine + *irī* (e.g. *captum irī* would be captured) or *fore ut* + subj. (pres. for primary, impf. for secondary sequence)
would have: in

conditional sentences use plupf. subj. or impf. subj.
wound (vb) *uulnerō* 1
wretched *miser miser-a um*
write (poetry) *faciō* (*uersūs* 4m. pl.)

Y
year *ann-us* ī 2m.
ye gods! *prō dī immortalēs!*
yes *ita*
yet *tamen* (2nd word in clause)
yield *cēdō* 3 *cessi cessum* (to x: dat.)
you (s.) *tū*, (pl.) *uōs* (only if emphatic: if not, use 2nd person s./pl. of verb)
young man *iūuenis iūuen-is* 3m.
your *tu-us a um* (when 'you' is one person)
yourself: use part of *tū*
yourselves *uōs*

Additional learning vocabulary

This list contains about 400 words which have been met in the course and are common in the most accessible parts of Latin literature, but have not been set for learning or used in exercises. For ease of reference, the place where each word first occurs is recorded. For principal parts of irregular verbs, consult the list in Reference Grammar G. (Note that where the prefix is followed by a hyphen compounds will be found under the simple form in that list: e.g. look up *per-tineō* under *teneō* and *con-tendō* under *tendō*, but *prōspiciō* under *prōspiciō*.) Prepositions are not included in the list, but may be found in Reference Grammar K.

A
ab-dūcō 3 I lead away 5E(ii)
adhibeō 2 I apply; employ 6C(iv)
adit-us ūs 4m. approach, entrance 5D(ii)
ad-mittō 3 I let in; commit 4E(ii)
ad-pellō 3 I bring to land 4E(i)
ad-pōnō 3 I place by 6D(iv)
ad-stō 1 I stand by 1D
aduent-us ūs 4m. approach, arrival 6B(vii)
aedifici-um ī 2n. building 6B(iii)
aedificō 1 I build 2D
aestās aestāt-is 3f. summer 6D(iii)
aest-us ūs 4m. heat; tide 6D(iv)
ancor-a ae 1f. anchor 4E(i)
antīqu-us a um old 2A
appareō 2 I become visible; am evident 1B
arceō 2 I enclose; keep off, keep away 6D(ii)
arguō 3 I make clear, prove; accuse 4D(ii)

ariēs ariet-is 3m. ram; battering-ram 2E
ar-ripiō 3/4 I snatch up, seize 4A(i)
aspect-us ūs 4m. sight; appearance 5D(i)
āter ātr-a um black 6D(ii)
auāriti-a ae 1f. greed 5B(i)
auār-us a um greedy 1A
ā-uertō 3 I turn away (trans.) 4D(ii)
au-us ī 2m. grandfather 1B

B
bōs bou-is 3m. and f. ox, cow 1E

C
cadāuer cadāuer-is 3n. corpse 5G(iii)
caec-us a um blind; hidden; dark, obscure 1F
callid-us a um skilful, shrewd; cunning, crafty 3C
canō 3 I sing; play 5G(i)
cant-us ūs 4m. song 4E(ii)
cardō cardin-is 3m. hinge 3D
careō 2 (+ abl.) I am without, lack 4C(ii)

cār-us a um dear 3D
celebrō 1 I crowd, frequent; celebrate; extol 4B(iii)
cēseō 2 I assess, value; propose; resolve; think 6B(vii)
cēnsor cēnsōr-is 3m. censor (Roman magistrate) 5A(i)
cernō 3 I discern, distinguish 6D(i)
circum-dō 1 I put around; surround 4B(iv)
circum-sistō 3 I stand around, surround 4F(i)
cīuīl-is e civic, civil 6B(viii)
claudō 3 I close, shut 1A
clēmēns clēmēt-is gentle, mild; merciful 5D(i)
cognāt-us ī 2m. blood-relation 5G(iii)
col-loquor 3 dep. I converse, confer 2E
coll-um ī 2n. neck 3C
color colōr-is 3m. colour 6D(ii)
commemorō 1 I mention, relate, tell of 6C(i)
commendō 1 I entrust; recommend 5D(iv)

communīcō 1 I share 5E(ii)
compleō 2 I fill up 4F(i)
com-pōnō 3 I put together, arrange; compose, construct; adjust 2A
com-prehendō 3 I grasp, seize; arrest; grasp mentally, understand; include (in narrative), describe 1F
concur-sus 4m. running together, concourse; charge 6C(ii)
concutiō 3 I shake; shatter; terrify 5A(i)
con-dō 3 I build, found, establish; compose; put away, store; conceal, hide; bury 6D(ii)
cōnfert-us a um packed together, crowded, compact 5G(ii)
cōnfligō 3 I come to blows 5E(ii)
con-gredior 3/4 dep. I come together, meet 2D
con-iungō 3 I join together, unite 4D(ii)
con-quirō 3 I collect; search for 4C(ii)
cōn-sentiō 4 I am in agreement, agree 3B
cōnsōlor 1 dep. I comfort, console; alleviate 6C(iv)
cōnspiciō 3/4 I catch sight of; observe, gaze on 5B(i)
cōnstāns cōstant-is stable, steadfast, consistent 5C(iii)
cōstanti-a ae 1f. steadfastness, consistency 3A
cōnsuetūdō cōnsuetūdin-is 3f. custom, habit, wont; social intercourse, companionship 5A(i)
cōnsulār-is e consular 5E(i)
cōnsulō 3 I consult; (+ dat.) take thought for, consult the interests of 6B(vii)
cōnsult-um ī 2n. decree 6B(i)
cōn-sūmō 3 I use up; waste, squander 6C(ii)
cōn-surgō 3 I arise together 6C(iv)
con-tendō 3 I strain, exert; demand; affirm, insist; (intrans.) exert myself; push on, hasten; fight, struggle 6B(vii)
content-us a um satisfied, content 4G(i)
continēns continent-is adjacent; continuous 6C(iii)
con-uertō 3 I turn round, wheel; change (trans.: pass. supplies intrans. meanings) 6C(ii)
creō 1 I create, produce; appoint, choose, elect 4A(iv)
crīmen crīmin-is 3n. accusation, charge 4A(iii)
cruent-us a um gory, bloody 5F(ii)
cubō 1 I lie; lie in bed; sleep; recline at table 2C
currō 3 I run 1F

D

damn-um ī 2n. loss, damage 6D(iii)
dē-cēdō 3 I depart, retire, withdraw; die; abate, cease 6B(v)
dē-cernō 3 I decide, decree, determine 6B(vii)

dē-cidō 3 I fall down; perish 6D(iii)
dēfess-us a um tired out 6A(iii)
dēlectō 1 I delight, please 6B(i)
dēmenti-a ae 1f. madness 5F(ii)
dē-mittō 3 I let down 5E(i)
dēprecōr 1 dep. I beg off, pray to avert 6B(i)
dē-prehendō 3 I catch in the act, surprise, intercept 5C(ii)
dē-rīdēō 2 I scoff at 2E
dē-serō 3 I abandon, desert 5C(ii)
dēsīdērō 1 I long for; miss, feel the loss of 6C(iv)
dē-sinō 3 I cease 6A(vi)
dēspērāt-us a um abandoned, desperate 6B(vii)
dēspērō 1 I lose hope, despair 5F(ii)
dē-stituō 3 I leave in the lurch, abandon 6C(ii)
dict-um ī 2n. word; saying 2A
dif-fugiō 3/4 I scatter in flight 6D(iii)
dī-ripīō 3/4 I tear in pieces; plunder, sack 5D(i)
disciplīn-a ae 1f. instruction, training; learning; science; doctrine 4E(ii)
dis-tribuō 3 I distribute 4D(i)
dīuidō 3 I divide, separate 1C
doctrīn-a ae 1f. teaching, learning 4A(ii)
domestic-us a um home-, domestic; native, internal 6B(viii)
domicili-um ī 2n. abode, dwelling 5D(i)

E

ēdict-um ī 2n. proclamation, manifesto 6B(i)
edō 3 I eat 3C
ēf-fundō 3 I pour out (trans.) 6D(iii)
effūs-us a um outspread; slackened, dishevelled; extravagant, lavish 6D(ii)
ē-iciō 3/4 I cast out; cast ashore, wreck 4E(ii)
ē-ligō 3 I pick out, choose, select 6B(vi)
ē-rigō 3 I raise up; arouse; cheer up, encourage 4E(i)
ē-rumpō 3 I break out; burst forth 5B(iii)
ē-ueniō 4 I turn out, come to pass, happen, result 2E
ēuent-us 4m. outcome, result 4A(iv)
ē-uertō 3 I overturn, overthrow, destroy 5D(i)
ēuocō 1 I call out, call forth 2E
excitō 1 I arouse, kindle 4B(i)
exercitāt-us a um well-trained, practised 6C(ii)
eximi-us a um exceptional, extraordinary 4B(ii)
exīstimātiō exīstimātiōn-is 3f. judgement, opinion; reputation 4B(ii)
expedit-us a um unencumbered, free for action, in light marching order; convenient, ready to hand, uninterrupted 5G(ii)
ex-pellō 3 I drive out 1C
explōrō 1 I investigate,

search out; reconnoitre 5G(ii)
ex-pōnō 3 I put out, set out; disembark (trans.); set forth, expound 6B(vii)
exspectātiō exspectātiōn-is 3f. awaiting, apprehension 6B(i)
exstinguō 3 I put out, extinguish; kill; blot out, wipe out 1C

F

facultās facultāt-is 3f. capability, skill; opportunity; supply, resources 6C(iii)
fallō 3 I deceive; escape the notice of 2A
fals-us a um false 1B
familiār-is e domestic; friendly, intimate 1B
fās indecl. n. divine law; right 4A(iv)
fateor 2 dep. I acknowledge, confess 1F
fax fac-is 3f. torch, firebrand 5D(iv)
fer-a ae 1f. wild animal 2D
ferōx ferōc-is spirited, courageous; fierce, savage 5A(i)
ferre-us a um made of iron; hard-hearted 5D(i)
flectō 3 I bend, turn; dissuade; prevail on, appease 6D(i)
flōs flōr-is 3m. flower, bloom 6A(vii)
fluō 3 I flow 4A(ii)
fluui-us ī 2m. river 4A(ii)
foc-us ī 2m. hearth 1A
foed-us a um filthy, foul; dishonourable, vile 5F(ii)

fremit-us 4m. growling, murmuring 6D(i)
frigid-us a um cold, chilly 6D(ii)
frōns front-is 3f. brow, forehead; front 5G(i)
frūgēs frūg-um 3f. pl. fruits of the earth 6D(iii)
fulmen fulmin-is 3n. thunderbolt; lightning 6D(i)
fūm-us ī 2m. smoke 1F
fundāment-um ī 2n. foundation 5D(i)
funditus from the foundations, completely 6B(vii)
fundō 1 I make firm, establish, fix 5D(iv)
fundō 3 I pour, shed; produce in abundance; scatter, rout; spread out, diffuse, display 5G(ii)
fūrt-um ī 2n. theft 6A(ii)

G

gemin-us a um twin; twofold 6D(iii)
gemit-us 4m. groaning, groan 6D(i)
gurgēs gurgit-is 3m. gulf; sea, flood 6D(ii)

H

hērēs hērēd-is 3m. and f. heir; heiress 6D(iii)
horribil-is e dreadful 6A(vii)
hostil-is e enemy's, hostile 5G(iii)
hūmānitās hūmānitāt-is 3f. human nature; humanity, kindness; culture, refinement 4A(ii)
hūmān-us a um human; humane, kindly; civilised, cultured, refined 4D(ii)

I

ignōrō 1 I do not know, am ignorant (of) 1A
imāgō imāgin-is 3f. copy, likeness; image, picture, statue; echo; apparition, phantom; semblance, shadow; mental image, fancy, idea 1B
imber imbr-is 3m. rain, rain-storm 6D(i)
im-mittō 3 I send in, send against, let loose, hurl; set on, incite 6D(ii)
im-pellō 3 I drive on, urge on; excite, impel, instigate 5B(i)
im-pendeō 2 (+ dat.) I overhang; menace, threaten 5A(iii)
improb-us a um morally bad, depraved, shameless 2E
imprōvis-us a um unforeseen, unexpected 5A(iii)
im-us a um lowest, bottom of 1C
inān-is e empty, void; useless, vain 6D(ii)
in-cidō 3 I fall into, fall upon; fall in with, meet; light upon; befall, happen 5A(ii)
incitō 1 I set in quick motion, speed; arouse, spur on, stimulate 6B(vii)
in-clūdō 3 I shut in, enclose, imprison; include, insert 4E(ii)
incolumitās incolumitāt-is 3f. safety 6B(vii)
incommod-um ī 2n. trouble, setback 6B(vii)
incrēdibil-is e unbelievable 4E(i)

in-currō 3 I run into, run upon, charge; run up against, encounter 5G(ii)
indicō 1 I disclose, make known 2E
in-dūcō 3 I lead in, lead on; overspread; introduce; induce, persuade 5G(iii)
iners inert-is inactive, sluggish 6D(iii)
infēlix infēlic-is unfruitful; unlucky 6D(i)
īnfer-ī ōrum 2m. pl. inhabitants of the Underworld, the dead 1B
ingenu-us a um free-born; frank, open 5G(iii)
īniti-um ī 2n. beginning 5A(iii)
iniūst-us a um unrighteous, wrongful 3B
īnsāni-a ae 1f. madness, frenzy 4C(ii)
īnsāniō 4 I am mad, rage, rave 4C(ii)
īnsān-us a um mad, frenzied; outrageous 1C
īn-scribō 3 I write upon, inscribe 4A(ii)
īntegritās īntegritāt-is 3f. completeness; blamelessness 4B(ii)
īntercessiō īntercessiōn-is 3f. veto (of a tribune) 6B(vii)
īnter-clūdō 3 I shut off; cut off, block; shut in, blockade 5E(ii)
īnter-eō I perish, die 2E
īnter-sum I am between; am different; (+ dat.) take part in 6B(viii)
īntrō-dūcō 3 I bring inside,

introduce 5C(iii)
īntro-eō I enter 5A(iii)
īn-uādō 3 I go in, enter; rush into; fall upon, assault, attack 2A
īnuidi-a ae 1f. envy, ill-will; unpopularity 5A(i)
īnuidiōs-us a um enviable; odious, unpopular 4C(ii)
īnuītō 1 I invite; allure, attract 4B(iii)
īr-a ae 1f. anger, passion, wrath 6D(i)
iug-um ī 2n. yoke; pair; mountain ridge, summit; chain of mountains 6C(iii)
iūst-us a um righteous, upright; lawful, rightful; equitable, due, proper 3B

L

lac lact-is 3n. milk 2E
lacrim-a ae 1f. tear 2D
lacrimor 1 dep. I shed tears, weep 4E(ii)
laetor 1 dep. I rejoice 5C(iii)
lapis lapid-is 3m. stone; milestone; precious stone 6D(i)
lassitūdō lassitūdīn-is 3f. faintness, weariness 6C(ii)
lass-us a um faint, tired, weary 6D(iv)
lateō 2 I lie hidden, lurk; am hidden from (trans.) 1A
lauō 1 I wash (trans.) 1F
laus laud-is 3f. praise; renown; credit, distinction 6B(viii)
lēniō 4 I soften; calm, soothe 2E

lēnitās lēnitāt-is 3f. gentleness, mildness 6C(iv)
leuō 1 I lighten; lift; console; relieve 6D(iv)

M

maeror maerōr-is 3m. grief, sorrow 5G(iii)
mandāt-um ī 2n. commission, injunction 5C(i)
mātūr-us a um ripe; seasonable, timely; early, speedy 4A(ii)
mediocr-is e middling, moderate, ordinary 4C(ii)
metuō 3 I fear, dread 2E
min-ae ārum 1f. pl. threats 6D(i)
ministrō 1 I attend to, manage; furnish, supply 6D(ii)
minitor 1 dep. I keep on threatening 4F(ii)
minuō 3 I diminish 5A(i)
miseri-a ae 1f. wretchedness, distress 5B(i)

mīt-is e mellow, gentle, mild 5D(i)
modesti-a ae 1f. discretion; modesty 4B(ii)
molesti-a ae 1f. irksomeness, trouble 6B(i)
molest-us a um irksome, troublesome 2E
moll-is e soft; calm, gentle; pliant, yielding; irresolute; effeminate; agreeable, pleasant 5A(ii)
mōnstrō 1 I point out, show 1A
monument-um ī 2n. memorial, monument 1D

moror 1 dep. I delay, linger, tarry; (trans.) delay, hinder 2E
mūnitiō mūnitiōn-is 3f. fortifying; fortification, entrenchment 6C(iii)

N

nāscor 3 dep. I am born; arise, spring; am produced, occur naturally 4C(i)
neglēgēs neglēgent-is careless, neglectful 6A(iv)
nīmium = nimis too much 6B(i)
niteō 2 I glisten, glitter, shine 2E
nōbilitās nōbilitāt-is 3f. high birth; aristocracy; excellence 5A(i)
nocēns nocent-is criminal, guilty 5D(i)
nocturn-us a um by night; nightly 4F(i)
nusquam nowhere 2C

O

ob-sistō 3 (+ dat.) I obstruct, thwart 4A(i)
occult-us a um hidden, secret 5C(ii)
odor odōr-is 3m. scent, smell; stench 5E(i)
ōlim once (upon a time); long ago; some time (in the future) 3A
ōrātor ōrātōr-is 3m. orator, speaker; spokesman 2D
orbis orb-is 3m. circle; disc, hoop, ring, orbit: *orbis terrārum* the world 4G(i)

P

pacīscor 3 dep. I bargain, contract, covenant;

make an agreement; (trans.) bargain for; betroth 2C
palm-a ae 1f. palm of hand; hand; palm-tree; palm-branch, palm, wreath; prize of victory 4E(i)
pariēs pariet-is 3m. wall (of house) 3C
pass-us ūs 4m. pace, step: *mille passūs* (pl. *mīlia passuum*) mile 6C(iii)
pāstor pāstōr-is 3m. shepherd 2E
patrōn-us ī 2m. defender, protector, patron; counsel for defence, advocate 4C(ii)
paucitās paucitāt-is 3f. fewness, paucity 6B(v)
peccāt-um ī 2n. sin 4B(i)
pectus pector-is 3n. bosom, breast; heart, soul 6D(iv)
pecus pecor-is 3n. herd of animals, cattle 5F(ii)
pedes pedit-is on foot; 3m. noun foot-soldier 5G(i)
pendeō 2 I hang; depend 3A
perdit-us a um desperate, hopeless; abandoned, profligate 1A
per-dūcō 3 I bring along, conduct; prolong; construct; win over 5B(i)
perfug-a ae 1m. deserter 5E(ii)
per-fugiō 3/4 I desert (to the enemy) 5E(ii)
perfugi-um ī 2n. place of refuge 6D(i)
periculōs-us a um dangerous 5A(i)
perīt-us a um experienced, skilled, skilful; (+ gen.) skilled in 4D(ii)

per-mittō 3 I entrust;
(+ dat.) allow, permit
5G(i)
perniciēs perniciē-i 5f. utter
destruction, utter ruin
4B(i)
perpetu-us a um
continuous, unbroken
6A(iv)
perspicu-us a um evident
1E
perterreō 2 I frighten
thoroughly, demoralise
5A(iii)
per-tineō 2 I extend,
stretch; belong (to),
relate (to); lead (to),
tend (to) 4F(i)
perturbātiō perturbātiō-is
3f. confusion, disorder
6B(viii)
perturbō 1 I throw into
confusion, confound
5E(ii)
plācō 1 I reconcile;
appease 6D(i)
plānitiēs plānitiē-i 5f. plain
6C(iv)
pondus ponder-is 3n.
weight; load, mass 3C
pont-us ī 2m. (open) sea
6D(ii)
port-a ae 1f. gate 2A
possessiō possesiō-is 3f.
holding, occupation,
possession 5D(iii)
poster-us a um next,
subsequent 6B(iii)
potestās potestāt-is 3f.
power; control;
magisterial power,
authority; opportunity
1D
pōtō 1 I drink; drink hard
4E(i)
prae-dicō 3 I foretell; issue
warning 6B(vii)
prae-mittō 3 I send in
advance 5A(iii)
praeterit-us a um past
6B(iii)
praetōri-us a um praetor's;
general's 5G(ii)
prīuātīm in a private
capacity 5B(i)
prīuāt-us a um personal,
private; not holding
office 6B(viii)
prīuō 1 I deprive, strip;
release 6C(i)
prob-us a um good,
honest, proper;
virtuous 2A
prō-cēdō 3 I advance, go
forward; (of time) pass;
make progress; come
off, turn out well
5A(iii)
procul far; from afar 2E
prōcumbō 3 I collapse, lie
down, sink to the
ground 6D(i)
prō-dō 3 I give forth;
publish; bequeath,
hand down; betray
5A(iii)
prō-dūcō 3 I lead forth;
drag out, protract 2E
profectō assuredly 6B(viii)
prō-ferō I bring forth;
bring to light; put
forward, cite, mention
1F
pro-fundō 3 I pour forth,
spill; lavish, squander
1F
propinqu-us a um near,
neighbouring; *propinqu-*
us ī 2m. (noun) near
relative 4B(iii)
prōspiciō 3/4 I look out;
(+ dat.) provide for;
(trans.) look out on;
foresee 6B(iii)
prūdēns prūdēt-is discreet,
sensible 6B(vii)

pūblicē on behalf of the
state, at the state's
expense, officially 5B(i)
pūblic-us a um belonging
to the state, state-,
official; common,
public 4E(ii)
puluis puluer-is 3m. dust
6D(iii)

Q

quaest-us ūs 4m.
acquisition, gain,
profit; business, trade
5A(ii)
quiēt-us a um at rest,
quiet; peaceful, neutral
4B(i)
quondam once 6A(vi)

R

rādīx rādīc-is 3f. root;
foot-hill, (mountain)
spur 4E(i)
rār-us a um loose, thin;
here and there,
scattered, wide apart;
(pl.) in small groups;
scarce 6D(iv)
ratis rat-is 3f. raft; (in
poetry) ship, vessel
6D(ii)
re-cidō 3 I fall back;
relapse 6B(vi)
reciperō (or *recuperō*) 1 I
regain, recover 6C(i)
recitō 1 I read out, read
aloud 4A(iv)
re-currō 3 I run back;
recur 6D(iii)
recūsātiō recūsātiō-is 3f.
objection 6C(iv)
red-imō 3 I buy back,
repurchase; ransom;
buy, purchase; contract
for, farm (taxes); buy
off; pay for, atone for
6B(viii)

re-ferō I bring back, carry
back; repay; convey;
repeat; reproduce;
announce, relate,
report; record, set
down in writing;
ascribe, refer; (intrans.)
take back word,
report; put a motion
(e.g. before senate) 1F
rēgnō 1 I reign, rule 5D(i)
rēgn-um ī 2n. kingship,
sovereignty; despotism;
kingdom, realm 4G(i)
regō 3 I direct, guide;
govern, rule 6D(ii)
re-gredior 3/4 dep. I
return; retreat 2E
religiō religiō-is 3f.
reverence, religious
awe; religious scruple;
superstition;
conscientiousness;
holiness, sanctity 4A(ii)
remedi-um ī 2n. cure,
remedy 5B(i)
remissiō remissiō-is 3f.
slackening; abatement,
relaxation 5D(ii)
re-moueō 2 I move back;
remove 4D(ii)
rēm-us ī 2m. oar 4D(ii)
renouō 1 I renew, restore,
revive 6C(ii)
renūntiō 1 I bring back
word, report back;
announce, report;
announce the election
of; disclaim, renounce
4A(iv)
repudiō 1 I reject,
repudiate 5C(i)
re-quiēscō 3 I repose, rest
re-stituō 3 I set up again,
replace; rebuild; re-
establish, reform, restore,
revive; restore, give
back; reinstate 6D(iii)

reticeō 2 I keep silent;
(trans.) keep silent
about 5A(i)
re-trahō 3 I draw back,
bring back; remove,
withdraw 4F(ii)
rumpō 3 I break, burst;
break off, cut short;
break in on, interrupt
6A(vii)
ruō 3 I fall down, tumble
down; dash, hurry,
rush; (trans.) dash
down; upheave 6D(ii)
rūsus/rūsum back again;
again 1F

S

sagittāri-us ī 2m. archer
6C(ii)
sal sal-is 3m. salt; brine,
sea; wit 6A(i)
sax-um ī 2n. rock, large
stone 4B(iv)
scelerāt-us a um criminal,
vicious 4B(iv)
sēcrētō in private 6B(ii)
sēdēs sēd-is 3f. seat; abode,
habitation; base,
foundation 6D(i)
sempitern-us a um
everlasting,
imperishable 5D(iv)
senātor senātor-is 3m.
senator 5A(iii)
senātori-us a um senatorial
6C(iii)
sēns-us ūs 4m. feeling;
perception, sense;
emotion, opinion
4B(iv)
significō 1 I indicate, make
known; betoken;
mean, signify 6B(vii)
signō 1 I set a mark on;
mark out; stamp
(money); seal; indicate
5C(i)

singulār-is e one at a time;
single; matchless,
unique 4A(ii)
sit-us a um lying, placed,
situated 1F
societās societāt-is 3f.
alliance, association,
confederacy,
partnership 5B(i)
solitūdō solitūdī-is 3f.
loneliness; lonely place,
desert 6B(vii)
sors sort-is 3f. lot; casting
of lots; allotted duty;
oracular response;
destiny, fate 4A(iv)
sortior 4 dep. I draw lots,
assign by lot; select by
lot; obtain by lot 4A(iv)
spargō 3 I scatter, strew;
sprinkle; bedew,
bespatter; disperse,
spread abroad 6D(i)
spectācul-um ī 2n. sight,
spectacle, show 4E(iii)
spectō 1 I look at, watch
1A
speculātor speculātor-is 3m.
spy, scout 4G(i)
spīrō 1 I breathe; blow;
(trans.) breathe out,
exhale 5G(iii)
splendid-us a um gleaming,
shining; brilliant,
illustrious, splendid
4C(i)
spoliō 1 I strip; despoil,
plunder 2E
sponte of one's own
accord, spontaneously
6C(ii)
stabiliō 4 I make firm,
make steady, establish
5D(iv)
statuō 3 I erect, set up;
establish, fix, settle;
decide, determine
4E(iii)

Additional learning vocabulary: Latin-English

statūr-a ae 1f. height, stature 3C
stat-us ūs 4m. posture; position; condition, state; state of affairs; constitution 5B(i)
strēnu-us a um active, vigorous 5G(ii)
stringō 3 I bind, draw tight; pull off, strip; draw (sword); graze, touch lightly 6C(ii)
stupeō 2 I am aghast, astounded, dazed; (trans.) am astonished at 1B
suādeō 2 I advise, recommend, urge (acc. of thing, dat. of person) 2D
sub-iciō 3/4 I thrust under; put under; subdue, subject; append, subjoin; suggest; substitute 6D(ii)
sub-igō 3 I bring under; dig up, plough up; conquer, subjugate; compel 6D(ii)
sub-sum I am under; am close at hand; am under the surface, lie concealed 6C(iii)
sum-moueō 2 I remove; drive away 6C(ii)
superbi-a ae 1f. arrogance, pride, haughtiness 5A(i)
superb-us a um arrogant, haughty, proud 6D(ii)
super-ī ōrum 2m. pl. the gods above 6D(iii)
super-sum I am over, remain, survive; (+ dat.) survive, outlive; am in abundance 6C(i)
sus-cipiō 3/4 I hold up,

support; take up, undertake; beget; adopt 5A(iii)
suspiciō suspiciō-is 3f. mistrust, suspicion 4A(iii)

T

tametsī although 6B(i)
temere by accident, by chance; at random; heedlessly, rashly, recklessly 6B(vii)
tenu-is e thin; slender, slight; feeble, weak; poor, trifling; fine, subtle 4G(i)
tolerō 1 I bear, endure; keep up, maintain 5A(ii)
tranquill-us a um calm, still; at peace, serene, undisturbed 2B
trāns-igō 3 I accomplish, complete, perform; (intrans.) make a settlement, come to an understanding 5D(ii)
trāns-mittō 3 I send across, send over; hand over; cross 6D(ii)
tribūn-us ī 2m. tribune 5D(iii)
tribuō 3 I allot, assign, bestow; grant, render, attribute 6B(vii)
trienni-um ī 2n. period of three years 4C(ii)
triumphō 1 I celebrate a triumph; exult, triumph 2D
tub-a ae 1f. trumpet, war-trumpet 3B
tumult-us ūs 4m. commotion, disorder, uproar; insurrection, uprising 4B(i)
tunc then 4A(iv)

turbid-us a um boisterous; disorderly; confused, troubled 6D(ii)
turpitūdō turpitūdī-is 3f. baseness, disgrace, shamefulness 5F(ii)
turris turr-is 3f. tower, turret; siege-tower 2A

V

uānitās uānitāt-is 3f. emptiness; deceptiveness, falsity; vainglory 5A(i)
uās uās-is 3n. (pl. *uās-a ōrum* 2n.) vessel; utensil 1F
uāstō 1 I desert, leave empty; devastate, lay waste 5D(i)
uāst-us a um empty; desert, waste; boundless; enormous, prodigious, vast 6D(ii)
ueni-a ae 1f. favour, grace; permission; forgiveness, pardon 4G(i)
uēnor 1 dep. I hunt 6B(v)
uēr uēr-is 3n. spring 6D(iii)
uesper ī 2m. (and *uesper-is* 3m.) evening 2E
ueterān-us a um veteran 5G(i)
uetust-us a um old 2B
uexātiō uexātiō-is 3f. distress, trouble 5D(i)
uictor uictōr-is 3m. conqueror, victor 3B
uindex uindic-is 3m. defender, protector; avenger 5E(i)
uiolō 1 I do violence to; profane; break (law etc.), outrage, violate 6C(iv)
uirid-is e green; blooming, fresh 6D(ii)

Additional learning vocabulary: Latin-English

uiril-is e man's; of manhood; manly 5A(ii)
uīsō 3 I look at, view; go to see, visit 2C
uiti-um ī 2n. defect, fault, flaw; crime, offence; depravity 6B(viii)

uix scarcely 2E
ulcīscor 3 dep. I take vengeance on; avenge 2E
ulterior ulteriōr-is further, more remote 6D(ii)
uolō 1 I fly 6D(i)

urbān-us a um city-; polished, refined; witty 5A(ii)
uulgō commonly, generally 6B(ii)

INDEX OF GRAMMAR

Numbers alone refer to Running Grammar sections (adscript numbers refer to sections, superscript numbers to Notes within those e.g. 48.1, 89⁶). Letters A–W (with numbers/letters following) refer to the Reference Grammar (pp. 448ff.). Page numbers are given for grammar which occurs outside these parts. For a simplified definition of terms, see the Glossary of English–Latin Grammar pp. xvii–xxiii.

<i>ā/ab</i> , 23, 119 ² , 155 ³ , K	formation, see Table I.1
ablative, see under 'cases'	gerund, 175
<i>ac</i> (<i>atque</i>), see 'comparative clauses'	supine, 118 ² , A7
accent (stress): rule, p. xv; in poetry, p. 319	impersonal verbs, 154, F2
Note 2.	<i>ad</i> , 10; with gerundives, 161.3; with gerunds, 175.2
<i>accidit</i> (<i>ut</i>), 135, F2, S2(a)3(iii)	<i>adeō</i> . . . <i>ut</i> , S2(a)2
accusative, see under 'cases'	adjectives
<i>ācer</i> , 53 ² , J2(d)	meaning, 14 ¹
active verbs	formation: full tables, J2–3; <i>multus</i> , 14;
meaning, 4, 5, A Intro.(c)	<i>miser</i> , 21; <i>pulcher</i> , 27; <i>omnis</i> , 44; <i>ingēns</i> ,
full conjugations; A1–7	

Table I.1 Active verbs

	Indicative	Infinitive	Imperative	Subjunctive	Participles
Present	<i>amō</i> , <i>habeō</i> , 2, 41 3; <i>dīcō</i> , 24; <i>audiō</i> , 25; <i>capiō</i> , 33		<i>amō</i> , 1; <i>habeō</i> , 2; <i>dīcō</i> , 24; <i>audiō</i> , 25; <i>capiō</i> , 36; irr., 37	127	120
Future	50	97	A2 Note 1	172 ⁴ , A2 Note 2, L–V Intro.(c)	81–3
Imperfect	89			130	
Perfect	65	95		167	
Future perfect	156				
Pluperfect	104			121	

Index

- 45; *audāx*, 46; *noster/uester*, 53; *celer*, 53;
ācer, 53²; *dīues*, *pauper*, 47; *nūllus*, *alter*,
62; *hic*, 63; *ille*, 64; *is*, 70; *meus*, 17, 20;
numerals, 54; comparative/superlative,
72–4
agreement, 142–6, L–V Intro.(b)2
as nouns, 14⁷, 47
general survey, J Intro.
adverbs, 79, J4(a); comparative/superlative,
87, J4(b); irregular, 79, J4(c)
agent, 119², 155³; dative of agent, 161²,
L(e)1(iv)
agreement: of adjectives, see 'adjectives'; of
verb, L–V Intro.(b)1 and Notes
aiō, F1(b)
aliquantō, L(f)4(iv)
aliquid + gen. 'some of', L(d)2
aliquis, 102; 15(b)
alius, 102, 16(a)
alliteration, p. 315(i)
alter, 62, 16(c)
amō, see 'active verbs', 'passive' (1st conj.)
an, 172¹, L–V Intro.(a)2, (see also '*utrum* . . .
an'), S2(e) Note 2
anaphora, p. 315(g)
antecedent, 106, Q1
antequam, 165.3, T(c)
antithesis, p. 314(b)
appāret, F2
apposition, 17B, L–V Intro.(b) Note 3
Archilochean, see 'metre'
assimilation, pp. 207–8
assonance, p. 315(h)
asyndeton, p. 314(c)
atque (*ac*), see 'comparative constructions'
audeō, 76, 89⁶, D and D Note 3
audiō, see 'active verbs', 'passive' (4th conj.)
ausim, 153.2, D Note 3
bīnī, 17 Note 2
bis, 17 Note 2
bōs, H3(f)
caelebs, J2(e) Note 2
capiō, see 'active verbs', 'passive' (3rd/4th
conj.)
caput, 61
cases
formation, see 'nouns'
usages: full discussion, L; in general, 6
nominative: subject, 6.2; complement, 6.4
accusative: object, in respect of, 6.3; of
time, 71; accusative and infinitive 98–9,
R1, L(c)
genitive: possession, source, 6.5; objective,
22³; part of whole (partitive), 31, 43²,
102³; of value, 69; of description, 101,
L(d)
dative: gainer, loser, 48.1; speaking to,
48.3; possession, 48.2, 88.1; sympathy,
88.2; judging, 88.3; ethic, 88.4; verbs
taking dative, 88.5; of purpose;
predicative, 88.6; of agent, 161², L(e)
ablative: summary formation, 100A; *ā/ab*,
ē/ex, 23; description, 49; time, 67; means
or instrument, 84; true ablative, locative,
instrumental-accompanying, 100A;
comparison, 100B.1; attendant
circumstances, 100B.2; manner, 100B.3;
after *ūtor*, *fruor*, 100B.4; measure of
difference, 100B.5; source, 108.1; cause,
108.2; absolute, with nouns 109;
absolute, with present participle, 120⁶;
absolute, with perfect participle passive,
150–1; agent, 119², 161²; respect, 147;
after *dignus*, *frētus*, *plēnus*, L(f)5; ablative
phrases, L(f)6, L(f)
vocative, 9¹, 17A, L(b)
locative, 30, 110, L(g)
causā (*grātiā*), 161.3, 175.3, K
causal clauses: *quippe quī*, 140.2; *utpote quī*,
166; full discussion, U
celer, 53, J2(c)
chiasmus, p. 315(d)
coepī F1(a)
commands, L–V Intro.(a)3
comparatives: adjectives, 72, 74, J3; adverbs,
87, J4(b), J4(c)
comparative constructions, 52³, 72⁴, 179, J5,
Q2 Note 3
complement, 6.4
compos, J2(e) Note 2
concessive clauses, V
conditionals: present and imperfect
subjunctive, 139; pluperfect subjunctive,
173, S1(d); full discussion, S2(c); in
indirect speech, R4(b)

conjugation: defined, 4; forms, see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'
 connecting relative, 107
 consecutive clauses, see 'result clauses'
cōstat, F2
cornū, 178, H4(b)
 correlatives, 179.2, J5(c)2, J5(a)4
crātēr, H6
cum, (conjunction), 124, 141.1; full discussion, T(d), T(e), U; (with abl.) I1 Note 2
 dative: formation, see 'nouns'; usages, see 'cases'
decet, 154, F2
dēdecet, 154, F2
 defective verbs, F1
 deliberative questions, 152¹, L–V Intro.(a)2, S1(b)
 demonstrative pronouns, I2
 deponents
 full conjugations, C1–6
 formation, see Table I.2
 gerund, 175
 gerundives, 160
 supine, A7
 derivations: general, p. 30, Appendix; for individual words, see 'word study'; see also 'stems', 'prefixes', 'suffixes'
deus, 16, H2(e)
dīcō, see 'active verbs', 'passive'; irregular imperative, 24, 37
dīēs, 60 Note, H5 Note
dignus, with ablative, L(f)5; *dignus quī* with subjunctive, Q2 Note 1
dīues, 47, J2(e), J Intro.(d)
domus, 30, 56, H4(c)

dōnec, T(b), T(c)
 doubt, 174.2(c), S2(e)
dūcō, irregular imperative, 37
dum, 165, T(b), T(c); in indirect speech, R(d), R4(a); 'provided that', S2(g)
dummodo, 165.4, S2(g)
duo, 54, 17
ē/ex, 23, K
ecquis, L–V Intro.(a)2, I5(c)4 and Note 5
ego, 22, I1
 elegiac couplet, see 'metre'
 ellipse, p. 314(a)
eō 'I go': full conjugation, E4; present indicative, imperative, compounds, 19; infinitive, 42; future, 51; perfect, 66, 84; imperfect indicative, 89⁴; used to form future infinitive passive, 118^{1,3}; passive present (compounds), 119; present participle, 120⁵; present subjunctive, 129³; imperfect subjunctive, 130¹; used impersonally in passive, 155¹
eō, 'for this reason', U Note 2; *eō* 'by so much', L(f)4(iv); *eō* . . .
quō + comparatives 'the more . . . the more', J5(a)4; *eō* 'so much', S2(a)2
etiāmsī, V
etsī, V
faciō: irregular imperative, 37; passive, *fiō*, 119⁴
 fearing, 162, S2(d)
ferō: full conjugation, E2; present indicative, 35; imperative, 37; infinitive, 42; future, 51²; perfect, 66; principal parts, 83; present passive, 119; imperfect subjunctive, 130¹

Table I.2 Deponents

	Indicative	Infinitive	Imperative	Subjunctive	Participles
Present	58	58	58	128	120
Future	68	97	A2 Note 1	172 ⁴ , A2 Note 2, L–V	81
				Intro.(c)	
Imperfect	90			131	
Perfect	75	96		168	77
Future perfect	157				
Pluperfect	105			122	

fidō, D Note 2
 fifth declension, see 'nouns'
fiō: full conjugation, D; present, future, perfect indicative, 76; imperfect indicative 89⁶; as passive of *faciō*, 119⁴
 first declension, see 'nouns'
fore, 97³
forem, 130², E1, A2 Note 2
fore ut with subjunctive 149, R1 Note 6
 fourth declension, see 'nouns'
 future tense, future perfect tense, see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'
gaudeō, D Note 2
 gender, 7
 generic usages, 140; Q2(a); S2(a)3(ii)
 genitive: formation, see 'nouns'; usages, see 'cases'; genitive plurals, 11–12, 57, H3(f) Note 3
 gerunds, 175, M(a), N
 gerundives: formation, 160; usages, 161, O
 golden line, p. 315(e)
grātiā (*causā*), 161.3, 175.3, K, N
 Greek declensions, H6
habeō, see 'active verbs', 'passive' (2nd conjugation)
 hendecasyllables, see 'metre'
 hexameter, see 'metre'
hic haec hoc, 63, I2(b); as noun or adjective, J Intro.(d)
 historic infinitives, 146, M(d)
 historic present, 112, A Intro.(c)
 historic sequence, see 'sequence of tenses'
hōc 'by this amount', L(f)4(iv)
 hyperbaton, p. 316(j)
i-stems: nouns, 12, 125, H3(b),(c); adjectives, 44–6, 53.2–3, 74 Note, J2(a)–(d)
idcirco, U Note 2
idem, 86, I2(A)
ille illa illud, 64, I2(c); as noun or adjective, J Intro.(d)
 imperatives, see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'; irregulars: *eō* 19; *dīcō*, *sum*, *dūcō*, *ferō*, *faciō*, 37; *nōlī*(te) with infinitive, 59; future (or 'second') imperative, A2 Note 1, B2 Note

imperfect subjunctive: formation, see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'; in conditions, 139 and Note 3, S(c)2 and Note 2; in wishes, 153.1; in potentials, 153.2; generalising, L–V Intro.(a)1; deliberative, L–V Intro.(a)2; in indirect questions, R2, R3
 imperfect tense, see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'; meaning, A Intro.(c)
 impersonal verbs: active, 154; passive, 155; impersonal gerundives, 161², F2
in, with acc., abl., 10, K
 indicative: meaning, 4, 5; formation, see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'
 indirect speech: statement, 98–9, 143, M(c); question, 172; command, 134; subjunctive in, 142; *fore ut*, 149; full discussion: indirect statement, R1; indirect command, R2; indirect question, R3; subordinate clauses in indirect speech, R4
 infinitive: see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive'; after *uolō*, 34; after *possum*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, 52; after *nōlī*(te), 59; in indirect statement, 98–9; *esse* dropped in, 143; historic, 146; gerund, 175; full discussion, M; indirect statement, R1
ingēns, 45, J2(b)
inops, J2(e) Note 2
inquam, F1(c)
interest, F2
 interrogatives: *quis/quī?*, 29; *-ne?*, 39; *nōne?*, 85; *num?*, 93; in indirect questions, 172
 intransitive verbs, A Intro.(b)
ipse, 102, I2(e)
 irregular verbs: full conjugations, E1–5; full principal parts list, G; see 'sum', 'nōlō', 'mālō', 'uolō', 'eō', 'ferō'; principal parts, 66, 75^{1(c)}, 83
is ea id, 70, I2(a); as noun or adjective, J Intro.(d)
iste ista istud, 91, I2(d), cf. J Intro.(d)
ita . . . *ut*, S2(a)2
iubeō, 134
Iuppiter, H3(f)
 jussive subjunctive: present, 152; perfect, 171, L–V Intro.(a)3, S1(a)

libet, 154, F2
licet, 88, 154, F2; 'although', V Note
 locative, 30, 110; full discussion, L(g)
longus J1(a)
loquor, see 'deponents' (3rd conjugation)

mālō: present, future indicative, 52; perfect indicative, 66; imperfect indicative, 89⁵; present subjunctive, 129²; imperfect subjunctive, 130¹; full conjugation, E5
manus, 55, H4(a)
mare, 125, H3(e)
memini, full conjugation, F1(a)
memor, J2(e) Note 2
mentior, see 'deponents' (4th conjugation)
meridiēs, H5 Note
metre: basic principles, p. 318; hexameter, p. 319; hendecasyllables, 180; scazon, 181; Sapphic stanza, 182; hexameter in Lucretius, 183; Archilochean, 184; elegiac couplet, 185
metuō (*nē*), 162
meus vocative, 17A, I1 Note 1
miliēns, I7 Note 2
mille, 54, I7 (with Note 1)
minor, see 'deponents' (1st conjugation); with dative, 88.5, L(e)1(vii)
minor (comparative of *parvus*), 74, J3
miser, 21, J1(c)
miseret, 154, F2
modo 'provided that', S2(g)
multō, L(f)4(iv)
multus, 14; comparative and superlative, 74, J3

-ne? (question), 39, L-V Intro.(a)2
nē: indirect command, 134; purpose, 145; *nē quis* 134³, 145²; fearing (neg. *ut/nē nōn*), 162; jussive, 152², 171, L-V Intro.(a)3; prevention, S2(f)
negō (indirect speech), 99; R1 Note 3
nēmo, 86, H3(f)
 neuter, I6(d) Note
nimis, 31, L(d)2
nisi, 139², S2(c) Note 3; *nisi quis*, *nisi quandō*, S2(c) Note 4
nōlī (*te*), 59, L-V Intro.(a)3
nōlō: present, future indicative, 52; perfect

indicative, 66; imperfect indicative 89⁵
 present subjunctive, 129²; imperfect subjunctive, 130¹; full conjugation, E5
nōmen, 26, H3(c)
 nominative: formation, see 'nouns'; finding the nominative from third declension stems, 13.3, H3 Notes; usages, see 'cases'; full discussion, L(a)
nōnne?, 85, L-V Intro.(a)2
nōs, 43, I1
nōscō, F1 Note
noster, 53, I1 Note 1
nōuī, F1(a)
 nouns
 defined, 6.1
 first declension: *serua*, 8, H1
 second declension, m. *seruus*, 9, H2(a); *deus*, 16, H2(e); *puer*, 28, H2(b); *culter*, 28, H2(c); *uir*, 28, H2(d); n. *somnium*, 15, H2(f)
 third declension, m./f. *fūr*, 11, H3(a); *aedis*, 12, H3(b); n. *nōmen*, 26, H3(c); *onus*, 38, H3(d); *caput*, 61; *mare* (animal, *calcar*, *cubile*), 125, H3(e); irr. *Iuppiter*, H3(f); *bōs* H3(f); *uīs* H3(f); *nēmo* H3(f)
 fourth declension, m./f. *manus*, 55, H4(a); n. *cornū*, 178, H4(b); irr. *domus*, 56, H4(c), see also 30
 fifth declension, *rēs*, 60, H5
 Greek declensions, H6
 gerunds, see 'gerunds'
nūllus, 62, I6(b); see also 'nēmo'
num? 'surely . . . not?', 93; in indirect questions, 172¹, L-V Intro.(a)2; *num quis*, 172¹, R3 Note 1
 numerals: cardinal 1–10 and 100–1,000, 54; cardinal 11–90 and ordinal 1–10, 159; full list, I7; distributive, multiplicative adjectives, numeral adverbs, I7 Note 2

 objective genitive, 22³, L(d)6
ōdī, full conjugation, F1(a)
omnis, 44, J2(a)
oportet, 154, F2

paenitet, 154, F2
particeps, J2(e) Note 2
 participles, formation and usage: perfect

deponent, 77–8; predicative usage, 77;
 translated as present, C4 Note 1;
 sometimes passive, 160 Note, C4 Note 2;
 future active/deponent, 81; present
 active/deponent, 120; 'a/the one —ing',
 136; perfect passive, 82, 151, 163;
 translated as abstract noun, 163 Note;
 summary of participle forms, 164; full
 discussion, P
parum + gen., L(d)2
 passive
 defined 111
 full conjugations, B1–6
 formation, see Table I.3
 irregular (*ferō*, *-eō*), 119
 impersonal, 155, F2
paulō, L(f)4(iv)
pauper, 47, J2(e)
 perfect tense, see 'active verbs', 'deponents',
 'passive'; meaning, A Intro.(c)
perficiō (*ut*), 135, S2(a)3(iii), S2(b) Note 4
 personal endings: active, 1², 3²; perfect
 active, 65³; deponent, 58²; passive, 111
placet, 88, 154, F2
 pluperfect tense, see 'active verbs',
 'deponents', 'passive'; meaning, A
 Intro.(c)
plūs, 74, J3
 poetry, p. 313; see also 'prosody'
polliceor, see 'deponents' (2nd conjugation)
 possessive adjectives, I1 Note 1
possum: present, infinitive, future, 52;
 imperfect indicative, 89⁴; present
 subjunctive, 129²; imperfect subjunctive,
 130¹; full conjugation, E3
postquam, 104⁴; see also 'temporal clauses'

 potential subjunctive, 139⁴, 153.2, 171, L–V
 Intro.(a)1, S1(d)
 precaution, 162²
 predicative: dative, see 'cases'; use of
 participles and use of adjectives, J
 Intro.(c)
 prefixes: *ad-*, *in-*, *cum-* (*con-*), *prae-*, *post-*, p.
 32; *in-* (negative), *ē/ex-*, *ā/ab-*, *re(d)-*, p.
 43; *trāns-* (*trā-*), *prō-*, p. 65; *au-* (= *ab-*),
 neg- (= *nec-*), p. 75; *sub-* (*su-*, *sus-*), *dē-*,
 per-, p. 83; *dē-*, *ob-*, effect of prefix on
 short *-a-* or *-e-* in simple verb, pp. 97–8;
 sub- (*su-*, *sus-*), p. 109; *dī-* (*dis-*), *sē-*, pp.
 164–5; *prae-*, p. 187; *per-*, assimilation,
 pp. 207–8
 prepositions: *in* with acc., abl., 10; *ad* with
 acc., 10; *ā/ab*, *ē(ex)* with abl., 23; full list
 K
 present tense: see 'active verbs', 'deponents',
 'passive'; meaning, A Intro.(c)
 prevention: *quōminus*, 174.1; *quōminus*, *nē*,
 quīn, S2(f)
 primary sequence, see 'sequence of tenses'
 principal parts: general survey, A Intro.(d);
 full list of irregulars, G; see also 41–2,
 65–6, 75 and 77, 82–3
priusquam, 165.3, T(c)
prōgredior, see 'deponents' (3rd/4th
 conjugation)
 prohibitions, 59 L–V Intro.(a)3, S1(a)
 prolative infinitive, M(b)
 pronominal nouns/adjectives, I
 pronunciation, p. xiv
 prosody: basic principles, pp. 318–19; word
 accent, p. xv
 proviso, 165.4, S2(g)

Table I.3 Passive

	Indicative	Infinitive	Imperative	Subjunctive	Participles
Present	112	118	117	129	
Future	113	118	B2 Note		
Imperfect	114			132	
Perfect	115	118		169	82–3, 151, 163
Future perfect	158				
Pluperfect	116			123	
Gerundive					160

puer, 154, F2
puer, 28, H2(b)
pulcher, 27, J1(b)
 purpose clauses: *ut/nē* and *quī* + subjunctive, 145; *quō*, 148; *ad* with gerundive, 161.3; *ad* with gerund, 175.2, S2(b)

quā 'where', 137.3
quālis, 179.2, J5(c)2
quam: 'than', 52³, 72⁴, J5(a)1; with superlative, J5(b); correlative with *tam*, 179.2, J5(c)2; 'how!', L-V Intro.(a)1
quamquam, 141.2, V
quamvis, 141.2, V
quantō, L(f)4(iv); *tantō* . . . *quantō*, J5(a)4
quasi, J5(c)3
-que, 32
 questions, see 'interrogatives'; indirect questions, 172, L-V Intro.(a)2
quī: interrogative adjective, 29, 14; relative pronoun, 106; connecting relative, 107; purpose, 145³; consecutive ('generic'), causal (*quippe quī*), 140.2; *utpote quī*, 166; general discussion, Q; résumé of usages, p. 311, S2(a)3(ii), S2(b) Note 1; U Note 1; = abl. form of *quī*, I3 Note and I4 Note 3; in *quīn*, S2(e) Note 1
quicumque, I5(c)5 and Note 4
quid with genitive, 40, L(d)2
quidam, 92, I5(a)
quīn, 174.2, Q2(a), S2(a)3(i)-(iv), S2(e)
quippe (*quī*), 140.2, U Note, Q2(c)
quis: interrogative, 29, 14; indefinite, I4 and Note; *nē quis* indirect command, 134³; *nē quis* purpose, 145²; *sī quis*, 139¹, S2(c) Note 4; *nisi quis*, 139², S2(c) Note 4; *num quis*, 172¹, R Note 1
quisquam, 176, I5(c)2 and Note 3
quisque, 176, I5(c)1 and Note 2
quisquis, I5(c)3 and Note 4
quō: 'to where', 137.3; purpose, 148, Q2 Note 2, S2(b) Note 3; 'by how much', L(f)4(iv); *eō* . . . *quō* + comparatives 'the more . . . the more . . .', J5(a)4
quōminus 174.1, S2(f)
quot, 179.2, J5(c)2
rēfert, F2

reflexives, 80; in indirect statement, 98²⁻⁴, R1 Note 4; in indirect command, 134², R2 Note 2; in indirect question, 172³, R3 Note 3; in purpose clauses, 145¹, S2(b) Note 2; in fearing clauses, 162³, S2(d) Note
 relative, 106; genitive, 126; dative/ablative, 137; connecting, 107; with subjunctive (consecutive ('generic'), causal), 140; *quippe quī*, 140.2; *utpote quī*, 166; full discussion, Q; résumé of usages, p. 311; S2(a)3(ii), S2(b) Note 1, U Note
 reported speech, see 'indirect speech'
rēs, 60; H5
 result clauses, 144, S2(a)
 rhetorical features of Latin prose and poetry, pp. 314ff.

 Sapphic stanza, see 'metre'
satis, 31, L(d)2
 scazon, see 'metre'
sē, 80, I1(b), see also 'reflexives'
 second declension, see 'nouns'
 secondary sequence, see 'sequence of tenses'
semel, 17 Note 2
 semi-deponents, 76, 89⁶; full conjugations, D
 sequence of tenses, 134, 135, 142, 144, 145, 162, R3 Note 4; definition, L-V Intro.(c), A Intro.(a); in subordinate clauses in indirect speech, R4(a)
serua, 8, H1
seruus, 9, H2(a)
sī with present and imperfect subjunctive, 139; with pluperfect subjunctive, 173; *sī quis*, 139¹, S2(c) Note 4; full discussion, S2(c), see also *nisi*; *sī quandō*, S2(c) Note 4; in indirect speech, R4(b)
sīc . . . *ut*, S2(a)2
 simple sentences, L-V Intro.(a)
singulī, 17 Note 2
soleō, D Note 2
sōlus, I6(d) Note
sospes, J2(e) Note 2
 statements, L-V Intro.(a)1; indirect, 98-9, R1 stems
 verbs: 1st and 2nd conjugations, 32; 1st and 2nd conjugation imperatives, 18³; *eō*,

19¹; 3rd and 4th, 24¹, 25¹; deponents, 58³; perfect deponent, 75; for derivations, pp. 32, 171, 177
 nouns, 13, H3(f) Notes 1, 2, p. 31
 adjectives, 44³
 stress: see accent
 subjunctive
 formation: present, 127-9 (summarised 133); imperfect, 130-2 (summarised 133); pluperfect, 121-3; perfect, 167-9; 'future', 172⁴, A2 Note 2, L-V Intro.(c)
 usages: *cum*, 124, 141; indirect command, 134; *accidit/perficit ut*, 135; general usages, 138; conditional clauses, 139, 173; in relative clauses, 140, Q2 (consecutive/generic, Q2(a), causal, Q2(c)); *quamvis*, 141.2; subordinate clauses in indirect speech, 142, R4; result, 144, Q2 Note 1; purpose, 145, 148, Q2(b) and Note 2; *fore ut*, 149; deliberative, jussive, 152; wish and potential, 153, 171; fearing, 162; *dum*, *antequam*, *priusquam*, *dummodo*, 165; *utpote quī*, 166, Q2(c); indirect questions, 172; *quōminus*, *quīn*, prevention and doubt, 174; with comparatives, Q2 Note 3
 full discussion, S, Q2 and Notes
 suffixes: nouns -*sor/-tor*, -*or*, -*iō/-tiō/-siō*, -*ium*, -*men*, p. 84; verbs -*sc-*, -*it-*, p. 118; nouns -*ia*, -*tās*, -*tūs*, -*tūdō*, adjective -*ilis/-bilis*, -*idus*, -*ōsus*, -*eus*, -*ālis/-ānus/-āris/-ārius/-icus/-ilis/-īnus/-īuus/-ius*, p. 130; English suffixes -*ry*, -*an*, -*ious*, -*ic*, -*ive*, -*able/-ible*, -*ion*, -*ate/-ite*, -*ty*, -*nce*, -*tude* (from Latin -*ris/-rius/-ria*, -*ānus*, -*ius*, -*icus*, -*īuus*, -*ābilis/-ibilis*, -*iō*, -*ātus/-itus*, -*tās*, -*ntia*, -*tūdō*), p. 139; nouns -*fex*, -*ūra*, p. 176; nouns -*c(u)lum/-crum*, -*iō*, p. 208; nouns -*ium*, -*iēs*, p. 221; nouns -*ia*, -*or*, adjectives -*ēnsis*, -*ānus*, p. 236; nouns/adjectives -*culus/-olus/-ulus*, p. 255; adjectives -*bilis*, English suffixes -*ent/-ant*, p. 269.
sum: present indicative, 1; imperative, 37; infinitive, 42; future, 51; perfect, 66; principal parts, 83; imperfect indicative, 89⁴; present subjunctive, 129²; imperfect subjunctive, 130¹⁻²; full conjugation, E1
 superlatives: adjectives, 73, 74, J3; adverbs, 87, J4(b)-(c)
superstes, J2(e) Note 2
 supine, 118²; A7, S2(b) Note 5
suus, 80, I1 Note 1
 syllables, heavy and light, see 'metre' and 'accent'

tālis . . . *quālis*, 179.2, J5(c)2
tamquam, J5(c)3
tam . . . *quam*, 179.2, J5(c)2
tam . . . *ut*, S2(a)2
tantō, L(f)4(iv); *tantō* . . . *quantō*, J5(a)4
tantus . . . *quantus*, 179.2, J5(c)2
 temporal clauses: *antequam/priusquam* (with subjunctive), 165.3; *cum*, 124, 141.1; *dum*, 165.1, 2; *ubi/postquam* with perfect indicative, 104⁴; full discussion, T
 tense, 4, A Intro.(c)
 third declension, see 'nouns'
 time: at, in, on (ablative), 67, L(f)2; throughout, for, during (accusative), 71, L(c)3
timeō (*nē*), 162, S2(d)
tot . . . *quot*, 179.2, J5(c)2
tōtus, I6(d) Note
 transitive verbs, A Intro.(b)
trēs, 54, I7
 tricolon, p. 315(f)
triplex, I7 Note 2
tū, 22, I1
turrīs, H3(b) Note
tuus, 20, I1 Note 1

ubi with perfect indicative, 104⁴, T(a)
uel, E5 Note 2
uelut, J5(c)3
uereor (*nē*), 162, S2(d)
uester, 53, I1 Note 1
uetō, 134, R2 Note 3
uetus, J2(e) Note 2; J Intro.(d)
uideor, 119³
uir, 28, H2(d)
uīs (*uīrēs*), H3(f)
ūllus, I6(d) Note
ūnus, 54, I6(d) Note, I7

- uolō*: present indicative, 34; infinitive, 42; future, 52; perfect indicative, 66; imperfect indicative, 89⁵; present subjunctive, 129²; imperfect subjunctive, 130¹; full conjugation, E5; with subjunctive, L-V Intro.(a)4
- uōs*, 43, I1
- ut*: indirect command, 134; *accidit/perficit ut*, 135; result, 144; purpose, 145; fearing (negative), 162; correlative, 179.2; résumé of usages, p. 310; temporal, T(a); for subjunctive usages, see also *S passim*
- uter*, I6(d) *Note*
- uterque*, 177, I6(d)
- utinam*, 153.1, L-V Intro.(a)4
- utpote quī*, 166, U *Note*, Q2(c)
- utrum* . . . *an* (*annōn/necne*), 172², L-V Intro.(a)2, R3 *Note* 2
- verbs, see 'active verbs', 'deponents', 'passive', 'irregular verbs'
- vocative, 9¹, 17A; full discussion, L(b)
- wishes, 153.1, L-V Intro.(a)4, S1(c)
- word-building, see 'prefixes', 'suffixes', 'stems'
- word-order, 1⁵, 14⁶, 78; 39 *Note*; in poetry, pp. 314, 316; full discussion, W
- word study: *uestis*, *uestīgium*, p. 77; *alter*, *possum*, 'sincere' (*cēra*), p. 98; *ambulō*, *diēs*, p. 110; *plānus*, p. 119; 'sinecure' (*cūra*), *aequus/equus*, *arca*, p. 131; *forum*, p. 140; *summus*, *fortis*, p. 152; *castrum*, *sequor*, p. 165; *pēs*, p. 179; *auxilium*, p. 118